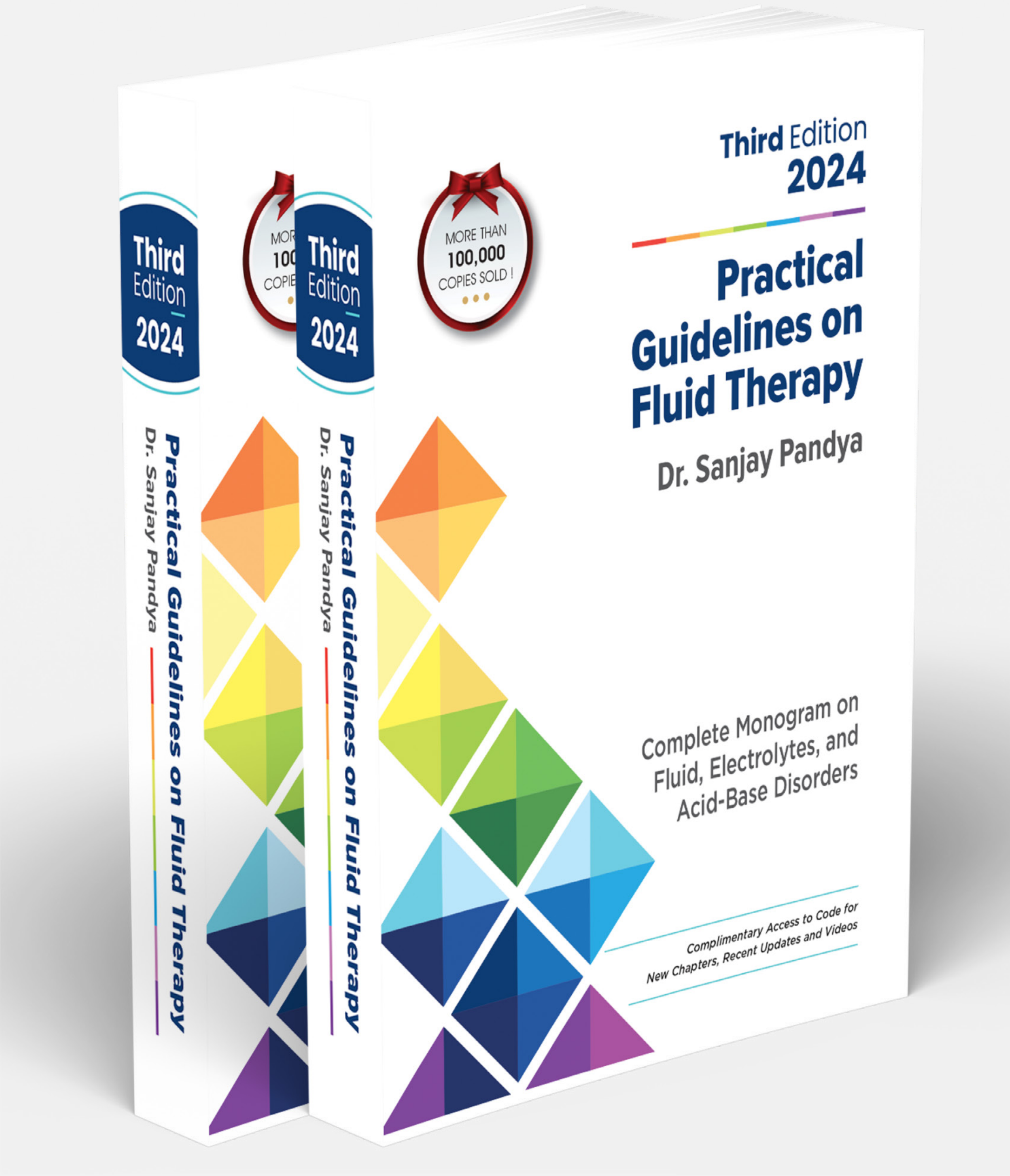
Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 1:
Basic Physiology


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

1

Basic Physiology

Total Body Water **3**
Distribution 3
Fluid and Electrolytes Movement **4**
Normal Water Balance **5**
Daily water intake 5
Daily water loss 5
Distribution of Electrolytes................. **5**
Units of Measurements....................... **6**
Moles and millimoles 6
Osmotic pressure 9
Osmolality and osmolarity 9

Water is the most abundant component of the body. Body fluid is essential for the life as it helps in transport of nutrients, electrolytes, gases, and wastes and also helps to maintain body temperature and cell shape. An understanding of the physiology of body fluids is essential to plan appropriate management of patients' fluid and electrolyte disorders. In this chapter, we will discuss the body's fluid compartments (i.e., their location, size, and composition), normal water balance, electrolytes, and their distribution, and finally, the units of measurement.

TOTAL BODY WATER

The total body water (TBW) content of a person varies mainly with body weight, but it also varies with age, sex, and fat content [1]. Total body water content is about 60% of body weight in a young adult male and about 50% in a young adult female [2]. Because the water content of adipose tissue is relatively low, an obese person will have proportionately less body water as compared to a lean person. The highest percentage of TBW is found in newborns (as high as 80%), which declines with age. The average total body water in different groups is shown in Table 1.1. The measurement of TBW can be performed via indicator dilution techniques using Deuterium oxide ($2H_2O$), tritium oxide ($3H_2O$), oxygen-18 labelled water, or more recently via bioelectrical impedance analysis [3].

Distribution of body fluid

Total body water is commonly divided into two volumes: the intracellular fluid (ICF) volume and the extracellular fluid (ECF) volume (Figure 1.1) [4].

Table 1.1 Average total body water as a percentage of body weight

Age	Adult male	Adult female	Elderly	Adult obese	Infant	Neonate
Total body water (% of body weight)	60%	50%	50%	50%	70%	80%

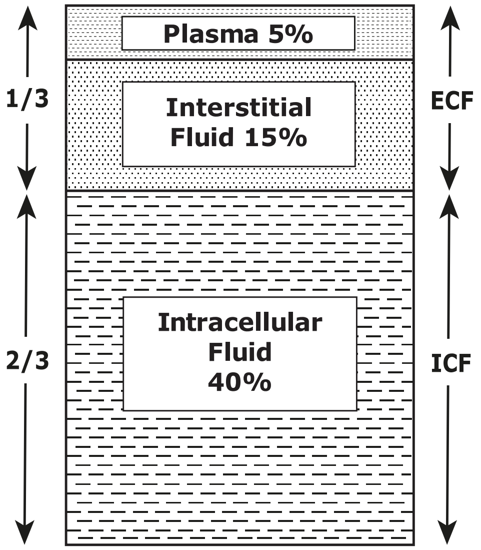


Figure 1.1 Body fluid compartments.

Intracellular fluid

ICF is defined as all the body water within cells. The ICF is normally two third of total body water and 40% of total body weight. Water balance regulates the ICF volume.

Extracellular fluid

ECF is defined as all body water outside the cells - within the tissue spaces (interstitial fluid), the blood vessels (intravascular fluid or plasma), and the lymphatic vessels (lymph). The ECF is normally one third of total body water and 20% of total body weight. As shown in Figure 1.1, ECF is subdivided into extravascular (interstitial) fluid (3/4th of ECF or 15% of total body weight) and plasma or intravascular volume (1/4th of ECF, 1/12 total body water or 5% of total body weight). There is another small compartment of ECF that is referred to as transcellular fluid. This compartment includes cerebrospinal fluid and fluid in the synovial, peritoneal, pericardial, and intraocular spaces. Sodium balance regulates the ECF volume.

For better understanding, the distribution of fluid volume in a 70 kg man is summarized in Table 1.2.

BODY FLUID AND ELECTROLYTES MOVEMENT

The movement of water and electrolytes between ICF and ECF compartments is regulated to stabilize their distribution and the composition of body fluids. The cell membranes that separate fluid compartments are selectively permeable. Water passes freely and readily through cell membranes in response to changes in solute concentration; therefore, the osmolalities in all compartments are equal. Two major determinants of water and electrolyte movements from one compartment to another are hydrostatic pressure and oncotic pressure [5]. Major water retaining solutes in ECF, ICF, and intravascular compartments are sodium, potassium, and plasma protein, respectively.

Unlike water, solutes cannot pass freely through cell membranes even though there is a significant difference in solute concentration between ICF and ECF. The movement of solutes occurs through active and passive transport mechanisms. Active transport by sodium-potassium pumps (Na^+-K^+-ATPase) is the major force maintaining the difference in

Table 1.2 Distribution of fluid volume in body compartments

Fluid type	Total	ICF	ECF	Interstitial	Plasma
% of body weight	60%	40%	20%	15%	5%
Volume for 70 kg weight	42.0 L	28.0 L	14.0 L	10.5 L	3.5 L

cation concentration between the ICF and ECF [2]. Sodium and potassium are compartmentalized into extracellular and intracellular spaces, respectively, by sodium-potassium pumps present in all cell membranes.

NORMAL WATER BALANCE

A healthy adult person consumes an average of 2000 ml of water per day. Fluid intake and output are balanced during steady-state conditions as summarized in Figure 1.2.

Daily water intake

Major sources of water intake are oral intake in the form of liquids (drinking water or beverages), water in food, and water synthesized in the body by oxidation. Thirst primarily regulates water intake. The loss of water increases osmotic pressure in the extracellular fluid, stimulating osmoreceptors in the brain's hypothalamus thirst center, which, in turn, triggers a sensation of thirst, prompting individuals to drink. Conversely, drinking and the resulting stomach distension inhibit the thirst mechanism.

Daily water loss

Routes of water loss are kidneys, feces, sweat (sensible perspiration), evaporation of water from the skin (insensible perspiration), and lungs during breathing. The kidney plays a major role in water balance. By regulating volume of urine, kidneys adjust water output from the body.

Oral or intravenous (IV) fluid intake and urine output are important measurable parameters of body fluid balance. While calculating the daily fluid requirement of the body, it is important to know and consider insensible fluid input and loss.

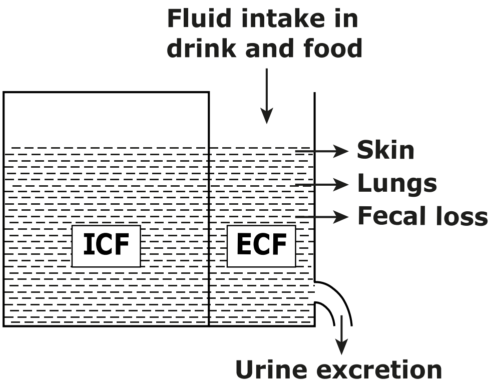


Figure 1.2 Daily water intake and loss in the body.

Insensible fluid input = 300 ml water due to oxidation.

Insensible fluid loss = 1000 ml (500 ml through the skin, 400 ml through the lung, and 100 ml through stool)

Normal Daily Insensible Fluid Loss =

Fluid Loss - Fluid Input = 1000 - 300 ml = 700 ml

Water loss is increased during exercise, excessive sweating, fever, burns, and surgery. This basic information is necessary to determine daily fluid requirements for patients receiving IV fluids. The daily fluid requirement for a normal person is calculated by adding together the amount of fluid lost in urine and insensible losses. In a normal person, the insensible daily loss is about 700 ml. So, daily fluid requirement = urine output + 700 ml.

DISTRIBUTION OF ELECTROLYTES

The normal electrolyte compositions of each fluid compartment differ markedly, as summarized in Tables 1.3 and 1.4. For example, the ECF compartment contains a high concentration of sodium, chloride, and bicarbonate but only a small quantity of potassium. In contrast,

Table 1.3 The electrolyte concentration of body fluids

Electrolytes	ECF (mEq/L)	ICF (mEq/L)
Sodium	142.00	10.00
Potassium	4.30	150.00
Chloride	104.00	2.00
Bicarbonate	24.00	6.00
Calcium	5.00	0.01
Magnesium	3.00	40.00
Phosphate and sulfate	8.00	15.00

Table 1.4 Major ions in ECF and ICF

	ECF	ICF
Major cation	Sodium	Potassium and magnesium
Major anion	Chloride and bicarbonate	Phosphate, sulfate and protein

the ICF compartment contains a high concentration of potassium, magnesium, phosphate, sulfate, and proteins. Furthermore, as sodium is confined chiefly to the ECF compartment, sodium-containing fluids are distributed throughout the ECF. As a result, sodium-containing fluids expand the volume of both the interstitial and intravascular spaces (the interstitial space expansion is approximately three times as much as the plasma).

UNITS OF MEASUREMENTS

It is important to understand the basic terminology used to measure the concentration and composition of body fluids and their interrelationship.

Ions: An ion is an atom or group of atoms with an electric charge. Ions are divided into anions and cations as shown in Figure 1.3.

Anion: When an ion has a negative electric charge, it is called an anion (i.e., Cl^-, HCO_3^-, phosphate).

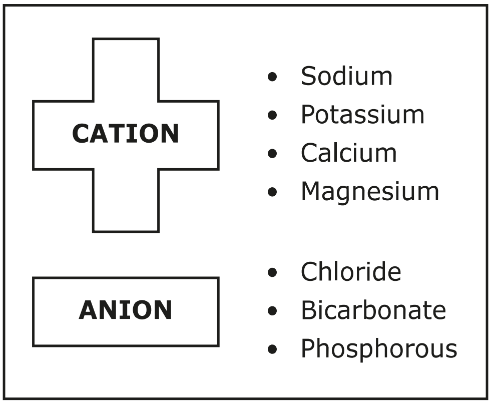


Figure 1.3 Major Cations and Anions.

Cation: When an ion has a positive electric charge, it is called a cation (i.e., Na^+, K^+, Mg^{2+}).

If cation and anion are confusing, here is a simple method to remember.

A**n**ion: **"n"** - negative charge

Ca**t**ion: **"t"** - + positive charge

Different ways by which solute concentrations can be measured are milligram per decilitre (mg/dL), milliequivalent per liter (mEq/L), or milliosmoles per liter or kg (mOsmol/L or mOsmol/kg).

Moles and millimoles

The unit millimole (mmol) is used in practice instead of mole (mol) for convenience as it is smaller and more practical to handle in medical and scientific settings.

$$6.022 \times 10^{23}$$

A mole represents a specific number of particles. One mole of any non-dissociable substance contains approximately 6.022×10^{23} particles. To clarify with an example, consider salt (NaCl). It contains an equal number of atoms: one sodium (Na^+) atom for every chloride (Cl^-) atom, even though they have different atomic weights, with 23 mg for Na^+ and 35.5 mg for Cl^-. If we compare one dozen mangoes to one dozen bananas, they represent the

Table 1.5 Atomic and molecular weights of important substances

Substances	Symbol or formula	Atomic or molecular weight
Calcium	Ca^{2+}	40.1
Carbon	C	12.0
Chloride ion	Cl^-	35.5
Hydrogen ion	H^+	1.0
Magnesium ion	Mg^{2+}	24.3
Oxygen	O	16.0
Phosphorus	P	31.0
Potassium ion	K^+	39.1
Sodium ion	Na^+	23.0
Ammonium	NH_4^+	18.0
Bicarbonate ion	HCO_3^-	61.0
Phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}	95.0
Water	H_2O	18.0

same quantity of fruit, but their weights differ.

Mole: One mole (mol) of any substance is defined as the atomic or molecular weight of that substance in gm.

Similarly, one millimole (mmol) is equals to one-thousandth of a mole or the molecular (or atomic) weight in milligrams.

So to determine the amount of any substance in one mole, we need to know the atomic (molecular) weight of that substance (Table 1.5).

The atomic weight of Na^+ is 23. Thus, 23 mg of Na^+ represents 1 mmol. Therefore, 23 mg of Na^+ in 1 liter of water results in a Na^+ concentration of one mmol/L.

Equivalent and milliequivalent

The equivalent is a relative term; it refers to a mole of ionic charges.

Equivalent: The equivalent weight of an element is its atomic weight in gm multiplied by its valence.

For ions that carry a single charged mole equals an equivalent (i.e., Na^+, K^+, Cl^-, H^+). But if the ion carries a charge that is greater than one, numbers are no longer equal. So, for example, one mole of calcium ion (Ca^{2+}) equals two equivalents.

So, Equivalents = Moles × Valence

A comparison of the normal value of serum electrolytes concentration in mmol/L and mEq/L is shown in Table 1.6.

Molecules must be quantified in moles (e.g., a mole of glucose) because they carry no charge. However, in practice, they are usually measured in mg or gm because of their simplicity and convenience. The following formula can be used to convert mg/dL to mmol/L.

$$\text{mmol/L} = \frac{\text{mg/dL} \times 10}{\text{Atomic Weight}}$$

Ions can be quantified as either moles or equivalents.

Why are the terms "mmol" or "mEq" used instead of "moles" or "equivalents"?

In routine practice, we prefer using "mmol" (millimoles) or "mEq" (milliequivalents) to express concentrations rather

Table 1.6 Normal plasma electrolyte concentrations

Electrolyte	mEq/L	mmol/L
Cations		
Sodium	136 to 145	136 to 145
Potassium	3.5 to 5.0	3.5 to 5.0
Calcium total*	4.5 to 5.6	2.2 to 2.6
Ionized*	2.2 to 2.6	1.05 to 1.3
Magnesium*	1.4 to 1.7	0.70 to 0.85
Anions		
Chloride	96 to 106	96 to 106
Bicarbonate	22 to 26	22 to 26

*Value in mg/dL: The normal values for total calcium and ionized calcium are 8.5-10.5 mg/dL and 4.3-5.3 mg/dL, respectively. The normal value of magnesium is 1.7–2.1 mg/dL.

than "moles" or "equivalents" This preference arises from the extremely low concentrations of most molecules and ions in serum.

In day-to-day practice, we use a millimeter, which is 1/1000 of the meter. Similarly, "mmol" or "mEq" represents 1/1000 of a mole or equivalent. For example, consider the serum potassium value, which might be expressed as 0.004 moles or equivalents per liter. However, converting it to 4 mmol/L or mEq/L provides a more practical, straightforward, and convenient value for everyday use in clinical practice.

The relationship between mEq and mg

Formula to convert mg/dL to mEq/L: To convert from milligrams per deciliter (mg/dL) to milliequivalents per liter (mEq/L), you can use the following formula:

$$\text{mEq/L} = \frac{\text{mg/dL} \times 10 \times \text{Valence}}{\text{Mol. Weight}}$$

Example: If 1 gm of salt (NaCl) is added to 1 liter of water, what will be its concentration in mEq/L?

NaCl 1 gm/L = 1,000 mg/L = 100 mg/dL

Valence of NaCl = 1

Molecular weight = 58.5 (Na^+ mol. wt. 23 and Cl^- mol. wt. 35.5).

$$\text{mEq / L} = \frac{100 \times 10 \times 1}{58.5} = 17.1$$

1 gm NaCl/L = 17.1 mEq/L

So, 1 gm of NaCl contains 17.1 mEq sodium and 17.1 mEq chloride, or the Na^+ concentration of NaCl = 17.1 mEq/gm.

Formula to convert mEq/L to mg/dL: To convert mEq/L to mg/dL, you can use the following formula:

$$\text{mg/dL} = \frac{\text{mEq/L} \times \text{Mol. Weight}}{10 \times \text{Valence}}$$

Example: If 1 liter of NaCl solution contains 154 mEq of NaCl, what is the amount of NaCl in mg/dL?

NaCl mEq/L = 154

Molecular Weight = 58.5 (Na^+ mol. wt. 23 and Cl^- mol. wt. 35.5)

Valence = 1

$$\text{So, mg/dL} = \frac{154 \times 58.5}{10 \times 1} = 900.9$$

So, in a 1-liter solution of NaCl with 154 mEq of NaCl, there is 9009 mg/L of NaCl salt.

When 9009 is divided by 154, the result is 58.5.

Therefore, 100 ml of NaCl solution containing 1 mEq of NaCl has 58.5 mg of salt.

These values, derived from both equations (Na^+ concentration is 17.1 mEq/gm of NaCl, and 1 mEq contains 58.5 mg NaCl), are useful for the calculation and interchangeability of routinely used substances.

Conversion factors helpful in day-to-day practice are summarized in Table 1.7.

Examples of conversion

Find out K^+ concentration in mEq in 10 ml ampoule of 15% potassium chloride (KCl)

10 ml of 15% KCl = 1.5 gm KCl/ampoule

1 gm of KCl contains 13 mEq of K^+ (as per Table 1.7).

So, 1.5 gm KCl = 1.5 × 13 = 19.5 mEq of K^+.

Answer: 10 ml amp. of 15% KCl contains 19.5 mEq of potassium.

Find out Na^+ concentration in mEq in a 25 ml ampoule of 7.5% sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$)

25 ml of 7.5% $NaHCO_3$ = 1.86 gm of $NaHCO_3$ per ampoule

1 gm of $NaHCO_3$ contains 12 mEq of Na^+ (as per Table 1.7).

Table 1.7 Conversion between mEq and mg

Salt	mEq cation or anion/ gm of salt	mg of salt/ mEq
Sodium chloride	17	58
Potassium chloride	13	75
Sodium bicarbonate	12	84
Calcium gluconate	4	224
Calcium chloride	14	73
Magnesium sulfate	8	123

So, 1.86 gm of $NaHCO_3$ = 1.86 × 12 = 22.3 mEq of Na^+.

Answer: A 25 ml ampoule of 7.5% $NaHCO_3$ contains 22.3 mEq of Na^+.

Osmotic pressure and osmolality

Osmotic pressure

Osmotic pressure determines the distribution of water among the different fluid compartments, particularly between the ECF and ICF.

The osmotic pressure generated by a solution is proportional to the number of particles per unit volume of solvent, not to the type, valence, or weight of the particles. To generate osmotic pressure, the solute must be unable to cross the cell membrane.

Osmole (Osm)

It is the unit of measurement of osmotic pressure. One osmole is defined as 1 gm molecular weight (1 mol) of any nondissociable substance (such as glucose) and contains 6.022×10^{23} particles.

Milliosmoles (mOsm)

mOsm is 1/1000 of an osmole. So in relatively diluted fluids in the body, the osmotic pressure is measured in milliosmole per kg of water (mOsm/kg).

An osmole (or mOsm) of a substance, such as glucose which does not dissociate into ions, is the same as a mole (or mmol). However, a mole of salts such as sodium chloride, which dissociates almost completely into sodium and chloride ions, equals 2 osmoles.

Osmolality and osmolarity

These laboratory values reflect the relationship between solute and solvent.

Osmolality

The osmolality of a solution is determined by the amount of solute dissolved in a solvent (i.e., water) measured in weight (kg).

If a solute is dissolved in 1 kg of water (solvent), the concentration of the solution is called osmolality and is expressed as mOsm/kg of the water solvent.

When osmolality is high, the solution is more concentrated, and when osmolality is low solution is diluted.

Osmolarity

The osmolarity of a solution is determined by the amount of solute dissolved in a solvent (i.e., water) measured in volume (liter).

If a solute is dissolved in 1 litre of water (solvent), the concentration of solution is called osmolarity and is expressed as mOsm/L.

Remember

When the solvent is measured in lite**r** - **"r"** - Osmolarity

and when the solvent is measured in Ki**l**ogram - **"l"** - Osmolality

As the temperature can affect the volume of solvent and solute in the solution, it can affect the value of the solution's osmolarity.

So osmolality (mOsm/kg), determined by the solvent's weight, is more accurate than osmolarity. However, the difference between these two values is negligible, and osmolarity is easier to measure, so it is used more commonly.

The osmolality of any solution is measured by measurement of its freezing point.

Plasma osmolality

Plasma osmolality is primarily determined largely by sodium salts, with a lesser contribution from ions, glucose, and urea. Normal plasma osmolality is 285 (275–295) mOsm/kg.

$$\text{Plasma Osmolality} = 2 \times \text{Na}^+ + \frac{\text{Glucose (mg/dL)}}{18} + \frac{\text{BUN (mg/dL)}}{2.8}$$

Effective osmolality

Those solutes determine the effective osmolality of the extracellular fluid (ECF), which does not freely permeate the cell membrane and act to hold water within the ECF.

Lipid-soluble solutes like urea, which can pass through cell membranes, do not affect the difference in osmotic pressure between the ECF and ICF. So, urea which contributes to the calculation of plasma osmolality does not contribute to effective osmolality. Therefore, total osmolality and effective osmolality are different.

$$\text{Effective Osmolality (mOsm / kg)} = 2 \times \text{Na}^+ \text{ (mEq/L)} + \frac{\text{Glucose (mg/dL)}}{18}$$

Under normal circumstances, glucose accounts for only 5 mOsm/kg in effective osmolality. So normally, plasma sodium concentration is the determinant and reflector of the plasma osmolality.

REFERENCES

1. Bradbury MW. Physiology of body fluids and electrolytes. British Journal of Anaesthesia. 1973;45(9):937–944.
2. Bhave G, Neilson EG. Body fluid dynamics: back to the future. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2011;22(12):2166–81.
3. Armstrong LE. Hydration assessment techniques. Nutr Rev. 2005;63(6 Pt 2):S40–54.
4. Hall JE. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 2016; 13th edition, Chapter 25.
5. Shier D, Jackie BJ, Lewis R. Hole's Human Anatomy & Physiology. 2017; 11th edition, Chapter 21.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

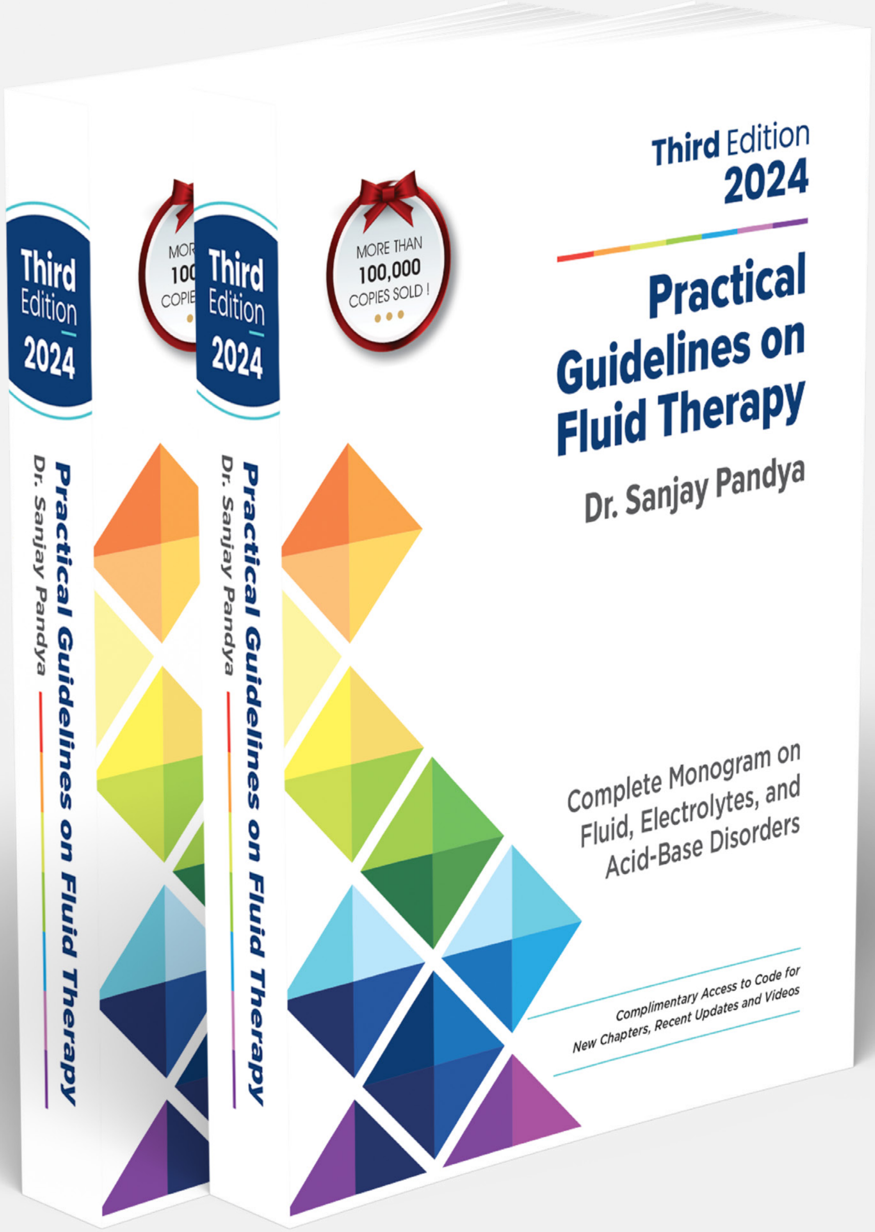
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 2:

Overview of Intravenous Fluids


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

2

Overview of Intravenous Fluids

Basic Principles of Fluid Therapy.... 13
  Indications and contraindications ... 15
  Advantages 15
  Disadvantages................................ 15
  Complications................................ 15
Overview of Composition of IV Fluids .16
Classification of Fluids 18
  Based on composition 18
  Based on osmolality 18
  Crystalloids based on buffers and electrolytes 20
Calculating Drop Rates for Fluid Infusion 20

A significant number of hospitalized patients across various medical specialties require intravenous (IV) fluid therapy. Understanding the fundamental principles is crucial for the safe and effective administration of IV fluids [1]. Inadequate fluid management can exacerbate patient outcomes and prolong hospital stays [2].

To prescribe appropriate fluid therapy, it is essential to consider the following:

- The underlying cause of fluid deficit and the type of electrolyte imbalance present.
- Coexisting medical conditions (e.g., diabetes, hypertension, ischemic heart disease, renal or hepatic disorders).
- Clinical status, including factors like age, hydration level, vital signs, urine output, etc.

To ensure rational and adequate fluid therapy, it is imperative to address the following questions:

- When is IV fluid administration appropriate, and when should it be avoided?
- Which type of fluid should be infused, and why?
- How much fluid should be administered, and what is the calculation method?
- At what rate should IV fluid be infused, and how is the drop rate calculated?
- What are the contraindications for various types of IV fluids, and what are the reasons behind them?
- How do you select IV fluids to correct electrolyte imbalances?
- When and how should specific fluids be used?

Following a comprehensive evaluation, the necessary fluid therapy is planned and prescribed.

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF FLUID THERAPY

As a principle, the oral route is always preferred over the IV route. But IV fluid

Table 2.1 Composition of common IV solutions

	Dext.*	Calories	Na$^+$	K$^+$	Cl$^-$	Acet.	Lact.	NH$_4$	Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	HPO$_4$	Gluc.	Citr.	Osm.	SID
	gm/L	kcals/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mEq/L	mOsm/L	mEq/L
5% dextrose	50	170	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	252	0
10% dextrose	100	340	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	505	0
0.45% saline	-	-	77	-	77	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	154	0
D5W, 0.45% saline	50	170	77	-	77	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	406	0
Normal (0.9%) saline	-	-	154	-	154	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	308	0
Dextrose saline	50	170	154	-	154	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	560	0
Ringer's lactate	-	-	130	4.0	109	-	28	-	3.0	-	-	-	-	273	28
Ringer's acetate	-	-	130	5.0	112	27	-	-	3.0	2.0	-	-	-	276	27
PlasmaLyte	-	-	140	5.0	98	27	-	-	-	3.0	-	23	-	295	50
Sterofundin	-	-	145	4.0	127	24	-	-	5.0	2.0	-	-	-	309	29
Isolyte-G	50	170	63	17	150	-	-	70	-	-	-	-	-	578	NA
Isolyte-M	50	170	37	35	37	20	-	-	-	-	15	-	-	415	NA
Isolyte-P	50	170	25	20	24	23	-	-	-	3.0	3.0	-	-	348	NA
Isolyte-E	50	170	140	10	103	47	-	-	5.0	3.0	-	-	8.0	595	57
Isolyte-S	-	-	141	5.0	98	27	-	-	5.0	3.0	1.0	23	-	295	NA

Dext.: Dextrose	Cl$^-$: Chloride	NH$_4$: Ammonium	HPO4: Phosphate	SID: Strong ion difference
Na$^+$: Sodium	Acet.: Acetate	Ca^{2+}: Calcium	Citr.: Citrate	Gluc.: Gluconate
K$^+$: Potassium	Lact.: Lactate	Mg^{2+}: Magnesium	Osm.: Osmolality	

*Dextrose concentration is in gms/L

therapy has great importance and is life-saving in various clinical problems.

The basic principles of IV fluid therapy are summarized.

Indications

Fluid therapy is widely used for resuscitation, for proving the maintenance need of fluids, replacing and restoring fluids and electrolytes deficits, as a drug carrier, and for nutrition [3]. The most common and important indications for fluid administration includes:

1. For resuscitation in moderate to severe dehydration and shock, where urgent and rapid fluid replacement is needed.
2. To provide maintenance need in conditions when oral intake is not possible or is insufficient (i.e., coma, anesthesia, surgery).
3. To restore or replace fluid losses (e.g., severe vomiting, diarrhea, fever, burns, etc.), third space fluid loss (e.g., sepsis, burns, ascites, pancreatitis, or ileus), or blood losses (e.g., trauma or surgery).
4. To correct electrolytes and acid-base disorders.
5. To correct severe hypoglycemia, where IV 25% dextrose is life-saving.
6. As a vehicle for various IV medications (e.g., antibiotics, chemotherapeutic agents, insulin, vasopressor agents, etc.).
7. To provide parenteral nutrition.
8. Treatment of critical problems: Shock, anaphylaxis, severe asthma, cardiac arrest, forced diuresis in drug overdose, poisoning, etc.
9. To monitor hemodynamic functions and administer diagnostic reagents.

Contraindications

1. IV fluid should be avoided if the patient can take oral fluid.
2. Preferable to avoid IV fluid in a patient with congestive heart failure or volume overload.

Advantages

1. A perfect, controlled, and predictable way of fluid administration.
2. Immediate response is achieved through direct infusion into the intravascular compartment.
3. Rapid correction of life-threatening fluid and electrolyte disturbances.

Disadvantages

1. More expensive and needs strict asepsis.
2. Feasible only in hospitalized patients under supervision.
3. Improper selection of the type of fluid used can lead to serious problems.
4. The inappropriate volume and rate of infusion of fluid can be life-threatening.
5. The incorrect administration technique can lead to complications.

Complications

1. **Local:** Haematoma, infiltration, and infusion phlebitis.
2. **Systemic:** Circulation overload with rapid or large volume infusion, especially in patients with cardiac problems. Rigors, air embolism, and septicemia.
3. **Others:** Fluid contamination, fungus in IV fluids, mixing of incompatible drugs, an incorrect infusion technique, IV set or IV catheter-related problems, and human error-related problems.

OVERVIEW OF COMPOSITION OF IV FLUIDS

It is important to know the compositions of different commercially available IV fluids (Table 2.1) when making an appropriate choice for specific situations.

Bird's eye view of IV fluid characteristics

Before discussing the detailed composition and pharmacology of IV fluids, let's first assess and clarify the fundamental concept of IV fluids.

The physiological IV fluids

Balanced crystalloids such as Ringer's lactate (RL), PlasmaLyte, and Sterofundin are physiological IV fluids. Among these, RL is the most commonly used balanced crystalloid, with its electrolyte contents similar to the composition of the extracellular fluid (ECF) (Na$^+$-130 mEq/L, K$^+$-4 mEq/L, Cl$^-$109 mEq/L, lactate (bicarbonate) 28 mEq/L, and Ca^{2+}-3 mEq/L).

Daily normal maintenance requirement and preventing starvation ketosis in adults

Understanding the daily normal maintenance requirements for water, sodium, potassium, and the amount of dextrose needed to prevent starvation ketosis in adults is essential. These details are summarized in Table 2.2 [4].

Sodium content in various IV fluids

Understanding the sodium content in commonly used IV fluids is crucial. Among these fluids, normal saline (NS) and dextrose saline (D5NS) contain the maximum amount of sodium, with 154 mEq/L or 9 gm of NaCl per liter. (Note: 1 gm of NaCl contains 17.1 mEq Na$^+$). For detailed information on the sodium content of various IV fluids, refer to Table 2.3.

Chloride content in various IV fluids

Determining the chloride content in commonly used IV fluids is important. Among these fluids, normal saline, D5NS, and Isolyte-G all contain the maximum chloride concentration at 154 mEq/L.

Potassium content in various IV fluids

Understanding the potassium content in different IV fluids is essential. The potassium content of various IV fluids is summarized in Table 2.4.

It's crucial to note that Isolyte-M has the highest potassium content, with 35 mEq/L. In contrast, balanced crystalloids such as RL, PlasmaLyte, and Sterofundin contain only 4–5 mEq/L of potassium.

Table 2.2 Maintenance requirement of water, sodium, potassium and dextrose

	Water	Sodium	Potassium	Dextrose
Normal requirement	25–30 mL/kg/day	1 mEq/kg/day	1 mEq/kg/day	100 gm/day to prevent starvation ketosis

Table 2.3 Sodium concentration of IV fluids

IV Solutions	NS D5NS	Sterofundin	Plasma-Lyte	RL	0.45% NaCl	Isolyte-G	Isolyte-M	Isolyte-P	3% NaCl
Sodium mEq/L	154.0	145.0	140.0	130.0	77.0	63.0	37.0	25.0	513.0

Table 2.4 Potassium concentration of IV fluids

IV solutions	Isolyte-M	Isolyte-P	Isolyte-G	PlasmaLyte	RL and sterofundin	Inj. potassium chloride 15%
Potassium (mEq/L)	35.0	20.0	17.0	5.0	4.0	20 mEq/10 ml

Magnesium content in various IV fluids

IV fluids that contain magnesium include Ringer's acetate and Sterofundin, which contain 2 mEq/L, and solutions like PlasmaLyte, Isolyte-P, Isolyte-E, and Isolyte-S, which contain 3 mEq/L.

Calcium content in various IV fluids

IV fluids that contain calcium include Ringer's lactate and Ringer's acetate, which contain 2 mEq/L, while Sterofundin, Isolyte-E, and Isolyte-S contain 5 mEq/L.

Phosphate content in various IV fluids

Phosphate-containing IV fluids include Isolyte-M, which contains 15 mEq/L, and Isolyte-P, which contains 3 mEq/L.

Correction of acidosis with IV fluids

Understanding which IV fluids can directly correct acidosis and its mechanism is essential. Some IV fluids contain bicarbonate precursors, such as lactate and acetate [5]. Ringer's lactate, for example, contains 28 mEq/L of lactate, which is converted into bicarbonate in the liver, effectively correcting metabolic acidosis. Additionally, fluids like PlasmaLyte, Sterofundin, Isolyte-P, and Isolyte-M contain acetate (PlasmaLyte = 27 mEq/L, Sterofundin = 24, Isolyte-P = 23, and Isolyte-M = 20 mEq/L). Acetate also undergoes conversion into bicarbonate, both in the liver and peripheral tissues, aiding in the correction of metabolic acidosis.

Correction of metabolic alkalosis with IV fluids

Understanding which IV fluids can directly correct metabolic alkalosis is important. Isolyte-G stands out as the only IV fluid capable of directly addressing metabolic alkalosis. This effect is achieved through the presence of ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl = 70 mEq/L) in Isolyte-G, which undergoes conversion into H^+ ions and urea in the liver. The addition of H^+ ions effectively corrects the alkalosis.

Cautious use of IV fluids in renal failure

It is essential to exercise caution when using certain IV fluids in patients with renal failure. IV fluids with high sodium content, such as normal saline, dextrose saline (154 mEq/L sodium or 9 gm of salt per liter), and Ringer's lactate (130 mEq/L or approximately 7 gm of salt per liter), are administered with care due to their potential risk of fluid overload.

Furthermore, IV fluids containing a high potassium content, such as Isolyte-M, Isolyte-P, and Isolyte-G, should also be used cautiously in renal failure patients because of the potential risk of hyperkalemia.

Additionally, it's important to note that ammonium chloride in Isolyte-G undergoes conversion into hydrogen ions and urea, which can potentially exacerbate uremic acidosis, further emphasizing the need for caution when administering this fluid to individuals with renal issues.

Glucose-free IV fluids

It's important to note that normal saline, Ringer’s lactate, PlasmaLyte, and Sterofundin do not contain glucose. Therefore, they can be administered without the risk of worsening hyperglycemia.

Sodium and chloride free IV fluids

Among commonly used IV fluids, 5%,

10%, and 20%-dextrose are the only fluids that do not contain sodium and chloride. On the other hand, fluids like Isolyte-M and Isolyte-P have relatively low sodium and chloride content.

Potassium-free IV fluids

IV fluids such as normal saline, dextrose saline (D5NS), and 5%, 10%, and 20%-dextrose do not contain potassium.

CLASSIFICATION OF FLUIDS

The solutions used in intravenous fluid therapy are classified into the following based on the composition of fluids, osmolality, presence of buffers (in balanced solutions), and electrolytes.

A. Classification based on composition

The solutions used in intravenous fluid therapy are classified into three groups based on composition:

1. Crystalloids
2. Colloids
3. Whole blood and blood products

1. Crystalloids

Crystalloids are solutions in sterile water which contain varying concentrations of electrolytes and dextrose.

2. Colloids

Colloids are a solution containing water, electrolytes, and plasma-derived protein or semi-synthetic starch molecules that remain uniformly distributed and do not readily cross semi-permeable membranes. Colloids are frequently called volume expanders or plasma expanders. Commonly used Colloids include albumin, hydroxyethyl starch, gelatine, and dextran.

B. Classification of crystalloids based on osmolality

Crystalloids are classified into three categories according to their osmolality (Table 2.5).

1. Isotonic crystalloids

A crystalloid solution that has the same concentration of electrolytes as the body plasma. Isotonic fluids have an osmolality of 270–310 mOsm/L. When an isotonic crystalloid is administered, the infused isotonic solution remains within the extracellular fluid compartment (distributed between the intravascular and interstitial spaces), and therefore, isotonic IV fluids expand the intravascular compartment more effectively than hypotonic IV fluids [3]. Isotonic fluids don’t move into cells, and thus cells neither swell nor shrink with the isotonic fluid infusion.

Examples of isotonic solutions with their respective osmolarity values include 0.9% sodium chloride (308 mOsm/L), Ringer's lactate (273 mOsm/L), Ringer's acetate (276 mOsm/L), PlasmaLyte (295 mOsm/L), and Sterofundin (309 mOsm/L).

2. Hypotonic crystalloids

Crystalloid solutions with a lower concentration of electrolytes than body plasma are hypotonic fluids. Hypotonic fluids have an osmolality of less than 270 mOsm/L (lower than serum osmolarity). When hypotonic crystalloid is administered, the fluid will quickly move from the intravascular space into the cells and interstitial spaces. These solutions will hydrate cells causing them to swell. Examples of hypotonic solutions are 0.45% sodium chloride, 0.33% sodium chloride, 5% dextrose, 10% dextrose and D5W + 0.45% NaCl.

Table 2.5 Classification of crystalloid solutions according to osmolality

Characteristics	Isotonic solutions		Hypotonic solutions		Hypertonic solutions	
Osmolality (mOsm/L)	270–310		Lesser than 270		Greater than 310	
Distribution and effect on fluid compartment	Remains within ECF and expands ECF compartment		Fluid quickly moves from the intravascular space into the cells		Pull water from the cells into the intravascular space	
Effect on cell size	No effect		Swollen		Shrink	
Examples	Solutions	Osmolality mOsm/L	Solutions	Osmolality mOsm/L	Solutions	Osmolality mOsm/L
Normal serum osmolality is 275–295 mOsm/kg	0.9% NaCl	308	0.45% NaCl	154	3% NaCl	1026
	Ringer's lactate	273	0.33% NaCl	103	D5W + 0.9% NaCl	560
	PlasmaLyte	290	-	-	-	-

The 5% dextrose solution, with an osmolality of 252 mOsm/L, is often considered near isotonic in the bag. However, once it enters the body, dextrose is rapidly metabolized, leaving behind pure water, which becomes hypotonic. Similarly, the 10% dextrose solution has an osmolality of 505 mOsm/L in vitro, but it becomes pure hypotonic water in vivo with zero osmolality.

Additionally, D5W + 0.45% NaCl is hypertonic in the bag, with an osmolality of 406 mOsm/L. Nevertheless, once administered in the body, dextrose is rapidly metabolized, leaving behind a solution containing only 0.45% NaCl, which offers an osmolality of just 154 mOsm/L, making it hypotonic. Therefore, when using the above-mentioned IV fluids, selection should be based on the expected in vivo osmolality rather than what is mentioned on the package label [6].

Use hypotonic fluid with caution. As hypotonic fluid quickly moves from the intravascular space into the cells, vascular bed volume decrease. Depletion of intravascular fluid volume can exacerbate preexisting hypovolemia and hypotension and carries the risk of cardiovascular collapse. As hypotonic fluid can cause or exacerbate cerebral edema, avoid it in patients who are at risk for increased intracranial pressure (stroke, head injury, or neurosurgery) [7].

3. Hypertonic crystalloids

Crystalloid solutions with a higher concentration of electrolytes than body plasma are considered hypertonic fluids, which have an osmolarity of more than 310 mOsm/L or higher. Among the most widely used hypertonic solutions are 3% sodium chloride and 5% dextrose in 0.9% saline.

When hypertonic crystalloid solutions are administered, they draw water from the cells into the intravascular space, causing the cells to shrink and increasing extracellular fluid volume. This characteristic makes 3% sodium chloride a mainstay of treatment for cerebral edema since it can shrink brain cell size without the risk of hypotension, due to its ability to expand the extracellular fluid volume.

5% dextrose in 0.9% saline is not used for the treatment of cerebral edema because, in vivo, after the metabolism of glucose, it becomes similar to normal saline, which is an isotonic fluid.

As hypertonic fluid increases extracellular fluid volume, it carries the risk of volume overload and pulmonary edema and, therefore, should be avoided in cardiac or renal patients with circulatory overload. As hypertonic fluid causes cell shrinkage, it should be avoided in conditions causing cellular dehydration.

C. Classification of crystalloids based on buffers and electrolytes

For proper selection of crystalloids, we need to know the composition, pharmacological basis, important indications, and contraindications of commonly used IV fluids. The following crystalloids are discussed here.

1. **Dextrose and sodium chloride solutions**

   5% dextrose, normal saline, dextrose saline, half normal saline, and half normal saline with dextrose.

2. **Balanced crystalloids**

   Ringer’s lactate, Ringer's acetate, PlasmaLyte, and Sterofundin.

3. **Multiple electrolyte solutions**

   Isolyte-G, Isolyte-M, Isolyte-P, Isolyte-E and Isolyte-S.

METHODS FOR CALCULATING DROP RATES PER MINUTE FOR FLUID INFUSION

In most non-ICU setups, electronic pump systems are unavailable, and fluids are administered via either macrodrip tubing (conventional, routine IV sets) or microdrip tubings. In such scenarios, manual calculation is necessary to determine the volume of fluid administered within a given time frame at required rates of drops per minute. It's essential to verify the drop factor of the administration set, which is used to ensure accurate fluid delivery during infusion therapy. Calculations differ based on either macrodrip tubing, which delivers larger-sized drops, or microdrip tubing, which provides smaller-sized drops.

A. Calculation for macro drip tubing

Commercially available macro drip tubing delivers larger drops, with the specific drop factor varying depending on the manufacturer's location and practices worldwide. Each milliliter of fluid administered through macro drip tubing typically delivers 10, 15, or 20 drops of fluid, known as the administration set drop factor (drops/mL).

- A drop factor of 10 drops/mL means that 10 drops of fluid will equal one milliliter.
- A drop factor of 15 drops/mL means that 15 drops of fluid will equal one milliliter.
- A drop factor of 20 drops/mL means that 20 drops of fluid will equal one milliliter.

The method used to calculate macro drop rates per minute for fluid infusion:

Step 1: First, convert the total volume of fluid to be delivered over a given time period into volume in an hour.

Volume/hour = Total Volume of Fluid (ml) / Duration of Time (hour)

Step 2: Convert the volume of fluid to be delivered in an hour into the volume given in a minute.

Volume/min = Total Volume of Fluid (ml) / 60

Step 3: Convert the volume of fluid to be delivered in a minute into the number of macro drops to be delivered in a minute.

Macro Drops/min = Total Volume of Fluid (ml) × Drop Factor of Macro Drip Tubing

Example: A patient needs 600 mL of intravenous fluids over 5 hours using macrodrip tubing with a drop factor of 15 drops/mL. Calculate the macro drop rates per minute.

- Volume/hour = 600 ml/5 hours = 120 ml/hour
- Volume/min = 120 ml/60 min = 2 ml/min
- Macro drops/min = 2 ml × 15 = 30 macro drop rates per min

Simple formulas for macro drip tubing with a drop factor of 15 drops/mL: A simple, practical, and user-friendly method for roughly calculating drop rates when macro drip tubing with a drop factor of 15 drops/mL is used to infuse IV fluids is summarized below.

Rule of ten: Multiply the volume of IV fluid to be delivered in liters over 24 hours by ten to obtain the drop rate per minute.

IV Fluid in Liters/24 hours × 10 =
Macro Drop Rate/min

- 2.0 liters in 24 hours = 2.0 × 10 = 20 macro drops/min
- 3.5 liters in 24 hours = 3.5 × 10 = 35 macro drops/min
- Calculation for 1 liter in 8 hours = 3.0 liters in 24 hours = 3.0 × 10 = 30 macro drops/min
- Calculation for 1 liter in 6 hours = 4.0 liters in 24 hours = 4.0 × 10 = 40 macro drops/min

Rule of four: Divide the volume of fluid (in ml) to be infused in one hour by four to obtain the macro drop rate per minute.

Volume in ml/hour ÷ 4 =
Macro drop rate/min

- 60 ml/hour = 60 ÷ 4 = 15 drops/min
- 200 ml/hour = 200 ÷ 4 = 50 drops/min

B. Calculation for micro drip tubing

Commercially available micro drip tubing delivers small-sized drops, with typically 1 mL providing 60 micro drops.

The formula to calculate micro drop rates per minute is simple.

Volume in ml/hour =
Number of Micro drops/min

- 30 ml/hour = 30 Micro drops/min
- 45 ml/hour = 45 Micro drops/min

REFERENCES

1. Floss K, Borthwick M, Clark C. Intravenous fluid therapy – Background and principles. Pharmaceutical Journal Sept, 1 2008.
2. Hilton AK, Pellegrino VA, Scheinkestel CD. Avoiding common problems associated with intravenous fluid therapy. Med J Aust. 2008;189(9):509–13.
3. Hoorn EJ. Intravenous fluids: balancing solutions. J Nephrol. 2017;30(4):485–492.
4. Intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence, 2013 (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg174).
5. Ergin B, Kapucu A, Guerci P, et al. The role of bicarbonate precursors in balanced fluids during haemorrhagic shock with and without compromised liver function. Br J Anaesth. 2016;117:521–528.
6. Mertzlufft F, Brettner F, Crystal GJ, et al. Intravenous fluids: issues warranting concern. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2022;39(4):394–396.
7. van der Jagt M. Fluid management of the neurological patient: a concise review. Crit Care. 2016;20(1):126.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

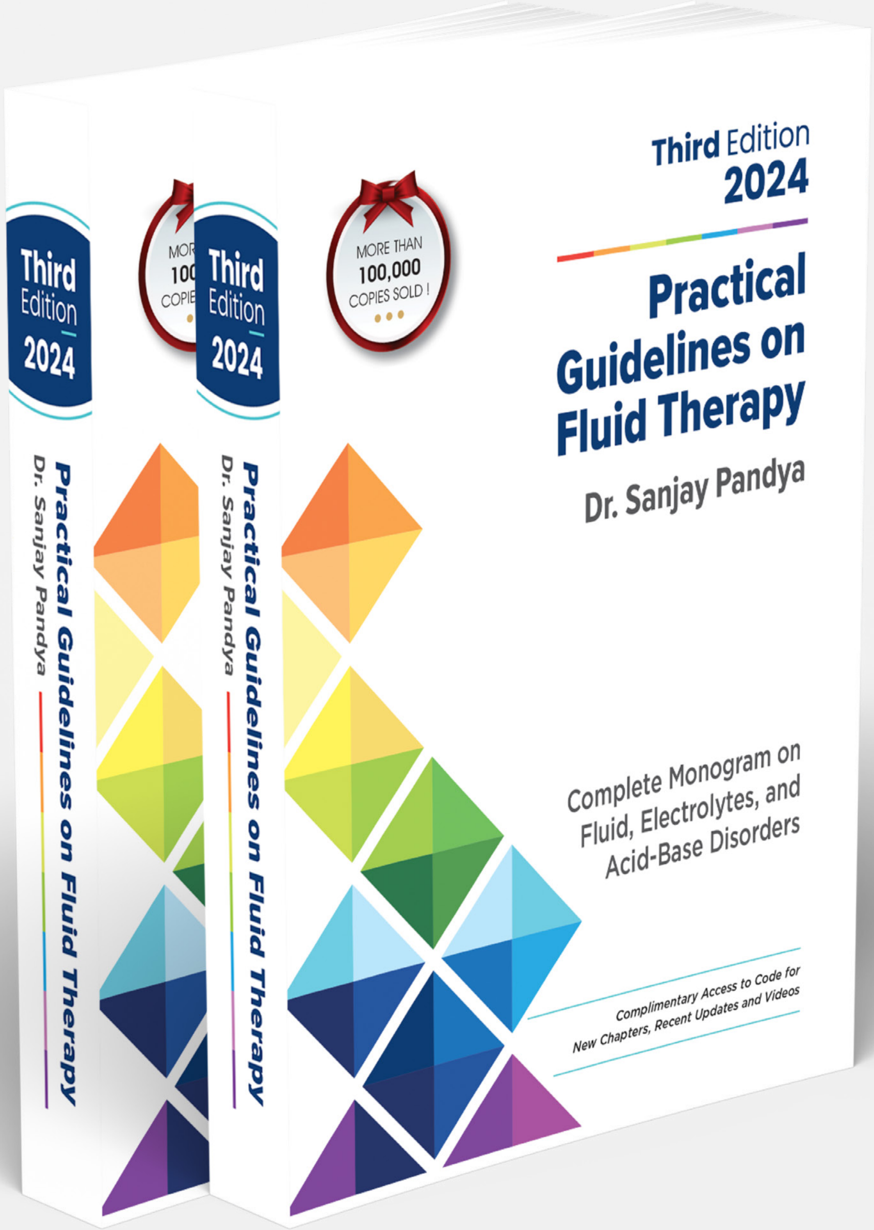
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 3:

Dextrose and Sodium Chloride Solutions


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

3 Dextrose and Sodium Chloride Solutions

5% Dextrose 22
Composition 22
Pharmacological basis 22
Indications 23
Contraindications........................... 24
Precautions 24
Rate of administration 24
Normal Saline.................................... 25
Composition 25
Pharmacological basis 25
Indications 25
Contraindications and precautions.. 26
Dextrose Saline................................ 27
Composition 27
Pharmacological basis 27
Indications 27
Precautions 27
Half Normal Saline............................ 28
Composition 28
Pharmacological basis 28
Indications 28
Contraindications........................... 29
Half Normal Saline with Dextrose 29
Composition 29
Pharmacological basis 29
Indications 29

Crystalloids are solutions in sterile water which contain varying concentrations of electrolytes and dextrose. Dextrose and sodium chloride containing crystalloid solutions are discussed (Summarized in Table 3.1).

5% DEXTROSE (D5W)

Composition

One liter of fluid contains:

Dextrose	50 gm
Osmolality	252 mOsm/L
Caloric value	170 kcal/L
pH	4.3 (3.2 to 6.5)

Each 100 ml contains: Hydrous Dextrose USP 5 gm

Pharmacological basis

5% dextrose (usually abbreviated as D5W) provides free water with glucose without electrolytes. D5W is selected when there is a need for water but not electrolytes.

When a patient requires pure water, we administer intravenous 5% dextrose. Intravenous administration of free water is avoided due to its potential to cause hemolysis of red blood cells. However, the addition of dextrose renders the fluid near isotonic (252 mOsm/L) and does not result in hemolysis within the body.

5% dextrose packed in the bag is an isotonic solution, but once infused becomes a hypotonic solution in the body as dextrose is consumed rapidly, and the remaining plain water is hypotonic [1].

Want to read more?
Get Printed Version
Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Sweeney RM, McKendry RA, Bedi A. Perioperative intravenous fluid therapy for adults. Ulster Med J 2013;82(3):171–178.
2. Asim M, M Alkadi MM, Asim H, et al. Dehydration and volume depletion: how to handle the misconceptions. World J Nephrol. 2019;8(1):23–32.
3. Popescu M. Albumin therapy in critically ill patients. Cleveland clinic pharmacotherapy Update 2009; Volume XII, No. V.
4. Zornow MH, Prough DS. Fluid management in patients with traumatic brain injury. New Horiz. 1995;3(3):488–98.
5. Ali Z, Prabhakar H. Fluid management during neurosurgical procedures. J NeuroanaesthesiolCrit Care 2016;3:S35–S40.
6. Jauch EC, Saver JL, Adams Jr HP, et al. Guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemicstroke: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American HeartAssociation/American Stroke Association. Stroke. 2013;44(3):870–947.
7. National Clinical Guideline Centre (UK). Intravenous fluid therapy: Intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital [Internet]. London: Royal College of Physicians (UK); 2013 Dec. (NICE Clinical Guidelines, No. 174.) 7, Intravenous Fluid Therapy for Fluid Resuscitation. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK333097/.
8. Ryden SE, Oberman HA. Compatibility of common intravenous solutions with CPD blood. Transfusion. 1975;15(3):250–5.
9. Gahart BL, Nazareno AR, Ortega M. Gahart's 2019 Intravenous Medications: A handbook for nurses and health professionals. 2019 35thEdition.
10. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation Fluids. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:1243–51.
11. Yartsev A. Response to 1L of Hartmann's compound sodium lactate. Deranged physiology June 25, 2015 (https://derangedphysiology.com/main/core-topics-intensive-care/manipulation-fluids-and-electrolytes/Chapter%202.3.4/response-1l-hartmanns-compound-sodium-lactate).
12. Semler MW, Rice TW. Saline is not the first choice for crystalloid resuscitation fluids. Crit Care Med. 2016;44(8):1541–4.
13. Hoorn EJ. Intravenous fluids: balancing solutions. J Nephrol 2017;30:485–492.
14. Lobo DN, Awad S. Should chloride-rich crystalloids remain the mainstay of fluid resuscitation to prevent "pre-renal" acute kidney injury? con. Kidney International. 2014;86(6):1096–1105.
15. Li H, Sun SR, Yap JQ, et al. 0.9% saline is neither normal nor physiological. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B. 2016;17(3):181–187.
16. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Glassford N, et al. Chloride-liberal vs. Chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration and acute kidney injury: an extended analysis. Intensive Care Med 2015;41:257–64
17. Nickson C. Chloride in critical illness. LITFL. reviewed and revised 21 March 2017 https://litfl.com/chloride-in-critical-illness/ Accessed on 12 May 2019.
18. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. Crit Care Med 2017;45(3):486–552.
19. Sahay M, Sahay R. Hyponatremia: A practical approach. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2014;18(6):760–771.
20. Finfer S, Bellomo R, Boyce N, et al. A comparison of albumin and saline for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit. (SAFE Study) N Engl J Med 2004;350:2247–56.
21. Haddad SH, Arabi YM. Critical care management of severe traumatic brain injury in adults. scandinavian journal of trauma, resuscitation and emergency medicine. 2012;20:12.
22. Ertmer C, Van Aken H. Fluid therapy in patients with brain injury: what does physiology tell us? Crit Care. 2014;18(2):119.
23. Feld LG, Neuspiel DR, Foster BA, et al. Clinical

practice guideline: maintenance intravenous fluids in children. Pediatrics 2018;142(6):e20183083.

24. Wright C. Perioperative Intravenous Fluids prescription and monitoring in children 3 months to 16 years. NHSClinical Guideline. 2017.
25. Andersen C, Afshari A. Impact of perioperative hyponatremia in children: a narrative review. World J Crit Care Med. 2014;3(4):95–101.
26. Gosmanov AR, Gosmanova EO, Dillard-Cannon E. Management of adult diabetic ketoacidosis. diabetes, metabolic syndrome and obesity: targets and therapy. 2014;7:255–64.
27. Ding X, Cheng Z, Qian Q. Intravenous fluids and acute kidney injury. Blood Purif 2017;43:163–172.
28. Khajavi MR, Etezadi F, Moharari RS, et al. Effects of normal saline vs. lactated ringer's during renal transplantation. Ren Fail. 2008;30(5):535–9.
29. Farkas, J. Myth-busting: lactated ringers is safe in hyperkalemia, and is superior to NS. PulmCrit.org (EMCrit) 2014 (https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/myth-busting-lactated-ringers-is-safe-in-hyperkalemia-and-is-superior-to-ns/).
30. Weinberg L, Harris L, Bellomo R, et al. Effects of intraoperative and early postoperative normal saline or PlasmaLyte148® on hyperkalaemia in deceased donor renal transplantation: a double-blind randomized trial. Br J Anaesth. 2017;119(4):606–615.
31. McGuire LC, Cruickshank AM, Munro PT. Alcoholic ketoacidosis. Emerg Med J. 2006;23(6):417–20.
32. Bowden SA, Henry R. Pediatricadrenal insufficiency: diagnosis, management, and new therapies. International Journal of Pediatrics Volume 2018;110(20):1504–1516.
33. Sterns RH, Emmett M, Forman JP. Maintenance and replacement fluid therapy in adults. UptoDate (accessed 19.05.2019).
34. Reynolds RM, Padfield PL, Seckl JR. Disorders of sodium balance. BMJ. 2006;332:702.
35. Anigilaje EA. Management of diarrhoeal dehydration in childhood: a review for clinicians in developing countries. Frontiers in Pediatrics 2018;6:28.
36. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(7):1335–43.
37. Basnet S, Venepalli PK, Andoh J, et al. Effect of normal saline and half normal saline on serum electrolytes during recovery phase of diabetic ketoacidosis. J Intensive Care Med. 2014;29(1):38–42.
38. Goguen J, Gilbert J. Hyperglycemicemergencies in adults. 2018 clinical practice guidelines. Diabetes Canada clinical practice guidelines expert committee. Can J Diabetes 2018;42:S109–S114.
39. Jivan D. Management of diabetic ketoacidosis, Journal of Endocrinology, Metabolism and Diabetes of South Africa 2011;16(1):10–14.
40. Perilli G, Saraceni C, Daniels MN, et al. Diabetic ketoacidosis: a review and update. CurrEmerg Hosp Med Rep 2013;1:10–17.
41. Hirsh I, Emmett M, Nathan DM, et al. Diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state in adults: treatment. UptoDate (accessed 19.05.2019).
42. Kitabchi A, Wall BM. Management of diabetic ketoacidosis. Am Fam Physician. 1999;60(2):455–464.
43. Siparsky N, Cochran A, Sterns RH. Overview of postoperative fluid therapy in adults. UptoDate (accessed 19.05.2019).

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

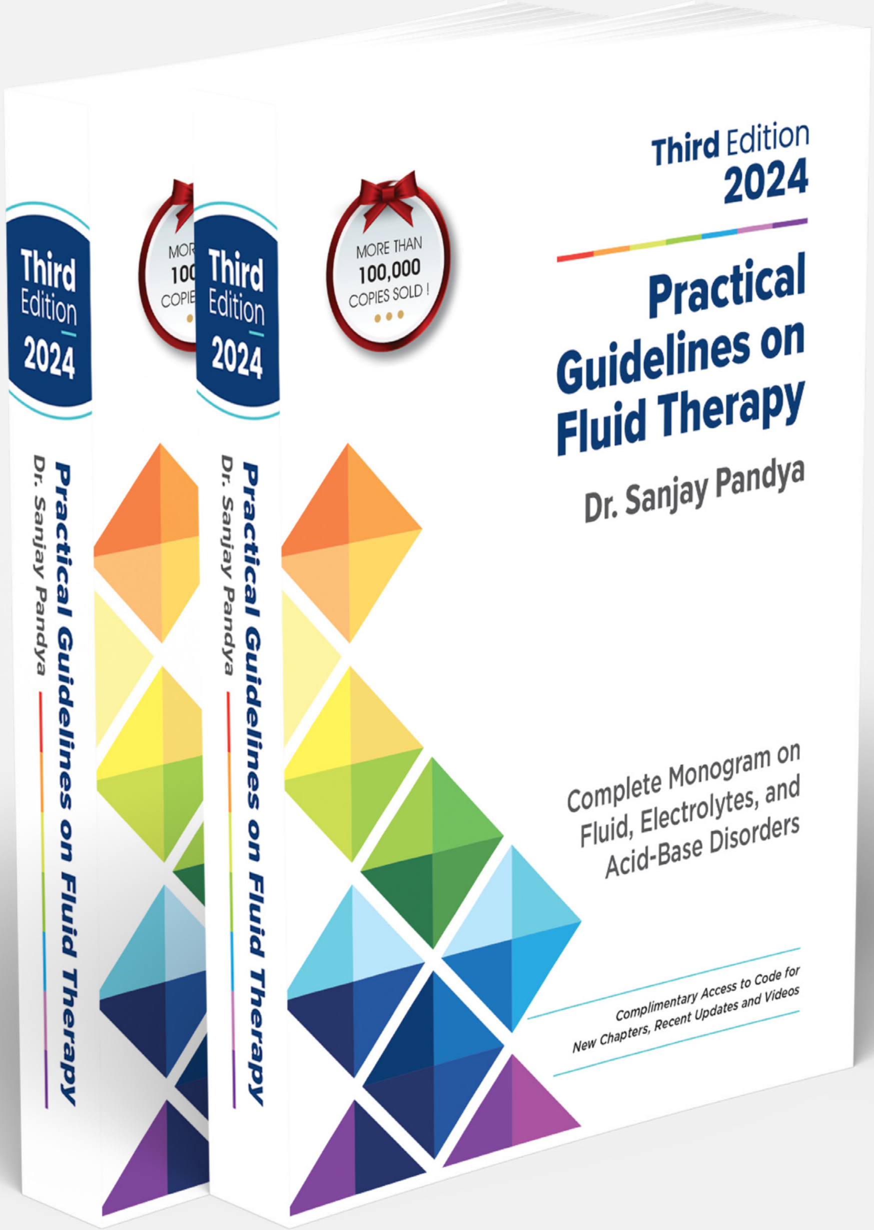
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 4:

Balanced and Multi-electrolyte Solutions


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

4

Balanced and Multi-electrolyte Solutions

Ringer's Lactate................................ 32
  Composition 33
  Pharmacological basis 33
  Indications 34
  Contraindications and precautions.. 35
What is Ringer's Solution?............... 36
What is Hartmann's Solution? 36
Newer Balanced Crystalloid Solutions 36
What is Ringer's Acetate Solution? .. 37
PlasmaLyte Solution 37
  Composition 37
  Pharmacological basis 38
  Indications 38
  Contraindications and precautions.. 39
Sterofundin 39
  Composition 39
  Pharmacological basis 40
  Indications 40
  Contraindications and precautions.. 40
Isolyte-G 40
  Composition 40
  Pharmacological basis 40
  Indications 40
  Contraindications........................... 41
Isolyte-M 41
  Composition 41
  Pharmacological basis 41
  Indications 42
  Contraindications........................... 42
Isolyte-P... 42
  Composition 42
  Pharmacological basis 42
  Indications 43
  Contraindications........................... 43

Balanced and a few multi-electrolyte solutions are discussed in this chapter. Crystalloids with a composition closely resembling extracellular fluid have been termed 'balanced' or 'physiological' solutions [1, 2]. Balanced crystalloids are also distributed throughout the extracellular fluid (ECF) and are, therefore, of similar efficacy to normal saline (0.9% NaCl) in terms of plasma volume expansion.

Balanced crystalloids contain somewhat less sodium and significantly less chloride and therefore have advantages over normal saline solution when used for resuscitation or routine maintenance. Due to the instability of bicarbonate-containing solutions in plastic containers, alternative buffers such as lactate, acetate, gluconate, and malate are used to provide bicarbonate in balanced crystalloids [3]. Ringer's lactate is the most widely used balanced crystalloid.

RINGER'S LACTATE (RL)

Ringer's lactate solution is also known as Hartmann's solution, sodium lactate solution, or lactated Ringer's solution (LR).

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Guidet B, Soni N, Della Rocca G, et al. A balanced view of balanced solutions. Crit Care 2010;14:325.
2. Hoorn JE. Intravenous fluids: balancing solutions. J Nephrol 2017;30:485–492.
3. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation fluids. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(13):1243–51.
4. Alex Yartsev. Response to 1L of Hartmann's compound sodium lactate. Deranged Physiology June 25, 2015.https://derangedphysiology.com/main/core-topics-intensive-care/manipulation-fluids-and-electrolytes/Chapter%202.3.4/response-1l-hartmanns-compound-sodium-lactate.
5. Gladden LB. Lactate metabolism: A new paradigm for the third millennium. J. Physiol. 2004;558:5–30.
6. Palevsky PM. Intravenous fluids. CJASN 2018;13(12):1912–1914.
7. Farkas J. Three myths about plasmalyte, normosol and LR. PulmCrit January 26, 2015. https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/three-myths-about-plasmalyte-normosol-and-lr/.
8. Paul Marik. iSepsis – The lactate myths - EMCrit January 7, 2018 https://emcrit.org/isepsis/isepsis-lactate-myths/.
9. Didwania A, Miller J, Kassel D, et al. Effect of intravenous lactated Ringer's solution infusion on the circulating lactate concentration: Part 3. Results of a prospective randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Crit Care Med 1997;25:1851–4.
10. Farkas J. Fluid selection & pH-guided fluid resuscitation. Pulmcrit (EMCrit) June 2019 https://emcrit.org/ibcc/fluid/.
11. Farkas, J. Myth-Busting: Lactated Ringers is safe in hyperkalemia and is superior to NS. Retrieved from PulmCrit.org (EMCrit) 2014, September 29. https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/myth-busting-lactated-ringers-is-safe-in-hyperkalemia-and-is-superior-to-ns/.
12. Singh S, Davis D. Ringer's lactate. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2019 Jan. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK500033/.
13. Weinberg L, Harris L, Bellomo R, et al. Effects of Intraoperative and early postoperative normal saline or Plasmalyte 148® On Hyperkalaemia in deceased donor renal transplantation: A double-blind randomized trial. Br J Anaesth. 2017;119(4):606–615.
14. Modi MP, Vora KS, Parikh GP, et al. A comparative study of impact of infusion of Ringer's lactate solution versus normal saline on acid–base balance and serum electrolytes. Saudi J Kidney Dis Transplant. 2012;23(1):135–7.
15. Miller TE, Bunke M, Nisbet P, et al. Fluid resuscitation practice patterns in intensive care units of the USA: a cross-sectional survey of critical care physicians. Perioper Med (Lond) 2016;5:15.
16. Jonsson, AB, Perner A. Changes from 2012 to 2015 in intravenous fluid solutions issued to hospital departments. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2017;61(5):532–538.
17. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. New Engl J Med 2018;378:829–839.
18. Semler MW, Kellum JA. Balanced crystalloid solutions. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;199(8):952–960.
19. Lehr AR, Rached-d'Astous S, Parker M, et al. Impact of balanced versus unbalanced fluid resuscitation on clinical outcomes in critically ill children: protocol for a systematic review and meta-analysis.Syst Rev. 2019;8(1):195.
20. Martini WZ, Cortez DS, Dubick MA. Comparisons of normal saline and lactated ringer's resuscitation on hemodynamics, metabolic responses, and coagulation in pigs after severe hemorrhagic shock. Scand J Trauma ResuscEmerg Med. 2013;21:86.
21. Spahn DR, Bouillon B, Cerny V, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma: Fifth edition Critical Care 2019;23:98.
22. Loubert C. Fluid and vasopressor management for Cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia: continuing professional development. Can J Anaesth 2012;59:604–19.
23. Kinsella SM, Carvalho B, Dyer RA, et al. International Consensus Statement on the Management of Hypotension with Vasopressors during Caesarean Section under Spinal Anaesthesia.

Anaesthesia 2018;73:71–92.
24. Miller TE, Myles PS. Perioperative fluid therapy for major surgery. Anesthesiology 2019;130(5):825–832.
25. Crosignani A, Spina S, Marrazzo F, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy in patients with severe acute pancreatitis admitted to the intensive care unit: a narrative review. Ann Intensive Care. 2022;12(1):98.
26. Mehta M, Tudor GJ. Parkland Formula. [Updated 2023 Jun 19]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2023 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK537190/
27. Aziz M, Ahmed Z, Weissman S, et al. Lactated Ringer's vs normal saline for acute pancreatitis: An updated systematic review and meta-analysis. Pancreatology. 2021;21(7):1217–1223.
28. Ocskay K, Mátrai P, Hegyi P, et al. Lactated Ringer's Solution Reduces Severity, Mortality, Systemic and Local Complications in Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Biomedicines. 2023;11(2):321.
29. Bergmann KR, Abuzzahab MJ, Nowak J, et al. Resuscitation with Ringer's lactate compared with normal saline for pediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Pediatr Emerg Care 2021;37(5):e236–e242.
30. Jahangir A, Jahangir A, Siddiqui FS, et al. Normal Saline Versus Low Chloride Solutions in Treatment of Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review of Clinical Trials. Cureus. 2022;14(1):e21324.
31. Catahay JA, Polintan ET, Casimiro M, et al. Balanced electrolyte solutions versus isotonic saline in adult patients with diabetic ketoacidosis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Heart Lung. 2022;54:74–79.
32. JBDS. JBDS-IP Joint British Diabetes Societies Inpatient Care Group. The Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis in Adults, March 2023 Update: JBDS Guidelines [Internet]. London: ABCD; 2023 Mar. Available from: https://abcd.care/sites/abcd.care/files/site_uploads/JBDS_Guidelines_Current/JBDS_02_DKA_Guideline_with_QR_code_March_2023.pdf.
33. Gripp K, Trottier ED, Thakore S, et al. Current recommendations for management of paediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Paediatr Child Health. 2023;28(2):128–138.
34. Hussmann B, Lendemans S, de Groot H, et al. Volume replacement with ringer-lactate is detrimental in severe hemorrhagic shock but protective in moderate hemorrhagic shock: studies in arat model. Crit Care. 2014;18(1):R5.
35. Diringer MN. New trends in hyperosmolar therapy? Curr Opin Crit Care. 2013;19(2):77–82.
36. Ryden SE, Oberman HA. Compatibility of common intravenous solutions with CPD blood. Transfusion. 1975;15(3):250–5.
37. Lorenzo M, Davis JW, Negin S, et al. Can Ringer's lactate be used safely with blood transfusions? Am J Surg 1998;175(4):308–10.
38. Albert K, van Vlymen J, James P, et al. Ringer's lactate is compatible with the rapid infusion of AS-3 preserved packed red blood cells. Can J Anaesth. 2009;56(5):352–6.
39. Langer T, Santini A, Scotti E, et al. Intravenous balanced solutions: from physiology to clinical evidence. Anaesthesiology Intensive Therapy. 2015;47(1):s78–88.
40. Ergin B, Kapucu A, Guerci P, et al. The role of bicarbonate precursors in balanced fluids during haemorrhagic shock with and without compromised liver function. British Journal of Anaesthesia 2016;117(4):521–528.
41. Hamada T, Yamamoto M, Nakamaru K, et al. The pharmacokinetics of D-lactate, L-lactate and acetate in humans. Masui 1997;46(2):229–236.
42. Weinberg L, Collins N, Van Mourik K, et al. Plasmalyte 148: a clinical review. World J Crit Care Med 2016;5(4):235–250.
43. Kveim M, Nesbakken R. Utilization of exogenous acetate during canine haemorrhagic shock. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 1979;39(7):653–658.
44. Rizoli S. PlasmaLyte. J Trauma 2011;70:S17–8.
45. Hofmann-Kiefer KF, Chappell D, Kammerer T, et al. Influence of acetate and a lactate-based balanced infusion solution on acid base physiology and hemodynamics: an observational pilot study. Eur J Med Res. 2012;17(1):21.
46. Reddy S, Weinberg L, Young P. Crystalloid fluid therapy. Crit Care. 2016;20:59.
47. Kwong YD, Liu KD. Selection of intravenous fluids. Am J Kidney Dis. 2018;72(6):900–902.
48. Pfortmueller CA, Fleischmann E. Acetate-buffered crystalloid fluids: current knowledge, a systematic review. J Crit Care 2016;35:96–104.
49. Edwards ED, Mason BW. Plasmalyte for intravenous fluid maintenance, replacement or resuscitation as an alternative to other intravenous fluids in paediatric patients: a systematic review. J Pedia Health Care Med 2018;1(1):23–26.
50. Chatrath V, Ranjana, Kaur J, et al. A comparison of Plasmalyte a vs 0.9% saline for intraoperative fluid replacement in abdominal surgeries. International Journal of Contemporary Medical Research 2016;3(12):3579–3583.
51. Liu C, Mao Z, Hu P, et al. Fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Ther Clin Risk Manag. 2018;14:1701–1709.
52. Garnacho-Montero J, Fernández-Mondéjar E, Ferrer-Roca R, et al. Crystalloids and colloids in critical patient resuscitation. Med Intensiva. 2015;39(5):303–315.
53. Noritomi DT, Pereira AJ, Bugano DDG, et al. Impact of Plasmalyteph 7.4 on acid-base status and hemodynamics in a model of controlled hemorrhagic shock. Clinics. 2011;66(11):1969–1974.
54. Type1diabetes in adults: diagnosis and management. NICE, 2015. Available at: www.nice.org.uk/ng17.
55. Farkas J. Four DKA Pearls. PulmCrit blog. May 2014 Available at https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/four-dka-pearls/ Accessed June 9, 2019.

56. Chua HR, Venkatesh B, Stachowski E, et al. Plasmalyte 148 vs 0.9% saline for fluid resuscitation in diabetic ketoacidosis. J Crit Care. 2012;27(2):138–45.
57. Mahler SA, Conrad SA, Wang H, et al. Resuscitation with balanced electrolyte solution prevents hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis in patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. Am J Emerg Med. 2011;29(6):670–674.
58. Oliver WD, Willis GC, Hines MC, et al. Comparison of Plasmalyte A and sodium chloride 0.9% for fluid resuscitation of patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. Hosp Pharm. 2018;53(5):326–330.
59. Melloul E, HübnerM, ScottM, et al. Guidelines for perioperative care for liver surgery: Enhanced Recovery after Surgery (ERAS) Society recommendations. World J Surg 2016;40(10):2425–40.
60. Watanabe I, Mayumi T, Arishima T, et al. Hyperlactemia can Predict the prognosis of liver resection. Shock. 2007;28(1):35–8.
61. Shin WJ, Kim YK, Bang JY, et al. Lactate and liver function tests after living donor right hepatectomy: a comparison of solutions with and without lactate. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2011;55(5):558–64.
62. Collins MG, Fahim MA, Pascoe EM, et al. Balanced crystalloid solution versus saline in deceased donor kidney transplantation (BEST-Fluids): a pragmatic, double-blind, randomised, controlled trial. Lancet. 2023;402(10396):105–117.
63. Venkataraman K, McTaggart SJ, Collins MG. Choosing fluids to reduce the risks of acute electrolyte disturbances in children after a kidney transplant. Kidney Int. 2024;105(2):247–250.
64. Alvis-Miranda HR, Castellar-Leones SM, Moscote-Salazar LR. Intravenous fluid therapy in traumatic brain injury and decompressive craniectomy. Bull Emerg Trauma. 2014;2(1):3–14.
65. Rowell SE, Fair KA, Barbosa RR, et al. The impact of pre-hospital administration of lactated ringer's solution versus normal saline in patients with traumatic brain injury. J Neurotrauma. 2016;33(11):1054–9.
66. Mistry AM, Magarik JA, Feldman MJ, et al. Saline versus Balanced Crystalloids for Adults with Aneurysmal Subarachnoid Hemorrhage: A Subgroup Analysis of the SMART Trial. Stroke Vasc Interv Neurol. 2022;2(4):e000128.
67. Zampieri FG, Damiani LP, Biondi RS, et al. Effects of balanced solution on short-term outcomes in traumatic brain injury patients: a secondary analysis of the BaSICS randomized trial. Rev Bras Ter Intensiva. 2022;34(4):410–417.
68. Ramanan M, Attokaran A, Murray L, et al. Sodium chloride or Plasmalyte-148 evaluation in severe diabetic ketoacidosis (SCOPE-DKA): a cluster, crossover, randomized, controlled trial. Intensive Care Med. 2021;47(11):1248–1257.
69. Othman MI, Nashwan AJ, Alfayoumi M, et al. Plasmalyte-148 Versus Normal Saline 0.9% in Diabetic Ketoacidosis Management: A Review. Cureus. 2023;15(6):e41079.
70. Hassan HM, Hasbullah AN, Ali S, et al. Ringer's lactate versus sterofundin ® ISOinpaediatric surgical patients: the acid base and electrolytes assessment. Journal of Anesthesiology. 2018;6(1):33–39.
71. Shariffuddin, Bathumana APP, Adeline C, et al. A comparison of Sterofundin and Ringer's lactate on intraoperative acid base and electrolytes status in children: a randomized controlled trial. Anaesth Critic Care Med J 2018;3(1):000128.
72. Hafizah M, Liu CY, Ooi JS. Normal saline versus balanced-salt solution as intravenous fluid therapy during neurosurgery: effects on acid-base balance and electrolytes. Journal of Neurosurgical Sciences2017;61(3):263–270.
73. Clinical guideline for intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital (2013, updated 2017). National Institute for Health and Care Excellence 2017.
74. Holliday MA, Segar WE. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. Pediatrics 1957;19(5):823–32.
75. Saba TG, Fairbairn J, Houghton F, et al. A randomized controlled trial of isotonic versus hypotonic maintenance intravenous fluids in hospitalized children. BMC Pediatrics. 2011;11:82.
76. Skippen P, Adderley R, Bennett M, et al. Iatrogenic hyponatremia in hospitalized children: can it be avoided? Paediatr Child Health. 2008;13(6):502–506.
77. National Patient Safety Agency. Patient Safety Alert 22. Reducing the risk of hyponatraemia when administering intravenous infusions to children. 2007. https://www.sps.nhs.uk/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/2007-NRLS-0409-Hyponatraemia-cen-PSA-2007-03-28-v1.pdf.
78. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Maintenance intravenous fluids in acutely ill patients. N Engl J Med 2015;373(14):1350–60.
79. Duke T. Maintenance intravenous fluids for children: enough evidence, now for translation and action. Paediatr Int Child Health 2016;36(3):165–7.
80. Padua AP, Macaraya JR, Dans LF, et al. Isotonic versus hypotonic saline solution for maintenance intravenous fluid therapy in children: a systematic review. Pediatr Nephrol 2015;30(7):1163–72.
81. Feld LG, Neuspiel DR, Foster BA, et al. Clinical practice guideline: maintenance intravenous fluids in children. Pediatrics 2018;142(6):e20183083.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

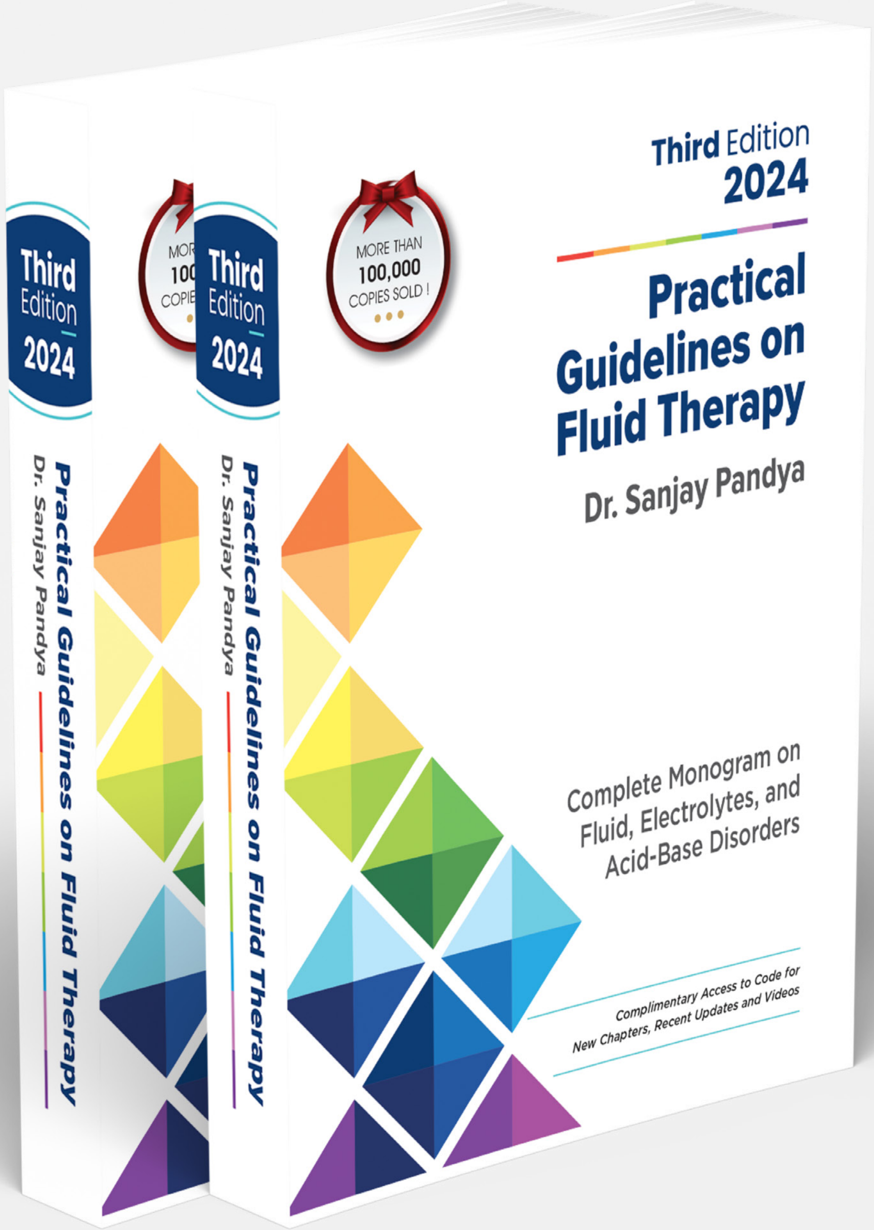
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 5:

Colloid Solutions


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

5 Colloid Solutions

Human Albumin Solution **48**
Pharmacological basis 49
Indications 49
Adverse effects 52
Precautions and contraindications .. 52
Administration 52
Hydroxyethyl Starch **52**
Pharmacological basis 53
Advantage and disadvantage 55
Adverse effects 55
Indications and contraindications ... 56
Administration 56
Gelatin Polymers **56**
Composition 57
Indications 57
Advantage 57
Adverse effects and precautions 57
Dextran **58**
Pharmacological basis 58
Indications 59
Adverse effects 59
Contraindications 59
Precautions 59
Administration 60

Colloids are volume expanders commonly used in clinical practice for fluid resuscitation in hypovolaemic patients. Colloids are electrolyte solutions fortified with large molecular weight molecules that do not pass through semipermeable membranes and therefore are retained within the vascular system. Theoretically, colloids are more effective as plasma volume expanders and improve blood pressure more rapidly than crystalloids because of their intravascular distribution, the property of drawing fluid from extravascular spaces (due to their higher oncotic pressure), and prolonged effect [1, 2].

Compared to crystalloid fluids, colloids are three times more effective in expanding blood volume and increasing cardiac output [3]. So, when plasma or blood is not available immediately, the infusion of colloids to correct circulatory fluid volume is vital and often life-saving in patients with hemorrhagic shock. However, a blood transfusion is subsequently required to maintain the adequate capacity to carry oxygen. The potency of colloid fluids as plasma volume expanders differs with different commercially available colloid fluids, as shown in Table 5.1.

The major advantages and disadvantages of colloids are summarized in Table 5.2 [4]. Colloids vs. crystalloids in resuscitation is a long-standing debate. The colloids were an attractive and preferred choice for resuscitation before a decade [5]. The potential benefits of colloids are greater, rapid, and more prolonged intravascular volume expansion with smaller volume [3, 6–9] and lesser salt and water overload and edema. The benefit of speedier achievement of hemodynamic goals with colloids is less organ damage and a decreased incidence of organ failure [3].

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Mitra S, Khandelwal P. Are all colloids same? How to select the right colloid? Indian J Anaesth 2009;53(3):592–607.
2. Severs D, Hoorn EJ, Rookmaaker MB. A Critical appraisal of intravenous fluids: from the physiological basis to clinical evidence. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2015;30(2):178–87.
3. László I, Demeter G, Öveges N, et al. Volume-replacement ratio for crystalloids and colloids during bleeding and resuscitation: An Animal Experiment. Intensive Care Med Exp. 2017;5(1):52.
4. Colloids vs. crystalloids as resuscitation fluids. Deranged Physiology 2016 (https://derangedphysiology.com/main/required-reading/electrolytes-and-fluids/Chapter%202.2.5/colloids-vs.-crystalloids-resuscitation-fluids-0).
5. Sara J. Allen. Fluid therapy and outcome: balance is best. JECT. 2014;46(1):28–32.
6. Martin GS, Bassett P. Crystalloids vs. colloids for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Journal of Critical Care 2019;50:144–154.
7. Cortés DO, Barros TG, Njimi H, et al. Crystalloids versus colloids: exploring differences in fluid requirements by systematic review and meta-regression. Anesthesia Analgesia. 2015;120(2):389–402.
8. Hahn RG, Lyons G. The half-life of infusion fluids: An educational review. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2016;33(7):475–482.
9. Kabon B, Sessler DI, Kurz A, et al. Effect of intraoperative goal-directed balanced crystalloid versus colloid administration on major postoperative morbidity: a randomized trial. Anesthesiology 2019;130(5):728–744.
10. Lewis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, et al. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill people. Cochrane Database Systematic Reviews 2018;8(8):CD000567.
11. Miller TE, Bunke M, Nisbet P, et al. Fluid resuscitation practice patterns in intensive care units of the USA: a cross-sectional survey of critical care physicians. Perioper Med (Lond) 2016;5:15.
12. Jonsson AB, Perner A. Changes from 2012 to 2015 in intravenous fluid solutions issued to hospital departments. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2017;61(5):532–538.
13. Heming N, Lamothe L, Jaber S, et al. Morbidity and mortality of crystalloids compared to colloids in critically ill surgical patients: a subgroup analysis of a randomized trial. Anesthesiology 2018;129(6):1149–1158.
14. Joosten A, Delaporte A, Mortier J, et al. Long-term impact of crystalloid versus colloid solutions on renal function and disability-free survival after major abdominal surgery. Anesthesiology 2019;130(2):227–236.
15. Spahn DR, Bouillon B, Cerny V, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma: Fifth edition Critical Care 2019;23(1):98.
16. Perner A, Junttila E, Haney M, et al. Scandinavian clinical practice guideline on choice of fluid in resuscitation of critically ill patients with acute circulatory failure. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2015;59(3):274–85.
17. Myburgh JA. Fluid resuscitation in acute medicine: what is the current situation? J Intern Med 2015;277(1):58–68.
18. Guidet B, Soni N, Rocca GD, et al. A balanced view of balanced solutions. Crit Care. 2010;14(5):325.
19. Vincent JL. Fluid management in the critically ill. Kidney International 2019;96(1):52–57.
20. Rehm M, Hulde N, Kammerer T, et al. State of the art in fluid and volume therapy: A user-friendly staged

concept Anaesthesist 2019;68(Suppl 1):1–14.

21. Qureshi SH, Rizvi SI, Patel NN, et al. Meta-analysis of colloids versus crystalloids in critically ill, trauma and surgical patients. Br J Surg. 2016;103(1):14–26.
22. Clarke G, Yan M. Clinical Guide to Transfusion - Professional Education – Canadian Blood Services 2018. Chapter 3: Albumin. https://professionaleducation.blood.ca/en/transfusion/clinical-guide/albumin.
23. Jiang L, Jiang S, Zhang M, et al. Albumin versus other fluids for fluid resuscitation in patients with sepsis: a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2014;9(12):e114666.
24. Yasumura S, Makino S, Matsumoto M, et al. Evidence-based guidelines for the use of albumin products. Japan Society of Transfusion Medicine and Cell Therapy. 2017;63(5):641–663.
25. Caironi P, Tognoni G, Masson S, et al. ALBIOS study investigators. Albumin replacement in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1412–1421.
26. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: International guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. Crit Care Med 2017;45(3):486–552.
27. Liumbruno GM, Bennardello F, Lattanzio A, et al. Recommendations for the use of albumin and immunoglobulins. Blood Transfus 2009;7(3):216–234.
28. Vincent JL, Russell JA, Jacob M, et al. Albumin administration in the acutely ill: what is new and where next? Crit Care 2014;18(4):231.
29. Martin C, Cortegiani A, Gregoretti C, et al. Choice of fluids in critically ill patients. BMC Anesthesiology 2018;18(1):200.
30. Annamalai A, Wisdom L, Herada M, et al. Management of refractory ascites in cirrhosis: are we out of date? World J Hepatol 2016;8(28):1182–1193.
31. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2018;69(2):406–460.
32. Runken MC, Caraceni P, Fernandez J, et al. The cost-effectiveness of albumin in the treatment of decompensated cirrhosis in Germany, Italy, and Spain. Health Econ Rev. 2019;9(1):22.
33. Bernardi M, Caraceni P, Navickis RJ. Does the evidence support a survival benefit of albumin infusion in patients with cirrhosis undergoing large-volume paracentesis? Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2017;11(3):191–192.
34. Valerio C, Theocharidou E, Davenport A, et al. Human albumin solution for patients with cirrhosis and acute on chronic liver failure: beyond simple volume expansion. World J Hepatol 2016;8(7):345–354.
35. Kwok CS, Krupa L, Mahtani A, et al. Albumin reduces paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction and reduces death and renal impairment among patients with cirrhosis and infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Biomed Res Int. 2013;2013:295153.
36. Bernardi M, Caraceni P, Navickis RJ, et al. Albumin infusion in patients undergoing large-volume paracentesis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Hepatology 2012;55(4):1172–81.
37. AISF-SIMTI Position Paper: The appropriate use of albumin in patients with liver cirrhosis. Dig Liver Dis. 2016;48(1):4–15.
38. Runyon BA, AASLD. Introduction to the revised American association for the study of liver diseases practice guideline management of adult patients with ascites due to cirrhosis 2012. Hepatology 2013;57(4):1651–1653.
39. Salerno F, Navickis RJ, Wilkes MM. Albumin infusion improves outcomes of patients with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;11(2):123–30.e1.
40. Nottingham antibiotic guidelines committee. Guidelines for the management of adult patients with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis or liver cirrhosis with upper gastrointestinal bleed. 2018 (https://www.nuh.nhs.uk/download.cfm?doc=docm93jijm4n627.pdf&ver=4771).
41. Dundar HZ, Yılmazlar T. Management of hepatorenal syndrome. World J Nephrol 2015;4(2):277–286.
42. Loftus M, Brown RS Jr, El-Farra NS, et al. Improving the Management of Hepatorenal Syndrome-Acute Kidney Injury Using an Updated Guidance and a New Treatment Paradigm. Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y). 2023;19(9):527–536.
43. Bai Z, Méndez-Sánchez N, Romeiro FG, et al. Use of albumin infusion for cirrhosis-related complications: An international position statement. JHEP Rep. 2023;5(8):100785.
44. Wong F, Pappas SC, Curry MP, et al. Terlipressin plus Albumin for the Treatment of Type 1 Hepatorenal Syndrome. N Engl J Med 2021;384(9):818–828.
45. Winters JL, Brown D, Hazard E, et al. Cost-minimization analysis of the direct costs of TPE and IVIg in the treatment of guillain-barre syndrome. BMC Health Serv Res 2011;11:101.
46. Cyriac J, Balasubramanian R. Management of childhood nephrotic syndrome: Nottingham university hospitals NHS trust clinical guideline 2018.
47. Dharmaraj R, Hari P, Bagga A. Randomized cross-over trial comparing albumin and frusemide infusions in nephrotic syndrome. Pediatr. Nephrol. 2009;24(4):775–82.
48. Ellis D. Pathophysiology, evaluation, and management of edema in childhood nephrotic syndrome. Front. Pediatr. 2016;3:111.
49. Duffy M, Jain S, Harrell N, et al. Albumin and furosemide combination for management of edema in Nephrotic Syndrome: a review of clinical studies. Cells 2015;4(4):622–630.
50. Ho JJ, Adnan AS, Kueh YC, et al. Human albumin infusion for treating oedema in people with nephrotic syndrome. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2019;7(7):CD009692.
51. Di Pascoli M, Fasolato S, Piano S, et al. Long-term administration of human albumin improves survival in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Liver

Int 2019;39(1):98–105.

52. Tajiri K, Futsukaichi Y, Yasuda I. Albumin administration for refractory ascites in cirrhotic patients. AME Med J 2019;4:10.
53. Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists. The Management of Ovarian Hyperstimulation Syndrome. Green-top Guideline 5. London: RCOG, 2016.
54. Prevention and treatment of moderate and severe ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome: a guideline. Practice Committee of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine. Fertility and sterility. 2016;106(7):1634–1647.
55. Darii N, Pavlovic M, Doroftei B, et al. Unsuspected adverse effect of albumin in severe ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome: a case report. JBRA Assist Reprod. 2019;23(4):430–433.
56. Uhlig C, Silva PL, Deckert S, et al. Albumin versus crystalloid solutions in patients with the acute respiratory distress syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Critical Care 2014;18(1):R10.
57. Itagaki Y, Yoshida N, Banno M, et al. Efficacy of albumin with diuretics in mechanically ventilated patients with hypoalbuminemia: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2022;101(37):e30276.
58. SAFE Study Investigators; Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group; Australian Red Cross Blood Service; et al. Saline or albumin for fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury. N Engl J Med. 2007;357(9):874–84.
59. Rossi S, Picetti E, Zoerle T, et al. Fluid management in acute brain injury. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 2018;18(11):74.
60. Mirici-Cappa F, Caraceni P, Domenicali M, et al. How albumin administration for cirrhosis impacts on hospital albumin consumption and expenditure. World J Gastroenterol. 2011;17(30):3479–86.
61. Caraceni P, Domenicali M, Tovoli A, et al. Clinical indications for the albumin use: still a controversial issue. Eur J Intern Med. 2013;24(8):721–8.
62. Executive committee of the German medical association on the recommendation of the scientific advisory board. Cross-sectional guidelines for therapy with blood components and plasma derivatives: Chapter 5 Human albumin – revised. Transfus Med Hemother 2016;43(3):223–232.
63. Bunn F, Trivedi D. Colloid solutions for fluid resuscitation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;2012(7):CD001319.
64. Jungheinrich C, Neff TA. Pharmacokinetics of hydroxyethyl starch. Clin Pharmacokinet. 2005;44(7):681–699.
65. Finger S, Liu B, Taylor C, et al. Resuscitation fluid use in critically ill adults: an international cross-sectional study in 391 intensive care units. Crit. Care 2010;14:R185.
66. Zarychanski R, Abou-Setta AM, Turgeon AF, et al. Association of hydroxyethyl starch administration with mortality and acute kidney injury in critically ill patients requiring volume resuscitation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 2013;309(7):678–688.
67. European Medicines Agency. Hydroxyethyl-starch solutions for infusion to be suspended – CMDh endorses PRAC recommendation: suspension due to serious risks of kidney injury and death in certain patient populations. EMA http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages/news_and_events/news/2018/01/news_detail_002892.jsp&mid=WC0b01ac058004d5c1 (2018).
68. Ünal MN, Reinhart K. Understanding the harms of HES: a review of the evidence to date. Turk J Anaesthesiol Reanim 2019;47(2):81–91.
69. Westphal M, James MF, Kozek-Langenecker S, et al. Hydroxyethyl starches: different products - different effects. Anesthesiology 2009;111(1):187–202.
70. Brunkhorst FM, Engel C, Bloos F, et al. Intensive insulin therapy and pentastarch resuscitation in severe sepsis. N. Engl.J. Med. 2008;358(2):125–139.
71. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation fluids. N Engl J Med 2013;369:1243–1251.
72. McConnell M, Baisden J, Duncan E. Pro: third-generation hydroxyethyl starch solution is safe and effective for plasma volume expansion during cardiac surgery. Journal of Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia. 2018;32(1):570–575.
73. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. N Engl J Med 2012;367:1901–1911.
74. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(2):124–34.
75. Muller RB, Haase N, Lange T, et al. Acute kidney injury with hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 in severe sepsis. Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica 2015;59(3):329–36.
76. Liu C, Zhi Mao Z, Hu1 P, et al. Fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Therapeutics and Clinical Risk Management 2018;14:1701–1709.
77. European Medicines Agency. Hydroxyethyl-starch Solutions (HES) no longer to be used in patients with sepsis or burn injuries or in critically ill patients EMA/809470/2013.
78. Haase N, Perner A, Hennings LI, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.38–0.45 versus crystalloid or albumin in patients with sepsis: systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. BMJ 2013;346:f839.
79. Rasmussen KC, Secher NH, Pedersen T. Effect of perioperative crystalloid or colloid fluid therapy on hemorrhage, coagulation competence, and outcome: a systematic review and stratified meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore) 2016;95(31):e4498.
80. Kozek-Langenecker SA. Fluids and coagulation. Curr Opin Crit Care 2015;21(4):285–291.
81. Toyoda D, Shinoda S, Kotake Y. Pros and cons of tetra starch solution for critically ill patients. Journal of Intensive Care 2014;2:23.
82. Fenger-Eriksen C, Tonnesen E, Ingerslev J, et al. Mechanisms of hydroxyethyl starch-induced

dilutional coagulopathy. J Thromb Haemost 2009;7(7):1099–1105.

83. European Medicines Agency. Hydroxyethyl starch solutions: CMDh introduces new measures to protect patients. Internet Document: 29 Jun 2018.
84. Martin C, Jacob M, Vicaut E, et al. Effect of waxy maize-derived hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 on renal function in surgical patients. Anesthesiology. 2013;118(2):387–94.
85. Van der Linden P, James M, Mythen M, et al. Safety of modern starches used during surgery. Anesth Analg. 2013;116(1):35–48.
86. Gillies MA, Habicher M, Jhanji S, et al. Incidence of postoperative death and acute kidney injury associated with IV 6% hydroxyethyl starch use: systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Anaesth 2014;112(1):25–34.
87. Schetz M, Shaw AD, Vincent JL. Is the literature inconclusive about the harm of HES? We are not sure. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43(10):1526–1528.
88. Ertmer C, Zwißler B, Van Aken H, et al. Fluid therapy and outcome: a prospective observational study in 65 German intensive care units between 2010 and 2011. Ann Intensive Care. 2018;8(1):27.
89. Wiedermann C, Eisendle K. Comparison of hydroxyethyl starch regulatory summaries from the food and drug administration and the european medicines agency. Journal of Pharmaceutical Policy and Practice. 2017;10:12.
90. Food and drug administration FDA safety communication: boxed warning on increased mortality and severe renal injury, and additional warning on risk of bleeding, for use of hydroxyethyl starch solutions in some settings (2013). Available online at: http://wayback.archive-it.org/7993/20170112095648/http://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/ucm358271.htm.
91. Boer C, Bossers SM, Koning NJ. Choice of fluid type: physiological concepts and perioperative indications. Br J Anaesth. 2018;120(2):384–396.
92. Cook TM, Harper NJN, Farmer L, et al. Anaesthesia, surgery, and life-threatening allergic reactions: protocol and methods of the 6th National Audit Project (NAP6) of the Royal College of Anaesthetists. Br J Anaesth. 2018;121(1):124–133.
93. Davies MJ. Polygeline. Dev Biol Stand 1987;67:129–31.
94. Riley TT, Sanchez CK, Gauthier-Lewis M, et al. A concise review of colloids for fluid resuscitation in severe sepsis and septic shock. Austin J Pharmacol Ther 2014;2(3):1019.
95. Niemi TT, Miyashita R, Yamakage M. Colloid solutions: a clinical update. J Anesth. 2010;24(6):913–925.
96. Finfer S, Myburgh J, Bellomo R. Intravenous fluid therapy in critically ill adults. Nat Rev Nephrol 2018;14(9):541–557.
97. Shah S, Singh A, Kala S, et al. Polygeline in patients with hypovolemia caused by accidental trauma: a prospective, multicentric, safety study. Int Surg J 2018;5(4):1432–1437.
98. Marx G, Schindler AW, Mosch C, et al. Intravascular volume therapy in adults: guidelines from the association of the scientific medical societies in Germany. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2016;33(7):488–521.
99. Saw MM, Chandler B, Ho KM. Benefits and risks of using gelatin solution as a plasma expander for perioperative and critically ill patients: a meta-analysis. Anaesth Intensive Care 2012;40(1):17–32.
100. Moeller C, Fleischmann C, Thomas-Rueddel D, et al. How safe is gelatin? A systematic review and meta-analysis of Gelatin-containing plasma expanders vs crystalloids and albumin. Journal of Critical Care 35 2016;75–83.
101. Thomas-Rueddel DO, Vlasakov V, Reinhart K, et al. Safety of Gelatin for volume resuscitation – a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Medicine 2012;38(7):1134–42.
102. Ghijselings I, Himpe D, Rex S. Safety of Gelatin solutions for the priming of cardiopulmonary bypass in cardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Perfusion. 2017;32(5):350–362.
103. Bayer O, Reinhart K, Sakr Y, et al. Renal effects of synthetic colloids and crystalloids in patients with severe sepsis: a prospective sequential comparison. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(6):1335–1342.
104. Laxenaire MC, Charpentier C, Feldman L. Anaphylactoid reactions to colloid plasma substitutes: incidence risk factors mechanisms. A French multicenter prospective study. Ann Fr Anest Reanim. 1994;13(3):301–10.
105. Hahn RG. Clinical pharmacology of infusion fluids. Acta medica lituanica. 2012;19(3):210–212.
106. Farooque S, Kenny M, Marshall SD. Anaphylaxis to intravenous Gelatin-based solutions: a case series examining clinical features and severity. Anaesthesia 2019;74(2):174–179.
107. Bayer O, Reinhart K, Kohl M, et al. Effects of fluid resuscitation with synthetic colloids or crystalloids alone on shock reversal, fluid balance, and patient outcomes in patients with severe sepsis: a prospective sequential analysis. Crit. Care Med. 2012;40(9):2543–2551.
108. Schramko A, Suojaranta-Ylinen R, Kuitunen A. et al. Hydroxyethylstarch and Gelatin solutions impair blood coagulation after cardiac surgery: a prospective randomized trial. British Journal of Anaesthesia 2010;104(6):691–7.
109. Naessens M, Cerdobbel A, Soetaert W, et al. Leuconostoc dextransucrase and dextran: production, properties and applications. J. Chem. Technol. Biotechnol. 2005;80:845–860.
110. Atik M. Dextran-40 and dextran-70. A review. Arch Surg 1967;94(5):664–67.
111. Perner A, Aneman A, Guttormsen AB, et al. Preferences for colloid use in scandinavian intensive care units. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2008;52(6):750–8.
112. Dextran 1 - GLOWM (Internet) https://www.glowm.com/resources/glowm/cd/pages/drugs/d023.html.
113. Farber A, Tan TW, Rybin D, et al. Intraoperative use of dextran is associated with cardiac complications after carotid endarterectomy. J Vasc Surg. 2013;57(3):635–641.

114. Kozek-Langenecker S, Fenger-Eriksen C, Thienpont E, et al. European guidelines on perioperative venous thromboembolism prophylaxis: surgery in the elderly. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2018;35(2):116–122.
115. Bag S, Behera A, Khandelwal N, et al. Improvement in blood supply after "Heparin-Dextran" therapy in patients of buerger's disease with critical limb ischemia. Indian J Surg. 2013;75(6):462–468.
116. Michelson E. Anaphylactic reaction to Dextrans. New Engl J Med 1968;278:552.
117. Ljungström KG, Renck H, Strandberg K, et al. Adverse reactions to dextran in Sweden 1970–1979. Acta Chirurgica Scandinavica, 1983;149(3):253–262.
118. Shiratori T, Sato A, Fukuzawa M, et al. Severe dextran-induced anaphylactic shock during induction of hypertension-hypervolemia-hemodilution therapy following subarachnoid hemorrhage hindawi publishing corporation case reports in critical care Volume 2015, Article ID 967560, 5 pages.
119. Zinderman CE, Landow L, Wise RP. Anaphylactoid reactions to dextran 40 and 70: reports to the United States food and drug administration, 1969 to 2004. J Vasc Surg 2006;43(5):1004–9.
120. Ferraboli R, Malheiro PS, Abdulkader RC, et al. Anuric acute renal failure caused by dextran 40 administration. Renal Failure 1997;19(2):303–306.
121. Dickenmann M, Oettl T, Mihatsch MJ. Osmotic nephrosis: acute kidney injury with accumulation of proximal tubular lysosomes due to administration of exogenous solutes Am J Kidney Dis 2008;51(3):491–503.
122. Sigurjonsson J, Hedman D, Bansch P, et al. Comparison of dextran and albumin on blood coagulation in patients undergoing major gynaecological surgery Perioperative Medicine 2018;7:21.
123. Schott U, Kander T, Bentzer P. Effects of dextran-70 and albumin on coagulation in experimental hemorrhage in the guinea pig. SHOCK 2018;50(3):366–372.
124. Rasmussen KC, Hoejskov M, Johansson PI, et al. Coagulation competence for predicting perioperative hemorrhage in patients treated with lactated Ringer's vs. Dextran - randomized controlled trial. BMC Anesth 2015;15:178.
125. 10% LMD in 5% Dextrose, 10% LMD in 0.9% Sodium Chloride (Dextran 40) [prescribing information]. Hospira, Inc. Revised: 8/2018.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

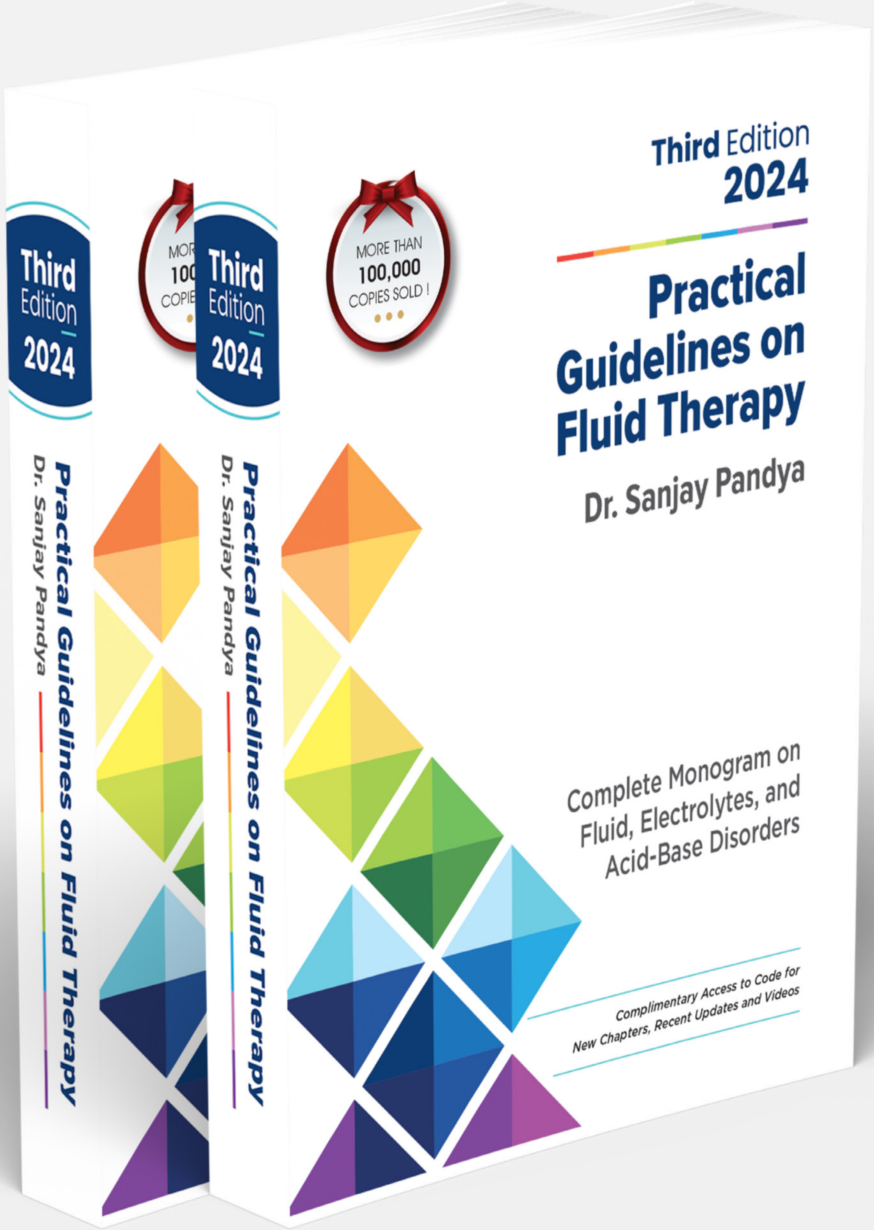
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 6:

Principles, Planning, and Prescribing Fluid Therapy


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

6

Principles, Planning, and Prescribing Fluid Therapy

Goals of Fluid Therapy 67
Principles and Guidelines 68
Planning and Prescribing 68
Indications 70
Resuscitation fluids 70
Maintenance fluids 70
Replacement fluids 71

Fluid administration is commonly needed in hospitalized patients, especially in an emergency, ICU, and surgical units.

Why is it important to plan and prescribe fluid therapy meticulously?

- Fluid administration is an essential and most commonly required intravenous treatment in acutely ill hospitalized patients [1, 2].
- Timely, appropriate, and properly designed intravenous fluid administration is lifesaving [2, 3].
- The prescription plans of fluid therapy vary markedly in different dynamic phases, demanding frequent attention, evaluation, and necessary changes.
- Prescribing intravenous fluids is complex. Unfortunately, doctors' basic knowledge and understanding of prescribing intravenous (IV) fluids are poor, and errors in planning appropriate fluid type, rate, or volume lead to morbidity and mortality, which is preventable [4–7].
- IV fluids are not just an innocent bag of water; their under or over-administration may be potentially harmful [8–11].
- Fluid overload is one of the most common complications of overzealous IV fluid administration, which is often overlooked but is harmful [10, 12–18].

Because of the possibilities of multifactorial errors and harmful effects, it is recommended to use the right type of fluid, in the right volume at the right time, by the right route (in a similar way as using any other pharmacological prescription antibiotics or drugs), and tailor the fluid therapy to meet the patient's individualized needs which reduces the risks and improves the outcome [2, 10, 19, 20].

fluid

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Finfer S, Myburgh J, Bellomo R. Intravenous fluid therapy in critically ill adults. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2018;14(9):541–557.
2. Martin C, Cortegiani A, Gregoretti C, et al. Choice of fluids in critically ill patients. BMC Anesthesiology 2018;181):200.
3. Hoste EA, Maitland K, Brudney CS, et al. Four phases of intravenous fluid therapy: a conceptual model. Br J Anaesth. 2014;113(5):740–747.
4. Ramsay G, Baggaley A, Vaughan Shaw PG et al. Variability in the prescribing of intravenous fluids: A cross sectional multicentre analysis of clinical practice. Int J Surg 2018;51:199–204.
5. Mathur A, Johnston G, Clark L. Improving intravenous fluid prescribing. J R Coll Physicians Edinb 2020;50(2):181–187.
6. Drummond GB. Why is knowledge about fluid prescribing so poor? J R Coll Physicians Edinb 2020;50(3):343–350.
7. Leach R, Crichton S, Morton N, et al. Fluid management knowledge in hospital physicians: 'Greenshoots' of improvement but still a cause for concern. Clin Med (Lond). 2020;20(3):e26–e31.
8. National Clinical Guideline Centre (UK). Intravenous Fluid Therapy: Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital [Internet]. London: Royal College of Physicians (UK); 2013 Dec.
9. Benes J, Kirov M, Kuzkov V, et al. Fluid Therapy: Double-Edged Sword during Critical Care? Biomed Res Int. 2015;2015:729075.
10. Hawkins WA, Smith SE, Newsome AS, et al. Fluid Stewardship during Critical Illness: A Call to Action. J Pharm Pract. 2020;33(6):863–873.
11. Malbrain M. Optimising Fluid Therapy in the Critically Ill: Introduction to the 7D conceptual framework. iFAD 2021 Visit: https://www.fluidacademy.org/blog-foam/item/optimising-fluid-therapy-in-the-critically-ill.html.
12. Boyd JH, Forbes J, Nakada TA, et al. Fluid resuscitation in septic shock: a positive fluid balance and elevated central venous pressure are associated with increased mortality. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(2):259–265.
13. Mitchell KH, Carlbom D, Caldwell E, et al. Volume overload: prevalence, risk factors, and functional outcome in survivors of septic shock. Ann Am Thorac Soc. 2015;12(12):1837–1844.
14. Van Regenmortel N, Verbrugghe W, Roelant E, et al. Maintenance fluid therapy and fluid creep impose more significant fluid, sodium, and chloride burdens than resuscitation fluids in critically ill patients: a retrospective study in a tertiary mixed ICU population. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):409–417.
15. Claure-Del Granado R, Mehta RL. Fluid overload in the ICU: evaluation and management. BMC Nephrol. 2016;17(1):109.
16. Neyra JA, Li X, Canepa-Escaro F, et al. Cumulative fluid balance and mortality in septic patients with or without acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease. Crit Care Med. 2016;44(10):1891–1900.
17. Perez Nieto OR, Wong A, Lopez Fermin J, et al. Aiming for zero fluid accumulation: First, do no harm. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2021;53(2):162–178.
18. Barhight MF, Nelson D, Chong G, et al. Non-resuscitation fluid in excess of hydration requirements is associated with higher mortality in critically ill children. Pediatr Res. 2022;91(1):235–240.
19. Chappell D, Jacob M, Hofmann-Kiefer K, et al. A rational approach to perioperative fluid management. Anesthesiology. 2008;109(4):723–40.
20. Malbrain MLNG, Langer T, Annane D, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy in the perioperative and critical care setting: Executive summary of the International Fluid Academy (IFA). Ann Intensive Care. 2020;10(1):64.
21. Vincent JL, De Backer D. Circulatory shock. N Engl J Med 2013;369(18):1726–34.
22. Malbrain ML, Marik PE, Witters I, et al. Fluid overload, de-resuscitation, and outcomes in critically ill or injured patients: a systematic review with suggestions for clinical practice. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2014;46(5):361–380.
23. Malbrain ML, Van Regenmortel N, Owczuk R. It is time to consider the four D's of fluid management. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2015;47(Spec No):s1–s5.

24. Malbrain MLNG, Van Regenmortel N, Saugel B, et al. Principles of fluid management and stewardship in septic shock: it is time to consider the four D's and the four phases of fluid therapy. Ann Intensive Care. 2018;8(1):66.

25. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence Guideline for Intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital (CG174), 2013-Updated May 2017 (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg174).

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

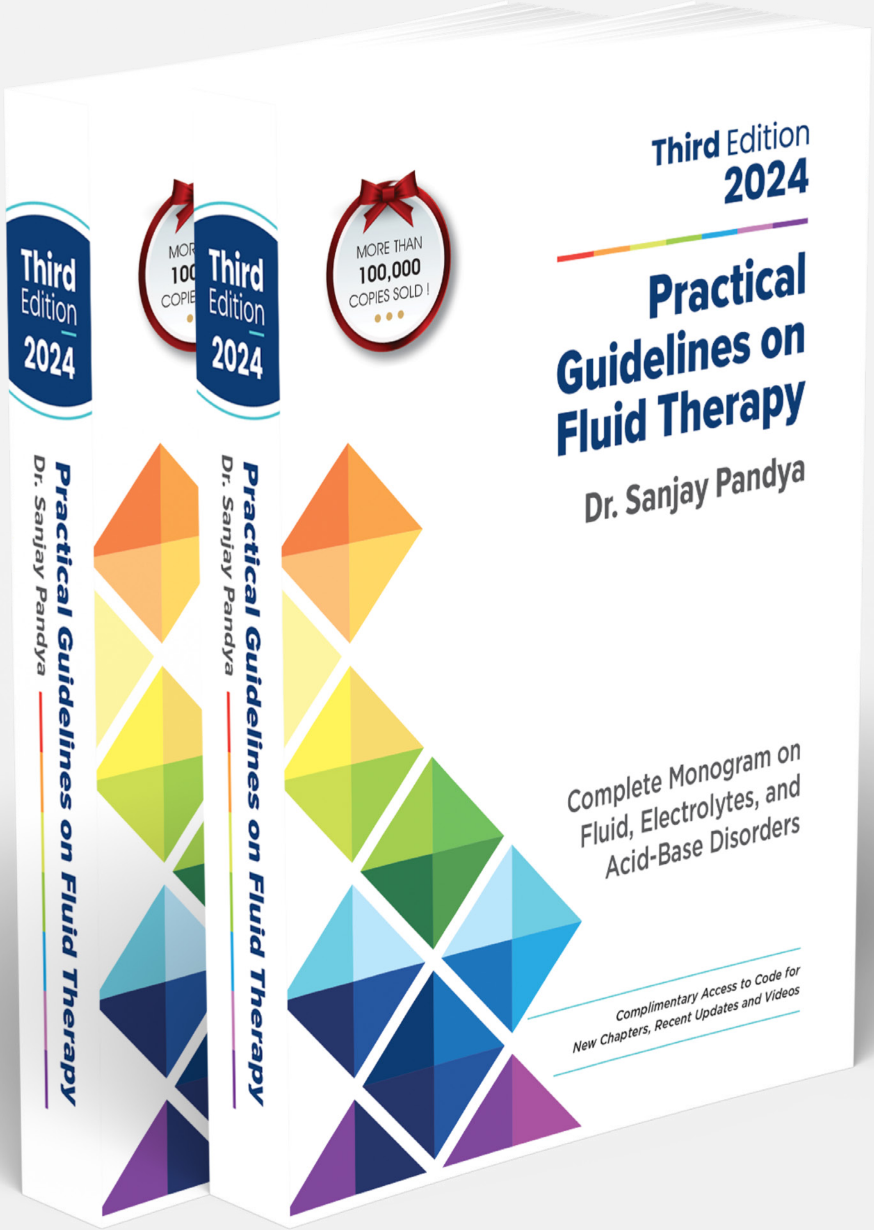
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 7:

Maintenance Fluid Therapy


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

7 Maintenance Fluid Therapy

Physiological Basis **74**
- Sodium concentration of maintenance fluids 74
- Avoid iatrogenic fluid overload 76
- What is fluid creep? 76

Prescribing Maintenance IV Fluids .. **76**
- Indications of maintenance IV fluids. 76
- Selection of maintenance IV fluids .. 76

Type of fluids 77
- Hypotonic fluids 77
- Monitoring and modification 77

The volume of maintenance fluids.. 78
The rate of administration............... 78
Cautions while using maintenance fluid 78

Patients who are euvolemic, hemodynamically stable but unable to take adequate fluid by oral or enteral route need maintenance intravenous (IV) fluids to replace anticipated insensible (such as respiration, perspiration, and stools) and sensible (such as urine) losses [1].

PHYSIOLOGICAL BASIS

The goal of maintenance IV fluid is to replace the ongoing daily physiologic losses such as urine, feces, and sweat, maintain normal water and electrolyte balance and provide adequate calories to avoid starvation ketosis [1, 2].

Ideal maintenance IV fluid should provide adequate water and electrolytes to preserve the extracellular volume and ensure proper tissue perfusion without causing volume depletion, fluid overload, or electrolyte disturbances, along with supplementation for optimal calories [1].

Sodium concentration of maintenance fluids

Sodium concentration of maintenance IV fluids is a crucial but debatable issue discussed in many studies, which needs special consideration because of its two common and potentially harmful effects, hyponatremia [3, 4] and volume overload [5, 6].

How much sodium concentration is appropriate for the maintenance IV fluids in adult patients?

The concepts of appropriate sodium concentration of maintenance IV fluids in adults are changing like a pendulum shift.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Maintenance intravenous fluids in acutely ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(14):1350–1360.
2. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence Guideline for Intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital (CG174), 2013-Updated May 2017 (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg174).
3. Foster BA, Tom D, Hill V. Hypotonic versus isotonic fluids in hospitalized children: A systematic review and meta-analysis. J Pediatr. 2014;165(1):163–169.
4. McNab S, Duke T, South M, et al. 140 mmol/L of sodium versus 77 mmol/L of sodium in maintenance intravenous fluid therapy for children in hospital (PIMS): a randomised controlled double-blind trial. Lancet. 2015;385(9974):1190–7.
5. Mitchell KH, Carlbom D, Caldwell E, et al. Volume overload: prevalence, risk factors, and functional outcome in survivors of septic shock. Ann Am Thorac Soc. 2015;12(12):1837–1844.
6. Van Regenmortel N, Verbrugghe W, Roelant E, et al. Maintenance fluid therapy and fluid creep impose more significant fluid, sodium, and chloride burdens than resuscitation fluids in critically ill patients: a retrospective study in a tertiary mixed ICU population. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):409–417.
7. Holliday Ma, Segar We. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. Pediatrics 1957;19(5):823–32.
8. Shafiee MA, Bohn D, Hoorn EJ, et al. How to select optimal maintenance intravenous fluid therapy. QJM 2003;96(8):601–10.
9. Koczmara C, Wade AW, Skippen P, et al. Hospital-acquired acute hyponatremia and reports of pediatric deaths. Dynamics 2010;21(1):21–6.
10. Padua AP, Macaraya JR, Dans LF, et al. Isotonic versus Hypotonic saline solution for maintenance intravenous fluid therapy in children: a systematic review. Pediatr Nephrol 2015;30(7):1163–72.
11. Robles CMF, García CAC. A prospective trial comparing isotonic with hypotonic maintenance fluids for prevention of hospital-acquired hyponatraemia. Paediatr Int Child Health. 2016;36(3):168–174.
12. Hall AM, Ayus JC, Moritz ML. Things we do for no Reason: the default use of hypotonic maintenance intravenous fluids in pediatrics. J. Hosp. Med 2018;13(9):637–640.
13. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Intravenous fluid therapy in children and young people in hospital. NICE guideline [NG29]. December 2015. Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng29.
14. Feld LG, Neuspiel DR, Foster BA, et al. Clinical practice guideline: maintenance intravenous fluids in children. Pediatrics 2018;142:e20183083.
15. Aronson D, Dragu RE, Nakhoul F, et al. Hyponatremia as a complication of cardiac catheterization: a prospective study. Am J Kidney Dis 2002;40(5):940–6.
16. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Hospital-Acquired Hyponatremia – Why are hypotonic parenteral fluids still being used? Nat Clin Pract Nephrol 2007;3(7):374–82.
17. Nair V, Niederman MS, Masani N, et al. Hyponatremia in community acquired pneumonia. Am J Nephrol 2007;27(2):184–90.
18. Bihari S, Peake SL, Seppelt I, et al. George Institute for Global Health; Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group. Sodium administration in critically ill patients in Australia and New Zealand: a multicentre point prevalence study. Crit Care Resusc. 2013;15(4):294–300.
19. Bihari S, Watts NR, Seppelt I, et al. George Institute for Global Health and the Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group. Maintenance fluid practices in intensive care units in Australia and New Zealand. Crit Care Resusc. 2016;18(2):89–94.
20. Van Regenmortel N, De Weerdt T, Van Craenenbroeck AH, et al. Effect of isotonic versus hypotonic maintenance fluid therapy on urine output, fluid balance, and electrolyte homeostasis: a crossover study in fasting adult volunteers. Br J Anaesth. 2017;118(6):892–900.
21. Van Regenmortel N, Moers L, Langer T, et al. Fluid-induced harm in the hospital: look beyond volume and start considering sodium. From physiology towards recommendations for daily practice in hospitalized adults. Ann Intensive Care. 2021;11(1):79.
22. Van Regenmortel N, Langer T, De Weerdt T, et al. Effect of sodium administration on fluid balance

and sodium balance in health and the perioperative setting. Extended summary with additional insights from the MIHMoSA and TOPMAST studies. J Crit Care. 2022;67:157–165.

23. Hawkins WA, Smith SE, Newsome AS, et al. Fluid Stewardship during Critical Illness: A Call to Action. J Pharm Pract. 2020;33(6):863–873.
24. Boyd JH, Forbes J, Nakada TA, et al. Fluid resuscitation in septic shock: a positive fluid balance and elevated central venous pressure are associated with increased mortality. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(2):259–265.
25. Claure-Del Granado R, Mehta RL. Fluid overload in the ICU: evaluation and management. BMC Nephrol. 2016;17(1):109.
26. Neyra JA, Li X, Canepa-Escaro F, et al. Cumulative fluid balance and mortality in septic patients with or without acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease. Crit Care Med. 2016;44(10):1891–1900.
27. Perez Nieto OR, Wong A, Lopez Fermin J, et al. Aiming for zero fluid accumulation: First, do no harm. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2021;53(2):162–178.
28. Barhight MF, Nelson D, Chong G, et al. Non-resuscitation fluid in excess of hydration requirements is associated with higher mortality in critically ill children. Pediatr Res. 2022;91(1):235–240.
29. Van Regenmortel N, Hendrickx S, Roelant E et al. 154 compared to 54 mmol per liter of sodium in intravenous maintenance fluid therapy for adult patients undergoing major thoracic surgery (TOPMAST): a single-center randomized controlled double-blind trial. Intensive Care Med 2019;45(10):1422–1432.
30. Giordano M, Ciarambino T, Castellino P, et al. Diseases associated with electrolyte imbalance in the ED: age-related differences. Am J Emerg Med 2016;34(10):1923–1926.
31. Bihari S, Prakash S, Potts S, et al. Addressing the inadvertent sodium and chloride burden in critically ill patients: a prospective before-and-after study in a tertiary mixed intensive care unit population. Crit Care Resusc. 2018;20(4):285–93.
32. Choo WP, Groeneveld AB, Driessen RH, et al. Normal saline to dilute parenteral drugs and to keep catheters open is a major and preventable source of hypernatremia acquired in the intensive care unit. J Crit Care. 2014;29(3):390–4.
33. Bihari S, Peake SL, Prakash S, et al. Sodium balance, not fluid balance, is associated with respiratory dysfunction in mechanically ventilated patients: a prospective, multicentre study. Crit Care Resusc. 2015;17(1):23–8.
34. Langer T, D'Oria V, Spolidoro G, et al. Fluid therapy in mechanically ventilated critically ill children: the sodium, chloride and water burden of fluid creep. BMC Pediatr 2020;20(1):424.
35. Gamble KC, Smith SE, Bland CM, et al. Hidden Fluids in Plain Sight: Identifying Intravenous Medication Classes as Contributors to Intensive Care Unit Fluid Intake. Hospital Pharmacy 2021.
36. Padhi S, Bullock I, Li L, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy for adults in hospital: summary of NICE guidance. BMJ 2013;347:f7073.
37. Sterns RH, Emmett M, Forman JP. Maintenance and replacement fluid therapy in adults. UptoDate 2019.
38. Meyers RS. Pediatric fluid and electrolyte therapy. J Pediatr Pharmacol Ther 2009;14(4):204–211.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

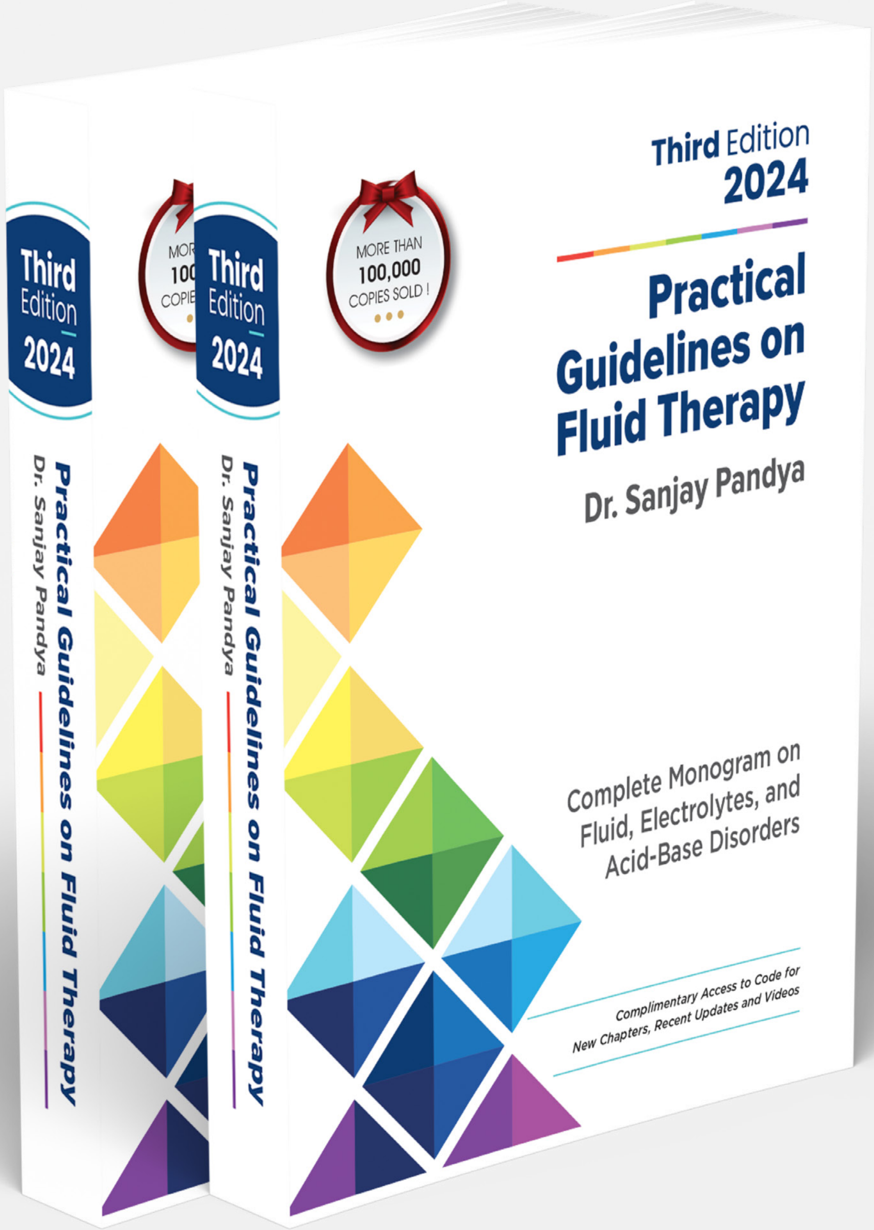
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 8:

Resuscitation Fluids


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

8

Resuscitation Fluids

- **Timing and Rate of Resuscitation Fluid Administration ... 82**
- **Type of Fluids for Resuscitation ... 83**
- **The Physiology of Fluid Selection ... 83**
- **Crystalloid Resuscitation: Firstline Therapy ... 85**
  - Normal saline ... 86
    - Advantages and disadvantages ... 86
    - Hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis risk ... 87
    - Acute kidney injury risk ... 87
    - Use in hyperkalemia ... 87
  - Balanced crystalloids ... 87
    - Composition ... 87
    - Corrects metabolic acidosis ... 87
    - Low risk of hyperchloremia ... 88
    - Effect on serum lactate levels ... 88
    - Use in lactic acidosis ... 88
    - Safety in hyperkalemia ... 88
    - Safety in neurological disorders ... 89
    - Use in liver disorders ... 89
    - Use in diabetic ketoacidosis ... 89
    - Precautions ... 89
  - Saline vs. balanced crystalloids: A review of literature ... 89
    - Trials: Superiority of balanced crystalloids ... 90
    - Trials: No difference between both groups ... 90
    - Meta-analysis and society guidelines ... 91
    - Trials: Superiority of normal saline ... 91
  - Crystalloids: Conclusions and current recommendations ... 92
    - Balanced crystalloids preferred firstline modality ... 92
    - Normal saline: Selective use preferred ... 92
- **Selection of Balanced Crystalloid ... 93**
  - Lactate vs. acetate buffer ... 93
  - Limitations of Ringer's lactate: Physiological basis ... 93
  - PlasmaLyte: Composition and advantages ... 94
  - RL vs. Acetate buffered solutions ... 94
  - Indications of newer balanced crystalloids ... 95
- **Colloids: Second-Line Therapy for Selective Use ... 96**
  - The rationale of use ... 96
    - Albumin trials ... 97
    - Hydroxyethyl starch trials ... 97
    - Colloids vs. crystalloids: Trials and reviews ... 98
  - Colloids: Current recommendations ... 98
    - Colloids not preferred over crystalloids ... 99
    - Albumin: Potent but costly ... 99
    - Hydroxyethyl starch: Avoid ... 100
    - Dextrans and gelatins: Not recommended ... 100
- **Guidelines for Blood Transfusion ... 100**

Fluid resuscitation is defined as a rapid administration of intravenous fluids used to restore or maintain a patient's circulatory volume during severe hypovolemia or shock due to significant and sudden fluid or blood losses. The most common indications of fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients are severe hypovolaemia, sepsis, trauma, burn, and perioperative volume loss [1]. The objective of fluid resuscitation is to quickly administer a large fluid volume to restore circulating volume, stabilize hemodynamics, and thereby restore tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery without causing harm due to fluid overload [2]. Identifying the cause of shock and treating it simultaneously is vital.

TIMING AND RATE OF FLUID ADMINISTRATION

Hypovolemic shock is a medical emergency, and fluid resuscitation should begin immediately. Delay in therapy can lead to ischemic injury and possibly to irreversible shock and multiorgan system failure. For initial fluid resuscitation, crystalloid fluids containing 130–154 mEq/L sodium are infused as a bolus of 500 mL within 15 minutes [1, 3]. Usually, one to two liters of fluid is administered rapidly to establish hemodynamic stability, maintain adequate blood flow to organs, and improve tissue perfusion. Fluid resuscitation should be done under close monitoring in high-risk patients who have kidney impairment or congestive heart failure to avoid fluid overload.

As per Surviving Sepsis Campaign recommendations (2021), in the resuscitation from sepsis-induced hypoperfusion, at least 30 mL/kg of IV crystalloid fluid should be given within the first 3 hours [4]. The use of an average fluid volume of around 30 mL/kg was supported by the PROCESS [5], ARISE [6], and PROMISE trials [7], where patients, on average, received this volume of fluid before randomization.

As early aggressive fluid resuscitation with large-bore IV cannulas is crucial in severe sepsis and septic shock, fluid resuscitation should be initiated earliest (after obtaining blood for measuring lactate and blood cultures) and should be completed within the first 3 hours. Earlier fluid resuscitation (within the first 3 hours) improves survival in patients with severe sepsis and septic shock [4]. Delayed administration of fluid (>2 hours after diagnosis) is the most crucial predictor of the fluid refractory state, which is associated with longer hospital stays and higher mortality [8].

If the patient does not respond to adequate fluid resuscitation, consider using vasopressors and inotropes and rule out other causes of shock besides hypovolemia (e.g., cardiogenic shock, sepsis) [9]. Consider earlier use of vasopressors in patients at risk of volume overload and to achieve the initial mean arterial pressure (MAP) target more rapidly.

An initial target of fluid resuscitation is to achieve a mean arterial pressure (MAP) of 65 mmHg [4]. Following initial fluid resuscitation, additional fluid infusion is planned based on a frequent assessment of clinical parameters, hemodynamic status, and laboratory tests.

The requirement for IV fluids changes over time. During the early salvage phase of shock (0–24 h), rapid fluid replacement in an adequate volume is essential. Fluid requirements decrease subsequently during optimization and stabilization phases (24–96 h), so the volume of fluids infusion should be reduced. Restrictive strategy during the last de-escalation phase (>96 h) is associated with better outcomes [10, 11].

TYPE OF FLUIDS FOR RESUSCITATION

The choice of resuscitation fluid depends on the severity and etiology of hypovolemic shock. Three major categories of fluids used for resuscitation are crystalloid fluids (normal saline, Ringer's lactate, and other chloride-restrictive balanced crystalloids such as Plasma-Lyte); colloids (albumin, hydroxyethyl starch (HES), dextran, and gelatine), and blood products (packed red blood cells).

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF FLUID SELECTION

Understating the basic physiology of the distribution of infused fluids helps in the selection of appropriate fluid for a given patient. When different IV fluids are infused, their distribution in various compartments of body fluids differs depending upon their composition (Table 8.1 and Figure 8.1). The ability of infused IV fluids to expand intravascular volume determines its effectiveness in raising blood pressure.

Avoiding 5% dextrose in the treatment of hypovolemic shock: 5% dextrose is typically avoided in the treatment of hypovolemic shock for several reasons:

1. **Poor expansion of intravascular volume:** 1000 ml of 5% dextrose increases the extracellular fluid (ECF) volume by only 330 ml, with just 83 ml (or 1/4 of the ECF) remaining in the intravascular space [12]. As 1 liter of 5% dextrose will increase the

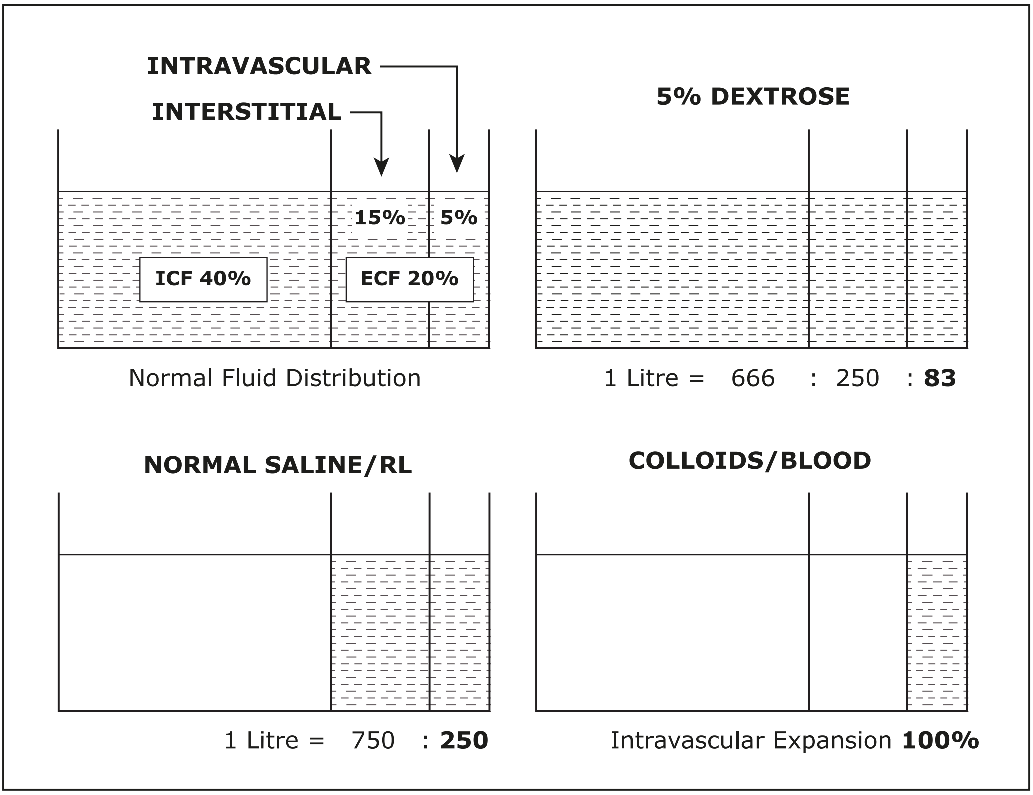

INTRAVASCULAR
INTERSTITIAL
15%
5%
ICF 40%
ECF 20%
Normal Fluid Distribution
5% DEXTROSE
1 Litre = 666 : 250 : 83
NORMAL SALINE/RL
1 Litre = 750 : 250
COLLOIDS/BLOOD
Intravascular Expansion 100%

Figure 8.1 Distribution of IV solutions in different fluid compartments.

Table 8.1 Distribution of IV solutions in body fluid compartments

Fluid distribution (1000 ml)	5% Dextrose	0.45% Saline	RL and 0.9% saline	Colloids/Blood products
Intracellular fluid (ml)	667	333	0	0
Extracellular fluid (ml)	333	667	1000	1000
Interstitial fluid (ml)	250	500	750	0
Intravascular fluid (ml)	83	167	250	1000

intravascular volume only by about 83 ml (8%), the rise in blood pressure will be poor in the patient with shock.

2. **Increased urine output due to osmotic diuresis:** Administering a large volume of 5% dextrose at a faster rate results in a glucose load of more than 25 gm/hour, inducing osmotic diuresis. So, even in the presence of hypovolemia, there will be increased urine output, which delays the correction of dehydration.

   Increased urine output will also create a false impression that the fluid deficit has been resolved. In such a setting, the rate of fluid replacement may be slowed down despite hypovolemia; therefore, hypotension may not improve. So, 5% dextrose should be avoided in the treatment of shock.

Selecting normal saline and Ringer's lactate as initial fluids for treating Hypovolemic shock: Crystalloid fluids such as normal saline and Ringer's lactate are sodium-rich electrolyte solutions and therefore are distributed only in the ECF compartment (25% in intravascular and 75% in interstitium). Infusion of 1 liter of these fluids will expand intravascular volume by about 250 ml, so the blood pressure rise will be much more rapid compared to 5%-dextrose [13].

As normal saline, Ringer's lactate and other chloride-restrictive balanced crystalloids are dextrose-free in an emergency when the patient's glycemic status is unknown; these fluids are safe for initial resuscitation. Moreover, compared to colloids, these fluids are inexpensive, readily available, noninfectious, reaction-free, and easy to store, so they are preferred for the initial treatment of shock.

The use of dextrose saline infusion for fluid resuscitation: Avoid using dextrose saline infusion for fluid resuscitation. 1000 ml of Dextrose saline contains 50 gm of dextrose (5% dextrose) and 154 mEq of sodium and chloride (0.9% NaCl). Faster infusion of fluid with 5% dextrose will cause hyperglycemia and resultant osmotic diuresis and increased urine output. Increased urine output in the presence of hypovolemia delays the correction of dehydration, which is not desirable. Therefore, all dextrose-containing fluids are not appropriate for fluid resuscitation [14].

Colloids and blood products: the most potent options for rapidly raising blood pressure during shock: For the prompt rise of blood pressure in shock, natural colloids (such as albumin), synthetic colloids (such as hydroxyethyl starches, gelatin solutions, and dextran), and blood products are more potent agents.

Large molecules of these agents do not readily cross the capillary membrane and, therefore, are primarily restricted to the intravascular compartment. In contrast to normal saline, where 3/4 of it enters the interstitium, the total volume of infused colloids and blood products remains in the vascular space. As 100%

of the infused volume stays in the vascular space and selectively expands the plasma volume, they will raise blood pressure rapidly.

Colloids carry a lesser risk of pulmonary edema since the increase in plasma oncotic pressure favors fluid movements out of the interstitium into the vascular space.

Despite the physiological potency and benefits of colloids, they are not the preferred or superior solution over crystalloids in clinical practice, as discussed later.

SELECTING IV FLUID FOR RESUSCITATION

From a variety of available choices, to choose the appropriate fluid for resuscitation, consider the composition, effectiveness, benefits, and disadvantages of different solutions. Three common IV replacement fluids used to manage hypovolemic shock are crystalloids, colloids, and blood products:

- **Crystalloids:** The most widely used first-line therapy in managing hypovolemic shock comprises crystalloids such as normal saline, Ringer's lactate, and PlasmaLyte.
- **Colloids:** Colloids are second-line resuscitation therapy used in selected patients with hypotension. Among colloids, the use of natural colloids like albumin, which is safe but highly expensive, is recommended in specific clinical settings. However, the use of synthetic colloids such as hydroxyethyl starch, dextran, and gelatin is not recommended, and they are avoided or discouraged due to their harmful effects and lack of benefits.
- **Blood Products:** Packed red blood cells or blood substitutes are essential for effective resuscitation for patients with significant blood loss or anemia associated with hypotension.

Each type of fluid comes with its characteristics and is chosen based on the specific needs and conditions of the patient.

CRYSTALLOID RESUSCITATION: FIRSTLINE THERAPY

Crystalloids like Normal saline and balanced crystalloids like Ringer's lactate and PlasmaLyte are the most frequently prescribed crystalloid solutions for resuscitation.

The selection between normal saline and balanced crystalloids depends on their respective clinical benefits and safety profiles, not solely on physiological characteristics. This choice remains a subject of ongoing controversy. To provide a clear and comprehensive understanding of the appropriate use of crystalloids, key studies, and guidelines that provide comparative insights are summarized below:

- Composition of commonly used IV crystalloids.
- Physiological basis, advantages, disadvantages, and preferred indications for using normal saline and balanced crystalloids.
- A literature review to address the ongoing controversy between saline and balanced crystalloids.
- Conclusions and current recommendations for appropriate use of crystalloids.

The composition of commonly used IV crystalloids

Understanding the composition of commonly used IV crystalloids is crucial

Table 8.2 Composition of plasma and IV crystalloid resuscitation fluids

	Na^+ mEq/L	K^+ mEq/L	Cl^- mEq/L	Acet. mEq/L	Lact. mEq/L	Ca^{2+} mEq/L	Mg^{2+} mEq/L	Gluc. mEq/L	Osm. mOsm/L	SID mEq/L
Plasma	136–145	3.5–5.0	98–106	-	-	2.2–2.6	0.8–1.0	-	285–295	40
0.9% NaCl	154	-	154	-	-	-	-	-	308	0
RL	130	4.0	109	-	28	3.0	-	-	273	28
PlasmaLyte	140	5.0	98	27	-	-	3.0	23	295	50
Sterofundin	145	4.0	127	24	-	5.0	2.0	-	309	29

Acet.: Acetate; Ca^{2+}: Calcium; Cl^-: Chloride; Gluc.: Gluconate; Lact.: Lactate; Mg^{2+}: Magnesium; Osm.: Osmolality; K^+: Potassium; Na^+: Sodium; SID: Strong ion difference

for their appropriate use in resuscitation; a comparison of these compositions with human plasma is summarized in Table 8.2.

A. Normal saline

Isotonic saline, or 0.9% saline (0.9% NaCl), often referred to as "normal saline", is among the most commonly used crystalloids for resuscitation worldwide. Below are the advantages and disadvantages of using normal saline.

Advantages

Major advantages of normal saline for resuscitation include:

- **Availability and compatibility:** It is readily available, cost-effective, and compatible with the co-infusion of blood products and medications like ceftriaxone [15].
- **Volume expansion:** With 154 mEq/L of sodium, it effectively expands intravascular volume and corrects hypotension.
- **Safe for specific conditions:** It is the preferred option for patients with brain injury, hypochloremia, hypovolemic hyponatremia, and metabolic alkalosis. As the osmolarity of normal saline is 308 mOsm/L (compared to normal plasma osmolality of about 285 mOsm/kg), its use for resuscitation in neurological patients is without the risk of cerebral edema.
- **Glucose-free:** Ideal for scenarios with unknown glycemic statuses due to its lack of glucose content.

Disadvantages

The use of normal saline can be harmful, as it is neither "normal" nor "physiological" [16]. Major disadvantages of normal saline for resuscitation include:

Nonphysiological composition: Normal saline differs from the balanced crystalloid Ringer's lactate in three key aspects:

1. It has a significantly higher chloride concentration (154 versus 109 mEq/L).
2. It lacks a buffer, essential for maintaining pH.
3. It does not contain several electrolytes, like potassium and calcium, that are present in plasma.

Harmful effects: Normal saline contains supraphysiologic chloride concentrations (154 mEq/L) -50% higher than human serum chloride concentration [17]. The infusion of large volumes of this high chloride-containing fluid can lead to hyperchloremic acidosis [18, 19], an increased risk of acute kidney injury [18, 20], a greater need for renal replacement therapy, higher hospital mortality [21–23], coagulopathy [24], hyperkalemia, and more pronounced interstitial fluid retention [25].

Hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis

Infusing a large volume of normal saline often results in a normal anion gap hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis [26, 27]. This effect can be attributed to factors such as the strong ion difference (SID), reduced bicarbonate (HCO3) reabsorption, and dilution of bicarbonate [28]:

- The SID of normal saline is zero; therefore, its infusion decreases plasma SID, leading to metabolic acidosis (SID: Normal value = 40; Normal saline = 0; RL = 28, PlasmaLyte = 50) [16, 29].
- Administering a large volume of normal saline reduces renal bicarbonate reabsorption, decreasing bicarbonate levels [30].
- Using large volumes of bicarbonate-free fluids like normal saline dilutes the bicarbonate concentration in the body, inducing dilutional acidosis [2, 31].

Risk of acute kidney injury (AKI)

Administering a large volume of normal saline can lead to hyperchloremia and an increase in chloride concentration in the distal tubular fluid. This elevated chloride level is sensed by macula densa cells located in the distal convoluted tubule. These tubular cells then transmit signals to the afferent arterioles, triggering vasoconstriction (known as "Tubuloglomerular Feedback"). This vasoconstriction, in turn, diminishes renal perfusion and reduces the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), potentially leading to acute kidney injury [16, 20, 27, 32, 33].

Use in hyperkalemia

Infusing a large volume of normal saline can induce hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, promoting the shift of potassium out of cells and potentially causing or worsening hyperkalemia. So, the simple logic that normal saline, because it does not contain potassium, is safe to use in hyperkalemia is a myth. On the contrary, Ringer's lactate does not cause any acidosis, and in a patient with hyperkalemia, it will actually lower his serum potassium level and, therefore, is safe. Thus, Ringer's lactate is often preferred over normal saline in cases of hyperkalemia [34–36].

B. Balanced crystalloids

Emerging evidence suggests that using normal saline as a resuscitation fluid leads to complications like hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, AKI, etc. Balanced crystalloids (buffered or chloride-restrictive solutions or balanced salt solutions) are the result of a search for safer fluid for resuscitation. Balanced crystalloids are more physiological than normal saline and are increasingly advocated as a first-line resuscitation fluid [15].

To provide a comprehensive overview of RL's optimal use, the sections below outline its basic physiology, benefits, applications in various electrolyte and clinical disorders, and potential disadvantages.

Balanced electrolyte composition

Balanced crystalloid solutions are formulated to closely mirror the electrolyte composition, osmolality, and pH of human plasma, enabling the administration of large volumes without the risk of electrolyte disturbances.

Provides buffer to prevent or correct metabolic acidosis

Balanced crystalloids contain precursors of bicarbonate (e.g., lactate and acetate) that are metabolized into bicarbonate, helping to correct metabolic acidosis [37–39]. This buffering effect is a significant advantage over normal saline, which lacks this buffering capacity. Since bicarbonate-containing solutions are unstable in plastic containers, alternative metabolizable anions like lactate, acetate, gluconate, and malate are used to formulate balanced crystalloids to ensure stability and efficacy.

Reduces the risks of hyperchloremia

Balanced crystalloid solutions containing significantly less chloride than normal saline, effectively reduce the incidence of an increase in plasma chloride levels [40]. The potential benefit of balanced crystalloid solutions comes from their lower chloride content (<112 mEq/L) and a strong ion difference (SID) that closely matches that of human plasma. The chloride concentrations in Ringer's lactate (109 mEq/L) and PlasmaLyte A (98 mEq/L) are similar to that of human plasma (102 mEq/L), contrasting with the high chloride concentration in normal saline (154 mEq/L) [41, 42].

Effect of RL on serum lactate levels

Despite each liter of Ringer's lactate containing 28 mmol of sodium lactate, its infusion in hemodynamically stable adults only transiently elevates lactate levels or does not significantly increase them compared to normal saline solution [43–46]. As the rise in serum lactate levels is very minimal (<1.00 mmol/L) following the infusion of RL, it may not significantly interfere with the interpretation of serial lactate measurements as an index of the severity of acidosis [44, 47].

Use in lactic acidosis misconceptions and facts

Contrary to a common misconception, the infusion of Ringer's lactate does not induce lactic acidosis. The avoidance of this solution due to fears of exacerbating lactic acidosis is based on a misunderstanding.

Clarification is needed regarding the difference between lactic acid and the sodium lactate contained in Ringer's lactate. Remember that lactic acid, consisting of anion lactate plus cation hydrogen and with a pH of 2.44 to 3.51, is an "acid", and it's harmful.

However, the sodium lactate in Ringer's lactate, a "conjugate base" consisting of anion lactate and cation sodium with a pH of 6.0 to 7.3, is benign, contrasting the harmful nature of lactic acid. So, in conclusion, interestingly, RL not only has the capacity to absorb hydrogen ions, potentially correcting acidosis or leading to metabolic alkalosis, but also, importantly, it does not cause lactic acidosis [48, 49].

Safety in hyperkalemia

Ringer's lactate contains 4 mEq/L potassium, whereas the potassium content of normal saline is zero. The common apprehension that potassium-containing Ringer's lactate is unsafe and should be avoided in patients with hyperkalemia is a myth [35, 50]. As the potassium concentration of Ringer's lactate is just 4 mEq/L, its administration cannot raise the value of serum potassium higher than its potassium concentration (i.e., 4 mEq/L) and, therefore, cannot lead to hyperkalemia. In contrast, the low potassium content in Ringer's lactate may cause the potassium level of a hyperkalemic patient to trend toward 4 mEq/L [51, 52].

98% of potassium is distributed within the intracellular compartment, and serum potassium levels are significantly influenced by a change in pH that shifts potassium. Acidosis triggers a shift of potassium from the intracellular fluid (ICF) to the extracellular fluid (ECF). Since Ringer's lactate rectifies acidosis, it not only prevents hyperkalemia but can actually reduce serum potassium levels, supporting its safety for patients with hyperkalemia. So, we can conclude that Ringer's lactate is safer than normal saline in hyperkalemia [34, 36, 52].

Safety in neurological disorders

RL is a hypotonic fluid with a plasma osmolarity of 273 mOsm/L, lower than the normal plasma osmolality of about 285 mOsm/kg. Because of its hypotonicity, RL can cause or exacerbate cerebral edema and should, therefore, be avoided in cases with a risk of raised intracranial pressure, such as aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage (aSAH), traumatic brain injury (TBI), and in patients undergoing neurosurgery [53–56].

Use in liver disorders

The lactate in RL is primarily metabolized into bicarbonate in the liver. The administration of RL is not an absolute contraindication for patients with liver dysfunction or cirrhosis, and its clinical impact remains unknown [57–59]. However, for those with severe or frank liver failure or post-liver transplantation, where a significant reduction in lactate metabolism is observed, bicarbonate-buffered solutions are often preferred over lactate-buffered ones [47, 60]. Balanced crystalloids, like PlasmaLyte, contain acetate instead of lactate, and acetate metabolism occurs in all body tissues and is not limited to liver tissues. So, PlasmaLyte can be used instead of RL in severe liver diseases.

Caution: Metabolic alkalosis can occur in patients with severe liver failure and cirrhotic patients due to vomiting, nasogastric suction, diuretics, and hypovolemia. It can promote ammonia production and predispose the development of hepatic encephalopathy. Therefore, balanced fluids that provide buffers and can aggravate metabolic alkalosis should be avoided in such patients.

Use in diabetic ketoacidosis

RL may be considered over normal saline for treating patients with diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) because it is dextrose-free and reduces the risk of hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. Additionally, it provides bicarbonate to correct acidosis and offers other benefits such as lower total cost, shorter hospital stays, and quicker, more efficient resolution of acidosis [61–65].

Precautions

Large volumes of balanced crystalloids may result in hyperlactatemia, metabolic alkalosis, and hypotonicity. As the osmolality of RL is low compared to plasma (273 vs. 290 mOsm/L), RL may exacerbate cerebral edema and therefore avoided in head injury and brain edema. As the capacity of the liver to metabolize lactate and generate bicarbonate is impaired in severe liver failure, the use of RL is avoided in such patients. Since Ringer's lactate contains calcium, it may not be suitable for co-infusion with blood products through the same IV line [15].

C. Saline vs. balanced crystalloids: A review of literature

To resolve the dilemma of choosing between normal saline and balanced crystalloids, establish the superiority of one fluid over the other, and provide evidence-based insights, we conducted an extensive review and analysis of various clinical trials, meta-analyses, and society guidelines. In this comprehensive review, evidence is categorized based on the superiority of each fluid, findings indicating no significant difference between the two, and insights from meta-analyses and society guidelines; a summary of conclusions and current recommendations is provided below.

1. Trials suggestive of the superiority of balanced crystalloids

- Shaw et al. (Ann Surg 2012) compared adult patients undergoing major open abdominal surgery who received either normal saline (30,994 patients) or a PlasmaLyte (926 patients) on the day of surgery. This study concluded that PlasmaLyte was associated with less postoperative morbidity than normal saline [66].
- Yunus et al. (JAMA 2012) compared the association of a chloride-restrictive vs. chloride-liberal IV fluid strategy with AKI in 760 critically ill patients. This study concluded that the chloride-restrictive strategy in a tertiary ICU was associated with a significant decrease in the incidence of AKI and the use of RRT [20].
- McCluskey et al. (Anesth Analg 2013) compared the impact of postoperative hyperchloremia in 22,851 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. This study concluded that postoperative hyperchloremia was associated with increased mortality, renal dysfunction, and length of hospital stay [67].
- Raghunathan et al. (Crit Care Med 2014) compared the outcome after resuscitation with balanced versus non-balanced fluids in 53,448 patients with sepsis in an ICU. This study concluded that among critically ill adults with sepsis, resuscitation with balanced crystalloids was associated with a lower risk of in-hospital mortality [68].
- SMART Trial (Semler et al. NEJM 2018) is a very large study that compared normal saline with balanced crystalloids among 15,802 critically ill adults. This study concluded that using balanced crystalloids resulted in a lower rate of death from any cause, RRT, or persistent renal dysfunction than using saline [69].
- SALT-ED Trial (Self et al. NEJM 2018) compared normal saline with balanced crystalloids among 13,347 noncritically ill adults. This study concluded that there was no difference in hospital-free days between both groups, but the use of balanced IV fluid resulted in a lower rate of death from any cause, RRT, or persistent renal dysfunction than the use of saline [70].

2. Trials and analysis suggestive of no difference between both groups

- The SPLIT Trial (Young et al. JAMA 2015) compared normal saline with PlasmaLyte in 2278 ICU patients and concluded that using a buffered crystalloid compared with saline did not reduce the risk of AKI [71]. A major limitation of this study was the median administration of a small volume of saline (<2 liters) and, therefore, a lesser risk of developing hyperchloremia.
- The SALT Trial (Semler et al. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2017) compared normal saline with balanced crystalloids in 974 ICU patients and concluded no difference in the overall incidence of AKI or major adverse kidney events [72].
- The BaSICS Trial (Zampieri et al. JAMA 2021), a multicenter, double-blind RCT involving 11,000 patients, compared normal saline with balanced crystalloids and concluded that there were no significant differences in mortality rates or AKI incidence [73].

- The PLUS Study (Finfer et al. NEJM 2022), a multicenter, double-blind RCT involving 5,000 patients, compared normal saline to balanced crystalloids and concluded that the balanced crystalloid group did not demonstrate reduced mortality or kidney injury [74].

3. Meta-analysis and society guidelines

- Krajewski et al. (Br J Surg 2015) reported in a meta-analysis of 21 studies involving 6,253 patients that the use of high-chloride fluids in perioperative or intensive care settings was associated with an increased risk of acute kidney injury, with no observed benefits on mortality [32].
- Cochrane Database Syst Rev. (2017) reported that perioperative administration of buffered versus non-buffered crystalloid fluids showed insufficient evidence of impacting mortality and organ system function but noted a significant reduction in postoperative hyperchloremia and metabolic acidosis with the use of buffered fluids [75].
- Surviving sepsis campaign guidelines (Evans et al. Crit Care Med 2021): The guidelines advise using crystalloids for both initial resuscitation and ongoing intravascular volume replenishment in adult patients with sepsis and septic shock [4]. The previous Surviving sepsis guidelines (2017) [76] suggested using either balanced crystalloids or saline, but in 2021, guidelines suggested using balanced crystalloids instead of normal saline for resuscitation [4].
- Hammond NE et al. (NEJM Evid 2022) conducted a Systematic Review with Meta-Analysis comparing balanced crystalloids to saline in critically ill adults and demonstrated reduced mortality in patients who received balanced crystalloids [77].
- Beran A et al. (J Clin Med 2022) demonstrated in their systematic review and meta-analysis that adults with sepsis treated with balanced crystalloids showed reduced mortality and AKI compared to those who received normal saline [78].
- Isha et al. (Front Med 2023) conducted a retrospective analysis that compared normal saline with balanced crystalloids in 2022 patients and found no significant difference in mortality rates, hospital stay, ICU admission rates, mechanical ventilation needs, oxygen therapy, and renal replacement therapy [79].
- Zampieri et al. (Lancet Respir Med. 2024) conducted a systematic review and meta-analysis, demonstrating lower in-hospital mortality associated with the use of balanced solutions compared to saline in the ICU [80].
- European Society of Intensive Care Medicine (ESICM) clinical practice guideline (Intensive Care Med. 2024): Recent ESICM Guidelines recommends the use balanced crystalloids instead of normal saline for resuscitation in severe volume depletion or hypovolemic shock in critical patients, and in patients with sepsis or kidney injury [56].

Various systematic reviews with meta-analyses and guidelines [4, 32, 56, 75, 77, 78, 80], except the recent one performed by Isha et al. on a small number of patients [79], suggesting that using balanced crystalloids offers some benefits compared to normal saline.

4. Trials suggestive of the superiority of normal saline

- To date, not a single study has demonstrated the superiority of saline over balanced crystalloids in the selection of appropriate resuscitation fluids. The absence of evidence establishing the superiority of saline indirectly reinforces the preference for using balanced crystalloids. This is consistent with the existing body of evidence highlighting the efficacy of balanced crystalloids in fluid resuscitation, even in the absence of high-quality reference evidence.

D. Crystalloids: conclusions and current recommendations

There is no clear consensus on recommending one crystalloid over others [81, 82]. However, suggestions are made based on the literature, as mentioned earlier, and various recent studies. However, it's crucial to acknowledge that the preference for using balanced crystalloids is without high-quality evidence [76, 83]. Given the low risk of harm and the real possibility of benefit, the use of balanced crystalloids could be a prudent choice in clinical practice [84]. Selecting resuscitation fluids considering history, cause, acid-base, and electrolyte disorders will be wise.

1. Balanced crystalloids preferred firstline modality

- The current trend in literature, including the recent Surviving Sepsis Campaign guideline (2021) and the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine fluid therapy guideline (2024), favors the use of isotonic, balanced crystalloids as the preferred resuscitation fluids [56, 69, 85–97]. The benefits of using balanced crystalloids are more evident in patients with sepsis, metabolic acidosis, hyperchloremia, increased creatinine, or those at risk of kidney injury [4, 56, 98].
- Ringer's lactate is suggested as the preferred resuscitation fluid in sepsis [37, 42, 84], acutely ill critical patients [99–101], surgical patients [66, 102], trauma [103, 104], high risk for acute kidney injury [105], acute pancreatitis [106–108], diarrhea, burns [109]. Benefits of balanced solutions are more evident when administering fluid in large volumes, particularly for septic patients [110, 111].
- Patients with metabolic acidosis should receive balanced crystalloids with an "alkalinizing" effect, while patients with metabolic alkalosis and hypochloremia should be treated with normal saline [112].
- Ringer's lactate should be avoided or used with caution in patients with severe metabolic alkalosis and hypochloremia (e.g., due to profound vomiting) [18], those with frank hepatic failure [113], and individuals with traumatic brain injury or at risk of increased intracranial pressure [18, 53].
- Although lactate metabolism may be impaired in patients with severe lactic acidosis, sepsis, or liver failure, Ringer's lactate does not cause or aggravate lactic acidosis [49, 50].
- Besides the fact that balanced crystalloids contain a small amount of potassium, the risk of hyperkalemia is significantly lower compared to normal saline [18, 35, 50].

2. Normal saline: selective use preferred

- Infusion of large quantities (>2 L) of supraphysiologic chloride containing normal saline can cause hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, acute kidney injury [114], coagulopathy, increased hemodynamic instability, and potential mortality and therefore is harmful [115].

- Avoid administering large volumes of chloride-rich normal saline to all patients, especially those at high risk for AKI or incipient AKI, due to the potential risk of acute kidney injury [105, 116].
- Small to moderate amounts of normal saline do not increase the incidence of acute kidney injury [71]. Thus, modest volumes of normal saline can be administered to patients with normal kidney function in the absence of hyperchloremia and sepsis [117–119].
- Normal saline is the fluid of choice for patients with metabolic alkalosis, hypovolemia due to vomiting or upper gastrointestinal suction, traumatic brain injury, and those receiving blood products [18, 39, 56, 90, 112–122].

SELECTION OF BALANCED CRYSTALLOID

The evidence supporting the use of balanced crystalloid solutions as preferred resuscitation fluids over saline is growing [1]. In addition to Ringer's lactate, other newer balanced crystalloids like PlasmaLyte, Sterofundin, and Ringer's acetate are commercially available. Table 8.2 provides a detailed comparison of the composition of these balanced crystalloids with the body's natural serum concentrations. However, selecting the appropriate one for practical use presents a dilemma. To choose the most suitable balanced crystalloid, considerations include:

- Understanding the difference between lactate and Acetate buffer.
- Physiological basis for limitations of Ringer's lactate.
- Understanding the composition of PlasmaLyte and its advantages.
- Evidence comparison of Ringer's lactate vs. PlasmaLyte.
- Summary and clinical indications of newer balanced crystalloids.

A. Understanding the difference between lactate and acetate buffer

Balanced crystalloids contain lactate and acetate as buffers and provide bicarbonate. Lactate is primarily metabolized in the liver, a process that can be impaired in patients with substantial liver dysfunction, extreme hypoxia, severe sepsis and septic shock, or tissue hypoperfusion due to any form of pronounced hypotension [123, 124]. In contrast, acetate is metabolized in tissues throughout the body, not just the liver, making it a more adaptable choice for patients with severe liver dysfunction [42, 125]. Importantly, metabolizing capacity of acetate is preserved in shock [39, 126]. Additionally, acetate is rapidly converted into bicarbonate and doesn't require significant oxygen, enhancing its suitability for diverse patient populations [42, 125].

B. Physiological basis for limitations of Ringer's lactate

Ringer's lactate remains the default choice among balanced crystalloids and is widely used as an effective resuscitation fluid in various clinical scenarios. However, certain compositional characteristics can make it a less suitable choice for specific patient populations. These limitations are associated with its:

- Use of lactate as a buffer: In cases of severe liver impairment, hypoxia, acidaemia, or shock, the body's ability to convert lactate into bicarbonate is compromised [123, 124]. This impairment leads to not only a lack of buffering benefits but also lactate accumulation and a rise in serum lactate levels [44]. Consequently, using lactate levels as markers for resuscitation effectiveness becomes challenging.

- Lower osmolality: As RL is a hypotonic fluid (osmolality of RL 278 mOsmol/L vs. plasma osmolality 290 mOsmol/L), use it with caution in neurological patients with cerebral edema [39].
- Lower sodium content: Since RL contains less sodium than plasma (130 mEq/L vs. 140 mEq/L serum sodium), administering it in large volumes can lead to hyponatremia.
- Calcium content: The presence of calcium in RL can lead to precipitation when mixed with citrate in blood transfusions [15].

C. Understanding the composition of PlasmaLyte and its advantages

The growing preference for PlasmaLyte is attributed to its unique composition, which closely mimics human plasma in terms of electrolyte content, osmolality, and pH [127]. The advantages of PlasmaLyte include not only the correction of volume and electrolyte deficits but also the improvement of acidosis. Here are the key compositional features that determine its benefits, as discussed below:

- Use of acetate as a buffer in PlasmaLyte: PlasmaLyte replaces the lactate in RL with anions like acetate, gluconate, and maleate as bicarbonate precursors. Acetate's ability to be metabolized both in the liver and other tissues of the body allows it to ensure the conversion to bicarbonate even in severe liver failure and shock [42, 125]. PlasmaLyte has better buffering agents and effects. Furthermore, PlasmaLyte doesn't affect serum lactate levels, ensuring accurate readings during shock.
- Osmolality equal to plasma: PlasmaLyte, having an osmolality equal to plasma (290 mOsmol/L), does not carry the risk of causing cerebral edema, unlike hypotonic fluids.
- Sodium concentration similar to plasma: The sodium concentration in PlasmaLyte is identical to that of plasma (140 mEq/L), reducing the risk of hyponatremia or hypernatremia during large-volume fluid infusion [42].
- Free of calcium content: Being free of calcium, PlasmaLyte mitigates the risk of calcium overload and avoids complications associated with the co-administration of blood products containing citrate, which can lead to calcium precipitation.
- Magnesium content: Hypomagnesemia is common in critically ill patients, and PlasmaLyte, containing 1.5 mmol/L of magnesium, can be beneficial in these cases. However, it should be used cautiously in patients at risk for hypermagnesemia.

D. A comparative review of literature on Ringer's lactate vs. acetate buffered solutions

While acetate-buffered solutions like PlasmaLyte have distinct compositional benefits, a thorough review of the existing literature is needed to determine their edge over Ringer's lactate. Recent literature offering insights into this ongoing debate is summarized below.

Evidence suggesting Acetate buffered solutions/PlasmaLyte is superior

- Curran et al. (2021): This systematic review with a meta-analysis of 24 trials noted that PlasmaLyte led to lower serum chloride and lactate levels and a higher base excess compared to Ringer's lactate, although the evidence is of low certainty [128].
- Ellekjaer et al. (2022): Another systematic review with a meta-analysis of five RCTs involving 390 patients found very limited, low-quality evidence supporting the use of acetate over lactate-buffered solutions in hospitalized patients for all-cause mortality [129].
- Priyanka et al. (2023): A study involving 80 children indicated a preference for PlasmaLyte over RL during perioperative fluid therapy for abdominal surgeries due to enhanced acid-base, serum electrolytes, and blood lactate profiles [130].
- Abdellatif et al. (2023): In a study with 80 children undergoing cardiac surgery, PlasmaLyte showed better lactate and calcium levels than Ringer's lactate when used as a priming solution [131].
- The inclusion of PlasmaLyte as a balanced crystalloid in recent major saline vs. balanced crystalloid trials such as SPLIT (2015), SALT (2017), SMART (2018), SALT-ED (2018), BaSICS (2021), and PLUS (2022) emphasizes its recognition and utility as a valuable option among balanced crystalloids [69–74].

Evidence suggesting equal effectiveness of Ringer's lactate and Acetate buffered solutions

- Weinberg et al. (2018): In a trial with 50 adults, PlasmaLyte and Hartmann's solution showed no significant differences in plasma bicarbonate levels, complications, or length of ICU and hospital stays during elective cardiac surgery with CPB [132].
- Pfortmueller et al. (2019): In a study of seventy-five patients undergoing cardiac surgery, the use of RL and Ringer's acetate showed similar effects on hemodynamic stability and the progression of acid-base parameters [133].
- Rawat et al. (2020): A study of fifty adult ICU patients with metabolic acidosis revealed no significant advantage of acetate solution over RL in either the speed or extent of acidosis correction [134].
- Chaussard et al. (2020): A comparison involving twenty-eight burn patients showed similar alkalinizing effects between PlasmaLyte and Ringer's lactate during fluid resuscitation. However, using PlasmaLyte resulted in significantly lower ionized calcium levels [135].

E. Summary and clinical indications of newer balanced crystalloids

The studies comparing different lactate vs. acetate-based balanced crystalloids are limited and often involve small patient cohorts, leading to no consensus on the preference for a single balanced solution [90, 136, 137]. Amongst balanced solutions, Ringer's lactate is the most preferred fluid as it is inexpensive, readily available, and its composition is favorable and more physiological. In contrast, an acetate-buffered crystalloid solution like PlasmaLyte is known for its distinct compositional advantages and is an excellent choice in specific scenarios where RL is relatively contraindicated [47]. However, it is essential to note that this preference has not yet escalated to the level of a strong recommendation. The trend to use newer balanced solutions like PlasmaLyte is growing, especially among critically ill patients with multiple organ failure and shock; however, their higher cost can be a limiting factor. The common conditions where the use of PlasmaLyte is suggested are outlined below:

- Diabetic ketoacidosis: The use of dextrose-free PlasmaLyte reduces the risk of hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, corrects acidosis by providing bicarbonate, and offers benefits like early and faster acidosis resolution, and reduces ICU and hospital stays leading to decreased total cost [62, 138, 139].
- Perioperative fluid therapy: The use of PlasmaLyte may result in improved acid-base status, serum electrolytes, and blood lactate profiles [130]. It may be useful in major open GI and liver surgeries, including liver transplantation and complex cardiac surgeries [42, 140].In postoperative patients, using PlasmaLyte for fluid replacement on the day of major surgery has been linked to lower mortality than normal saline [66].
- Critically ill patients: PlasmaLyte is likely the optimal choice for fluid resuscitation in most critically ill, trauma patients, except those with traumatic brain injury [141–143].
- Priming the CPB circuit: Using PlasmaLyte for priming in cardiopulmonary bypass can be associated with reduced metabolic acidosis and improved calcium levels [131, 144].
- Deceased donor kidney transplantation: Using PlasmaLyte may reduce the incidence of delayed graft function in deceased donor kidney transplantation in adults [145] and decrease the risk of acute electrolyte disturbances in children [146]. Based on the findings of the 'BEST-Fluids' trial, PlasmaLyte should be preferred over normal saline as the fluid of choice in deceased donor kidney transplantation [145].

COLLOIDS: SECOND-LINE THERAPY FOR SELECTIVE USE

Colloids are potent resuscitation agents that rapidly improve hemodynamics with small volumes for longer periods. However, they are recommended for fluid resuscitation in only a select few patients and not as a routine practice. Commercially available colloids include natural colloids, such as albumin, and synthetic colloids, such as hydroxyethyl starch, dextran, and gelatin. Among these colloids, judicious use of albumin in selected patients is recommended, but synthetic colloids like hydroxyethyl starch, dextran, and gelatin are usually avoided or discouraged. The rationale for limited use or recommendation against the use of various colloids is summarized below, considering the literature on their benefits, disadvantages, and adverse effects.

A. The rationale for using colloids in resuscitation

- Greater volume expansion: As colloid solutions remain in the vascular space, plasma volume expansion is greater with colloids as compared to crystalloids [147, 148]. As the volume of colloids required to correct hypovolemic shock is less [149, 150], colloids prevent complications associated with the large volume of crystalloids, such as hyperchloremic acidosis, dilutional coagulopathy, and tissue edema. Accumulation of crystalloids in tissues, including lungs and incision sites, can cause weight gain, anasarca, and delayed tissue healing [151, 152].

- Faster volume expansion: Colloids are statistically more effective than crystalloids in reaching resuscitative hemodynamic endpoints [153]. The benefit of speedier achievement of hemodynamic goals with colloids compared to crystalloids is less organ damage and a decreased incidence of organ failure [148].
- More prolonged volume expansion: Because of longer intravascular half-life, colloids remain in circulation for a longer period, resulting in lesser volume requirement and better hemodynamic stability compared to crystalloids [154–156].

Review of literature

Theoretical advantages of larger and rapid intravascular volume expansion with colloids are not translated to improvement in safety and long-term outcomes in several large studies and randomized controlled trials. Summaries of significant trials, systematic reviews, meta-analyses, and guidelines comparing crystalloids with colloids are provided below.

1. Albumin trials

- Cochrane Injuries Group Albumin Reviewers (BMJ 1998): Administration of albumin for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients may increase mortality [157].
- SAFE Study (Finfer et al. NEJM 2004): In ICU, using 4% albumin or saline for fluid resuscitation results in similar outcomes at 28 days [158].
- Cochrane Database Syst Rev (Roberts et al 2011): The review of 38 trials involving patients with hypovolemia concluded that there is no evidence suggesting that albumin decreases mortality among critically ill patients with burns and hypoalbuminemia. [159].
- Meta-analysis of five RCTs (Xu et al 2014): In this meta-analysis involving 3,658 patients with severe sepsis, those resuscitated with albumin, compared to crystalloid and saline, demonstrated a trend toward reduced 90-day mortality [160].
- Systematic review and meta-analysis (Patel et al 2014): In a study of 16 primary clinical trials including 4190 critically ill adults with sepsis, compared to crystalloids, albumin did not reduce all-cause mortality [161].
- ALBIOS Trial (Caironi et al. NEJM 2014): Comparing 20% albumin to crystalloid in 1800 septic patient resuscitation. No differences in mortality at 28 or 90 days [162].

2. Hydroxyethyl starch trials

- 6S Trial (Perner et al. NEJM 2012): Increased incidence of renal replacement therapy after HES and significantly higher 90-day mortality [163].
- CHEST Trial (Myburgh et al. NEJM 2012): Increased incidence of renal replacement therapy after HES [164].
- Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013: The review highlighted an overall increased risk of AKI and RRT in individuals treated with HES, indicating the detrimental effects of HES on kidney function compared to alternative fluids [165].
- Recommendation of European Medicines Agency (PRCA 2013): HES should be used at the lowest effective dose for

the shortest period. HES should not be used for more than 24 hours and monitor patients' kidney function for 90 days. HES should no longer be used in patients with sepsis, burns, or critically ill patients. HES should only be used to treat hypovolaemia caused by acute blood loss when crystalloids alone are insufficient [166].

- Recommendation of European Medicines Agency (PRCA July 2018): Because of potential adverse effects, HES should be used with additional measures of protection in selected patients with acute blood loss, where for resuscitation, 'crystalloids' alone are not sufficient. HES should be used at the lowest effective dose for the shortest duration (dose less than 30 mL/kg and maximum duration <24 hours) for the initial phase of volume resuscitation [167].
- Recommendation of European Medicines Agency (July 2022): The PRAC noted the persistent use of HES solutions in contraindicated populations, increasing the risk of severe harm and mortality. Given that the associated risks outweigh the benefits, they suspended the marketing of HES and recommended opting for safer therapeutic alternatives in line with clinical guidelines [168].

3. Colloids vs. crystalloids: Trials, reviews and guidelines

- CRISTAL Trial (Annane et al. JAMA 2013): No significant difference in 28-day mortality but lower 90-day mortality in patients receiving colloids [150].
- Cochrane Database Review of 78 RCTs (2013): Colloids are not associated with an improvement in survival and are much more expensive than crystalloids. Because of the lack of survival benefits and higher costs, the routine use of colloids in clinical practice cannot be justified [169].
- Cochrane Database Review (2018): Using colloids versus crystalloids probably makes little or no difference to mortality. Starches probably slightly increase the need for blood transfusion and RRT. With the use of albumin or FFP, there is little or no difference in the need for renal replacement therapy [170].
- A systematic review and meta-analysis (Martin et al. 2019): A recent meta-analysis of 55 randomized clinical trials by Martin and Bassett concluded that crystalloids were less effective than colloids in stabilizing resuscitation endpoints in patients with a critical illness (e.g., shock, trauma, and sepsis) [153].
- Surviving sepsis campaign guidelines (Evans et al. Crit Care Med 2021): The guidelines advise using crystalloids for both initial resuscitation and ongoing intravascular volume replenishment in adult patients with sepsis and septic shock [4].
- European Society of Intensive Care Medicine (ESICM) clinical practice guideline (Arabi et al. Intensive Care Med. 2024): The recent ESICM guidelines, in general, prefer the use of crystalloids over colloids for volume expansion during resuscitation, particularly for hypovolemia not caused by bleeding [56].

B. Colloids: Current recommendations

Based on the physiological basis, literature discussed above, and other recent reviews, various colloids' current roles, advantages, and disadvantages in fluid resuscitation are summarized below.

1. Colloids are potent but not safe or preferred over crystalloids

- Crystalloids and colloids are both effective, but evidence of comparative superiority and significant benefits of colloids are lacking; therefore, current trends and recommendations including the recent Surviving Sepsis Campaign guideline (2021) and the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine fluid therapy guideline (2024), favor crystalloids over colloids for the resuscitation of nonseptic and septic patients [56, 85, 86, 97, 103, 170–172], and no indications currently exist for the routine use of colloids over crystalloids [156].
- The potential benefit of colloids to provide better hemodynamic stability is due to their effectiveness in achieving greater, rapid, and prolonged intravascular volume expansion [173].
- During resuscitation, colloids are usually used along with crystalloids when patients are likely to require a large volume of crystalloids to expand the intravascular volume [174]. Adding colloids can achieve hemodynamic stability with a smaller fluid volume, thereby reducing the risk of positive fluid balance and the associated complications, such as fatal pulmonary edema and systemic organ dysfunction that can arise from administering larger volumes of crystalloids [153].
- Colloid solutions other than albumin (e.g., Hydroxyethyl starch dextran, gelatin) are not used routinely because of lack of benefits, safety, and potential adverse effects. Several studies have demonstrated increased risks, including tubular necrosis and acute kidney injury (AKI), associated with synthetic colloid treatment [175].

2. Albumin: Safe, potent but costly option, use selectively

- Albumin is not recommended as the first-line fluid for resuscitation in both nonseptic and septic patients; instead, it should be considered a second-line option for fluid resuscitation, along with crystalloids [4, 56, 176], and in patients with cirrhosis [56]. Albumin is indicated as an adjunct to crystalloids when a patient is unresponsive to crystalloids, requires substantial amounts of crystalloids to achieve hemodynamic endpoints, or cannot tolerate large-volume crystalloid resuscitation [4, 90, 153, 177]. Albumin helps to reduce the total infused volume of crystalloids for hemodynamic stability [4, 136, 178]. IV human albumin solution is more effective for resuscitation when patients have hypoalbuminemia [178]. In septic patients, early administration of the combination of albumin (particularly 20% albumin) with balanced crystalloids within the first 24 hours of treatment decreases mortality [95, 179–181]. The use of albumin is recommended in treatment of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, hepatorenal syndrome, large-volume paracentesis (>5 L) [176], and in patients with cirrhosis [56].
- The 30 to 100 times higher cost of albumin compared to crystalloids, along with occasional supply shortages, serves as a significant limiting factor for its use [156, 182–185].
- Avoid albumin for resuscitation in patients with severe traumatic brain injury (TBI) [54–56, 95, 186–188]. The most likely mechanism of increased mortality in patients with severe TBI is the increased intracranial pressure associated with using albumin for resuscitation. 4%

albumin is hypotonic (260 mOsmol/kg) and therefore increases brain edema [120].

3. Hydroxyethyl starch is harmful; avoid it

- Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) was once the most commonly used colloid, but due to its adverse effects, current recommendations are against its use [189]. HES is currently indicated as an adjuvant therapy for treating hypovolemia induced by acute blood loss when crystalloids alone are insufficient [190].
- HES is associated with several adverse effects including an increased risk of acute kidney injury, a higher need for renal replacement therapy, excessive postoperative bleeding, an increased need for blood transfusions, and a higher mortality rate [163].
- Strict limitations and cautious use of HES: Both the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) [191] and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) have raised concerns about the safety of HES due to its significant harmful effects. Responding to these concerns, the EMA issued guidelines in 2013 restricting the use of HES, and these guidelines were further tightened in July 2018 [167]. According to the revised guidelines, HES should only be administered during the initial phase of fluid resuscitation, and its dosage should not exceed 30 mL/kg. Additionally, the treatment duration should be as short as possible, not extending beyond 24 hours, and it is mandatory to monitor the patient's kidney function for at least 90 days following the administration of HES [167].
- Advise against using HES: Despite implementing risk minimization measures in 2018, the use of HES persisted in populations where it posed significant health risks, including an increased mortality rate. Owing to non-compliance with product guidelines and its misuse beyond approved recommendations, the EMA suspended the use of HES on 24 June 2022 [192].

4. Dextrans and gelatins are not recommended

- Gelatin use is associated with an increased risk of anaphylaxis, AKI, bleeding, and mortality [173, 193–195]. Given that the side effects outweigh the potential benefits [82], the Surviving Sepsis Campaign Guidelines (2021) advise against using gelatin for acute resuscitation in adults with sepsis and septic shock [4].
- Dextrans are frequently utilized in vascular surgery due to their beneficial effects, such as reducing blood viscosity and potentially enhancing microvascular circulation, particularly following grafting procedures [90]. However, their use is restricted due to associated adverse effects like antithrombotic actions [196], renal dysfunction [197], hypersensitivity reactions [198], and interference with blood grouping and cross-matching. Notably, dextrans present a higher risk of severe anaphylactic reactions compared to gelatines or starches [147].

GUIDELINES FOR BLOOD TRANSFUSION IN HYPOVOLEMIC SHOCK

In the management of hypovolemic shock resulting from massive blood loss or active bleeding, administering blood transfusions in addition to fluid replacement and hemorrhage control is essential for restoring hemodynamic stability.

Transfusion decisions should always be based on the patient's clinical state:

1. In hospitalized, hemodynamically stable adult patients, blood transfusion is necessary if the hemoglobin level drops to ≤7 gm/dL (hematocrit ≤21%) [199].
2. In patients at high risk of adverse effects, including those undergoing cardiac surgery or exhibiting evidence of myocardial or other organ ischemia, a blood transfusion is required if hemoglobin drops to ≤8 gm/dL, aiming to maintain the hemoglobin level at ≥8 gm/dL.
3. In patients with ongoing significant bleeding and hypovolemia, the need for transfusion is determined based on pulse and blood pressure, the rate of bleeding, and estimated blood loss rather than solely relying on serial hemoglobin measurements. When a large volume of blood is needed, infuse one unit of plasma, one unit of platelets, and one unit of red blood cells (1:1:1 ratio), as suggested by the massive transfusion protocol [200].
4. Avoid liberal blood transfusion; hemoglobin and hematocrit should not be raised over 10 gm/dL and 30%, respectively [201]. A higher hematocrit level is unnecessary for oxygen transport and may increase blood viscosity, leading to stasis in the already impaired capillary circulation.

REFERENCES

1. Hoste EA, Maitland K, Brudney CS, et al. Four phases of intravenous fluid therapy: a conceptual model. Br J Anaesth 2014;113(5):740–7.
2. Hoorn EJ. Intravenous fluids: balancing solutions. J Nephrol. 2017;30(4):485–492.
3. Padhi S, Bullock I, Li L, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy for adults in hospital: summary of NICE guidance. BMJ 2013;347:f7073.
4. Evans L, Rhodes A, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2021. Crit Care Med 2021;49:e1063–143.
5. Yealy DM, Kellum JA, Huang DT, et al. ProCESS Investigators: A randomized trial of protocol-based care for early septic shock. N Engl J Med 2014;370(18):1683–1693.
6. Peake SL, Delaney A, Bellomo R, et al. ARISE Investigators: Goal-directed resuscitation in septic shock. N Engl J Med 2015;372(2):190–191.
7. Mouncey PR, Osborn TM, Power GS, et al. ProMISe Trial Investigators: Trial of early, goal-directed resuscitation for septic shock. N Engl J Med 2015;372(14):1301–1311.
8. Leisman DE, Doerfler ME, Schneider SM, et al. Predictors, Prevalence, and Outcomes of Early Crystalloid Responsiveness Among Initially Hypotensive Patients With Sepsis and Septic Shock. Crit Care Med. 2018;46(2):189–198.
9. Pollard S, Edwin SB, Alaniz C. Vasopressor and inotropic management of patients with septic shock. pharmacy and therapeutics. 2015;40(7):438–50.
10. Rewa O, Bagshaw SM. Principles of fluid management. Crit Care Clin 2015;31(4):785–801.
11. Myburgh JA. Fluid resuscitation in acute medicine: what is the current situation? Journal of Internal Medicine 2015;277(1):58–68.
12. Popescu M. Albumin therapy in critically ill patients. Cleveland clinic pharmacotherapy Update 2009; Volume XII, No. V.
13. Yartsev A. Response to 1L of normal saline. Deranged physiology 2015 (https://derangedphysiology.com/main/core-topics-intensive-care/manipulation-fluids-and-electrolytes/Chapter%202.3.3/response-1l-normal-saline).
14. Chin KJ, Macachor J, Ong KC, et al. A comparison of 5% dextrose in 0.9% normal saline versus non-dextrose-containing crystalloids as the initial intravenous replacement fluid in elective surgery. Anaesth Intensive Care 2006;34(5):613–7.
15. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation fluids. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(13):1243–51.
16. Li H, Sun SR, Yap JQ, et al. 0.9% saline is neither normal nor physiological. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B. 2016;17(3):181–187.
17. Awad S, Allison SP, Lobo DN. The history of 0.9% saline. Clin Nutr. 2008;27(2):179–188.
18. Lobo DN, Awad S. Should chloride-rich crystalloids remain the mainstay of fluid resuscitation to prevent "pre-renal" acute kidney injury?: con. Kidney International. 2014;86(6):1096–1105.
19. Besen BA, Gobatto AL, Melro LM, et al. Fluid and electrolyte overload in critically ill patients: An overview. World J Crit Care Med 2015;4(2):116–129.
20. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Hegarty C, et al. Association between a chloride-liberal vs chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration strategy

and kidney injury in critically ill adults. JAMA 2012;308(15):1566–72.

21. Neyra JA, Canepa-Escaro F, Li X, et al. Acute kidney injury in critical illness study G. Association of hyperchloremia with hospital mortality in critically ill septic patients. Crit Care Med. 2015;43(9):1938–44.
22. Sen A, Keener CM, Sileanu FE, et al. Chloride content of fluids used for large-volume resuscitation is associated with reduced survival. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(2):e146–e153.
23. Kim HJ, Oh TK, Song IA, et al. Association between fluctuations in serum chloride levels and 30-day mortality among critically ill patients: a retrospective analysis BMC Anesthesiol 2019;19(1):79.
24. Fisher AD, Carius BM. Three reasons not to use normal saline or crystalloids in trauma. JEMS March 2018; https://www.jems.com/2018/03/14/three-reasons-not-to-use-saline-or-crystalloids-in-trauma/.
25. Farkas J. Nine reasons to quit using normal saline for resuscitation. EMCrit Project. https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/smart/. Published 2018. Accessed 2018.
26. Scheingraber S, Rehm M, Sehmisch C, et al. Rapid saline infusion produces hyperchloremic acidosis in patients undergoing gynecologic surgery. Anesthesiology. 1999;90(5):1265–1270.
27. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Story D, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: chloride in critical illness. Critical Care; 2010;14(4):226.
28. Reddi BAJ. Why is saline so acidic (and does it really matter?) Int J Med Sci 2013;10(6):747–750.
29. Morgan TJ. The meaning of acid-base abnormalities in the intensive care unit–effects of fluid administration. Crit Care. 2005;9(2):204–11.
30. Nagami GT. Hyperchloremia - Why and how. Nefrologia 2016;36(4):347–353.
31. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Management of life-threatening acid-base disorders. First of two parts. N Engl J Med. 1998;338(1):26–34.
32. Krajewski ML, Raghunathan K, Paluszkiewicz SM, et al. Meta-analysis of high- versus low-chloride content in perioperative and critical care fluid resuscitation. Br J Surg 2015;102(1):24–26.
33. Ginter D, Gilfoyle E, Wade A, et al. Hyperchloremia and association with acute kidney injury in critically ill children. Pediatr Nephrol. 2023;38(7):2233–2242.
34. Khajavi MR, Etezadi F, Moharari RS, et al. Effects of normal saline vs. Lactated ringer's during renal transplantation. Ren Fail. 2008;30(5):535–9.
35. Farkas J. Myth-busting: lactated Ringers is safe in hyperkalemia, and is superior to ns. PulmCrit.org (EMCrit) 2014 (https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/myth-busting-lactated-ringers-is-safe-in-hyperkalemia-and-is-superior-to-ns/).
36. Weinberg L, Harris L, Bellomo R, et al. Effects of intraoperative and early postoperative normal saline or Plasmalyte 148® on hyperkalaemia in deceased donor renal transplantation: a double-blind randomized trial. Br J Anaesth. 2017;119(4):606–615.
37. White SA, Goldhill DR. Is Hartmann's the solution? Anaesthesia 1997;52(5):422–427.
38. Metabolic fate of lactate, acetate, citrate and gluconate. June, 2015. http://www.derangedphysiology.com/main/core-topics-intensive-care/manipulation-fluids-and-electrolytes/Chapter%204.1.4/metabolic-fate-lactate-acetate-citrate-and-gluconate.
39. Reddy S, Weinberg L, Young P. Crystalloid fluid therapy. Critical Care; 2016;20:59.
40. Raman S, Gibbons KS, Mattke A, et al. Effect of Saline vs Gluconate/Acetate-Buffered Solution vs Lactate-Buffered Solution on Serum Chloride Among Children in the Pediatric Intensive Care Unit: The SPLYT-P Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Pediatr. 2023;177(2):122–131.
41. Semler MW, Rice TW. Saline is not the first choice for crystalloid resuscitation fluids. Crit Care Med. 2016;44(8):1541–1544.
42. Weinberg L, Collins N, Mourik KV, et al. Plasma-lyte 148: a clinical review. World Journal of Critical Care Medicine. 2016;5(4):235–250.
43. Didwania A, Miller J, Kassel D, et al. Effect of intravenous lactated Ringer's solution infusion on the circulating lactate concentration: Part 3. Results of a prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Crit Care Med. 1997;25(11):1851–4.
44. Zitek T, Skaggs ZD, Rahbar A, et al. Does Intravenous Lactated Ringer's Solution Raise Serum Lactate? J Emerg Med. 2018;55(3):313–318.
45. Hernandez G, Bellomo R, Bakker J. The ten pitfalls of lactate clearance in sepsis. Intensive Care Med. 2019;45(1):82–85.
46. Limapichat T, Pattanapong K. Normal Saline Solution or Lactated Ringer's Solution to Enhance Lactate Clearance in Septic Patients After Initial Resuscitation in the ED: A Retrospective Cohort Trial. Open Access Emerg Med. 2021;13:511–519.
47. Farkas J. Fluid selection & pH-guided fluid resuscitation. Pulmcrit (EMCrit) June 2019 https://emcrit.org/ibcc/fluid/.
48. Yartsev A. Response to 1L of Hartmann's compound sodium lactate. Deranged Physiology June 25, 2015 https://derangedphysiology.com/main/core-topics-intensive-care/manipulation-fluids-and-electrolytes/Chapter%202.3.4/response-1l-hartmanns-compound-sodium-lactate.
49. Farkas J. Three myths about Plasmalyte, Normosol, and LR. PulmCrit January 26, 2015 https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/three-myths-about-plasmalyte-normosol-and-lr/.
50. Singh S, Davis D. Ringer's Lactate. [Updated 2019 Mar 22]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2019 Jan. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK500033/.
51. O'Malley CMN, Frumento RJ, Hardy MA, et al. A randomized, double-blind comparison of lactated Ringer's solution and 0.9% NaCl during renal transplantation. Anesth Analg. 2005;100(5):1518–1524.
52. Modi MP, Vora KS, Parikh GP, et al. A Comparative study of impact of infusion of Ringer's lactate solution versus normal saline on acid–base balance and serum electrolytes. Saudi J Kidney Dis Transplant. 2012;23(1):135–137.

53. Tommasino C, Picozzi V. Volume and electrolyte management. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol. 2007;21(4):497–516.
54. Ryu T. Fluid management in patients undergoing neurosurgery. Anesth Pain Med (Seoul). 2021;16(3):215–224.
55. Rossaint R, Afshari A, Bouillon B, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma: sixth edition. Crit Care. 2023;27(1):80.
56. Arabi YM, Belley-Cote E, Carsetti A, et al. European Society of Intensive Care Medicine clinical practice guideline on fluid therapy in adult critically ill patients. Part 1: the choice of resuscitation fluids. Intensive Care Med. 2024;50(6):813–831.
57. Yoo HK, Cheong MA, Jong Won Lee JW, et al. Effects of Lactated Ringer's Solution on Acid-Base and Serum Electrolyte Levels during Liver Surgery in Cirrhosis Patients. Korean J Anesthesiol. 2004;47(3):361–367.
58. Singh S, Kerndt CC, Davis D. Ringer's Lactate. [Updated 2023 Aug 14]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2023 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK500033/.
59. Jimenez JV, Garcia-Tsao G, Saffo S. Emerging concepts in the care of patients with cirrhosis and septic shock. World J Hepatol 2023;15(4):497–514.
60. Ellekjaer KL, Perner A, Jensen MM, et al. Lactate versus acetate buffered intravenous crystalloid solutions: a scoping review. Br J Anaesth. 2020;125(5):693–703.
61. Bergmann KR, Abuzzahab MJ, Nowak J, et al. Resuscitation with Ringer's lactate compared with normal saline for pediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Pediatr Emerg Care 2021;37(5):e236–e242.
62. Jahangir A, Jahangir A, Siddiqui FS, et al. Normal Saline Versus Low Chloride Solutions in Treatment of Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review of Clinical Trials. Cureus. 2022;14(1):e21324.
63. Catahay JA, Polintan ET, Casimiro M, et al. Balanced electrolyte solutions versus isotonic saline in adult patients with diabetic ketoacidosis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Heart Lung. 2022;54:74–79.
64. Alghamdi NA, Major P, Chaudhuri D, et al. Saline Compared to Balanced Crystalloid in Patients With Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Critical Care Explorations. 2022;4(1):e0613.
65. Johnson J, Drincic A, Buddenhagen E, et al. Evaluation of a Protocol Change Promoting Lactated Ringers Over Normal Saline in the Treatment of Diabetic Ketoacidosis. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2024;18(3):549–555
66. Shaw AD, Bagshaw SM, Goldstein SL, et al. Major complications, mortality, and resource utilization after open abdominal surgery: 0.9% saline compared to plasma-lyte. Ann Surg 2012;255(5):821–829.
67. McCluskey SA, Karkouti K, Wijeysundera D, et al. Hyperchloremia after noncardiac surgery is independently associated with increased morbidity and mortality: a propensity-matched cohort study. Anesth Analg 2013;117(2):412–21.
68. Raghunathan K, Shaw A, Nathanson B, et al. Association between the choice of IV crystalloid and in-hospital mortality among critically ill with sepsis. Crit Care Med 2014;42(7):1585–91.
69. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. (SMART Trial) N Engl J Med 2018;378(9):829–39.
70. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in noncritically ill adults. (SALT-ED Trial) N Engl J Med 2018;378(9):819–28.
71. Young P, Bailey M, Beasley R, et al. Effect of a buffered crystalloid solution vs saline on acute kidney injury among patients in the intensive care unit: the SPLIT randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2015;314(16):1701–1710.
72. Semler MW, Wanderer JP, Ehrenfeld JM, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in the intensive care unit. The SALT randomized trial. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2017;195(10):1362–1372.
73. Zampieri FG, Machado FR, Biondi RS, et al. Effect of Intravenous Fluid Treatment With a Balanced Solution vs 0.9% Saline Solution on Mortality in Critically Ill Patients: The BaSICS Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA. 2021;326(9):1–12.
74. Finfer S, Micallef S, Hammond N, et al. PLUS Study Investigators and the Australian New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group. Balanced Multielectrolyte Solution versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults. N Engl J Med. 2022;386(9):815–826.
75. Bampoe S, Odor PM, Dushianthan A, et al. Perioperative administration of buffered versus non-buffered crystalloid intravenous fluid to improve outcomes following adult surgical procedures. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;9(9):CD004089.
76. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(3):486–552.
77. Hammond NE, Zampieri FG, Di Tanna GL, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults — A Systematic Review with Meta-Analysis. NEJM Evid 2022;1(2).
78. Beran A, Altorok N, Srour O, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Normal Saline in Adults with Sepsis: A Comprehensive Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. J Clin Med. 2022;11(7):1971.
79. Isha S, Satashia PH, Yarrarapu SNS, et al. A retrospective analysis of normal saline and lactated ringers as resuscitation fluid in sepsis. Front Med (Lausanne). 2023;10:1071741.
80. Zampieri FG, Cavalcanti AB, Di Tanna GL, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline for critically ill patients (BEST-Living): a systematic review and individual patient data meta-analysis. Lancet Respir Med. 2024;12(3):237–246.
81. Shankar M, Trinidad C, Tannor EK, et al. Balanced Solutions Versus Saline to Reduce AKI: A #NephJC Editorial on the BaSICS Trial. Kidney Med. 2022;4(6):100472.

82. Moschopoulos CD, Dimopoulou D, Dimopoulou A, et al. New Insights into the Fluid Management in Patients with Septic Shock. Medicina (Kaunas). 2023;59(6):1047.
83. Antequera Martín AM, Barea Mendoza JA, Muriel A, et al. Buffered solutions versus 0.9% saline for resuscitation in critically ill adults and children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2019;7(7):CD012247.
84. Drew D, Hendin A, Eagles D. Which crystalloid should we be using for the resuscitation of septic patients? CJEM. 2023;25(1):20–21.
85. Miller TE, Bunke M, Nisbet P, et al. Fluid resuscitation practice patterns in intensive care units of the USA: a cross-sectional survey of critical care physicians. Perioper Med (Lond) 2016;5:15.
86. Jonsson AB, Perner A. Changes from 2012 to 2015 in intravenous fluid solutions issued to hospital departments. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2017;61(5):532–538.
87. Severs D, Hoorn EJ, Rookmaaker MB. A critical appraisal of intravenous fluids: from the physiological basis to clinical evidence. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2015;30(2):178–87.
88. Glassford NJ, French CJ, Bailey M, et al. Changes in intravenous fluid use patterns in Australia and New Zealand: evidence of research translating into practice. Crit Care Resusc. 2016;18(2):78–88.
89. Semler MW, Kellum JA. Balanced Crystalloid Solutions. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;199(8):952–960.
90. Mayerhöfer T, Shaw AD, Wiedermann CJ, et al. Fluids in the ICU: which is the right one? Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2023;38(7):1603–1612.
91. Zampieri FG, Bagshaw SM. Making (numerical) sense of recent trials comparing balanced and normal saline intravenous solutions in the critically ill. Br J Anaesth. 2023;131(1):e10–e13.
92. Nam JH, Kwack HJ, Ha WS, et al. Resuscitation Fluids for Patients at High Risk of Multiple Organ Dysfunction Syndromes: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. Korean J Clin Pharm 2022;32(3):251–259.
93. Kherallah M. Balanced fluid or saline for critically-ill patients? ICU Reach. Updated 2022 Oct 7. Available from: https://www.icureach.com/post/balanced-fluid-or-saline-for-critically-ill-patients.
94. Qayyum S, Shahid K. Fluid Resuscitation in Septic Patients. Cureus. 2023;15(8):e44317.
95. Tseng CH, Chen TT, Wu MY, et al. Resuscitation fluid types in sepsis, surgical, and trauma patients: a systematic review and sequential network meta-analyses. Crit Care. 2020;24(1):693.
96. Guarino M, Perna B, Cesaro AE, et al. 2023 Update on Sepsis and Septic Shock in Adult Patients: Management in the Emergency Department. Journal of Clinical Medicine. 2023;12(9):3188.
97. Yealy DM, Mohr NM, Shapiro NI, et al. Early Care of Adults With Suspected Sepsis in the Emergency Department and Out-of-Hospital Environment: A Consensus-Based Task Force Report. Ann Emerg Med. 2021;78(1):1–19.
98. Prabhakar A, Bhargava V. Balanced Salt Solutions: Are We Crystal Clear or Still Murky? ASN Kidney News 2022;14(12):25–26.
99. Raghunathan K, Murray PT, Beattie WS, et al. Choice of fluid in acute illness: what should be given? An international consensus. Br J Surg 2014;113(5):772–83.
100. Martin C, Cortegiani A, Gregoretti C, et al. Choice of fluids in critically ill patients. BMC Anesthesiology 2018;18(1):200.
101. Hammond DA, Lam SW, Rech MA, et al. Balanced Crystalloids Versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. Ann Pharmacother. 2020;54(1):5–13.
102. Miller TE, Myles PS. Perioperative fluid therapy for major surgery. Anesthesiology 2019;130(5):825–832.
103. Spahn DR, Bouillon B, Cerny V, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma: Fifth edition Critical Care 2019;23(1):98.
104. Cantle PM, Cotton BA. Balanced resuscitation in trauma management. Surg Clin North Am. 2017;97(5):999–1014.
105. Ostermann M, Liu K, Kashani K. Fluid management in acute kidney injury. Chest 2019;156(3):594–603.
106. Iqbal U, Anwar H, Scribani M. Ringer's lactate versus normal saline in acute pancreatitis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. J Dig Dis. 2018;19(6):335–341.
107. Guzmán-Calderón E, Diaz-Arocutipa C, Monge E. Lactate Ringer's Versus Normal Saline in the Management of Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Dig Dis Sci. 2022;67(8):4131–4139.
108. Yaowmaneerat T, Sirinawasatien A. Update on the strategy for intravenous fluid treatment in acute pancreatitis. World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther. 2023;14(3):22–32.
109. ISBI Practice Guidelines Committee; Steering Subcommittee; Advisory Subcommittee. ISBI Practice Guidelines for Burn Care. Burns. 2016;42(5):953–1021.
110. Zampieri FG, Machado FR, Veiga VC, et al. Determinants of fluid use and the association between volume of fluid used and effect of balanced solutions on mortality in critically ill patients: a secondary analysis of the BaSICS trial. Intensive Care Med. 2024;50(1):79–89.
111. Klouche K, Monnet X, Zarbock A. Balanced solution versus saline in critically ill patients: a new piece to the puzzle! Intensive Care Med. 2024;50(1):134–135.
112. Yartsev A. Normal saline vs balanced crystalloids as resuscitation fluid. Deranged Physiology. June 10, 2016 https://derangedphysiology.com/main/required-reading/electrolytes-and-fluids/Chapter%202.2.6/normal-saline-vs-balanced-crystalloids-resuscitation-fluid.
113. Lactated Ringers FDA prescribing information. Mar 1, 2019 - Accessed on 24 Sept 2019. https://www.drugs.com/pro/lactated-ringers.html.

114. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Glassford N, et al. Chloride-liberal vs. Chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration and acute kidney injury: an extended analysis. Intensive Care Med 2015;41(2):257–64.
115. Pfortmueller CA, Kabon B, Schefold JC, et al. Crystalloid fluid choice in the critically ill: current knowledge and critical appraisal. Wien Klin Wochenschr 2018;130(7–8):273–82.
116. Rein J, Coca S. I don't get no respect": the role of chloride in acute kidney injury. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2019;316(3):F587–F605.
117. Palevsky PM. Intravenous Fluids Finding the right balance. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2018;13(12):1912–1914.
118. Lim JY, Kang PJ, Jung SH, et al. Effect of high-versus low-volume saline administration on acute kidney injury after cardiac surgery. J Thorac Dis 2018;10(12):6753–62.
119. Romagnoli S, Ricci Z. Intravenous sodium and chloride: not too much, not too quick, and only to healthy kidneys! J Thorac Dis. 2019;11(9):S1180–S1183.
120. Ertmer C, Van Aken H. Fluid therapy in patients with brain injury: what does physiology tell us? Crit Care. 2014;18(2):119.
121. Berend K, de Vries AP, Gans RO. Physiological approach to assessment of acid-base disturbances. N Engl J Med 2014;371(15):1434–1445.
122. Haddad SH, Arabi YM. Critical care management of severe traumatic brain injury in adults. Scandinavian Journal of Trauma, Resuscitation and Emergency Medicine. 2012;20:12.
123. Sterling SA, Puskarich MA, Jones AE. The effect of liver disease on lactate normalization in severe sepsis and septic shock: a cohort study. Clin Exp Emerg Med. 2015;2(4):197–202.
124. Andersen LW, Mackenhauer J, Roberts JC, et al. Etiology and therapeutic approach to elevated lactate levels. Mayo Clin Proc. 2013;88(10):1127–40.
125. Ergin B, Kapucu A, Guerci P, et al. The role of bicarbonate precursors in balanced fluids during haemorrhagic shock with and without compromised liver function. Br J Anaesth 2016;117(4):521–528.
126. Kveim M, Nesbakken R. Utilization of exogenous acetate during canine haemorrhagic shock. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 1979;39(7):653–658.
127. Rizoli S. PlasmaLyte. J Trauma. 2011;70(5):S17–8.
128. Curran JD, Major P, Tang K, et al. Comparison of Balanced Crystalloid Solutions: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Crit Care Explor. 2021;3(5):e0398.
129. Ellekjaer KL, Perner A, Sivapalan P, et al. Acetate-versus lactate-buffered crystalloid solutions: A systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2022;66(7):782–794.
130. Priyanka A, Ganapathy U, Choudhary R, et al. A Comparative Study of Peri-Operative Fluid Therapy With Ringer Lactate and PlasmaLyte in Children Undergoing Intra-Abdominal Surgery: A Randomized Control Trial. Cureus. 2023;15(5):e39124.
131. Abdellatif AE, Alassal MA, Ul-Haq R, et al. Plasmalyte and Ringer Lactate as Priming Solutions in Pediatric Cardiopulmonary Bypass: A Comparative Study. Cardiometry 2023;28:34–42.
132. Weinberg L, Chiam E, Hooper J, et al. Plasma-Lyte 148 vs. Hartmann's solution for cardiopulmonary bypass pump prime: a prospective double-blind randomized trial. Perfusion. 2018;33(4):310–319.
133. Pfortmueller CA, Faeh L, Müller M, et al. Fluid management in patients undergoing cardiac surgery: effects of an acetate- versus lactate-buffered balanced infusion solution on hemodynamic stability (HEMACETAT). Crit Care. 2019;23(1):159.
134. Rawat N, Sahni N, Yaddanapudi L. Comparison of Commercially Available Balanced Salt Solution and Ringer's Lactate on Extent of Correction of Metabolic Acidosis in Critically Ill Patients. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2020;24(7):539–543.
135. Chaussard M, Dépret F, Saint-Aubin O, et al. Physiological response to fluid resuscitation with Ringer lactate versus Plasmalyte in critically ill burn patients. J Appl Physiol (1985). 2020;128(3):709–714.
136. Lira A, Pinsky MR. Choices in fluid type and volume during resuscitation: impact on patient outcomes. Annals of Intensive Care. 2014;4:38.
137. Pfortmueller CA, Fleischmann E. Acetate-buffered crystalloid fluids: current knowledge, a systematic review. J Crit Care. 2016;35:96–104.
138. Ramanan M, Attokaran A, Murray L. SCOPE-DKA Collaborators and Queensland Critical Care Research Network (QCCRN). Sodium chloride or Plasmalyte-148 evaluation in severe diabetic ketoacidosis (SCOPE-DKA): a cluster, crossover, randomized, controlled trial. Intensive Care Med. 2021;47(11):1248–1257.
139. Othman MI, Nashwan AJ, Alfayoumi M, et al. Plasma-Lyte-148 Versus Normal Saline 0.9% in Diabetic Ketoacidosis Management: A Review. Cureus. 2023;15(6):e41079.
140. Raghunathan K, Khangulov VS, Peyerl FW, et al. The association between choice of balanced intravenous crystalloid and subsequent major in-hospital outcomes among adult patients undergoing cardiac surgery. Value in Health 2015;18(3):A133.
141. Liu C, Zhi Mao Z, Hu P, et al. Fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Therapeutics and Clinical Risk Management 2018;14:1701–1709.
142. McCague A, Dermendjieva M, Hutchinson R, et al. Sodium acetate infusion in critically ill trauma patients for hyperchloremic acidosis. Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med. 2011;19:24.
143. Young JB, Utter GH, Schermer CR, et al. Saline versus Plasma-Lyte A in initial resuscitation of trauma patients: a randomized trial. Ann Surg. 2014;259(2):255–62.
144. Surabhi S, Kumar M. Comparison of ringer's lactate and plasmalyte-A as cardiopulmonary bypass prime for bypass associated acidosis in valve replacement surgeries. Ann Card Anaesth. 2021;24(1):36–41.
145. Collins MG, Fahim MA, Pascoe EM, et al. Balanced crystalloid solution versus saline in deceased donor

kidney transplantation (BEST-Fluids): a pragmatic, double-blind, randomised, controlled trial. Lancet. 2023;402(10396):105–117.

146. Venkataraman K, McTaggart SJ, Collins MG. Choosing fluids to reduce the risks of acute electrolyte disturbances in children after a kidney transplant. Kidney Int. 2024;105(2):247–250.
147. Mitra S, Khandelwal P. Are all colloids same? How to select the right colloid? Indian J Anaesth 2009;53(5):592–607.
148. László I, Demeter G, Öveges N, et al. Volume-replacement ratio for crystalloids and colloids during bleeding and resuscitation: an animal experiment. Intensive Care Med Exp. 2017;5(1):52.
149. Cortés DO, Barros TG, Njimi H, et al. Crystalloids versus colloids: exploring differences in fluid requirements by systematic review and meta-regression. Anesthesia Analgesia. 2015;120(2):389–402.
150. Annane D, Siami S, Jaber S, et al. Effects of fluid resuscitation with colloids vs crystalloids on mortality in critically ill patients presenting with hypovolemic shock: The CRISTAL Randomized Trial. JAMA 2013;310(17):1809–17.
151. Doherty M, Buggy DJ. Intraoperative fluids: how much is too much? Br J Anaesth. 2012;109(1):69–79.
152. Voldby AW, Brandstrup B. Fluid therapy in the perioperative setting-a clinical review. J Intensive Care 2016;4:27.
153. Martin GS, Bassett P. Crystalloids vs. colloids for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Journal of Critical Care 2019;50:144–154.
154. Kwan I, Bunn F, Chinnock P, et al. Timing and volume of fluid administration for patients with bleeding. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2014;2014(3):CD002245.
155. Hahn RG, Lyons G. The half-life of infusion fluids: An educational review. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2016;33(7):475–482.
156. Kabon B, Sessler DI, Kurz A, et al. Effect of intraoperative goal-directed balanced crystalloid versus colloid administration on major postoperative morbidity: a randomized trial. Anesthesiology 2019;130(5):728–744.
157. Cochrane injuries group albumin reviewers. Human albumin administration in critically ill patients: systematic review of randomised controlled trials. BMJ. 1998;317(7153):235–40.
158. Finfer S, Bellomo R, Boyce N, et al. A comparison of albumin and saline for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit. (SAFE study) N Engl J Med 2004;350(22):2247–56.
159. Roberts I, Blackhall K, Alderson P, Bunn F, Schierhout G. Human albumin solution for resuscitation and volume expansion in critically ill patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011;11:CD001208.
160. Xu JY, Chen QH, Xie JF, et al. Comparison of the effects of albumin and crystalloid on mortality in adult patients with severe sepsis and septic shock: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. Crit Care. 2014;18(6):702.
161. Patel A, Laffan MA, Waheed U, et al. Randomised trials of human albumin for adults with sepsis: systematic review and meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis of all-cause mortality. BMJ. 2014;349:g4561.
162. Caironi P, Tognoni G, Masson S, et al. Albumin replacement in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock (ALBIOS Trial). N Engl J Med. 2014;370(15):1412–1421.
163. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. (6S Trial) N Engl J Med 2012;367(2):124–34.
164. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. (Chest Trial) N Engl J Med 2012;367(20):1901–1911.
165. Mutter TC, Ruth CA, Dart AB. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) versus other fluid therapies: effects on kidney function. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;(7):CD007594.
166. European Medicines Agency. Hydroxyethyl starch solutions (HES) should no longer be used in patients with sepsis or burn injuries or in critically ill patients. EMA http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/Solutions_for_infusion_containing_hydroxyethyl_starch/European_Commission_final_decision/WC500162361.pdf (2014).
167. European Medicines Agency. Hydroxyethyl starch solutions: CMDh introduces new measures to protect patients. Internet Document: 17 July 2018. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/referral/hydroxyethyl-starch-article-107i-referral-hydroxyethyl-starch-solutions-cmdh-introduces-new-measures_en.pdf.
168. European Medicines Agency. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) solutions for infusion: suspension of marketing authorisations due to continued use in contraindicated patient populations with increased risk of serious harm. Update as of 26 July 2022 [Internet]. Available from: https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/dhpc/direct-healthcare-professional-communication-dhpc-hydroxyethyl-starch-hes-solutions-infusion_en.pdf.
169. Perel P, Roberts I, Ker K. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;(2):CD000567.
170. Lewis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, et al. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill people. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2018;(8):CD000567.
171. Hammond NE, Taylor C, Finfer S, et al. Patterns of intravenous fluid resuscitation use in adult intensive care patients between 2007 and 2014: an international cross-sectional study. PLoS One. 2017;12(5):e0176292.
172. Heming N, Lamothe L, Jaber S, et al. Morbidity and mortality of crystalloids compared to colloids in critically ill surgical patients: a subgroup analysis of a randomized trial. Anesthesiology 2018;129(6):1149–1158.

173. Boer C, Bossers SM, Koning NJ. Choice of fluid type: physiological concepts and perioperative indications. Br J Anaesth. 2018;120(2):384–396.
174. Vincent JL. Fluid management in the critically ill. Kidney International 2019;96(1):52–57.
175. Mårtensson J, Bellomo R. Are all fluids bad for the kidney? Curr Opin Crit Care. 2015;21(4):292–301.
176. Callum J, Skubas NJ, Bathla A, et al. Use of Intravenous Albumin: A Guideline from the International Collaboration for Transfusion Medicine Guidelines. Chest. 2024:S0012-3692(24)00285–X.
177. Wiedermann CJ. Human Albumin Infusion in Critically Ill and Perioperative Patients: Narrative Rapid Review of Meta-Analyses from the Last Five Years. Journal of Clinical Medicine. 2023;12(18):5919.
178. Wiedermann CJ. Moderator Effect of Hypoalbuminemia in Volume Resuscitation and Plasma Expansion with Intravenous Albumin Solution. Int. J. Mol. Sci. 2022;23(22):14175.
179. Zhou S, Zeng Z, Wei H, et al. Early combination of albumin with crystalloids administration might be beneficial for the survival of septic patients: a retrospective analysis from MIMIC-IV database. Ann Intensive Care. 2021;11(1):42.
180. Geng L, Tian X, Gao Z, et al. Different Concentrations of Albumin Versus Crystalloid in Patients with Sepsis and Septic Shock: A Meta-Analysis of Randomized Clinical Trials. J Intensive Care Med. 2023;38(8):679–689.
181. Raynor B, Huang A, Udrea D, et al. The Role of Albumin in the Resuscitation of Hypotensive Patients. Curr Emerg Hosp Med Rep 2023:11:89–94.
182. Caironi P, Gattinoni L. The clinical use of albumin: the point of view of a specialist in intensive care. Blood Transfus. 2009;7(4):259–267.
183. Vincent JL, Russell JA, Jacob M, et al. Albumin administration in the acutely ill: what is new and where next? Crit Care 2014;18(4):231.
184. Jiang L, Jiang S, Zhang M, et al. Albumin versus other fluids for fluid resuscitation in patients with sepsis: a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2014;9(12):e114666.
185. Altawalbeh SM, Almestarihi EM, Khasawneh RA, et al. Cost-effectiveness of intravenous resuscitation fluids in sepsis patients: a patient-level data analysis in Jordan. J Med Econ. 2024;27(1):126–133.
186. Rossi S, Picetti E, Zoerle T, et al. Fluid management in acute brain injury. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 2018;18(11):74.
187. Oddo M, Poole D, Helbok R, et al. Fluid therapy in neurointensive care patients: ESICM consensus and clinical practice recommendations. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):449–463.
188. Ma HK, Bebawy JF. Albumin Use in Brain-injured and Neurosurgical Patients: Concepts, Indications, and Controversies. J Neurosurg Anesthesiol. 2021;33(4):293–299.
189. Schmidt AP, Bilotta F. Hydroxyethyl starch for perioperative fluid management: a critical appraisal. Braz J Anesthesiol. 2023;73(5):529–531.
190. Joosten A, Coeckelenbergh S, Alexander B, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch for perioperative goal-directed fluid therapy in 2020: a narrative review. BMC Anesthesiol. 2020;20(1):209.
191. Landow L, Wei S, Song L, et al. Recent U.S. Food and Drug Administration Labeling Changes for Hydroxyethyl Starch Products Due to Concerns about Mortality, Kidney Injury, and Excess Bleeding. Anesthesiology. 2022;136(5):868–870.
192. Hydroxyethyl starch: CMDh Scientific Conclusion and Condition for Lifting suspension of the marketing authorisations. 24 June 2022 Available at: https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/psusa/hydroxyethyl-starch-cmdh-scientific-conclusions-conditions-lifting-suspension-marketing/h/n/psr/j/0031_en.pdf.
193. Thomas-Rueddel DO, Vlasakov V, Reinhart K, et al. Safety of gelatin for volume resuscitation–a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2012;38(7):1134–42.
194. Moeller C, Fleischmann C, Thomas-Rueddel D, et al. How safe is gelatin? A systematic review and meta-analysis of gelatin-containing plasma expanders vs crystalloids and albumin. J Crit Care 2016;35:75–83.
195. Farooque S, Kenny M, Marshall SD. Anaphylaxis to intravenous gelatin-based solutions: a case series examining clinical features and severity. Anaesthesia. 2019;74(2):174–179.
196. Sigurjonsson J, Hedman D, Bansch P, et al. Comparison of dextran and albumin on blood coagulation in patients undergoing major gynaecological surgery Perioperative Medicine 2018;7:21.
197. Dickenmann M, Oettl T, Mihatsch MJ. Osmotic nephrosis: acute kidney injury with accumulation of proximal tubular lysosomes due to administration of exogenous solutes Am J Kidney Dis 2008;51(3):491–503.
198. Shiratori T, Sato A, Fukuzawa M, et al. Case reports: severe dextran-induced anaphylactic shock during induction of hypertension-hypervolemia-hemodilution therapy following subarachnoid hemorrhage. Critical Care 2015:967560.
199. Carson JL, Guyatt G, Heddle NM, et al. Clinical practice guidelines from the AABB. JAMA. 2016;316(19):2025–2035.
200. Holcomb JB, Tilley BC, Baraniuk S, et al. Transfusion of Plasma, Platelets, and Red Blood Cells in a 1:1:1 Vs a 1:1:2 Ratio and Mortality in Patients with Severe Trauma:The Proppr Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA 2015;313(5):471–82.
201. Yaddanapudi S, Yaddanapudi LN. Indications for blood and blood product transfusion. Indian J Anaesth 2014;58(5):538–42.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by
a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

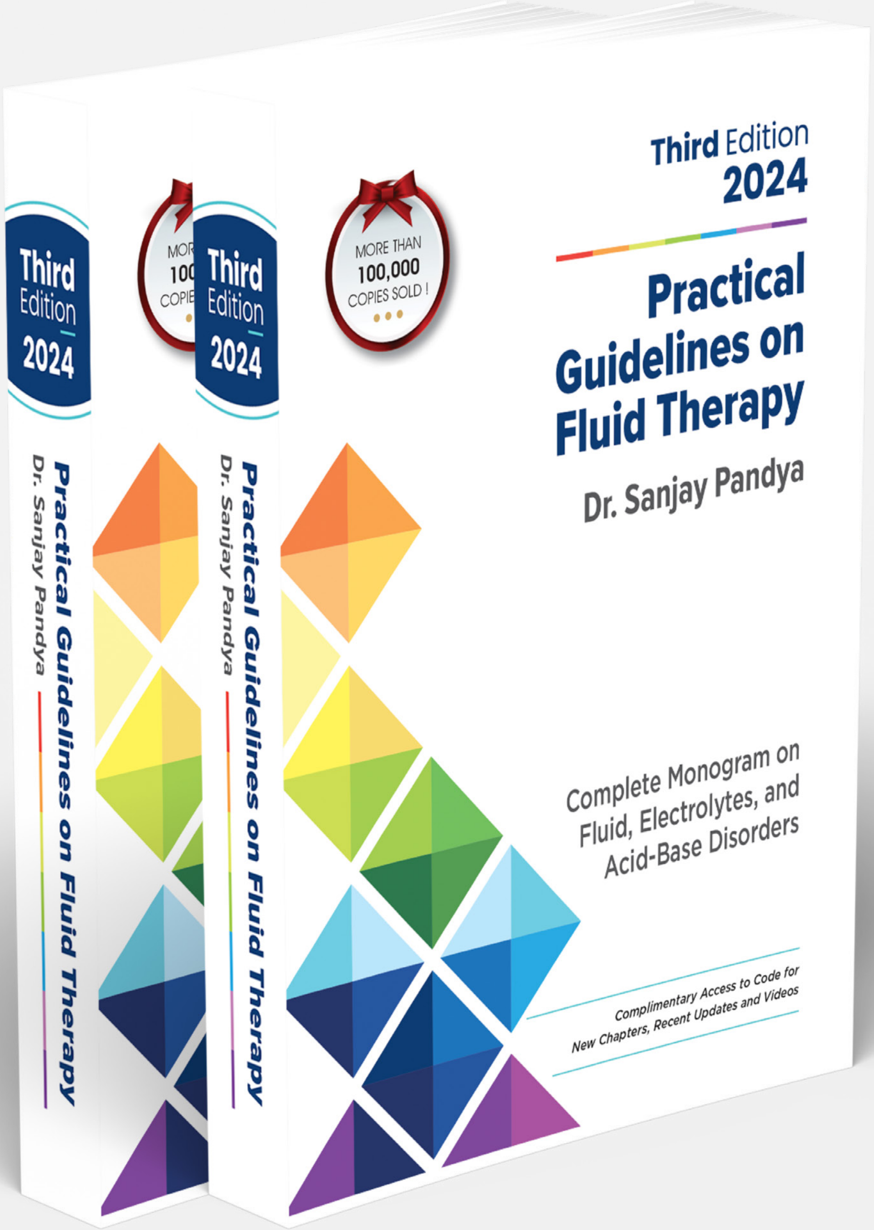
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 9:

Fluid Therapy in the Elderly


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

9 Fluid Therapy in the Elderly

Physiological Basis 108
Diagnosis of Dehydration 109
Normal Fluid Requirement 109
Prevention of Dehydration 109
Management 110
Basic principles 110
Choice of IV fluid 110

Globally, Life expectancy is increasing steadily [1], so there is a need to understand the medical problems of the larger elderly population.

PHYSIOLOGICAL BASIS

To understand fluid and electrolyte disorders in the elderly, it is essential to understand physiological changes related to fluid balance in older adults. Significant relevant physiological changes are [2–5]:

- Decrease in total body water by about 10–15% due to reduced lean body mass.
- A reduction in thirst perception due to central nervous system dysfunction controlling thirst.
- Progressive reduction in renal blood flow, glomerular filtration rate and loss of renal mass.
- Impaired renal ability to concentrate urine and conserve water makes older adults prone to dehydration.
- Significant increase in atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) activity and reduction in renin and aldosterone serum concentrations. These hormonal changes lead to an impaired ability to retain sodium, causing a greater risk of developing hyponatremia and hypovolemia.

Understanding the importance of dehydration in the elderly

It is essential to understand about dehydration in the elderly because:

- Hypovolemia is a common fluid and electrolyte disorder in the elderly [6, 7], which affects about 20% to 30% of older adults [8].
- Dehydration is the most common cause requiring hospitalization in the elderly [9, 10].
- Dehydration in the elderly is associated with a longer stay in the hospital, increased health care costs, morbidity and mortality [11–13].
- Dehydration in the elderly can cause problems like acute confusion, constipation, urinary tract infections, kidney stones, exhaustion, and pressure ulcers [14–16]. Elderly patients with dehydration can have orthostatic hypotension leading to impaired brain perfusion and dizziness, causing an

increased risk of falls and bone fractures [17].
- Timely aggressive fluid administration can improve clinical outcomes in dehydration [18].

Higher risks of dehydration in elderly patients

Reasons for the higher risk of dehydration in the elderly are:

- Reduced total body water (TBW) as a portion of body weight, so the risk of dehydration even with a loss of less volume of fluids.
- Inability to access water due to physical limitations and lack of help.
- Inadequate water intake due to decreased thirst sensation and altered awareness or mental status [5].
- With aging, renal function and ability to concentrate urine and retain fluid decline [16].
- Among older people, the habit is drinking less water than younger people [19], and the daily fluid intake of older people is below the recommended daily requirement [16].
- Common medications for the elderly such as diuretics for hypertension, increase the risk of dehydration.

DIAGNOSIS OF DEHYDRATION

In the elderly, commonly used signs and tests such as skin turgor, mouth dryness, weight change, urine color, specific gravity, or bioelectrical impedance are not useful in assessing hydration status [20, 21]. However, clinical clues like mental confusion, non-fluent speech, extremity weakness, dry mucous membranes, dry tongue, furrowed tongue, and sunken eyes provide important clues in diagnosing volume depletion in the elderly (the presence of ≥4 criteria out of 7 indicates volume depletion) [21].

Directly measured serum osmolality >300 mOsm/kg is a reliable test to diagnose dehydration in the elderly [11, 21].

NORMAL FLUID REQUIREMENT

The total fluid intake recommended for all ages by ESPEN (2022) and European Food Safety Authority (EFSA) 2010 guidelines is 2.5 L/day for men and 2.0 L/day for women [21, 22]. Out of total fluid consumed, drinking water or beverages account for 70–80%, and 20% come from consumed food [23].

Daily fluid intake is a minimum of 2.0 L/day for elderly males, and 1.6 L/day for elderly females is recommended by ESPEN and EFSA guidelines [21, 22].

PREVENTION OF DEHYDRATION

Dehydration is highly costly in older people as it causes multiple complications and is associated with morbidity and mortality. On the other hand, optimum fluid intake and prevention of dehydration offer mental, physical, and general health benefits, provides a better quality of life for older people, and save money for healthcare systems [24].

Simple steps to prevent dehydration in older persons are to ensure access to oral fluids, frequent offering of drinks, and encourage the older adult to increase their fluid intake according to their preferences throughout the day [21, 25, 26].

As dehydration is expected in the elderly, all hospitalized old adult patients should be screened carefully for early detection, preventive measures, and treatment if required, followed by frequent assessment of urine outputs and fluid balance during the hospital stay.

If diuretics are prescribed to the elderly, adjust their dose appropriately.

MANAGEMENT

The basic principles of fluid management are:

- To provide the maintenance need for fluids and to correct volume depletion, elderly patients should be given fluids, preferably orally or nasogastrically.
- Euvolemic patients who may be nothing by mouth (NPO) may need intravenous maintenance fluids. The maintenance intravenous fluid requirement is lesser in the elderly. Maintenance of intravenous fluids recommended by NICE guidelines is about 20–25 mL/kg/day in the elderly, while intravenous (IV) fluid requirement in an adult person is approximately 25–30 mL/kg/day [27].
- Elderly patients have low body weight and lesser total body water (about 45–50% of body weight in the elderly compared to 50–60% of body weight in adults), so prescribe the total volume of fluids carefully.
- Cardiac or renal impairment is common in these patients, so avoid prescribing large volumes without assessing the patient's fluid status.

The choice of IV fluids: Hypovolemic older adults who cannot drink isotonic fluids should be administered intravenously [21]. The selection of IV fluids should be individualized based on the type of fluid lost and its composition and the electrolyte and acid-base status of the patient:

- Ringer's lactate and normal saline are the most widely used IV fluids for resuscitation in hypovolemia and hypotension.
- Hypovolemia with hypernatremia due to water losses or poor intake needs supplementation of hypotonic fluid.
- In patients with diarrhea or metabolic acidosis, preferred IV fluids are balanced crystalloids like Ringer's lactate.
- Normal saline is preferred in patients with vomiting, hypovolemic hyponatremia, and metabolic alkalosis.

The volume of IV fluids administered needs careful attention and is determined based on appropriate clinical assessment, an accurate daily body weight, maintaining strict fluid intake and output chart, and measuring serum electrolyte, renal function, and serum osmolarity. Improvement in blood pressure and urine output usually suggests a response to fluid administration.

REFERENCES

1. Vaupel JW, Villavicencio F, Bergeron-Boucher. Demographic perspectives on the rise of longevity. PNAS 202;118(9):e201953611.
2. Weinstein JR, Anderson S. The aging kidney: physiological changes. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2010;17(4):302–7.
3. Sands JM. Urine concentrating and diluting ability during aging. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2012;67(12):1352–7.
4. El-Sharkawy AM, Sahota O, Maughan RJ, et al. The pathophysiology of fluid and electrolyte balance in the older adult surgical patient. Clin Nutr. 2014;33(1):6–13.
5. Begg DP. Disturbances of thirst and fluid balance associated with aging. Physiol Behav. 2017;178:28–34.
6. Begum MN, Johnson CS.A review of the literature on dehydration in the institutionalized elderly. e-SPEN Eur. E-J. Clin. Nutr. Metab. 2010;5:e47–e53.
7. Wotton K, Crannitch K, Munt R. Prevalence, risk factors and strategies to prevent dehydration in older adults. Contemp Nurse. 2008;31(1):44–56.
8. Miller HJ. Dehydration in the Older Adult. J Gerontol Nurs. 2015;41(9):8–13.
9. Wakefield BJ, Mentes J, Holman JE, et al. Risk factors and outcomes associated with hospital admission for dehydration. Rehab Nurs. 2008;33(6):233–41.

10. Marshall KA, Burson R, Gall K, et al. Hospital admission for malnutrition and dehydration in patients with dementia. Home Healthc Now. 2016;34(1):32–7.
11. Lacey J, Corbett J, Forni L, et al. A multidisciplinary consensus on dehydration: definitions, diagnostic methods and clinical implications. Ann Med. 2019;51(3–4):232–251.
12. Ko SY, Esteve Cuevas LM, Willeboer M, et al. The association between intravenous fluid resuscitation and mortality in older emergency department patients with suspected infection. Int J Emerg Med. 2019;12(1):1.
13. Edmonds CJ, Foglia E, Booth P, et al. Dehydration in older people: A systematic review of the effects of dehydration on health outcomes, healthcare costs and cognitive performance. Arch Gerontol Geriatr. 2021;95:104380.
14. Botigué T, Masot O, Miranda J, et al. Prevalence and Risk Factors Associated With Low Fluid Intake in Institutionalized Older Residents. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2019;20(3):317–322.
15. Anjo I, Amaral TF, Afonso C, et al. Are hypohydrated older adults at increased risk of exhaustion? J Hum Nutr Diet. 2020;33(1):23–30.
16. Masot O, Miranda J, Santamaría AL, et al. Fluid Intake Recommendation Considering the Physiological Adaptations of Adults Over 65 Years: A Critical Review. Nutrients. 2020;12(11):3383.
17. Hamrick I, Norton D, Birstler J, et al. Association Between Dehydration and Falls. Mayo Clin Proc Innov Qual Outcomes. 2020;4(3):259–265.
18. Thomas DR, Tariq SH, Makhdomm S, et al. Physician misdiagnosis of dehydration in older adults. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2004;5(2 Suppl):S30–4.
19. Rosinger A, Herrick K. Daily Water Intake among U.S. Men and Women, 2009–2012. NCHS Data Brief No. 242, April 2016. Available online: https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/products/databriefs/db242.htm (accessed on 2 October 2022).
20. Hooper L, Abdelhamid A, Attreed NJ, et al. Clinical symptoms, signs and tests for identification of impending and current water-loss dehydration in older people. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015;2015(4):CD009647.
21. Volkert D, Beck AM, Cederholm T, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition and hydration in geriatrics. Clin Nutr. 2022;41(4):958–989.
22. European Food Safety Authority (EFSA). Scientific opinion on dietary reference values for water. EFSA J. 2010;8:1459.
23. Kant AK, Graubard BI, Atchison EA. Intakes of plain water, moisture in foods and beverages, and total water in the adult US population--nutritional, meal pattern, and body weight correlates: National Health and Nutrition Examination Surveys 1999–2006. Am J Clin Nutr. 2009;90(3):655–63.
24. Nakamura Y, Watanabe H, Tanaka A, et al. Effect of Increased Daily Water Intake and Hydration on Health in Japanese Adults. Nutrients. 2020;12(4):1191.
25. Schols JM, De Groot CP, van der Cammen TJ, et al. Preventing and treating dehydration in the elderly during periods of illness and warm weather. J Nutr Health Aging. 2009;13(2):150–157.
26. Crogan NL. Nutritional Problems Affecting Older Adults. Nurs Clin North Am. 2017;52(3):433–445.
27. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence Guideline for Intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital (CG174), 2013-Updated May 2017 (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg174).

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

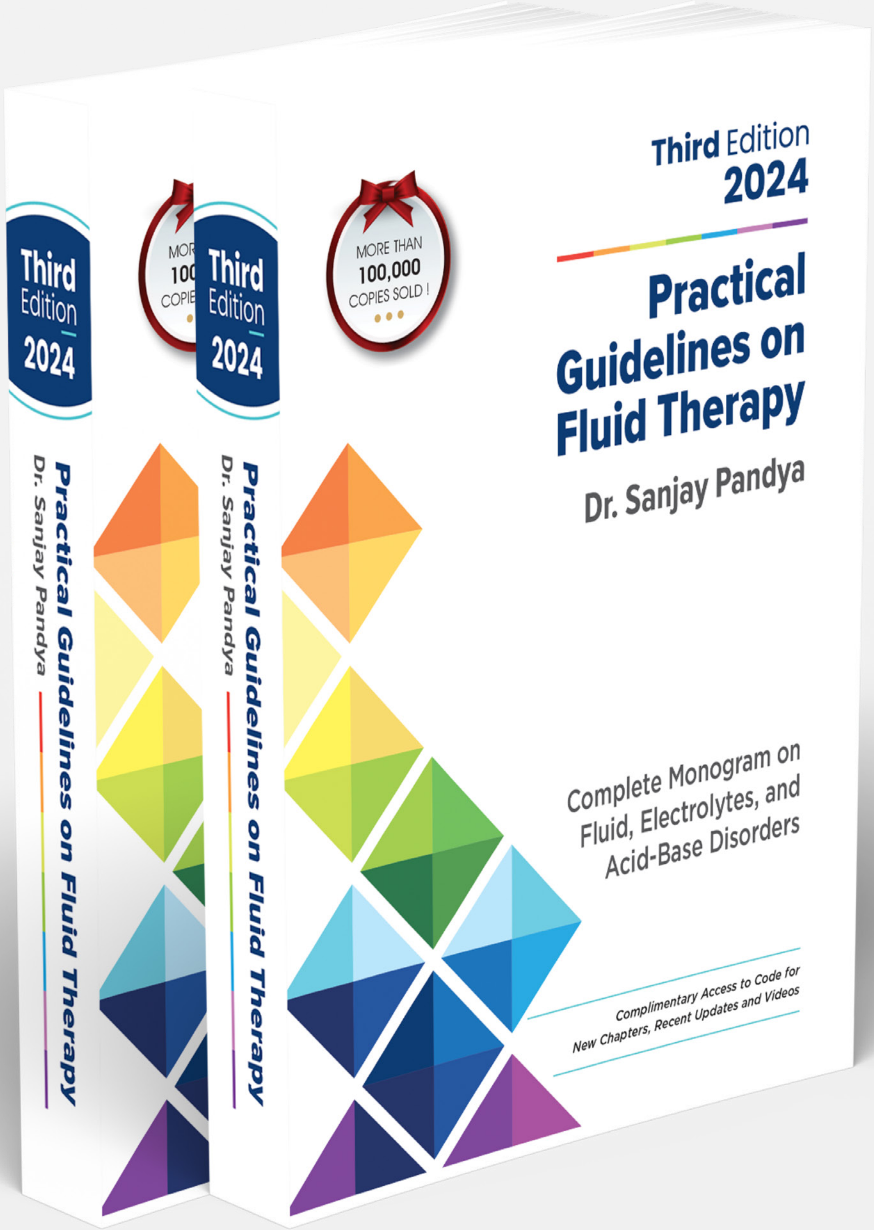
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 10:

Calcium Gluconate, Calcium Chloride, and Hypertonic Dextrose Solutions


Third Edition 2024
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

10

Calcium Gluconate, Calcium Chloride, and Hypertonic Dextrose Solutions

CALCIUM GLUCONATE AND CALCIUM CHLORIDE 116
Composition....................................116
Pharmacological basis....................116
Indications.......................................116
  Hyperkalemia 116
  Hypocalcemia...............................117
  Severe hypermagnesemia 117
  Calcium-channel blocker overdose.......................................118
  β-blocker overdose.......................118
  Prevent citrate toxicity 118
  Hydrofluoric acid burns..................119
  Cardiac resuscitation.....................119
Contraindications and precautions..119

HYPERTONIC DEXTROSE SOLUTIONS 120
Composition.................................... 120
Pharmacological basis.................... 120
Indications....................................... 120
Contraindications............................ 120
Adverse effects and cautions......... 120

Commonly used special solutions are calcium chloride, calcium gluconate, dextrose 25% and 50%, hypertonic saline, magnesium sulfate, potassium chloride, potassium phosphate, and sodium bicarbonate (Table 10.1).

Table 10.1 Composition of commonly used special solutions

Injection	Content in mEq/ml	Volume of amp (mL)	Content in mEq/amp	gm/10 ml amp
Calcium gluconate 10%	Ca^{2+} = 0.45	10	Ca^{2+} = 4.5/10 ml	1.0
Calcium chloride 10%	Ca^{2+} = 1.36	10	Ca^{2+} = 13.6/10 ml	1.0
Hypertonic (3%) saline	Na^+ = 0.5	100	Na^+ = 51/100 ml	3.0
Magnesium sulfate 50%	Mg^{2+} = 4	2.0	Mg^{2+} = 8/2 ml	1.0
Potassium chloride 15%	K^+ = 2.0	10	K^+ = 20/10 ml	1.5
Potassium phosphates	K^+ = 4.4 PH_4 = 3.0	15	K^+ = 66/15 ml PH_4 = 45/15 ml	-
7.5% $NaHCO_3$	HCO_3 = 0.9	10	HCO_3 = 9/10 ml	0.75
8.4% $NaHCO_3$	HCO_3 = 1.0	20	HCO_3 = 10/10 ml	0.84

HCO_3: Bicarbonate; Ca^{2+}: Calcium; Mg^{2+}: Magnesium; PH_4: Phosphate; K^+: Potassium; Na^+: Sodium; $NaHCO_3$: Sodium bicarbonate

INJECTION CALCIUM GLUCONATE AND CALCIUM CHLORIDE

Inj. calcium gluconate and calcium chloride are two different salt forms commonly used in various emergency conditions.

Want to read more?
Get Printed Version
Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Davey M, Caldicott D. Calcium salts in management of hyperkalaemia. Emerg Med J. 2002;19(1):92–3.
2. Long B, Warix JR, Koyfman A. Controversies in Management of Hyperkalemia. J Emerg Med. 2018;55(2):192–205.
3. Semple P, Booth C. Calcium chloride; a reminder. Anaesthesia 1996;51(1):93.
4. Weisberg LS. Management of severe hyperkalemia. Crit Care Med 2008;36(12):3246–51.
5. Truhlar A, Deakin CD, Soar J, et al., European resuscitation council guidelines for resuscitation 2015: Section 4. Cardiac arrest in special circumstances. Resuscitation, 2015;95:148–201.
6. Batterink J, Cessford TA, Taylor RAI. Pharmacological interventions for the acute management of hyperkalaemia in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2015;10:CD010344.
7. Robert T, Joseph A, Mesnard L. Calcium salt during hyperkalemia. Kidney Int. 2016;90(2):451–452.
8. Wang CH, Huang CH, Chang WT, et al. The effects of calcium and sodium bicarbonate on severe hyperkalaemia during cardiopulmonary resuscitation: A retrospective cohort study of adult in-hospital cardiac arrest. Resuscitation,2016;98:105–11.
9. Vanden Hoek TL, Morrison LJ, Shuster M, et al. Part 12: cardiac arrest in special situations: 2010 American heart association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation. 2010;122:S829–S861.
10. Helman A, Baimel M, Etchells E. Emergency management of hyperkalemia. Emergency Medicine Cases. 2016 https://emergencymedicinecases.com/emergency-management-hyperkalemia/ Accessed 11 June 2020.
11. Ahee P, Crowe AV. The management of hyperkalaemia in the emergency department. J Accid Emerg Med. 2000;17(3):188–191.
12. Cooper MS, Gittoes NJL. Diagnosis and management of hypocalcaemia. BMJ 2008;336(7656):1298–1302.
13. Walsh J, Gittoes N, Selby P. Society for Endocrinology Endocrine Emergency Guidance: Emergency management of acute hypocalcemia in adult patients. Endocr Connect. 2016;5(5):G9–G11.
14. Rietjens SJ, de Lange DW, Donker DW, et al. Practical recommendations for calcium channel antagonist poisoning. Neth J Med 2016;74(2):60–67.
15. Graudins A, Lee H, Druda D. Calcium channel antagonist and beta-blocker overdose: Antidotes and adjunct therapies. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2016;81(3):453–461.
16. St-Onge M, Anseeuw K, Cantrell FL, et al. Experts consensus recommendations for the management of calcium channel blockerpoisoning in adults. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(3):e306–e315.
17. Kumar K, Biyyam M, Bajantri B, et al. Critical management of severe hypotension caused by amlodipine toxicity managed with hyperinsulinemia/euglycemia therapy supplemented with calcium gluconate, intravenous glucagon and other vasopressor support: Review of literature. Cardiol Res 2018;9(1):46–49.
18. Shah SK, Goswami SK, Babu RV, et al. Management of calcium channel antagonist overdose with hyperinsulinemia-euglycemia therapy: case series and review of the literature. Case Rep Crit Care. 2012;2012:927040.
19. Lima SK, Begum M, Gupta AK, et al. Management of Massive Blood Transfusion-a case study. Pulse 2014;5(1):39–43.

20. Hess JR, Silvergleid AJ. Massive blood transfusion. In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: Wolters Kluwer Health. http://www.uptodate.com. Accessed 12 Sept 2020.
21. Basic-Jukic N, Kes P, Glavas-Boras S, et al. Complications of therapeutic plasma exchange: experience with 4857 treatments. Ther Apher Dial. 2005;9(5):391–5.
22. Lee G, Arepally GM. Anticoagulation techniques in apheresis: from heparin to citrate and beyond. J Clin Apher. 2012;27(3):117–125.
23. Sigler K, Lee J, Srivaths P. Regional citrate anticoagulation with calcium replacement in pediatric apheresis. J Clin Apher. 2018;33(3):274–7.
24. Szczepiorkowski ZM, Winters JL, Bandarenko N, et al. Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice--evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. J Clin Apher. 2010;25(3):83–177
25. Patterson ER, Winters JL. Hemapheresis. In: McPherson RA, Pincus MR, eds. Henry's Clinical Diagnosis and Management by Laboratory Methods E-Book. (23rd ed., pp. 779) St Louis, MO: Elsevier;2017.
26. Weinstein R. Prevention of citrate reactions during therapeutic plasma exchange by constant infusion of calcium gluconate with the return fluid. J Clin Apher. 1996;11(4):204–210.
27. Kankirawatana S, Huang ST, Marques MB. Continuous infusion of calcium gluconate in 5% albumin is safe and prevents most hypocalcemic reactions during therapeutic plasma exchange. J Clin Apher. 2007;22(5):265–269.
28. Krishnan RG, Coulthard MG. Minimising changes in plasma calcium and magnesium concentrations during plasmapheresis. Pediatr Nephroly 2007;22(10):1763–1766.
29. Section 5: Dialysis Interventions for Treatment of AKI. Kidney Int Suppl (2011). 2012;2(1):89–115.
30. Oudemans-van Straaten HM, Ostermann M. Bench-to-bedside review: Citrate for continuous renal replacement therapy, from science to practice. Crit Care 2012;16(6):249.
31. Kindgen-Milles D, Brandenburger T, Dimski T. Regional citrate anticoagulation for continuous renal replacement therapy. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2018;24(6):450–4.
32. Karkar A, Ronco C. Prescription of CRRT: a pathway to optimize therapy. Ann. Intensive Care 2020;10(1):32.
33. Wu MY, Hsu YH, Bai CH, et al. Regional citrate versus heparin anticoagulation for continuous renal replacement therapy: A metaanalysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Kidney Dis 2012;59(6):810–818.
34. Stucker F, Ponte B, Tataw J, et al. Efficacy and safety of citrate-based anticoagulation compared to heparin in patients with acute kidney injury requiring continuous renal replacement therapy: a randomized controlled trial. Crit Care 2015;19(1):91.
35. Liu C, Mao Z, Kang H, et al. Regional citrate versus heparin anticoagulation for continuous renal replacement therapy in critically ill patients: a meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis of randomized controlled trials. Crit Care. 2016;20(1):144.
36. Davenport A, Tolwani A. Citrate anticoagulation for continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT) in patients with acute kidney injury admitted to the intensive care unit. NDT Plus. 2009;2(6):439–447.
37. Morabito S, Pistolesi V, Tritapepe L, et al. Regional citrate anticoagulation in cardiac surgery patients at high risk of bleeding: a continuous veno-venous hemofiltration protocol with a low concentration citrate solution. Crit Care. 2012;16(3):R111.
38. McKee D, Thoma A, Bailey K, et al. A review of hydrofluoric acid burn management. Plast Surg (Oakv). 2014;22(2):95–98.
39. Guidelines 2000 for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Part 6: advanced cardiovascular life support: section 6: pharmacology II: agents to optimize cardiac output and blood pressure. The American Heart Association in collaboration with the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation. Circulation. 2000;102(8 Suppl):I129–135.
40. Australian Resuscitation Council. Section 11 – Adult advanced life support. ANZCOR Guideline 11.5 – Medications in Adult Cardiac Arrest August 2016 Available: https://resus.org.au/guidelines/.
41. Morrison LJ, Deakin CD, Morley PT, et al. Part 8: Advanced life support: 2010 International Consensus on Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science With Treatment Recommendations. Circulation. 2010;122(16 Suppl 2):S345–421.
42. Gin A, Walker S. Notice to Hospitals regarding Ceftriaxone-calcium incompatibility: What's a clinician to do? Can J Hosp Pharm. 2009;62(2):157–8.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

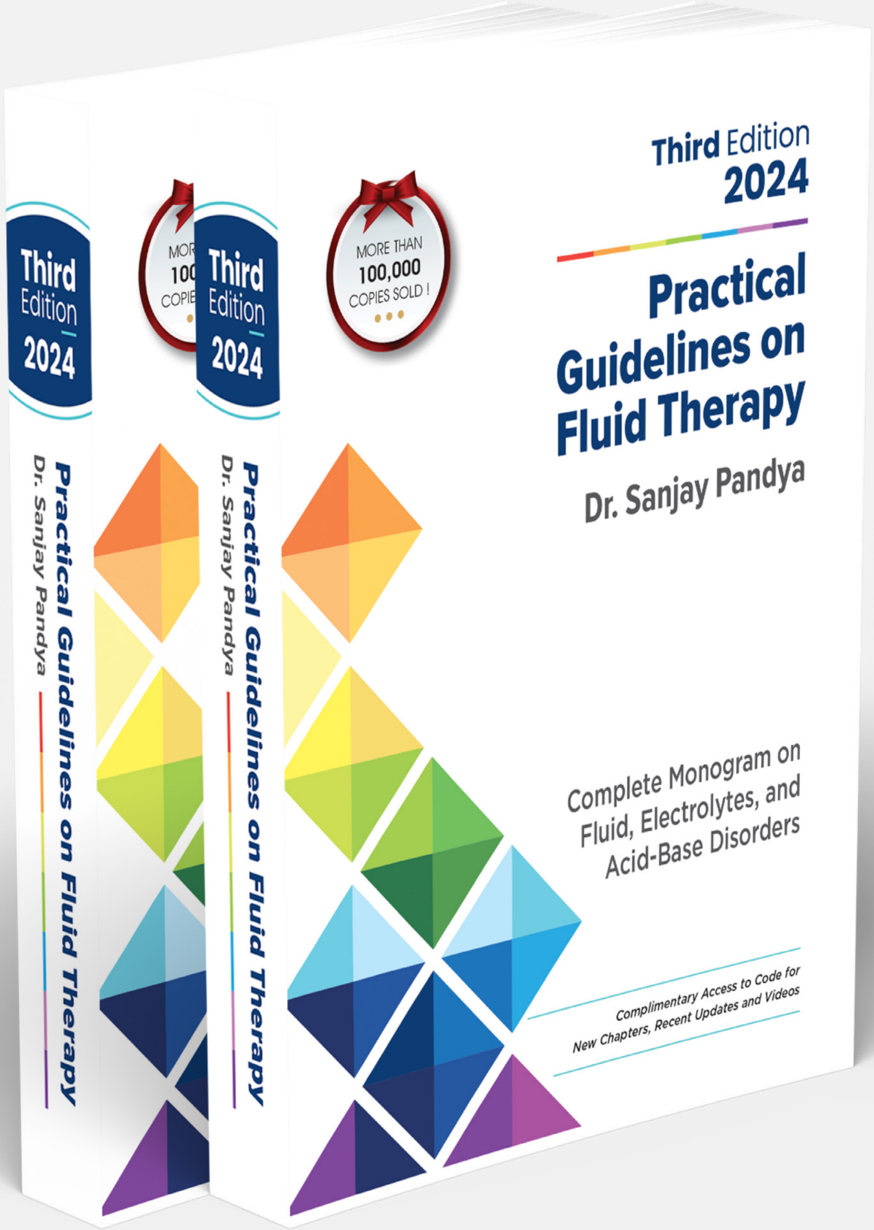
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 11:

Hypertonic Saline


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

11 Hypertonic Saline

Composition.................................... 123
Pharmacological Basis 123
Indications....................................... 124
  Severe symptomatic hyponatremia............................... 124
  Cerebral edema and raised intracranial pressure.................... 125
  Plasma volume expansion 126
  Acute decompensated heart failure.................................... 126
  Cystic fibrosis 126
Contraindications and Adverse Effects... 127

Hypertonic saline (HS) is a concentrated form of sodium chloride dissolved in water, and 3% and 5% hypertonic saline are commonly used solutions in clinical practice.

COMPOSITION

Inj. 3% Hypertonic Saline

Each 100 ml of contains:

Sodium	51.3 mEq
Chloride	51.3 mEq
Osmolality	1026.0 mOsm/L

100 ml of 3% NaCl contains: 3 gm of Sodium Chloride

Inj. 5% Hypertonic Saline

Each 100 ml of contains:

Sodium	85.5 mEq
Chloride	85.5 mEq
Osmolality	1710.0 mOsm/L

100 ml of 5% NaCl contains: 5 gm of Sodium Chloride

PHARMACOLOGICAL BASIS

Hypertonic saline solutions have higher sodium chloride concentration and serum osmolality as compared to normal serum values.

A. High sodium concentration promptly corrects hyponatremia

Sodium concentration of 3% and 5% hypertonic saline is 513 mEq/L and 855 mEq/L respectively compared to normal plasma concentration of 140 mEq/L. As a high sodium concentration of hypertonic saline can rapidly raise sodium and reduce cerebral edema, it is recommended in the treatment of life-threatening hyponatremia. Because of substantially higher concentrations of salt, this solution is selected to provide a large amount of sodium in a small amount of fluid (i.e., in a patient with euvolemic or hypervolemic hyponatremia who needs salt supplementation, but fluid restriction).

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Hinson HE, Stein D, Sheth KN. Hypertonic saline and mannitol therapy in critical care neurology. J Intensive Care Med 2013;28(1):3–11.
2. Busey K, Samai K. Hypertonic Saline for ICP Reduction in Traumatic Brain Injury Patients: An Evolving Practice. J Trauma Nurs. 2017;24(4):222–223.
3. Bunn F, Roberts I, Tasker R, et al. Hypertonic versus near isotonic crystalloid for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004;2004(3):CD002045.
4. Pfortmueller CA, Schefold JC. Hypertonic saline in critical illness - A systematic review. J Crit Care. 2017;42:168–177.
5. Orbegozo D, Vincent JL, Creteur J, et al. Hypertonic Saline in Human Sepsis: A Systematic Review of Randomized Controlled Trials. Anesth Analg. 2019;128(6):1175–1184.
6. Hashimoto K, Suemaru S, Hirasawa R, et al. Effect of hypertonic saline on the corticotropin-releasing hormone and arginine vasopressin content of the rat pituitary neurointermediate lobe. Endocrinol Jpn. 1990;37(5):599–606.
7. Mazzoni MC, Borgstrom P, Arfors KE, et al. Dynamic fluid redistribution in hyperosmotic resuscitation of hypovolemic hemorrhage. Am J Physiol. 1988;255(3 Pt 2):H629–37.
8. Strandvik GF. Hypertonic saline in critical care: a review of the literature and guidelines for use in hypotensive states and raised intracranial pressure. Anaesthesia. 2009;64(9):990–1003.
9. Sterns RH, Nigwekar SU, Hix JK. The treatment of hyponatremia. Semin Nephrol 2009;29(3):282–299.
10. Verbalis JG, Goldsmith SR, Greenberg A, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of hyponatremia: expert panel recommendations. Am J Med 2013;126(10 Suppl 1):S1–42.
11. Spasovski G, Vanholder R, Allolio B, et al. Clinical practice guideline on diagnosis and treatment of hyponatraemia. Eur J Endocrinol 2014;170(3):G1–47.
12. Ayus JC, Caputo D, Bazerque F, et al. Treatment of hyponatremic encephalopathy with a 3% sodium chloride protocol: a case series. Am J Kidney Dis 2015;65(3):435–42.
13. Weismann D, Schneider A, Höybye C. Clinical aspects of symptomatic hyponatremia. Endocr Connect. 2016;5(5):R35–R43.
14. Seay NW, Lehrich RW, Greenberg A. Diagnosis and Management of Disorders of Body Tonicity—Hyponatremia and Hypernatremia: Core Curriculum 2020. Am J Kidney Dis. 2020;75(2):272–286.
15. Sterns RH. Treatment of Severe Hyponatremia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2018;13(4):641–649.
16. Okuhara Y, Hirotani S, Naito Y, et al. Intravenous salt supplementation with low-dose furosemide for treatment of acute decompensated heart failure. J Card Fail. 2014;20(5):295–301.
17. Shah S, Kimberly WT. Today's Approach to Treating Brain Swelling in the Neuro Intensive Care Unit. Semin Neurol. 2016;36(6):502–507.
18. Hays AN, Lazaridis C, Neyens R, et al. Osmotherapy: use among neurointensivists. Neurocritical Care. 2011;14(2):222–228.
19. Marko NF. Hypertonic saline, not mannitol, should be considered gold-standard medical therapy for intracranial hypertension. Crit Care. 2012;16(1):113.
20. Ogden AT, Mayer SA, Connolly ES. Hyperosmolar agents in neurosurgical practice: the evolving role of hypertonic saline. Neurosurgery. 2005;57(2):207–215.
21. Ware ML, Nemani VM, Meeker M, et al. Effects of 23.4% sodium chloride solution in reducing intracranial pressure in patients with traumatic brain injury: a preliminary study. Neurosurgery 2005;57(4):727–36.
22. Kamel H, Navi BB, Nakagawa K, et al. Hypertonic saline versus mannitol for the treatment of elevated intracranial pressure: A meta-analysis of randomized

clinical trials. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(3):554–9.

23. Mortazavi MM, Romeo AK, Deep A, et al. Hypertonic saline for treating raised intracranial pressure: literature review with meta-analysis. J Neurosurg. 2012;116(1):210–221.
24. Rickard AC, Smith JE, Newell P, et al. Salt or sugar for your injured brain? A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials of mannitol versus hypertonic sodium solutions to manage raised intracranial pressure in traumatic brain injury. Emerg Med J. 2014;31(8):679–683.
25. Cook AM, Morgan JG, Hawryluk GWJ, et al. Guidelines for the Acute Treatment of Cerebral Edema in Neurocritical Care Patients. Neurocrit Care. 2020;32(3):647–666.
26. Riou B, Carli P. Hypertonic sodium chloride and hemorrhagic shock. Ann Fr Anesth Reanim. 1990;9:536–46.
27. Vialet R, Albanèse J, Thomachot L, et al. Isovolume hypertonic solutes (sodium chloride or mannitol) in the treatment of refractory posttraumatic intracranial hypertension: 2 mL/kg 7.5% saline is more effective than 2 mL/kg 20% mannitol. Crit Care Med 2003;31(6):1683–7.
28. Battison C, Andrews PJ, Graham C, et al. Randomized, controlled trial on the effect of a 20% mannitol solution and a 7.5% saline/6% dextran solution on increased intracranial pressure after brain injury. Crit Care Med 2005;33(1):196–202.
29. Mangat HS, Chiu Y-L, Gerber LM, et al. Hypertonic saline reduces cumulative and daily intracranial pressure burdens after severe traumatic brain injury. J Neurosurg. 2015;122(1):202–10.
30. Li M, Chen T, Chen SD, et al. Comparison of equimolar doses of mannitol and hypertonic saline for the treatment of elevated intracranial pressure after traumatic brain injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore) 2015;94(17):e668.
31. Burgess S, Abu-Laban RB, Slavik RS, et al. A systematic review of randomized controlled trials comparing hypertonic sodium solutions and mannitol for traumatic brain injury: implications for emergency department management. Ann Pharmacother. 2016;50(4):291–300.
32. Alnemari AM, Krafcik BM, Mansour TR, et al. A comparison of pharmacologic therapeutic agents used for the reduction of intracranial pressure after traumatic brain injury. World Neurosurg 2017;106:509–528.
33. Mangat HS, Wu X, Gerber LM, et al. Hypertonic saline is superior to mannitol for the combined effect on intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure burdens in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. Neurosurgery. 2020;86(2):221–230.
34. Horn P, Munch E, Vajkoczy P, et al. Hypertonic saline solution for control of elevated intracranial pressure in patients with exhausted response to mannitol and barbiturates. Neurol Res. 1999;21:758–764.
35. Schwarz S, Georgiadis D, Aschoff A, et al. Effects of hypertonic (10%) saline in patients with raised intracranial pressure after stroke. Stroke. 2002;33(1):136–40.
36. Harutjunyan L, Holz C, Rieger A, et al. Efficiency of 7.2% hypertonic saline hydroxyethyl starch 200/0.5 versus mannitol 15% in the treatment of increased intracranial pressure in neurosurgical patients—a randomized clinical trial. Crit Care. 2005;9(5):R530–40.
37. Sakellaridis N, Pavlou E, Karatzas S, et al. Comparison of mannitol and hypertonic saline in the treatment of severe brain injuries. J Neurosurg. 2011;114(2):545–548.
38. Lewandowski-Belfer JJ, Patel AV, Darracott RM, et al. Safety and efficacy of repeated doses of 14.6 or 23.4% hypertonic saline for refractory intracranial hypertension. Neurocrit Care 2014;20(3):436–42.
39. Gu J, Huang H, Huang Y, et al. Hypertonic saline or mannitol for treating elevated intracranial pressure in traumatic brain injury: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Neurosurg Rev 2019;42(2):499–509.
40. Francony G, Fauvage B, Falcon D, et al. Equimolar doses of mannitol and hypertonic saline in the treatment of increased intracranial pressure. Crit Care Med. 2008;36(3):795–800.
41. Cottenceau V, Masson F, Mahamid E, et al. Comparison of effects of equiosmolar doses of mannitol and hypertonic saline on cerebral blood flow and metabolism in traumatic brain injury. J Neurotrauma 2011;28(10):2003–12.
42. Oddo M, Levine JM, Frangos S, et al. Effect of mannitol and hypertonic saline on cerebral oxygenation in patients with severe traumatic brain injury and refractory intracranial hypertension. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2009;80(8):916–20.
43. Rozet I, Tontisirin N, Muangman S, et al. Effect of equiosmolar solutions of mannitol versus hypertonic saline on intraoperative brain relaxation and electrolyte balance. Anesthesiology 2007;107(5):697–704.
44. Boone MD, Oren-Grinberg A, Robinson TM, et al. Mannitol or hypertonic saline in the setting of traumatic brain injury: What have we learned? Surg Neurol Int 2015;6:177.
45. Singla A, Mathew PJ, Jangra K, et al. A comparison of hypertonic saline and mannitol on intraoperative brain relaxation in patients with raised intracranial pressure during supratentorial tumors resection: A randomized control trial. Neurol India 2020;68(1):141–5.
46. Chen H, Song Z, Dennis JA. Hypertonic saline versus other intracranial pressure-lowering agents for people with acute traumatic brain injury. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2019;12(12):CD010904.
47. Roquilly A, Moyer JD, Huet O, et al. Effect of Continuous Infusion of Hypertonic Saline vs Standard Care on 6-Month Neurological Outcomes in Patients With Traumatic Brain Injury: The COBI Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA. 2021;325(20):2056–2066.
48. Han C, Yang F, Guo S, et al. Hypertonic Saline Compared to Mannitol for the Management of Elevated Intracranial Pressure in Traumatic Brain Injury: A Meta-Analysis. Front Surg. 2022;8:765784.
49. Bernhardt K, McClune W, Rowland MJ, et al.

Hypertonic Saline Versus Other Intracranial-Pressure-Lowering Agents for Patients with Acute Traumatic Brain Injury: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. Neurocrit Care. 2023.

50. Iqbal U, Kumar A, Arsal SA, et al. Efficacy of hypertonic saline and mannitol in patients with traumatic brain injury and cerebral edema: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Egypt J Neurosurg. 2023;38:54.
51. Hauer EM, Stark D, Staykov D, et al. Early continuous hypertonic saline infusion in patients with severe cerebrovascular disease. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(7):1766–1772.
52. Koenig MA, Bryan M, Lewin IJL, et al. Reversal of transtentorial herniation with hypertonic saline. Neurology. 2008;70(13):1023–1029.
53. Cooper DJ. Hypertonic saline resuscitation for head injured patients. Critical Care and Resusctiation 1999;1(2):161.
54. Joseph B, Aziz H, Snell M, et al. The physiological effects of hyperosmolar resuscitation: 5% vs 3% hypertonic saline. Am. J. Surg. 2014;208(5):697–702.
55. Shrum B, Church B, McArthur E, et al. Hypertonic salt solution for peri-operative fluid management. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2016;(6):CD005576.
56. Jarvela K, Rantanen M, Koobi T, et al. Hypertonic saline-hydroxyethyl starch solution attenuates fluid accumulation in cardiac surgery patients: a randomized controlled double-blind trial. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther 2018;50(2):122–127.
57. Loftus TJ, Efron PA, Bala TM, et al. Hypertonic saline resuscitation following emergent laparotomy and temporary abdominal closure. J Trauma Acute Care Surg. 2018;84(2):350–357.
58. Bulger EM, May S, Kerby JD, et al. Out-of-hospital hypertonic resuscitation after traumatic hypovolemic shock. Ann Surg. 2011;253(3):431–441.
59. Vahidi E, Naderpour Z, Saeedi M. Hypertonic Saline in the Treatment of Hemorrhagic Shock. Adv J Emerg Med. 2017;1(1):e8.
60. Wu MC, Liao TY, Lee EM, et al. Administration of Hypertonic Solutions for Hemorrhagic Shock: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis of Clinical Trials. Anesth Analg. 2017;125(5):1549–1557.
61. Blanchard IE, Ahmad A, Tang KL, et al. The effectiveness of prehospital hypertonic saline for hypotensive trauma patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Emerg Med. 2017;17(1):35.
62. Paterna S, Parrinello G, Amato P, et al. Tolerability and efficacy of high-dose furosemide and small-volume hypertonic saline solution in refractory congestive heart failure. Adv Ther. 1999;16(5):219–228.
63. Paterna S, Di Pasquale P, Parrinello G, et al. Effects of high-dose furosemide and small-volume hypertonic saline solution infusion in comparison with a high dose of furosemide as a bolus, in refractory congestive heart failure. Eur J Heart Fail. 2000;2(3):305–313.
64. Licata G, Di Pasquale P, Parrinello G, et al. Effects of high-dose furosemide and small-volume hypertonic saline solution infusion in comparison with a high dose of furosemide as bolus in refractory congestive heart failure: long-term effects. Am Heart J 2003;145(3):459–66.
65. Paterna S, Fasullo S, Parrinello G, et al. Short-term effects of hypertonic saline solution in acute heart failure and long-term effects of a moderate sodium restriction in patients with compensated heart failure with New York Heart Association class III (Class C) (SMAC-HF Study). Am J Med Sci. 2011;342(1):27–37.
66. Engelmeier RS, Le TT, Kamalay SE, et al. Randomized trial of high dose furosemide-hypertonic saline in acute decompensated heart failure with advanced renal disease. Journal of the American College of Cardiology. 2012;59:e958.
67. Gandhi S, Mosleh W, Myers RB. Hypertonic saline with furosemide for the treatment of acute congestive heart failure: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Cardiol 2014;173(2):139–145.
68. Yayla Ç, Akyel A, Canpolat U, et al. Comparison of three diuretic treatment strategies for patients with acute decompensated heart failure. Herz. 2015;40(8):1115–1120.
69. De Vecchis R, Esposito C, Ariano C, et al. Hypertonic saline plus i.v. furosemide improve renal safety profile and clinical outcomes in acute decompensated heart failure: A meta-analysis of the literature. Herz 2015;40(3):423–35.
70. Lafrenière G, Béliveau P, Bégin J, et al. Effects of hypertonic saline solution on body weight and serum creatinine in patients with acute decompensated heart failure. World J Cardiol. 2017;9(8):685–692.
71. Wan Y, Li L, Niu H, et al. Impact of Compound Hypertonic Saline Solution on Decompensated Heart Failure. Int Heart J. 2017;58(4):601–607.
72. Crane A, Hertel C, Hobza, et al. Does hypertonic saline infusion with furosemide improve outcomes for patients with acute CHF exacerbation? Evidence-Based Practice 2018;21(2):5–6.
73. Griffin M, Soufer A, Goljo E, et al. Real world use of hypertonic saline in refractory acute decompensated heart failure: a U.S. center's experience. JACC: Heart Failure 2020;8(3):199–208.
74. Farkas J. Hyperdiuresis: Using hypertonic saline to facilitate diuresis. PulmCrit December 9, 2019. https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/pulmcrit-hyperdiuresis-using-hypertonic-saline-to-facilitate-diuresis/.
75. Hanberg J, Rao V, Ter M, et al. Hypochloremia and diuretic resistance in heart failure: mechanistic insights. Circ Heart Fail. 2016;9(8):10.
76. Masella C, Viggiano D, Molfino I, et al. Diuretic resistance in cardio-nephrology: role of pharmacokinetics, hypochloremia, and kidney remodeling. Kidney Blood Press Res 2019;44(5):915–927.
77. Regolisti G, Antoniotti R, Pastorini G, et al. Management of congestion and diuretic resistance in heart failure. Nephrology @ Point of Care. 2016;2(1):73–87.
78. Elkins MR, Robinson M, Rose BR, et al. A controlled trial of long-term inhaled hypertonic saline in patients with cystic fibrosis. N Engl J Med

2006;354(3):229–40.
79. Flume PA, O'Sullivan BP, Robinson KA, et al. Cystic fibrosis pulmonary guidelines: chronic medications for maintenance of lung health. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2007;176(10):957–69.
80. Wark P, McDonald VM. Nebulised hypertonic saline for cystic fibrosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2018;9(9):CD001506.
81. Elkins M, Dentice R. Timing of hypertonic saline inhalation for cystic fibrosis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2020;2(2):CD008816.
82. Donaldson SH, Bennett WD, Zeman KL, et al. Mucus clearance and lung function in cystic fibrosis with hypertonic saline. N. Engl. J. Med. 2006;354(3):241–250.
83. Elkins MR, Bye PT. Mechanisms and applications of hypertonic saline. R Soc Med 2011;104(Suppl 1):S2–5.
84. Reeves EP, McCarthy C, McElvaney OJ, et al. Inhaled hypertonic saline for cystic fibrosis: reviewing the potential evidence for modulation of neutrophil signalling and function. World J Crit Care Med. 2015;4(3):179–191.
85. Tildy BE, Rogers DF. Therapeutic options for hydrating airway mucus in cystic fibrosis. Pharmacology 2015;95(3–4):117–132.
86. Rubin BK. Aerosol medications for treatment of mucus clearance disorders respiratory care 2015;60(6):825–832.
87. George JC, Zafar W, Bucaloiu ID, et al. Risk Factors and Outcomes of Rapid Correction of Severe Hyponatremia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2018;13(7):984–992.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

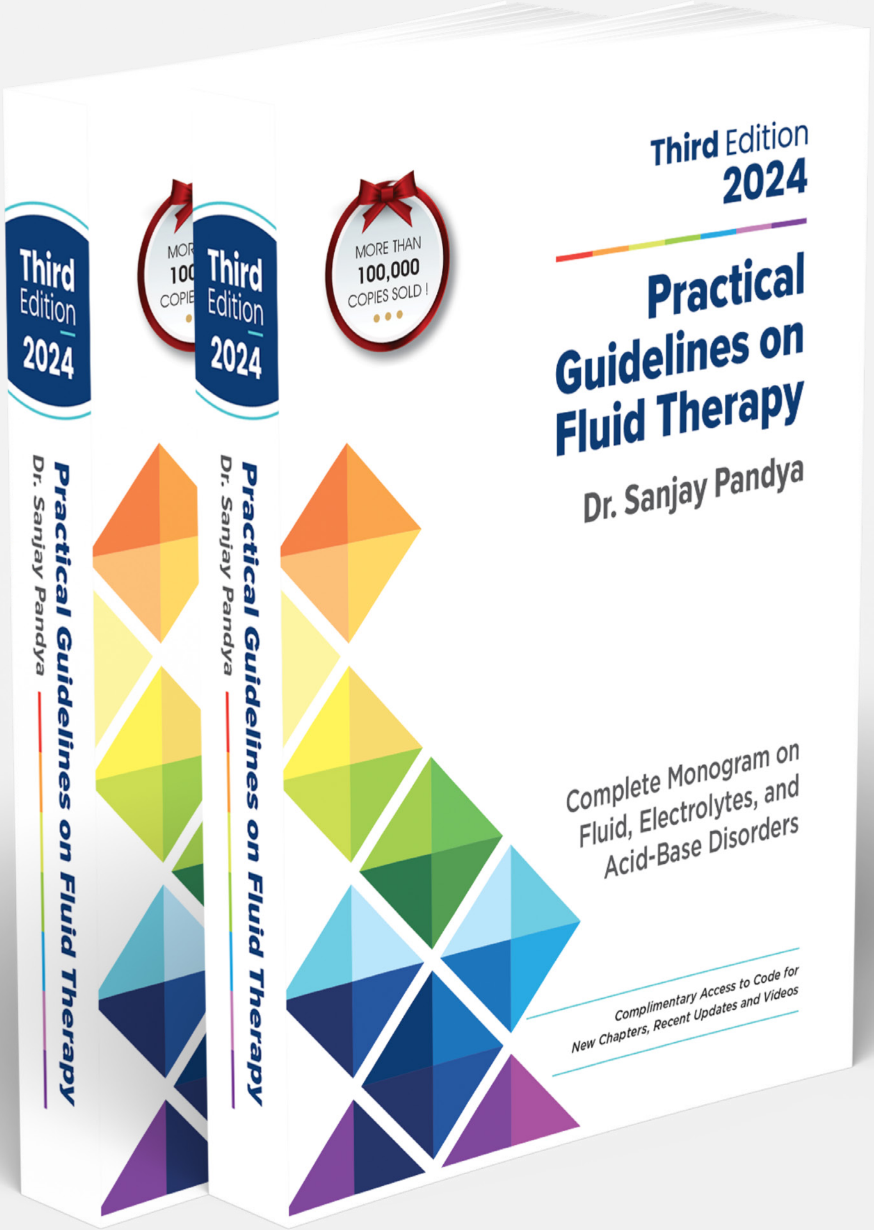
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 12:

Magnesium Sulfate


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

12

Magnesium Sulfate

Composition **131**
Pharmacological Basis **131**
  Preeclampsia and eclampsia 132
  Preterm labor 132
  Asthma 132
  Cardiac arrhythmias 132
  Hypokalemia 132
  Tetanus 133
Indications **133**
  Hypomagnesemia 133
  Obstetric practice 135
    Preeclampsia and eclampsia .. 135
    Fetal neuroprotection 136
    Preterm labor 136
  Acute asthma 136
  Cardiac arrhythmias 137
  Hypokalemia 137
  Hypocalcemia 137
  Tetanus 137
  Migraine 137
  Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage 138
  COPD 138
Contraindications/Precautions **138**
Adverse Effects **138**
Administration **138**
Monitoring **139**
Antidote **139**

Injection Magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4$) is the most common parenterally used magnesium salt in clinical practice.

COMPOSITION

Injection Magnesium sulfate is available in different concentrations.

Inj. 50% Magnesium Sulfate

Each ml contains:
Magnesium Sulfate USP 500 mg
4.06 mEq or 2.03 mmol Magnesium ions
Osmolarity 4060 mOsm/L

50% Magnesium Sulfate per ampoule: 1 gm/2 ml and 5 gm/10 ml

Inj. 20% Magnesium Sulfate

Magnesium Sulfate USP 2 gm/10 ml

Inj. 10% Magnesium Sulfate

Magnesium Sulfate USP 1 gm/10 ml

Conversion relationships: Magnesium Sulfate 1 gm = 4 mmol mg = 8 mEq mg

PHARMACOLOGICAL BASIS

Magnesium is the second most common intracellular cation. It is an essential co-factor in many biochemical reactions and plays a vital role in nerve transmission, neurochemical transmission, cardiac excitability, muscular excitability, and vasomotor tone. It also affects the regulation of calcium and potassium.

A. Preeclampsia and eclampsia

Magnesium sulfate is an effective treatment for eclampsia, but the exact mechanism of action remains unclear and is suggested to be multi-factorial (works through both vascular and neurological mechanisms) [1]. Different proposed mechanisms are:

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Euser AG, Cipolla MJ. Magnesium sulfate for the treatment of eclampsia: A brief review. Stroke. 2009;40(4):1169–75.
2. Vigorito C, Giordano A, Ferraro P, et al. Hemodynamic effects of magnesium sulfate on the normal human heart. Am J cardiol 1991;67(16):1435–7.
3. Kaya M, Ahishali B. The role of magnesium in edema and blood brain barrier disruption. In: Vink R, Nechifor M, editors. Magnesium in the Central Nervous System [Internet]. Adelaide (AU): University of Adelaide Press; 2011. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK507252/.
4. Li X, Han X, Yang J, et al. Magnesium sulfate provides neuroprotection in eclampsia-like seizure model by ameliorating neuroinflammation and brain edema. Mol Neurobiol 2017;54:7938–7948.
5. Swaminathan R. Magnesium metabolism and its disorders. Clin Biochem Rev. 2003;24(2):47–66.
6. Zwer F. Factors affect neuromuscular transmission and block. J Anesth Crit Care Open Access 2016;6(1):00216.
7. Dube L, Granry JC. The therapeutic use of magnesium in anesthesiology, intensive care and emergency medicine: a review. Can J Anaesth 2003;50(7):732–746.
8. Abramovici A, Cantu J, Jenkins SM. Tocolytic therapy for acute preterm labor. ObstetGynecol Clin North Am. 2012;39(1):77–87.
9. Gourgoulianis KI, Chatziparasidis G, Chatziefthimiou A, et al. Magnesium as a relaxing factor of airway smooth muscles. J Aerosol Med 2001;14(3):301–307.
10. Kelly HW. Magnesium sulfate for severe acute asthma in children. J PediatrPharmacolTher. 2003;8(1):40–45.
11. Skou JC, Butler KW, Hansen O. The effect of magnesium, ATP, P i, and sodium on the inhibition of the (Na++ K+)-activated enzyme system by g-strophanthin. BiochimBiophys Acta. 1971;241(2):443–61.
12. Agus MS, Agus ZS. Cardiovascular actions of magnesium. Crit Care Clin. 2001;17(1):175–86.
13. Millane TA, Ward DE, Camm AJ. Is hypomagnesemia arrhythmogenic? Clin Cardiol 1992;15(2):103–8.
14. DiCarlo LA Jr, Morady F, de Buitleir M, et al. Effects of magnesium sulfate on cardiac conduction and refractoriness in humans. J Am Coll Cardiol. 1986;7(6):1356–62.
15. Kasaoka S, Tsuruta R, Nakashima K, et al. Effect of intravenous magnesium sulfate on cardiac arrhythmias in critically ill patients with low serum ionized magnesium. JpnCirc J. 1996;60(11):871–5.
16. Huang CL, Kuo E. Mechanism of hypokalemia in magnesium deficiency. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;18(10):2649–2652.
17. Thwaites CL, Yen LM, Cordon SM, et al. Urinary catecholamine excretion in tetanus. Anaesthesia 2006;61(4):355–359.
18. Attygalle D, Rodrigo N. Magnesium as first line therapy in the management of tetanus: A prospective study of 40 patients. Anaesthesia 2002;57(8):778–817.
19. Kole AK, Roy R, Kar SS, et al. Experience of use of magnesium sulfate in the treatment of tetanus in a tertiary referral infectious disease hospital, Kolkata, India. Ann Trop Med Health 2013;6:456–9.
20. Rodrigo C, Fernando D, Rajapakse S. Pharmacological management of tetanus: an evidence-based

review. Crit Care 2014;18(2):217.

21. Cook TM, Protheroe RT, Handel JM. Tetanus: a review of the literature, Br J Anaesth, 2001;87(3):477–87.
22. Thwaites CL, Yen LM, Cordon SM, et al. Effect of magnesium sulphate on urinary catecholamine excretion in severe tetanus. Anaesthesia 2008;63(7):719–725.
23. Soliman HM, Mercan D, Lobo SS, et al. Development of ionized hypomagnesemia is associated with higher mortality rates. Crit Care Med 2003;31(4):1082–7.
24. Chernow B, Bamberger BSS, Stoiko M, et al. Hypomagnesemia in patients in postoperative intensive care. Chest 1989;95(2):391–397.
25. Deheinzelin D, Negri EM, Tucci MR, et al. Hypomagnesemia in critically ill cancer patients: A prospective study of predictive factors. Braz J Med Biol Res 2000;33(12):1443–8.
26. Rubeiz GJ, Thill-Baharozian M, Hardie D, et al. Association of hypomagnesemia and mortality in acutely ill medical patients. Crit Care Med. 1993;21(2):203–9.
27. Limaye CS, Londhey VA, Nadkar MY, et al. Hypomagnesemia in critically ill medical patients. J Assoc Physicians India. 2011;59:19–22.
28. Fairley J, Glassford NJ, Zhang L, et al. Magnesium status and magnesium therapy in critically ill patients: A systematic review. J Crit Care. 2015;30(6):1349–1358.
29. Martin KJ, Gonzalez EA, Slatopolsky E. Clinical consequences and management of hypomagnesemia. J. Am. Soc. Nephrol. 2009;20(11):2291–2295.
30. Velissaris D, Karamouzos V, Pierrakos C, et al. Hypomagnesemia in critically ill sepsis patients. J Clin Med Res. 2015;7(12):911–8.
31. Neumar RW, Otto CW, Link MS, et al. Part 8: adult advanced cardiovascular life support: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation. 2010;122(18 Suppl 3):729–67.
32. Tzivoni D, Banai S, Schuger C, et al. Treatment of torsade de pointes with magnesium sulfate. Circulation. 1988;77(2):392–7.
33. Kraft MD, Btaiche IF, Sacks GS, et al. Treatment of electrolyte disorders in adult patients in the intensive care unit. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2005;62(16):1663–82.
34. Gestational Hypertension and Preeclampsia: ACOG Practice Bulletin, Number 222. Obstet Gynecol. 2020;135(6):e237–e260.
35. Magee LA, De Silva DA, Sawchuck D, et al. 376-Magnesium Sulphate for Fetal Neuroprotection. SOGC Clinical practice guideline 2019;41(4):505–522.
36. Kew KM, Kirtchuk L, Michell CI. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating adults with acute asthma in the emergency department. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2014;28(5):CD010909.
37. Current recommendations for treatment of tetanus during humanitarian emergencies. WHO Technical Note. World Health Organization January 2010.
38. Hammond DA, Stojakovic J, Kathe N, et al. Effectiveness and safety of magnesium replacement in critically ill patients admitted to the medical intensive care unit in an academic medical center: a retrospective, cohort study. J Intensive Care Med. 2019;34(11–12):967–972.
39. Van de Wal-Visscher ER, Kooman JP, van der Sande FM. Magnesium in chronic kidney disease: should we care?. Blood Purif. 2018;45(1–3):173–178.
40. Agus ZS. Hypomagnesemia. J Am Soc Nephrol 1999;10(7):1616–22.
41. Pritchard JA. The use of the magnesium ion in the management of eclamptogenictoxemias. SurgGynecolObstet 1955;100(2):131–40.
42. Which anticonvulsant for women with eclampsia? Evidence from the Collaborative Eclampsia Trial. Lancet. 1995;345(8963):1455–63.
43. WHO recommendations for Prevention and treatment of pre-eclampsia and eclampsia. World Health Organization 2011.
44. Magee LA, Pels A, Helewa M, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, and management of the hypertensive disorders of pregnancy: executive summary. J ObstetGynaecol Can 2014;36(5):416–41.
45. Hypertension in pregnancy: diagnosis and management. NICE guideline [NG133] Published: 25 June 2019. Visit: www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng133.
46. Altman D, Carroli G, Duley L, et al. Do women with preeclampsia, and their babies, benefit from magnesium sulphate? The Magpie Trial: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Magpie Trial Collaboration Group. Lancet 2002;359(9321):1877–90.
47. Livingston JC, Livingston LW, Ramsey R, et al. Magnesium sulfate in women with mild preeclampsia: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 2003;101(2):217–20.
48. Cahill AG, Macones GA, Odibo AO, et al. Magnesium for seizure prophylaxis in patients with mild preeclampsia. ObstetGynecol 2007;110(3):601–7.
49. Duley L, Henderson-Smart DJ, Chou D. Magnesium sulphate versus phenytoin for eclampsia. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010;(10):CD000128.
50. Duley L, Gülmezoglu AM, Henderson-Smart DJ, et al. Magnesium sulphate and other anticonvulsants for women with pre-eclampsia. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2010;2010(11):CD000025.
51. Duley L, Henderson-Smart DJ, Walker GJA, et al. Magnesium sulphate versus diazepam for eclampsia. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010;2010(12):CD000127.
52. Belfort MA, Anthony J, Saade GR, et al. A comparison of magnesium sulfate and nimodipine for the prevention of eclampsia. Nimodipine Study Group. N Engl J Med 2003;348(4):304–11.
53. Duley L, Gülmezoglu AM, Chou D. Magnesium sulphate versus lytic cocktail for eclampsia. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010;2010(9):CD002960.

54. Cunningham FG, Leveno KJ, Bloom SL, et al. Hypertensive Disorders. In: Williams Obstetrics, 25th edition McGraw-Hill Education, 2018.p.710.
55. Hall DR, Odendaal HJ, Smith M. Is the prophylactic administration of magnesium sulphate in women with pre-eclampsia indicated prior to labour? BJOG 2000;107(7):903–8.
56. Salinger DH, Mundle S, Regi A, et al. Magnesium sulphate for prevention of eclampsia: are intramuscular and intravenous regimens equivalent? A population pharmacokinetic study. BJOG 2013;120(7):894–900.
57. Managing complications in pregnancy and childbirth: a guide for midwives and doctors – 2nd ed. Geneva: World Health Organization;2017.
58. Chollat C, Marret S. Magnesium sulfate and fetal neuroprotection: overview of clinical evidence. Neural Regen Res 2018;13(12):2044–2049.
59. Jayaram PM, Mohan MK, Farid I, et al. Antenatal magnesium sulfate for fetal neuroprotection: a critical appraisal and systematic review of clinical practice guidelines. J Perinat Med 2019;47(3):262–269.
60. Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Martins JG, Biggio JR, et al. Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine Consult Series #52: Diagnosis and management of fetal growth restriction: (Replaces Clinical Guideline Number 3, April 2012). Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2020;223(4):B2–B17.
61. Crowther CA, Hiller JE, Doyle LW, et al. Effect of magnesium sulfate given for neuroprotection before preterm birth: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2003;290(20):2669–76.
62. Rouse DJ, Hirtz DG, Thom E, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of magnesium sulfate for the prevention of cerebral palsy. N Engl J Med 2008;359(9):895–905.
63. Doyle LW, Crowther CA, Middleton P, et al. Magnesium sulphate for women at risk of preterm birth for neuroprotection of the fetus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009;(1):CD004661.
64. Nguyen TMN, Crowther CA, Wilkinson D, et al. Magnesium sulphate for women at term for neuroprotection of the fetus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;(2):CD009395.
65. Zeng X, Xue Y, Tian Q, et al. Effects and safety of magnesium sulfate on neuroprotection: a meta-analysis based on PRISMA guidelines. Medicine (Baltimore) 2016;95(1):e2451.
66. Crowther CA, Middleton PF, Voysey M, et al. Assessing the neuroprotective benefits for babies of antenatal magnesium sulphate: An individual participant data meta-analysis. PLoS Med. 2017;14(10):e1002398.
67. Committee Opinion No 652: Magnesium Sulfate Use in Obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol. 2016;127(1):e52–e53.
68. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Committee on Obstetric Practice Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine. Committee Opinion No. 573: Magnesium sulfate use in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol. 2013;122(3):727–8.
69. FDA recommends against prolonged use of magnesium sulfate to stop pre-term labor due to bone changes in exposed babies. https://www.fda.gov/media/85971/download (Accessed on July 25, 2020).
70. Cheuk DKL, Chau TC, Lee SL. A meta-analysis on intravenous magnesium sulphate for treating acute asthma. Arch Dis Child. 2005;90(1):74–7.
71. Su Z, Li R, Gai Z. Intravenous and nebulized magnesium sulfate for treating acute asthma in children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PediatrEmerg Care. 2018;34(6):390–395.
72. 2020 GINA Pocket Guide - Global Initiative for Asthma. Pocket guide for asthma management and prevention (for adult and children older than 5 years). A Pocket Guide for Health Professionals Updated 2020.
73. Silverman RA, Osborn H, Runge J, et al. Acute Asthma/Magnesium Study Group. IV magnesium sulfate in the treatment of acute severe asthma: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. Chest. 2002;122(2):489–97.
74. Griffiths B, Kew KM. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating children with acute asthma in the emergency department. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2016;29(4):CD011050.
75. Özdemir A, Doğruel D. Efficacy of magnesium sulfate treatment in children with acute asthma. Med PrincPract. 2020;29(3):292–298.
76. Irazuzta JE, Paredes F, Pavlicich V, et al. High-dose magnesium sulfate infusion for severe asthma in the emergency department: efficacy study. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2016;17(2):e29–33.
77. Torres S, Sticco N, Bosch JJ, et al. Effectiveness of magnesium sulfate as initial treatment of acute severe asthma in children, conducted in a tertiary- level university hospital: a randomized, controlled trial. Arch Argent Pediatr. 2012;110(4):291–6.
78. Mathew JL, Walia M. Systematic review on efficacy of magnesium (intravenous or nebulized) for acute asthma episodes in children. Indian Pediatr 2017;54(2):133–137.
79. Knightly R, Milan SJ, Hughes R, et al. Inhaled magnesium sulfate in the treatment of acute asthma. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;11(11):CD003898.
80. Khan AM, Lubitz SA, Sullivan LM, et al. Low serum magnesium and the development of atrial fibrillation in the community. Circulation 2013;127(1):33–38.
81. Markovits N, Kurnik D, Halkin H, et al. Database evaluation of the association between serum magnesium levels and the risk of atrial fibrillation in the community. Int J Cardiol 2016;205:142–146.
82. Ceremuzynski L, Gebalska J, Wolk R, et al. Hypomagnesemia in heart failure with ventricular arrhythmias. Beneficial effects of magnesium supplementation. J Intern Med. 2000;247(1):78–86.
83. Eisenberg MJ. Magnesium deficiency and sudden death. Am Heart J. 1992;124(2):544–549.
84. Alghamdi AA, Al-Radi OO, Latter DA. Intravenous magnesium for prevention of atrial fibrillation after coronary artery bypass surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Journal of Cardiac Surgery 2005;20(3):293–299.

85. Gu WJ, Wu ZJ, Wang PF, et al. Intravenous magnesium prevents atrial fibrillation after coronary artery bypass grafting: a meta-analysis of 7 double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized clinical trials. Trials. 2012;13:41.
86. Burgess DC, Kilborn MJ, Keech AC. Interventions for prevention of post-operative atrial fibrillation and its complications after cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis. European Heart Journal 2006;27(23):2846–57.
87. Miller S, Crystal E, Garfinkle M, et al. Effects of magnesium on atrial fibrillation after cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis. Heart. 2005;91(5):618–623.
88. Ho KM, Sheridan DJ, Paterson T. Use of intravenous magnesium to treat acute onset atrial fibrillation: a meta-analysis. Heart. 2007;93(11):1433–40.
89. Onalan O, Crystal E, Daoulah A, et al. Meta-analysis of magnesium therapy for the acute management of rapid atrial fibrillation. Am J Cardiol 2007;99(12):1726–32.
90. Bouida W, Beltaief K, Msolli MA, et al. Low-dose magnesium sulfate versus high dose in the early management of rapid atrial fibrillation: randomized controlled double-blind study (LOMAGHI study). AcadEmerg Med. 2019;26(2):183–191.
91. Salaminia S, Sayehmiri F, Angha P, et al. Evaluating the effect of magnesium supplementation and cardiac arrhythmias after acute coronary syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Cardiovasc Disord 2018;18(1):129.
92. Priori SG, Blomstrom-Lundqvist C, Mazzanti A, et al. 2015 ESC Guidelines for the management of patients with ventricular arrhythmias and the prevention of sudden cardiac death. Europace 2015;17(11):1601–87.
93. Panchal AR, Berg KM, Kudenchuk PJ, et al. 2018 American heart association focused update on advanced cardiovascular life support use of antiarrhythmic drugs during and immediately after cardiac arrest: an update to the American heart association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation 2018;138:e740–e749.
94. Whang R, Whang DD, Ryan MP. Refractory potassium repletion. A consequence of magnesium deficiency. Arch Intern Med. 1992;152(1):40–5.
95. Abbott LG, Rude RK. Clinical manifestations of magnesium deficiency. Miner Electrolyte Metab 1993;19(4–5):314–22.
96. Baker WL. Treating arrhythmias with adjunctive magnesium: identifying future research directions. Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Pharmacother. 2017;3(2):108–117.
97. Hansen BA, Bruserud Ø. Hypomagnesemia in critically ill patients. J Intensive Care 2018;6:21.
98. Rodrigo C, Samarakoon L, Fernando SD, et al. A meta-analysis of magnesium for tetanus. Anaesthesia 2012;67(12):1370–4.
99. Corbo J, Esses D, Bijur PE, et al. Randomized clinical trial of intravenous magnesium sulfate as an adjunctive medication for emergency department treatment of migraine headache. Ann Emerg Med. 2001;38(6):621–7.
100. Demirkaya S, Vural O, Dora B, et al. Efficacy of intravenous magnesium sulfate in the treatment of acute migraine attacks. Headache. 2001;41(2):171–7.
101. Chiu HY, Yeh TH, Huang YC, et al. Effects of intravenous and oral magnesium on reducing migraine: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Pain Physician 2016;19(1):E97–112.
102. Orr SL, Friedman BW, Christie S, et al. Management of adults with acute migraine in the emergency department: the american headache society evidence assessment of parenteral pharmacotherapies. Headache. 2016;56(6):911–40.
103. Miller AC, K Pfeffer B, Lawson MR, et al. Intravenous magnesium sulfate to treat acute headaches in the emergency department: a systematic review. Headache. 2019;59(10):1674–1686.
104. The State of the Migraine Nation, Migraine care rapid research review. Migraine nation - The Migraine Trust 2020.
105. Bigal ME, Bordini CA, Tepper SJ, et al. Intravenous magnesium sulphate in the acute treatment of migraine without aura and migraine with aura. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Cephalalgia. 2002;22(5):345–353.
106. Shahrami A, Assarzadegan F, Hatamabadi HR, et al. Comparison of therapeutic effects of magnesium sulfate vs. dexamethasone/metoclopramide on alleviating acute migraine headache. J Emerg Med. 2015;48(1):69–76.
107. Baratloo A, Mirbaha S, Delavar KH, et al. Intravenous caffeine citrate vs. magnesium sulfate for reducing pain in patients with acute migraine headache; a prospective quasi-experimental study. The Korean Journal of Pain. 2017;30(3):176–182.
108. Delavar KH, Amiri M, Negida A, et al. Ketorolac versus magnesium sulfate in migraine headache pain management; a preliminary study. Emergency (Tehran, Iran). 2017;5(1):e2.
109. Chia RY, Hughes RS, Morgan MK. Magnesium: a useful adjunct in the prevention of cerebral vasospasm following aneurysmal following aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. J Clin Neurosci. 2002;9(3):279–81.
110. Dorhout MSM, van den Bergh WM, Algra A, et al. Achieved serum magnesium concentrations and occurrence of delayed cerebral ischaemia and poor outcome in aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2007;78(7):729–731.
111. Zhao XD, Zhou YT, Zhang X, et al. A meta-analysis of treating subarachnoid haemorrhage with magnesium sulfate. J ClinNeurosci. 2009;16(11):1394–7.
112. Westermaier T, Stetter C, Vince GH, et al. Prophylactic intravenous magnesium sulfate for treatment of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a randomized, placebo-controlled, clinical study. Crit Care Med. 2010;38(5):1284–1290.
113. Kunze E, Lilla N, Stetter C, et al. Magnesium protects in episodes of critical perfusion after aneurysmal SAH, Translational Neuroscience 2018;9(1):99–105.
114. Soliman R, Zohry G. Effect of magnesium sulphate and milrinone on cerebral vasospasm after

aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a randomized study. Rev Bras Anestesiol. 2019;69(1):64–71.

115. Muir KW, Lees KR, Ford I, et al. Magnesium for acute stroke (Intravenous Magnesium Efficacy in Stroke trial): randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2004;363(9407):439–45.
116. Dorhout MSM, Algra A, Vandertop WP, et al. Magnesium for aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage (MASH-2): a randomized placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2012;380(9836):44–49.
117. Steiner T, Juvela S, Unterberg A, et al. European Stroke Organization guidelines for the management of intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid haemorrhage. Cerebrovasc Dis. 2013;35:93–112.
118. Golan E, Vasquez D, Ferguson N, et al. Prophylactic magnesium for improving neurologic outcome after aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage: systematic review and meta-analysis. J CritCare. 2013;28(2):173–81.
119. Reddy D, Fallah A, Petropoulos JA, et al. Prophylactic magnesium sulfate for aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Neurocrit Care. 2014;21(2):356–64.
120. Saver JL, Starkman S, Eckstein M, et al. Prehospital use of magnesium sulfate as neuroprotection in acute stroke. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(6):528–536.
121. Avgerinos KI, Chatzisotiriou A, Haidich AB, et al. Intravenous magnesium sulfate in acute stroke: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Stroke. 2019;50(4):931–938.
122. Ni H, Aye SZ, Naing C. Magnesium sulfate for acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2022;5(5):CD013506.
123. Jahangir A, Zia Z, Niazi MRK, et al. Efficacy of magnesium sulfate in the chronic obstructive pulmonary disease population: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Adv Respir Med. 2022;90(2):125–133.
124. Makwana S, Patel A, Sonagara M. Correlation Between Serum Magnesium Level and Acute Exacerbation in Patients With Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD). Cureus. 2022;14(6):e26229.
125. Guerrera MP, Volpe SL, Mao JJ. Therapeutic uses of magnesium. Am Fam Physician. 2009;80(2):157–162.
126. Efstratiadis G, Sarigianni M, Gougourelas I. Hypomagnesemia and cardiovascular system. Hippokratia. 2006;10(4):147–152.
127. Xiong J, He T, Wang M, et al. Serum magnesium, mortality, and cardiovascular disease in chronic kidney disease and end-stage renal disease patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J. Nephrol. 2019;32(5):791–802.
128. Mehrizi M, Fontem RF, Gearhart TR, et al. Medications and Myasthenia Gravis (A Reference for Health Care Professionals). Department of Neurology, Indiana University School of Medicine, USA. 2012.
129. Singh P, Idowu O, Malik I, et al. Acute respiratory failure induced by magnesium replacement in a 62-year-old woman with myasthenia gravis. Tex Heart Inst J. 2015;42(5):495–7.
130. Grissinger M. Avoiding patient harm from a magnesium bolus dose. P T. 2014;39(2):81–129.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

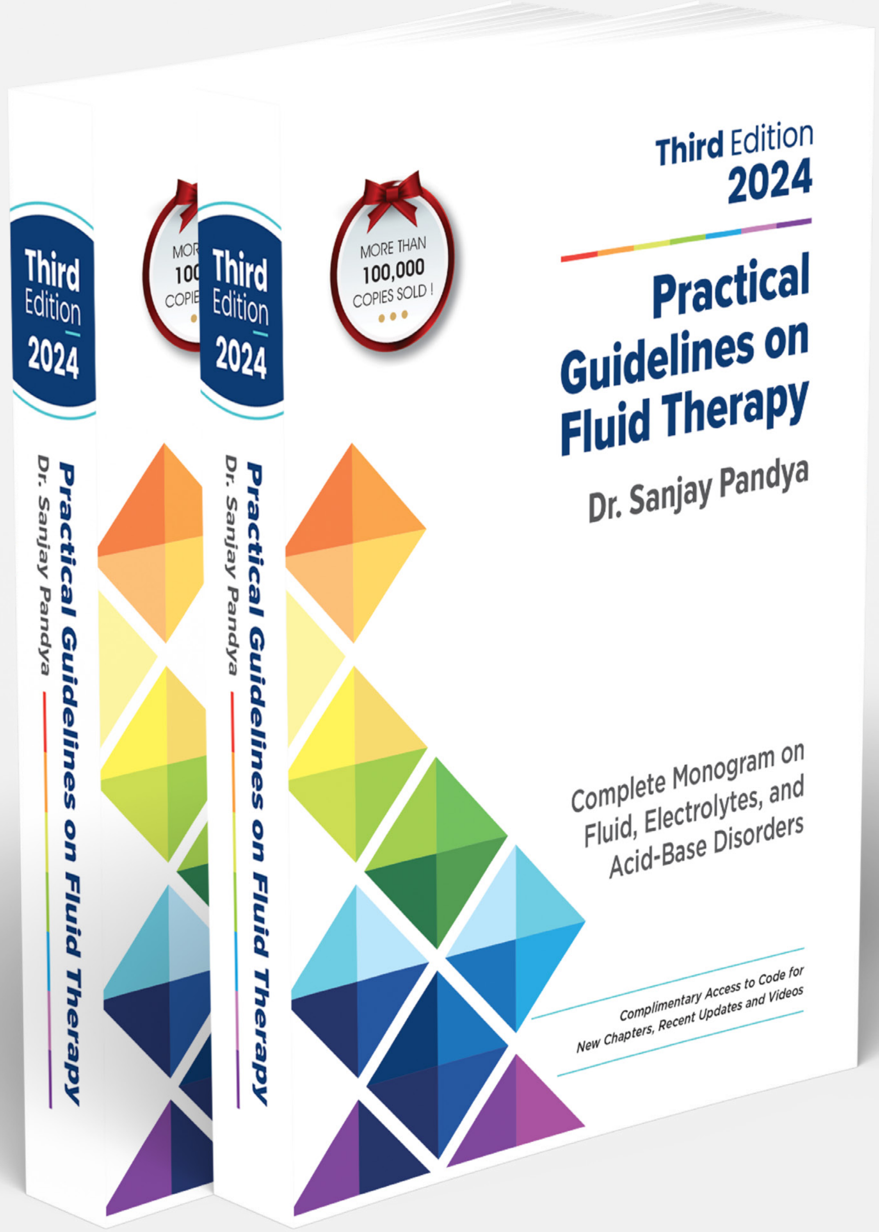
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 13:

Potassium Chloride and Potassium Phosphate


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

13

Potassium Chloride and Potassium Phosphate

POTASSIUM CHLORIDE 144
Composition.................................... 144
Pharmacological basis.................... 144
Indications....................................... 145
Adverse effects............................... 145
Contraindications............................ 145
Administration................................ 145
POTASSIUM PHOSPHATE........... 146
Composition.................................... 146
Pharmacological basis.................... 146
Indications....................................... 147
Adverse effects............................... 147
Precautions/contraindications....... 148
Administration................................ 148

Potassium chloride (KCl) and potassium phosphate are essential potassium salts used in clinical practice, with potassium chloride being the more common choice and is widely used for correcting hypokalemia. In contrast, potassium phosphate is less frequently administered and primarily used to manage or prevent hypophosphatemia.

INJECTION POTASSIUM CHLORIDE

COMPOSITION

Inj. 15% Potassium Chloride

Each ml contains:

Potassium	2 mEq
KCl	150 mg
Osmolarity	4024 mOsmol/L (calc)
pH	6.0 (4.0 to 8.0)

Available as 10 ml ampules which provides:

Potassium	20.0 mEq
KCl	1.5 mg

PHARMACOLOGICAL BASIS

Potassium is distributed chiefly intracellularly with concentrations of 140 to 150 mEq/L and is the most abundant intracellular cation. The normal range for serum potassium is 3.5–5.0 mEq/L, and its presence in extracellular fluid (ECF) is very important for the regulation of nerve conduction and contraction of muscles, particularly in the heart.

The ability of kidneys to retain potassium is incomplete (unlike sodium). Therefore, potassium loss from the body continues in patients on a potassium-free diet and even in hypokalemia. So, potassium supplementation is required in the patient on maintenance fluid therapy to avoid hypokalemia.

Moreover, in many conditions where sodium and potassium both are lost (i.e., diarrhea, vomiting, diuretic therapy, etc.), under the influence of increased aldosterone, sodium is retained, and the potassium is lost by the kidney, which causes or aggravates hypokalemia. So adequate potassium supplementation is necessary along with the administration of sodium.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Intravenous fluid therapy in adults in hospital. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence, 2013 (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg174).
2. Gray A, Wright J, Goodey V, et al. Injectable drugs guide. London. Pharmaceutical Press; 2011:699–702.
3. Aboujamous H, Walton t, Doran JJ. Evaluation of the change in serum potassium levels after potassium administration. J Clin Nephrol Ren Care 2016;2:013.
4. Potassium Chloride Dosage by Drugs.com. Last updated on Aug 9, 2023. Available at: https://www.drugs.com/dosage/potassium-chloride.html Accessed on 12 January 2024.
5. Clase CM, Carrero JJ, Ellison DH, et al. Potassium homeostasis and management of dyskalemia in kidney diseases: conclusions from a Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Controversies Conference. Kidney Int. 2020;97(1):42–61.
6. Hamill RJ, Robinson LM, Wexler HR, et al. Efficacy and safety of potassium infusion therapy in hypokalemic critically ill patients. Crit Care Med. 1991;19(5):694–699.
7. Du Y, Mou Y, Liu J. Efficiency evaluation and safety monitoring of tailored rapid potassium supplementation strategy for fatal severe hypokalemia. Exp Ther Med. 2019;17(4):3222–323.
8. Mount DB, Sterns RH, Emmett M. Clinical manifestations and treatment of hypokalaemia in adults. In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: Wolters Kluwer Health. http://www.uptodate.com. Accessed 31 Aug 2020.
9. Kraft MD, Btaiche IF, Sacks GS, et al. Treatment of electrolyte disorders in adult patients in the intensive care unit. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2005;62(16):1663–1682.
10. Huang CL, Kuo E. Mechanism of hypokalemia in magnesium deficiency. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;18(10):2649–2652.
11. Geerse DA, Bindels AJ, Kuiper MA, et al. Treatment of hypophosphatemia in the intensive care unit: a review. Crit Care 2010;14(4):R147.
12. Zhao Y, Zhihai LI, Shi Y, et al. Effect of hypophosphatemia on the withdrawal of mechanical ventilation in patients with acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Biomedical Reports. 2016;4(4):413–6.
13. Mirtallo J, Canada T, Johnson D, et al, “Safe Practices for Parenteral Nutrition,” JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr, 2004;28(6):S39–70.
14. Hicks W, Hardy G. Phosphate supplementation for hypophosphatemia and parenteral nutrition. CurrOpin Clin NutrMetab Care 2001;4(3):227–33.
15. Imel EA, Econs MJ. Approach to the hypophosphatemic patient. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(3):696–706.
16. Basri MN, Janattul AJ, Azrina MR, et al. Hypophosphatemia in the intensive care unit: incidence, predictors and management. IMJM 2012;11(1):31–36.
17. Geerse DA, Bindels AJ, Kuiper MA, et al. Approach to hypophosphataemia in intensive care units - a nationwide survey. Neth J Med. 2012;70(9):425–430.
18. Clark CL, Sacks GS, Dickerson RN, et al. Treatment of hypophosphatemia in patients receiving specialized nutrition support using a graduated dosing scheme: results from a prospective clinical trial. Crit Care Med. 1995;23(9):1504–10.
19. Brown KA, Dickerson RN, Morgan LM, et al. A new graduated dosing regimen for phosphorus replacement in patients receiving nutrition support. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2006;30(3):209–14.
20. Yu ASL, Stubbs JR, Goldfarb S. Hypophosphatemia: Evaluation and treatment. In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: Wolters Kluwer Health. http://www.uptodate.com. Accessed 12 Sept 2020.
21. Charron T, Bernard F, Skrobik Y, et al, Intravenous phosphate in the intensive care unit: more aggressive repletion regimens for moderate and severe hypophosphatemia. Intensive Care Med, 2003;29(8):1273–8.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

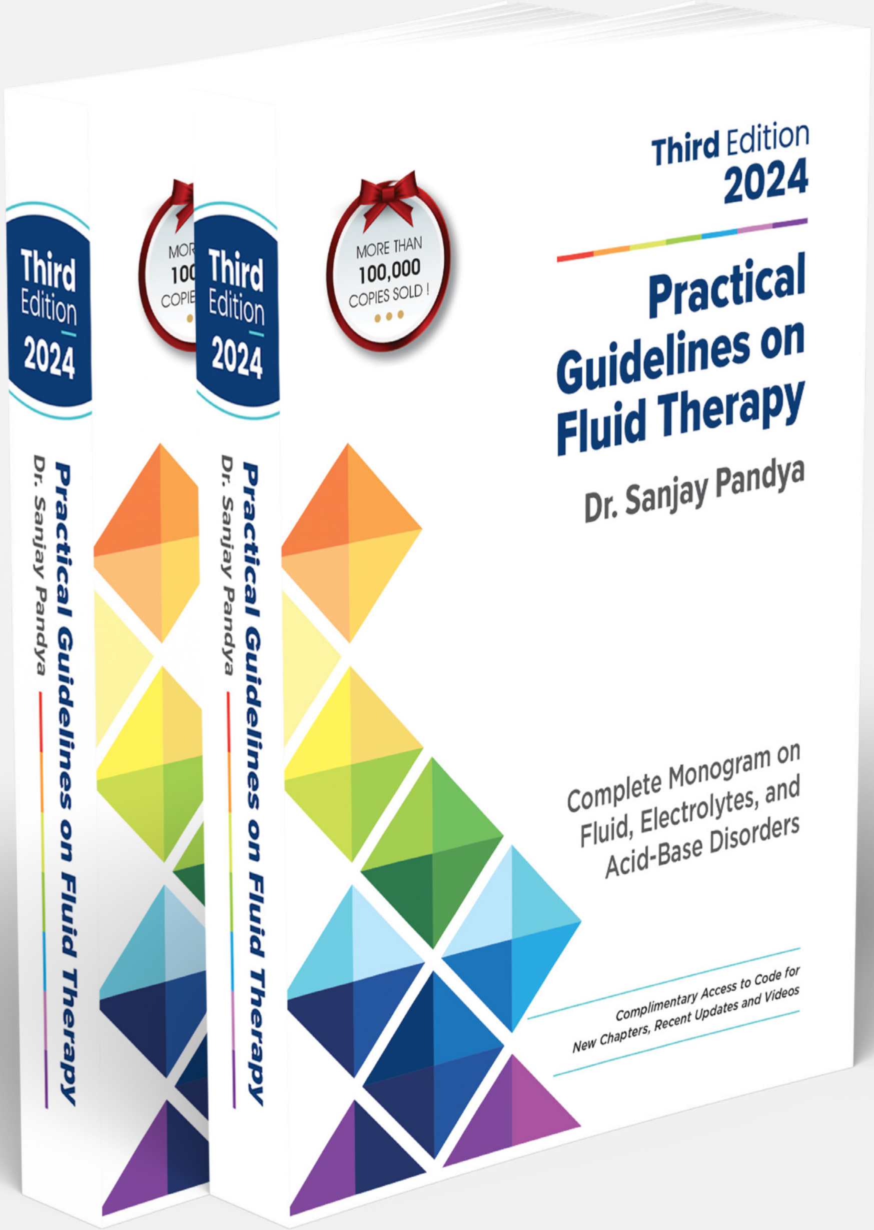
» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 14:

Sodium Bicarbonate


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

14

Sodium Bicarbonate

Composition **151**
Pharmacological Basis **152**
Indications **152**
  Metabolic acidosis 152
  Hyperkalaemia 153
  Cardiac arrest 153
  Tricyclic antidepressant overdose .. 154
  Contrast-induced AKI 154
  Urinary alkalinization 155
    Barbiturates poisoning 155
    Salicylate poisoning 155
    Tumor lysis syndrome 155
    Rhabdomyolysis 156
Adverse Effects and Contraindications **156**
Administration **156**

Sodium Bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) injection is an alkalinizing agent used to correct metabolic acidosis, manage electrolyte imbalances, and in the treatment of severe diarrhea and poisoning.

INJECTION SODIUM BICARBONATE

COMPOSITION

Inj. 8.4% Sodium Bicarbonate

Each ml contains:

Sodium	1 mEq or mmol
Bicarbonate	1 mEq or mmol
Sodium	23 mg
Bicarbonate	61 mg
$NaHCO_3$	84 mg
Osmolarity	2000 mOsmol/L

Inj. 7.5% Sodium Bicarbonate

Each ml contains:

Sodium	0.89 mEq or mmol
Bicarbonate	0.89 mEq or mmol
$NaHCO_3$	75 mg
Osmolarity	1786 mOsmol/L

Inj. 4.2% Sodium Bicarbonate

Each ml contains:

Sodium	0.5 mEq or mmol
Bicarbonate	0.5 mEq or mmol
$NaHCO_3$	42 mg
Osmolarity	1000 mOsmol/L

Table 14.1 Sodium bicarbonate solutions: different strengths and composition

Strength	4.2% $NaHCO_3$		7.5% $NaHCO_3$				8.4% $NaHCO_3$			
Volume (mL)	1.0	500	1.0	10	25	50	1.0	10	25	50
Sodium (mEq)	0.5	250	0.89	8.9	22.5	44.5	1.0	10	25	50
Bicarbonate (mEq)	0.5	250	0.89	8.9	22.5	44.5	1.0	10	25	50
Osmolality	1000 mOsm/L		1786 mOsm/L				2000 mOsm/L			

Electrolyte contents and osmolality of different strengths and volumes of solutions are summarized in Table 14.1.

PHARMACOLOGICAL BASIS

The administration of sodium bicarbonate intravenously dissociates in the body to form sodium and bicarbonate. Bicarbonate anions act as a buffer and correct metabolic acidosis by combining with hydrogen ions ($HCO_3 + H^+ = H_2CO_3^-$ carbonic acid). In addition, by increasing pH and shifting potassium intracellularly, bicarbonate corrects hyperkalemia.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Treatment of acute metabolic acidosis: a pathophysiologic approach. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2012;8(10):589–601.
2. Forni LG, Hodgson LE, Se lby NM. The Janus faces of bicarbonate therapy in the ICU: not sure! Intensive Care Med. 2020;46(3):522–524.
3. Farkas J. Non-anion-gap metabolic acidosis (NAGMA) PulmCrit September 19, 2019 https://emcrit.org/ibcc/nagma/#treatment.
4. Sabatini S, Kurtzman NA. Bicarbonate therapy in severe metabolic acidosis. J. Am. Soc. Nephrol. 2009;20(4):692–695.
5. Adeva-Andany MM, Fernández-Fernández C, Mouriño-Bayolo D, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy in patients with metabolic acidosis. ScientificWorldJournal. 2014;2014:627673.
6. Boyd JH, Walley KR. Is there a role for sodium bicarbonate in treating lactic acidosis from shock? Curr Opin Crit Care. 2008;14(4):379–83.
7. Velissaris D, Karamouzos V, Ktenopoulos N, et al. The use of sodium bicarbonate in the treatment of acidosis in sepsis: a literature update on a long term debate. Crit Care Res Pract. 2015;2015:605830.
8. Ghauri S, Javaeed A, Mustafa K, et al. Bicarbonate therapy for critically ill patients with metabolic acidosis: a systematic review. Cureus 2019;11(3):e4297.
9. Achanti A, Szerlip HM. Acid-Base Disorders in the Critically Ill Patient. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2023;18(1):102–112.
10. Rudnick MR, Blair GJ, Kuschner WG, et al. Lactic Acidosis and the Role of Sodium Bicarbonate: A Narrative Opinion. Shock. 2020;53(5):528–536.
11. Kimmoun A, Novy E, Auchet T, et al. Hemodynamic consequences of severe lactic acidosis in shock states: from bench to bedside. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):175.
12. Gehlbach BK, Schmidt GA. Bench-to-bedside review: treating acid-base abnormalities in the intensive care unit - the role of buffers. Crit Care. 2004;8(4):259–265.
13. Cooper DJ, Walley KR, Wiggs BR, et al. Bicarbonate does not improve hemodynamics in critically ill patients who have lactic acidosis: a prospective, controlled clinical study. Ann Intern Med 1990;112(7):492–498.
14. Mathieu D, Neviere R, Billard V, et al. Effects of bicarbonate therapy on hemodynamics and tissue oxygenation in patients with lactic acidosis: a prospective, controlled clinical study. Crit Care Med 1991;19(11):1352–1356.
15. Stacpoole PW, Wright EC, Baumgartner TG, et al. Natural history and course of acquired lactic acidosis in adults. Am J Med. 1994;97(1):47–54.
16. Kim HJ, Son YK, An WS. Effect of sodium bicarbonate administration on mortality in patients with lactic acidosis: a retrospective analysis. PLoS One 2013;8(6):e65283.
17. Ahn S, Kim YJ, Sohn CH, et al. Sodium bicarbonate on severe metabolic acidosis during prolonged cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled pilot study. J Thorac Dis. 2018;10(4):2295–2302.

18. Jaber S, Paugam C, Futier E, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy for patients with severe metabolic acidaemia in the intensive care unit (BICAR-ICU): a multicentre, open-label, randomised controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet. 2018;392(10141):31–40.
19. Zhang Z, Zhu C, Mo L, et al. Effectiveness of sodium bicarbonate infusion on mortality in septic patients with metabolic acidosis. Intensive Care Med 2018;44(11):1888–1895.
20. Jung B, Martinez M, Claessens YE, et al. Diagnosis and management of metabolic acidosis: guidelines from a French expert panel. Ann Intensive Care. 2019;9(1):92.
21. Evans L, Rhodes A, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2021. Crit Care Med 2021;49(11):e1063–e1143.
22. Matyukhin I, Patschan S, Ritter O, et al. Etiology and management of acute metabolic acidosis: An Update. Kidney Blood Press Res. 2020;45(4):523–531.
23. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care 2009;32(7):1335–43.
24. Duhon B, Attridge RL, Franco-Martinez AC, et al. Intravenous sodium bicarbonate therapy in severely acidotic diabetic ketoacidosis. Ann Pharmacother. 2013;47(7–8):970–5.
25. Patel MP, Ahmed A, Gunapalan T, et al. Use of sodium bicarbonate and blood gas monitoring in diabetic ketoacidosis: A review. World J Diabetes. 2018;9(11):199–205.
26. Alfonzo A, Soar J, MacTier R, et al. Clinical practice guidelines. Treatment of acute hyperkalaemia in adults. UK Renal Association 2014.
27. Batterink J, Cessford TA, Taylor RAI. Pharmacological interventions for the acute management of hyperkalaemia in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2015;10:CD010344.
28. Bianchi S, Aucella F, De Nicola L, et al. Management of hyperkalemia in patients with kidney disease: a position paper endorsed by the Italian Society of Nephrology. J Nephrol. 2019;32(4):499–516.
29. Palmer BF. Regulation of potassium homeostasis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2015;10(6):1050–1060.
30. Abuelo JG. Treatment of Severe Hyperkalemia: Confronting 4 Fallacies. Kidney Int Rep. 2017;3(1):47–55.
31. Sterns RH, Grieff M, Bernstein PL. Treatment of hyperkalemia: something old, something new. Kidney Int 2016;89(3):546–554.
32. Gibler WB, Racadio JM, Hirsch AL, et al. Hyperkalemia: Advancing care in the emergency department and intensive care unit. Proceedings monograph: EMCREG-International multidisciplinary Hyperkalemia Consensus Panel. 2018.
33. Blumberg A, Weidmann P, Shaw S, et al. Effect of various therapeutic approaches on plasma potassium and major regulating factors in terminal renal failure. Am J Med 1988;85(4):507–12.
34. Rafique Z, Chouihed T, Mebazaa A, et al. Current treatment and unmet needs of hyperkalaemia in the emergency department. Eur Heart J Suppl. 2019;21(Suppl A):A12–A19.
35. Dépret F, Peacock WF, Liu KD, et al. Management of hyperkalemia in the acutely ill patient. Ann. Intensive Care 2019;9(1):32.
36. Lindner G, Burdmann EA, Clase CM, et al. Acute hyperkalemia in the emergency department: a summary from a kidney disease: Improving Global Outcomes conference. Eur J Emerg Med. 2020;27(5):329–337.
37. Rossignol P, Legrand M, Kosiborod M, et al. Emergency management of severe hyperkalemia guidelines for best practice and opportunities for the future. Pharmacol Res. 2016;113(Pt A):585–591.
38. Farkas J. pH-guided fluid resuscitation & BICAR-ICU PulmCrit June 27, 2018. https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/bicar-icu/.
39. Neumar RW, Otto CW, Link MS, et al. Part 8: adult advanced cardiovascular life support: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Circulation. 2010;122(18 Suppl 3):S729–67.
40. Dybvik T, Strand T, Steen PA. Buffer therapy during out-of-hospital cardiopulmonary resuscitation. Resuscitation. 1995;29(2):89–95.
41. Vukmir RB, Katz L, Sodium Bicarbonate Study Group. Sodium bicarbonate improves outcome in prolonged prehospital cardiac arrest. Am J Emerg Med. 2006;24(2):156–61.
42. Kawano T, Grunau B, Scheuermeyer FX, et al. Prehospital sodium bicarbonate use could worsen long term survival with favorable neurological recovery among patients with out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. Resuscitation. 2017;119:63–69.
43. Velissaris D, Karamouzos V, Pierrakos C, et al. Use of sodium bicarbonate in cardiac arrest: Current Guidelines and Literature Review. J Clin Med Res. 2016;8(4):277–283.
44. Hoffman JR, Votey SR, Bayer M, et al. Effect of hypertonic sodium bicarbonate in the treatment of moderate-to-severe cyclic antidepressant overdose. Am J Emerg Med 1993;11(4):336–41.
45. Woolf AD, Erdman AR, Nelson LS, et al. Tricyclic antidepressant poisoning: an evidence-based consensus guideline for out-of-hospital management. Clin Toxicol (Phila). 2007;45(3):203–33.
46. Bruccoleri RE, Burns MM. A Literature Review of the Use of Sodium Bicarbonate for the Treatment of QRS Widening. J. Med. Toxicol. 2016;12(1):121–9.
47. Sasyniuk BI, Jhamandas V. Mechanism of reversal of toxic effects of amitriptyline on cardiac Purkinje fibers by sodium bicarbonate. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 1984;231(2):387–94.
48. Yartsev A. Tricyclic antidepressant overdose. Deranged Physiology 12/07/2015. https://derangedphysiology.com/main/required-reading/pharmacology-and-toxicology/Chapter%20521/tricyclic-antidepressant-overdose.
49. Mirrakhimov AE, Ayach T, Barbaryan A, et al. The Role of Sodium Bicarbonate in the Management

of Some Toxic Ingestions. Int J Nephrol. 2017;2017:7831358.

50. Sawhney R, McCullough PA. A commentary on treatment of tricyclic antidepressant overdose. J Clin Toxicol 2019;9(2):410.
51. Bradberry SM, Thanacoody HK, Watt BE et al. Management of the cardiovascular complications of tricyclic antidepressant poisoning: role of sodium bicarbonate. Toxicological Reviews 2005;24(3):195–204.
52. Kellum JA, Lameire N, Aspelin P, et al. Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Acute Kidney Injury Work Group. KDIGO Clinical Practice Guideline for Acute Kidney Injury. Kidney Int Suppl. 2012;2(1):1–138.
53. Merten GJ, Burgess WP, Gray LV, et al. Prevention of contrast-induced nephropathy with sodium bicarbonate: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2004;291(19):2328–34.
54. Briguori C, Airoldi F, D'Andrea D, et al. Renal Insufficiency Following Contrast Media Administration Trial (REMEDIAL): a randomized comparison of 3 preventive strategies. Circulation 2007;115(110):1211–7.
55. Recio-Mayoral A, Chaparro M, Prado B, et al. The reno-protective effect of hydration with sodium bicarbonate plus N-acetylcysteine in patients undergoing emergency percutaneous coronary intervention: the RENO Study. J Am Coll Cardiol 2007;49(12):1283–8.
56. Navaneethan SD, Singh S, Appasamy S, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy for prevention of contrast-induced nephropathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Kidney Dis. 2009;53(4):617–627.
57. Zhang B, Liang L, Chen W, et al. The efficacy of sodium bicarbonate in preventing contrast-induced nephropathy in patients with pre-existing renal insufficiency: a meta-analysis. BMJ Open. 2015;5(3):e006989.
58. Brown JR, Pearlman DM, Marshall EJ, et al. Metaanalysis of individual patient data of sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride for all-cause mortality after coronary angiography. e Am J Cardiol. 2016;118(10):1473–1479.
59. Pisani A, Riccio E, Andreucci M, et al. Role of reactive oxygen species in pathogenesis of radiocontrast-induced nephropathy. Biomed Res Int. 2013;2013:868321.
60. Weisbord SD, Gallagher M, Jneid H, et al. Outcomes after angiography with sodium bicarbonate and acetylcysteine. N Engl J Med 2018;378:603–614.
61. Valette X, Desmeulles I, Savary B, et al. Sodium bicarbonate versus sodium chloride for preventing contrast-associated acute kidney injury in critically ill patients: a randomized controlled trial. Critical Care Medicine 2017;45(4):637–644.
62. Zapata-Chica CA, Bello Marquez D, Serna-Higuita LM, et al. Sodium bicarbonate versus isotonic saline solution to prevent contrast-induced nephropathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Colomb Med (Cali). 2015;46(3):90–103.
63. Acute kidney injury: prevention, detection and management. NICE guideline [NG148] 18 December 2019. https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng148.
64. Patschan D, Buschmann I, Ritter O. Contrast-Induced Nephropathy: Update on the use of crystalloids and pharmacological measures. Int J Nephrol. 2018;2018:5727309.
65. Davenport MS, Perazella MA, Yee J, et al. Use of intravenous iodinated contrast media in patients with kidney disease: Consensus statements from the American College of Radiology and the National Kidney Foundation. Radiol. 2020;294(3):660–668.
66. Rudnick MR, Palevsky PM, Forman JP. Prevention of contrast-induced acute kidney injury associated with angiography. UpToDate 2020 https://www.uptodate.com/contents/prevention-of-contrast-induced-acute-kidney-injury-associated-with-angiography.
67. Proudfoot AT, Krenzelok EP, Vale JA. Position Paper on urine alkalinization. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 2004;42(1):1–26.
68. Mawer GE, Lee HA. Value of forced diuresis in acute barbiturate poisoning. Br Med J. 1968;2(5608):790–793.
69. Roberts DM, Buckley NA. Enhanced elimination in acute barbiturate poisoning - a systematic review. Clin Toxicol (Phila). 2011;49(1):2–12.
70. Mactier R, Laliberté M, Mardini J, et al. Extracorporeal treatment for barbiturate poisoning: recommendations from the EXTRIP Workgroup. Am J Kidney Dis. 2014;64(3):347–58.
71. O'Malley GF. Emergency department management of the salicylate-poisoned patient. Emerg Med Clin North Am 2007;25(2):333–46.
72. Juurlink DN, Gosselin S, Kielstein JT, et al. Extracorporeal treatment for salicylate poisoning: systematic review and recommendations from the EXTRIP workgroup. Ann Emerg Med. 2015;66(2):165–81.
73. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Salicylate Toxicity N Engl J Med 2020;382(26):2544–55.
74. Coiffier B, Altman A, Pui CH, et al. Guidelines for the management of pediatric and adult tumor lysis syndrome: an evidence-based review. J Clin Oncol 2008;26(16):2767–78.
75. Wilson FP, Berns JS. Onco-nephrology: tumor lysis syndrome. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2012;7(10):1730–1739.
76. Jones GL, Will A, Jackson GH, et al. British Committee for Standards in Haematology. Guidelines for the management of tumour lysis syndrome in adults and children with haematological malignancies on behalf of the British Committee for Standards in Haematology. Br J Haematol. 2015;169(5):661–71.
77. Howard SC, Jones DP, Pui C. The Tumor Lysis Syndrome. N Engl J Med 2011;364(19):1844–1854.
78. Matuszkiewicz-Rowinska J, Malyszko J. Prevention and treatment of tumor lysis syndrome in the era of onco-nephrology progress. Kidney Blood Press Res. 2020;45(5):645–660.
79. Conger JD, Falk SA. Intrarenal dynamics in the pathogenesis and prevention of acute urate

nephropathy. J Clin Invest. 1977;59(5):786–93.

80. Ron D, Taitelman U, Michaelson M, et al. Prevention of acute renal failure in traumatic rhabdomyolysis. Arch Intern Med 1984;144(2):277–80.

81. Bosch X, Poch E, Grau JM. Rhabdomyolysis and acute kidney injury. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(1):62–72.

82. Somagutta MR, Pagad S, Sridharan S, et al. Role of bicarbonates and mannitol in rhabdomyolysis: a comprehensive review. Cureus 2020;12(8):e9742.

83. Homsi E, Barreiro MF, Orlando JM, et al. Prophylaxis of acute renal failure in patients with rhabdomyolysis. Ren Fail. 1997;19(2):283–8.

84. Huerta-Alardín AL, Varon J, Marik PE. Bench-to-bedside review: Rhabdomyolysis - an overview for clinicians. Crit Care 2005;9(2):158–69.

85. Scharman EJ, Troutman WG. Prevention of kidney injury following rhabdomyolysis: A systematic review. Ann Pharmacother 2013;47(1):90–105.

86. Chavez LO, Leon M, Einav S, et al. Beyond muscle destruction: a systematic review of rhabdomyolysis for clinical practice.Crit Care. 2016;20(1):135.

87. Michelsen J, Cordtz J, Liboriussen L, et al. Prevention of rhabdomyolysis-induced acute kidney injury - A DASAIM/DSIT clinical practice guideline. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2019;63(5):576–586.

88. Farkas J. Fluid selection & pH-guided fluid resuscitation. PulmCrit (EMCrit) June 27, 2019 https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/fluid/.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

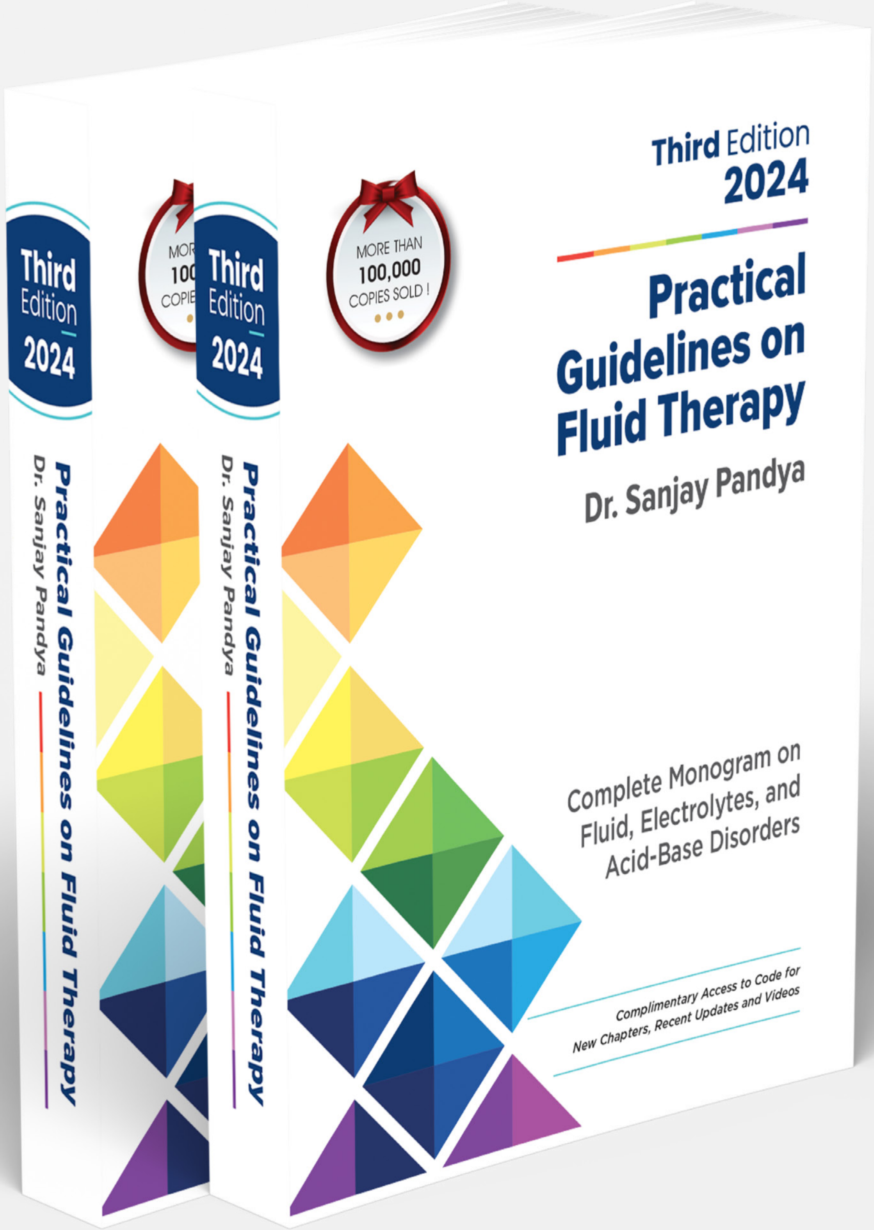
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 15:

Fluid Assessment and Monitoring


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

15 Fluid Assessment and Monitoring

History 163
Clinical Examination 163
Monitoring of Fluid Balance 164
Hemodynamic Monitoring 165
Laboratory Investigations............... 166
Serum lactate 166

Both inadequate or excessive fluid replacement is detrimental [1, 2], and optimum fluid replacement is beneficial and, at times, lifesaving. So, meticulous evaluation and, on its basis, planning of proper administration of intravenous (IV) fluid is critical.

The accurate assessment of body fluid volume status requires proper history, clinical examination, hemodynamic monitoring, and laboratory investigations (Table 15.1). There is no single parameter that alone can precisely assess the hydration status [3]. Therefore, after initial resuscitation, frequent reassessment and monitoring are mandatory for the appropriate subsequent fluid administration.

HISTORY

Detailed history provides valuable information about body fluid volume status and associated illnesses. Important history to be elicited are:

1. Fluid intake (volume and type of oral, nasogastric, or intravenous fluids).
2. Abnormal loss of fluid (diarrhea, vomiting, drains, high fever, and insensible losses).
3. Urine volume.
4. Symptoms of hypovolemia (increased thirst, oliguria, fatigue, weakness, or dizziness on standing).
5. Symptoms of hypervolemia (swelling, weight gain, shortness of breath with aggravation on exertion or lying down flat).
6. Coexisting illness and comorbidities (diabetes, hypertension, ischemic heart diseases, congestive heart failure, kidney failure, cirrhosis of the liver, hypoproteinemia, and malnutrition).
7. Medication (antihypertensive, diuretics, laxatives).

Table 15.1 Assessment of volume status
• History
• Clinical examination and monitoring
• Hemodynamic monitoring
• Laboratory investigations

CLINICAL EXAMINATION

It is essential to assess the volume status of the patient by proper physical examination. Based on the clinical examination, the predictability of the severity of volume depletion is poor. However, in critical patients with severe volume depletion and shock, prompt clinical assessment and proper medical history are sufficient to initiate the right treatment [4]. It is essential to know the features of hypovolemia and hypervolemia to determine the volume status.

Signs of hypovolemia: Signs of volume depletion on clinical evaluation do not always correlate with the severity of hypovolemia. However, the features, based on the degree of extracellular fluid (ECF) volume depletion, are summarized below.

Mild volume depletion (<5% reduction of ECF)

- Diminished skin turgor
- Concentrated urine
- Loss of weight

Moderate volume depletion (5 to 10% reduction of ECF), as above plus

- Oliguria (<400 ml/day)
- Orthostatic tachycardia and hypotension (fall of ≥20 mm Hg systolic blood pressure or 10 mm Hg diastolic blood pressure)

Severe volume depletion (>10% reduction of ECF), as above plus

- Hypotension
- Low pulse volume, tachycardia, tachypnea
- Cold extremities, dry tongue, sunken eyeballs
- Prolonged capillary refill time (>2 seconds), and reduced skin turgor (doughy feel)
- Abnormal mental status and confusion

Difference between dehydration and hypovolemia: Terms dehydration and hypovolemia are often confusing and used interchangeably. But dehydration and hypovolemia are fundamentally different clinical disorders with different pathogenesis, clinical presentations, biochemical features, and management [5, 6]. The term dehydration refers to pure water loss producing hypertonicity and intracellular volume contraction. While hypovolemia refers to a combined loss of salt and water, causing extracellular fluid volume deficit and contraction of the blood volume. Characteristic features of dehydration are normal blood pressure, no orthostatic hypotension, and hypernatremia. Hypovolemia is characterized by orthostatic hypotension, tachycardia, decreased skin turgor, and normal or low serum sodium.

Signs of hypervolemia: Common signs of volume overload on clinical evaluation are:

- Peripheral edema, sacral edema in bedridden, and recent weight gain.
- Distended jugular vein.
- The third spacing of intravascular fluid causing ascites and pleural fluid.
- Tachycardia, tachypnea, and orthopnea.
- On auscultation, basal crepitation in the chest and third heart sounds.

MONITORING OF FLUID BALANCE

Important steps to monitor fluid balance are:

1. Intake and output chart: Maintain a proper chart of fluid administered (enterally or parenterally) and fluid losses (urine output, abnormal losses such as diarrhea, vomiting, or losses from gastrointestinal drainage tubes, and insensible losses) to assess the fluid balance.

2. Urine flow rate: Maintaining hourly urine output is a standard practice in all hemodynamically unstable patients. Urine output reflects tissue perfusion and is an important indicator of hydration (in the absence of glycosuria, osmotic diuresis, or diuretic therapy). Fluid therapy aims to achieve a urine output of approximately 0.5 mL/kg/h or more.
3. Daily weight: The day-to-day weight chart is an accurate indicator for detecting the changes in the patient's volume status. Weight gain suggests fluid excess, while weight loss suggests fluid deficit. The inability to obtain weight is a limitation in sick patients.

HEMODYNAMIC MONITORING

Hemodynamic monitoring is a cornerstone in the management of hemodynamically unstable patients. The goal of hemodynamic monitoring is to ensure optimal tissue perfusion and to optimize the oxygenation of the tissues. Less than 50% of hemodynamically unstable critical patients are 'fluid responders', and in the rest 50% of patients, fluid administration may be harmful [7, 8], and therefore proper evaluation before administration of fluid is advisable.

Various hemodynamic monitoring techniques and parameters ranging from simple bedside examination to advanced complex methods are available (Table 15.2).

The selection of modality varies depending on the severity of the underlying disease, resources and local expertise available at each institution, predictability of the modality, and cost-effectiveness.

Table 15.2 Techniques and parameters used for hemodynamic monitoring
A. Basic and non-invasive hemodynamic monitoring techniques Non-invasive blood pressure measurement, pulse oximetry, continuous electrocardiography, ultra-sonogram, echocardiography, and X-ray chest
B. Static hemodynamic monitoring techniques Inferior vena cava assessment, central venous pressure monitoring, arterial cannulation, and pulmonary artery catheter monitoring
C. Dynamic hemodynamic monitoring **1. Provocative techniques to detect fluid responsiveness** The fluid challenge, passive leg raising, and end-expiratory occlusion test **2. Dynamic parameters to predict fluid responsiveness** Pulse pressure variation, stroke volume variation, cardiac output, and plethysmographic variability index **3. Methods and monitors used for the assessment** **a. Noninvasive cardiac output monitoring** Transthoracic echocardiography, bioimpedance or bioreactance, radial applanation tonometry, volume clamp method, ultrasound cardiac output monitoring (USCOM), and plethysmographic variability index **b. Minimally invasive cardiac output monitoring** Transesophageal echocardiography, transpulmonary thermodilution, lithium dilution, arterial pulse contour analysis, and partial CO_2 rebreathing **c. Invasive cardiac output monitoring** Pulmonary thermodilution (Intermittent bolus or continuous)

There is no single hemodynamic technique or parameter which is enough to provide sufficient information in all patients [9]. Less invasive systems are safer and therefore preferred for the initial evaluation. But invasive methods provide more predictable information and therefore are preferred in critical, unstable patients or patients with shock who do not respond to initial therapy.

Non-critical patients who are hemodynamically stable require non-invasive monitoring techniques such as continuous ECG monitoring, frequent non-invasive blood pressure measurement, and peripheral pulse oximetry to assess their oxygen saturation.

The limitations of this primary monitoring modalities is a less precise or inaccurate data, but it avoids risks of harmful invasive approaches.

On the other hand, hemodynamically unstable critical patients need more precise or highly accurate data, so they require advanced hemodynamic monitoring approaches such as arterial pulse contour analysis, transesophageal echocardiography, and transpulmonary thermodilution for continuous hemodynamic monitoring [3, 10].

Noninvasive echocardiography and ultrasonogram are currently rapidly growing and preferred modalities for the initial hemodynamic assessment of shock and perioperative evaluation instead of more invasive technologies.

Dynamic parameters such as pulse pressure variation (PPV), stroke volume variation (SVV), and cardiac output (CO) are shown to be more accurate for the assessment of the volume status. Therefore, they are preferred in predicting fluid responsiveness over static invasive measures (e.g., central venous pressure and pulmonary artery catheters) [3].

However, monitoring these dynamic parameters is not routinely recommended for patients in shock who are responding well to initial treatment. Complex, high-risk patients who do not respond to initial fluid administration need measurements of dynamic parameters to evaluate the response to fluids or inotropes [3].

LABORATORY INVESTIGATIONS

Various laboratory investigations performed considering the clinical context for the monitoring of fluid therapy are:

- Routine investigations: CBC, BUN/creatinine, transaminases, and serum electrolytes.
- Additional investigations: Serum lactate level, arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis, cardiac biomarkers, coagulation profile, and urinary electrolytes.

Serum lactate

Serum lactate estimation is the most useful and valuable laboratory parameter for monitoring critically ill patients, and the high lactate level is strongly associated with the severity of sepsis [11, 12].

Elevated lactate is multifactorial: Increased serum lactate level reflects tissue hypoxia is a misconception [13]. Increased serum lactate level is a non-specific finding which can occur due to multiple causes such as impaired tissue oxygenation, stimulation of beta-2 adrenergic receptors due to increased aerobic glycolysis, medications (adrenaline, beta-2 agonists), liver failure, thiamine deficiency, or other causes [14]. So always interpret the value of serum lactate carefully in the clinical context.

Clinical application of lactate measurement

- A tool to diagnose severe sepsis or septic shock: The measurement of lactate is useful to establish the diagnosis of severe sepsis [15] and is included in the definition of recent major sepsis guidelines such as National Quality Forum Sepsis Update [16], and third international consensus definitions for sepsis and septic shock [17, 18].

- Prognostic marker on admission: Increased lactate level in the prehospital measurement or the emergency department is associated with increased mortality even in patients with initial normal vital signs [18–22]. So early elevated lactate is useful to detect occult shock, uncover subtle organ hypoperfusion, and help to detect patients who are at higher risk for deterioration and require aggressive management.
- As a component of resuscitative algorithms: Serum lactate is included as a component of resuscitative algorithms in different guidelines (e.g., Surviving Sepsis Campaign Bundle and Surviving Sepsis Campaign International Guidelines) [23, 24].
- Lactate monitoring for a shock: In addition to clinical assessment, trends in the blood lactate levels are useful to guide resuscitation [25]. Serial serum lactate measurements during resuscitation predict mortality among septic shock patients [26, 27]. So, serum lactate level is generally remeasured every 6 hours until it becomes normal [27, 28]. Lactate-guided therapy significantly reduces hospital mortality [29–31] and has a greater mortality benefit than even early goal-directed therapy [32].
- Lactate normalization predicts a favorable prognosis: Normalization of lactate within 6 hours of initial resuscitation is the strong predictor of survival [33–36]. In a recent study, even delayed normalization of lactate (i.e., within 24 hours), independently predicts decreased mortality [37].
- Lactate clearance as a prognostic marker: Early lactate clearance reduces in-hospital mortality and strongly predicts the survivor [33, 38–41]. On the contrary, persistent hyperlactatemia increases morbidity and mortality and is a strong adverse prognostic factor [38, 42, 43].

REFERENCES

1. Mandal M. Ideal resuscitation fluid in hypovolemia: The quest is on and miles to go! Int J Crit Illn Inj Sci. 2016;6(2):54–55.
2. Claure-Del GR, Mehta RL. Fluid overload in the ICU: evaluation and management. BMC Nephrol 2016;17(1):109.
3. Cecconi M, De Backer D, Antonelli M, et al. Consensus on circulatory shock and hemodynamic monitoring. Task force of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. Intensive Care Med. 2014;40(12):1795–1815.
4. Marx G, Schindler AW, Mosch C, et al. Intravascular volume therapy in adults: Guidelines from the association of the scientific medical societies in Germany. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2016:33(7):488–522.
5. Bhave G, Neilson EG. Volume depletion versus dehydration: how understanding the difference can guide therapy. AJKD 2011;58(2):302–309.
6. Asim M, Alkadi MM, Asim H, et al. Dehydration and volume depletion: How to handle the misconceptions. World J Nephrol. 2019;8(1):23–32.
7. Marik PE, Monnet X, Teboul JL. Hemodynamic parameters to guide fluid therapy. Ann Intensive Care. 2011;1(1):1.
8. Bentzer P, Griesdale DE, Boyd J, et al. Will this hemodynamically unstable patient respond to a bolus of intravenous fluids? JAMA. 2016;316(12):1298–309.
9. Vincent JL, Rhodes A, Perel A, et al. Clinical review: Update on hemodynamic monitoring - a consensus of 16. Crit Care. 2011;15(4):229.
10. Aseni P, Orsenigo S, Storti E. et al. Current concepts of perioperative monitoring in high-risk surgical patients: a review. Patient Saf Surg 2019;13:32.
11. Gutiérrez HB, Concepción YA, Pérez JS1, et al. Prognostic value of serum lactate levels in critically ill patients in an intensive care unit. J Crit Care Med (Targu Mures). 2020;6(1):59–64.
12. Gattinoni L, Vasques F, Camporota L, et al. Understanding lactatemia in human sepsis: potential impact for early management. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2019;200(5):582–589.
13. Levy B. Lactate and shock state: the metabolic view. Curr Opin Crit Care 2006;12(4):315–321.

14. Levy B, Desebbe O, Montemont C, et al. Increased aerobic glycolysis through beta2 stimulation is a common mechanism involved in lactate formation during shock states. Shock. 2008;30(4):417–21.
15. Fuller BM, Dellinger RP. Lactate as a hemodynamic marker in the crtically ill. Curr Opin Crit Care 2012;18(3):267–72.
16. National Quality Forum (NQF). #0500 Severe Sepsis and Septic Shock: Management Bundle, Last Updated: Jan 05, 2015 https://emcrit.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/06/0500.pdf Accessed May 23, 2020.
17. Shankar-Hari M, Phillips GS, Levy ML, et al. Developing a new definition and assessing new clinical criteria for septic shock: For the third international consensus definitions for sepsis and septic shock (Sepsis-3). JAMA 2016;315(8):775–87.
18. Singer M, Deutschman CS, Seymour CW, et al. The third international consensus definitions for sepsis and septic shock (Sepsis-3). JAMA 2016;315(8):801–10.
19. Jansen TC, van Bommel J, Mulder PG, et al. The prognostic value of blood lactate levels relative to that of vital signs in the pre-hospital setting: a pilot study. Crit Care. 2008;12(6):R160.
20. Mikkelsen ME, Miltiades AN, Gaieski DF, et al. Serum lactate is associated with mortality in severe sepsis independent of organ failure and shock. Crit Care Med. May 2009;37(5):1670–1677.
21. Soliman H, Vincent JL. Prognostic value of admission serum lactate concentrations in intensive care unit patients. Acta Clinica Belgica. 2010;65(3):176–81.
22. Casserly B, Phillips GS, Schorr C, et al. Lactate measurements in sepsis-induced tissue hypoperfusion: results from the Surviving Sepsis Campaign database. Crit Care Med. 2015;43(3):567–573.
23. Levy MM, Evans LE, Rhodes A. The surviving sepsis campaign bundle: 2018 update. Intensive Care Med 2018;44(6):925–928.
24. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43(3):304–77.
25. Weiss SL, Peters MJ, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign international guidelines for the management of septic shock and sepsis-associated organ dysfunction in children. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2020;21(2):e52–e106.
26. Ryoo SM, Lee J, Lee YS, et al. Lactate level versus lactate clearance for predicting mortality in patients with septic shock defined by Sepsis-3. Crit Care Med 2018;46(6):e489–e495.
27. Ryoo SM, Ahn R, Lee J, et al. Timing of repeated lactate measurement in patients with septic shock at the emergency department. Am J Med Sci 2018;356(2):97–102.
28. Martin ND, Codner P, Greene W, et al. Trauma Surg Acute Care Open 2020;5(1):e000411.
29. Jansen TC, van Bommel J, Schoonderbeek FJ, et al. Early lactate-guided therapy in intensive care unit patients: a multicenter, open-label, randomized controlled trial. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2010;182(6):752–761.
30. Jones AE, Shapiro NI, Trzeciak S, et al. Lactate clearance vs central venous oxygen saturation as goals of early sepsis therapy: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2010;303(8):739–746.
31. Lyu X, Xu Q, Cai G, et al. Efficacies of fluid resuscitation as guided by lactate clearance rate and central venous oxygen saturation in patients with septic shock. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi. 2015;95(7):496–500.
32. Ding XF, Yang ZY, Xu ZT, et al. Early goal-directed and lactate-guided therapy in adult patients with severe sepsis and septic shock: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Transl Med. 2018;16(1):331.
33. Nguyen HB, Rivers EP, Knoblich BP, et al. Early lactate clearance is associated with improved outcome in severe sepsis and septic shock. Crit Care Med 2004;32(8):1637–42.
34. Puskarich MA, Trzeciak S, Shapiro NI, et al. Whole blood lactate kinetics in patients undergoing quantitative resuscitation for severe sepsis and septic shock. Chest. 2013;143(6):1548–1553.
35. Jones AE. Lactate clearance for assessing response to resuscitation in severe sepsis. Acad Emerg Med. 2013;20(8):844–847.
36. Chertoff J, Chisum M, Garcia B, et al. Lactate kinetics in sepsis and septic shock: a review of the literature and rationale for further research. J Intensive Care 2015;3:39.
37. Ryoo SM, Ahn R, Shin TG, et al. Lactate normalization within 6 hours of bundle therapy and 24 hours of delayed achievement were associated with 28-day mortality in septic shock patients. PLoS ONE 2019;14(6):e0217857.
38. Arnold RC, Shapiro NI, Jones AE, et al. Multicenter study of early lactate clearance as a determinant of survival in patients with presumed sepsis. Shock. 2009;32(1):35–9.
39. Zhang Z, Xu X. Lactate clearance is a useful biomarker for the prediction of all-cause mortality in critically ill patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care Med 2014;42(9):2118–25.
40. Gu WJ, Zhang Z, Bakker J. Early lactate clearance-guided therapy in patients with sepsis: a meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis of randomized controlled trials. Intensive Care Med 2015;41(10):1862–3.
41. Simpson SQ, Gaines M, Hussein Y, et al. Early goal-directed therapy for severe sepsis and septic shock: A living systematic review. J Crit Care 2016;36:43–48.
42. Zhang Z, Chen K, Ni H, et al. Predictive value of lactate in unselected critically ill patients: an analysis using fractional polynomials. J Thorac Dis. 2014;6(7):995–1003.
43. Dezman ZDW, Comer AC, Smith GS, et al. Failure to clear elevated lactate predicts 24-hour mortality in trauma patients. J Trauma Acute Care Surg. 2015;79(4):580–585.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 16:

Basic and Non-Invasive Hemodynamic Monitoring Techniques

Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

16

Basic and Non-Invasive Hemodynamic Monitoring Techniques

Non-invasive Blood Pressure Measurement 169
Pulse Oximetry 170
Continuous Electrocardiography... 170
Echocardiography 170
  Transthoracic echocardiography .. 171
  Transoesophageal echocardiography 171
Ultrasonogram 171
Lung Ultrasound 172
  Pulmonary edema 172
  Pleural effusion, consolidations and pneumothorax 172
X-ray Chest 172

Various basic and non-invasive methods are routinely used in clinical practice, which help to plan, administer, and monitor fluid therapy in non-critical patients. The basic and non-invasive monitoring modalities are not the standard methods for hemodynamic monitoring and lack specificity and sensitivity, but it provides valuable help in the initial assessment and management of shock. Non-invasive cardiac output monitoring is discussed in detail separately in the subsequent chapter.

NON-INVASIVE BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT

Blood pressure monitoring is a basic and easy non-invasive parameter for hemodynamic monitoring in all patients.

Non-invasive blood pressure is measured either intermittently or continuously. Intermittently blood pressure is measured by an inflatable occluding cuff using a manual sphygmomanometer or automated oscillometric devices. Continuously blood pressure is measured by newer methods such as volume clamp method or arterial applanation tonometry. Details of these methods are included in the non-invasive cardiac output monitoring part of the Chapter 19 on "Cardiac Output Monitoring."

In mild hypovolemia, compensatory mechanisms prevent a fall in blood pressure. So, normal blood pressure does not exclude hypovolemia.

Postural hypotension is a fall of at least 20 mm Hg systolic blood pressure or 10 mm Hg diastolic blood pressure within 3 minutes of standing [1]. Postural hypotension is a strong indicator of hypovolemia in the absence of other causes such as medications, autonomic neuropathy, etc.

Mean arterial pressure is a better parameter for assessing tissue perfusion than systolic blood pressure (SBP) and diastolic blood pressure (DBP). Mean arterial pressure (MAP) is the average arterial pressure in one cardiac cycle.

Formula to calculate MAP is:

$$MAP = [SBP + (2 \times DBP)]/3$$

MAP of at least 60 mm Hg is necessary to maintain the adequate perfusion of vital organs. Recent Surviving Sepsis Campaign Guidelines recommended an initial MAP target of 65 mm Hg in patients with septic shock requiring vasopressors [2].

PULSE OXIMETRY

Pulse oximetry is used routinely worldwide for the rapid diagnosis of hypoxemia; It is referred to as "the fifth vital sign" [3].

Pulse oximetry is an inexpensive, non-invasive, compact, portable, and reliable technique that can continuously, rapidly, and accurately estimate arterial oxygen saturation (SpO_2) and thereby provide important information about tissue oxygenation.

Early diagnosis of hypoxemia is difficult clinically. Cyanosis is its late sign, so a pulse oximeter is used to monitor all types of patients at risk of developing hypoxemia [4]. In this easy-to-use method, the sensor probe is usually placed on fingers, toes, or ear lobes which measures two parameters, the oxygen saturation of hemoglobin in arterial blood and the pulse rate.

By using spectrophotometry, a pulse oximeter differentiates oxygenated versus non-oxygenated hemoglobin in the arterial blood and thereby measures the percentage of oxygenated hemoglobin in the blood (i.e., SpO_2). The accuracy of pulse oximeters is generally reliable when SpO_2 is in the range of 70% to 100%, but it is poor when SpO_2 values are <70% [5].

The normal value of SpO_2 in a healthy person is 96% to 100%, which correlates to the normal range of PaO_2 (i.e., 80 to 100 mm Hg). Less than 90% SpO_2 correlates to a PaO_2 of 60 mm Hg or less, which suggests significant hypoxemia, which can be dangerous [6]. When SpO_2 falls below 90%, the PaO_2 drops very rapidly. PaO_2 will be as low as 60–45 mm Hg when SpO_2 reduces from 90 to 80%, and when SpO_2 falls below 80%, it predicts life-threatening hypoxemia as the PaO_2 will be just 40 mm of Hg or even lesser [6].

Factors that can affect the accuracy of pulse oximetry are cold extremities, hypotension, poor circulation, patient movements, nail polish use, abnormal hemoglobins, and severe anemia [7].

Use of intravenous dyes like methylene blue (to treat methemoglobinemia, or to diagnose ureteral injury during surgical procedures) can result in low SpO_2 reading from a pulse oximeter but normal PaO_2 from a standard blood gas machine (known as "oxygen saturation gap") [8].

CONTINUOUS ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

Continuous electrocardiography monitoring is a standard practice in all unstable patients because it provides crucial information about rate, rhythm abnormality, cardiac ischemia, and abnormalities due to electrolyte abnormalities. Lead II and V1 are the most sensitive for detecting P waves and cardiac arrhythmias, while lead II, V2, and V5 are the most sensitive for detecting myocardial ischemia.

ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

Echocardiography is a safe, simple, readily available, unique, and effective method for the initial assessment of hemodynamically unstable patients. Echocardiography is a widely used and preferred modality that helps to diagnose, monitor, manage, and follow up various clinical problems mentioned below [9–12].

- For the initial assessment of patients with hypovolemia, hemodynamic instability, and shock where it helps to differentiate various types of shock.
- To assess acute respiratory distress syndrome, right ventricular dysfunction, respiratory failure, or hypoxemia of unknown etiology.
- To diagnose pericardial effusion, cardiac tamponade, valvular obstructive or regurgitation lesions, cardiac thrombus, infective endocarditis, and pulmonary embolism.
- To assess the fluid status and by frequent evaluation guides in the tailored management of unstable patients.
- To determine the fluid responsiveness by measuring the size of the vena cava and assessing the effect of respiration, fluid challenge, and passive leg raising on it.

Respiratory variation in the vena cava, left ventricular function, right ventricular function size, and movement of the interventricular septum are the major parameters measured by echocardiography. These parameters are helpful in hemodynamic assessment and monitoring. In addition, echocardiography also provides information about cardiac output and pulmonary artery pressure, which helps to optimize patient management.

Two different echocardiography techniques used for hemodynamic monitoring are transthoracic echocardiography and transesophageal echocardiography.

A. Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE)

It is a simple tool in which an ultrasonic probe is placed on the chest or epigastrium of the subject to assess the heart and its blood vessels. For the hemodynamic assessment in patients with hypotension, TTE is performed first because it is a readily available, non-invasive, accurate, and precise technique that can be performed quickly at the bedside [13].

B. Transoesophageal echocardiography (TEE)

In TEE ultrasonic probe is placed into the esophagus and usually in a ventilated patient under sedation. As the probe is much closer to the heart in TEE, this method provides superior image quality of the heart and great vessels. Because TEE provides additional and more accurate information, it has higher diagnostic accuracy than TTE [14].

TEE is used selectively in the perioperative management of unstable surgical patients (e.g., cardiac surgical procedures, laparotomy, etc.) and in patients where TTE is not possible or provides insufficient information (i.e., chest wall injury, obese patients with poor echocardiographic window, etc.).

Although TEE provides accurate and more information than TTE, it is used in selected indications and not used routinely. Major limitations of this technique are higher cost, time-consuming method (compared to TTE), minimally invasive procedure (usually needs tracheal intubation), can be performed only on one patient at a time, and needs cleaning and disinfection after each use.

ULTRASONOGRAM

In hemodynamically unstable patients, ultrasonography may be useful in determining underlying causes for shock, such as hidden blood loss (intrathoracic intraabdominal, retroperitoneal, bladder, or extremity hematoma) or detecting the source of sepsis. Timely treatment of such potentially reversible causes of hemodynamic instability can be life-saving. Follow-up ultrasonography also helps to assess the treatment response (change in the volume of blood in pleural, pericardial or abdominal space, or improvement in the source of the infection).

LUNG ULTRASOUND

Lung ultrasound (LUS) is an increasingly used modality for assessing lung status and hemodynamic monitoring in critically unstable patients. Lung ultrasound is an easy-to-use, radiation-free, safe, less expensive, non-invasive, reliable, and reproducible bedside tool that helps in diagnosis as well as planning optimum fluid administration [15, 16].

Lung ultrasound is a powerful tool that helps to assess the fluid status and diagnose or exclude pleural effusion, pneumonia, and pneumothorax [17, 18]. In addition, bedside lung ultrasound is an effective and helpful tool for the initial evaluation of a patient with hypotension and shock, guiding fluid administration, monitoring treatment response, and detecting fluid overload early [19, 20].

Lung ultrasound is a more accurate, faster, and more convenient imaging technique than chest X-rays in emergency departments [20–22].

A. Pulmonary edema

Lung ultrasound is a useful tool that can reliably and sensitively detect pulmonary edema [16]. By assessing the volume of extravascular lung water, lung ultrasound can diagnose pulmonary edema before detecting it by any clinical signs [23]. Extravascular lung water is the amount of water in the lungs outside the pulmonary circulation, i.e., accumulated in the interstitial and alveolar spaces [24]. Therefore, lung ultrasound is recommended as a first-line test to detect pulmonary congestion, which helps in the better management of fluid administration, monitoring the response of fluid therapy, and avoiding iatrogenic pulmonary edema [25–27].

On lung ultrasound, the presence and numbers of B-lines (also termed ultrasound lung comets) reflect the volume of extravascular lung water [28, 29]. The presence of B-lines is unanimously considered a pathological finding, and B-lines are generally absent in euvolemic patients (suggests "Dry" lungs) [30, 31].

B-lines score (BLS) is the sum of all B-lines used to quantify pulmonary congestion [32]. The normal value of BLS is <5, and >15 BLS reflects moderate/severe pulmonary congestion [33]. More than three B-lines in a particular view on lung ultrasound is also a reliable clue for pulmonary edema [34]. The new appearance of B-lines is an early sign of pulmonary congestion and guides clinicians to discontinue fluid administration [35].

B. Pleural effusion, consolidations and pneumothorax

In pleural effusion, lung ultrasonography is an essential tool in diagnosing, quantifying, following the course, decision-making to drain, deciding the best puncture site for tapping, guiding the drainage insertion procedure, and diagnosing co-existing lung diseases [36–39]. In pneumonia, bedside lung ultrasound is a first-line diagnostic tool with high accuracy (94% sensitivity and 96% specificity) [40–43]. In addition, lung ultrasound is a novel tool with high accuracy and reliability in diagnosing pneumothorax (91% sensitivity and 98% specificity) [44–46].

X-RAY CHEST

Chest X-ray (CXR) is routinely used in critical, unstable patients. The major advantage of chest X-rays is immediate panoramic imaging of the thoracic structures, which provides comprehensive information and helps clinicians to suspect or exclude many pulmonary disorders [47]. However, frequent exposure of X-rays carries the risk of radiation.

In hemodynamically unstable patients, chest X-ray helps to detect fluid overload, pleural effusion, pneumonia, pneumothorax, and complications of shock such as acute respiratory distress syndrome, pulmonary embolism, and aspiration pneumonia and provides information about cardiac size and shape. In addition, a chest X-ray is frequently taken after placement of the central line to check the position of the catheter tip and to rule out iatrogenic pneumothorax.

Common chest X-ray findings of fluid overload are cardiomegaly, septal Karley B-lines, congestive vascular hilum, bilateral diffuse perihilar alveolar infiltrates in a butterfly distribution suggestive of pulmonary edema, and signs of pleural effusion. A chest X-ray is not a very sensitive or specific diagnostic test for most of these disorders, but it may be a first step in providing some important clues.

REFERENCES

1. Bradley JG, Davis KA. Orthostatic hypotension. Am Fam Physician 2003;68(12):2393–2399.
2. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. Crit Care Med 2017;45(3):486–552.
3. Neff TA. Routine oximetry: a fifth vital sign? Chest 1988;94(4):227.
4. Pulse Oximetry Training Manual - World Health Organization 2011.
5. Chan ED, Chan MM, Chan MM. Pulse oximetry: Understanding its basic principles facilitates appreciation of its limitations. Respiratory Medicine 2013;107(6):789–799.
6. Madan A. Correlation between the levels of SpO2 and PaO2. Lung India. 2017;34(3):307–308.
7. Bowes WA, Corke BC, Hulka J. Pulse oximetry: a review of the theory, accuracy, and clinical applications. Obstet Gynecol. 1989;74(3 Pt 2):541–6.
8. Akhtar J, Johnston BD, Krenzelok EP. Mind the gap. J Emerg Med. 2007;33(2):131–2.
9. Hendy A, Bubenek-Turconi ŞI. The diagnosis and hemodynamic monitoring of circulatory shock: Current and Future Trends. J Crit Care Med (Targu Mures). 2016;2(3):115–123.
10. Casaroto E, Mohovic T, Pinto LM et al. Bedside echocardiography in critically ill patients. Einstein 2015;13(4):644–6.
11. Vignon P. What is new in critical care echocardiography? Critical Care 2018;22(1):40.
12. Longobardo L, Zito C, Carerj S, et al. Role of echocardiography in the intensive care unit: overview of the most common clinical scenarios. J Patient Cent Res Rev. 2018;5(3):239–43.
13. Mercado P, Maizel J, Beyls C, et al. Transthoracic echocardiography: an accurate and precise method for estimating cardiac output in the critically ill patient. Crit Care. 2017;21(1):136.
14. Hahn RT, Abraham T, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic examination: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. J Am Soc Echocardiogr. 2013;26(9):921–64.
15. Demi L, Egan T, Muller M. Lung Ultrasound imaging, a technical review. Appl. Sci. 2020;10(2):462.
16. Grune J, Beyhoff N, Hegemann N, et al. From bedside to bench: lung ultrasound for the assessment of pulmonary edema in animal models. Cell and Tissue Research 2020.
17. Lichtenstein DA. BLUE-protocol and FALLS-protocol: Two applications of lung ultrasound in the critically ill. Chest 2015;147(6):1659–1670.
18. Lancellotti P, Price S, Edvardsen T, et al. The use of echocardiography in acute cardiovascular care: recommendations of the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging and the Acute Cardiovascular Care Association. Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care. 2015;4(1):3–5.
19. Whitson MR, Mayo PH. Ultrasonography in the emergency department. Crit Care 2016;20(1):227.
20. Shrestha GS, Weeratunga D, Baker K. Point-of-care lung ultrasound in critically ill patients. Reviews recent Clinical trials. 2018;13(1):15–26.
21. Parlamento S, Copetti R, Di Bartolomeo S. Evaluation of lung ultrasound for the diagnosis of pneumonia in the ED. Am J Emerg Med. 2009;27(4):379–84.
22. Xirouchaki N, Magkanas E, Vaporidi K, et al. Lung ultrasound in critically ill patients: comparison with bedside chest radiography. Intensive Care Med. 2011;37(9):1488–93.
23. Zieleskiewicz L, Contargyris C, Brun C, et al. Lung ultrasound predicts interstitial syndrome and hemodynamic profile in parturients with severe preeclampsia. Anesthesiology 2014;120(4):906–914.
24. Jozwiak M, Teboul J, Monnet X. Extravascular lung water in critical care: recent advances and clinical applications. Ann. Intensive Care 2015;5(1):38.
25. Mebazaa A, Yilmaz MB, Levy P, et al. Recommendations management on pre-hospital and hospital of acute heart failure: a consensus paper of the Heart Failure Association of the European Society of Cardiology, the European Society of Emergency Medicine

and the Society of Academic Emergency Medicine. Eur Heart J 2015;17(6):544–558.

26. Lichtenstein D. Fluid administration limited by lung sonography: The place of lung ultrasound in assessment of acute circulatory failure (the FALLS-protocol). Expert Rev Respir Med. 2012;6(2):155–62.
27. Volpicelli G, Elbarbary M, Blaivas M, et al. International Liaison Committee on Lung Ultrasound (ILC-LUS) for International Consensus Conference on Lung Ultrasound (ICC-LUS). International evidence-based recommendations for point-of-care lung ultrasound. Intensive Care Med 2012;38(4):577–591.
28. Jambrik Z, Gargani L, Adamicza Á, et al. B-lines quantify the lung water content: A lung ultrasound versus lung gravimetry study in acute lung injury. Ultrasound Med Biol. 2010;36(12):2004–10.
29. Annamalai I, Balasubramaniam S, Fernando ME, et al. Volume assessment in hemodialysis: A comparison of present methods in clinical practice with sonographic lung comets. Indian J Nephrol. 2019;29(2):102–110.
30. Dietrich CF, Mathis G, Blaivas M, et al. Lung B-line artefacts and their use. J Thorac Dis 2016;8(6):1356–65.
31. Trezzi M, Torzillo D, Ceriani E, et al. Lung ultrasonography for the assessment of rapid extravascular water variation: evidence from hemodialysis patients. Intern Emerg Med 2013;8(5):409–15.
32. Picano E, Frassi F, Agricola E, et al. Ultrasound lung comets: a clinically useful sign of extravascular lung water. J Am Soc Echocardiogr 2006;19(3):356–363.
33. Picano E, Pellikka PA. Ultrasound of extravascular lung water: a new standard for pulmonary congestion. Eur Heart J. 2016;37(27):2097–2104.
34. Anile A, Russo J, Castiglione G, et al. A simplifed lung ultrasound approach to detect increased extravascular lung water in critically ill patients. Crit Ultrasound J 2017;9(1):13.
35. Caltabeloti FC, Monsel A, Arbelot C, et al. Early fluid loading in acute respiratory distress syndrome with septic shock deteriorates lung aeration without impairing arterial oxygenation: a lung ultrasound observational study. Crit Care 2014;18(3):R91.
36. Soni NJ, Franco R, Velez MI, et al. Ultrasound in the diagnosis and management of pleural effusions. J Hosp Med. 2015;10(12):811–816.
37. Ibitoye BO, Idowu BM, Ogunrombi AB, et al. Ultrasonographic quantification of pleural effusion: comparison of four formulae. Ultrasonography. 2018;37(3):254–260.
38. Brogi E, Gargani L, Bignami E, et al. Thoracic ultrasound for pleural effusion in the intensive care unit: a narrative review from diagnosis to treatment. Crit Care 2017;21(1):325.
39. Vetrugno L, Guadagnin GM, Orso D, et al. An easier and safe affair, pleural drainage with ultrasound in critical patient: a technical note. Crit Ultrasound J 2018;10:18.
40. Chavez MA, Shams N, Ellington LE, et al. Lung ultrasound for the diagnosis of pneumonia in adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Respir Res 2014;15(1):50.
41. Pagano A, Numis FG, Visone G, et al. Lung ultrasound for diagnosis of pneumonia in emergency department. Intern Emerg Med. 2015;10(7):851–4.
42. Ellington LE, Gilman RH, Chavez MA, et al. Lung ultrasound as a diagnostic tool for radiographically-confirmed pneumonia in low resource settings. Respir Med. 2017;128:57–64.
43. Najgrodzka P, Buda N, Zamojska A, et al. Lung ultrasonography in the diagnosis of pneumonia in children-a metaanalysis and a review of pediatric lung imaging. Ultrasound Q. 2019;35(2):157–163.
44. Alrajhi K, Woo MY, Vaillancourt C. Test characteristics of ultrasonography for the detection of pneumothorax: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Chest 2012;141(3):703–708.
45. Alrajab S, Youssef AM, Akkus NI, et al. Pleural ultrasonography versus chest radiography for the diagnosis of pneumothorax: review of the literature and meta-analysis. Crit Care 2013;17(5):R208.
46. Ebrahimi A, Yousefifard M, Mohammad KH, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of chest ultrasonography versus chest radiography for identification of Pneumothorax: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Tanaffos 2014;13(4):29–40.
47. Cardinale L, Priola AM, Moretti F, et al. Effectiveness of chest radiography, lung ultrasound and thoracic computed tomography in the diagnosis of congestive heart failure. World J Radiol. 2014;6(6):230–237.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

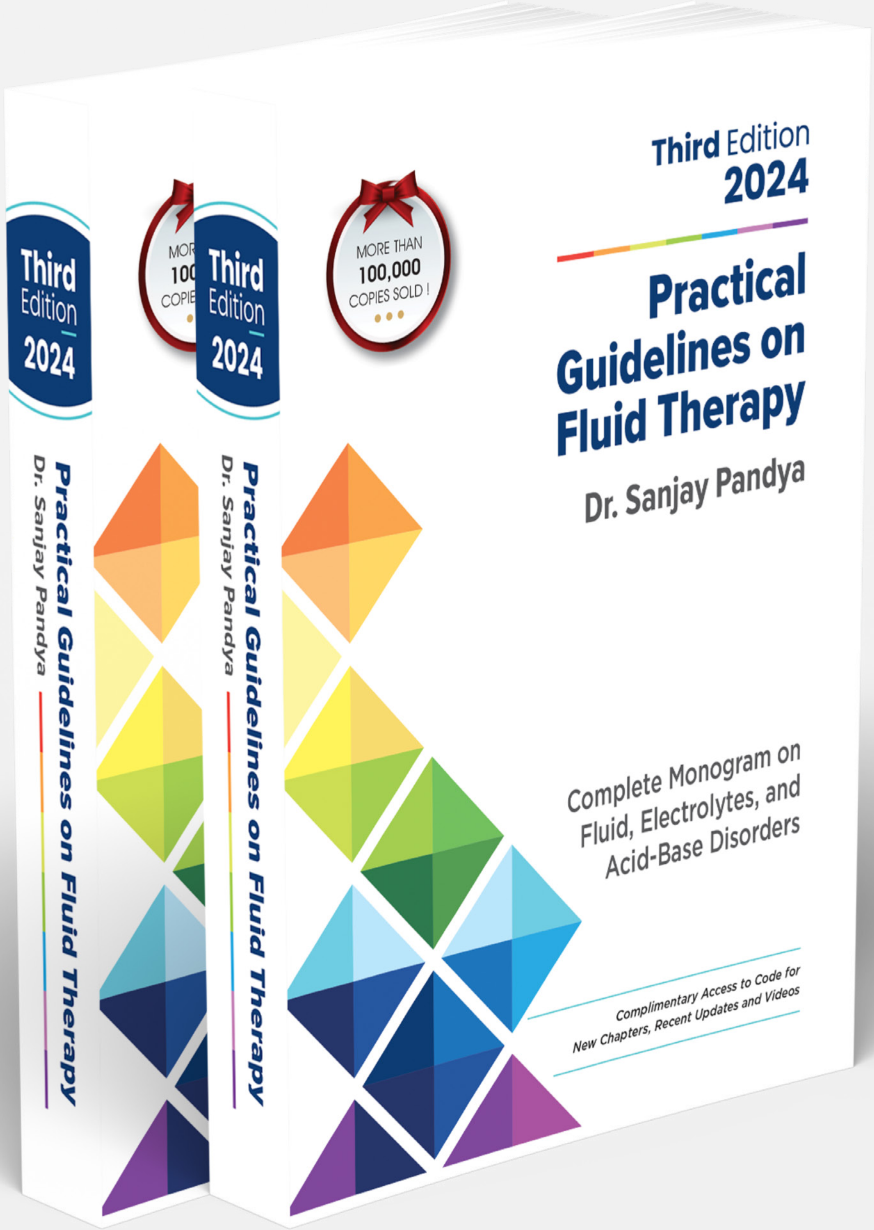
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 17:

Static Hemodynamic Monitoring Techniques


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

17

Static Hemodynamic Monitoring Techniques

Inferior Vena Cava Assessment 175
  Physiological principles 176
    IVC in spontaneous respiration..176
    IVC in patients on ventilator 176
  Measurement techniques 177
  Maximal IVC diameter 177
    In spontaneous breathing........ 177
    In mechanically ventilated patients.................................... 177
  IVC diameter variation.................. 178
    In mechanical ventilation 178
    In spontaneous breathing........ 179
Central Venous Pressure Monitoring 179
  Factors determining CVP 179
  Interpretation of the value of CVP.. 179
  The use CVP in clinical practice ... 180
Arterial Cannulation 181
  Use and technique 181
  Indications and contraindications.. 182
  Radial or femoral, which artery?... 182
Pulmonary Artery Catheter Monitoring 183
  Description and technique 183
  What information does PAC provide?....................................... 183
    Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure 184
    Cardiac output 184
    Mixed venous oxygen saturation................................ 184
  PAC - when and why? 185
  Indications 185
  Complications 185

Commonly used static hemodynamic monitoring methods are inferior vena cava assessment, central venous pressure (CVP) monitoring, arterial cannulation, and pulmonary artery catheter monitoring. Although these modalities are available more widely than compared to dynamic monitoring modalities, they lack precision and accuracy.

INFERIOR VENA CAVA ASSESSMENT

Echocardiography of the inferior vena cava (IVC) is a simple, routinely used, noninvasive tool that can rapidly measure maximal IVC diameter and respiratory variations in IVC diameter at the bedside for predicting the intravascular volume status and fluid responsiveness [1]. For the initial evaluation of shock, as compared to more invasive technologies, this modality is preferred to assess the hemodynamic status and fluid responsiveness [2, 3].

For the proper understanding clinical utility of this tool, it is discussed step by step as follows:

- Physiological variations in IVC diameter during the respiratory cycle.
- Measurement techniques.

- Maximal IVC diameter in spontaneous breathing and patients on a ventilator.
- Inferior vena cava diameter variation (IVC distensibility index (dIVC) in patients on mechanical ventilator and IVC collapsibility index (cIVC) during spontaneous breathing).

The diagnostic value of the variability of the superior vena cava is better than that of the IVC [4], but the limiting factor is a requirement of transoesophageal echocardiography for the measurement, which is minimally invasive and technically difficult [5].

A. Physiological principles

It is important to remember that amongst patients with spontaneous respiration, and in patients on positive pressure ventilation, physiological changes, values of variations of IVC parameters, and their interpretations differ markedly.

1. IVC in spontaneous respiration

In patients with spontaneous breathing, intrathoracic pressure decreases during inspiration, which increases the venous return of blood, resulting in the "collapse" of the vena cava. Inversely, intrathoracic pressure increases during expiration, which reduces the venous return of blood and thus causes the expansion of the vena cava.

IVC collapsibility index (cIVC): "Collapsibility index" is used to assess the respiratory variations in IVC diameter in patients with spontaneous respiration.

Calculation of the IVC collapsibility index: In spontaneous breathing patients, obtain the maximum IVC diameter (at the end of expiration) and minimum IVC diameter (at the end of inspiration) and calculate the index.

$$\text{IVC Collapsibility Index} = \frac{\text{Maximum IVC} - \text{Minimum IVC}}{\text{Maximum IVC}} \times 100$$

2. IVC in patients on ventilator

In patients on positive pressure ventilation (on noninvasive ventilation or intubated and on the mechanical ventilator), IVC changes with respiration are just reversed compared with spontaneous breathing. During inspiration, intrathoracic pressure increases, which pushes blood back into the IVC from the right atrium causing "Distention" of IVC. While during expiration, intrathoracic pressure decreases, and venous return increases, which causes IVC collapse.

IVC distensibility index (dIVC): "Distensibility index" is used to assess the respiratory variations in IVC diameter in patients on a ventilator.

Calculation of the IVC distensibility index and IVC diameter variability: In patients on a ventilator, obtain the maximum IVC diameter (at the end of inspiration) and minimum IVC diameter (at the end of expiration) and calculate the mean of both (mean IVC), and calculate indexes [6].

$$\text{IVC Distensibility Index} = \frac{\text{Maximum IVC} - \text{Minimum IVC}}{\text{Minimum IVC}} \times 100$$

$$\text{IVC Diameter Variability} = \frac{\text{Maximum IVC} - \text{Minimum IVC}}{\text{Mean IVC}} \times 100$$

Why is the predictive value of variations in IVC diameter better in patients on a ventilator than in spontaneous breathing patients?

In spontaneous breathing patients, respiration is highly variable between different patients, and it varies from one to another respiratory cycle, even in the same patient. Additionally, in spontaneous breathing patients, changes in intrathoracic pressure are much smaller, and therefore variation in the size of the IVC is also smaller. So, during spontaneous breathing, respiratory variations in IVC diameter are nonuniform and smaller; therefore, its predictability for fluid responsiveness is inferior [7].

While in a patient on a ventilator, controlled large tidal volume and small positive end-expiratory pressure lead to uniform changes in intrathoracic pressure during the respiration cycle. As a result, changes in vena cava diameter are also uniform (without variability from one to another cycle of ventilation), and therefore, patients on ventilators predict fluid responsiveness better than spontaneous breathing patients.

B. Measurement techniques

Two types of techniques used for the IVC measurement are:

- Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE): The diameter of the inferior vena cava can be quite easily and routinely measured by using transthoracic echocardiography using a subcostal view in a longitudinal section (measured approximately 1–2 cm caudal to the right atrium and IVC junction).
- Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE): TEE provides an accurate view of the superior vena cava (SVC) and, therefore, provides more precise data for the calculation but is used infrequently and in selected patients as this method is minimally invasive (requires intubation) with many limitations.

C. Maximal IVC diameter

Assessment of maximal IVC diameter is a static parameter that may be used to evaluate volume status and fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients [2]. In patients with shock, despite normalization of blood pressure after fluid resuscitation, inadequate dilatation of the IVC may be an important clue for insufficient circulating blood volume [8]. However, clinicians should use static IVC diameter cautiously because of its poor predictability [9]. Maximal IVC diameter is not useful in most patients, but very low or very high values may be helpful [10].

1. In spontaneous breathing

- Complete IVC collapse or end-expiratory IVC diameter less than 10 mm may suggest hypovolaemia and needs fluid administration in spontaneously breathing patients [11–14].
- IVC diameter of more than 25 mm may suggest hypervolemia in spontaneously breathing patients, and fluid administration is not appropriate [11, 15].
- In patients with marked volume overload, IVC is expanded and not collapsible [16]. However, noncollapsing large IVC diameter is not specific for volume overload, and it is essential to exclude multiple other causes [15].

2. In mechanically ventilated patients

A single static value of IVC diameter does not predict fluid status or fluid responsiveness in patients on a ventilator [6]. It is important to remember that IVC is often distended in patients on a mechanical ventilator due to increased intrathoracic pressure because of positive pressure ventilation. Therefore, a distended IVC in patients on a ventilator neither suggests volume overload nor excludes hypovolemia or fluid responsiveness.

However, an end-expiratory IVC diameter of less than 13 mm is a strong indicator of volume depletion, and an IVC diameter over 25 mm excludes fluid responsiveness in patients on a mechanical ventilator [10, 17].

Pitfalls: Between the vena cava and right atrium, there is no valve, and therefore, high right atrial pressure causes expansion of the vena cava and impairs the normal collapsibility of the vena cava. So, before diagnosing the volume status based on IVC parameters, consider other factors that can affect the IVC diameter and collapse, such as right atrial pressure, respiratory disorders affecting the degree of intrathoracic pressure change, and pressure within the abdominal cavity.

Remember that prerequisites to use IVC diameter and collapsibility to assess volume status effectively are controlled mode ventilator, tidal volume ≥8mL/kg with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) ≤5 cm H_2O, intraabdominal pressure should be normal, and absence of acute cor pulmonale or severe right ventricular dysfunction [14, 15]. Fluid responsiveness is predicted poorly if tidal volumes <8 mL/kg or PEEP >5 cm H_2O [18].

D. Inferior vena cava diameter variation

In spontaneously breathing patients, the average diameter of IVC is about 18 mm, with approximately 50% collapse with inspiration [19].

Assessment of the change in diameter of the vena cava during respiration and calculation of the distensibility/collapsibility index on its basis is a widely used tool for predicting intravascular volume status and fluid responsiveness. Variations in IVC diameter in response to fluid administration is a better indicator of adequate replacement of fluid than vital signs, and static maximal IVC diameter [9].

For the assessment of fluid responsiveness, the predictive value of variations in IVC diameter is better in patients on a ventilator compared to patients on spontaneous breathing [20, 21].

The measurement of inferior vena cava diameter is routinely performed in ICUs for both patients spontaneously breathing and on a ventilator. But it is important to remember that evidence about the predictive value of this modality in the assessment of volume status and fluid responsiveness in both groups is conflicting and the subject of debate [3, 17, 22–24].

1. In mechanically ventilated patients

There are controversies regarding the effectiveness of respiratory variation in IVC diameter and distensibility index to predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients. There are studies, systematic reviews, and meta-analyses supporting its predictive value and use [18, 20, 21, 25–32], and data not in favor of the same [4, 10, 33–35].

The distensibility index (dIVC) is a more accurate parameter in predicting the volume status as compared to the collapsibility index (CI-IVC) and variations in IVC (ΔIVC) in patients with positive pressure supports [36].

In patients on a ventilator:

- If the distensibility index is >18% or IVC diameter variability is >12%, it may predict fluid responsiveness [25–27].
- If the distensibility index is <18%, the patient is not responsive to volume, and benefit from fluid administration is unlikely [37].

In patients on a ventilator, as compared to the measurement of IVC collapsibility, SVC collapsibility has better diagnostic accuracy in predicting fluid responsiveness [5]. The SVC collapsibility threshold of 36% can effectively differentiate between fluid responders and nonresponders patients (with a sensitivity of 90% and a specificity of 100%)

[38]. But the measurement of SVC needs semi-invasive transesophageal echocardiography, which is the limiting factor.

2. In spontaneous breathing patients

Because of conflicting evidence, use IVC diameter variation and collapsibility index cautiously to predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients. Evidence supports its predictive value and uses [7, 9, 20, 39–44], and there is also literature not favoring the same [21, 45–48]. Remember that optimal thresholds of these parameters in spontaneous breathing are different from those described in patients on a ventilator [39].

In spontaneous breathing patients:

- Very collapsible IVC with higher amplitude respiratory variation, i.e., collapsibility index >40%, is a moderate predictor of fluid responsiveness [7, 40–42], but lower values (<40%) do not exclude volume responsiveness [9, 19].
- Very distended IVC with a collapsibility index <15% may suggest that the patient is not fluid responsive [49].
- The absence of respiratory variation is an important clue, which suggests that the patient is not fluid responsive [26].

Besides low sensitivity and less reliability in patients with spontaneous breathing, cautious use of this modality is preferred because it is readily available, easy to perform, noninvasive, and carries high specificity [40, 43, 44].

CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURE MONITORING

Central venous pressure is the most frequently used method to assess the hemodynamic status and guide fluid resuscitation in ICU patients [50, 51].

What is CVP?

Central venous pressure is the pressure of blood measured in the vena cava at its junction with the right atrium. CVP is a simple method that can be easily measured in any patient with a central venous line, and the most frequently chosen access is the internal jugular vein.

CVP measures mean right atrial pressure and is an indicator of chiefly right ventricular preload and, to a lesser extent, left ventricular preload.

Factors determining CVP

CVP is influenced by multiple factors such as vascular volume status, right ventricular compliance, pulmonary vascular resistance, thoracic, pericardial, and abdominal pressures, peripheral vascular tone, and posture [11, 52]. In patients on a mechanical ventilator, the value of CVP increases proportionate to positive end-expiratory pressure (roughly 5 cmH_2O increase in PEEP will cause a 2.5 cmH_2O increase in CVP) [53].

CVP measurement is unreliable in the presence of pulmonary vascular disease and hypertension, right ventricular disease, congestive heart failure, valvular heart disease, tense ascites, and high intra-abdominal pressure.

Interpretation of the value of CVP

The value of CVP should always be interpreted with clinical status.

Normal value

The normal value of CVP is 2 to 6 mmHg (when measured continuously using electronic pressure transducers) or 3 to 10 cm H_2O (measured directly using water manometers).

Low CVP

- True hypovolemia, as in blood loss, fluid loss, or fluid shift.
- Relative hypovolemia caused by peripheral vasodilatation, as in spinal anesthesia, septicemia, and anaphylactic shock.

High CVP

- Volume overload.
- Cardiac causes like congestive heart failure, cardiac tamponade, constrictive pericarditis, and tricuspid regurgitation.
- Pulmonary causes like embolism, pulmonary hypertension, tension pneumothorax, COPD, and cor pulmonale and positive pressure ventilation.

When and how to use CVP in clinical practice?

In the past, CVP monitoring was the most commonly used tool to assess volume status and to guide fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients [54]. However, in recent literature, the relationship between CVP and blood volume was poor, and CVP was unable to predict the hemodynamic response to a fluid challenge [2, 55, 56].

With recent evidence, the concept of using static marker CVP to assess intravascular volume or an indicator of fluid responsiveness is not recommended and is considered unreliable and potentially dangerous [57, 58].

However, CVP is still used in ICUs worldwide because other more accurate methods are not available easily [54].

In view of two contradictory facts (i.e., growing literature against the use and routine worldwide use in practice), different practical aspects related to indications and limitations of CVP monitoring are summarized.

Basic principles

- Normal CVP does not exclude volume depletion.
- A single value of CVP does not help in managing patients; it is always interpreted in the context of the clinical situation [57, 59].
- The "extreme" CVP values are important; it provides valuable guidance. The presence of "extreme" CVP values (CVP <6–8 mmHg and CVP >12–15 mmHg) can be of great help in predicting volume status and planning fluid administration [60–62].
- Using CVP to guide fluid administration is far from perfect, but when more accurate predictors of fluid responsiveness are not available, a reasonable CVP target is 8–12 mmHg [62, 63] during fluid administration. However, if the patient is stable, no attempt should be made to increase CVP to specific target values. Instead, the upper limit of CVP should be determined individually, considering the potential benefit/risk of further fluid administration. The goal is to keep CVP as low as possible while maintaining adequate tissue perfusion [62].

Low CVP

- A low CVP can be normal but generally suggest hypovolemia. If CVP is normal, it does not exclude hypovolaemia [64].
- In patients with low CVP values (less than 6 mmHg), an initial moderate fluid bolus is unlikely to cause harm, and most patients will respond to fluids [59–62].
- Prognostic value: In patients with circulatory shock, lower CVP and increased cardiac output may improve the prognosis and renal function, so one should try to keep lower CVP with

due caution to maintain adequate tissue perfusion [62, 65].

High CVP

- High CVP is always abnormal and has important therapeutic and prognostic values.
- An increase in CVP can occur due to increased total vascular volume, decreased cardiac function, or both.
- Patients with high CVP values (greater than 15 mmHg) do not respond to fluid administration, and therefore it is prudent to avoid the administration of fluids when the CVP is markedly elevated [61, 62].
- The upper threshold of CVP can alert the clinician to stop fluid therapy, and a positive trend reaching high values (CVP >8 mmHg) may warn the clinician that fluid replacement is no more needed [64]. So, the use of high CVP as a safety end-point and as a stopping rule for fluid administration can minimize the risk of volume overload [66].
- Prognostic value: Elevated CVP (>10 mmHg) is associated with an increased risk of mortality, a higher incidence of acute kidney injury (AKI), and poor outcomes (i.e., death) in critical ICU patients [65, 67–71]. A high CVP causes an increase in renal venous pressure leading to increased renal venous congestion, and reduces renal perfusion pressure with AKI as a result [72]. Similarly, elevated venous pressure may impair the venous return and disturb microcirculatory blood flow, which may harm the functions of different organs, leading to poor outcomes and even high mortality [58, 68].

Conclusion: Except for the extreme values, CVP may provide inaccurate estimations of volume status and does not predict volume responsiveness. When more accurate methods to estimate a patient's fluid volume status are unavailable, clinicians should understand the limitations, dangers, and benefits of CVP and use it judicially and selectively rather than abandon it altogether.

ARTERIAL CANNULATION

Arterial cannulation is a frequently performed and preferred procedure for the hemodynamic monitoring of critically ill and high-risk surgical patients [64].

Use

Arterial catheterization is useful for:

1. **Continuous monitoring of arterial blood pressure:** Arterial catheterization is a low-risk method which provides reliable information about blood pressure in unstable patients. This beside technique continuously and accurately measures beat-to-beat (as well as moment-to-moment) blood pressure and therefore recognizes the changes in blood pressure promptly and guides clinicians for quicker therapeutic interventions.
2. **Frequent blood sampling:** Arterial catheterization helps in repeated blood sampling for laboratory testing or arterial blood gas analysis.
3. **To predict fluid responsiveness:** An arterial catheter allows the analysis of arterial pressure waveforms. Analysis of respiration variations in the arterial waveform can determine fluid status and fluid responsiveness by calculating indices such as pulse pressure variation (PPV) and stroke volume variation (SVV). In addition, variations in the arterial waveform in response to fluid challenges or

passive leg raising are reliable indices for assessing fluid responsiveness.

4. **Diagnostic or therapeutic interventions:** Arterial catheterization is used for various diagnostic and therapeutic coronary procedures such as vascular stenting or embolization and intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP).

Technique

Arterial cannulation is a relatively safe procedure in which a simple cannula is introduced by a Seldinger technique, usually in a radial or femoral artery, after local anesthesia. Hemorrhage or hematoma at the puncture site, arterial spasm or occlusion, embolization, distal ischemia, and local and catheter-related infection are common complications of arterial cannulation. Avoid using arterial lines to administer medication, as it can lead to serious tissue damage and cause considerable morbidity [73].

Indications

Common indications of arterial cannulation for hemodynamic monitoring are:

- In ICU for monitoring of critically ill patients with circulatory shock.
- Major surgery such as cardiothoracic surgery or major abdominal surgery.
- When noninvasive blood pressure measurements are unreliable or difficult such as with severe burns or trauma.

Contraindications

Common contraindications of arterial cannulation are:

- Severe peripheral vascular diseases, arterial atherosclerosis, insufficient collateral perfusion, or absent pulse.
- Anticoagulation therapy or the presence of coagulopathy.

Radial or femoral, which artery to select for the cannulation?

The radial artery is a common choice because of easy cannulation due to its superficial position, the adequate collateral blood supply to the hand via the ulnar artery (reduces the risk of hand ischemia due to catheter induced thrombosis of radial artery), low rates of complications, easy to compress for the control of bleeding during cannulation or following its removal, and early ambulation [74–77]. Perform the modified Allen test before cannulation of the radial artery to assess the collateral circulation to the hands.

The limitations of the radial arterial cannulation approach are:

- Significantly smaller average lumen diameter (less than 3 mm) makes the trans-radial approach difficult in small-sized patients.
- Higher risk of thrombosis and nerve injury.
- Locating the radial artery via palpation may be difficult in patients with severe hypotension, morbid obesity, and weak pulse due to atherosclerosis.
- In patients with severe peripheral vasoconstriction and sicker patients on higher vasopressor doses, the value of radial arterial blood pressure is lower and may underestimate the central blood pressure [78–80].

The femoral artery is the second most common cannulation site [81], but the trend to use the femoral artery first is increasing in many patients with critical illness [80] because:

- It is easiest to cannulate and therefore provides faster access during emergencies in patients with shock. In severely hypotensive patients with nonpalpable peripheral pulses, greater ease in locating and cannulating due to its large lumen.

- There may be discrepancies between radial and femoral arterial blood pressure measurements. However, patients with severe hypotension on higher vasopressor doses and hypothermia femoral approach provide accurate blood pressure measurement [82, 83]. So, the femoral approach of arterial cannulation is beneficial in high-risk patients undergoing longer surgical interventions and helps to avoid inappropriate administration of vasopressors and/or inotropic agents [84].
- More reliable functioning and less likely to fail because of inaccuracy, blockage, or accidental removal [85].
- The radial artery is thin, not palpable, or there may be contra-indication to intra-arterial catheter placement at the wrist in certain patients [86].

The limitations of the femoral arterial cannulation approach are:

- Higher risk of arterial catheter-related infection [87, 88].
- Limits mobility significantly, and in alert patients, delays ambulation.
- Difficult to control or prevent bleeding (unlike radial artery), carries a great risk of retroperitoneal hematoma, and its diagnosis is often delayed [86].

PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETER MONITORING

The pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) is an invasive diagnostic procedure in which a catheter is inserted through a central vein into a pulmonary artery. PAC was used widely and considered the gold standard for measuring cardiac output in the past. But currently, PAC is used sparingly for the management of critically ill or perioperative patients [89].

Description

A pulmonary artery or Swan-Ganz catheter is a pliable catheter made from polyvinyl chloride material with a four lumen and a thermodilution sensor.

Two ports, including the Red port used for balloon inflation and the Yellow port, along with the thermodilution sensor, open within the pulmonary artery lumen, while the remaining two ports, the Proximal (Blue) port, and the White port (Clear lumen), open within the right atrium, as summarized in Table 17.1.

Technique

For the measurement of pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP), the pulmonary artery or Swan-Ganz flexible balloon-tipped, flow-directed catheter is introduced through a large vein and is placed with the tip in a distal pulmonary artery. PAC is an invasive multi-lumen central line placed through a large vein such as an internal jugular, subclavian, or femoral vein.

By using a flow-directed balloon flotation technique and utilizing pressure waveform and or fluoroscopy/echocardiographic guidance, PAC traverses along with venous blood into the vena cava (superior or inferior), right atrium, tricuspid valve, right ventricle, pulmonic valve and finally placed in the pulmonary artery [90]. Continuous monitoring of catheter tip pressure provides clues about the position of the tip of the catheter that guides the clinician to traverse the catheter to the pulmonary artery. In addition, the X-ray chest and wedge pressure waveform helps to confirm the location of PAC [91].

What information does PAC provide?

PAC provides important information by directly measuring cardiac pressures

Table 17.1 Sensor and lumens of pulmonary artery catheter

	Location	Description	Function
Thermodilution sensor	Within the pulmonary artery lumen	Located 4 cm from the tip, proximal to the balloon	It measures the blood temperature in the pulmonary artery and assists in calculating cardiac output using the thermodilution technique
Lumen or ports			
Red port Balloon inflation port	Within the pulmonary artery lumen	It terminates in the balloon at the tip of the catheter, located approximately 2 cm from the distal end	The red port is used solely for inflating and deflating the balloon by using a custom syringe and air
Thermistor lumen Distal port Yellow port		The distal port terminates at the tip of the 110 cm long catheter, which should be positioned in the pulmonary artery	The yellow port useful for measuring pulmonary artery pressure, mixed venous samples, and allows continuous cardiac output monitoring
Proximal lumen Blue port CVP port	Within the right atrium	Located 30 cm from the tip of the catheter and rests within the right atrium	It is utilized for measuring and monitoring CVP, right atrial pressure as well as for fluid and drug administration
White port Clear lumen		Located 31 cm from the tip of the catheter and rests within the right atrium	The white port is used for infusing fluids and drugs

(central venous pressure, right atrial and ventricular pressures, pulmonary arterial pressure, pulmonary artery occlusion pressure) and cardiac output [57, 92]. In addition, PAC also indirectly measures systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance, cardiac index, stroke volume, oxygen delivery, and mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2).

1. Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP)

Also known as pulmonary arterial wedge pressure (PAWP) or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP), is a technique to measure pulmonary venous pressure and left atrial pressure indirectly by using PAC. In this method, the tip of a PAC is placed into a smaller, more distal pulmonary arterial branch. When the balloon at the distal tip of the PAC is inflated, it obstructs the forward blood flow in the distal branch of the pulmonary artery, and subsequently, measurements are obtained.

The pulmonary artery is in direct continuity with the left atrium and, therefore, with the left ventricle during diastole. So, PAOP, in addition to measurement of left atrial pressure, during diastole, reflects left ventricular end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP) and determines left ventricle (LV) function when mitral valve function is normal.

2. Cardiac output

PAC measures CO invasively using the thermodilution principle and was considered the gold standard method. Details about the same are covered in the invasive systems part of the Chapter 19 on "Cardiac Output Monitoring."

3. Mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2)

It is a measurement of oxygen saturation from a blood sample from the pulmonary artery through a PAC. SvO_2 is the oxygen content of the blood that returns to the heart and is determined by cardiac output, hemoglobin concentration, oxygen supply (ventilatory settings, fraction of inspired oxygen, etc.), and tissue oxygen consumption [90].

Important causes of low SvO_2 are low or inadequate cardiac output, anemia, hypoxemia, or increased O_2 demand (sepsis, hyperthermia, burns, seizures, or shivering). The normal value of SvO_2 is 60–80%, and SvO_2 less than 65% is of poor prognostic value [93]. SvO_2 below 60% poses a serious risk of tissue hypoxia and needs urgent corrective measures.

Use of PAC in clinical practice. When and why?

The use of the PAC has decreased substantially and is not used routinely in most critically ill patients because:

1. PAC is a highly invasive technique with several complications. With the availability of less invasive hemodynamic monitoring techniques, the use of the PAC has declined in the last three decades [57, 94–96].
2. PAC failed to improve the outcome and survival [97–101].
3. Measurements of cardiac output by PAC are frequently inaccurate in critically ill patients [102, 103].
4. Static parameter like pulmonary artery occlusion pressure does not predict fluid volume [104, 105] or fluid responsiveness and therefore is not useful in fluid management in critically ill patients [106–108].

Indications

The unique feature of PAC monitoring is that it can directly measure the pressures in the right heart and pulmonary circulation [109]. PAC is the only device that efficiently assesses and continuously monitors the right ventricle function [110].

Currently, the use of PAC must be restricted to very few selected critically ill patients and complex clinical situations [92]. The most frequent indications are [2, 64, 111–113]:

- To differentiate the causes of various unexplained or multi-factorial shock states. PAC helps to differentiate cardiogenic and non-cardiogenic causes of severe shock.
- To evaluate right ventricular heart failure, pulmonary edema, pulmonary hypertension, or refractory shock, and helps in the planning of more precise fluid, inotropes, vasodilators, and diuretics treatment.
- Perioperatively in high-risk patients with severe pulmonary hypertension and acute right ventricular failure, PAC helps in the proper administration of fluids and vasopressors.
- To diagnose cardiac tamponade or constrictive pericarditis when clinical and echocardiographic findings are not conclusive.
- Preoperative assessment of intracardiac shunt, congenital heart disease, or right-sided valvular disease.

Complications

The common complications which may occur from the use of the PAC are cardiac arrhythmias, pulmonary artery rupture or thrombosis, pulmonary hemorrhage, balloon rupture, pneumothorax, catheter malposition or intra-cardiac knotting, tricuspid or pulmonary valve injury, right atrial thrombosis, internal jugular/subclavian vein stenosis, venous thromboembolism, electromechanical dissociation, and right-sided endocarditis and catheter-related bloodstream infection.

REFERENCES

1. Levitov A, Frankel HL, Blaivas M, et al. Guidelines for the appropriate use of bedside general and cardiac ultrasonography in the evaluation of critically ill patients - Part II: Cardiac ultrasonography. Crit Care Med. 2016;44(6):1206–27.
2. Cecconi M, De Backer D, Antonelli M, et al. Consensus on circulatory shock and hemodynamic monitoring. Task force of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. Intensive Care Med. 2014;40(12):1795–815.
3. Schmidt GA. POINT: Should acute fluid resuscitation be guided primarily by inferior vena cava ultrasound for patients in shock? Yes Chest. 2017;151(3):531–532.
4. Charbonneau H, Riu B, Faron M, et al. Predicting preload responsiveness using simultaneous recordings of inferior and superior vena cavae diameters. Crit Care. 2014;18(5):473.
5. Vignon P, Repesse X, Begot E, et al. Comparison of echocardiographic indices used to predict fluid responsiveness in ventilated patients. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2017;195(8):1022–1032.
6. Miller A, Mandeville J. Predicting and measuring fluid responsiveness with echocardiography. Echo Res Pract. 2016;3(2):G1–G12.
7. Muller L, Bobbia X, Toumi M, et al. Respiratory variations of inferior vena cava diameter to predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with acute circulatory failure: need for a cautious use. Crit Care. 2012;16(5):R188.
8. Yanagawa Y, Sakamoto T, Okada Y. Hypovolemic shock evaluated by sonographic measurement of inferior vena cava during resuscitation in trauma patients. J Trauma. 2007;63(6):1245–8.
9. Airapetian N, Maizel J, Alyamani O, et al. Does inferior vena cava respiratory variability predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients? Crit Care. 2015;19:400.
10. Vieillard-Baron A, Evrard B, Repesse X, et al. Limited value of end-expiratory inferior vena cava diameter to predict fluid responsiveness impact of intra-abdominal pressure. Intensive Care Med 2018;44(2):197–203.
11. Marx G, Schindler AW, Mosch C, et al. Intravascular volume therapy in adults: guidelines from the Association of the Scientific Medical Societies in Germany. Eur J Anesthesiol. 2016;33(7):488–521.
12. Yanagawa Y, Nishi K, Sakamoto T, et al. Early diagnosis of hypovolemic shock by sonographic measurement of inferior vena cava in trauma patients. J Trauma. 2005;58(4):825–9.
13. Dipti A, Soucy Z, Surana A, et al. Role of inferior vena cava diameter in assessment of volume status: a meta-analysis. Am J Emerg Med. 2012;30(8):1414–1419.e1.
14. Furtado S, Reis L. Inferior vena cava evaluation in fluid therapy decision making in intensive care: practical implications. Rev. bras. ter. intensiva [online]. 2019;31(2):240–247.
15. Lee CW, Kory PD, Arntfield RT. Development of a fluid resuscitation protocol using inferior vena cava and lung ultrasound. J Crit Care. 2016;31(1):96–100.
16. Jardin F, Vieillard-Baron A. Ultrasonographic examination of the venae cavae. Intensive Care Med. 2006;32(2):203–206.
17. Millington SJ. Ultrasound assessment of the inferior vena cava for fluid responsiveness: easy, fun, but unlikely to be helpful Can J Anesth/J Can Anesth 2019;66(6):633–638.
18. Si X, Xu H, Liu Z, et al. Does respiratory variation in inferior vena cava diameter predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Anesth Analg. 2018;127(5):1157–1164.
19. De Backer D, Fagnoul D. Intensive Care Ultrasound: VI. Fluid Responsiveness and Shock Assessment. Am Thorac Soc. 2014;11(1):129–36.
20. Zhang Z, Xu X, Ye S, et al. Ultrasonographic measurement of the respiratory variation in the inferior vena cava diameter is predictive of fluid responsiveness in critically ill patients: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Med Biol. 2014;40(5):845–53.
21. Long E, Oakley E, Duke T, et al. Paediatric Research in Emergency Departments International Collaborative (PREDICT). Does respiratory variation in inferior vena cava diameter predict fluid responsiveness: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Shock 2017;47(5):550–559.
22. Kory P. COUNTERPOINT: should acute fluid resuscitation be guided primarily by inferior vena cava ultrasound for patients in shock? No. Chest. 2017;151(3):533–536.
23. Schmidt GA. Rebuttal from Dr Schmidt. Chest. 2017;151(3):536–537.
24. Kory P. Rebuttal from Dr Kory. Chest. 2017;151(3):537–538.
25. Barbier C, Loubieres Y, Schmit C, et al. Respiratory changes in inferior vena cava diameter are helpful in predicting fluid responsiveness in ventilated septic patients. Intensive Care Med 2004;30(9):1740–6.
26. Feissel M, Michard F, Faller JP, et al. The respiratory variation in inferior vena cava diameter as a guide to fluid therapy. Intensive Care Med 2004;30(9):1834–1837.
27. Moretti R, Pizzi B. Inferior vena cava distensibility as a predictor of fluid responsiveness in patients with subarachnoid hemorrhage. Neurocrit Care. 2010;13(1):3–9.
28. Machare-Delgado E, Decaro M, Marik PE. Inferior vena cava variation compared to pulse contour analysis as predictors of fluid responsiveness: a prospective cohort study. J Intensive Care Med 2011;26(2):116–24.
29. Mandeville JC, Colebourn CL. Can transthoracic echocardiography be used to predict fluid responsiveness in the critically ill patient? A systematic review. Crit Care Res Pract 2012;2012:513480.
30. Lu N, Xi X, Jiang L, et al. Exploring the best predictors of fluid responsiveness in patients with septic shock. Am J Emerg Med 2017;35(9):1258–1261.

31. Huang H, Shen Q, Liu Y, et al. Value of variation index of inferior vena cava diameter in predicting fluid responsiveness in patients with circulatory shock receiving mechanical ventilation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care 2018;22(1):204.
32. Mohammad AWM, Saad-eldeen ES, Mohammad EK, et al. Distensibility index of inferior vena cava and pulse pressure variation as predictors of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated shocked patients. Journal of Emergency Medicine, Trauma & Acute Care 2020;2020(1).
33. Sobczyk D, Nycz K, Andruszkiewicz P, et al. Ultrasonographic caval indices do not significantly contribute to predicting fluid responsiveness immediately after coronary artery bypass grafting when compared to passive leg raising. Cardiovasc Ultrasound 2016;14(1):23.
34. Zhang H, Zhang Q, Chen X, et al. Respiratory variations of inferior vena cava fail to predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients with isolated left ventricular dysfunction. Ann. Intensive Care 2019;9(1):113.
35. Orso D, Paoli I, Piani T, et al. Accuracy of ultrasonographic measurements of inferior vena cava to determine fluid responsiveness: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Intensive Care Med. 2020;35(4):354–363.
36. Sarıtaş A, Zincircioğlu Ç, Uzun SP, et al. Comparison of inferior vena cava collapsibility, distensibility, and delta indices at different positive pressure supports and prediction values of indices for intravascular volume status. Turk J Med Sci. 2019;49(4):1170–1178.
37. Farcy DA, Jain A, Dalley M, et al. Pitfalls in using central venous pressure as a marker of fluid responsiveness. Emerg Med 2016;48(1):18–28.
38. Vieillard-Baron A, Chergui K, Rabiller A, et al. Superior vena caval collapsibility as a gauge of volume status in ventilated septic patients. Intensive Care Med 2004;30(9):1734–1739.
39. Lanspa MJ, Grissom CK, Hirshberg EL, et al. Applying dynamic parameters to predict hemodynamic response to volume expansion in spontaneously breathing patients with septic shock. Shock. 2013;39(2):155–60.
40. Preau S, Bortolotti P, Colling D, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of the inferior vena cava collapsibility to predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with sepsis and acute circulatory failure. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(3):e290–e297.
41. Corl KA, George NR, Romanoff J, et al. Inferior vena cava collapsibility detects fluid responsiveness among spontaneously breathing critically-ill patients. J Crit Care. 2017;41:130–137.
42. Bortolotti P. Inferior vena cava respiratory variations. A useful tool at bedside to guide fluid therapy in spontaneously breathing patients. SHOCK 2018;49(2):235–236.
43. Bortolotti P, Colling D, Colas V, et al. Respiratory changes of the inferior vena cava diameter predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with cardiac arrhythmias. Ann. Intensive Care 2018;8(1):79.
44. Szabó M, Bozó A, Darvas K, et al. Role of inferior vena cava collapsibility index in the prediction of hypotension associated with general anesthesia: an observational study. BMC Anesthesiol 2019;19:139.
45. Williams K, Ablordeppey E, Theodoro D, et al. The diagnostic accuracy of inferior vena cava collapsibility versus passive leg raise testing in determining volume responsiveness in emergency department patients with shock. Proceedings of the 40th Critical Care Congress, Society of Critical Care Congress. Crit Care Med 2011;39:8.
46. Corl K, Napoli AM, Gardiner F. Bedside sonographic measurement of the inferior vena cava caval index is a poor predictor of fluid responsiveness in emergency department patients. Emerg Med Australas. 2012;24(5):534–539.
47. Juhl-Olsen P, Vistisen ST, Christiansen LK, et al. Ultrasound of the inferior vena cava does not predict hemodynamic response to early hemorrhage. J Emerg Med 2013;45(4):592–597.
48. De Valk S, Olgers TJ, Holman M, et al. The caval index: an adequate non-invasive ultrasound parameter to predict fluid responsiveness in the emergency department? BMC Anesthesiology. 2014;14:114.
49. Block J, Mackenzie D. Fluid Responsiveness in a Hemodynamically Unstable Patient. EMresident15 Dec 2018 Visit: https://www.emra.org/emresident/article/fluid-responsiveness/.
50. McIntyre LA, Hébert PC, Fergusson D, et al. Canadian Critical Care Trials Group. A survey of Canadian intensivists' resuscitation practices in early septic shock. Crit Care. 2007;11(4):R74.
51. Cannesson M, Pestel G, Ricks C, et al. Hemodynamic monitoring and management in patients undergoing high risk surgery: a survey among North American and European anesthesiologists. Crit Care. 2011;15(4):R197.
52. Gelman S. Venous function and central venous pressure: a physiologic story. Anesthesiology. 2008;108(4):735–48.
53. Shojaee M, Sabzghabaei A, Alimohammadi H, et al. Effect of positive end-expiratory pressure on central venous pressure in patients under mechanical ventilation. Emerg (Tehran). 2017;5(1):e1.
54. Cecconi M, Hofer C, Teboul JL, et al. Fluid challenges in intensive care: the FENICE study: a global inception cohort study. Intensive Care Med 2015;41(9):1529–37.
55. Marik PE, Baram M, Vahid B. Does the central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? A systematic review of the literature and the tale of seven mares. Chest. 2008;134(1):172–8.
56. Marik PE, Cavallazzi R. Does the Central Venous Pressure (CVP) predict fluid responsiveness: An update meta-analysis and a plea for some common sense. Crit Care Med. 2013;41(7):1774–81.
57. Martin ND, Codner P, Greene W, et al. Contemporary hemodynamic monitoring, fluid responsiveness, volume optimization, and endpoints of resuscitation:

an AAST critical care committee clinical consensus. Trauma Surg Acute Care Open 2020;5(1):e000411.

58. Chen C, Zhou Y, Wang P, et al. Elevated central venous pressure is associated with increased mortality and acute kidney injury in critically ill patients: a meta-analysis. Crit Care 2020;24(1):80.
59. Magder S. Value of CVP: an epidemiological or physiological question? Intensive Care Med 2016;42(3):458–459.
60. Eskesen TG, Wetterslev M, Perner A. Systematic review including re-analyses of 1148 individual data sets of central venous pressure as a predictor of fluid responsiveness. Intensive Care Med. 2016;42(3):324–332.
61. Biais M, Ehrmann S, Mari A, et al. Clinical relevance of pulse pressure variations for predicting fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated intensive care unit patients: the grey zone approach. Crit Care. 2014;18(6):587.
62. De Backer D, Vincent J. Should we measure the central venous pressure to guide fluid management? Ten answers to 10 questions. Crit Care 2018;22(1):43.
63. Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstadt S, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(19):1368–77.
64. Teboul JL, Saugel B, Cecconi M, et al. Less invasive hemodynamic monitoring in critically ill patients. Intensive Care Med. 2016;42(9):1350–1359.
65. Su L, Pan P, Li D, et al. Central Venous Pressure (CVP) reduction associated with higher Cardiac Output (CO) favors good prognosis of circulatory shock: a single-center, retrospective cohort study. Front Med (Lausanne). 2019;6:216.
66. Pinsky MR, Kellum JA, Bellomo R. Central venous pressure is a stopping rule, not a target of fluid resuscitation. Crit Care Resus 2014;16(4):245–246.
67. Boyd JH, Forbes J, Nakada TA, et al. Fluid resuscitation in septic shock: a positive fluid balance and elevated central venous pressure are associated with increased mortality. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(2):259–65.
68. Marik PE. Iatrogenic salt water drowning and the hazards of a high central venous pressure. Ann Intensive Care. 2014;4:21.
69. Lee J, De Louw E, Niemi M, et al. Association between fluid balance and survival in critically ill patients. J Intern Med. 2015;277(4):468–77.
70. Sondergaard S, Parkin G, Aneman A. Central venous pressure: soon an outcome-associated matter. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2016;29(2):179–85.
71. Li D, Wang X, Liu D. Association between elevated central venous pressure and outcomes in critically ill patients. Ann. Intensive Care 2017;7(1):83.
72. Mullens W, Abrahams Z, Francis GS, et al. Importance of venous congestion for worsening of renal function in advanced decompensated heart failure. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2009;53(7):589–96.
73. Sen S, Chini EN, Michael J, et al. Complications after unintentional intra-arterial injection of drugs: risks, outcomes, and management strategies. Mayo Clin Proc. 2005;80(6):783–795.
74. Brzezinski M, Luisetti T, London MJ. Radial artery cannulation: a comprehensive review of recent anatomic and physiologic investigations. Anesth Analg. 2009;109(6):1763–81.
75. O'Grady NP, Alexander M, Burns LA, et al. Summary of recommendations: Guidelines for the Prevention of Intravascular Catheter-related Infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(9):1087–99.
76. Miller AG, Bardin AJ. Review of ultrasound-guided radial artery catheter placement. Respir Care. 2016;61(3):383–8.
77. Scheer B, Perel A, Pfeiffer UJ. Clinical review: complications and risk factors of peripheral arterial catheters used for hemodynamic monitoring in anaesthesia and intensive care medicine. Crit Care. 2002;6(3):199–204.
78. Camporota L, Beale R. Pitfalls in hemodynamic monitoring based on the arterial pressure waveform. Crit Care 2010;14(2):124.
79. Hatib F, Jansen JR, Pinsky MR. Peripheral vascular decoupling in porcine endotoxic shock. J Appl Physiol. 2011;111(3):853–60.
80. Farkas J. PulmCrit: A-lines in septic shock: the wrist versus the groin. Aug 2018 Visit: https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/a-line/.
81. Koyuncu O, Leung S, Asha SA, et al. The present and future of indwelling arterial catheter: An anesthesiologist's perspective. Clin Res Trials, 2016;2(2):157–158.
82. Galluccio ST, Chapman MJ, Finnis ME. Femoral-radial arterial pressure gradients in critically ill patients. Crit Care Resusc. 2009;11(1):34–38.
83. Kim W, Jun J, Huh J, et al. Radial to femoral arterial blood pressure differences in septic shock patients receiving high-dose norepinephrine therapy. Shock. 2013;40(6):527–531.
84. Fuda G, Denault A, Deschamps A, et al. Risk factors involved in central-to-radial arterial pressure gradient during cardiac surgery. Anesth Analg. 2016;122(3):624–632.
85. Greer M, Carney S, McPheeters R, et al. Radial arterial lines have a higher failure rate than femoral. West J Emerg Med. 2018;19(2):364–371.
86. Lakhal K, Robert-Edan V. Invasive monitoring of blood pressure: a radiant future for brachial artery as an alternative to radial artery catheterisation? J Thorac Dis. 2017;9(12):4812–4816.
87. Lorente L, Santacreu R, Martín MM, et al. Arterial catheter-related infection of 2,949 catheters. Crit Care 2006;10(3):R83.
88. O'Horo JC, Maki DG, Krupp AE, et al. Arterial catheters as a source of bloodstream infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care Med 2014;42(6):1334–9.
89. Kalantari K, Chang JN, Ronco C, et al. Assessment of intravascular volume status and volume responsiveness in critically ill patients. Kidney Int. 2013;83(6):1017–28.
90. Lee CP, Bora V. Anesthesia monitoring of mixed venous saturation. StatPearls [Internet]. Feb 2020 Visit: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539835/.

91. Nickson C. Pulmonary Artery Catheter. Life in the Fast Lane CCC. Sept 2019 Visit: https://litfl.com/pulmonary-artery-catheter/.
92. Demiselle J, Mercat A, Asfar P. Is there still a place for the Swan–Ganz catheter? Yes. Intensive Care Med 2018;44(6):954–956.
93. Hartog C, Bloos F. Venous oxygen saturation. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol. 2014;28(4):419–28.
94. Litton E, Morgan M. The PiCCO monitor: a review. Anaesthesia and intensive care. 2012;40(3):393–409.
95. Seifi A, Elliott RJ, Elsehety MA. Usage of Swan-Ganz catheterization during the past 2 decades in United States. J Crit Care 2016;35:213–4.
96. De Backer D, Vincent JL. The pulmonary artery catheter: is it still alive? Current Opinion in Critical Care 2018;24(3):204–208.
97. Richard C, Warszawski J, Anguel N, et al. Early use of the pulmonary artery catheter and outcomes in patients with shock and acute respiratory distress syndrome: a randomized controlled trial. Journal of the American Medical Association 2003;290(20):2713–20.
98. Harvey S, Harrison DA, Singer M, et al. Assessment of the clinical effectiveness of pulmonary artery catheters in management of patients in intensive care (PAC-Man): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2005;366(9484):472–7.
99. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS) Clinical Trials Network, Wheeler AP, et al. Pulmonary-artery versus central venous catheter to guide treatment of acute lung injury. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(21):2213–24.
100. Harvey S, Young D, Brampton W, et al. Pulmonary artery catheters for adult patients in intensive care. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2006;(3):CD003408.
101. Rajaram SS, Desai NK, Kalra A, et al. Pulmonary artery catheters for adult patients in intensive care. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2013;2013(2):CD003408.
102. Phillips RA, Hood SG, Jacobson BM, et al. Pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) accuracy and efficacy compared with flow probe and transcutaneous Doppler (USCOM): an ovine cardiac output validation. Crit Care Res Pract 2012;2012:621494.
103. Marik PE. Obituary: pulmonary artery catheter 1970 to 2013. Ann Intensive Care. 2013;3(1):38.
104. Kumar A, Anel R, Bunnell E, et al. Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure and central venous pressure fail to predict ventricular filling volume, cardiac performance, or the response to volume infusion in normal subjects. Crit Care Med. 2004;32(3):691–9.
105. Oohashi S, Endoh H, Oohashi S, et al. Does central venous pressure or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure reflect the status of circulating blood volume in patients after extended transthoracic esophagectomy? J Anesth 2005;19(1):21–25.
106. Keller G, Sinavsky K, Desebbe O, et al. Combination of continuous pulse pressure variation monitoring and cardiac filling pressure to predict fluid responsiveness. J Clin Monit Comput. 2012;26(6):401–5.
107. Michard F, Teboul JL. Predicting fluid responsiveness in ICU patients: a critical analysis of the evidence. Chest. 2002;121(6):2000–2008.
108. Osman D, Ridel C, Ray P, et al. Cardiac filling pressures are not appropriate to predict hemodynamic response to volume challenge. Crit Care Med 2007;35(1):64–68.
109. Huygh J, Peeters Y, Bernards J, et al. Hemodynamic monitoring in the critically ill: an overview of current cardiac output monitoring methods. F1000Res. 2016;5:F1000.
110. Ventetuolo CE, Klinger JR. Management of acute right ventricular failure in the intensive care unit. Ann Am Thorac Soc 2014;11(5):811–822.
111. Chatterjee K. The Swan-Ganz catheters: past, present, and future. A viewpoint. Circulation. 2009;119(1):147–52.
112. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: International Guidelines for Management of Sepsis and Septic Shock: 2016. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43(3):304–377.
113. Ziccardi MR, Khalid N. Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. StatPearls [Internet]. Feb 2020 (Visit: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK482170/).

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

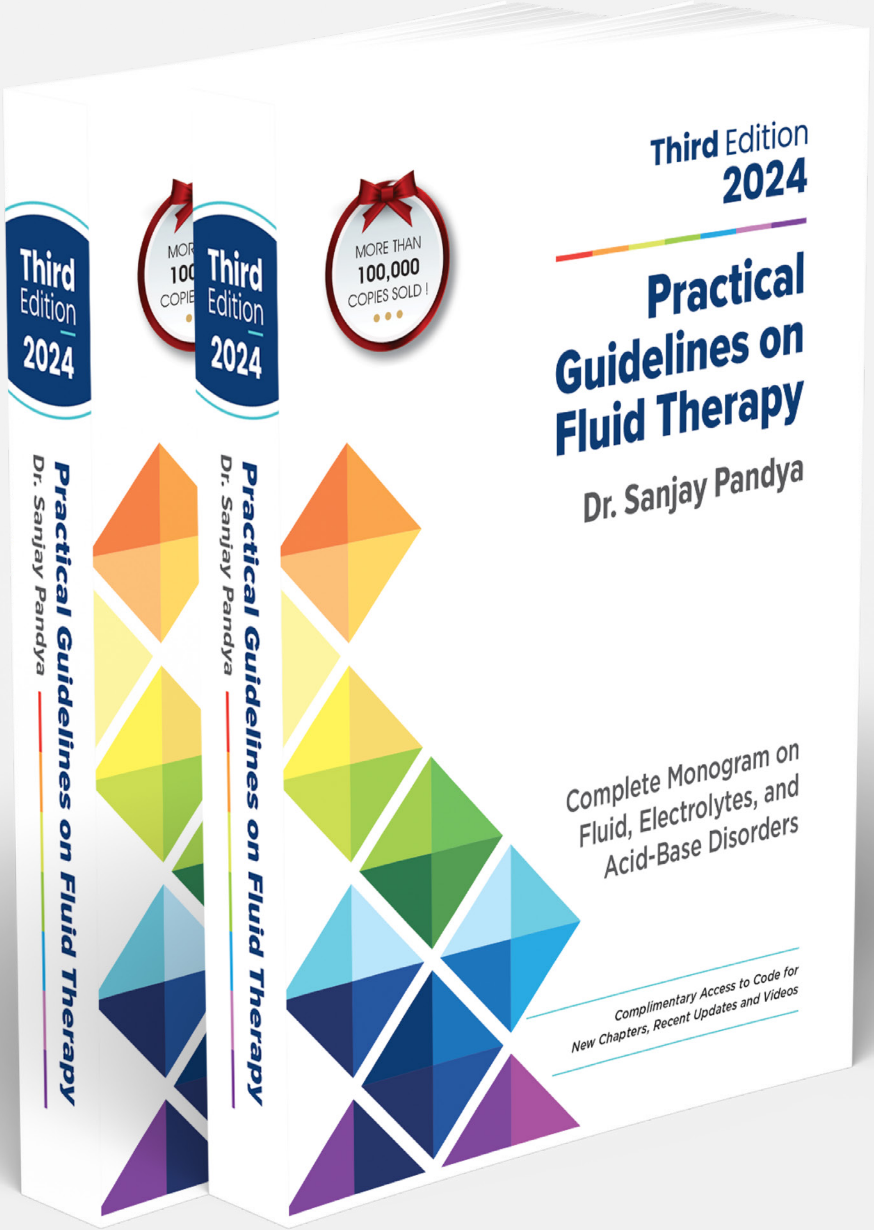
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid therapy.org

Chapter 18:

Fluid Responsiveness: Provocative Techniques and Dynamic Parameters


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

18

Fluid Responsiveness: Provocative Techniques and Dynamic Parameters

Provocative Techniques 190
Fluid challenge 191
Passive leg raising test................. 192
How to perform?...................... 193
Assessment and clinical utility ..193
End-expiratory occlusion test 194
Dynamic Parameters 194
Pulse pressure variation............... 195
Stroke volume variation................ 196
Plethysmographic variability index..196

Detection of fluid responsiveness is essential as it helps clinicians for the proper fluid management in critically ill patients. Various techniques are available to assess fluid responsiveness in hemodynamically unstable patients, including pulse pressure variation (PPV) and stroke volume variation (SVV), which are common dynamic measurements based on cardiopulmonary interaction derived from arterial waveform analysis.

Additionally, the plethysmographic variability index (PVI) is a simple, easily doable, noninvasive, and dynamic method that accurately predicts fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients by continuously and automatically estimating respiratory variations in the pulse oximeter waveform.

PROVOCATIVE TECHNIQUES TO DETECT FLUID RESPONSIVENESS

Why is it important to differentiate between fluid responsive from fluid nonresponsive patients by hemodynamic monitoring?

In hemodynamically unstable patients, prompt and adequate fluid administration is essential to increase blood volume, which increases venous return, cardiac output (CO), and organ perfusion. Assessment of volume responsiveness is vital in such patients because with fluid boluses, only 50% of patients with shock are benefited, and excess fluid may worsen patient outcomes [1, 2].

In which patients fluid responsiveness should be tested?

Patients do not require a test for fluid responsiveness if hypovolemia is evident on clinical examination. Avoid fluid challenge if volume overload is obvious clinically. Fluid responsiveness should be tested in hemodynamically unstable patients if fluid losses are not apparent.

Which dynamic methods are used to detect fluid responsiveness?

The use of dynamic variables is preferred over static variables to predict fluid responsiveness [3]. The fluid challenge, passive leg raising, and end-expiratory occlusion test are reliable provocative,

Table 18.1 Summary of provocative dynamic methods to detect fluid responsiveness

Method	Fluid challenge	Passive leg raising	End-expiratory occlusion test
Nature	Non-invasive	Non-invasive	Invasive
Ventilation mode	Spontaneous	Spontaneous	Mechanical
Technique	Intravenous fluid loading	Internal volume challenge	Internal volume challenge
Effect of maneuver	Non-reversible	Reversible	Reversible
Parameters assessed	Cardiac output	Cardiac output	Cardiac output
Threshold	15% standard FC 6% mini FC	10%	5%
Methods to measure CO	Needs a very precise technique	Direct continuous measurement of CO	Direct continuous measurement of CO
	PCA, echocardiography	PCA, echocardiography, or bioreactance	PCA, echocardiography
Limitations/Exclusion criteria	Risk of volume overload	High intra-abdominal pressures, head trauma, and movement of the legs are not compatible	Non-intubated patients, 15 second respiration hold is not possible

ARDS: Acute respiratory distress syndrome; CO: Cardiac output; FC: Fluid challenge; PCA: Pulse contour analysis

dynamic methods used for the assessment of fluid status, which detects or unmasks the fluid responsive state (Table 18.1). For the assessment of fluid responsiveness, parameters such as pulse pressure variation, stroke volume variation, Plethysmograph variability index, and cardiac output are measured with commercially available various devices and monitors.

A. Fluid challenge

In the fluid challenge, a small amount of fluid is administered quickly, and the left ventricle's ability to increase stroke volume (SV) is assessed precisely [4, 5].

Fluid challenge (FC) is an effective diagnostic intervention designed to identify the "fluid responsiveness" in hemodynamic compromise patients. The fluid challenge guides clinicians to administer the optimum volume of fluid to avoid over and under-fluid resuscitation [6]. The fluid challenge is usually performed in patients with hypotension and oliguria [7].

Balanced crystalloid solutions are usually preferred for the fluid challenge because the selection of the type of fluid does not affect the proportion of fluid responders [8]. Usually, 500 mL crystalloid is administered over 20–30 minutes (or 200–250 mL is administered over 5–10 minutes) [2, 7].

How to assess the response to the fluid challenge?

The "fluid responsiveness" cannot be predicted by heart rate, blood pressure measurements, clinical signs, or static hemodynamic parameters such as central venous pressure (CVP) or pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP) [9, 10].

The current recommendation is to monitor dynamic over static hemodynamic parameters after fluid challenge to predict the "fluid responsiveness" in mechanically ventilated patients [3, 10]. Even in spontaneously breathing patients, respiratory changes in dynamic parameters after fluid challenge predicts "fluid responsiveness" [11].

Cardiac output monitoring is used to assess pulse pressure variation, stroke volume, stroke volume variation, and cardiac index. Precise monitoring of these parameters is essential because the maximal effect on cardiac output occurs approximately one minute after the fluid challenge is over [12].

Which criteria define fluid responsiveness in the fluid challenge?

Usual parameters suggestive of fluid responsiveness are 10–15% increase in stroke volume [4] with a ≥15% increase in cardiac index [7]. Only fluid responsiveness patients should receive additional fluids [13].

Why is large volume fluid administration avoided for the fluid challenge?

The standard challenge with 300–500 mL of fluid is more a treatment than a test and, when repeated, carries the potential risk of volume overload. Volume overload is deleterious and probably more harmful than hypovolemia [14]. Potential harms of large volume fluid bolus are hypervolemia, pulmonary edema, bowel wall edema, endothelial glycocalyx damage, increased vascular permeability, tissue hypoxia, and organ dysfunctions [15, 16].

Positive fluid balance also increases the risk of acute kidney injury, slower recovery in acute respiratory distress syndrome, and higher mortality [17–21].

After large volume fluid bolus, clinical and physiological improvement occurs initially, but no long-term improvement, and on the contrary, causes higher mortality due to delayed cardiovascular collapse [22–24].

Why hemodynamics improvement following fluid bolus is short-lived?

Short-lived hemodynamics improvement following fluid bolus is because of rapid "Third" Spacing. In critical patients with leaky capillaries, 95% of the infused fluid shifts to interstitial space within 90 minutes, so transient benefit is lost rapidly [21, 25].

What is a mini-fluid challenge?

A mini-fluid challenge is an alternative approach that can reliably predict fluid responsiveness without a large amount of fluid infusion and the potential risk of fluid overload [26–29].

Protocols in the mini-fluid challenge includes:

- 100 ml of the crystalloid bolus is infused rapidly over one minute [26].
- A fluid bolus of 4 mL/kg of a balanced crystalloid solution is quickly infused over 5 minutes [30].

Fluid responsiveness in the mini-fluid challenge can be reliably predicted by velocity-time integral (VTI) measured by transthoracic echocardiography [29], pulse contour analysis derived from cardiac output [26], or changes in SVV [31]. As a small volume of fluid administration causes small and short-lived hemodynamic changes, response assessment should be monitored by very sensitive and precise techniques [26].

B. Passive leg raising test

The passive leg raising (PLR) test is a simple, safe, reliable non-invasive, and reproducible bedside test to evaluate fluid responsiveness in patients with spontaneous breathing, on a ventilator, low lung compliance, and even in the presence of cardiac arrhythmias [32–36]. Three metanalyses have confirmed the role of the PLR test in the assessment of fluid responsiveness [33, 37, 38].

In the PLR test, about 300 mL of blood from the lower extremities' veins is transferred into the thorax, which increases cardiac output [39]. The temporary gravitational shift of venous blood into the central circulation mimics a fluid challenge. Prediction of fluid responsiveness without administering a single drop of fluid avoids the risks of fluid overload. Rapidly reversible hemodynamic effects and no need for mechanical ventilation or sedation are the advantages of this test.

How to perform the passive leg raising test?

The basic method to perform the PLR test is [40]:

- Start the test by placing the patient 45 degrees head-up semi-recumbent (and not supine position) for 3 minutes and obtain the baseline hemodynamic values.
- The next step is to lower the patient's upper body and head to the horizontal position and passively raise legs at 45 degrees by changing the bed position (i.e., not manually) and holding in this position for one minute. Immediately assess the effects of PLR by obtaining the hemodynamic values again.
- As hemodynamic effects of the PLR test are short-term and transient, obtain the subsequent hemodynamic values fast within the first 90 seconds following leg elevation.

Assessment of the effect of the PLR test and its clinical utility

- To assess the hemodynamic effect of the PLR test, techniques which directly measure cardiac output should be used rather than methods that measure arterial pressure or pulse pressure [40]. Direct measurement of cardiac output is the more reliable hemodynamic parameter to assess the effects of the PLR test [37].
- Positive PLR test is defined as a 10% or more increase in cardiac output/stroke volume or pulse pressure, and it predicts fluid responsiveness [38, 41]. If, in response to the PLR test, an increase in cardiac output is less, it predicts a poor response to fluid administration.
- The most frequently used measurement/monitoring techniques for the direct measurement of cardiac output in the PLR test are arterial pulse contour analysis, transthoracic echocardiography, esophageal doppler, bioreactance, and contour analysis of the volume clamp-derived arterial pressure. In the PLR test, simple measurement and monitoring of systolic blood pressure by the oscillometric non-invasive method is not a sensitive or specific predictor of fluid responsiveness [42].
- During renal replacement therapy, a positive PLR test predicts subsequent hypotension even before fluid removal [43].
- As a positive PLR test predicts fluid responsiveness, a negative PLR test provides an important clinical clue to discontinue or stop fluid administration [40]. The negative PLR test helps the clinician to avoid fluid overload and guides them to select other measures like vasopressors rather than fluid administration in hemodynamically unstable patients.
- PLR test is not useful in patients with raised intra-abdominal pressure (may cause false-negative result), not feasible intraoperatively during anesthesia or in agitated patients, avoided in neurotrauma patients (may increase intracranial pressure), and in those requiring immobilization (traumatic hip or lower limb fractures)

or using compression stocking [32, 44–46].

C. End-expiratory occlusion test

The end-expiratory occlusion (EEO) test is a simple test in patients undergoing mechanical ventilation, which predicts fluid responsiveness reliably in the operating room and ICU [27, 47, 48].

In this preload responsiveness test, a ventilator is interrupted for 15 seconds at the end of expiration, and cardiac output is measured. A more than 5% increase in cardiac output predicts fluid responsiveness with a high degree of accuracy [9, 49]. The standard method used to measure cardiac output in this test is pulse contour analysis, but recent evidence supports the use of even echocardiography [48, 50, 51].

Physiological basis [52, 53]:

- In patients on positive pressure ventilation, during inspiration, intrathoracic pressure increases, which pushes blood back from the right atrium and reduces the systemic venous return.
- In patients on a ventilator, during the expiratory phase, intrathoracic pressure reduces, which allows the return of systemic venous blood. When a ventilator is stopped for 15 seconds at the end-expiration, the reduced intrathoracic pressure will persist for additional 15 seconds, permit venous return for a more extended period, and allow a larger volume of venous blood return.
- The effect of increased venous return will be like a mini self-volume fluid challenge, a transient increase in the venous blood return with a resultant increase in the left ventricular stroke volume and cardiac output.
- With the EEO test, cardiac output will increase in fluid responsive patients while no significant increase in cardiac output in non-volume responders.
- When a 15-second end-inspiratory hold is added to hold in the end-expiratory phase, the combined effect induces more substantial cardiac output changes in fluid responders, increasing the diagnostic threshold of this test to 13% and the assessment possible by echocardiography examination [50].

Reliability, even in patients with cardiac arrhythmias, acute respiratory distress syndrome, low lung compliance, and low tidal volume, are the advantages of this easy-to-use test [9, 53–55]. But this test can be performed only in patients on a ventilator who can hold respiration for 15 seconds without interruption by a spontaneous breath.

EEO test is a preferred technique to measure CO in surgical patients in the operating theatre. It can be conveniently and safely performed in sedated patients on a ventilator and with the benefit of the assessment without fluid administration (i.e., risk of volume overload). In addition, it has no technical constraints like a passive leg raising test [27, 56].

DYNAMIC PARAMETERS TO PREDICT FLUID RESPONSIVENESS

Pulse pressure variation, stroke volume variation, and plethysmographic variability index are common dynamic measurements based on cardiopulmonary interaction derived from the arterial waveform analysis, which is used to predict fluid responsiveness.

Pulse pressure variation (PPV) and stroke volume variation (SVV)

Arterial waveform derived dynamic parameters such as pulse pressure variation and stroke volume variation are accurate and excellent predictors of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients [57–60]. Dynamic parameters PPV and SVV are superior to traditionally used static indices to predict fluid responsiveness, such as central venous pressure and pulmonary artery occlusion pressure [57, 61–64].

PPV, SVV, and cardiac output can be easily recorded and automatically calculated by many modern commercially available bedside monitors.

A. Pulse pressure variation

Pulse pressure is the difference between systolic and diastolic blood pressure, which varies with respiration. Pulse pressure variation is calculated from the maximum pulse pressure (PPmax), minimum PP (PPmin), and mean PP (PPmean) during a respiratory cycle. These values can be obtained accurately by arterial catheters, and for the calculation, the values from three or more breaths are measured and averaged.

$$\text{Pulse Pressure Variation} = 100 \times \frac{\text{PPmax} - \text{PPmin}}{\text{PPmean}}$$

Interpretation of PPV for fluid administration:

1. PPV >13% is strongly associated with volume responsiveness [57, 58].
2. If PPV is low (<9), it suggests fluid unresponsiveness, and administration of fluids should be avoided [60].
3. PPV 9–13% is a grey zone value, and a definite strategy to administer intravenous (IV) fluid cannot be made on its basis [65, 66].

PPV has a higher predictive value for fluid responsiveness compared to SVV [67, 68]. Values of PPV are reliable, provided the patient is intubated and is on a volume cycled ventilator making no spontaneous respiratory efforts, tidal value >8 mL/kg body weight, and no arrhythmias [69, 70]. However, the accuracy of PPV in patients with increased intra-abdominal pressure is questionable as there is evidence supporting [71, 72] and against [73] its reliability.

Role of PPV to guide and monitor fluid administration in clinical practice [60]:

1. Surgical patients: Its applicability is higher during major surgery because PPV improves postoperative outcomes, and in patients on mechanical ventilator accuracy of PPV is greater.
2. ICU patients: Use of PPV is lesser in ICU because in the presence of commonly encountered conditions in ICU such as cardiac arrhythmias, spontaneous breathing, ventilatory support with low tidal volume, low lung compliance (e.g., acute respiratory distress syndrome), etc., the predictive value of PPV is unreliable.
3. Interpretation in low tidal volume ventilation: In patients on low tidal volume ventilation, PPV value can be misleading as it can be low even in fluid responsiveness patients. The 'tidal volume challenge' is a simple bedside test that helps to overcome the difficulty in interpretation in such patients. In this technique, tidal volume is increased from 6 to 8 mL/kg for 1 minute, and the resultant absolute changes in PPV are measured [69, 74]. If an increase in the absolute value of PPV is 3.5% or more, it predicts fluid responsiveness with excellent accuracy [74].
4. Interpretation in grey zone values of PPV: In patients with PPV 9% and 13% and tidal volume ≥8 mL/kg, PVV is inconclusive in predicting fluid responsiveness [65]. In such patients, augmented PPV (i.e., transient increase in tidal volume from

8 mL/kg to 12 mL/kg, known as a tidal volume challenge technique) can offer excellent predictability of fluid responsiveness [75].

B. Stroke volume variation

Left ventricular stroke volume variation, like PPV, is a dynamic parameter useful in diagnosing volume deficit and is a reliable predictor of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients. Stroke volume variation is the percentage change between the maximal and minimal stroke volumes (SV) averaged over several respiratory cycles.

$$\text{Stroke Volume Variation} = \frac{\text{SVmax} - \text{SVmin}}{\text{SVmean}}$$

SVV greater than 10% is associated with fluid responsiveness [76, 77]. The SVV is commonly measured by an arterial catheter but can also be measured by other methods such as esophageal doppler, bioimpedance, and bioreactance.

PPV and SVV are unreliable in patients with spontaneous breathing, on a mechanical ventilator with low tidal volume (<8 mL/kg), cardiac arrhythmias, right ventricular dysfunction, and low lung compliance [78–80].

C. Plethysmographic variability index

The plethysmographic variability index (PVI, Pleth variability index) is a simple, completely noninvasive, and dynamic method that accurately predicts fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients [81–83].

In this easy-to-use method, the pulse oximeter measures the light transmitted through the vascular bed of a finger and detects the dynamic change in the perfusion index during a complete respiratory cycle [84].

Continuous measurement derived from the plethysmographic waveform signals of the pulse oximetry is automatically calculated and displayed on the monitor's screen [85].

The PVI is calculated from the perfusion index (PI) variation between inspiration and expiration phases, as follows:

$$\text{PVI} = \frac{\text{PI Maximum} - \text{PI Minimumn}}{\text{PI Maximum}} \times 100\%$$

Generally, a PVI value >14% predicts preload dependence and is suggestive of fluid responsiveness [81, 86, 87].

PVI is a reasonably reliable predictor of fluid responsiveness in perioperative and critically ill patients with mechanical ventilation [88–92]. PVI guided goal-directed fluid management has been shown to improve outcomes in major surgery [93, 94]. However, in a recent meta-analysis, the reliability of PVI to predict fluid responsiveness was found to be limited, but it can play a role as a continuous bedside monitor in ICU [95].

Results of PVI are less reliable in pediatric patients with spontaneously breathing, with cardiac arrhythmias [88], probe malposition, patient motion, and in patients receiving norepinephrine (due to vasopressor induced dampened plethysmographic signals) [96, 97].

REFERENCES

1. Mackenzie DC, Noble VE. Assessing volume status and fluid responsiveness in the emergency department. Clin Exp Emerg Med. 2014;1(2):67–77.
2. Cecconi M, Hofer C, Teboul JL, et al. Fluid challenges in intensive care: the FENICE study: A global inception cohort study. Intensive Care Med 2015;41(9):1529–37.
3. Cecconi M, De Backer D, Antonelli M, et al. Consensus on circulatory shock and hemodynamic monitoring. Task force of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. Intensive Care Med. 2014;40(12):1795–1815.
4. Cecconi M, Parsons M, Rhodes A. What is a fluid challenge? Department of Intensive Care Medicine, St

George's Healthcare NHS Trust, London, UK Current Opinion In Critical Care 2011;17(3):290–295.
5. Hasanin A. Fluid responsiveness in acute circulatory failure. J Intensive Care. 2015;3:50.
6. Vincent JL, Weil MH. Fluid challenge revisited. Crit Care Med 2006;34(5):1333–7.
7. Messina A, Longhini F, Coppo C, et al. Use of the fluid challenge in critically ill adult patients: A systematic review. Anesthesia and analgesia. 2017;125(5):1532–1543.
8. Toscani L, Aya HD, Antonakaki D, et al. What is the impact of the fluid challenge technique on diagnosis of fluid responsiveness? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care. 2017;21(1):207.
9. Marik PE, Monnet X, Teboul JL. Hemodynamic parameters to guide fluid therapy. Ann Intensive Care. 2011;1(1):1.
10. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: International Guidelines for Management of Sepsis and Septic Shock: 2016. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(3):486–552.
11. Lanspa MJ, Grissom CK, Hirshberg EL, et al. Applying dynamic parameters to predict hemodynamic response to volume expansion in spontaneously breathing patients with septic shock. Shock. 2013;39(2):155–160.
12. Aya HD, Ster IC, Fletcher N, et al. Pharmacodynamic analysis of a fluid challenge. Crit Care Med 2016;44(5):880–91.
13. Anand Swaminathan, "Fluid responsiveness and the six guiding principles of fluid resuscitation", REBEL EM blog, February 27, 2017. Available at: https://rebelem.com/fluid-responsiveness-and-the-six-guiding-principles-of-fluid-resuscitation/.
14. Farkas J. PulmCrit: Myth-busting the fluid bolus. June 3, 2019 Available at: https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/bolus/.
15. Becker BF, Chappell D, Jacob M. Endothelial glycocalyx and coronary vascular permeability: The fringe benefit. Basic Res. Cardiol. 2010;105(6):687–701.
16. Malbrain MLNG, Van Regenmortel N, Saugel B, et al. Principles of fluid management and stewardship in septic shock: it is time to consider the four D's and the four phases of fluid therapy. Ann Intensive Care. 2018;8(1):66.
17. Vincent JL, Sakr Y, Sprung CL, et al. Sepsis in European intensive care units: results of the SOAP study. Crit Care Med. 2006;34(2):344–353.
18. Payen D, de Pont AC, Sakr Y, et al. Sepsis Occurrence in Acutely Ill Patients (SOAP) Investigators. A positive fluid balance is associated with a worse outcome in patients with acute renal failure. Crit Care. 2008;12(3):R74.
19. Prowle JR, Echeveri JE, Ligabo EV, et al. Fluid balance and acute kidney injury. Net Rev Nephrol. 2010;6(2):107–115.
20. Wiedemann HP, Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, et al. Comparison of two fluid-management strategies in acute lung injury. The New England Journal of Medicine. 2006;354(24):2564–75.
21. Malbrain ML, Marik PE, Witters I, et al. Fluid overload, de-resuscitation, and outcomes in critically ill or injured patients: a systematic review with suggestions for clinical practice. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2014;46(5):361–80.
22. Maitland K, Kiguli S, Opoka R, et al. Mortality after fluid bolus in African children with severe infection. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(26):2483–2495.
23. Andrews B, Semler M, Muchemwa L, et al. Effect of an early resuscitation protocol on in-hospital mortality among adults with sepsis and hypotension: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2017;318(13):1233–1240.
24. Hjortrup PB, Haase N, Bundgaard H, et al. Restricting volumes of resuscitation fluid in adults with septic shock after initial management: the CLASSIC randomised, parallel-group, multicentre feasibility trial. Intensive Care Med. 2016;42(11):1695–1705.
25. Nunes TS, Ladeira RT, Bafi AT, et al. Duration of hemodynamic effects of crystalloids in patients with circulatory shock after initial resuscitation. Ann Intensive Care. 2014;4:25.
26. Biais M, de Courson H, Lanchon R, et al. Mini-fluid challenge of 100 ml of crystalloid predicts fluid responsiveness in the operating room. Anesthesiology 2017;127(3):450–456.
27. Messina A, Dell'Anna A, Baggiani M, et al. Functional hemodynamic tests: a systematic review and a metanalysis on the reliability of the end-expiratory occlusion test and of the mini-fluid challenge in predicting fluid responsiveness. Crit Care 2019;23(1):264.
28. Marik PE. Fluid therapy in 2015 and beyond: the mini-fluid challenge and mini-fluid bolus approach. Br J Anaesth. 2015;115(3):347–9.
29. Muller L, Toumi M, Bousquet PJ, et al. An increase in aortic blood flow after an infusion of 100 ml colloid over 1 minute can predict fluid responsiveness: the mini-fluid challenge study. Anesthesiology 2011;115(3):541–7.
30. Aya HD, Rhodes A, Ster IC, et al. Hemodynamic effect of different doses of fluids for a fluid challenge: a quasi-randomised controlled study. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(2):e161–e168.
31. Mallat J, Meddour M, Durville E, et al. Decrease in pulse pressure and stroke volume variations after mini-fluid challenge accurately predicts fluid responsiveness. Br J Anaesth. 2015;115(3):449–56.
32. Monnet X, Teboul JL. Passive leg raising. Intensive Care Med 2008;34(4):659–63.
33. Cavallaro F, Sandroni C, Marano C, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of passive leg raising for prediction of fluid responsiveness in adults: systematic review and meta-analysis of clinical studies. Intensive Care Med 2010;36(9):1475–83.
34. Duus N, Shogilev DJ, Skibsted S, et al. The reliability and validity of passive leg raise and fluid bolus to assess fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing emergency department patients. J Crit Care 2015;30(1):217.e1–5.

35. Monnet X, Marik PE, Teboul J. Prediction of fluid responsiveness: an update. Ann Intensive Care 2016;6(1):111.
36. Monnet X, Teboul JL. Assessment of fluid responsiveness: recent advances. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2018;24(3):190–195.
37. Cherpanath TG, Hirsch A, Geerts BF, et al. Predicting fluid responsiveness by passive leg raising: a systematic review and meta-analysis of 23 clinical trials. Crit Care Med. 2016;44(5):981–91.
38. Monnet X, Marik P, Teboul JL. Passive leg raising for predicting fluid responsiveness: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2016;42(12):1935–1947.
39. Jabot J, Teboul JL, Richard C, et al. Passive leg raising for predicting fluid responsiveness: importance of the postural change. Intensive Care Med. 2009;35(1):85–90.
40. Monnet X, Teboul JL. Passive leg raising: five rules, not a drop of fluid. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):18.
41. Monnet X, Rienzo M, Osman D, et al. Passive leg raising predicts fluid responsiveness in the critically ill. Crit Care Med 2006;34(5):1402–7.
42. Pickett JD, Bridges E, Kritek PA, et al. Noninvasive blood pressure monitoring and prediction of fluid responsiveness to passive leg raising. Am J Crit Care. 2018;27(3):228–237.
43. Monnet X, Flora CF, Laurent CL, et al. The passive leg raising test to guide fluid removal in critically ill patients. Ann. Intensive Care 2016;6(1):46.
44. Malbrain ML, Reuter DA. Assessing fluid responsiveness with the passive leg raising maneuver in patients with increased intra-abdominal pressure: be aware that not all blood returns. Crit Care Med. 2010;38(9):1912–1915.
45. Beurton A, Teboul JL, Girotto V, et al. Intra-Abdominal hypertension is responsible for false negatives to the passive leg raising test. Crit Care Med 2019;47(8):e639–e647.
46. Chacko CJ, Wise MP, Frost PJ. Passive leg raising and compression stockings: A note of caution. Crit. Care. 2015;19:237.
47. Monnet X, Osman D, Ridel C, et al. Predicting volume responsiveness by using the end-expiratory occlusion in mechanically ventilated intensive care unit patients. Crit Care Med. 2009;37(3):951–6.
48. Georges D, de Courson H, Lanchon R, et al. End-expiratory occlusion maneuver to predict fluid responsiveness in the intensive care unit: an echocardiographic study. Crit Care. 2018;22(1):32.
49. Monnet X, Teboul JL. End-expiratory occlusion test: please use the appropriate tools. Br J Anaesth. 2015;114(1):166–7.
50. Jozwiak M, Depret F, Teboul JL, et al. Predicting fluid responsiveness in critically ill patients by using combined end-expiratory and end-inspiratory occlusions with echocardiography. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(11):e1131–e1138.
51. Dépret F, Jozwiak M, Teboul JL, et al. Esophageal Doppler can predict fluid responsiveness through end-expiratory and end-inspiratory occlusion tests. Crit Care Med. 2019;47(2):e96–e102.
52. Biais M, Larghi M, Henriot J, et al. End-expiratory occlusion test predicts fluid responsiveness in patients with protective ventilation in the operating room. Anesth Analg 2017;125(6):1889–95.
53. Gavelli F, Teboul J, Monnet X. The end-expiratory occlusion test: please, let me hold your breath. Crit Care 2019;23:274.
54. Monnet X, Bleibtreu A, Ferré A, et al. Passive leg-raising and end-expiratory occlusion tests perform better than pulse pressure variation in patients with low respiratory system compliance. Crit Care Med 2012;40(1):152–157.
55. Shiva S, Jozwiak M, Teboul JL, et al. End-expiratory occlusion test predicts preload responsiveness independently of positive end-expiratory pressure during acute respiratory distress syndrome. Crit Care Med 2013;41(7):1692–701.
56. Xu LY, Tu GW, Cang J, et al. End-expiratory occlusion test predicts fluid responsiveness in cardiac surgical patients in the operating theatre. Ann Transl Med. 2019;7(14):315.
57. Marik PE, Cavallazzi R, Vasu T, et al. Dynamic changes in arterial waveform derived variables and fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients: a systematic review of the literature. Crit Care Med. 2009;37(9):2642–7.
58. Yang X, Du B. Does pulse pressure variation predict fluid responsiveness in critically ill patients? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care. 2014;18(6):650.
59. Hong JQ, He HF, Chen ZY, et al. Comparison of stroke volume variation with pulse pressure variation as a diagnostic indicator of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated critically ill patients. Saudi Med J. 2014;35(3):261–8.
60. Teboul JL, Monnet X, Chemla D, et al. Arterial pulse pressure variation with mechanical ventilation. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;199(1):22–31.
61. Michard F, Teboul JL. Predicting fluid responsiveness in ICU patients: a critical analysis of the evidence. Chest 2002;121(6):2000–8.
62. Osman D, Ridel C, Ray P, et al. Cardiac filling pressures are not appropriate to predict hemodynamic response to volume challenge. Crit Care Med 2007;35(1):64–68.
63. Marik PE, Baram M, Vahid B. Does central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? A systematic review of the literature and the tale of seven mares. Chest 2008;134(1):172–8.
64. Perel A, Pizov R, Cotev S. Respiratory variations in the arterial pressure during mechanical ventilation reflect volume status and fluid responsiveness Intensive care med 2014;40(6):798–807.
65. Cannesson M, Le Manach Y, Hofer CK, et al. Assessing the diagnostic accuracy of pulse pressure variations for the prediction of fluid responsiveness: a “gray zone” approach. Anesthesiology 2011;115(2):231–241.
66. Biais M, Ehrmann S, Mari A, et al. Clinical relevance of pulse pressure variations for predicting fluid

responsiveness in mechanically ventilated intensive care unit patients: the grey zone approach. Crit Care 2014;18(6):587.

67. Preisman S, Kogan S, Berkenstadt H, et al. Predicting fluid responsiveness in patients undergoing cardiac surgery: functional haemodynamic parameters including the Respiratory Systolic Variation Test and static preload indicators. British Journal of Anaesthesia. 2005;95(6):746–755.
68. Rathore A, Singh S, Lamsal R, et al. Validity of pulse pressure variation (PPV) compared with stroke volume variation (SVV) in predicting fluid responsiveness. Turk J Anaesthesiol Reanim 2017;45(4):210–217.
69. Myatra SN, Monnet X, Teboul JL. Use of 'tidal volume challenge' to improve the reliability of pulse pressure variation. Crit Care. 2017;21(1):60.
70. De Backer D, Heenen S, Piagnerelli M, et al. Pulse pressure variations to predict fluid responsiveness: influence of tidal volume. Intensive Care Med. 2005;31(4):517–523.
71. Renner J, Gruenewald M, Quaden R, et al. Influence of increased intra-abdominal pressure on fluid responsiveness predicted by pulse pressure variation and stroke volume variation in a porcine model. Crit Care Med 2009;37(2):650–8.
72. Jacques D, Bendjelid K, Duperret S, et al. Pulse pressure variation and stroke volume variation during increased intra-abdominal pressure: an experimental study. Crit Care 2011;15(1):R33.
73. Diaz F, Erranz B, Donoso A, et al. Influence of tidal volume on pulse pressure variation and stroke volume variation during experimental intra-abdominal hypertension. BMC Anesthesiol. 2015;15:127.
74. Myatra SN, Prabu NR, Divatia JV, et al. The changes in pulse pressure variation or stroke volume variation after a "tidal volume challenge" reliably predict fluid responsiveness during low tidal volume ventilation. Crit Care Med 2017;45(3):415–421.
75. Min JJ, Gil NS, Lee JH, et al. Predictor of fluid responsiveness in the 'grey zone': augmented pulse pressure variation through a temporary increase in tidal volume. Br J Anaesth. 2017;119(1):50–56.
76. Biais M, Nouette-Gaulain K, Cottenceau V, et al. Uncalibrated pulse contour-derived stroke volume variation predicts fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients undergoing liver transplantation. Br J Anaesth 2008;101(6):761–8.
77. Hofer CK, Müller SM, Furrer L, et al. Stroke volume and pulse pressure variation for prediction of fluid responsiveness in patients undergoing off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting. Chest 2005;128(2):848–54.
78. Lefrant JY, De Backer D. Can we use pulse pressure variations to predict fluid responsiveness in patients with ARDS? Intensive Care Med. 2009;35(6):966–8.
79. Lakhal K, Ehrmann S, Benzekri-Lefevre D, et al. Respiratory pulse pressure variation fails to predict fluid responsiveness in acute respiratory distress syndrome. Crit Care. 2011;15(2):R85.
80. Oliveira-Costa CD, Friedman G, Vieira SR, et al. Pulse pressure variation and prediction of fluid responsiveness in patients ventilated with low tidal volumes. Clinics (Sao Paulo). 2012;67(7):773–8.
81. Cannesson M, Attof Y, Rosamel P, et al. Respiratory variations in pulse oximetry plethysmographic waveform amplitude to predict fluid responsiveness in the operating room. Anesthesiology. 2007;106(6):1105–1111.
82. Cannesson M, Desebbe O, Rosamel P, et al. Pleth variability index to monitor the respiratory variations in the pulse oximeter plethysmographic waveform amplitude and predict fluid responsiveness in the operating theatre. Br J Anaesth 2008;101(2):200–6.
83. Desebbe O, Cannesson M. Using ventilation induced plethysmographic variations to optimize patient fluid status. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 2008;21(6):772–8.
84. Keller G, Cassar E, Desebbe O, et al. Ability of pleth variability index to detect hemodynamic changes induced by passive leg raising in spontaneously breathing volunteers. Crit Care 2008;12(2):R37.
85. Cannesson M, Slieker J, Desebbe O, et al. The ability of a novel algorithm for automatic estimation of the respiratory variations in arterial pulse pressure to monitor fluid responsiveness in the operating room. Anesth Analg. 2008;106(4):1195–200.
86. Lu W, Dong J, Xu Z, et al. The pleth variability index as an indicator of the central extracellular fluid volume in mechanically ventilated patients after anesthesia induction: comparison with initial distribution volume of glucose. Med Sci Monit. 2014;20:386–392.
87. Feissel M, Teboul JL, Merlani P, et al. Plethysmographic dynamic indices predict fluid responsiveness in septic ventilated patients. Intensive Care Med 2007;33(6):993–9.
88. Yin JY, Ho KM. Use of plethysmographic variability index derived from the Massimo((R)) pulse oximeter to predict fluid or preload responsiveness: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Anaesthesia. 2012;67(7):777–783.
89. Chu H, Wang Y, Sun Y, et al. Accuracy of pleth variability index to predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Monit Comput. 2015;30(3):265–74.
90. Bahlmann H, Hahn RG, Nilsson L. Pleth variability index or stroke volume optimization during open abdominal surgery: a randomized controlled trial BMC Anesthesiology 2018;18(1):115.
91. Kim DH, Shin S, Kim JY, et al. Pulse pressure variation and pleth variability index as predictors of fluid responsiveness in patients undergoing spinal surgery in the prone position. Therapeutics and Clinical Risk Management 2018;14:1175–1183.
92. Sandroni C, Cavallaro F, Marano C, et al. Accuracy of plethysmographic indices as predictors of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2012;38(9):1429–37.
93. Coeckelenbergh S, Delaporte A, Ghoundiwal D, et al. Pleth variability index versus pulse pressure variation for intraoperative goal-directed fluid

therapy in patients undergoing low to-moderate risk abdominal surgery: a randomized controlled trial. BMC Anesthesiol. 2019;19(1):34.

94. Cesur S, Çardaközü T, Kuş A, et al. Comparison of conventional fluid management with PVI-based goal-directed fluid management in elective colorectal surgery. J Clin Monit Comput. 2019;33(2):249–57.

95. Liu T, Xu C, Wang M, et al. Reliability of pleth variability index in predicting preload responsiveness of mechanically ventilated patients under various conditions: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Anesthesiol. 2019;19(1):67.

96. Biais M, Cottenceau V, Petit L, et al. Impact of norepinephrine on the relationship between pleth variability index and pulse pressure variations in ICU adult patients. Crit Care. 2011;15(4):R168.

97. Monnet X, Guerin L, Jozwiak M, et al. Pleth variability index is a weak predictor of fluid responsiveness in patients receiving norepinephrine. Br J Anaesth. 2013;110(2):207–13.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

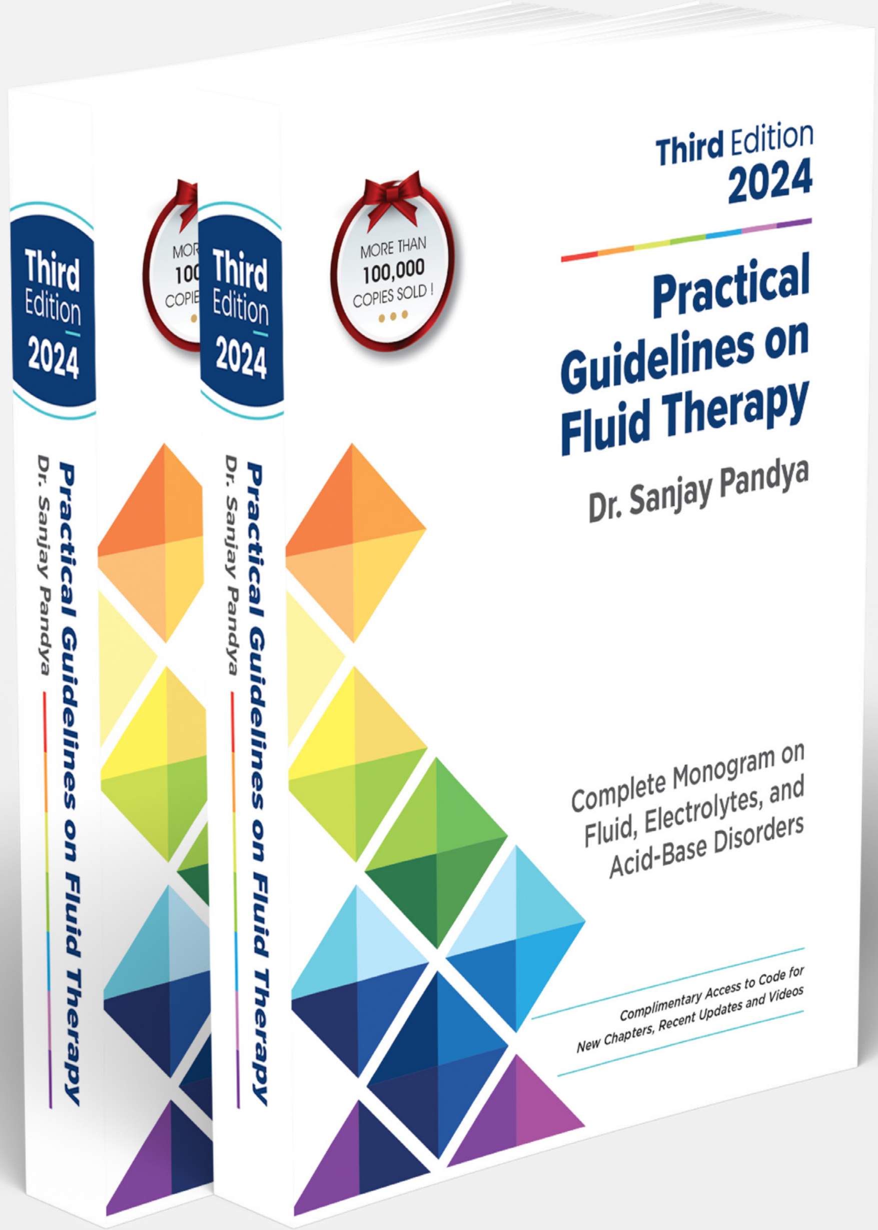
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 19:

Cardiac Output Monitoring


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

19 Cardiac Output Monitoring

Calibrated vs. Uncalibrated Devices **201**
Non-invasive Systems for Cardiac Output Monitoring **203**
  Transthoracic echocardiography .. 203
  Thoracic bioimpedance and bioreactance 204
  Radial artery applanation tonometry 205
  Volume clamp method 205
Minimally Invasive Systems **206**
  Transesophageal echocardiography 206
    Technique 206
    Use 206
    Advantages 206
    Indications 207
    Contraindications 207
    Limitations 207
  Transpulmonary thermodilution 208
    Technique 208
    Use 208
    Advantages 208
    Indications 209
    Limitations 209
  Lithium dilution 209
  Arterial pulse contour analysis 209
  Partial CO_2 rebreathing 210
Invasive Systems **211**
  Pulmonary artery thermodilution ...211
    Intermittent thermodilution technique 211
    Continuous thermodilution technique 212

The accurate measurement of cardiac output (CO) is essential in all high-risk hemodynamically unstable patients.

Several devices for cardiac output measurement are available in the market, which is classified based on invasiveness (Non-invasive, minimally invasive, and invasive systems), the technology used (dilution technique, pulse contour analysis, doppler principle, applied Fick principle bioelectric properties, plethysmographic analysis, etc.), and calibration systems, as summarized (Table 19.1).

CALIBRATED VS. UNCALIBRATED DEVICES

Calibration is the process of comparing an instrument with the known standard. Subsequent adjustment of measured equipment achieves precision and accuracy and produces valid data. In calibrated monitoring devices, the bias in the continuous measurements is reduced or eliminated by calibration [1]. While in non-calibrated monitoring devices, bias is reduced by the pre-programmed correction factors in the monitoring device.

Table 19.1 Hemodynamic monitoring systems

Methods	Requirements	Calibration	Devices
1. Non-invasive systems			
Transthoracic echocardiography	Thoracic echo probe	Calibrated	US, Echo
Bioimpedance or bioreactance	Specific cutaneous electrodes	Non-calibrated	BioZ Dx ECOM NICOM (Cheetah)
Radial applanation tonometry	Pressure sensor over the radial artery	Non-calibrated	T-line
Volume clamp method	Finger pressure cuff	Non-calibrated	CNAP Clearsight/Nexfin
Ultrasound cardiac output	Transthoracic doppler probe	Non-calibrated	USCOM
Plethysmographic variability index	Specific transcutaneous probe	Non-calibrated	MASSIMO
2. Minimally invasive systems			
Transesophageal echocardiography	Esophageal probe	Calibrated	Cardio Q WAKI TO
Transpulmonary thermodilution	Thermistor-tipped arterial catheter Central venous line	Calibrated	PiCCO VolumeView EV 1000
Lithium dilution	Arterial catheter Central venous line	Calibrated	LiDCO LiDCO Plus PulseCO
Arterial pulse contour analysis	Arterial catheter	Calibrated	PiCCO Plus LiDCO Plus
		Non-calibrated	Flotrac/Vigileo LiDCO rapid PRAM/MostCare ProAQT/PulsioFlex
Partial CO_2 rebreathing	Rebreathing circuit	Non-calibrated	NiCO
3. Invasive systems			
Pulmonary thermodilution	Pulmonary artery catheter Central venous line	Calibrated	Swan-Ganz pulmonary artery catheter

Cardiac output monitoring systems are divided into two groups, calibrated and uncalibrated devices, depending on the method of calibration [1, 2]. Cardiac output monitoring systems based on non-calibrated analysis have been emerging as the preferred modality in the last few years because of their minimally invasive nature and no need for calibration, usual independence from mechanical ventilation, and ease of use in practice [3]. Uncalibrated systems are used selectively in hemodynamically stable patients requiring cardiac output monitoring for a short period, e.g., during surgery [4]. Because of more accuracy and precision, calibrated techniques are preferred over uncalibrated methods in severely shocked hemodynamic unstable patients [2].

NON-INVASIVE SYSTEMS FOR CARDIAC OUTPUT MONITORING

Non-invasive techniques commonly used for measuring cardiac output are transthoracic echocardiography, thoracic electrical bioimpedance, thoracic bioreactance, applanation tonometry, and volume clamp method.

A. Transthoracic echocardiography

Measuring and monitoring cardiac output is valuable for diagnosing and managing critically ill patients. The trend to use transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) for the prompt measurement of cardiac output is increasing because it is a readily available, reproducible, and non-invasive, bedside method [5, 6].

In early literature, in stable patients, TTE was found to be accurate compared to the standard PA thermodilution technique [7–9], but in critically ill patients, predictability was found to be limited [10, 11].

With technological advancements, the ability of TTE to acquire high-quality images of critically ill patients improved [12, 13], and literature supporting the use of TTE to manage critical patients emerged [14–17].

Simultaneously, emerging literature supports the use of echocardiography for the measurement of cardiac output and its role in hemodynamic optimization [18–21].

In current literature, TTE is documented as a reliable, accurate, and highly valuable method to measure cardiac output, which provides rapid and vital diagnostic information and thereby guides clinicians for a wiser therapeutic strategy [6, 22–25].

Recent literature also documented that cardiac output measurement by transthoracic echocardiography was comparable to cardiac output measured by a pulmonary artery catheter thermodilution (TD) technique. Due to its wide availability, great potential to guide therapy, and noninvasive nature, TTE has become a routine and standard practice for bedside cardiac output measurement in the management of critical patients [26, 27].

How to measure and calculate cardiac output by TTE?

Parameters determined for the calculation of cardiac output by TTE are:

- Left ventricular outflow tract velocity time integral (LVOT VTI): Velocity-time integral (VTI) is measured by pulsed wave doppler signal, most commonly at the level of the left outflow tract (LVOT) obtained in the apical 5 chamber view. LVOT-VTI reflects the column of blood that moves through the left ventricle (LV) outflow tract during each systole; therefore, it is a TTE parameter representing stroke volume.
- Cross-sectional area (CSA): Measure the diameter of the LVOT in the parasternal long axis view in systole and calculate the area of the circle.
- Heart rate (HR).

Calculation of cardiac output: After obtaining the above parameters by TTE, cardiac output is calculated with the formula below:

Cardiac Output = Stroke Volume × HR

Cardiac Output =
[LVOT VTI × LVOT CSA)] × HR

To measure cardiac output precisely, averaging three measurements within one TTE examination is recommended in patients with sinus rhythm, and averaging five measurements is necessary for patients with atrial fibrillation [28].

Limitations of TTE are:

- Accuracy is highly dependent on an operator, so the possibility of inter-and intra-observer variability. But even non-cardiologist ICU physicians, after brief training, can accurately estimate cardiac output by TTE [23].
- The probe's position needs to be very accurate, and errors in position can lead to misinterpretations.
- The accuracy of TTE to measure cardiac output is unreliable in patients with high cardiac output, low sedation, or with physiological structural changes.
- TTE provides only intermittent and not continuous cardiac output measurements.

TTE, in addition to calculating cardiac output, measures inferior vena cava diameter and left ventricular size, identifies wall motion abnormalities, and assesses left and right ventricular function. By providing this information, TTE improves diagnostic accuracy, narrows the possible differential diagnosis of shock, and achieves volume status optimization. Small LV size, hyperdynamic LV (left ventricular end-diastolic area in the parasternal short axis view <10 cm2), or papillary apposition (kissing ventricles) are strongly indicative of hypovolemia and predicts fluid responsiveness [29, 30]. Papillary apposition can be false positive in LVH, vasodilatation and high inotropes.

B. Thoracic electrical bioimpedance and bioreactance

1. Thoracic bioimpedance

Thoracic electrical bioimpedance (TEB) is a non-invasive method to continuously estimate cardiac output using pairs of high-frequency but low-voltage disposable electrodes placed on either side of the neck and the lateral aspect of the chest wall.

The fluid offers less resistance to electric flow. A greater volume of blood column during each systole will work as a larger electrical contrast medium, lowering the electrical impedance. This principle is used to calculate stroke volume [31].

A series of signals from sensing electrodes will travels through the thorax and will continuously and accurately measures the cyclic changes in thoracic electrical impedance, which occurs due to changes in intrathoracic blood volume with each heartbeat. Based on these changes in electrical impedance, cardiac output is calculated.

The reliability of TEB is poor in the exact measurement of cardiac output in surgical and critically ill patients [32, 33].

However, as TEB measures cardiac output continuously and non-invasively, its use is rapidly increasing as a bedside cardiac output trend analysis monitor [34, 35].

Thoracic bioimpedance is a simple, easy-to-use, totally safe, and low-cost method that provides rapid, real-time, continuous, and automated cardiac output monitoring. Various factors that can affect the measurement of cardiac output by this method are electrical interference, cardiac arrhythmias, pleural effusions, pulmonary edema, chest tubes, internal or external pacemakers, or patient movement.

2. Thoracic bioreactance

Thoracic bioreactance is a modified, improved bioimpedance technology which measures time delay called a phase shift in alternating current voltage across the thorax rather than changes in impedance.

Electrodes applied on either side of the chest detect phase shifts, which almost exclusively depend on pulsatile flow (e.g., blood flow) but are less affected by static fluids (e.g., intravascular and extravascular fluids), electrical noise, patient movement, electrode positioning, and respiratory effort. In addition, because of newer technology-related improvements in the signal-to-noise ratio, bioreactance is theoretically superior to bioimpedance [36].

Thoracic bioreactance is found to be a reliable technique to measure cardiac output in many studies (but not in all studies) [37–41]. In a recent meta-analysis of the accuracy and precision of non-invasive cardiac output monitoring devices, percentage errors were 42% for bioimpedance and bioreactance [42].

Applanation tonometry and volume clamp method

Radial artery applanation tonometry and volume clamp method are two non-invasive uncalibrated techniques that provide continuous blood pressure monitoring and real-time cardiac output from the pulse contour analysis.

C. Radial artery applanation tonometry

In this method, the transducer is strapped over the radial artery with a bone underneath. Optimal pressure is adjusted to flatten the artery, and using an electromechanically driven sensor; continuous arterial pressure waveform is recorded. Then, cardiac output is estimated with the help of autocalibrating pulse contour analysis.

As this novel method is extremely easy to use, and its initial clinical data are promising, it is an attractive alternative to measure cardiac output in practice [43, 44]. However, evidence suggests that this method is not suitable for measuring cardiac output in hemodynamically unstable critically ill patients [45–47].

D. Volume clamp method

In this technique, a non-invasive pulse oximeter using finger cuff devices continuously measures cardiac output and finger arterial blood pressure in addition to peripheral oxygen saturation [48].

This method is an extension of conventional photoplethysmography whereby using an inflatable cuff at the finger, the digital arterial waveform is obtained. With a photodiode device, the diameter of the artery in the finger is measured. By adjusting the pressure in the cuff, the diameter of the artery is kept constant during pressure waveform analysis. Arterial pressure waveform is continuously recorded from the pressure changes in the cuff, and cardiac output is calculated.

This simple and convenient method for cardiac monitoring is promising in surgical and non-critical cases [49–51], but its use is discouraged in obese, cardiac surgery, and ICU patients because of poor accuracy [52–57].

This method is not suitable for patients with gross peripheral edema or severe peripheral vasoconstriction.

MINIMALLY INVASIVE AND INVASIVE SYSTEMS FOR CARDIAC OUTPUT MONITORING

Minimally invasive and invasive methods for cardiac output monitoring are used in hemodynamically unstable patients in intensive care and perioperative medicine when initial resuscitation measures fail to improve the patient's hemodynamic and/or respiratory status. Accurate measurement of cardiac output with advanced hemodynamic monitoring will guide appropriate management with fluid resuscitation, vasopressors, or inotropic agents.

MINIMALLY INVASIVE SYSTEMS

Minimally invasive techniques commonly used for measuring cardiac output are transesophageal echocardiography, transpulmonary thermodilution, arterial pulse contour analysis, and partial CO2 rebreathing [58].

A. Transesophageal echocardiographic

Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is a minimally invasive technique to measure cardiac output. This method is widely used for diagnosing and monitoring critical and perioperative patients.

Technique

In TEE ultrasonic probe is placed into the esophagus under sedation. Placement of the TEE probe is similar to the insertion of a nasogastric tube, and the depth of the tube inserted in the esophagus is to place the tip of the probe at descending thoracic aorta level (between the fifth and sixth intercostal space), which will be roughly 35–45 cm mark on the probe.

TEE probe obtains a doppler flow signal and measures the blood velocity in the descending thoracic aorta. From different data obtained, such as heart rate, peak velocity, flow time corrected (FTc), and others, hemodynamic monitor derives cardiac output, Stroke volume, and systemic vascular resistance.

The use of TEE is expanding with growing technology [59]. In addition to standard 2D technology, TEE probes are available with different modalities such as doppler, pulse wave doppler, continuous wave doppler, color flow doppler, and 3D echocardiography.

Use

TEE plays a vital role in the management of perioperative and critical patients by providing valuable diagnostic and therapeutic information such as:

- Assessment of the volume status (detects hypovolemia early or excludes volume overload).
- Serve as a dynamic parameter to assess fluid responsiveness and guides clinicians for fluid management (i.e., goal-directed fluid therapy).
- Measures cardiac output, detects ventricular dysfunction, and diagnose coexisting problems like valvular structural and functional abnormalities, pericardial effusion, and cardiac tamponade.

The results of studies about the reliability of TEE in predicting cardiac output were conflicting [60, 61]. However, in a recent systematic review and meta-analysis, cardiac output measurement by TEE was accurate [27].

Advantages

Different advantages of TEE are:

- Provides superior quality image, accurate assessment of heart and great vessels, and greater diagnostic accuracy than transthoracic echocardiography because the probe is much closer to the heart, and bone and lung tissue do not interfere with imaging [62].
- As the TEE probe is just adjacent to posterior cardiac structures, TEE provides its superior quality image. On the contrary, the point of examination of the TTE transducer is more distant from the posterior

cardiac structures, i.e., at the anterior aspect of the chest. Therefore its visualization by TTE is poor.

- TEE monitoring does not disturb the surgical field and ensures continuous imaging in all stages of surgery [63].
- TEE is less dependent on the operator than TTE.

Indications

As TEE provides valuable information about several structural, functional, and hemodynamic parameters, its use is gaining popularity. But TEE is a semi-invasive method and therefore is used selectively when TTE cannot provide the required information, and the potential benefits of TEE outweigh the possible risks. Common indications of TEE are [62, 64–66]:

a. Intraoperative/Perioperative

TEE is indicated in high-risk surgical patients (e.g., significant coronary artery disease or poor cardiac status), patients with a risk of intraoperative hemodynamic instability (e.g., major vascular or abdominal surgery), major cardiac surgery like the repair of congenital heart lesions, repair of valvular lesions or thoracic aortic procedures, and as a rescue TEE in unexpected or unexplained hemodynamic unstable patients.

TEE monitoring and TEE-guided optimization of fluid administration improve outcomes, reduce postoperative complications, and shorten hospital stay in patients undergoing major or high-risk surgery [67–69].

b. Critically ill patients

TEE is useful in hemodynamically unstable critically ill patients because it calculates cardiac output, provides excellent visualization of cardiac structures, and is less dependent on the operator. TEE is used selectively in sedated ICU patients, usually on a mechanical ventilator [70]:

- For the assessment of unexplained persistent hypotension or hypoxemia when TTE or other modalities cannot obtain diagnostic information.
- For assessing volume status and cardiac output during fluid administration when no other hemodynamic monitoring systems are available.

c. Diagnostic modality

TEE is useful in diagnosing wall motion abnormalities, pericardial effusion, pulmonary hypertension, potential cardiac source of embolus, assessing valves for endocarditis, or excluding thrombi in patients with atrial fibrillation.

Contraindications

TEE's potential contraindications are previous esophagectomy, tracheoesophageal fistula, postesophageal surgery, esophageal trauma, esophageal pathologies such as varices, diverticulum, stricture or tumor; coagulopathy, thrombocytopenia, upper gastrointestinal bleeding, and hiatus hernia [70, 71].

Limitations

Although TEE is more useful than TTE, it is used in selected indications and not used routinely. TEE is used more frequently in the operating theater than in the ICU [72]. Limitations of TEE are:

- The minimally invasive technique (usually needs tracheal intubation, under sedation).
- Do not calculate cardiac output continuously compared to other hemodynamic monitoring devices, such as the pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) or transpulmonary thermodilution.
- Movement of the patient can change the position of the probe, and repositioning becomes necessary.
- Higher cost, time-consuming method (compared to TTE), can be performed

only on one patient at a time and needs cleaning and disinfection after each use.

- Do not measure blood pressure, so critical patients need an additional device for continuous blood pressure measurement.

B. Transpulmonary thermodilution

Transpulmonary thermodilution (TPTD) is a minimally invasive technique (requires two catheters, a central venous catheter, and an arterial line), which is considered a new gold standard in measuring cardiac output [2, 73]. This advanced diagnostic modality using two distinct techniques, transpulmonary thermodilution and pulse contour analysis, provides continuous cardiac output measurements.

Technique

A bolus of a cold solution of known temperature is injected rapidly into the superior vena cava through an internal jugular or subclavian central venous catheter. The injected solution will mix with blood and traverse through the right heart chambers, pulmonary circulation, and finally, through the left heart chambers reaches the systemic artery.

An arterial cannula placed in a large peripheral artery (femoral, axillary, or brachial artery) with a thermistor tip will sense and measure the drop in blood temperature across the cardiopulmonary system [74]. Temperature fall between the injection site and measurement site is inversely proportional to cardiac output. Using a change in blood temperature over time, computer software plots a thermodilution curve and calculates cardiac output and other relevant hemodynamic parameters.

Calculation of cardiac output by transpulmonary thermodilution intermittently calibrates pulse contour analysis, and therefore TPTD provides precise, continuous, and real-time measurement of cardiac output by taking advantage of both techniques [74].

Use

Valuable information provided by TPTD is [74]:

- Cardiac output: TPTD calculates cardiac output and stroke volume by analyzing an arterial pulse contour waveform. TPTD is a reliable method for the continuous and real-time monitoring of cardiac output [75]. This method also measures stroke volume variation (SVV)/PVV and predicts fluid responsiveness [76].
- TPTD is also helpful in measuring various parameters such as, global end-diastolic volume, cardiac function index and global ejection fraction, extravascular lung water index, pulmonary vascular permeability index, which helps in assessment of volume status [74, 77–82].

Advantages

Transpulmonary thermodilution is used more frequently and has replaced the conventional intermittent thermodilution (TD) method through PAC to calculate cardiac output because:

- TPTD method is less invasive and avoids PAC-related serious complications [74].
- TPTD measures cardiac output with the same accuracy and is interchangeable with PAC thermodilution [83–86].
- It provides continuous and real-time monitoring of cardiac output in contrast to intermittent measurement by the conventional TD method.
- Provides robust support in the therapeutic management of hemodynamically unstable patients by

providing several additional information such as measurement of SVV and pulse pressure variation (PPV) to predict fluid responsiveness, calculates extravascular lung water to quantify pulmonary edema, and estimates lung permeability to quantify the pulmonary leak [82].

Indications

This advanced but invasive hemodynamic monitoring is indicated over less invasive devices in selected most critically ill and/or complex patients such as:

- Perioperatively, during complex cardiac and prolonged major surgery.
- During major liver surgery, when less invasive techniques are unreliable [87].
- In ICU patients with severe shock, especially with acute respiratory distress syndrome, and high or increasing requirements of vasopressors [4, 72]. In ICU patients with severe shock, especially with acute respiratory distress syndrome, and high or increasing requirements of vasopressors [4, 72].

Limitations

- It is an invasive method that needs the placement of a central venous line and a large arterial line.
- This method does not provide information such as PA pressure and SvO_2 (unlike the PA thermodilution method).
- Needs manual calibration with cold water.
- It provides inaccurate measurements in patients with very low cardiac output (<2 L/min) [74].
- Unable to detect short-term hemodynamic changes induced by ventilation during passive leg raising or end-expiratory occlusion tests [74].

C. Lithium dilution

The lithium dilution technique is a minimally invasive method that measures cardiac output based on indicator dilution principles [88].

In this modality, a small dose of lithium is injected via any vein (peripheral vein or central), and a lithium-selective sensor connected to any peripheral arterial line (e.g., radial artery) measures the concentration of lithium ions in the arterial blood [89]. The lithium dilution curve (lithium concentration vs. time) is constructed, and cardiac output is derived from this data.

Lithium dilution is a less invasive method than transpulmonary thermodilution. It is performed using peripheral venous and arterial cannulation and, therefore, is without the risks of the pulmonary artery or central venous catheterization [90]. This method can measure cardiac output accurately [91].

Lithium is selected as an indicator for this dilution technique because this element is not found in the bloodstream; it is non-diffusible; a small dose is non-toxic but generates a plasma concentration that can be measured.

Lithium is not lost during the first pass in pulmonary circulation, so its assessment provides reliable value. Additionally, lithium is cleared rapidly from systemic circulation [92].

Avoid this technique during pregnancy and in patients weighing less than 40 kg, receiving lithium therapy, or high doses of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers [93].

D. Arterial pulse contour analysis

Arterial pulse contour analysis is a commonly used minimally invasive technique for continuous, beat-to-beat cardiac output measurement. Based on it, a computerized algorithm measures cardiac output.

In addition to cardiac output, arterial pulse contour analysis also calculates dynamic parameters such as pulse pressure variation and stroke volume variation, which is helpful for determining fluid responsiveness [4].

Several commercially available devices use pulse contour wave analysis for the continuous measurement of cardiac output and stroke volume. These devices are broadly divided into two groups, the calibrated (PiCCO Plus and LiDCO plus) and the uncalibrated systems (FloTrac/Vigileo and LiDCO rapid), as summarized in Table 19.1.

The advantages of the pulse contour analysis method are:

- Less invasive compared to cardiac output measurement by pulmonary artery catheter and transpulmonary thermodilution, as it requires only a peripheral arterial catheter (usually the radial artery).
- Easy method: An arterial line is frequently inserted in ICU so existing access can be utilized for pulse contour analysis.
- Continuously and real-time measurement of cardiac output.
- Effectively monitor volume responsiveness. In addition to the accurate measurement of stroke volume, cardiac output, and CI, pulse contour analysis also calculates dynamic indexes such as pulse pressure variation and stroke volume variation. These parameters help to determine response to a fluid challenge, passive leg raising, or end-expiratory occlusion in patients on a ventilator [4, 76].
- Operator independent and needs minimal training.

Limitations of arterial pulse contour wave analysis are:

- It is a less accurate technique in critically ill patients with low SVR (sepsis and chronic liver failure) [94], left ventricular dysfunction [95], norepinephrine infusion [96], in open aortic abdominal aneurysm repair [97], and off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery [98].
- An accuracy of PCA is low in patients with spontaneous breathing, cardiac arrhythmias, low tidal volume ventilation, positive-end expiratory pressure <5 mmHg, or abnormal abdominal pressure [99].
- Data suggesting that this device improve patient outcome are lacking [100, 101].
- This method is less reliable than the transpulmonary thermodilution technique in septic patients [102].
- The uncalibrated systems need frequent recalibration in patients with hemodynamic instability or requiring vasoactive drugs.

E. Partial CO_2 rebreathing

Partial CO_2 Rebreathing is a minimally invasive technique which uses indirect Fick's principle to calculate cardiac output [103]. This method can be used only in intubated, sedated patients on volume-controlled ventilation who are hemodynamically stable.

This technique is easy to use, safe, does not require a PAC, can be repeated every few minutes without substantial risk of CO_2 accumulation, and provides almost continuous cardiac output measurements.

This technique's accuracy and precision are similar to esophageal doppler ultrasound, pulse contour analysis, and thoracic bioimpedance [33].

Currently, this technique is mainly focused on short-term intraoperative applications or mechanically ventilated postoperative patients [104].

This modality is not used routinely in ICU because its predictability is poor in common problems in critical patients like hemodynamic instability, anemia, or significant pulmonary disease (such as acute respiratory distress syndrome, pneumonia, atelectasis, shunting, etc.). Additionally, it does not provide information about the intravascular volume status or fluid responsiveness [105].

Avoid using this technique in patients with severe hypercapnia, raised intracranial pressure, or pulmonary hypertension because arterial CO_2 tension rises transiently in the rebreathing period, which may be harmful [106].

INVASIVE SYSTEMS

Pulmonary artery thermodilution is an invasive technique frequently used for hemodynamic monitoring.

Pulmonary artery thermodilution

Cardiac output measured invasively with the pulmonary artery using the thermodilution principle is traditionally considered as a gold standard method [107]. Modalities to measure cardiac output by pulmonary thermodilution (TD) are divided into two types: intermittent bolus and continuous cardiac output methods.

1. Intermittent thermodilution using the "bolus" technique

In the bolus technique of pulmonary thermodilution, about 10 ml of cold saline solution is injected via the proximal lumen of PAC in the right atrium. Cold saline mixes adequately with surrounding blood while traversing from the right atrium to the pulmonary artery (by passing through two valves and a right ventricle), which decreases blood temperature transiently. A thermistor on the tip of the PAC senses and measures changes in the blood temperature over time at a downstream side in the pulmonary artery [84].

The fall in the temperature is inversely proportional to the blood flow and cardiac output. Electronic monitors calculate cardiac output using a modified Stewart–Hamilton equation [108]. Usually, three measurements are performed and averaged to obtain a more reliable result [109].

Major advantages of the pulmonary artery thermodilution method are:

- Uses thermal energy (i.e., cold water) as an indicator which is non-toxic.
- Repeated measurement of cardiac output is safe, provided there is no constraint to administer the fluid.
- No requirement for manual calibration.
- The major advantage of this technique is that it provides an additional measurement of hemodynamic parameters such as pulmonary artery pressures, right-sided and left-sided filling pressures, and mixed venous oxyhemoglobin saturation (SvO_2).

Major limitations of the pulmonary artery thermodilution method are:

- The technique is invasive, so it carries the risk associated with placement and presence of a PAC, such as infection, pulmonary artery rupture, arrhythmias on insertion, thrombosis, and embolism [110].
- Fail to detect abrupt changes in cardiac output promptly because this technique measures cardiac output with some delay [107].
- Error in measuring cardiac output in the presence of low cardiac output,

hypothermia, shunts, and cardiac valvular abnormalities.

- Error in measuring cardiac output in the presence of low cardiac output, hypothermia, shunts, and cardiac valvular abnormalities [111].
- Poor predictor of fluid responsiveness [112].
- Need to avoid magnetic resonance imaging as well as the use of electrocautery in patients with PAC.

2. Continuous thermodilution technique

Commercially available catheters with newer technologies now provide continuous cardiac output monitoring. This method uses the same thermodilution principles but uses a warmed bolus rather than a cold bolus [113].

This special catheter has a special blood-warming thermal filament or coil at the level of the right ventricle. Thermal filament heats the blood in a semi-random binary fashion. The thermistor at the tip of the PAC records changes in temperature and calculates the cardiac output by thermodilution.

This method's major benefits are a continuous display of cardiac output, avoidance of repeated boluses (which reduces the risk of infection), and avoids operator errors [114].

Details about pulmonary artery catheters, including description, insertion technique, use in clinical practice, indications, and complications, are covered in the pulmonary artery catheter monitoring part of the Chapter 17 on "Static Hemodynamic Monitoring Techniques."

REFERENCES

1. Peeters Y, Bernards J, Mekeirele M, et al. Hemodynamic monitoring: To calibrate or not to calibrate? Part 1 - Calibrated techniques. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2015;47(5):487–500.
2. Bernards J, Mekeirele M, Hoffmann B, et al. Hemodynamic monitoring: to calibrate or not to calibrate? Part 2 - Non-calibrated techniques. Anaesthesiology Intensive Ther. 2015;47(5):501–516.
3. Sakka SG. Hemodynamic monitoring in the critically ill patient – current status and perspective. Front Med (Lausanne). 2015;3;2:44.
4. Teboul JL, Saugel B, Cecconi M, et al. Less invasive hemodynamic monitoring in critically ill patients. Intensive Care Med. 2016;42(9):1350–9.
5. Ayuela Azcarate JM, Clau Terré F, Ochagavia A, et al. Role of echocardiography in the hemodynamic monitorization of critical patients. Med Intensiva. 2012;36(3):220–232.
6. Kiefer JJ, Raiten J, Gutsche J. Point-of-care transthoracic echocardiography: a growing body of evidence, an educational need J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2020;34(1):97–98.
7. Schuster AH, Nanda NC. Doppler echocardiographic measurement of cardiac output: comparison with a non-golden standard. Am J Cardiol 1984;53(1):257–259.
8. Evangelista A, Garcia-Dorado D, Del Castillo H. Cardiac index quantification by Doppler ultrasound in patients without left ventricular outflow tract abnormalities. J Am Coll Cardiol 1995;25(3):710–716.
9. Axler O, Megarbane B, Lentschener C. Comparison of cardiac output measured with echocardiographic volumes and aortic Doppler methods during mechanical ventilation. Intensive Care Med 2003;29(2):208–217.
10. Vignon P, Mentec H, Terre S. Diagnostic accuracy and therapeutic impact of transthoracic and transesophageal echocardiography in mechanically ventilated patients in the ICU. Chest 1994;106(6):1829–1834.
11. Mayer SA, Sherman D, Fink ME. Noninvasive monitoring of cardiac output by Doppler echocardiography in patients treated with volume expansion after subarachnoid hemorrhage. Crit Care Med 1995;23(9):1470–1474.
12. Bergenzaun L, Gudmundsson P, Ohlin H, et al. Assessing left ventricular systolic function in shock: evaluation of echocardiographic parameters in intensive care. Crit Care. 2011;15(4):R200.
13. Dinh VA, Ko HS, Rao R, et al. Measuring cardiac index with a focused cardiac ultrasound examination in the ED. Am J Emerg Med. 2012;30(9):1845–51.
14. Mayo PH, Beaulieu Y, Doelken P. American College of Chest Physicians/La Société de Réanimation de Langue Française statement on competence in critical care ultrasonography. Chest 2009;135(4):1050–1060.
15. Expert Round Table on Ultrasound in ICU. International expert statement on standards for critical care ultrasonography. Intensive Care Med 2011;37(7):1077–1083.
16. Kanji HD, McCallum J, Sirounis D, et al. Limited echocardiography-guided therapy in subacute shock is associated with change in management and improved outcomes. J Crit Care 2014;29(5):700–5.

17. Orde S, Slama M, Hilton A, et al. Pearls and pitfalls in comprehensive critical care echocardiography. Crit Care 2017;21(1):279.
18. Marcelino P, Germano N, Marum S, et al. Hemodynamic parameters obtained by transthoracic echocardiography and Swan-Ganz catheter: a comparative study in liver transplant patients. Acta Med Port. 2006;19(3):197–205.
19. Tchorz KM, Chandra MS, Markert RJ, et al. Comparison of hemodynamic measurements from invasive and noninvasive monitoring during early resuscitation. J Trauma Acute Care Surg. 2012;72(4):852–60.
20. Gassner M, Killu K, Bauman Z, et al. Feasibility of common carotid artery point of care ultrasound in cardiac output measurements compared to invasive methods. J Ultrasound. 2014;18(2):127–33.
21. Olivieri PP, Patel R, Kolb S, et al. Echo is a good, not perfect, measure of cardiac output in critically ill surgical patients. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 2019;87(2):379–85.
22. Villavicencio C, Leache J, Marin J, et al. Basic critical care echocardiography training of intensivists allows reproducible and reliable measurements of cardiac output. Ultrasound J 2019;11:5.
23. Bergamaschi V, Vignazia GL, Messina A, et al. Transthoracic echocardiographic assessment of cardiac output in mechanically ventilated critically ill patients by intensive care unit physicians. Rev Bras Anestesiol. 2019;69(1):20–26.
24. Zarragoikoetxea I, Vicente R, Pajares A, et al. Quantitative transthoracic echocardiography of the response to dobutamine in cardiac surgery patients with low cardiac surgery output syndrome. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 2020;34(1):87–96.
25. Martin ND, Codner P, Greene W, et al. Contemporary hemodynamic monitoring, fluid responsiveness, volume optimization, and endpoints of resuscitation: an AAST critical care committee clinical consensus. Trauma Surg Acute Care Open 2020;5(1):e000411.
26. Gorrasi J, Pazos A, Florio L, et al. Cardiac output measured by transthoracic echocardiography and Swan-Ganz catheter. A comparative study in mechanically ventilated patients with high positive end-expiratory pressure. Rev Bras Ter Intensiva. 2019;31(4):474–482.
27. Zhang Y, Wang Y, Shi J, et al. Cardiac output measurements via echocardiography versus thermodilution: A systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS ONE 2019;14(10):e0222105.
28. Jozwiak M, Mercado P, Teboul J, et al. What is the lowest change in cardiac output that transthoracic echocardiography can detect? Crit Care 2019;23(1):116.
29. Leung JM, Levine EH. Left ventricular end-systolic cavity obliteration as an estimate of intraoperative hypovolemia. Anesthesiology. 1994;81(5):1102–1109.
30. Mok KL. Make it SIMPLE: enhanced shock management by focused cardiac ultrasound. J Intensive Care. 2016;4:51.
31. Jakovljevic DG, Trenell MI, MacGowan GA. Bioimpedance and bioreactance methods for monitoring cardiac output. Best Practice & Research Clinical Anaesthesiology. 2014;28(4):381–394.
32. Nguyen LS, Squara P. Non-Invasive Monitoring of Cardiac Output in Critical Care Medicine. Front Med (Lausanne). 2017;4:200.
33. Peyton PJ, Chong SW. Minimally invasive measurement of cardiac output during surgery and critical care: a meta-analysis of accuracy and precision. Anesthesiology 2010;113(5):1220–1235.
34. Critchley LAH, Huang L, Zhang J. Continuous Cardiac Output Monitoring: What Do Validation Studies Tell Us? Curr Anesthesiol Rep 2014;4:242–250.
35. Harford M, Clark SH, Smythe JF, et al. Non-invasive stroke volume estimation by transthoracic electrical bioimpedance versus Doppler echocardiography in healthy volunteers, Journal of Medical Engineering & Technology 2019;43(1):33–37.
36. Saugel B, Cecconi M, Wagner JY, et al. Noninvasive continuous cardiac output monitoring in perioperative and intensive care medicine. Br J Anaesth 2015;114(4):562–575.
37. Squara P, Denjean D, Estagnasie P, et al. Noninvasive cardiac output monitoring (NICOM): a clinical validation. Intensive Care Med 2007;33(7):1191–1194.
38. Marik PE, Levitov A, Young A, et al. The use of bioreactance and carotid Doppler to determine volume responsiveness and blood flow redistribution following passive leg raising in hemodynamically unstable patients. Chest 2013;143(2):364–370.
39. Han S, Lee JH, Kim G, et al. Bioreactance Is Not Interchangeable with Thermodilution for Measuring Cardiac Output during Adult Liver Transplantation. PLoS One 2015;10(5):e0127981.
40. Jones TW, Houghton D, Cassidy S, et al. Bioreactance is a reliable method for estimating cardiac output at rest and during exercise. Br J Anaesth. 2015;115(3):386–91.
41. Galarza L, Mercado P, Teboul JL, et al. Estimating the rapid hemodynamic effects of passive leg raising in critically ill patients using bioreactance. Br J Anaesth 2018;121(3):567–573.
42. Joosten A, Desebbe O, Suehiro K, et al. Accuracy and precision of noninvasive cardiac output monitoring devices in perioperative medicine: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Anaesth 2017;118(3):298–310.
43. Saugel B, Meidert AS, Langwieser N, et al. An autocalibrating algorithm for non-invasive cardiac output determination based on the analysis of an arterial pressure waveform recorded with radial artery applanation tonometry: a proof of concept pilot analysis. J Clin Monit Comput 2014;28(4):357–362.
44. Wagner JY, Sarwari H, Schön G, et al. Radial artery applanation tonometry for continuous noninvasive cardiac output measurement: A comparison with intermittent pulmonary artery thermodilution in patients after cardiothoracic surgery. Crit Care Med. 2015;43(7):1423–1428.

45. Compton F, Wittrock M, Schaefer JH, et al. Noninvasive cardiac output determination using applanation tonometry-derived radial artery pulse contour analysis in critically ill patients. Anesth Analg. 2008;106(1):171–4.
46. Wagner JY, Langemann M, Schön G, et al. Autocalibrating pulse contour analysis based on radial artery applanation tonometry for continuous non-invasive cardiac output monitoring in intensive care unit patients after major gastrointestinal surgery—A prospective method comparison study. Anaesthesia and intensive care 2016;44(3):340–345.
47. Gonzalez-Represas A, Mourot L. Stroke volume and cardiac output measurement in cardiac patients during a rehabilitation program: comparison between tonometry, impedancemetry and echocardiography. Int J Cardiovasc Imaging. 2020;36(3):447–455.
48. Bartels K, Thiele RH. Advances in photoplethysmography: beyond arterial oxygen saturation. Can J Anaesth. 2015;62(12):1313–28.
49. Broch O, Renner J, Gruenewald M, et al. A comparison of the Nexfin(R) and transcardiopulmonary thermodilution to estimate cardiac output during coronary artery surgery. Anaesthesia 2012;67(4):377–383.
50. Chen G, Meng L, Alexander B, et al. Comparison of noninvasive cardiac output measurements using the Nexfin monitoring device and the esophageal Doppler. J Clin Anesth 2012;24(4):275–283.
51. Pour-Ghaz I, Manolukas T, Foray N, et al. Accuracy of non-invasive and minimally invasive hemodynamic monitoring: where do we stand? Ann Transl Med. 2019;7(17):421.
52. Schraverus P, Kuijpers MM, Coumou J, et al. Level of agreement between cardiac output measurements using Nexfin® and thermodilution in morbidly obese patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery Anaesthesia 2016;71(12):1449–1455.
53. Fischer MO, Avram R, Cârjaliu I, et al. Non-invasive continuous arterial pressure and cardiac index monitoring with Nexfin after cardiac surgery. Br J Anaesth 2012;109(4):514–21.
54. Monnet X, Picard F, Lidzborski E, et al. The estimation of cardiac output by the Nexfin device is of poor reliability for tracking the effects of a fluid challenge. Crit Care 2012;16(5):R212.
55. Fischer MO, Coucoravas J, Truong J, et al. Assessment of changes in cardiac index and fluid responsiveness: a comparison of Nexfin and transpulmonary thermodilution Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2013;57(6):704–712.
56. Taton O, Fagnoul D, De Backer D, et al. Evaluation of cardiac output in intensive care using a non-invasive arterial pulse contour technique (Nexfin((R))) compared with echocardiography. Anaesthesia 2013;68(9):917–923.
57. Fischera MO, Joosten A, Desebbe O, et al. Interchangeability of cardiac output measurements between non-invasive photoplethysmography and bolus thermodilution: A systematic review and individual patient data meta-analysis Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med. 2020;39(1):75–85.
58. Click RL, Abel MD, Schaff HV. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography: 5-year prospective review of impact on surgical management. Mayo Clinic Proceeding 2000;75(3):241–247.
59. Mahmood F, Shernan SK. Perioperative transoesophageal echocardiography: current status and future directions. Heart. 2016;102(15):1159–67.
60. Parra V, Fita G, Rovira I, et al. Transoesophageal echocardiography accurately detects cardiac output variation: a prospective comparison with thermodilution in cardiac surgery. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2008;25(2):135–43.
61. Møller-Sørensen H, Graeser K, Hansen KL, et al. Measurements of cardiac output obtained with transesophageal echocardiography and pulmonary artery thermodilution are not interchangeable. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2014;58(1):80–8.
62. Hahn RT, Abraham T, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic examination: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. J Am Soc Echocardiogr. 2013;26(9):921–64.
63. Wally D, Velik-Salchner C. Perioperative transesophageal echocardiography in non-cardiac surgery. Update. Anaesthesist. 2015;64(9):669–682.
64. Rebel A, Klimkina O, Hassan ZU. Transesophageal echocardiography for the noncardiac surgical patient. Int Surg. 2012;97(1):43–55.
65. Fayad A, Shillcutt SK. Perioperative transesophageal echocardiography for non-cardiac surgery. Can J Anesth/J Can Anesth 2018;65(4):381–398.
66. Elsherbiny M, Abdelwahab Y, Nagy K, et al. Role of intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography in cardiac surgery: an observational study. Open Access Maced J Med Sci. 2019;7(15):2480–2483.
67. Abbas SM, Hill AG. Systematic review of the literature for the use of oesophageal Doppler monitor for fluid replacement in major abdominal surgery. Anaesthesia 2008;63(1):44–51.
68. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Medical technologies guidance MTG3: CardioQ-ODM oesophageal doppler monitor. March 2011. http://www.nice.org.uk/MTG3 (accessed 19.4.20).
69. Dhawan R, Shahul S, Roberts JD, et al. Prospective, randomized clinical trial comparing use of intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography to standard care during radical cystectomy. Ann Card Anaesth. 2018;21(3):255–261.
70. Practice guidelines for perioperative transesophageal echocardiography. An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on transesophageal echocardiography. Anesthesiology. 2010;112(5):1084–96.
71. Hauser ND, Swanevelder J. Transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE): contra-indications, complications and safety of perioperative TOE. Echo Res Pract. 2018;5(4):R101–R113.
72. Cecconi M, De Backer D, Antonelli M, et al. Consensus on circulatory shock and hemodynamic

monitoring. Task force of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. Intensive Care Med. 2014;40(12):1795–815.

73. Tibby S. Transpulmonary thermodilution: Finally, a gold standard for pediatric cardiac output measurement. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2008;9(3):341–2.
74. Monnet X, Teboul JL. Transpulmonary thermodilution: advantages and limits. Critical Care. 2017;21(1):147.
75. Sakka SG, Reuter DA, Perel A. The transpulmonary thermodilution technique. J Clin Monit Comput. 2012;26(5):347–53.
76. Marik PE, Cavallazzi R, Vasu T, et al. Dynamic changes in arterial waveform derived variables and fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients: a systematic review of the literature. Crit Care Med 2009;37(9):2642–2647.
77. Perny J, Kimmoun A, Perez P, et al. Evaluation of cardiac function index as measured by transpulmonary thermodilution as an indicator of left ventricular ejection fraction in cardiogenic shock. BioMed Research International. 2014;2014:598029.
78. Michard F. Bedside assessment of extravascular lung water by dilution methods: temptations and pitfalls. Crit Care Med. 2007;35(4):1186–1192.
79. Jozwiak M, Teboul JL, Monnet X. Extravascular lung water in critical care: recent advances and clinical applications. Ann Intensive Care. 2015;5(1):38.
80. Sakka SG, Klein M, Reinhart K, et al. Prognostic value of extravascular lung water in critically ill patients. Chest 2002;122(6):2080–6.
81. Kushimoto S, Endo T, Yamanouchi S, et al. Relationship between extravascular lung water and severity categories of acute respiratory distress syndrome by the Berlin definition. Crit Care 2013;17(4):R132.
82. Beurton A, Teboul JL, Monnet X. Transpulmonary thermodilution techniques in the hemodynamic ally unstable patient. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2019;25(3):273–279.
83. Mielck F, Buhre W, Hanekop G, et al. Comparison of continuous cardiac output measurements in patients after cardiac surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2003;17(2):211–216.
84. Reuter DA, Huang C, Edrich T, et al. Cardiac output monitoring using indicator-dilution techniques: Basics, limits, and perspectives. Anesth Analg 2010;110(3):799–811.
85. Marik PE. Obituary: pulmonary artery catheter 1970 to 2013. Ann Intensive Care. 2013;3(1):38.
86. Vilchez Monge AL, Tranche Alvarez-Cagigas I, Perez-Peña J, et al. Cardiac output monitoring with pulmonary versus transpulmonary thermodilution during liver transplantation: interchangeable methods? Minerva Anestesiol. 2014;80(11):1178–87.
87. Benes J, Giglio M, Brienza N, et al. The effects of goal-directed fluid therapy based on dynamic parameters on post-surgical outcome: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Crit Care. 2014;18(5):584.
88. Linton RAF, Band DM, Haire KM. A new method of measuring cardiac output in man using lithium dilution. Brit J Anaesth.1993;71(2):262–266.
89. Jonas MM, Tanser SJ. Lithium dilution measurement of cardiac output and arterial pulse waveform analysis: an indicator dilution calibrated beat-by-beat system for continuous estimation of cardiac output. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2002;8(3):257–61.
90. Garcia-Rodriguez C, Pittman J, Cassell CH, et al. Lithium dilution cardiac output measurement: a clinical assessment of central venous and peripheral venous indicator injection. Crit Care Med. 2002;30(10):2199–2204.
91. Kurita T, Morita K, Kato S, et al. Comparison of the accuracy of the lithium dilution technique with the thermodilution technique for measurement of cardiac output. British Journal of Anaesthesia. 1997;79(6):770–775.
92. García X, Mateu L, Maynar J. Estimating cardiac output. Utility in the clinical practice. Available invasive and non-invasive monitoring. Med Intensiva. 2011;35(9):552–61.
93. Geerts BF, Aarts LP, Jansen JR. Methods in pharmacology: measurement of cardiac output. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2011;71(3):316–330.
94. Grensemann J. Cardiac output monitoring by pulse contour analysis, the technical basics of less-invasive techniques. Front Med (Lausanne). 2018;5:64.
95. Wernly B, Lichtenauer M, Franz M, et al. Pulse contour cardiac output monitoring in acute heart failure patients: Assessment of hemodynamic measurements. Wien Klin Wochenschr. 2016;128(23-24):864–869.
96. Monnet X, Anguel N, Jozwiak M, et al. Third-generation floTrac/Vigileo does not reliably track changes in cardiac output induced by norepinephrine in critically ill patients. Br J Anaesth 2012;108(4):615–22.
97. Kusaka Y, Yoshitani K, Irie T, et al. Clinical comparison of an echocardiograph-derived versus pulse counter-derived cardiac output measurement in abdominal aortic aneurysm surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 2012;26(2):223–6.
98. Jeong YB, Kim TH, Roh YJ, et al. Comparison of uncalibrated arterial pressure waveform analysis with continuous thermodilution cardiac output measurements in patients undergoing elective off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 2010;24(5):767–71.
99. Lansdorp B, Lemson J, van Putten MJ, et al. Dynamic indices do not predict volume responsiveness in routine clinical practice. Br J Anaesth 2012;108(3):395–401.
100. Marik PE. Non-invasive cardiac output monitors: a state-of the-art review. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2013;27(1):121–134.
101. Reisner A. Academic assessment of arterial pulse contour analysis: missing the forest for the trees? Br J Anaesth. 2016;116(6):733–736.
102. Sakka SG, Kozieras J, Thuemer O, et al. Measurement of cardiac output: a comparison between transpulmo-

nary thermodilution and uncalibrated pulse contour analysis. Br J Anaesth 2007;99(3):337–342.

103. Jaffe MB. Partial CO2 rebreathing cardiac output - operating principles of the NICO system. J Clin Monit. 1999;15(6):387–401.

104. Miller RD, Cohen NH, Eriksson LI, et al. Miller's anesthesia. 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders;2015.p.1391.

105. Chamos C, Vele L, Hamilton M, et al. Less invasive methods of advanced hemodynamic monitoring: principles, devices, and their role in the perioperative hemodynamic optimization. Perioper Med (Lond). 2013;2(1):19.

106. Kerstens MKM, Wijnberge M, Geerts BF. Non-invasive cardiac output monitoring techniques in the ICU. Neth J Crit Care 2018;26(3):104–110.

107. Lee AJ, Cohn JH, Ranasinghe JS. Cardiac output assessed by invasive and minimally invasive techniques. Anesthesiol Res Pract 2011;2011:475151.

108. Moise SF, Sinclair CJ, Scott DHT. Pulmonary artery blood temperature and the measurement of cardiac output by thermodilution Anaesthesia 2002;57(6):562–566.

109. Stetz CW, Miller RG, Kelly GE, et al. Reliability of the thermodilution method in the determination of cardiac output in clinical practice. The American Review of Respiratory Disease. 1982;126(6):1001–1004.

110. Drummond KE, Murphy E. Minimally invasive cardiac output monitors, Continuing Education in Anaesthesia Critical Care & Pain 2012;12(1):5–10.

111. Nishikawa T, Dohi S. Errors in the measurement of cardiac output by thermodilution. Can J Anaesth 1993;40(2):142–53.

112. Robin E, Costecalde M, Lebuffe G, et al. Clinical relevance of data from the pulmonary artery catheter. Critical Care 2006;10 Suppl 3(Suppl 3):S3.

113. Argueta EE, Paniagua D. Thermodilution cardiac output: A concept over 250 years in the making. Cardiol Rev. 2019;27(3):138–144.

114. Mehta Y, Arora D. Newer methods of cardiac output monitoring. World J Cardiol. 2014;6(9):1022–1029.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by
a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

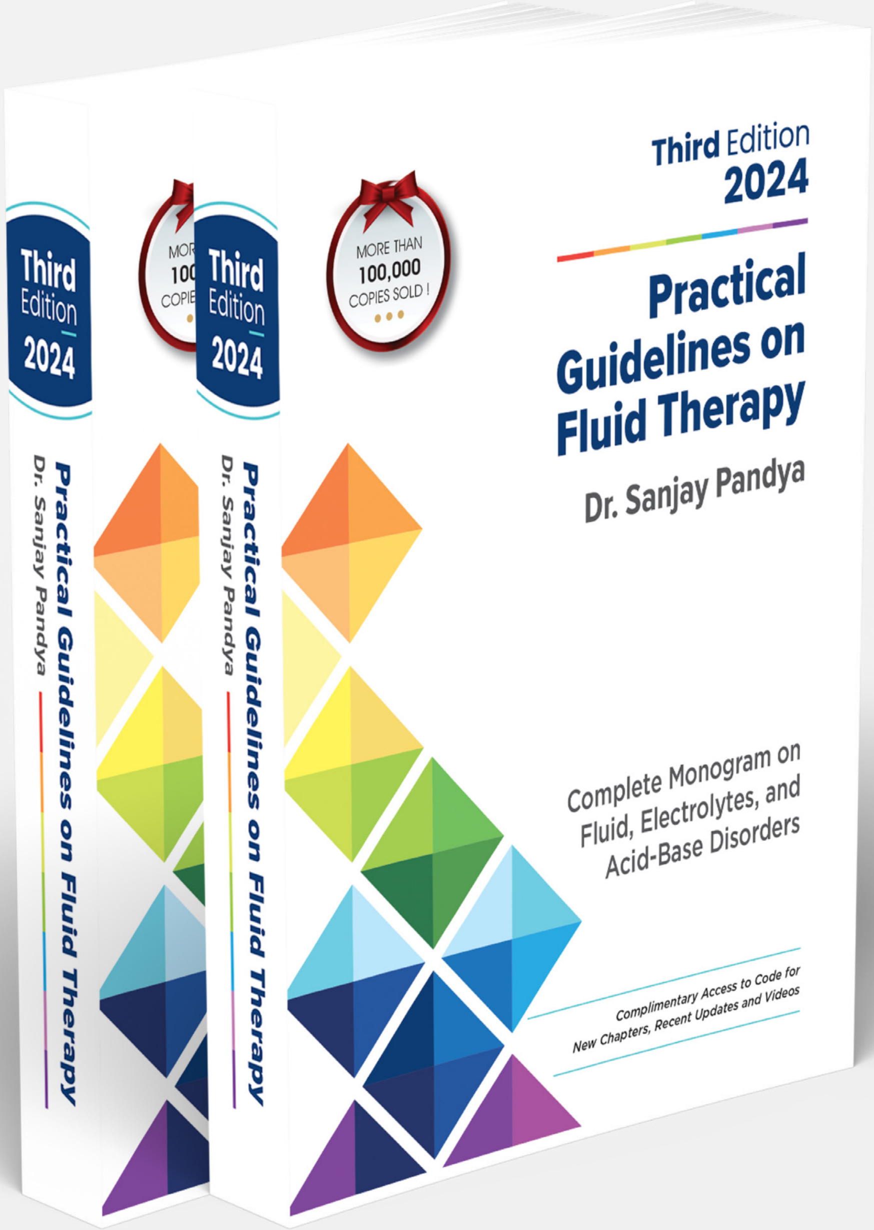
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 20:

Hyponatremia


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

20 Hyponatremia

SODIUM PHYSIOLOGY

Water Regulation **220**
Sodium Regulation **221**

HYPONATREMIA

Classification **224**
Etiology **224**
Clinical Features **225**
Step by Step Diagnosis **225**
Etiologies of Special Importance ... **230**
  Diuretics 230
  SIADH 230
  Cerebral salt wasting 230
  Exercise-associated hyponatremia .. 230
Management **231**
  Goal of therapy 232
  Severely symptomatic hyponatremia 232
    Hypertonic saline 232
    Loop diuretics 233
    Initial correction goal 233
  Rate of correction 233
  Chronic hyponatremia 234
  Treatment based on volume status .. 234
  Formulas for correction 235
  Vasopressin receptor antagonists .. 236
  General guidelines 236
  Monitoring 236

SYNDROME OF INAPPROPRIATE ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE SECRETION

Etiology **237**
Pathogenesis **237**
Clinical Features **238**
Diagnostic Criteria **238**
Treatment **238**
  Fluid restriction 238
  Hypertonic saline 239
  Loop diuretics 241
  High solute intake 241
  Vasopressin receptor antagonists .. 241
  Demeclocycline and lithium 242

SODIUM PHYSIOLOGY

A basic understanding of physiology is essential for the proper approach and treatment of water balance and sodium balance disorders in clinical practice.

Water excess or deficit in the body leads to hyponatremia and hypernatremia. Therefore disorders of sodium concentration occur primarily due to water imbalance and not due to changes in total body sodium content. The below-mentioned equation will help to clarify the above statement.

$$\text{Serum Sodium Concentration} = \frac{\text{Total Body Sodium}}{\text{Total Body Water}}$$

In the above equation, serum sodium concentration will decrease when total body water increases, leading to hyponatremia. Similarly, serum sodium concentration will increase when total body water decreases, leading to hypernatremia. So, to understand sodium disorders, we need to know about the physiology of water balance.

As serum osmolality is determined mainly by sodium salts (equation below) [1], the regulation of water balance is also discussed as the regulation of body fluid osmolality (osmoregulation). Normal serum osmolality is 275–290 mOsm/kg. Hyponatremia is usually associated with low serum osmolality.

$$\text{Serum Osmolality (Calculated)} = 2\,[\text{Na}^+] + \frac{\text{Glucose}}{18} + \frac{\text{BUN}}{2.8}$$

Where osmolality is in mOsm/kg, sodium in mEq/L, glucose in mg/dL, and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) in mg/dL.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Rasouli M. Basic concepts and practical equations on osmolality: Biochemical approach. Clin Biochem. 2016;49(12):936–41.
2. McKinley MJ, Johnson AK. The physiological regulation of thirst and fluid intake. News Physiol Sci. 2004;19:1–6.
3. Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence, 2013 (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg174).
4. Turner MJ, Avolio AP. Does Replacing Sodium Excreted in Sweat Attenuate the Health Benefits of Physical Activity? Int J Sport Nutr Exerc Metab. 2016;26(4):377–89.
5. Verbalis JG, Goldsmith SR, Greenberg A, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of hyponatremia: expert panel recommendations. Am J Med. 2013;126(10 Suppl 1):S1–42.
6. Hawkins RC. Age and gender as risk factors for hyponatremia and hypernatremia. Clin Chim Acta. 2003;337(1–2):169–72.
7. Upadhyay A, Jaber BL, Madias NE. Incidence and prevalence of hyponatremia. Am J Med. 2006;119(7 Suppl 1):S30–S35.
8. Upadhyay A, Jaber BL, Madias NE. Epidemiology of hyponatremia. Semin Nephrol 2009;29(3):227–238.
9. Corona G, Giuliani C, Parenti G, et al. The Economic Burden of Hyponatremia: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Am J Med. 2016;129(8):823–835.e4.
10. Tazmini K, Ranhoff AH. Electrolyte outpatient clinic at a local hospital - experience from diagnostics, treatment and follow-up. BMC Health Serv Res. 2020;20(1):154.
11. Wald R, Jaber BL, Price LL, et al. Impact of hospital-associated hyponatremia on selected outcomes. Arch Intern Med. 2010;170(3):294–302.
12. Hoorn EJ, van der Lubbe N, Zietse R. SIADH and hyponatraemia: why does it matter? NDT Plus. 2009; 2(Suppl_3):iii5–iii11.
13. Sterns RH. Disorders of plasma sodium--causes, consequences, and correction. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(1):55–65.
14. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. The challenge of hyponatremia. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2012;23(7):1140–8.
15. Spasovski G, Vanholder R, Allolio B, et al. Clinical practice guideline on diagnosis and treatment of hyponatraemia. Eur J Endocrinol. 2014;170(3):G1–47.
16. Adrogué HJ. Consequences of inadequate

management of hyponatremia. Am J Nephrol. 2005;25(3):240–9.

17. Waikar SS, Mount DB, Curhan GC. Mortality after hospitalization with mild, moderate, and severe hyponatremia. Am J Med. 2009;122(9):857–865.
18. Adrogue HJ, Madias NE. Hyponatremia. N Engl J Med. 2000;342(21):1581–9.
19. Fujisawa H, Sugimura Y, Takagi H, et al. Chronic Hyponatremia Causes Neurologic and Psychologic Impairments. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2016;27(3):766–780.
20. Gankam KF, Decaux G. Hyponatremia and the Brain. Kidney Int Rep. 2017;3(1):24–35.
21. Ayus JC, Moritz ML. Bone disease as a new complication of hyponatremia: moving beyond brain injury. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;5(2):167–168.
22. Filippatos TD, Makri A, Elisaf MS, et al. Hyponatremia in the elderly: challenges and solutions. Clin Interv Aging. 2017;12:1957–1965.
23. Negri AL, Ayus JC. Hyponatremia and bone disease. Rev Endocr Metab Disord. 2017;18(1):67–78.
24. Faria DK, Mendes ME, Sumita NM. The measurement of serum osmolality and its application to clinical practice and laboratory: literature review. Jornal Brasileiro de Patologia e Medicina Laboratorial 2017;53(1):38–45.
25. Ball SG. How I approach hyponatremia. Clin Med. 2013;13:291–295.
26. Fortgens P, Pillay TS. Pseudohyponatremia revisited: a modern-day pitfall. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2011;135(4):516–9.
27. Goldwasser P, Ayoub I, Barth RH. Pseudohypernatremia and pseudohyponatremia: a linear correction, Nephrology Dialysis Transplantation 2015;30(2):252–257.
28. Filippatos TD, Liamis G, Christopoulou F, et al. Ten common pitfalls in the evaluation of patients with hyponatremia. Eur J Intern Med. 2016;29:22–5.
29. Hillier TA, Abbott RD, Barrett EJ. Hyponatremia: evaluating the correction factor for hyperglycemia. Am J Med. 1999;106(4):399–403.
30. Milionis HJ, Liamis GL, Elisaf MS. The hyponatremic patient: a systematic approach to laboratory diagnosis. CMAJ. 2002;166(8):1056–1062.
31. Weismann D, Schneider A, Höybye C. Clinical aspects of symptomatic hyponatremia. Endocr Connect. 2016;5(5):R35–R43.
32. Filippone EJ, Ruzieh M, Foy A. Thiazide-Associated Hyponatremia: Clinical Manifestations and Pathophysiology. Am J Kidney Dis. 2020;75(2):256–264.
33. Hix JK, Silver S, Sterns RH. Diuretic-associated hyponatremia. Semin Nephrol. 2011;31(6):553–66.
34. Liamis G, Filippatos TD, Elisaf MS. Thiazide-associated hyponatremia in the elderly: what the clinician needs to know. J Geriatr Cardiol. 2016;13(2):175–182.
35. Momi J, Tang CM, Abcar AC, et al. Hyponatremia-what is cerebral salt wasting? Perm J. 2010;14(2):62–65.
36. Yee AH, Burns JD, Wijdicks EFM. Cerebral salt wasting: pathophysiology, diagnosis, and treatment. Neurosurg Clin N Am. 2010;21(2):339–352.
37. Verbalis JG. The Curious Story of Cerebral Salt Wasting: Fact or Fiction? Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2020;15(11):1666–1668.
38. Maesaka JK, Imbriano L, Mattana J, et al. Differentiating SIADH from cerebral/renal salt wasting: failure of the volume approach and need for a new approach to hyponatremia. J Clin Med. 2014;3(4):1373–1385.
39. Oh JY, Shin JI. Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion and cerebral/renal salt wasting syndrome: similarities and differences. Front Pediatr. 2014;2:146.
40. Maesaka JK, Imbriano LJ, Miyawaki N. Determining Fractional Urate Excretion Rates in Hyponatremic Conditions and Improved Methods to Distinguish Cerebral/Renal Salt Wasting From the Syndrome of Inappropriate Secretion of Antidiuretic Hormone. Front Med (Lausanne). 2018;5:319.
41. Cui H, He G, Yang S, et al. Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone Secretion and Cerebral Salt-Wasting Syndromes in Neurological Patients. Front Neurosci. 2019;13:1170.
42. Almond CS, Shin AY, Fortescue EB, et al. Hyponatremia among runners in the Boston Marathon. N Engl J Med 2005;352(15):1550–6.
43. Hew-Butler T, Rosner MH, Fowkes-Godek S, et al. Statement of the Third International Exercise-Associated Hyponatremia Consensus Development Conference, Carlsbad, California, 2015. Clin J Sport Med 2015;25(4):303–320.
44. Bennett BL, Hew-Butler T, Rosner MH, et al. Wilderness Medical Society Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Management of Exercise-Associated Hyponatremia: 2019 Update. Wilderness Environ Med 2020;31(1):50–62.
45. Rosner MH. Exercise-Associated Hyponatremia. Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc. 2019;130:76–87.
46. Hew-Butler T. Exercise-Associated Hyponatremia. Front Horm Res. 2019;52:178–189.
47. Corona G, Giuliani C, Verbalis JG, et al. Hyponatremia improvement is associated with a reduced risk of mortality: evidence from a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2015;10(4):e0124105.
48. Goh KP. Management of Hyponatremia. Am Fam Physician. 2004;69(10):2387–2394.
49. Sterns RH. Treatment of Severe Hyponatremia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2018;13(4):641–649.
50. Berl T. Treating hyponatremia: damned if we do and damned if we don't. Kidney Int. 1990;37(3):1006–18.
51. Giuliani C, Peri A. Effects of Hyponatremia on the Brain. J Clin Med. 2014;3(4):1163–1177.
52. Ayus JC, Caputo D, Bazerque F, e al. Treatment of hyponatremic encephalopathy with a 3%sodium chloride protocol: a case series. Am J Kidney Dis. 2015;65(3):435–442.
53. Ayus JC, Moritz ML. Misconceptions and Barriers to the Use of Hypertonic Saline to Treat Hyponatremic Encephalopathy. Front Med (Lausanne). 2019;6:47.

54. Metheny NA, Moritz ML. Administration of 3% Sodium Chloride Via A Peripheral Vein. J Infusion Nursing. 2021;44(2):94–102.
55. Mohmand HK, Issa D, Ahmad Z, et al. Hypertonic saline for hyponatremia: risk of inadvertent overcorrection. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;2(6):1110–7.
56. Hoorn EJ, Zietse R. Diagnosis and treatment of hyponatremia: compilation of the guidelines. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2017;28(5):1340–1349.
57. Garrahy A, Dineen R, Hannon AM, et al. Continuous Versus Bolus Infusion of Hypertonic Saline in the Treatment of Symptomatic Hyponatremia Caused by SIAD. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2019;104(9):3595–3602.
58. Baek SH, Jo YH, Ahn S, et al. Risk of Overcorrection in Rapid Intermittent Bolus vs Slow Continuous Infusion Therapies of Hypertonic Saline for Patients With Symptomatic Hyponatremia: The SALSA Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Intern Med. 2021;181(1):81–92.
59. Farkas J. Emergent treatment of hyponatremia or elevated ICP with bicarb ampules. PULMCrit September 7, 2015 (visit: https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/emergent-treatment-of-hyponatremia-or-elevated-icp-with-bicarb-ampules/).
60. Hootman J, Alvarez A, Wilson J. Trick of the Trade: Sodium Bicarbonate for Acute Symptomatic Hyponatremia. Tox & Medications. 2020 (Visit: https://www.aliem.com/trick-of-trade-sodium-bicarbonate-symptomatic-hyponatremia/).
61. Farkas J. Hyponatremia. PULMCrit December 12, 2019 (Visit: https://emcrit.org/ibcc/hyponatremia/).
62. Sterns RH, Riggs JE, Schochet SS Jr. Osmotic demyelination syndrome following correction of hyponatremia. N Engl J Med. 1986;314(24):1535–42.
63. Lambeck J, Hieber M, Dreßing A, et al. Central Pontine Myelinosis and Osmotic Demyelination Syndrome. Dtsch Arztebl Int. 2019;116(35–36):600–606.
64. Berl T, Rastegar A. A patient with severe hyponatremia and hypokalemia: osmotic demyelination following potassium repletion. Am J Kidney Dis 2010;55(4):742–8.
65. Aratani S, Hara M, Nagahama M, et al. A low initial serum sodium level is associated with an increased risk of overcorrection in patients with chronic profound hyponatremia: a retrospective cohort analysis. BMC Nephrol. 2017;18(1):316.
66. George JC, Zafar W, Bucaloiu ID, et al. Risk Factors and Outcomes of Rapid Correction of Severe Hyponatremia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2018;13(7):984–992.
67. Sterns RH, Cappuccio JD, Silver SM, et al. Neurologic sequelae after treatment of severe hyponatremia: a multicenter perspective. J Am Soc Nephrol. 1994;4(8):1522–30.
68. Martin RJ. Central pontine and extrapontine myelinolysis: the osmotic demyelination syndromes. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2004;75 Suppl 3(Suppl 3):iii22–8.
69. Rafat C, Schortgen F, Gaudry S, et al. Use of desmopressin acetate in severe hyponatremia in the intensive care unit. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2014;9(2):229–37.
70. Hoorn EJ, Rivadeneira F, van Meurs JB, et al. Mild hyponatremia as a risk factor for fractures: the Rotterdam Study. J Bone Miner Res. 2011;26(8):1822–1828.
71. Aegisdottir H, Cooray C, Wirdefeldt K, et al. Incidence of osmotic demyelination syndrome in Sweden: A nationwide study. Acta Neurol Scand 2019;140(5):342–349.
72. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Hyponatremia. N Engl J Med. 2000;342(21):1581–9.
73. Braun MM, Barstow CH, Pyzocha NJ. Diagnosis and management of sodium disorders: hyponatremia and hypernatremia. Am Fam Physician. 2015;91(5):299–307.
74. Mohottige D, Lehrich RW, Greenberg A. Hypovolemic Hyponatremia. Front Horm Res. 2019;52:93–103.
75. Yeates KE, Singer M, Morton AR. Salt and water: a simple approach to hyponatremia. CMAJ 2004;170(3):365–9.
76. Fortune BE, Garcia-Tsao G. Hypervolemic hyponatremia: Clinical significance and management. Clin Liver Dis. 2013;2(3):109–112.
77. Şorodoc V, Asaftei A, Puha G, et al. Management of Hyponatremia in Heart Failure: Practical Considerations. J Pers Med. 2023;13(1):140
78. Berl T, Quittnat-Pelletier F, Verbalis JG, et al. Oral tolvaptan is safe and effective in chronic hyponatremia. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;21(4):705–12.
79. Pose-Reino A, Runkle de la Vega I, de Jong-Laird A, et al. Real-World, Non-Interventional, Retrospective Study (SAMPLE) of Tolvaptan in Patients with Hyponatraemia Secondary to the Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone Secretion. Adv Ther. 2021;38(2):1055–1067.
80. Lee JJ, Kilonzo K, Nistico A, et al. Management of hyponatremia. CMAJ. 2014;186(8):E281–6.
81. Esposito P, Piotti G, Bianzina S, et al. The syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis: pathophysiology, clinical management and new therapeutic options. Nephron Clin Pract. 2011;119(1):c62–73.
82. Schwartz WB, Bennett W, Curelop S, et al. A syndrome of renal sodium loss and hyponatremia probably resulting from inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone. American Journal of Medicine 1957;23(4):529–542.
83. Janicic N, Verbalis JG. Evaluation and management of hypo-osmolality in hospitalized patients. Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America 2003;32(2):459–481.
84. Ellison DH, Berl T. Clinical practice. The syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis. N Engl J Med 2007;356(20):2064–72.
85. Verbalis JG, Greenberg A, Burst V, et al. Diagnosing and Treating the Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone Secretion. Am J Med

2016;129(5):537.e9–537.e23.

86. Garrahy A, Galloway I, Hannon AM, et al. Fluid Restriction Therapy for Chronic SIAD; Results of a Prospective Randomized Controlled Trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2020;105(12):dgaa619.
87. Dineen R, Thompson CJ, Sherlock M. Hyponatraemia - presentations and management. Clin Med (Lond). 2017;17(3):263–269.
88. Furst H, Hallows KR, Post J, et al. The urine/plasma electrolyte ratio: a predictive guide to water restriction. Am J Med Sci. 2000;319(4):240–244.
89. Cuesta M, Ortolá A, Garrahy A, et al. Predictors of failure to respond to fluid restriction in SIAD in clinical practice; time to re-evaluate clinical guidelines? QJM. 2017;110(8):489–492.
90. Marupudi NI, Mittal S. Diagnosis and Management of Hyponatremia in Patients with Aneurysmal Subarachnoid Hemorrhage. J Clin Med. 2015;4(4):756–67.
91. Steele A, Gowrishankar M, Abrahamson S, et al. Postoperative hyponatremia despite near-isotonic saline infusion: a phenomenon of desalination. Ann Intern Med 1997;126(1):20–5.
92. Hanna RM, Yang WT, Lopez EA, et al. The utility and accuracy of four equations in predicting sodium levels in dysnatremic patients. Clin Kidney J 2016;9(4):530–9.
93. Sterns RH. Formulas for fixing serum sodium: curb your enthusiasm. Clin Kidney J 2016;9(4):527–9.
94. Schrier RW, Bansal S. Diagnosis and management of hyponatremia in acute illness. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2008;14(6):627–634.
95. Zietse R, van der Lubbe N, Hoorn EJ. Current and future treatment options in SIADH. NDT Plus. 2009;2(Suppl_3):iii12–iii19.
96. Decaux G. Treatment of the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone by long loop diuretics. Nephron 1983;35(2):82–88.
97. Runkle I, Villabona C, Navarro A, et al. Treatment of hyponatremia induced by the syndrome of Inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion: a multidisciplinary spanish algorithm. Nefrologia. 2014;34(4):439–50.
98. Berl T. Impact of solute intake on urine flow and water excretion. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2008;19(6):1076–8.
99. Decaux G, Musch W. Estimated Daily Urine Volume and Solute Excretion from Spot Urine Samples to Guide the Therapy of Hyponatremia in SIADH. J Clin Med. 2019;8(10):1511.
100. Rondon-Berrios H, Berl T. Mild Chronic Hyponatremia in the Ambulatory Setting: Significance and Management. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2015;10(12):2268–78.
101. Soupart A, Coffernils M, Couturier B, et al. Efficacy and tolerance of urea compared with vaptans for long-term treatment of patients with SIADH. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2012;7(5):742–7.
102. Sterns RH, Silver SM, Hix JK. Urea for hyponatremia? Kidney Int 2015;87(2):268–270.
103. Rondon-Berrios H. Urea for chronic hyponatremia. Blood Purif 2020;49(1–2):212–218.
104. Rondon-Berrios H, Tandukar S, Mor MK, et al. Urea for the Treatment of Hyponatremia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2018;13(11):1627–1632.
105. Lockett J, Berkman KE, Dimeski G, et al. Urea treatment in fluid restriction refractory hyponatremia. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2019;90(4):630–636.
106. Nervo A, D'Angelo V, Rosso D, et al. Urea in cancer patients with chronic SIAD-induced hyponatremia: Old drug, new evidence. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2019;90(6):842–848.
107. Lerma EV, Rondon-Berrios H. Urea for the Treatment of Hyponatremia: An Old Treatment Offers Fresh Hope. Kidney News Online 2021;13(3):13–14.
108. Farkas J. Controlled aquaresis: Management of hypervolemic or euvolemic hyponatremia with oral urea. PULMCrit November 26, 2019 (Visit: https://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/aquaresis/).
109. Robertson GL. Vaptans for the treatment of hyponatremia. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2011;7(3):151–61.
110. Seay NW, Lehrich RW, Greenberg A. Diagnosis and Management of Disorders of Body Tonicity-Hyponatremia and Hypernatremia: Core Curriculum 2020. Am J Kidney Dis. 2020;75(2):272–286.
111. Kim YC, Lee H. Light and Shadow in Oral Tolvaptan Treatment Kidney News Online 2021;13(3):14.
112. Tzoulis P, Waung JA, Bagkeris E, et al. Real-life experience of tolvaptan use in the treatment of severe hyponatraemia due to syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion. ClinEndocrinol (Oxf). 2016;84(4):620–626.
113. Harbeck B, Lindner U, Haas CS. Low-dose tolvaptan for the treatment of hyponatremia in the syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH). Endocrine. 2016;53(3):872–873.
114. Verbalis JG, Adler S, Schrier RW, et al. Efficacy and safety of oral tolvaptan therapy in patients with the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion. Eur J Endocrinol 2011;164(5):725–32.
115. Morris JH, Bohm NM, Nemecek BD, et al. Rapidity of Correction of Hyponatremia Due to Syndrome of Inappropriate Secretion of Antidiuretic Hormone Following Tolvaptan. Am J Kidney Dis 2018;71(6):772–782.
116. Chatzimavridou-grigoriadou V, Al-othman S, Brabant G, et al. Clinical experience of the efficacy and safety of low dose tolvaptan therapy in a UK tertiary oncology setting. The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism. 2021:dgab131.
117. Miell J, Dhanjal P, Jamookeeah C. Evidence for the use of demeclocycline in the treatment of hyponatraemia secondary to SIADH: a systematic review. Int J Clin Pract. 2015;69(12):1396–1417.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

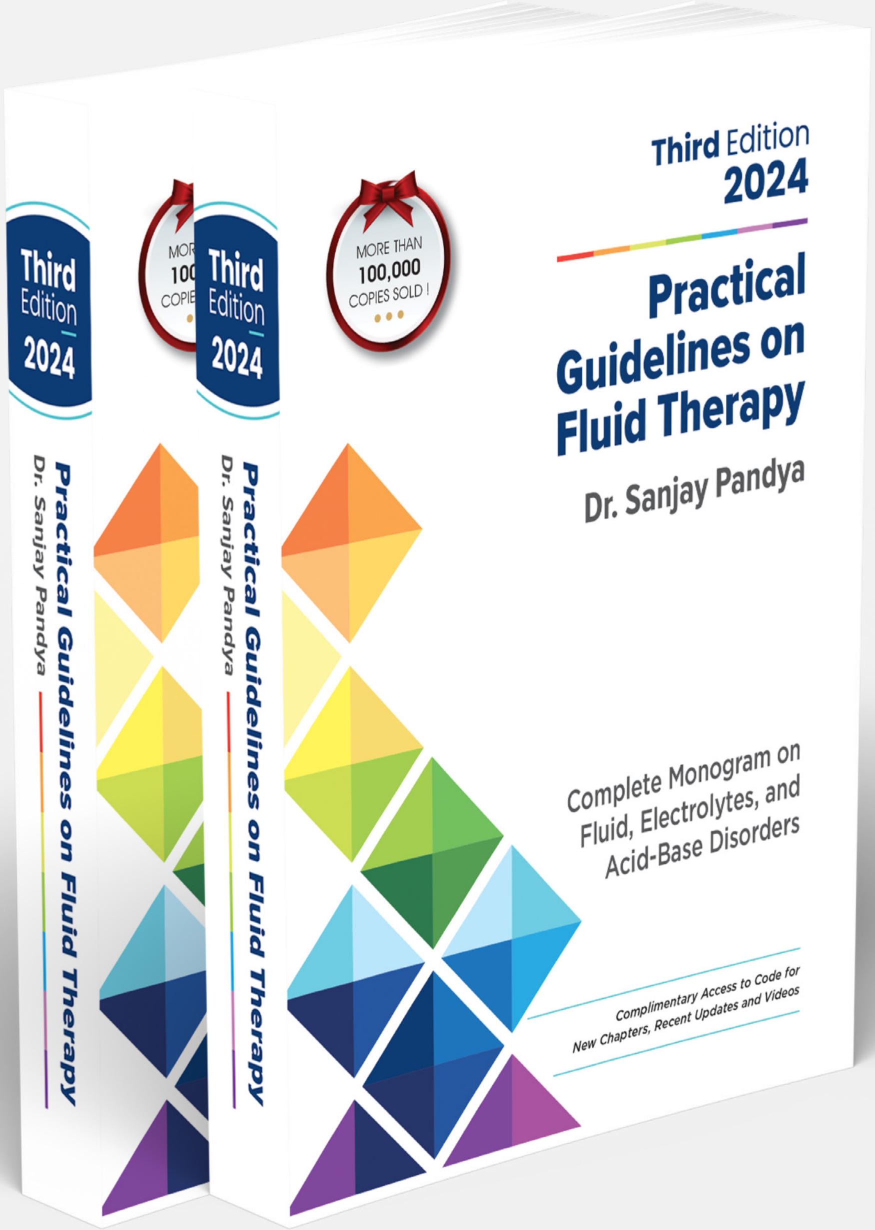
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 21:

Hypernatremia



Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

21

Hypernatremia

Etiology **246**
Clinical Features.............................. **247**
    CNS dysfunction........................... 247
        Chronic hypernatremia 247
        Acute hypernatremia 247
Diagnosis **248**
Management.................................... **248**
    Goals 249
    Correction of underlying causes ... 249
    Treatment based on volume status..249
        Hypovolemic hypernatremia.... 250
        Euvolemic hypernatremia........ 250
        Hypervolemic hypernatremia... 250
    Treatment based on onset............ 250
    Correction of hypertonicity............ 251
        Calculation of water deficit 251
        The route of fluid replacement.. 251
        Selecting the appropriate replacement fluids 251
        The rate of correction of hypernatremia 251
    Monitoring.................................... 252

Hypernatremia is an electrolyte disorder defined as an increase in plasma sodium concentration greater than 145 mEq/L, always results in hypertonicity (hyperosmolality), and usually occurs due to lack of water, loss of water, or primary sodium gain [1, 2].

Hypernatremia is a less frequent disorder (about 1%–3% of all hospitalized patients and 9% in critically ill patients) but carries significantly higher mortality (about 40–60%) [3–5].

HYPERNATREMIA IS USUALLY DUE TO WATER DEFICIT AND NOT SODIUM OVERLOAD.

Normal thirst is the most potent mechanism that effectively prevents hypernatremia. So, hypernatremia usually does not occur in healthy adults who can respond to thirst unless there is non-availability of water, restricted water intake, impaired thirst, or the patient cannot drink the water due to a comatose-confused state. Therefore, hypernatremia is seen chiefly in very young, very old, very sick, bed-ridden, or debilitated patients. A pure water deficit leading to hypernatremia is called dehydration.

ETIOLOGY

Common causes of hypernatremia classified based on volume status, water loss or salt gain, urinary sodium, and underlying etiologies are summarized in Table 21.1.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Hypernatremia. N Engl J Med. 2000;342(20):1493–9.
2. Sterns RH. Disorders of plasma sodium--causes, consequences, and correction. N Engl J Med 2015;372(1):55–65.
3. Palevsky PM, Bhagrath R, Greenberg A. Hypernatremia in hospitalized patients. Ann Intern Med. 1996;124(2):197–203.
4. Funk GC, Lindner G, Druml W, et al. Incidence and prognosis of dysnatremias present on ICU admission. Intensive Care Med. 2010;36(2):304–11.
5. Muhsin SA, Mount DB. Diagnosis and treatment of hypernatremia. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2016;30(2):189–203.
6. Kim SW. Hypernatemia: successful treatment. Electrolyte Blood Press. 2006;4(2):66–71.
7. Braun MM, Barstow CH, Pyzocha NJ. Diagnosis and management of sodium disorders: hyponatremia and hypernatremia. Am Fam Physician. 2015;91(5):299–307.
8. Jessica MAA, Astrid CBG, Anusha K, et al. Management of Nephrogenic Diabetes Insipidus: An Overview. JOJ Urology & Nephrology. 2022;7(5):555722.
9. Lodin M, Dwyer J. The role of amiloride in managing patients with lithium-induced nephrogenic diabetes insipidus Journal of Pharmacy Practice and Research 2017;47(5):389–392.
10. Danilo CR. Use of amiloride in lithium-induced nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. J Anal Pharm Res. 2018;7(3):286–287.
11. Mortensen LA, Bistrup C, Jensen BL, et al. A mini-review of pharmacological strategies used to ameliorate polyuria associated with X-linked nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2020;319(5):F746–F753.
12. Nguyen MK, Kurtz I. Correction of hypervolaemic hypernatremia by inducing negative Na+ and K+ balance in excess of negative water balance: a new quantitative approach. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2008;23(7):2223–7.
13. Morkos M, Fam M, Goel M, et al. Protracted acute hypervolemic hypernatremia unmasked after vasopressin therapy: case report, literature review, and proposed algorithmic approach. AACE Clin Case Rep. 2018;5(2):95–98.
14. Pazmiño PA, Pazmiño BP. Treatment of acute hypernatremia with hemodialysis. Am J Nephrol. 1993;13(4):260–265.
15. Nur S, Khan Y, Nur S, et al. Hypernatremia: correction rate and hemodialysis. Case Rep Med. 2014;2014:736073.
16. Rondon-Berrios H, Argyropoulos C, Ing TS, et al. Hypertonicity: Clinical entities, manifestations and treatment. World J Nephrol 2017;6(1):1–13.
17. Sterns RH, Silver SM. Salt and water: read the package insert. QJM. 2003;96(8):549–52.
18. Carlberg DJ, Borek HA, Syverud SA, et al. Survival of acute hypernatremia due to massive soy sauce ingestion. J Emerg Med 2013;45(2):228–31.
19. Farkas J. Hypernatremia & Dehydration in the ICU. IBCC [Internet]. June 25, 2021. Available from: https://emcrit.org/ibcc/hypernatremia/.
20. Bolat F, Oflaz MB, Güven AS, et al. What is the safe approach for neonatal hypernatremic dehydration? A retrospective study from a neonatal intensive care unit. Pediatr Emerg Care 2013;29(7):808–13.
21. Alshayeb HM, Showkat A, Babar F, et al. Severe hypernatremia correction rate and mortality in hospitalized patients. Am J Med Sci. 2011;341(5):356–60.
22. Bataille S, Baralla C, Torro D, et al. Under correction of hypernatremia is frequent and associated with mortality. BMC Nephrol. 2014;15:37.
23. Bohlouli B, Jackson TJ, Tonelli M, et al. Adverse outcomes associated with preventable complications in hospitalized patients with CKD. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2017;12(5):799–806.
24. Ryu JY, Yoon S, Lee J, et al. Efficacy and safety of rapid intermittent bolus compared with slow continuous infusion in patients with severe hypernatremia (SALSA II trial): a study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Kidney Res Clin Pract. 2022;41(4):508–520.

25. Chauhan K, Pattharanitima P, Patel N, et al. Rate of Correction of Hypernatremia and Health Outcomes in Critically Ill Patients. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2019;14(5):656–663.
26. Feigin E, Feigin L, Ingbir M, et al. Rate of Correction and All-Cause Mortality in Patients With Severe Hypernatremia. JAMA Netw Open. 2023;6(9):e2335415.
27. Lindner G, Schwarz C, Kneidinger N, et al. Can we really predict the change in serum sodium levels? An analysis of currently proposed formulae in hypernatremic patients. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2008;23(11):3501–8.
28. Sterns RH. Formulas for fixing serum sodium: curb your enthusiasm. Clin Kidney J 2016;9(4):527–9.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

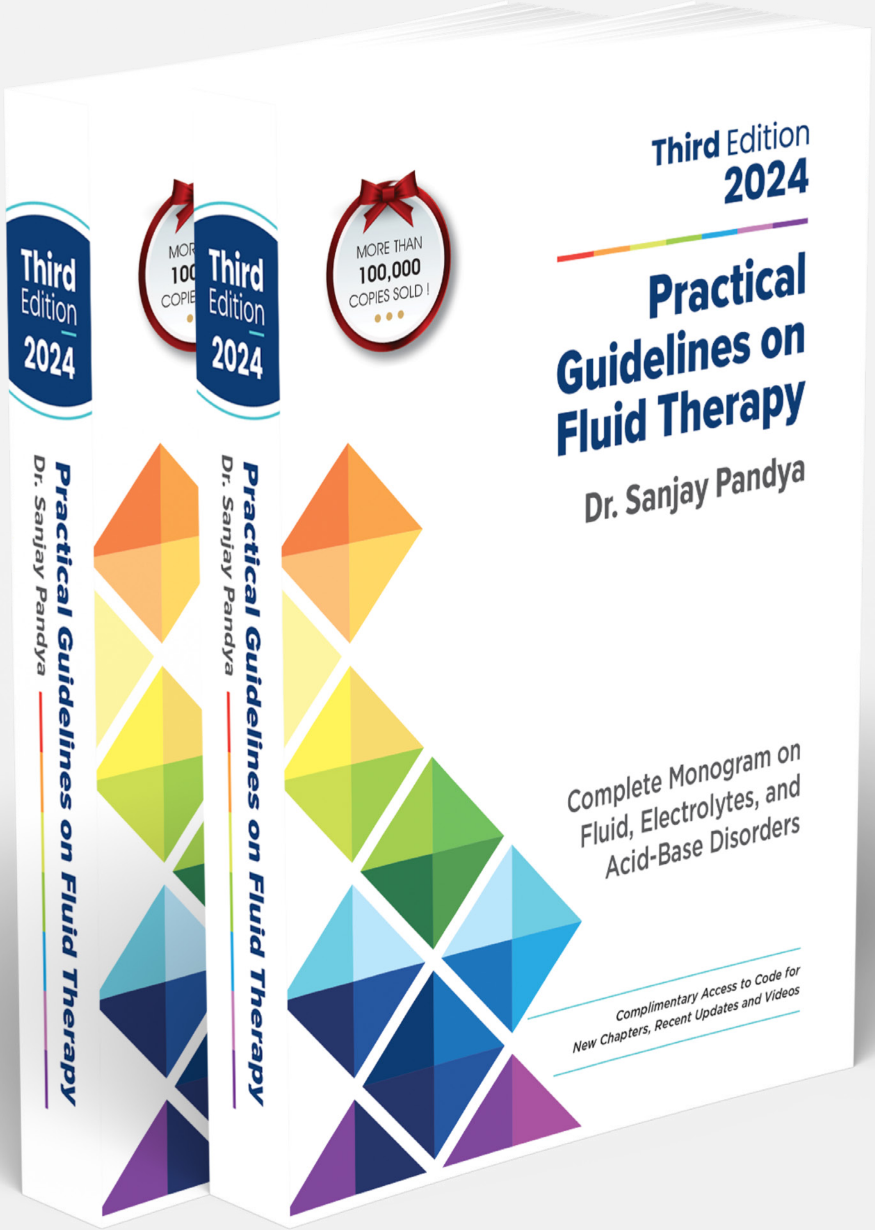
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 22:

Hypokalemia


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

22 Hypokalemia

POTASSIUM

Physiological Basis **254**

Potassium Homeostasis **255**

- Regulation of Serum Potassium ... 255
- Correlation of Serum and Body Potassium 256

HYPOKALEMIA

Etiology **256**

Clinical Features and ECG Changes **258**

Diagnosis **258**

- History and physical examination..259
- Laboratory evaluation 259
- Additional diagnostic tests 259
  - Urinary potassium excretion.... 259
  - Acid-base status 261

Management **261**

- Goals 261
- Prevention 261
- Replenishment of potassium deficit 262
  - Estimation of the potassium deficit 262
  - Selection of treatment modality 262
  - Precautions 262
  - How much and how long 263
- Oral potassium supplementation.. 263
- Intravenous potassium supplementation 264
  - Selection of formulations 264
  - Potassium containing IV fluids.. 264
  - Indications 264
  - Recommendations for administration 264
  - Special considerations 265
- The target of K$^+$ supplementation.. 266
- Correction of the underlying causes 266

POTASSIUM

PHYSIOLOGICAL BASIS

Potassium (K$^+$) is a major intracellular cation and the second most abundant cation in the body (next to cation sodium). Total body potassium is about 3,500 mEq. Out of this, 98% of potassium is intracellular, and just 2% of potassium is extracellular. Thus, the normal serum potassium concentration is 3.5 to 5.0 mEq/L vs. an intracellular 140 to 150 mEq/L.

Potassium plays a crucial role in the following:

- Normal functioning of cells: Synthesis of DNA and protein, cell division and growth, and enzyme function.
- Neuromuscular transmission: Maintaining cell membrane potential, cellular excitability, conduction of nerve impulses which help in maintaining skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscle cell contraction.

- Regulate intracellular osmolality and cell volume.
- Maintain acid-base balance and regulate intracellular pH.

POTASSIUM HOMEOSTASIS

The average potassium intake is about 77 and 59 mEq per day in adult men and women, respectively [1]. 90% of potassium consumed is absorbed in the upper gastrointestinal (GI) tract, out of which kidneys excrete 90%, and the remaining 10% is excreted in the stool.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service. What We Eat in America, 2013–2014.
2. Rastegar A. Serum Potassium. In: Walker HK, Hall WD, Hurst JW, editors. Clinical Methods: The History, Physical, and Laboratory Examinations. 3rd edition. Boston: Butterworths; 1990. Chapter 195. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK307/.
3. Palmer BF. Regulation of potassium homeostasis. Clinical Journal of the American Society of Nephrology 2015;10(6):1050–1060.
4. Gumz ML, Rabinowitz L, Wingo CS. An Integrated View of Potassium Homeostasis. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(1):60–72.
5. Kardalas E, Paschou SA, Anagnostis P, et al. Hypokalemia: a clinical update. Endocr Connect. 2018;7(4):R135–R146.
6. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Physiology and Pathophysiology of Potassium Homeostasis: Core Curriculum 2019. Am J Kidney Dis. 2019;74(5):682–695.
7. Marti G, Schwarz C, Leichtle AB, et al. Etiology and symptoms of severe hypokalaemia in emergency department patients. European Journal of Emergency Medicine 2014;21(1):46–51.
8. Viera AJ, Wouk N. Potassium Disorders: Hypokalemia and Hyperkalemia. Am Fam Physician. 2015;92(6):487–95.
9. Aronson PS, Giebisch G. Effects of pH on potassium: new explanations for old observations. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2011;22(11):1981–1989.
10. Huang CL, Kuo E. Mechanism of hypokalemia in magnesium deficiency. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;18(10):2649–52.
11. Yalamanchili HB, Calp-Inal S, Zhou XJ, et al. Hypokalemic Nephropathy. Kidney Int Rep. 2018;3(6):1482–1488.
12. Levis JT. ECG diagnosis: hypokalemia. Perm J. 2012;16(2):57.
13. Kishimoto C, Tamaru K, Kuwahara H. Tall P waves associated with severe hypokalemia and combined electrolyte depletion. J Electrocardiol. 2014;47(1):93–4.
14. Wang X, Han D, Li G. Electrocardiographic manifestations in severe hypokalemia. J Int Med Res. 2020;48(1):300060518811058.
15. Krogager ML, Kragholm K, Thomassen JQ, et al. Update on management of hypokalaemia and goals for the lower potassium level in patients with cardiovascular disease: a review in collaboration with the European Society of Cardiology Working Group on Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy, European Heart Journal - Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy, 2021;pvab038.
16. Groeneveld JH, Sijpkens YW, Lin SH, et al. An approach to the patient with severe hypokalaemia: the potassium quiz. QJM. 2005;98(4):305–16.
17. Abcar AC, Kujubu DA. Evaluation of hypertension with hypokalemia. Perm J. 2009;13(1):73–76.
18. Jędrusik P, Symonides B, Wojciechowska E, et al. Diagnostic value of potassium level in a spot urine sample as an index of 24-hour urinary potassium excretion in unselected patients hospitalized in a hypertension unit. PLoS One. 2017;12(6):e0180117.

19. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. The Use of Selected Urine Chemistries in the Diagnosis of Kidney Disorders. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2019;14(2):306–316.
20. Grams ME, Hoenig MP, Hoorn EJ. Evaluation of Hypokalemia. JAMA. 2021;325(12):1216–1217.
21. Kamel K, Halperin M. Intrarenal urea recycling leads to a higher rate of renal excretion of potassium: an hypothesis with clinical implications. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2011;20(5):547–54.
22. Halperin ML. Assessing the renal response in patients with potassium disorders: a shift in emphasis from the TTKG to the urine K+/creatinine ratio. Afr J Nephrol. 2017;20(1):22–24.
23. Bourke E, Delaney V. Prevention of hypokalemia caused by diuretics. Heart Dis Stroke. 1994;3(2):63–7.
24. Cohn JN, Kowey PR, Whelton PK, et al. New Guidelines for Potassium Replacement in Clinical Practice: A Contemporary Review by the National Council on Potassium in Clinical Practice. Arch Intern Med. 2000;160(16):2429–2436.
25. Scotto CJ, Fridline M, Menhart CJ, Klions HA. Preventing hypokalemia in critically ill patients. Am J Crit Care. 2014;23(2):145–9.
26. Gennari FJ. Hypokalemia. N Engl J Med 1998;339(7):451–458.
27. Asmar A, Mohandas R, Wingo CS. A physiologic-based approach to the treatment of a patient with hypokalemia. Am J Kidney Dis. 2012;60(3):492–7.
28. Farkas J. Hypokalemia. Internet Book of Critical Care (IBCC) June 25, 2021. Visit: https://emcrit.org/ibcc/hypokalemia/.
29. Pasquel FJ, Tsegka K, Wang H, et al. Clinical outcomes in patients with isolated or combined diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state: a retrospective, hospital-based cohort study. Diabetes Care 2020;43(3):349–57.
30. Umpierrez GE, Murphy MB, Kitabchi AE. Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar Syndrome. Diabetes Spectrum 2002;15(1):28–36.
31. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care 2009;32(7):1335–1343.
32. Adrogué HJ, Lederer ED, Suki WN, Eknoyan G. Determinants of plasma potassium levels in diabetic ketoacidosis. Medicine (Baltimore) 1986;65(3):163–172.
33. Pasquel FJ, Lansang MC, Dhatariya K, et al. Management of diabetes and hyperglycaemia in the hospital. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2021;9(3):174–188.
34. Clase CM, Carrero JJ, Ellison DH, et al; Conference Participants. Potassium homeostasis and management of dyskalemia in kidney diseases: conclusions from a Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Controversies Conference. Kidney Int. 2020;97(1):42–61.
35. Wainwright NJ, Azim A, Neary JD. Proton Pump Inhibition in the Management of Hypokalemia in Anorexia Nervosa with Self-Induced Vomiting. Canadian Journal of General Internal Medicine 2018;13(3):35–38.
36. Tella SH, Kommalapati A. Thyrotoxic Periodic Paralysis: An Underdiagnosed and Under-recognized Condition. Cureus. 2015;7(10):e342.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

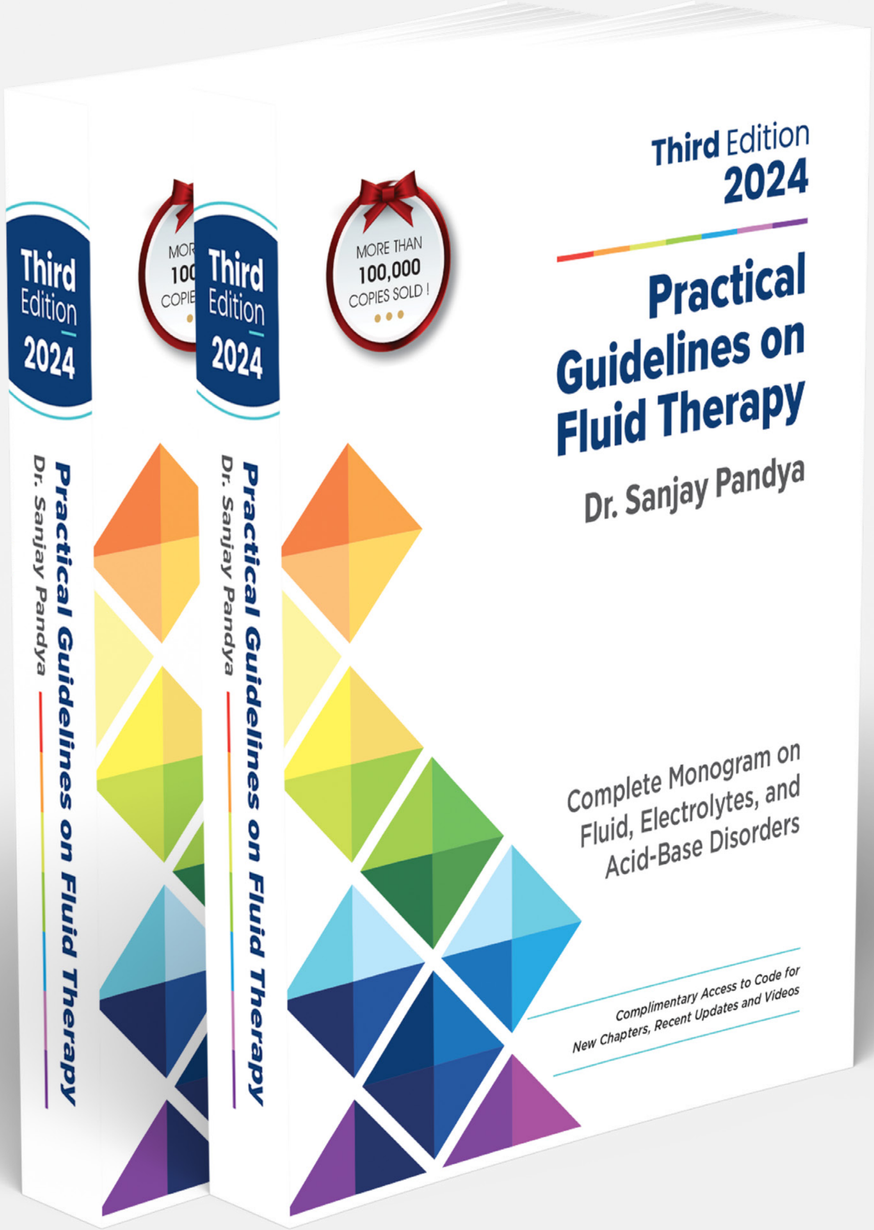
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid

Chapter 23:

Hyperkalemia


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

23 Hyperkalemia

Etiology **269**
- Drug-induced hyperkalemia 270
  - Impaired renal potassium excretion 270
  - Transcellular potassium shift ... 271
- Diabetes 271
- Increased oral intake 272
- Pseudohyperkalemia 272

Clinical Presentation **272**
- Neuromuscular manifestations 272
- Cardiac manifestations 273
- ECG changes 273

Diagnosis of Hyperkalemia **273**

Diagnosis of Etiology of Hyperkalemia **274**
- History and physical examination .. 274
- Laboratory evaluation 274

Management **275**
- Goals 275
- Emergency management for acute hyperkalemia 275
  - Protection (Calcium gluconate)..275
  - Redistribution (Insulin and glucose, beta-adrenergic agonists, sodium bicarbonate).. 277
  - Removal (Diuretics, potassium binders, dialysis)...................... 280
  - Monitoring............................... 282
- Management for chronic hyperkalemia 283
- Specific etiological treatment........ 283

A serum potassium level greater than 5.5 mEq/L is considered hyperkalemia. The incidence of hyperkalemia is very low in the general population but increases in patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD), heart failure, diabetes and in patients receiving renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system inhibitor (RAASi) treatment [1–5]. Hyperkalemia is a potentially life-threatening electrolyte disorder associated with significantly increased hospitalizations, cardiovascular events, and all-cause mortality [6–9]. In addition, acute severe hyperkalemia is a potentially dangerous problem that can cause cardiac arrhythmias leading to cardiac arrest and death.

ETIOLOGY

The most common causes of hyperkalemia are renal dysfunction (acute or chronic), medication causing impaired potassium excretion, diabetes mellitus, cell lysis (rhabdomyolysis, tumor lysis syndrome, massive hemolysis), and pseudohyperkalemia [10]. The causes of hyperkalemia based on its mechanism of development are summarized in Table 23.1.

CKD is the most common risk factor for hyperkalemia, and hyperkalemia is the most common electrolyte disturbance in CKD [11, 12]. Furthermore, as CKD advances, the prevalence of hyperkalemia increases [3, 13].

A. Drug-induced hyperkalemia

Various drugs interfere with potassium homeostasis and can cause hyperkalemia by affecting renal potassium excretion, inhibiting the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, or promoting the transcellular potassium shift from intracellular fluid (ICF) to extracellular fluid (ECF) compartment (Table 23.2. Drug-induced hyperkalemia) [10, 14, 15].

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Nilsson E, Gasparini A, Ärnlöv J, et al. Incidence and determinants of hyperkalemia and hypokalemia in a large healthcare system. Int J Cardiol. 2017;245:277–284.
2. Betts KA, Woolley JM, Mu F, et al. The prevalence of hyperkalemia in the United States. Curr Med Res Opin. 2018;34(6):971–978.
3. Belmar Vega L, Galabia ER, Bada da Silva J, et al. Epidemiology of hyperkalemia in chronic kidney disease. Nefrologia (Engl Ed). 2019;39(3):277–286.
4. Kashihara N, Kohsaka S, Kanda E, et al. Hyperkalemia in real-world patients under continuous medical care in Japan. Kidney Int Rep. 2019;4(9):1248–60.
5. Palmer BF, Carrero JJ, Clegg DJ, et al. Clinical Management of Hyperkalemia. Mayo Clin Proc. 2021;96(3):744–762.
6. Kovesdy CP, Matsushita K, Sang Y, et al. CKD Prognosis Consortium. Serum potassium and adverse outcomes across the range of kidney function: a CKD Prognosis Consortium meta-analysis. Eur Heart J. 2018;39(17):1535–1542.
7. Hoppe LK, Muhlack DC, Koenig W, et al. Association of Abnormal Serum Potassium Levels with Arrhythmias and Cardiovascular Mortality: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Observational Studies. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther. 2018;32(2):197–21.
8. Cooper LB, Benson L, Mentz RJ et al. Association between potassium level and outcomes in heart failure with reduced ejection fraction: a cohort study from the Swedish Heart Failure Registry. Eur J Heart Fail 2020;22(8):1390–1398.
9. Hougen I, Leon SJ, Whitlock R, et al. Hyperkalemia and its Association with Mortality, Cardiovascular Events, Hospitalizations, and Intensive Care Unit Admissions in a Population-Based Retrospective Cohort. Kidney Int Rep. 2021;6(5):1309–1316.
10. Hunter RW, Bailey MA. Hyperkalemia: pathophysiology, risk factors and consequences. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2019;34(Suppl 3):iii2–iii11.
11. Dunn JD, Benton WW, Orozco-Torrentera E, et al. The burden of hyperkalemia in patients with cardiovascular and renal disease. Am J Manag Care. 2015;21(15 Suppl):s307–15.
12. Seliger SL. Hyperkalemia in patients with chronic renal failure. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2019;34(Suppl 3):iii12–iii18.
13. Einhorn LM, Zhan M, Hsu VD, et al. The frequency of hyperkalemia and its significance in chronic kidney disease. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169(12):1156–62.
14. Ben Salem C, Badreddine A, Fathallah N, et al. Drug-induced hyperkalemia. Drug Saf. 2014;37(9):677–92.
15. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Physiology and Pathophysiology of Potassium Homeostasis: Core Curriculum 2019. Am J Kidney Dis. 2019;74(5):682–695.
16. Adrogué HJ, Lederer ED, Suki WN, et al. Determinants of plasma potassium levels in diabetic ketoacidosis. Medicine (Baltimore) 1986;65(3):163–172.
17. Grande VJ, Macias Nunez JF, Miralles JM, et al. Hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism in diabetic

patients with chronic renal failure. Am J Nephrol 1988;8(2):127–37.

18. Uribarri J, Oh MS, Carroll HJ. Hyperkalemia in diabetes mellitus. J Diabet Complications. 1990;4(1):3–7.
19. Umpierrez GE, Murphy MB, Kitabchi AE. Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar Syndrome. Diabetes Spectrum 2002;15(1):28–36.
20. Hollander-Rodriguez JC, Calvert JF Jr. Hyperkalemia. Am Fam Physician. 2006;73(2):283–90.
21. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care 2009;32(7):1335–1343.
22. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Electrolyte and Acid-Base Disturbances in Patients with Diabetes Mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(6):548–59.
23. Asirvatham JR, Moses V, Bjornson L. Errors in potassium measurement: a laboratory perspective for the clinician. N Am J Med Sci. 2013;5(4):255–259.
24. Wiederkehr MR, Moe OW. Factitious hyperkalemia. Am J Kidney Dis 2000;36(5):1049–53.
25. Ismail A, Shingler W, Seneviratne J, et al. In vitro and in vivo haemolysis and potassium measurement. BMJ 2005;330(7497):949.
26. Smellie WS. Spurious hyperkalaemia. BMJ. 2007;334(7595):693–5.
27. Krogager ML, Kragholm K, Thomassen JQ, et al. Update on management of hypokalaemia and goals for the lower potassium level in patients with cardiovascular disease: a review in collaboration with the European Society of Cardiology Working Group on Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy. Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Pharmacother. 2021:pvab038.
28. Šálek T. Pseudohyperkalemia - Potassium released from cells due to clotting and centrifugation - a case report. Biochem Med (Zagreb). 2018;28(1):011002.
29. Sevastos N, Theodossiades G, Archimandritis AJ. Pseudohyperkalemia in serum: a new insight into an old phenomenon. Clin Med Res. 2008;6(1):30–32.
30. Jain AG, Tauseef A, Hasan SA, et al. Pseudohyperkalemia: To Treat or not to Treat. Cureus. 2018;10(11):e3570.
31. Mahto M, Kumar M, Kumar S, et al. Pseudohyperkalemia in Serum and Plasma: The Phenomena and Its Clinical Implications. Indian J Clin Biochem. 2021;36(2):235–238.
32. Avelar T. Reverse pseudohyperkalemia in a patient with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Perm J. 2014;18(4):e150–152.
33. Montford JR, Linas S. How Dangerous Is Hyperkalemia? J Am Soc Nephrol 2017;28(11):3155–3165.
34. Martinez-Vea A, Bardají A, Garcia C, et al. Severe hyperkalemia with minimal electrocardiographic manifestations: a report of seven cases. J Electrocardiol. 1999;32(1):45–9.
35. Montague BT, Ouellette JR, Buller GK. Retrospective review of the frequency of ECG changes in hyperkalemia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2008;3(2):324–30.
36. Cohen R, Ramos R, Garcia CA, et al. Electrocardiogram manifestations in hyperkalemia. World Journal of Cardiovascular Diseases 2012;2:57–63.
37. Ryuge A, Nomura A, Shimizu H, et al. Warning: the ECG may be normal in severe hyperkalemia. Intern Med. 2017;56(16):2243–2244.
38. Yoon D, Lim HS, Jeong JC, et al. Quantitative Evaluation of the Relationship between T-Wave-Based Features and Serum Potassium Level in Real-World Clinical Practice. Biomed Res Int. 2018;2018:3054316.
39. Diercks DB, Shumaik GM, Harrigan RA, et al. Electrocardiographic manifestations: Electrolyte abnormalities. J Emerg Med. 2004;27(2):153–160.
40. Littmann L, Gibbs MA. Electrocardiographic manifestations of severe hyperkalemia. J Electrocardiol. 2018;51(5):814–817.
41. Clase CM, Carrero JJ, Ellison DH, et al. Potassium homeostasis and management of dyskalemia in kidney diseases: conclusions from a Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Controversies Conference. Kidney Int. 2020;97(1):42–61.
42. Sood MM, Sood AR, Richardson R. Emergency management and commonly encountered outpatient scenarios in patients with hyperkalemia. Mayo Clin Proc. 2007;82(12):1553–61.
43. Campese VM, Adenuga G. Electrophysiological and clinical consequences of hyperkalemia. Kidney Int Suppl. 2016;6(1):16–19.
44. Choi MJ, Ziyadeh FN. The utility of the transtubular potassium gradient in the evaluation of hyperkalemia. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2008;19(3):424–6.
45. Kamel KS, Halperin M. Intrarenal urea recycling leads to a higher rate of renal excretion of potassium: an hypothesis with clinical implications. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2011;20(5):547–54.
46. Halperin ML. Assessing the renal response in patients with potassium disorders: a shift in emphasis from the TTKG to the urine K+/creatinine ratio. Afr J Nephrol. 2017;20(1):22–24.
47. Kamel KS, Halperin ML. Use of Urine Electrolytes and Urine Osmolality in the Clinical Diagnosis of Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders. Kidney Int Rep. 2021;6(5):1211–1224.
48. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Diagnosis and treatment of hyperkalemia. Cleve Clin J Med. 2017;84(12):934–942.
49. Kamel KS, Halperin ML. Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Physiology - A Problem-Based Approach (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2017:445–446.
50. Lindner G, Burdmann EA, Clase CM, et al. Acute hyperkalemia in the emergency department: a summary from a Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes conference. Eur J Emerg Med. 2020;27(5):329–337.
51. Alfonzo A, Harrison A, Baines R, et al. Clinical practice guidelines: Treatment of Acute Hyperkalemia in Adults. UK Renal Association July 2020.
52. Mount DB. Disorders of potassium balance. In: Brenner and Rector's The Kidney, 11th ed, Yu A, Chertow G, Luyckx V, et al (Eds), W.B. Saunders &

Company, Philadelphia 2020.p.573.
53. Fenton F, Smally AJ, Laut J. Hyperkalemia and digoxin toxicity in a patient with kidney failure. Ann Emerg Med 1996;28(4):440–441.
54. Levine M, Nikkanen H, Pallin DJ. The effects of intravenous calcium in patients with digoxin toxicity. J Emerg Med 2011;40(1):41–46.
55. Crnobrnja L, Metlapalli M, Jiang C, et al. The Association of Insulin-dextrose Treatment with Hypoglycemia in Patients with Hyperkalemia. Sci Rep. 2020;10(1):22044.
56. Moussavi K, Fitter S, Gabrielson SW, et al. Management of Hyperkalemia with Insulin and Glucose: Pearls for the Emergency Clinician. J Emerg Med. 2019;57(1):36–42.
57. Tee SA, Devine K, Potts A, et al. Iatrogenic hypoglycaemia following glucose-insulin infusions for the treatment of hyperkalaemia. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2021;94(2):176–182.
58. LaRue HA, Peksa GD, Shah SC. A comparison of insulin doses for the treatment of hyperkalemia in patients with renal insufficiency. Pharmacotherapy 2017;37(12):1516–1522.
59. McNicholas BA, Pham MH, Carli K, et al. Treatment of hyperkalemia with a low-dose insulin protocol is effective and results in reduced hypoglycemia. Kidney Int Rep 2018;3(2):328–336.
60. Wheeler DT, Schafers SJ, Horwedel TA, et al. Weight-based insulin dosing for acute hyperkalemia results in less hypoglycemia. J Hosp Med. 2016;11(5):355–7.
61. Harel Z, Kamel KS. Optimal Dose and Method of Administration of Intravenous Insulin in the Management of Emergency Hyperkalemia: A Systematic Review. PLoS One. 2016;11(5):0154963.
62. Coca A, Valencia AL, Bustamante J, et al. Hypoglycemia following intravenous insulin plus glucose for hyperkalemia in patients with impaired renal function. PLoS ONE. 2017;12:0172961.
63. Li T, Vijayan A. Insulin for the treatment of hyperkalemia: a double-edged sword?. Clin Kidney J. 2014;7(3):239–241.
64. Viera AJ, Wouk N. Potassium Disorders: Hypokalemia and Hyperkalemia. Am Fam Physician. 2015;92(6):487–95.
65. Allon M, Copkney C. Albuterol and insulin for treatment of hyperkalemia in hemodialysis patients. Kidney Int. 1990;38(5):869–872.
66. Mahoney BA, Smith WA, Lo DS, et al. Emergency interventions for hyperkalaemia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2005;2005(2):CD003235.
67. Dépret F, Peacock WF, Liu KD, et al. Management of hyperkalemia in the acutely ill patient. Ann Intensive Care. 2019;9(1):32.
68. Liou HH, Chiang SS, Wu S, et al. Hypokalemic effects of intravenous infusion or nebulization of salbutamol in patients with chronic renal failure: comparative study. Am J Kidney Dis. 1994;23(2):266–271.
69. Mount DB. Disorders of potassium balance. In: Brenner and Rector's The Kidney, 11th ed, Yu A, Chertow G, Luyckx V, et al (Eds), W.B. Saunders & Company, Philadelphia 2020.p.574.
70. McClure RJ, Prasad VK, Brocklebank JT. Treatment of hyperkalaemia using intravenous and nebulised salbutamol. Arch Dis Child 1994;70(2):126–128.
71. Batterink J, Cessford TA, Taylor RAI. Pharmacological interventions for the acute management of hyperkalaemia in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015;CD010344.
72. Allon M, Dunlay R, Copkney C. Nebulised albuterol for acute hyperkalaemia in patients on haemodialysis. Ann Intern Med 1989;110(6):426–429.
73. Sterns RH, Grieff M, Bernstein PL. Treatment of hyperkalemia: something old, something new. Kidney Int. 2016;89(3):546–554.
74. Bianchi S, Aucella F, De Nicola L, et al. Management of hyperkalemia in patients with kidney disease: a position paper endorsed by the Italian Society of Nephrology. J Nephrol. 2019;32(4):499–516.
75. Montassier E, Legrand M, Rossignol P, et al. Hyperkalemia in the emergency department: Consider the use of nebulized salbutamol. Am J Emerg Med. 2019;37(5):1004.
76. Lim AKH, Crnobrnja L, Metlapalli M, et al. The Effect of Patient Factors and Cotreatments on the Magnitude of Potassium Lowering with Insulin-Glucose Treatment in Patients with Hyperkalemia. Epidemiologia. 2021;2(1):27–35.
77. Weisberg LS. Management of severe hyperkalemia. Crit Care Med. 2008;36(12):3246–3251.
78. Chalisey A, Ross C, Weavers N. Joint Trust Guideline for the management of hyperkalaemia in adults, James Paget University Hospitals and Norfolk and Norwich University Hospitals. 2018.
79. Geng S, Green EF, Kurz MC, et al. Sodium bicarbonate administration and subsequent potassium concentration in hyperkalemia treatment. Am J Emerg Med. 2021;50:132–135.
80. Farkas J. Hyperkalemia. The Internet Book of Critical Care. June 20, 2021. Visit: https://emcrit.org/ibcc/hyperkalemia/#Rx_severe_hyperkalemia:_Temporizing_measures.
81. Esposito P, Conti NE, Falqui V, et al. New Treatment Options for Hyperkalemia in Patients with Chronic Kidney Disease. J Clin Med. 2020;9(8):2337.
82. Rakisheva A, Marketou M, Klimenko A, et al. Hyperkalemia in heart failure: Foe or friend? Clin Cardiol 2020;43(7):666–7.
83. Rosano GMC, Tamargo J, Kjeldsen KP, et al. Expert consensus document on the management of hyperkalaemia in patients with cardiovascular disease treated with renin angiotensin aldosterone system inhibitors: coordinated by the working group on cardiovascular pharmacotherapy of the European Society of Cardiology. Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Pharmacother. 2018;4(3):180–8.
84. Watson M, Abbott KC, Yuan CM. Damned if you do, damned if you don't: potassium binding resins in hyperkalemia. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;5(10):1723–1726.
85. Chaitman M, Dixit D, Bridgeman MB. Potassium-

binding agents for the clinical management of hyperkalemia. P T. 2016;41(1):43–50.

86. Lepage L, Dufour AC, Doiron J, et al. Randomized clinical trial of sodium polystyrene sulfonate for the treatment of mild hyperkalemia in CKD. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2015;10(12):2136–2142.
87. Mistry M, Shea A, Giguère P, et al. Evaluation of Sodium Polystyrene Sulfonate Dosing Strategies in the Inpatient Management of Hyperkalemia. Ann Pharmacother 2016;50(6):455–62.
88. Dardik A, Moesinger RC, Efron G, et al. Acute abdomen with colonic necrosis induced by Kayexalate-sorbitol. South Med J. 2000;93(5):511–3.
89. McGowan CE, Saha S, Chu G, et al. Intestinal necrosis due to sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) in sorbitol. South Med J. 2009;102(5):493–497.
90. Harel Z, Harel S, Shah PS, et al. Gastrointestinal adverse events with sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) use: a systematic review. Am J Med. 2013;126(3):264.e9–24.
91. US Food and Drug Administration. Kayexalate (sodium polystyrene sulfonate, USP) powder approval letter (2009). US Food and Drug Administration website. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/appletter/2009/011287s022ltr.pdf. Accessed September 6, 2021.
92. Laureati P, Xu Y, Trevisan M, et al. Initiation of sodium polystyrene sulphonate and the risk of gastrointestinal adverse events in advanced chronic kidney disease: a nationwide study. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2020;35(9):1518–1526.
93. Noel JA, Bota SE, Petrcich W, et al. Risk of hospitalization for serious adverse gastrointestinal events associated with sodium polystyrene sulfonate use in patients of advanced age. JAMA Intern Med. 2019;179(8):1025–1033.
94. Meaney CJ, Beccari MV, Yang Y, et al. Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Patiromer and Sodium Zirconium Cyclosilicate: A New Armamentarium for the Treatment of Hyperkalemia. Pharmacotherapy. 2017;37(4):401–411.
95. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Sodium zirconium cyclosilicate for treating hyperkalaemia. 2019. https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta599/chapter/1-Recommendations (accessed 8 September 2021).
96. Rafique Z, Liu M, Staggers KA, et al. Patiromer for Treatment of Hyperkalemia in the Emergency Department: A Pilot Study. Acad Emerg Med 2020;27(1):54–60.
97. Peacock WF, Rafique Z, Vishnevskiy K, et al. Emergency Potassium Normalization Treatment Including Sodium Zirconium Cyclosilicate: A Phase II, Randomized, Double-blind, Placebo-controlled Study (ENERGIZE). Acad Emerg Med 2020;27(6):475–486.
98. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Patiromer for treating hyperkalaemia. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence 2020. https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta623/chapter/1-Recommendations (Accessed 8 September 2021).
99. Campbell P, McKeveney P, Donegan K, et al. Practical guidance for the use of potassium binders in the management of hyperkalaemia in patients with heart failure and/or chronic kidney disease. Br J Hosp Med (Lond). 2021;82(4):1–11.
100. Morales E, Cravedi P, Manrique J. Management of Chronic Hyperkalemia in Patients with Chronic Kidney Disease: An Old Problem with News Options. Front Med (Lausanne). 2021;8:653634.
101. Shrestha DB, Budhathoki P, Sedhai YR, et al. Patiromer and Sodium Zirconium Cyclosilicate in Treatment of Hyperkalemia: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp. 2021;95:100635.
102. Hoy SM. Sodium Zirconium Cyclosilicate: A Review in Hyperkalaemia [published correction appears in Drugs. 2019;79(5):591]. Drugs. 2018;78(15):1605–1613.
103. Spinowitz BS, Fishbane S, Pergola PE, et al. Sodium Zirconium Cyclosilicate among Individuals with Hyperkalemia: A 12-Month Phase 3 Study. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2019;14(6):798–809.
104. Mount DB. Disorders of potassium balance. In: Brenner and Rector's The Kidney, 11th ed, Yu A, Chertow G, Luyckx V, et al (Eds), W.B. Saunders & Company, Philadelphia 2020.p.577.
105. Holleck JL, Roberts AE, Marhoffer EA, et al. Risk of Intestinal Necrosis with Sodium Polystyrene Sulfonate: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. J Hosp Med. 2021;16(8):489–494.
106. Statland JM, Fontaine B, Hanna MG, et al. Review of the Diagnosis and Treatment of Periodic Paralysis. Muscle Nerve. 2018;57(4):522–530.
107. Renal Association Clinical Practice Guidelines - Treatment of Acute Hyperkalaemia in Adults - July 2020. (https://ukkidney.org/sites/renal.org/files/RENAL%20ASSOCIATION%20HYPERKALAEMIA%20GUIDELINE%202020.pdf). Accessed on 19 August 2021.
108. Berbenetz NM, Mrkobrada M. Mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists for heart failure: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Cardiovasc Disord. 2016;16(1):246.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

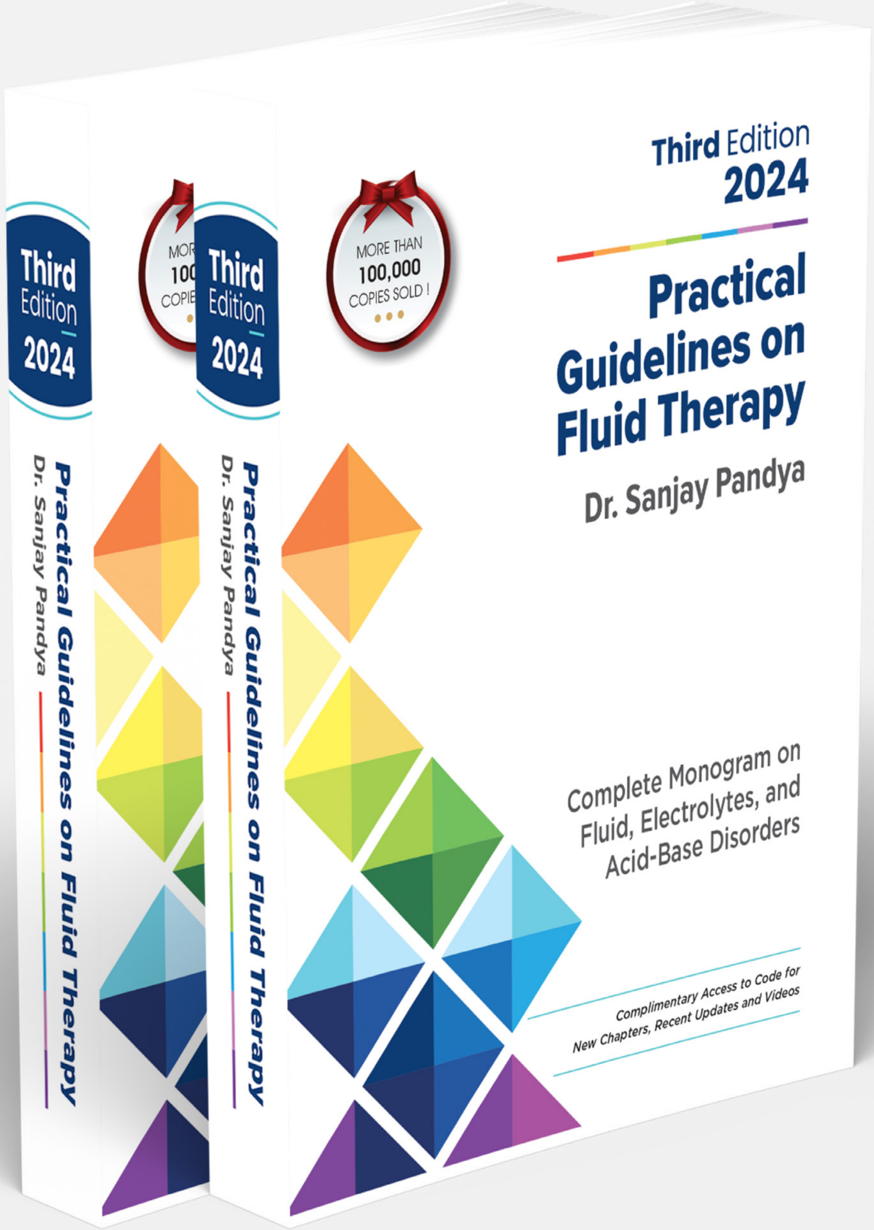
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 24:

Hypocalcemia


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

24

Hypocalcemia

Basic Physiology **288**
- Distribution 288
- Serum calcium 288
- Ionized calcium 289
- Corrected total calcium 289

Regulation **289**
- Role of parathyroid hormone 289
- Role of vitamin D 290
- Role of calcitonin 290
- Calcium sensing receptor system 290
- Effect of pH 290
- Effect of phosphate and magnesium level 291

HYPOCALCEMIA

Etiology **291**
- Postsurgical 291
- Vitamin D deficiency 292
- Acute pancreatitis 292

Clinical Features **292**

Diagnosis **292**
- History and physical examination 293
- Confirm the diagnosis 293
- Measure serum PTH 293
- Measure serum phosphate, magnesium, and vitamin D status 293
- Order other tests 293

Management **293**
- Acute management 294
  - Emergency therapy 294
  - Calcium gluconate infusion 295
  - Monitoring 295
  - Calcium chloride 295
  - Massive transfusion 295
  - Precautions 295
- Long term management 296
  - Calcium supplementation 296
  - Vitamin D supplementation 297
- Treatment of underlying etiology 297

BASIC PHYSIOLOGY

Calcium (Ca) is essential for bone formation, neuromuscular function, and blood coagulation. If calcium intake is inadequate, it may impair bone mineralization in children and accelerate bone loss in adults.

Distribution

An average adult's body contains 20 to 25 gm/kg or 1.2 to 1.4 kg of calcium, so it is the most abundant cation in the body. Out of this, about 99% is present in the bone, 1% in the soft tissue cells, and 0.15% in the extracellular fluid (ECF). As serum calcium concentration constitutes less than 1% of the total body calcium, it is a poor marker of overall total body calcium content.

Serum calcium

The normal value is about 8.5 to 10.5 mg/dL (4.3 to 5.2 mEq/L, 2.2 to 2.6 mmol/L).

The total ECF calcium exists in three forms:

1. Bound to proteins: About 40% of calcium is bound to protein (mainly albumin) which will not be diffusible and biologically active.
2. Free-ionized: 50% of calcium is in an ionized form which is diffusible and biologically active.
3. Bound to anions: 10% calcium is complexed with the anions of organic acids such as phosphate, bicarbonate, citrate, lactate, or sulfate phosphate. This form of calcium is diffusible but biologically inactive.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Steen O, Clase C, Don-Wauchope A. Corrected calcium formula in routine clinical use does not accurately reflect ionized calcium in hospital patients. Can J Gen Int Med. 2016;11(3):14–21.
2. Lian IA, Asberg A. Should total calcium be adjusted for albumin? A retrospective observational study of laboratory data from central Norway. BMJ Open. 2018;8(4):e017703.
3. Kenny CM, Murphy CE, Boyce DS, et al. Things We Do for No Reason™: Calculating a "Corrected Calcium" Level. J Hosp Med. 2021;16(8):499–501.
4. Conigrave AD. The Calcium-Sensing Receptor and the Parathyroid: Past, Present, Future. Front Physiol. 2016;7:563.
5. Witteveen JE, van Thiel S, Romijn JA, et al. Hungry bone syndrome: still a challenge in the post-operative management of primary hyperparathyroidism: a systematic review of the literature. Eur J Endocrinol. 2013;168(3):R45–53.
6. Kaya C, Tam AA, Dirikoç A, et al. Hypocalcemia development in patients operated for primary hyperparathyroidism: Can it be predicted preoperatively? Arch Endocrinol Metab. 2016;60(5):465–471.
7. Jain N, Reilly RF. Hungry bone syndrome. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens. 2017;26(4):250–255.
8. Kelly A, Levine MA. Hypocalcemia in the critically ill patient. J Intensive Care Med. 2013;28(3):166–77.
9. Ahmed A, Azim A, Gurjar M, et al. Hypocalcemia in acute pancreatitis revisited. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2016;20(3):173–177.
10. Cooper MS, Gittoes NJL. Diagnosis and management of hypocalcaemia. BMJ 2008;336:1298–1302.
11. Pepe J, Colangelo L, Biamonte F, et al. Diagnosis and management of hypocalcemia. Endocrine. 2020;69(3):485–495.
12. Kakava K, Tournis S, Papadakis G, et al. Postsurgical Hypoparathyroidism: A Systematic Review. In Vivo. 2016;30(3):171–9.
13. Augustine M, Horwitz MJ. Are You Sure the Patient Has Hypocalcemia? Hypocalcemia Endocrinology Metabolism, Endocrinology Adviser February 4, 2019. Accessed on 27 Nov 2021: https://www.endocrinologyadvisor.com/author/mara-j-horwitz-dsm/.
14. Walsh J, Gittoes N, Selby P. Society for Endocrinology Endocrine Emergency Guidance: Emergency management of acute hypocalcemia in adult patients. Endocr Connect. 2016;5(5):G9–G11.
15. Bove-Fenderson E, Mannstadt M. Hypocalcemic disorders. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2018;32(5):639–656.
16. Byerly S, Inaba K, Biswas S, et al. Transfusion-Related Hypocalcemia After Trauma. World J Surg. 2020;44(11):3743–3750.
17. Hall C, Nagengast AK, Knapp C, et al. Massive transfusions and severe hypocalcemia: An opportunity for monitoring and supplementation guidelines. Transfusion. 2021;61:S188–S194.
18. Kyle T, Greaves I, Beynon A, et al. Ionised calcium levels in major trauma patients who received blood en route to a military medical treatment facility. Emerg Med J. 2018;35(3):176–179.
19. Fong J, Khan A. Hypocalcemia: updates in diagnosis

and management for primary care. Can Fam Physician. 2012;58(2):158–62.

20. Mannstadt M, Clarke BL, Vokes T, et al. Efficacy and safety of recombinant human parathyroid hormone (1–84) in hypoparathyroidism (REPLACE): a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised, phase 3 study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 2013;1(4):275–83.
21. Vokes TJ, Mannstadt M, Levine MA, et al. Recombinant Human Parathyroid Hormone Effect on Health-Related Quality of Life in Adults with Chronic Hypoparathyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2018;103(2):722–731.
22. Mannstadt M, Clarke BL, Bilezikian JP, et al. Safety and efficacy of 5 years of treatment with recombinant human parathyroid hormone in adults with hypoparathyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2019;104(11):5136–5147.
23. Laurer E, Grünberger J, Naidoo U, et al. Recombinant human parathyroid hormone (1–84) replacement therapy in a child with hypoparathyroidism. Bone. 2021;144:115834.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

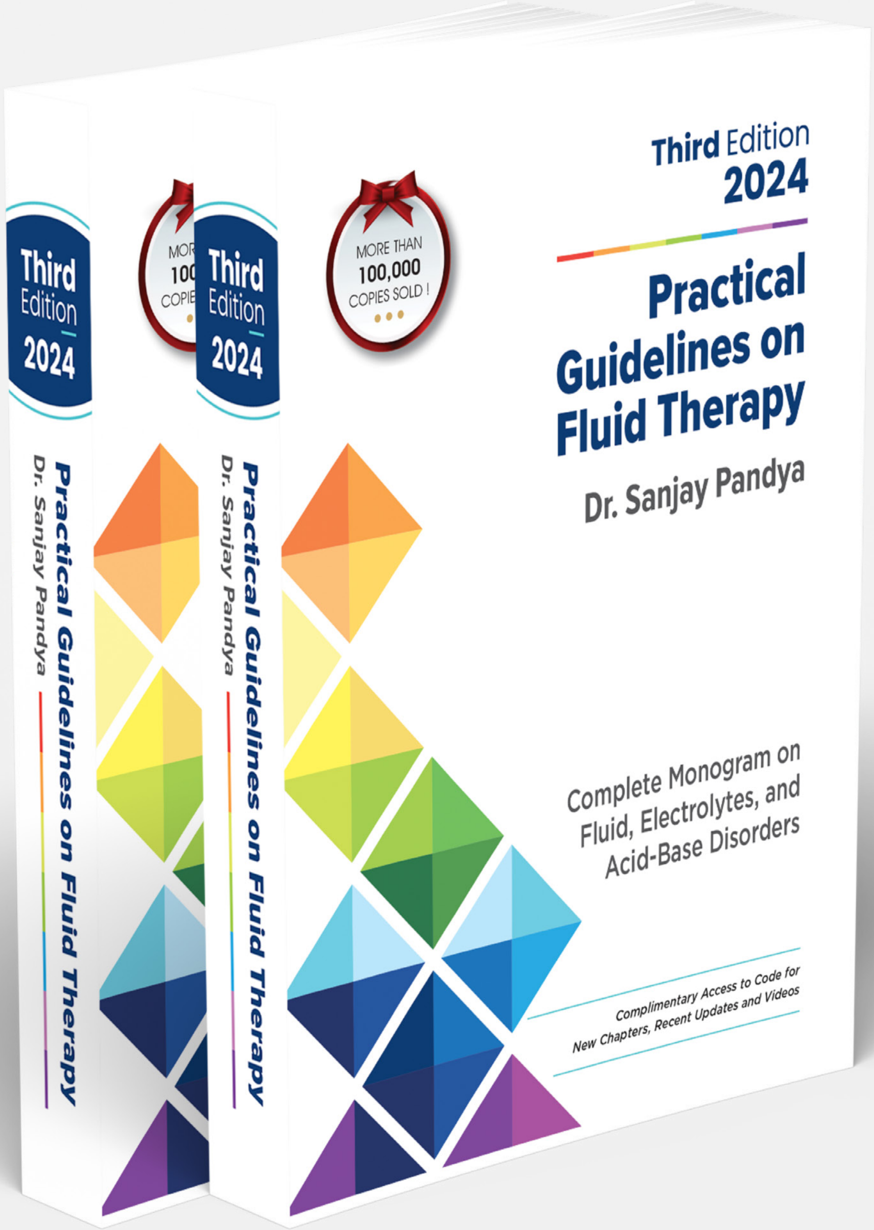
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid therapy.org

Chapter 25:

Hypercalcemia


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

25 Hypercalcemia

Etiology **299**
- Primary hyperparathyroidism 299
- Malignancy 300
- Vitamin D toxicity 300
- Milk alkali syndrome 301
- Granulomatous diseases.............. 301
- Thiazide diuretics 301
- Immobilization 301

Clinical Features............................. **301**
Diagnosis **302**
- Confirm the diagnosis.................. 302
- History and physical examination..302
- Measure serum PTH 303
- Order other tests 304

Management.................................... **305**
Selection of modality 305
To increase urinary excretion 305
- Isotonic saline hydration.......... 305
- Furosemide 307

To inhibit bone resorption 307
- Calcitonin................................. 307
- Bisphosphonates..................... 307
- Denosumab 308

To decrease intestinal absorption..308
- Glucocorticoids........................ 308
- Phosphate 308

To remove calcium directly 308
- Dialysis 308

Specific treatment of underlying causes 309

Hypercalcemia is a less common disorder than hypocalcemia, occurring in about 0.6–7.5% of hospitalized and less than 1.0% of outpatients [1–6].

Hypercalcemia is defined as total serum calcium >10.5 mg/dL (>2.6 mmol/L) with normal serum albumin or ionized calcium >5.2 mg/dL (>1.3 mmol/L) [7].

When total serum calcium is >14.0 mg/dL (>3.5 mmol/L) or ionized calcium is >7.0 mg/dL (>1.7 mmol/L), it is considered severe hypercalcemia [7]. Early detection and prompt treatment of hypercalcemia are essential because it carries high morbidity and mortality [7, 8].

ETIOLOGY

Primary hyperparathyroidism and malignancy are the two most common causes of hypercalcemia in more than 90% of patients [7, 9]. In recent times, there has been a significant rise in hypercalcemia due to Vitamin D toxicity.

Mechanisms by which different etiologies cause hypercalcemia are enhanced bone resorption, increased intestinal absorption, or decreased renal calcium excretion (Table 25.1).

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Fisken RA, Heath DA, Somers S, et al. Hypercalcaemia in hospital patients: clinical and diagnostic aspects. Lancet. 1981;1(8213):202–7.
2. Dent DM, Miller JL, Klaff L, et al. The incidence and causes of hypercalcaemia. Postgrad Med J. 1987;63(743):745–750.
3. Lee CT, Yang CC, Lam KK, et al. Hypercalcemia in the emergency department. Am J Med Sci. 2006;331(3):119–23.
4. Lindner G, Felber R, Schwarz C, et al. Hypercalcemia in the ED: prevalence, etiology, and outcome. Am J Emerg Med. 2013;31(4):657–60.
5. Catalano A, Chilà D, Bellone F, et al. Incidence of hypocalcemia and hypercalcemia in hospitalized patients: Is it changing? J Clin Transl Endocrinol. 2018;13:9–13.
6. Korkut S, Polat Ö, Kazancı MH, et al. Hypercalcemia in the emergency department: prevalence, etiology, and mortality rate. Med J Bakirkoy 2020;16(2):143–7.
7. Carroll MF, Schade DS. A practical approach to hypercalcemia. Am Fam Physician. 2003;67(9):1959–66.
8. Mousseaux C, Dupont A, Rafat C, et al. Epidemiology, clinical features, and management of severe hypercalcemia in critically ill patients. Ann Intensive Care. 2019;9(1):133.
9. Renaghan ADM, Rosner M. Hypercalcemia: etiology and management. Nephrol Dial Transpl. 2018;33(6):549–551.
10. Khoury N, Carmichael KA. Evaluation and therapy of hypercalcemia. Mo Med. 2011;108(2):99–103.
11. Bilezikian JP. Primary Hyperparathyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2018;103(11):3993–4004.
12. Afzal M, Kathuria P. Familial Hypocalciuric Hypercalcemia. [Updated 2021 Jul 23]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2021 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK459190/.
13. Marx SJ. Familial Hypocalciuric Hypercalcemia as an Atypical Form of Primary Hyperparathyroidism. J Bone Miner Res. 2018;33(1):27–31.
14. Lafferty FW. Differential diagnosis of hypercalcemia. J Bone Miner Res 1991;6(Suppl 2):S51–S59.
15. Stewart AF. Clinical practice. Hypercalcemia associated with cancer. N Engl J Med 2005;352(4):373–379.
16. Gastanaga VM, Schwartzberg LS, Jain RK, et al. Prevalence of hypercalcemia among cancer patients in the United States. Cancer Med 2016;5(8):2091–100.
17. Zagzag J, Hu MI, Fisher SB, et al. Hypercalcemia and cancer: Differential diagnosis and treatment. CA Cancer J Clin. 2018;68(5):377–386.
18. Tebben PJ, Singh RJ, Kumar R. Vitamin D-Mediated Hypercalcemia: Mechanisms, Diagnosis, and Treatment. Endocr Rev. 2016;37(5):521–547.
19. Taylor PN, Davies JS. A review of the growing risk of vitamin D toxicity from inappropriate practice. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2018;84(6):1121–1127.
20. Marcinowska-Suchowierska E, Kupisz-Urbańska M, Łukaszkiewicz J, et al. Vitamin D Toxicity-A Clinical Perspective. Front Endocrinol (Lausanne). 2018;9:550.
21. Çağlar A, Tuğçe Çağlar H. Vitamin D intoxication due to misuse: 5-year experience. Arch Pediatr. 2021;28(3):222–225.
22. Nguyen T, Joe D, Shah AD. Forget the phosphorus: A case of hypervitaminosis D-induced symptomatic hypercalcemia. Clin Nephrol Case Stud. 2021;9:1–3
23. Medarov BI. Milk-alkali syndrome. Mayo Clin Proc. 2009;84(3):261–267.
24. Patel V, Mehra D, Ramirez B, et al. Milk-Alkali Syndrome as a Cause of Hypercalcemia in a Gentleman With Acute Kidney Injury and Excessive Antacid Intake. Cureus. 2021;13(2):e13056.
25. Grieff M, Bushinsky DA. Diuretics and disorders of calcium homeostasis. Semin Nephrol. 2011;31(6):535–541.
26. Griebeler ML, Kearns AE, Ryu E, et al. Thiazide-Associated Hypercalcemia: Incidence and Association With Primary Hyperparathyroidism Over Two Decades. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2016;101(3):1166–1173.
27. Tettero JM, van Eeghen E, Kooter AJ. Extreme hypercalcaemia caused by immobilisation due

to acute spinal cord injury. BMJ Case Rep. 2021;14(6):e241386.

28. Myśliwiec J. Mnemonics for endocrinologists: hyperparathyroidism. Endokrynologia Polska 2012;63(6):504–505.
29. Ma YB, Hu J, Duan YF. Acute pancreatitis connected with hypercalcemia crisis in hyperparathyroidism: A case report. World J Clin Cases. 2019;7(16):2367–2373.
30. Legrand SB. Modern management of malignant hypercalcemia. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2011;28(7):515–517.
31. Maier JD, Levine SN. Hypercalcemia in the intensive care unit: a review of pathophysiology, diagnosis, and modern therapy. J Intensive Care Med. 2015;30(5):235–252.
32. Carrick AI, Costner HB. Rapid Fire: Hypercalcemia. Emerg Med Clin North Am. 2018;36(3):549–555.
33. Farkas J. Hypercalcemia Internet Book of Critical Care, June 25, 2021. https://emcrit.org/ibcc/hypercalcemia/ Accessed 20 Dec 2021.
34. LeGrand SB, Leskuski D, Zama I. Narrative review: furosemide for hypercalcemia: an unproven yet common practice. Ann Intern Med. 2008;149(4):259–63.
35. Mirrakhimov AE. Hypercalcemia of Malignancy: An Update on Pathogenesis and Management. N Am J Med Sci. 2015;7(11):483–493.
36. Austin LA, Heath H III. Calcitonin: physiology and pathophysiology. N Engl J Med. 1981;304(5):269–278.
37. O'Doherty DP, Bickerstaff DR, McCloskey EV, et al. A comparison of the acute effects of subcutaneous and intranasal calcitonin. Clin Sci (Lond). 1990;78(2):215–9.
38. Klezlova R, Meystre C. Hypercalcemia of malignancy management. Specialist Palliative Audit and Guideline Group May 2019 Visit: http://www.wmcares.org.uk/wp-content/uploads/SPAGG_Hypercalcaemia_Jan-2020-Final-Version.pdf Searched on 21 Dec 2021.
39. Wang M, Cho C, Gray C, et al. Milk-alkali syndrome: a 'quick ease' or a 'long-lasting problem'. Endocrinol Diabetes Metab Case Rep. 2020;2020:EDM20–0028.
40. Cohen A, Shane E. Treatment of premenopausal women with low bone mineral density. Curr Osteoporos Rep. 2008;6(1):39–46.
41. Miller PD. The kidney and bisphosphonates. Bone. 2011;49(1):77–81.
42. Palmer S, Tillman F 3rd, Sharma P, et al. Safety of Intravenous Bisphosphonates for the Treatment of Hypercalcemia in Patients With Preexisting Renal Dysfunction. Ann Pharmacother. 2021;55(3):303–310.
43. Miller PD, Jamal SA, Evenepoel P, et al. Renal safety in patients treated with bisphosphonates for osteoporosis: a review. J Bone Miner Res. 2013;28(10):2049–59.
44. Hirschberg R. Renal complications from bisphosphonate treatment. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2012;6(3):342–7.
45. Hanley DA, Adachi JD, Bell A, et al. Denosumab: mechanism of action and clinical outcomes. Int J Clin Pract. 2012;66(12):1139–46.
46. Karuppiah D, Thanabalasingham G, Shine B, et al. Refractory hypercalcaemia secondary to parathyroid carcinoma: response to high-dose denosumab. Eur J Endocrinol. 2014;171(1):K1–5.
47. Camus C, Charasse C, Jouannic-Montier I, et al. Calcium free hemodialysis: experience in the treatment of 33 patients with severe hypercalcemia. Intensive Care Med. 1996;22(2):116–21.
48. Loh HH, Mohd Noor N. The Use of Hemodialysis in Refractory Hypercalcemia Secondary to Parathyroid Carcinoma. Case Rep Crit Care 2014;2014:140906.
49. Trabulus S, Oruc M, Ozgun E, et al. The Use of Low-Calcium Hemodialysis in the Treatment of Hypercalcemic Crisis. Nephron. 2018;139(4):319–331.
50. Marouço CN, Caeiro F, da Costa BM, et al. The use of hemodialysis in hypercalcemic crisis secondary to primary hyperparathyroidism. Port J Nephrol Hypert 2021;35(2):123–127.
51. Bentata Y, Benabdelhak M, Haddiya I, et al. Severe hypercalcemia requiring acute hemodialysis: A retrospective cohort study with increased incidence during the Covid-19 pandemic. Am J Emerg Med. 2022;51:374–377.
52. Wilhelm SM, Wang TS, Ruan DT, et al. The American Association of Endocrine Surgeons Guidelines for Definitive Management of Primary Hyperparathyroidism. JAMA Surg. 2016;151(10):959–968.
53. National Guideline Centre (UK). Hyperparathyroidism (primary): diagnosis, assessment and initial management. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (UK); 23 May 2019 May. (NICE Guideline, No. 132.). Visit: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng132.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

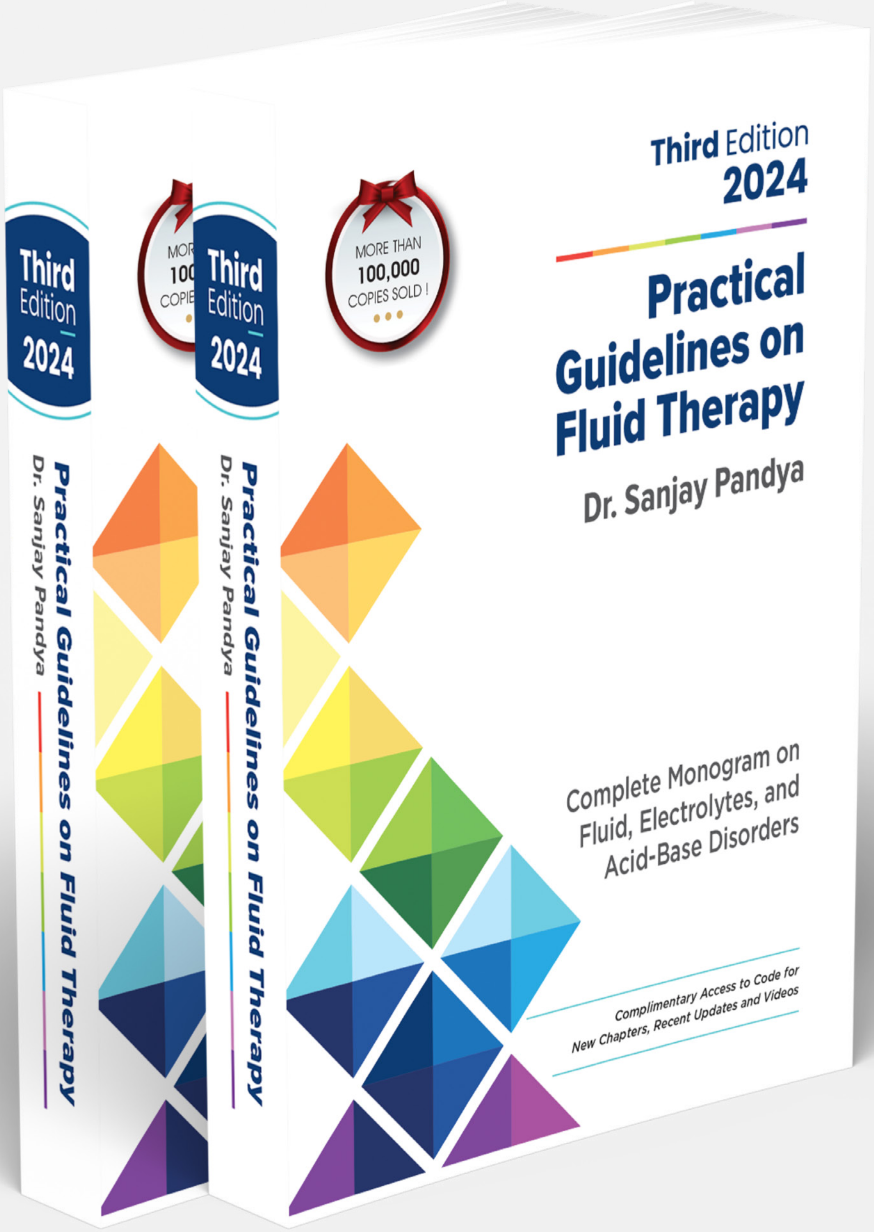
» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 26:

Hypophosphatemia


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

26

Hypophosphatemia

Basic Physiology **312**
HYPOPHOSPHATEMIA **313**
Etiology **314**
  Acute respiratory alkalosis 314
  Sepsis 314
  Increased insulin secretion 314
  Diabetic ketoacidosis 314
  Hungry bone syndrome 314
  Postoperative 315
Clinical Features **315**
  Acute hypophosphatemia 315
  Chronic hypophosphatemia 316
Diagnosis **316**
  History and physical examination 316
  Basic investigations 316
  Measurement of urinary phosphate excretion 316
  Measure serum PTH and vitamin D levels 317
  Other helpful tests 317
Management **317**
  Basic principles 317
  Precautions 318
  Correction of underlying causes 319

SERUM PHOSPHATE

Phosphorus is a vital component of all body tissues and plays an essential role in various body functions. The terms phosphate and phosphorus are commonly used interchangeably.

BASIC PHYSIOLOGY

- Phosphate is the most abundant intracellular anion, the second-largest mineral in the body after calcium, and comprises approximately 1% of the body weight.
- Distribution: Most (about 85%) of the body's phosphorus is found within bone and teeth as hydroxyapatite, and the rest is distributed in tissues throughout the body. As only 1% of total body phosphorus is found in the extracellular fluid (ECF), the value of serum phosphorus may not necessarily reflect total body phosphorus content. In addition, even a change in pH leads to a shift of phosphate (acidosis shifts phosphate from intracellular fluid (ICF) to ECF) and affects the value of serum phosphorus.
- Normal value: Normal serum phosphorus levels in adults range from 2.5 to 4.5 mg/dL (0.75 to 1.45 mmol/L). It is best measured in the fasting state since there is as much as 50% diurnal variation (lower value in the morning and higher at night and after meals). Clinically, serum phosphorus level reflects nutritional status.
- Function: Phosphorus plays a major role in bone formation and is involved in cellular energy metabolism for

almost all cellular functions (e.g., cell membranes, phospholipids, nucleic acids, acid buffering, enzyme systems, the energy carrier ATP-adenosine triphosphate, etc.).

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Gaasbeek A, Meinders AE. Hypophosphatemia: an update on its etiology and treatment. Am J Med. 2005;118(10):1094–1101.
2. Wang L, Xiao C, Chen L et al. Impact of hypophosphatemia on outcome of patients in intensive care unit: a retrospective cohort study. BMC Anesthesiol. 2019;19(1):86.
3. Halevy J, Bulvik S. Severe hypophosphatemia in hospitalized patients. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148(1):153–155.
4. O'Brien TM, Coberly L. Severe Hypophosphatemia in Respiratory Alkalosis. Adv Stud Med. 2003;3(6):345–348.
5. Barak V, Schwartz A, Kalickman I, et al. Prevalence of hypophosphatemia in sepsis and infection: the role of cytokines. Am J Med. 1998;104(1):40–7.
6. Khan AA, Mir AA, Vani ZA, et al. Significance of hypophosphatemia as an indicator of Gram negative sepsis. International Journal of Health and Clinical Research, 2021;4(10):63–66.
7. Shor R, Halabe A, Rishver S, et al. Severe hypophosphatemia in sepsis as a mortality predictor. Ann Clin Lab Sci. 2006;36(1):67–72.
8. Marinella MA. Refeeding syndrome and hypophosphatemia. J Intensive Care Med. 2005;20(3):155–9.
9. Kebler R, McDonald FD, Cadnapaphornchai P. Dynamic changes in serum phosphorus levels in diabetic ketoacidosis. Am J Med 1985;79(5):571–6.
10. Rasmussen A. Hypophosphatemia during postoperative glucose infusion. Acta Chir Scand. 1985;151(6):497–500.
11. van der Vaart A, Waanders F, van Beek AP, et al. Incidence and determinants of hypophosphatemia in diabetic ketoacidosis: an observational study. BMJ Open Diab Res Care 2021;9(1):e002018.
12. Wolfsdorf J, Craig ME, Daneman D, et al. Diabetic ketoacidosis in children and adolescents with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2009;10(12):118–33.
13. Ditzel J, Lervang HH. Disturbance of inorganic phosphate metabolism in diabetes mellitus: clinical manifestations of phosphorus-depletion syndrome during recovery from diabetic ketoacidosis. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2010;3:319–324.
14. Choi HS, Kwon A, Chae HW, et al. Respiratory failure in a diabetic ketoacidosis patient with severe hypophosphatemia. Ann Pediatr Endocrinol Metab. 2018;23(2):103–106.
15. Witteveen JE, van Thiel S, Romijn JA, et al. Hungry bone syndrome: still a challenge in the post-operative management of primary hyperparathyroidism: a systematic review of the literature. Eur J Endocrinol. 2013;168(3):R45–53.
16. Narayan A, Subramanian A. Severe hypophosphataemia: a rare cause of postoperative muscle weakness. BMJ Case Rep. 2018;2018:bcr2017221193.
17. Knochel JP, Barcenas C, Cotton JR, et al. Hypophosphatemia and rhabdomyolysis. J Clin Invest. 1978;62(6):1240–1246.
18. Zhao Y, Li Z, Shi Y, et al. Effect of hypophosphatemia on the withdrawal of mechanical ventilation in patients with acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Biomed Rep 2016;4(4):413–416.
19. Farkas J. Hypophosphatemia. Internet Book of Critical Care, May 9, 2019. Visit: https://emcrit.org/ibcc/hypophos/ Accessed 1 January 2022.
20. Florenzano P, Cipriani C, Roszko KL, et al. Approach to patients with hypophosphataemia. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2020;8(2):163–174.
21. Imel EA, Econs MJ. Approach to the hypophosphatemic patient. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(3):696–706.

22. García Martín A, Varsavsky M, Cortés Berdonces M, et al. Phosphate disorders and clinical management of hypophosphatemia and hyperphosphatemia. Endocrinol Diabetes Nutr (Engl Ed). 2020;67(3):205–215.
23. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(7):1335–43.
24. Wolfsdorf JI, Allgrove J, Craig ME, et al. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. Diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15 Suppl 20:154–79.
25. Haffner D, Emma F, Eastwood DM, et al. Clinical practice recommendations for the diagnosis and management of X-linked hypophosphataemia. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2019;15(7):435–455.
26. Lyseng-Williamson KA. Burosumab in X-linked hypophosphatemia: a profile of its use in the USA. Drugs Ther Perspect 2018;34(11):497–506.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

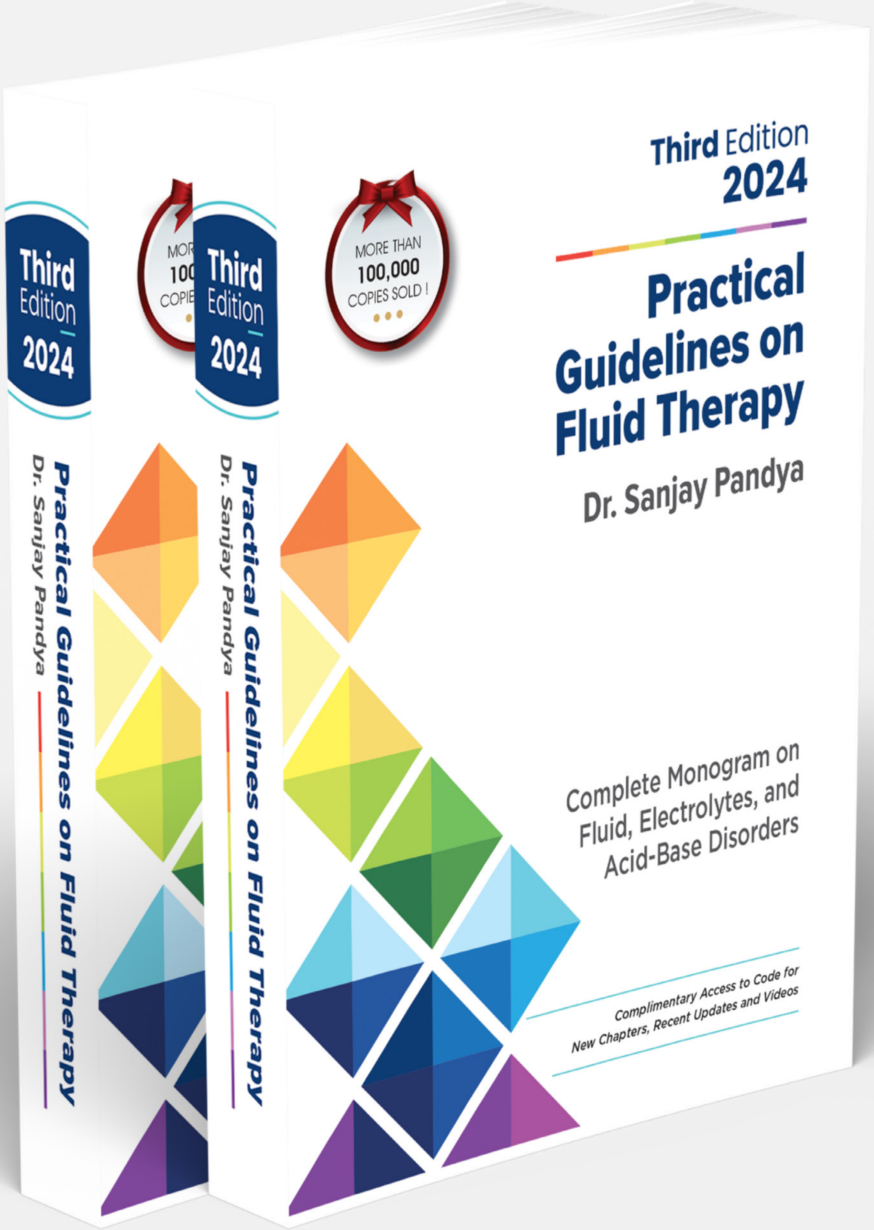
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 27:

Hyperphosphatemia


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

27 Hyperphosphatemia

Etiology **321**
  Decreased renal phosphate excretion 321
  Transcellular shift from ICF to ECF 321
  Acute massive phosphate load 321
  Spurious or pseudohypophosphatemia 322
Clinical Features **322**
Diagnosis **322**
  History and physical examination 322
  Measure serum creatinine 322
  Further investigations 322
Management **323**
  Treatment of underlying etiology 323
  Acute hyperphosphatemia 323
  Chronic hyperphosphatemia 323
    Dietary phosphate restriction 324
    Oral phosphate binders 324
    Renal replacement therapies 325

Hyperphosphatemia is defined as serum phosphate concentration greater than 4.5 mg/dL (1.45 mmol/L) in adults.

Renal excretion of phosphate is very effective, and therefore the person with normal renal function is unlikely to develop hyperphosphatemia because of increased phosphate intake. Therefore, Hyperphosphatemia is rare in the general population but commonly occurs in later stages of chronic kidney disease (CKD) with significantly impaired kidney function [1].

ETIOLOGY

Based on the mechanism of its development, the causes of hyperphosphatemia can be classified into four groups [1].

Decreased renal phosphate excretion

- Impaired renal phosphate excretion: Acute kidney injury (AKI) or chronic kidney disease with significant renal impairment are the most common cause of hyperphosphatemia [2].
- Increased renal tubular reabsorption: Hypoparathyroidism, vitamin D toxicity, acromegaly or thyrotoxicosis.

Transcellular shift

Transcellular shift from intracellular fluid (ICF) to extracellular fluid (ECF)

- Extensive cell destruction: Rhabdomyolysis, tumor lysis syndrome, or massive hemolysis.

- Severe acidosis: Severe lactic acidosis, diabetic acidosis and respiratory acidosis.
- Lack of insulin: Diabetic ketoacidosis (before treatment).

Acute massive phosphate load

Administration of phosphate-containing laxatives or enemas and IV or oral phosphate administration.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Leaf DE, Wolf M. A physiologic-based approach to the evaluation of a patient with hyperphosphatemia. Am J Kidney Dis. 2013;61(2):330–6.
2. García Martín A, Varsavsky M, Cortés Berdonces M, et al. Phosphate disorders and clinical management of hypophosphatemia and hyperphosphatemia. Endocrinol Diabetes Nutr (Engl Ed). 2020;67(3):205–215.
3. Liamis G, Liberopoulos E, Barkas F, et al. Spurious electrolyte disorders: a diagnostic challenge for clinicians. Am J Nephrol. 2013;38(1):50–7.
4. Vallée M, Weinstein J, Battistella M, et al. Multidisciplinary Perspectives of Current Approaches and Clinical Gaps in the Management of Hyperphosphatemia. Int J Nephrol Renovasc Dis. 2021;14:301–311.
5. Ikizler TA, Burrowes JD, Byham-Gray LD, et al. KDOQI clinical practice guideline for nutrition in CKD: 2020 update. Am J Kidney Dis. 2020;76(3):S1–S107.
6. Ketteler M, Block GA, Evenepoel P, et al. Executive summary of the 2017 KDIGO chronic kidney disease–mineral and bone disorder (CKD-MBD) guideline update: what's changed and why it matters. Kidney Int. 2017;92(1):26–36.
7. Sekar A, Kaur T, Nally JV, et al. Phosphorus binders: The new and the old, and how to choose. Cleve Clin J Med. 2018;85(8):629–638.
8. Ketteler M, Block GA, Evenepoel P, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, prevention, and treatment of chronic kidney disease-mineral and bone disorder: synopsis of the kidney disease: Improving Global Outcomes 2017 Clinical Practice Guideline Update. Ann Intern Med. 2018;168(6):422–30.
9. Evenepoel P, Selgas R, Caputo F, et al. Efficacy and safety of sevelamer hydrochloride and calcium acetate in patients on peritoneal dialysis. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2009;24(1):278–285.
10. Patel L, Bernard LM, Elder GJ. Sevelamer Versus Calcium-Based Binders for Treatment of Hyperphosphatemia in CKD: A Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2016;11(2):232–44.
11. Manns B, Klarenbach S, Lee H, et al. Economic evaluation of sevelamer in patients with end-stage renal disease. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007;22(10):2867–78.
12. Chan S, Au K, Francis RS, et al. Phosphate binders in patients with chronic kidney disease. Aust Prescr. 2017;40(1):10–14.
13. Spoendlin J, Paik JM, Tsacogianis T, et al. Cardiovascular Outcomes of Calcium-Free vs Calcium-Based Phosphate Binders in Patients 65 Years or Older With End-stage Renal Disease Requiring Hemodialysis. JAMA Intern Med 2019;179(6):741–749.
14. Lioufas NM, Pascoe EM, Hawley CM, et al. Systematic Review and Meta-Analyses of the Effects of Phosphate-Lowering Agents in Nondialysis CKD. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2022;33(1):59–76.
15. Finn WF, SPD 405–307 Lanthanum Study Group. Lanthanum carbonate versus standard therapy for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia: safety and efficacy in chronic maintenance hemodialysis patients. Clin Nephrol 2006;65(3):191–202.
16. Zhao L, Liu A, Xu G. Safety and effectiveness of lanthanum carbonate for hyperphosphatemia in

chronic kidney disease (CKD) patients: a meta-analysis. Ren Fail. 2021;43(1):1378–1393.

17. Drüeke TB. Lanthanum carbonate as a first-line phosphate binder: the “cons”. Semin Dial. 2007;20(4):329–32.
18. Ogata H, Fukagawa M, Hirakata H, et al. Effect of Treating Hyperphosphatemia With Lanthanum Carbonate vs Calcium Carbonate on Cardiovascular Events in Patients With Chronic Kidney Disease Undergoing Hemodialysis: The LANDMARK Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA. 2021;325(19):1946–1954.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

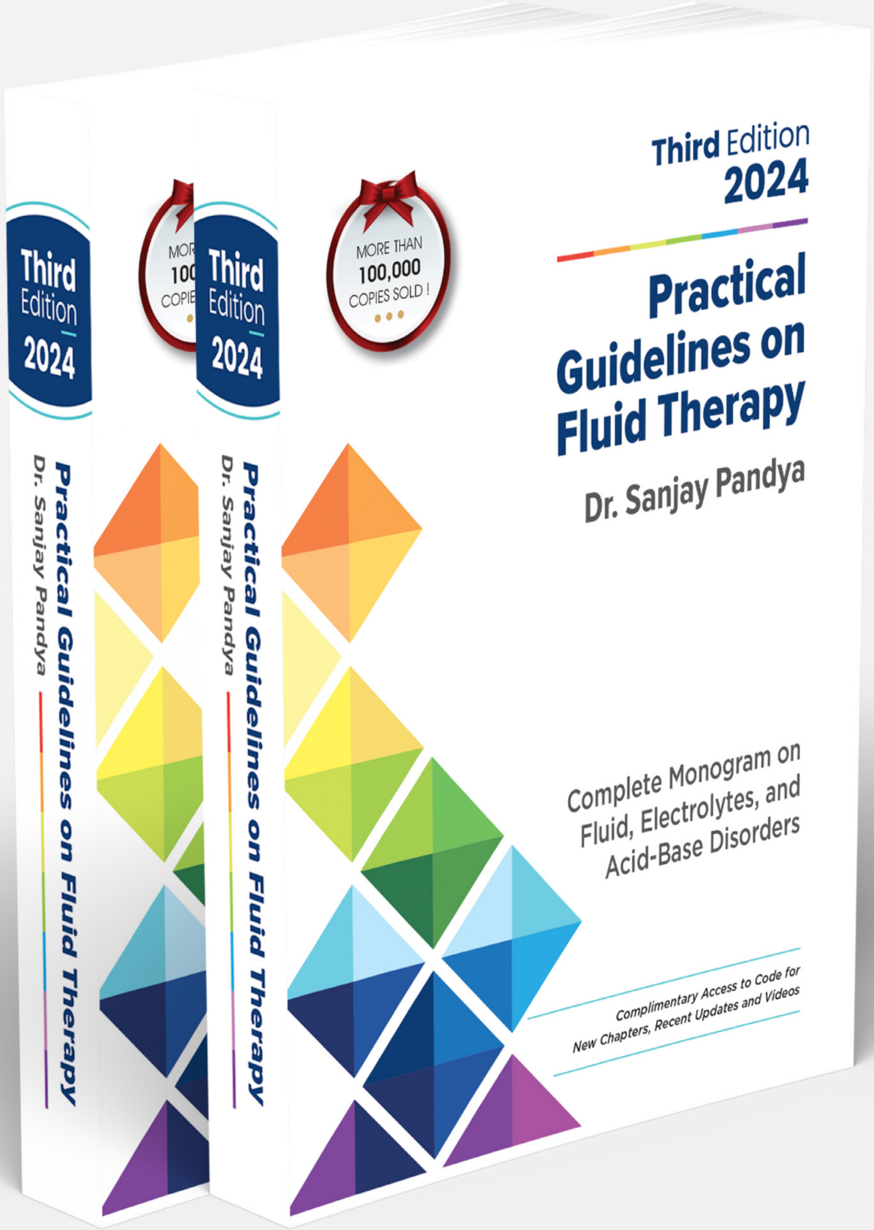
» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 28:
Hypomagnesemia


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

28

Hypomagnesemia

Basic Physiology 326
HYPOMAGNESEMIA 328
Etiology 328
Clinical Features 328
Diagnosis 330
  History and physical examination.. 330
  Routinely ordered investigations .. 330
  Urinary magnesium excretion....... 330
Management 330
  Correction of underlying etiology.. 330
  Basic principles of therapy 331
  Replacement of magnesium......... 332
    Mild hypomagnesemia 332
    Moderate hypomagnesemia.... 332
    Severe hypomagnesemia........ 332
  Parenteral magnesium therapy 333

SERUM MAGNESIUM

Disorder of magnesium, especially hypomagnesemia, is expected particularly in ICU patients and usually occurs due to renal and gastrointestinal (GI) losses. However, hypermagnesemia is a less frequent disorder than hypomagnesemia, and its most common cause is renal failure.

BASIC PHYSIOLOGY

- Magnesium is the fourth most common cation of the body (after Na^+, K^+, and Ca^{2+}), the second most common intracellular cation (after K^+), and the commonest intracellular divalent cation.
- **Distribution:** About 60% of body magnesium is in bones, 39% is within the cells, and only 1% is in extracellular fluid (ECF). Up to 40% of total plasma magnesium is protein-bound, 5–10% is in complex form, and about 50–55% is in a free, ionized form, which is a biologically active ion (like calcium).

Table 28.1 Interpretation of serum magnesium concentration

Hypomagnesemia			Normal range	Hypermagnesemia		
Severe	**Moderate**	**Mild**		**Mild**	**Moderate**	**Severe**
<1.0 mg/dL	1.0-1.5 mg/dL	1.6-1.9 mg/dL	1.7-2.1 mg/dL	4.8-7.2 mg/dL	7.2-12 mg/dL	>12 mg/dL
<0.5 mmol/L	0.4-0.6 mmol/L	0.7-0.8 mmol/L	0.70-0.85 mmol/L	2.0-3.0 mmol/L	3.0-5.0 mmol/L	>5 mmol/L
<0.8 mEq/L	0.8-1.2 mEq/L	1.4-1.6 mEq/L	1.4-1.7 mEq/L	4.0-6.0 mEq/L	6.0-10 mEq/L	>10 mEq/L

Conversion factors for serum magnesium: 1 mEq/L = 1.2 mg/dL = 0.5 mmol/L

- **Normal blood ranges:** The normal serum magnesium level is 1.7 to 2.1 mg/dL (0.70 to 0w.85 mmol/L, 1.4 to 1.7 mEq/L), and their values in magnesium disorders are summarized in Table 28.1.
- As the clinical effects of magnesium disorders are determined primarily by tissue magnesium content, serum magnesium levels have limited diagnostic value.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. de Baaij JH, Hoenderop JG, Bindels RJ. Magnesium in man: implications for health and disease. Physiol Rev. 2015;95(1):1–46.
2. Jahnen-Dechent W, Ketteler M. Magnesium basics. Clin Kidney J. 2012;5(1):i3–i14.
3. Fatemi S, Ryzen E, Flores J, et al. Effect of experimental human magnesium depletion on parathyroid hormone secretion and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D metabolism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1991;73(5):1067–72.
4. Lindsay AL, Bazydlo, Needham M, et al. Calcium, Magnesium, and Phosphate, Laboratory Medicine 2014;45(1):e44–e50.
5. Eisenbud E, LoBue CC. Hypocalcemia after therapeutic use of magnesium sulfate. Arch Intern Med 1976;136(6):688–91.
6. Rodríguez-Ortiz ME, Canalejo A, Herencia C, et al. Magnesium modulates parathyroid hormone secretion and upregulates parathyroid receptor expression at moderately low calcium concentration. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2014;29(2):282–9.
7. Blaine J, Chonchol M, Levi M. Renal control of calcium, phosphate, and magnesium homeostasis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2015;10(7):1257–1272.
8. Swaminathan R. Magnesium metabolism and its disorders. Clin Biochem Rev. 2003;24(2):47–66.
9. Yee J. Magnesium: An Important Orphan. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2018;25(3):217–221.
10. Schuchardt JP, Hahn A. Intestinal Absorption and Factors Influencing Bioavailability of Magnesium-An Update. Curr Nutr Food Sci. 2017;13(4):260–278.
11. Curry JN, Yu ASL. Magnesium Handling in the Kidney. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2018;25(3):236–243.
12. Martin KJ, González EA, Slatopolsky E. Clinical consequences and management of hypomagnesemia. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2009;20(11):2291–5.
13. Wong ET, Rude RK, Singer FR, et al. A high prevalence of hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia in hospitalized patients. Am J Clin Pathol. 1983;79(3):348–352.
14. Limaye CS, Londhey VA, Nadkart MY, et al. Hypomagnesemia in critically ill medical patients. J Assoc Physicians India. 2011;59:19–22.
15. Cheungpasitporn W, Thongprayoon C, Qian Q. Dysmagnesemia in Hospitalized Patients: Prevalence and Prognostic Importance. Mayo Clin Proc. 2015;90(8):1001–10.
16. Cheungpasitporn W, Thongprayoon C, Chewcharat A, et al. Hospital-Acquired Dysmagnesemia and In-Hospital Mortality. Med Sci (Basel). 2020;8(3):37.
17. M Kumar A, Naik MK. Prevalence of admission hypomagnesemia in critically ill patients International Journal of Health and Clinical Research, 2021;4(2):129–133.
18. Van Laecke S. Hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia. Acta Clin Belg. 2019;74(1):41–47.
19. Liamis G, Liberopoulos E, Alexandridis G, et al. Hypomagnesemia in a department of internal medicine. Magnes Res. 2012;25(4):149–58.
20. Whang R, Ryder KW. Frequency of hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia. Requested vs routine. JAMA 1990;263(22):3063–4.
21. Huang CL, Kuo E. Mechanism of hypokalemia in magnesium deficiency. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;18(10):2649–52.

22. Pham PC, Pham PM, Pham SV, et al. Hypomagnesemia in patients with type 2 diabetes. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;2(2):366–73.
23. Chrysant SG, Chrysant GS. Association of hypomagnesemia with cardiovascular diseases and hypertension. Int J Cardiol Hypertens. 2019;1:100005.
24. Ter Braake AD, Shanahan CM, de Baaij JHF. Magnesium Counteracts Vascular Calcification: Passive Interference or Active Modulation? Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2017;37(8):1431–1445.
25. Assadi F. Hypomagnesemia: an evidence-based approach to clinical cases. Iran J Kidney Dis. 2010;4(1):13–19.
26. Tucker BM, Pirkle JL Jr, Raghavan R. Urinary Magnesium in the Evaluation of Hypomagnesemia. JAMA. 2020;324(22):2320–2321.
27. Velissaris D, Karamouzos V, Pierrakos C, et al. Hypomagnesemia in Critically Ill Sepsis Patients. J Clin Med Res. 2015;7(12):911–8.
28. Agus ZS. Hypomagnesemia. J Am Soc Nephrol. 1999;10(7):1616–22.
29. Hansen BA, Bruserud Ø. Hypomagnesemia in critically ill patients. J Intensive Care. 2018;6:21.
30. Chonchol M, Smogorzewski MJ, Stubbs JR, et al. Disorders of Calcium, Magnesium, and Phosphate Balance. In: Brenner and Rector's The Kidney, 11th ed, Yu A, Chertow G, Luyckx V, et al (Eds), W.B. Saunders & Company, Philadelphia 2020.p.603.
31. Fulop T. Hypomagnesemia treatment & management. Updated Oct 30, 2020. Available at https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/2038394-treatment#d10 (accessed 18 January 2022).
32. Kraft MD, Btaiche IF, Sacks GS, et al. Treatment of electrolyte disorders in adult patients in the intensive care unit. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2005;62(16):1663–82.
33. Neumar RW, Otto CW, Link MS, et al. Part 8: adult advanced cardiovascular life support: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation. 2010;122(18 Suppl 3):S729–67.
34. Tzivoni D, Banai S, Schuger C, et al. Treatment of torsade de pointes with magnesium sulfate. Circulation. 1988;77(2):392–7.
35. Hammond DA, Stojakovic J, Kathe N, et al. Effectiveness and Safety of Magnesium Replacement in Critically Ill Patients Admitted to the Medical Intensive Care Unit in an Academic Medical Center: A Retrospective, Cohort Study. J Intensive Care Med. 2019;34(11–12):967–972.
36. McDonnell NJ, Muchatuta NA, Paech MJ. Acute magnesium toxicity in an obstetric patient undergoing general anaesthesia for caesarean delivery. Int J Obstet Anesth. 2010;19(2):226–31.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

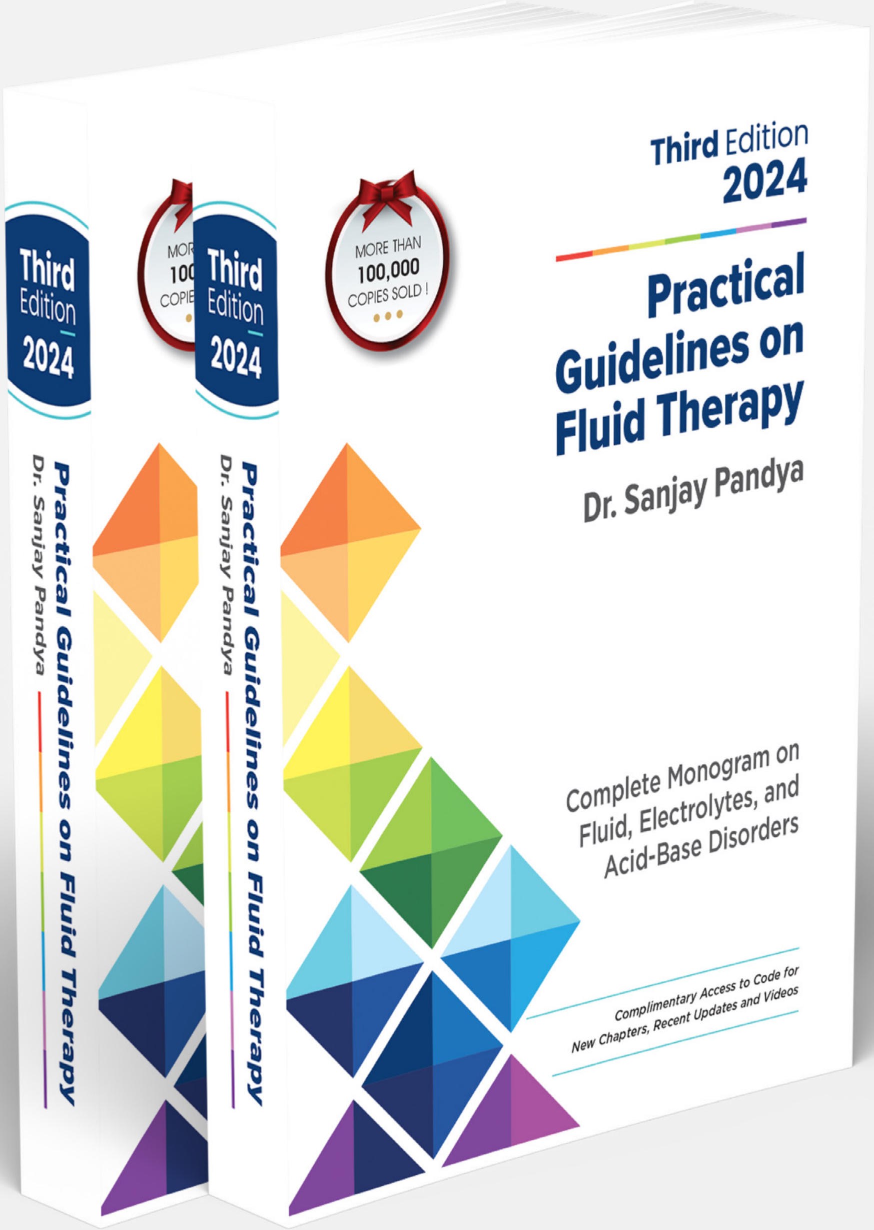
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 29:

Hypermagnesemia


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

29 Hypermagnesemia

Etiology 336
Clinical Features.............................. 336
Diagnosis 337
Management.................................... 337

Hypermagnesemia is an uncommon electrolyte disorder defined as serum magnesium concentration above 2.6 mg/dL (1.1 mmol/L, or 2.14 mEq/L). As a normal kidney can effectively excrete magnesium load, hypermagnesemia is rarely seen in clinical practice if renal function is normal.

ETIOLOGY

Hypermagnesemia is frequently iatrogenic and almost always occurs either due to impaired excretion of magnesium in acute kidney injury (AKI) or chronic kidney disease (CKD) or the administration of magnesium in a large amount [1–4].

Common causes are:

- Renal failure: AKI or CKD patients receiving magnesium-containing antacids, laxatives, or IV fluids [3, 5, 6].
- Excessive magnesium intake: Treatment of preeclampsia or eclampsia with IV magnesium sulfate, aggressive treatment of hypomagnesemia with IV magnesium, intake of large amounts of magnesium salts as cathartics or antacids, and use of rectal magnesium sulfate enemas.
- Compartment shift or leak: Diabetic ketoacidosis untreated, tumor lysis syndrome, acute rhabdomyolysis, hemolysis, and severe burns.
- Miscellaneous causes: Milk-alkali syndrome and impaired renal excretion of magnesium due to primary hyperparathyroidism, adrenal insufficiency, and hypothyroidism.

CLINICAL FEATURES [7, 8]

Symptoms of hypermagnesemia are chiefly neuromuscular, cardiac, and related to hypocalcemia, which varies as per the magnesium level and, in severe form, can be serious and potentially fatal, as summarized in Table 29.1.

Neuromuscular manifestations: Hypermagnesemia inhibits acetylcholine release from the neuromuscular endplate, causing the blockage of neuromuscular transmission leading to a neuromuscular symptom. It includes muscular weakness, lethargy, loss of deep tendon jerks, muscular paresis leading to respiratory depression, respiratory failure, and quadriparesis. In addition, due to smooth-muscle paralysis, hypermagnesemia may present as paralytic ileus or urinary retention.

fluid

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Jahnen-Dechent W, Ketteler M. Magnesium basics. Clin Kidney J. 2012;5(Suppl 1):i3–i14.
2. Alaini A, Roldan CA, Servilla K, et al. Near death by milk of magnesia. BMJ Case Rep. 2017;2017:bcr2016218260.
3. Wakai E, Ikemura K, Sugimoto H, et al. Risk factors for the development of hypermagnesemia in patients prescribed magnesium oxide: a retrospective cohort study. J Pharm Health Care Sci. 2019;5:4.
4. Mori H, Suzuki H, Hirai Y, et al. Clinical features of hypermagnesemia in patients with functional constipation taking daily magnesium oxide. J Clin Biochem Nutr. 2019;65(1):76–81.
5. Wyskida K, Witkowicz J, Chudek J, et al. Daily magnesium intake and hypermagnesemia in hemodialysis patients with chronic kidney disease. J Ren Nutr 2012;22(1):19–26.
6. Khairi T, Amer S, Spitalewitz S, et al. Severe Symptomatic Hypermagnesemia Associated with Over-the-Counter Laxatives in a Patient with Renal Failure and Sigmoid Volvulus. Case Rep Nephrol. 2014;2014:560746.
7. Topf JM, Murray PT. Hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia. Rev Endocr Metab Disord. 2003;4(2):195–206.
8. Kraft MD, Btaiche IF, Sacks GS, et al. Treatment of electrolyte disorders in adult patients in the intensive care unit. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2005;62(16):1663–82.
9. Mordes JP, Swartz R, Arky RA. Extreme hypermagnesemia as a cause of refractory hypotension. Ann Intern Med. 1975;83(5):657–658.
10. McDonnell NJ, Muchatuta NA, Paech MJ. Acute magnesium toxicity in an obstetric patient undergoing general anaesthesia for caesarean delivery. Int J Obstet Anesth. 2010;19(2):226–31.
11. Ishida Y, Tabuchi A. Severe Hypermagnesemia with Normal Renal Function Can Improve with Symptomatic Treatment. Case Rep Emerg Med. 2020;2020:2918249.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

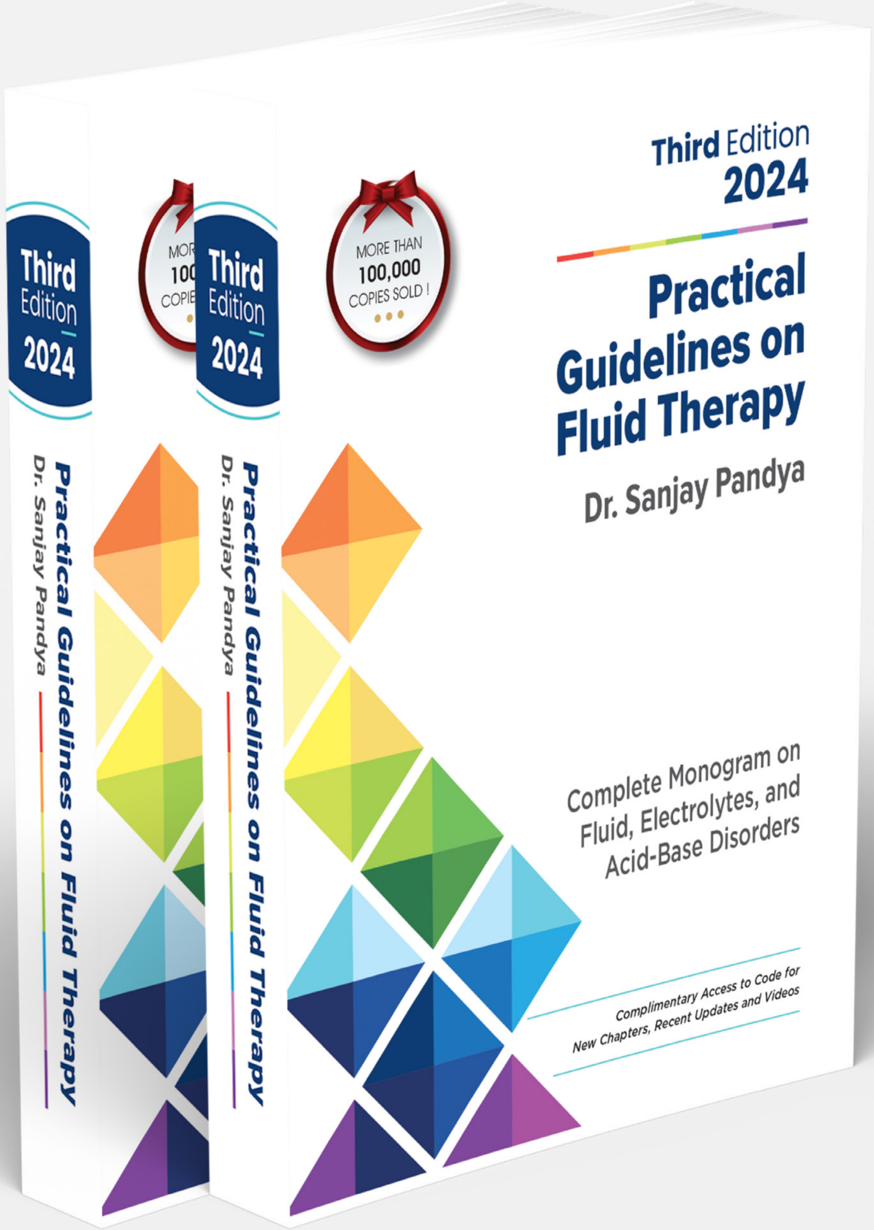
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 30:

Basic Understanding and Approach to Acid-Base Disorders


Third Edition 2024
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

30

Basic Understanding and Approach to Acid–Base Disorders

Understanding Basic Terminology and Normal Values 342
Simple Acid-Base Disorder 342
  Metabolic disorders 343
  Respiratory disorders 343
Basic Physiology of Acid-Base Regulation 344
  Importance of pH regulation 344
  Acid-base regulation..................... 344
    Buffers 344
    Respiratory regulation 344
    Renal regulation 345
Compensation in Acid-Base Disorders.. 345
  Understanding compensation....... 345
  Same direction rule 346
  Determine the expected compensation for:
    Metabolic acidosis................... 346
    Metabolic alkalosis 346
    Respiratory acidosis................ 347
    Respiratory alkalosis 347
  Importance of calculation and checking compensation................ 347
Mixed Acid-Base Disorder 347
  Definition and examples 347
  Triple mixed disorders 348
Diagnosis of Acid-Base Disorders.. 348
  History and examination............... 349
  Primary investigations 349
  Obtaining a blood gas analysis 350
    Selective use of ABG............... 350
    Indications of ABG................... 350
    Contraindications of ABG 350
    Method for collecting arterial blood gases 350
    Arterial vs. venous blood gases...................................... 351
  Appropriate method for interpreting ABG 351
  Interpretation of basic investigations................................ 352
A Step-by-Step Diagnostic Approach... 355
Examples... 356

Arterial blood gas (ABG) measurements are a crucial diagnostic test in medicine, providing vital insights for diagnosing acid-base disorders and guiding life-saving treatments in critically ill patients. Acid-base disorders frequently manifest in critically ill patients and can also serve as initial indicators of underlying diseases, such as Kussmaul's breathing presenting in diabetic ketoacidosis or renal failure.

To clearly understand the subject and its approach, this chapter outlines basic terminology, the physiology of pH regulation, compensation in various acid-base disorders, and the diagnostic approach.

UNDERSTANDING BASIC TERMINOLOGY

Basic terminology used to discuss acid-base disorders and their values in simple acid-base disorders are summarized below (Table 30.1).

pH: pH represents the concentration of free hydrogen ions (H^+). It has an inverse relationship with H^+ ion concentration. The normal value of pH in arterial blood is 7.4 (7.35–7.45).

Acid, acidemia and acidosis

- A decrease in pH indicates an increase in H^+ ion concentration.
- An acid is a substance that can donate H^+ ions or, when added to a solution, increase the H^+ ion concentration, thereby lowering the pH.
- An acidemia, which refers to "acid blood", is characterized by a blood pH below normal (pH <7.35) and an increased H^+ ion concentration.
- Acidosis is an abnormal process or disease that reduces pH (pH <7.35) due to an increase in acid or a decrease in alkali.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Ayers P, Dixon C. Simple acid-base tutorial. JPEN J Parenter Enter Nutr. 2012;36(1):18-23.
2. Adrogué HJ, Gennari FJ, Galla JH, et al. Assessing acid-base disorders. Kidney Int. 2009;76(12):1239–1247.
3. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Secondary responses to altered acid-base status: the rules of engagement. J Am Soc Nephrol 2010;21(6):920–3.
4. Berend K, de Vries AP, Gans RO. Physiological approach to assessment of acid-base disturbances. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(15):1434–1445.
5. Malatesha G, Singh NK, Bharija A, et al. Comparison of arterial and venous pH, bicarbonate, PCO2 and PO2 in initial emergency department assessment. Emerg Med J. 2007;24(8):569–71.
6. Kim BR, Park SJ, Shin HS, et al. Correlation between peripheral venous and arterial blood gas measurements in patients admitted to the intensive care unit: a single-center study. Kidney Res Clin Pract. 2013;32(1):32–8.
7. Byrne AL, Bennett M, Chatterji R, et al. Peripheral venous and arterial blood gas analysis in adults: are they comparable? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Respirology 2014;19(2):168–175.
8. McKeever TM, Hearson G, Housley G, et al. Using venous blood gas analysis in the assessment of COPD exacerbations: a prospective cohort study. Thorax 2016;71(3):210–5.
9. Zeserson E, Goodgame B, Hess JD, et al. Correlation of Venous Blood Gas and Pulse Oximetry With Arterial Blood Gas in the Undifferentiated Critically Ill Patient. J Intensive Care Med 2018;33(3):176–181.
10. Schütz N, Roth D, Schwameis M, et al. Can Venous Blood Gas Be Used as an Alternative to Arterial Blood Gas in Intubated Patients at Admission to the Emergency Department? A Retrospective Study. Open Access Emerg Med. 2019;11:305–312.
11. Erdoğan YK, Karakuş A. Can venous blood gas be used instead of arterial blood gas in emergency department?. Interdisciplinary Medical Journal. 2023;14(49):74–78.

12. Prasad H, Vempalli N, Agrawal N, et al. Correlation and agreement between arterial and venous blood gas analysis in patients with hypotension-an emergency department-based cross-sectional study. Int J Emerg Med. 2023;16(1):18.
13. Saberian L, Sharif M, Aarabi M, et al. Arterial Versus Venous Blood Gas Analysis Comparisons, Appropriateness, and Alternatives in Different Acid/Base Clinical Settings: A Systematic Review. Cureus. 2023;15(7):e41707.
14. Kimura S, Shabsigh M, Morimatsu H. Traditional approach versus Stewart approach for acid-base disorders: Inconsistent evidence. SAGE Open Med. 2018;6:2050312118801255.
15. Morgan TJ. The Stewart approach--one clinician's perspective. Clin Biochem Rev. 2009;30(2):41–54.
16. Magder S, Emami A. Practical approach to physical-chemical acid-base management. Stewart at the bedside. Ann Am Thorac Soc. 2015;12(1):111–7.
17. Story DA. Stewart Acid-Base: A Simplified Bedside Approach. Anesth Analg. 2016;123(2):511–5.
18. Rubin DM. Stewart's approach to quantitative acid-base physiology should replace traditional bicarbonate-centered models. J Appl Physiol (1985). 2021;130(6):2019–2021.
19. Masevicius FD, Dubin A. Has Stewart approach improved our ability to diagnose acid-base disorders in critically ill patients? World J Crit Care Med. 2015;4(1):62–70.
20. Maria V, Francesca B, Shirin D, et al. Comparison between bicarbonate-based and Stewart methods to assess metabolic acid-base disorders in internistic patients. A pilot study International Journal of Medicine 2017;5(2):234–238.
21. Paliwal R, Pakavakis A, Divatia JV, et al. Utility of Stewart's Approach to Diagnose Missed Complex Acid–Base Disorders as Compared to Bicarbonate-anion Gap-based Methodology in Critically Ill Patients: An Observational Study. Indian J Crit Care Med 2022;26(1):23–32.
22. Gopaldas JA. Revisiting Stewart's Approach toward Assessment of Unidentified or Complex Acid–Base Disorders. Indian J Crit Care Med 2022;26(1):5–6.
23. Kurtz I, Kraut J, Ornekian V, et al. Acid-base analysis: a critique of the Stewart and bicarbonate-centered approaches. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2008;294(5):F1009–31.
24. Achanti A, Szerlip HM. Acid-Base Disorders in the Critically Ill Patient. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2023;18(1):102–112.
25. Emmett M. Anion-gap interpretation: the old and the new. Nat Clin Pract Nephrol. 2006;2(1):4–5.
26. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Serum anion gap: its uses and limitations in clinical medicine. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2007;2(1):162–74.
27. Reddy P. Clinical utility of anion gap in deciphering acid-base disorders. Intl J Clin Pract. 2009;63(10):1516–1525.
28. Figge J, Jabor A, Kazda A, et al. Anion gap and hypoalbuminemia. Crit Care Med 1998;26(11):1807–1810.
29. Seifter JL. Anion-gap metabolic acidemia: case-based analyses. Eur J Clin Nutr. 2020;74(1):83–86.
30. Tucker AM, Johnson TN. Acid-base disorders: A primer for clinicians. Nutr Clin Pract. 2022;37(5):980–989.
31. Berend K. Review of the Diagnostic Evaluation of Normal Anion Gap Metabolic Acidosis. Kidney Dis (Basel). 2017;3(4):149–159.
32. Batlle D, Ba Aqeel SH, Marquez A. The Urine Anion Gap in Context. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2018;13(2):195–197.
33. Uribarri J, Oh MS. The Urine Anion Gap: Common Misconceptions. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2021;32(5):1025–1028.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by
a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

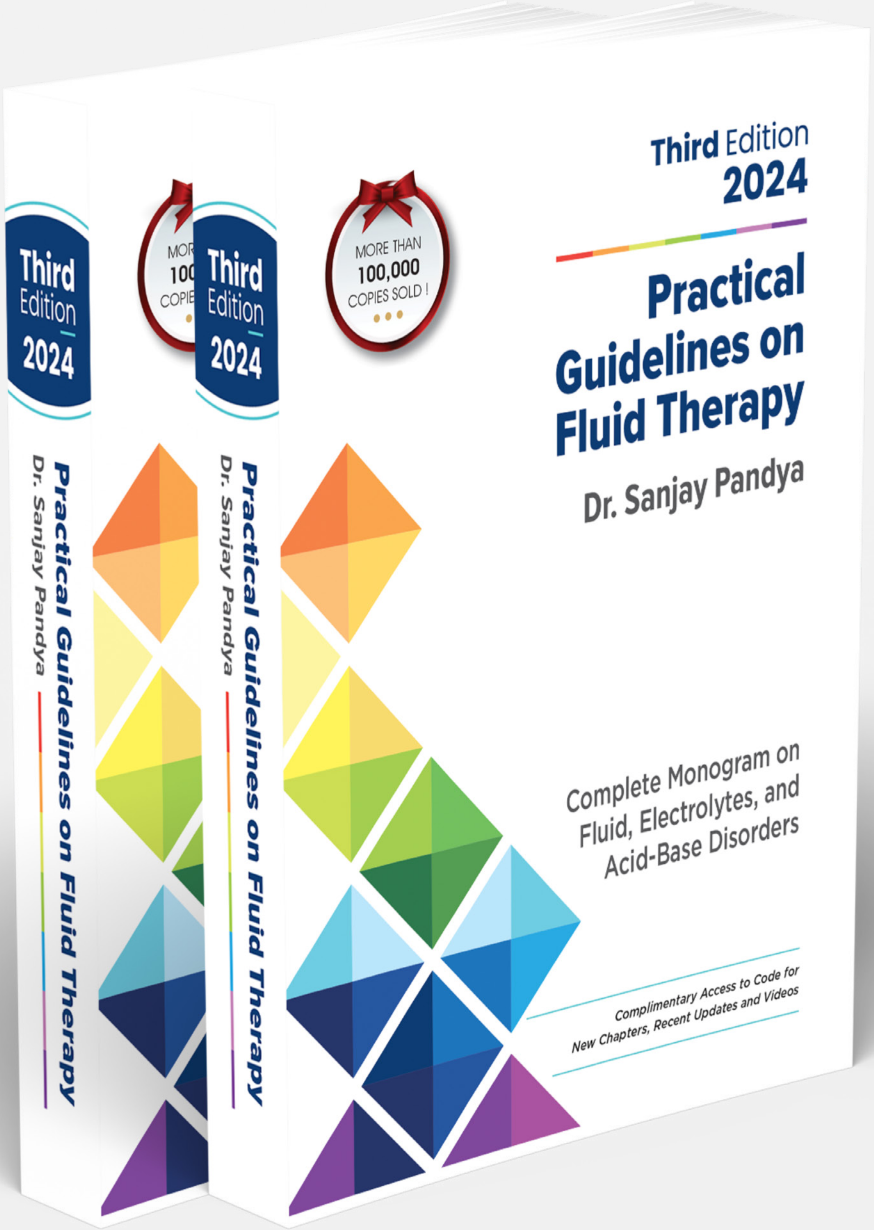
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 31:

Metabolic Acidosis


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

31 Metabolic Acidosis

Definition **361**
Etiology **361**
  Lactic acidosis 362
  Diabetic ketoacidosis 363
  Alcoholic ketoacidosis 364
  Salicylate (aspirin) poisoning 364
  Renal tubular acidosis 364
Clinical Features **366**
Diagnosis **366**
  History 366
  Investigations 366
Treatment **368**
  General measures 368
  Alkali therapy in acute metabolic acidosis 369
    Indications 369
    Benefits 370
    Rationale for selective use 370
      Bicarbonate therapy can be harmful 370
      Mild to moderate acidosis may be beneficial 371
      No evidence of benefits 372
    Bolus vs. infusion 373
    Calculation of volume 373
    Goals of bicarbonate therapy 373
    Precautions 373
  Alkali therapy in chronic metabolic acidosis 373
    Benefits 374
    Alkali agents, and their composition 374
  Treatment of metabolic acidosis in specific situations 375
    Lactic acidosis 375
    Diabetic ketoacidosis 375
    Alcoholic ketoacidosis 376
    Salicylate (aspirin) poisoning 377
    Renal failure 377
    GI loss of bicarbonate 377
    Renal tubular acidosis 378

Metabolic acidosis is a frequently encountered acid-base disorder in critical care patients, demanding meticulous attention and effective management due to its potential for serious consequences.

DEFINITION

It is characterized by a fall in plasma HCO_3 and a fall in pH (below 7.35). The $PaCO_2$ is reduced secondarily by hyperventilation, and this compensatory mechanism minimizes the fall in pH.

ETIOLOGY

Metabolic acidosis can result from the loss of HCO_3 via the gastrointestinal (GI) tract or kidneys, overproduction of endogenous nonvolatile acids, ingestion or infusion of acid or potential acids, and failure of H^+ excretion by the kidney.

Calculation of anion gap (AG) is extremely helpful in narrowing etiological diagnosis:

Anion Gap (AG)
$= Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3)$
$= 12 \pm 2$ (Normal Value)

Metabolic acidosis can be classified into two groups based on the anion gap: high anion gap acidosis (e.g., lactic acidosis, ketoacidosis, ingested toxins, and acute or chronic renal impairment) and normal anion gap acidosis (e.g., diarrhea, renal tubular acidosis, or large volume saline administration). Table 31.1 summarizes the causes of metabolic acidosis classified based on the anion gap, their mechanisms of development, and how acidosis occurs in each cause.

The mnemonic "GOLDMARK" is helpful for remembering the causes of high anion gap metabolic acidosis (Table 31.2) [1].

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Mehta AN, Emmett JB, Emmett M. GOLD MARK: an anion gap mnemonic for the 21st century. Lancet. 2008;372(9642):892.
2. Achanti A, Szerlip HM. Acid-Base Disorders in the Critically Ill Patient. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2023;18(1):102–112.
3. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Treatment of acute metabolic acidosis: a pathophysiologic approach. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2012;8(10):589–601.
4. Forni LG, Hodgson LE, Selby NM. The Janus faces of bicarbonate therapy in the ICU: not sure! Intensive Care Med. 2020;46(3):522–524.
5. Farkas J. Non-anion-gap metabolic acidosis (NAGMA) PulmCrit September 19, 2019 https://emcrit.org/ibcc/nagma/#treatment.
6. Sabatini S, Kurtzman NA. Bicarbonate therapy in severe metabolic acidosis. J. Am. Soc. Nephrol. 2009;20(4):692–695.
7. Adeva-Andany MM, Fernández-Fernández C, Mouriño-Bayolo D, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy in patients with metabolic acidosis. ScientificWorldJournal. 2014;2014:627673.
8. Boyd JH, Walley KR. Is there a role for sodium bicarbonate in treating lactic acidosis from shock? Curr Opin Crit Care. 2008;14(4):379–83.
9. Velissaris D, Karamouzos V, Ktenopoulos N, et al. The use of sodium bicarbonate in the treatment of acidosis in sepsis: a literature update on a long term debate. Crit Care Res Pract. 2015;2015:605830.
10. Ghauri S, Javaeed A, Mustafa K, et al. Bicarbonate therapy for critically ill patients with metabolic acidosis: a systematic review. Cureus 2019;11(3):e4297.
11. Jaber S, Paugam C, Futier E, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy for patients with severe metabolic acidaemia in the intensive care unit (BICAR-ICU): a multicentre, open-label, randomised controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet. 2018;392(10141):31–40.
12. Zhang Z, Zhu C, Mo L, et al. Effectiveness of sodium bicarbonate infusion on mortality in septic patients with metabolic acidosis. Intensive Care Med 2018;44(11):1888–1895.
13. Jung B, Martinez M, Claessens YE, et al. Diagnosis and management of metabolic acidosis: guidelines from a French expert panel. Ann Intensive Care. 2019;9(1):92.
14. Evans L, Rhodes A, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2021. Crit Care Med 2021;49(11):e1063–143.
15. Matyukhin I, Patschan S, Ritter O, et al. Etiology and management of acute metabolic acidosis: An Update.

Kidney Blood Press Res. 2020;45(4):523–531.

16. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care 2009;32(7):1335–43.
17. Duhon B, Attridge RL, Franco-Martinez AC, et al. Intravenous sodium bicarbonate therapy in severely acidotic diabetic ketoacidosis. Ann Pharmacother. 2013;47(7–8):970–5.
18. Patel MP, Ahmed A, Gunapalan T, et al. Use of sodium bicarbonate and blood gas monitoring in diabetic ketoacidosis: A review. World J Diabetes. 2018;9(11):199–205.
19. Wildenthal K, Mierzwiak DS, Myers RW, et al. Effects of acute lactic acidosis on left ventricular performance. Am J Physiol 1968;214(6):1352–1359.
20. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Metabolic acidosis: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2010;6(5):274–85.
21. Fujii T, Udy AA, Nichol A, et al. Incidence and management of metabolic acidosis with sodium bicarbonate in the ICU: An international observational study. Crit Care. 2021;25(1):45.
22. Rudnick MR, Blair GJ, Kuschner WG, Barr J. Lactic Acidosis and the Role of Sodium Bicarbonate: A Narrative Opinion. Shock. 2020;53(5):528–536.
23. Rachoin JS, Weisberg LS, McFadden CB. Treatment of lactic acidosis: appropriate confusion. J Hosp Med 2010;5(4):E1–7.
24. Kraut JA, Kurtz I. Treatment of acute non-anion gap metabolic acidosis. Clin Kidney J. 2015;8(1):93–9.
25. Kimmoun A, Novy E, Auchet T, et al. Hemodynamic consequences of severe lactic acidosis in shock states: from bench to bedside. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):175.
26. Sing RF, Branas CA, Sing RF. Bicarbonate therapy in the treatment of lactic acidosis: medicine or toxin? J Am Osteopath Assoc. 1995;95(1):52–7.
27. Abeysekara S, Zello GA, Lohmann KL, et al. Infusion of sodium bicarbonate in experimentally induced metabolic acidosis does not provoke cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) acidosis in calves. Can J Vet Res. 2012;76(1):16–22.
28. Cooper DJ, Walley KR, Wiggs BR, et al. Bicarbonate does not improve hemodynamics in critically ill patients who have lactic acidosis: a prospective, controlled clinical study. Ann Intern Med 1990;112(7):492–498.
29. Gehlbach BK, Schmidt GA. Bench-to-bedside review: treating acid-base abnormalities in the intensive care unit-the role of buffers. Crit Care. 2004;8(4):259–65.
30. Handy JM, Soni N. Physiological effects of hyperchloraemia and acidosis. Br J Anaesth 2008;101(2):141–150.
31. Al Alawi AM, Al Flaiti A, Falhammar H. Lactation Ketoacidosis: A systematic review of case reports. Medicina (Kaunas). 2020;56(6):299.
32. Kraut JA, Kurtz I. Use of base in the treatment of severe acidemic states. Am. J. Kidney Dis. 2001;38(4):703–727.
33. Jung B, Rimmele T, Le Goff C, et al. Severe metabolic or mixed acidemia on intensive care unit admission: incidence, prognosis and administration of buffer therapy. A prospective, multiple-center study. Crit Care Lond Engl. 2011;15(5):R238.
34. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Lactic Acidosis: Current treatments and future directions. Am J Kidney Dis. 2016;68(3):473–82.
35. Mathieu D, Neviere R, Billard V, et al. Effects of bicarbonate therapy on hemodynamics and tissue oxygenation in patients with lactic acidosis: a prospective, controlled clinical study. Crit Care Med 1991;19(11):1352–6.
36. Stacpoole PW, Wright EC, Baumgartner TG, et al. Natural history and course of acquired lactic acidosis in adults. Am J Med. 1994;97(1):47–54.
37. Kim HJ, Son YK, An WS. Effect of sodium bicarbonate administration on mortality in patients with lactic acidosis: a retrospective analysis. PLoS One 2013;8(6):e65283.
38. Ahn S, Kim YJ, Sohn CH, et al. Sodium bicarbonate on severe metabolic acidosis during prolonged cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled pilot study. J Thorac Dis. 2018;10(4):2295–2302.
39. Fang ZX, Li YF, Zhou XQ, et al. Effects of resuscitation with crystalloid fluids on cardiac function in patients with severe sepsis. BMC Infect Dis. 2008;8:50.
40. El-Solh AA, Abou Jaoude P, Porhomayon J. Bicarbonate therapy in the treatment of septic shock: a second look. Intern Emerg Med 2010;5(4):341–47.
41. Chen XF, Ye JL, Zhu ZY. The use of sodium bicarbonate in stages in treating hypoperfusion induced lactic acidemia in septic shock [Article in Chinese]. Zhonghua Wei Zhong Bing Ji Jiu Yi Xue. 2013;25(1):24–7.
42. Fujii T, Udy A, Licari E, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy for critically ill patients with metabolic acidosis: a scoping and a systematic review. J Crit Care 2019;51:184–191.
43. Lo KB, Garvia V, Stempel JM, et al. Bicarbonate use and mortality outcome among critically ill patients with metabolic acidosis: A meta analysis. Heart Lung. 2020;49(2):167–174.
44. Huang S, Yang B, Peng Y, et al. Clinical effectiveness of sodium bicarbonate therapy on mortality for septic patients with acute moderate lactic acidosis. Front Pharmacol. 2023;13:1059285.
45. Wiederkehr M, Emmett M, Sterns RH, et al. Bicarbonate therapy in lactic acidosis. In: UpToDate, Post TW (Ed), Wolters Kluwer. https://www.uptodate.com (Accessed on November 12, 2023).
46. Australian Product Information - Sodium Bicarbonate 8.4% (Sodium Bicarbonate) Injection BP." [Internet]. Date of Revision: 09 February 2021. Available from: https://medsinfo.com.au/api/documents/Sodium_Bicarbonate_PI?format=pdf.
47. Melamed ML, Raphael KL. Metabolic Acidosis in CKD: A Review of Recent Findings. Kidney Med. 2021;3(2):267–277.

48. Wang XH, Mitch WE, Price SR. Pathophysiological mechanisms leading to muscle loss in chronic kidney disease. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2022;18(3):138–152.
49. Bushinsky DA, Krieger NS. Effects of acid on bone. Kidney Int. 2022;101(6):1160–1170.
50. Levy RV, McMahon DJ, Agarwal S, et al. Comprehensive Associations between Acidosis and the Skeleton in Patients with Kidney Disease. J Am Soc Nephrol 2023;34(4):668–681.
51. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Adverse Effects of the Metabolic Acidosis of Chronic Kidney Disease. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2017;24(5):289–297.
52. Di Iorio BR, Bellasi A, Raphael KL, et al. Treatment of metabolic acidosis with sodium bicarbonate delays progression of chronic kidney disease: the UBI Study. J Nephrol. 2019;32(6):989–1001.
53. Hultin S, Hood C, Campbell KL, et al. A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis on Effects of Bicarbonate Therapy on Kidney Outcomes. Kidney Int Rep. 2020;6(3):695–705.
54. Kim HJ, Ryu H, Kang E, et al. Metabolic Acidosis Is an Independent Risk Factor of Renal Progression in Korean Chronic Kidney Disease Patients: The KNOW-CKD Study Results. Front Med (Lausanne). 2021;8:707588.
55. Asahina Y, Sakaguchi Y, Kajimoto S, et al. Association of Time-Updated Anion Gap With Risk of Kidney Failure in Advanced CKD: A Cohort Study. Am J Kidney Dis. 2022;79(3):374–382.
56. Vincent-Johnson A, Scialla JJ. Importance of Metabolic Acidosis as a Health Risk in Chronic Kidney Disease. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2022;29(4):329–336.
57. Beynon-Cobb B, Louca P, Hoorn EJ, et al. Effect of Sodium Bicarbonate on Systolic Blood Pressure in CKD: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2023;18(4):435–445.
58. Hu MK, Witham MD, Soiza RL. Oral bicarbonate therapy in non-haemodialysis dependent chronic kidney disease patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. J Clin Med. 2019;8(2):208.
59. BiCARB study group. Clinical and cost-effectiveness of oral sodium bicarbonate therapy for older patients with chronic kidney disease and low-grade acidosis (BiCARB): a pragmatic randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. BMC Med. 2020;18(1):91.
60. Alexander RT, Cordat E, Chambrey R, et al. Acidosis and Urinary Calcium Excretion: Insights from Genetic Disorders. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2016;27(12):3511–3520.
61. Hale PJ, Crase J, Nattrass M. Metabolic effects of bicarbonate in the treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1984;289(6451):1035–8.
62. Okuda Y, Adrogue HJ, Field JB, et al. Counterproductive effects of sodium bicarbonate in diabetic ketoacidosis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1996;81(1):314–20.
63. Viallon A, Zeni F, Lafond P, et al. Does bicarbonate therapy improve the management of severe diabetic ketoacidosis? Crit Care Med. 1999;27(12):2690–3.
64. Chua HR, Schneider A, Bellomo R. Bicarbonate in diabetic ketoacidosis – a systematic review. Ann Intensive Care 2011;1(1):23.
65. Gil-Olivares F, Manrique H, Castillo-Bravo, et al. Management of glycemic crises in adult patients With diabetes mellitus: evidence-based clinical Practice guideline clinical Rev. Fac Med. Hum. January 2021;21(1):50–64.
66. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Electrolyte Disturbances in Patients with Chronic Alcohol-Use Disorder. N Engl J Med 2017;377(14):1368–1377.
67. Kraut JA, Mullins ME. Toxic Alcohols. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(3):270–280.
68. Long B, Lentz S, Gottlieb M. Alcoholic Ketoacidosis: Etiologies, Evaluation, and Management. J Emerg Med. 2021;61(6):658–665.
69. American College of Medical Toxicology. Guidance document: management priorities in salicylate toxicity. J Med Toxicol. 2015;11(1):149–52.
70. Shively RM, Hoffman RS, Manini AF. Acute salicylate poisoning: risk factors for severe outcome. Clin Toxicol (Phila). 2017;55(3):175–180.
71. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Salicylate Toxicity. N Engl J Med 2020;382(26):2544–2555.
72. Thurston JH, Pollock PG, Warren SK, et al. Reduced brain glucose with normal plasma glucose in salicylate poisoning. J Clin Invest 1970;49(11):2139–45.
73. Juurlink DN, Gosselin S, Kielstein JT, et al. Extracorporeal Treatment for Salicylate Poisoning: Systematic Review and Recommendations From the EXTRIP Workgroup. Ann Emerg Med. 2015;66(2):165–81.
74. Palmer BF, Kelepouris E, Clegg DJ. Renal Tubular Acidosis and Management Strategies: A Narrative Review. Adv Ther. 2021;38(2):949–968.
75. Reddy S, Kamath N. Clinical approach to renal tubular acidosis in children. Karnataka Paediatr J 2020;35(2):88–94.
76. Watanabe T. Improving outcomes for patients with distal renal tubular acidosis: recent advances and challenges ahead. Pediatric Health Med Ther. 2018;9:181–190.
77. Lopez-Garcia SC, Emma F, Walsh SB, et al. Treatment and long-term outcome in primary distal renal tubular acidosis. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2019;34(6):981–991.
78. Giglio S, Montini G, Trepiccione F, et al. Distal renal tubular acidosis: a systematic approach from diagnosis to treatment. J Nephrol. 2021;34(6):2073–2083.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

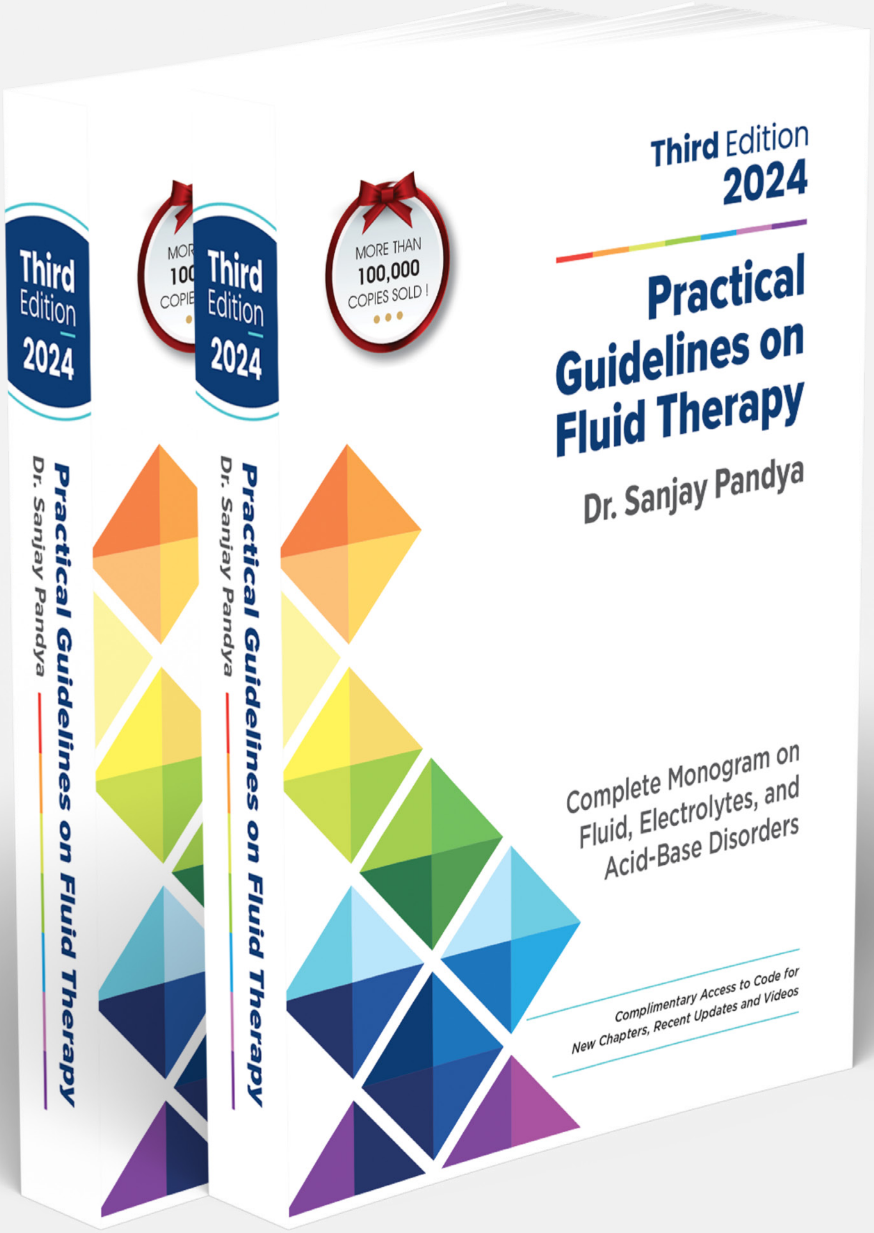
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 32:

Metabolic Alkalosis


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

32

Metabolic Alkalosis

Definition **382**
Pathogenesis **382**
    Generation.................................. 382
    Maintenance................................ 383
Etiology **384**
Clinical Features.............................. **385**
Diagnosis **385**
    Confirm diagnosis......................... 386
    Establishing the etiological diagnosis 386
    Identifying coexisting acid-base disorders...................................... 387
Management.................................... **387**
    Treatment of underlying cause..... 387
    Saline responsive alkalosis 387
    Saline resistant alkalosis 389

Metabolic alkalosis is the most common acid-base disorder, typically developing after hospitalization in critically ill patients, but it is not most frequently present upon admission, unlike metabolic acidosis [1, 2].

DEFINITION

Metabolic alkalosis is a primary acid-base disorder characterized by an increase in serum HCO_3 (>26 mEq/L), a high pH (>7.45), and a compensatory increase in $PaCO_2$ due to alveolar hypoventilation. Hypochloremia and hypokalemia are commonly encountered electrolyte imbalances in metabolic alkalosis.

Respiratory compensation: Hypoventilation, which occurs as a respiratory compensation in metabolic alkalosis, is a relatively slow process compared to the hyperventilation response that occurs in metabolic acidosis. Hypoventilation-induced hypoxia is a limiting factor for compensatory mechanisms in metabolic alkalosis because severe hypoxia (PO_2 <60 mm Hg) is a potent stimulus to increase alveolar ventilation, offsetting this protective respiratory response.

Comparison with chronic respiratory acidosis: Increased HCO_3 and increased $PaCO_2$ are also features of chronic respiratory acidosis, but the differentiating feature is a low pH.

PATHOGENESIS [3–5]

For a proper understanding of the pathogenesis of metabolic alkalosis, it is important to know the two distinct phases involved in sustaining metabolic alkalosis: 1. Generation of metabolic alkalosis and 2. Maintenance of metabolic alkalosis, as summarized in Table 32.1.

Generation of metabolic alkalosis

Mechanisms leading to the primary increase in plasma HCO_3 can involve one or more of the following:

- Gastrointestinal (GI) loss of hydrogen ion: Due to conditions like vomiting, nasogastric suction, or congenital chloride-losing diarrhea.

- Renal loss of hydrogen ion: It includes the use of diuretics, primary hyperaldosteronism, Bartter syndrome, and Gitelman syndrome.
- Exogenous HCO_3 load: Due to the administration of HCO_3, balanced crystalloids containing buffers, blood products containing citrate as an anticoagulant, and the development of milk-alkali syndrome.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Webster NR, Kulkarni V. Metabolic alkalosis in the critically ill. Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci. 1999;36(5):497–510.
2. Mæhle K, Haug B, Flaatten H, et al. Metabolic alkalosis is the most common acid-base disorder in ICU patients. Crit Care. 2014;18(2):420.
3. Emmett M. Metabolic Alkalosis: A Brief Pathophysiologic Review. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2020;15(12):1848–1856.
4. Do C, Vasquez PC, Soleimani M. Metabolic Alkalosis Pathogenesis, Diagnosis, and Treatment: Core Curriculum 2022. Am J Kidney Dis. 2022;80(4):536–551.
5. Krishnan N, Alpern RJ. Metabolic Alkalosis. Nephrology Self-Assessment Program. 2022;20(2):145–146.
6. Galla JH. Metabolic alkalosis. J Am Soc Nephrol 2000;11(2):369–375.
7. Khanna A, Kurtzman NA. Metabolic alkalosis. J Nephrol 2006;19 Suppl 9:S86–96.
8. Gillion V, Jadoul M, Devuyst O, et al. The patient with metabolic alkalosis. Acta Clin Belg. 2019;74(1):34–40.
9. Tinawi M. Pathophysiology, Evaluation, and Management of Metabolic Alkalosis. Cureus. 2021;13(1):e12841.
10. Eiro M, Katoh T, Watanabe T. Use of a proton-pump inhibitor for metabolic disturbances associated with anorexia nervosa. N Engl J Med. 2002;346(2):140.
11. Kirsch BM, Sunder-Plassmann G, Schwarz C. Metabolic alkalosis in a hemodialysis patient--successful treatment with a proton pump inhibitor. Clin Nephrol 2006;66(5):391–4.
12. Mozell EJ, Cramer AJ, O'Dorisio TM, et al. Long-term efficacy of octreotide in the treatment of Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. Arch Surg. 1992;127(9):1019–24.
13. Guffey JD, Haas CE, Crowley A, et al. Hydrochloric Acid Infusion for the Treatment of Metabolic Alkalosis in Surgical Intensive Care Unit Patients. Ann Pharmacother. 2018;(6):522–526.
14. Buchanan IB, Campbell BT, Peck MD, et al. Chest wall necrosis and death secondary to hydrochloric acid infusion for metabolic alkalosis. South Med J. 2005;98(8):822–824.
15. Hydrochloric Acid (HCL). In: IV Dilutions Medication Reference and Infusion Guidelines. GlobalRxPh: The Clinician's Ultimate Reference. [Internet]. Available from: https://globalrph.com/dilution/hydrochloric-acid-hcl/.
16. Achanti A, Szerlip HM. Acid-Base Disorders in the Critically Ill Patient. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2023;18(1):102–112.
17. Huber L, Gennari FJ. Severe metabolic alkalosis in a hemodialysis patient. Am J Kidney Dis 2011;58(1):144–149.
18. Lisawat P, Gennari FJ. Approach to the hemodialysis patient with an abnormal serum bicarbonate concentration. Am J Kidney Dis 2014;64(1):151–5.
19. Yi Y. Post-Hypercapnic Alkalosis: A Brief Review. Electrolyte Blood Press. 2023;21(1):18–23.
20. Peixoto AJ, Alpern RJ. Treatment of severe metabolic alkalosis in a patient with congestive heart failure. Am J Kidney Dis. 2013;61(5):822–7.
21. Ellison DH. Clinical pharmacology in diuretic use. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2019;14(8):1248–1257.
22. Enslow BT, Stockand JD, Berman JM. Liddle's syndrome mechanisms, diagnosis and management. Integr Blood Press Control. 2019;12:13–22.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid therapy.org

Chapter 33:
Respiratory Acid-Base Disorders

Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

33

Respiratory Acid–Base Disorders

RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS **391**
Definition and basic understanding **391**
    Renal compensation 391
    Respiratory acidosis vs. metabolic alkalosis 392
    Relation between hypercapnia and hypoxemia 392
Etiology **392**
Clinical features **392**
Diagnosis **393**
    History 393
    Physical examination 393
    Investigations 393
Treatment **395**
    General measures 395
    Oxygen therapy 395
    Ventilatory support 396
    Alkali therapy 396
RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS **397**
Definition and basic understanding **397**
    Renal compensation 397
Etiology **397**
Clinical features **397**
Diagnosis **398**
Treatment **399**

Respiratory acidosis and respiratory alkalosis are the two primary respiratory acid-base disorders commonly encountered in clinical practice, both resulting from primary changes in pCO_2 due to various disorders.

RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

DEFINITION AND BASIC UNDERSTANDING

Respiratory acidosis, also known as primary hypercapnia, is a clinical disorder characterized by a primary elevation in the $PaCO_2$ (>45 mmHg) leading to a reduction in pH (<7.35) and variable compensatory increase in the plasma HCO_3 concentration.

Respiratory acidosis occurs when the effective alveolar ventilation (CO_2 excretion by the lung) fails to keep pace with the rate of CO_2 production. Acute respiratory acidosis occurs rapidly within <48 hours, while chronic respiratory acidosis develops slowly over days to weeks (>48 hours).

Renal compensation

Respiratory acidosis leads to renal compensation through increased urinary H^+ secretion, resulting in acidic urine. This gradual process leads to a rise in plasma HCO_3 levels, mitigating acidosis. Because renal compensation is a slow process, the compensatory increase in HCO_3 is small in acute respiratory acidosis. In contrast, in chronic respiratory acidosis, the compensatory rise in HCO_3 is more substantial over time due to robust and prolonged renal compensation.

Acute respiratory acidosis: Every 10 mm of Hg rise in $PaCO_2$ causes 1 mEq/L rise in HCO_3 and 0.1 fall in pH.

Chronic respiratory acidosis: Every 10 mm Hg rise in $PaCO_2$ causes a 4 mEq/L rise in HCO_3 and a 0.03 fall in pH.

Serum HCO_3 usually does not exceed 38 mEq/L due to compensation. If HCO_3 is >38 mEq/L, think of concomitant metabolic alkalosis.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Sarkar M, Niranjan N, Banyal PK. Mechanisms of hypoxemia. Lung India. 2017;34(1):47–60.
2. Palmer BF, Clegg DJ. Respiratory Acidosis and Respiratory Alkalosis: Core Curriculum 2023. Am J Kidney Dis. 2023;82(3):347–359.
3. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Management of Life-Threatening Acid–Base Disorders. N Engl J Med. 1998;338(1):26–34.
4. Boatright JE, Jensen MQ. Therapeutic Gases: Management and Administration. In: Hess DR, MacIntyre NR, Galvin WF, editors. Respiratory Care: Principles and Practice, 4th edition. Jones & Bartlett Learning, LLC, an Ascend Learning Company; 2021. Chapter 14, pages 285–320.
5. Theerawit P, Soipetkasem P. An importance of respiratory drive and effort during mechanical ventilation: Respiratory drive and effort in respiratory failure. Clin Crit Care [Internet]. 2023;31(1):2023:e0001.
6. Rocker G. Harms of over oxygenation in patients with exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. CMAJ. 2017;189(22):E762–E763.
7. Sarkar M, Madabhavi I, Kadakol N. Oxygen-induced hypercapnia: physiological mechanisms and clinical implications. Monaldi Arch Chest Dis. 2023;93(3):2399.
8. O'Driscoll BR, Howard LS, Earis J, et al. BTS guideline for oxygen use in adults in healthcare and emergency settings. Thorax 2017;72(Suppl 1):ii1–ii90.
9. Echevarria C, Steer J, Wason J, et al. Oxygen therapy and inpatient mortality in COPD exacerbation. Emerg Med J. 2021;38(3):170–7.
10. Barnett A, Beasley R, Buchan C, et al. Thoracic Society of Australia and New Zealand Position Statement on Acute Oxygen Use in Adults: 'Swimming between the flags'. Respirology. 2022;27(4):262–276.
11. Fujishima S. Guideline-based management of acute respiratory failure and acute respiratory distress syndrome. J Intensive Care. 2023;11(1):10.
12. Austin MA, Wills KE, Blizzard L, et al. Effect of high flow oxygen on mortality in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients in prehospital setting: randomized controlled trial. BMJ 2010;341:c5462.
13. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Alkali Therapy for Respiratory Acidosis: A Medical Controversy. Am J Kidney Dis. 2020;75(2):265–271.
14. Chand R, Swenson ER, Goldfarb DS. Sodium bicarbonate therapy for acute respiratory acidosis. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens. 2021;30(2):223–230.
15. Quade BN, Parker MD, Occhipinti R. The therapeutic importance of acid-base balance. Biochem Pharmacol. 2021;183:114278.
16. Sanghavi S, Albert TJ, Swenson ER. ACID-BASE BALANCE. In: Broaddus VC, Ernst JD, King TE Jr, editors. Murray & Nadel's Textbook of Respiratory

Medicine. Seventh Edition. Elsevier - Health Sciences Division; 2021. Chapter 12, page 166.

17. Laffey JG, Kavanagh BP. Hypocapnia. N Engl J Med. 2002;347(1):43–53.
18. Mazzara JT, Ayres SM, Grace WJ. Extreme hypocapnia in the critically ill patient. Am J Med. 1974;56(4):450–6.
19. Foster GT, Varizi ND, Sassoon CS. Respiratory alkalosis. Respir Care. 2001;46(4):384–91.
20. Callaham M. Hypoxic hazards of traditional paper bag rebreathing in hyperventilating patients. Ann Emerg Med 1989;18(6):622–8.
21. Burtscher M, Gatterer H, Faulhaber M, et al. Acetazolamide pre-treatment before ascending to high altitudes: when to start? Int J Clin Exp Med. 2014;7(11):4378–83.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

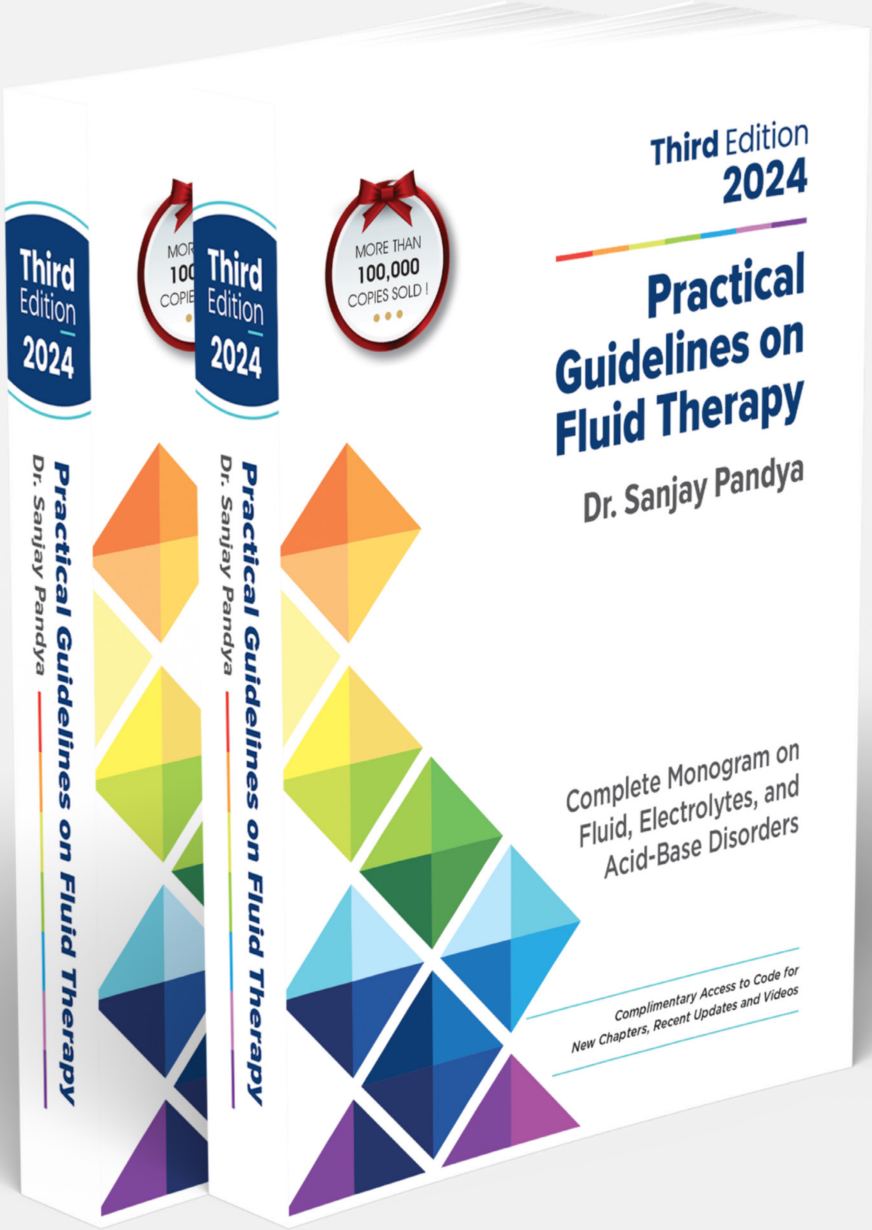
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid therapy.org

Chapter 34:

Gastrointestinal Losses and Upper GI Bleeding


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

34

Gastrointestinal Losses and Upper GI Bleeding

Composition of Gastrointestinal Secretions **403**

VOMITING

Fluid and Electrolyte Abnormalities.. **404**
Management.................................... **406**
  Etiological treatment..................... 406
  Correction of hypovolemia and electrolyte disturbances................ 406
  Fluid selection for gastric irrigation...................................... 407

DIARRHEA

Fluid and Electrolyte Abnormalities.. **408**
Management.................................... **410**
  Etiological treatment..................... 410
  Correction of hypovolemia and electrolyte disturbances................ 410
    Oral rehydration therapy...........411
    Intravenous fluid therapy 411

UPPER GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

Common Presentations **412**
Management.................................... **413**
  Initial assessment.......................... 413
    Hemodynamic assessment 413
    Basic laboratory investigations 413
    History and evaluation............. 413
  Treatment 413
    Stabilization 413
    Blood transfusion..................... 414
    Medications 415
    Placement of nasogastric tube 417
    Endoscopy.............................. 417
    Specific treatment.................... 417
    Risk factors.............................. 417
    Monitoring............................... 418

Loss of gastrointestinal (GI) secretions and hematemesis are frequently encountered problems in clinical practice. Several gastrointestinal disorders lead to loss of GI secretions causing electrolytes and acid-base disturbances. The composition of gastrointestinal secretions and potential disturbances due to their losses are summarized in Table 34.1 [1–3], which will help plan its management.

The most common disorders, vomiting, diarrhea, and hematemesis, will be discussed.

VOMITING

Vomiting or nasogastric suction is a common problem in clinical practice causing loss of fluid and electrolytes. Therefore, it is necessary to understand the basic pathophysiology of hypovolemia and electrolytes and acid-base abnormalities due to upper GI losses and the proper selection of IV fluids to correct it.

FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE ABNORMALITIES

It is important to understand the fluid and electrolyte abnormalities that commonly occur due to vomiting.

Gastric juice contains approximately: Sodium (Na^+) 20–60 mEq/L, chloride (Cl^-) 140 mEq/L, potassium (K^+) 14 mEq/L, and hydrogen ions (H^+) 60–80 mEq/L [2].

So, vomiting (or nasogastric-NG suction) leads to hypokalemic, hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis with hypovolemia. Due to the loss of HCl containing gastric juice, the first abnormalities usually occur in vomiting are hypochloremia with metabolic alkalosis, and hypokalemia occurs subsequently. The pathogenesis of these abnormalities is summarized below (Figure 34.1).

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Gennari FJ, Weise WJ. Acid-base disturbances in gastrointestinal disease. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2008;3(6):1861–8.
2. National Clinical Guideline Centre (UK). Intravenous Fluid Therapy: Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital [Internet]. London: Royal College of Physicians (UK); 2013.
3. Do C, Evans GJ, DeAguero J, et al. Dysnatremia in Gastrointestinal Disorders. Front. Med. 2022;9:892265.
4. National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health (UK). Diarrhoea and Vomiting Caused by Gastroenteritis: Diagnosis, Assessment and Management in Children Younger than 5 Years. London: RCOG Press; 2009. (NICE Clinical Guidelines, No. 84.) 5, Fluid management. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK63837/.
5. Shah GS, Das BK, Kumar S, et al. Acid base and electrolyte disturbance in diarrhoea. Kathmandu Univ Med J (KUMJ). 2007;5(1):60–62.
6. Onyiriuka AN, Iheagwara EC. Serum electrolyte profiles ofunder-five Nigerian children admitted for severe dehydration due to acute diarrhea. Niger J Heal Sci 2015;15(1):14–17.
7. Dhyani A, Ameta P, Patel JB, et al. Clinical profile of children with diarrhoea admitted in pediatric intensive care unit of Bal Chikitsalay, M.B. Hospital, RNT Medical College, Udaipur, Rajasthan, India. Int J ContempPediatr2016;3(4):1371–1374.
8. Dastidar RG, Konar N. A Study of Electrolyte Disturbances in a Child Presenting with Acute Gastroenteritis, with Special Emphasis on Hyponatremic Dehydration-A Hospital based CrossSectional Study. Pediatr Ther 2017;7(2):322.
9. Gopchade A. Electrolyte Disturbances in Children Presenting with Acute Diarrhea: A Prospective Cohort Study. JMSCR 2019;7(9):777.
10. Tayab MA, Hoq MA. Acid-base and Electrolyte Disturbances in Children Presenting with Acute Watery Diarrhoea in Emergency Observation and Referral Unit of Dhaka Shishu (Children) Hospital. Dhaka Shishu (Children) Hospital Journal, 2021;36(2):120–124.
11. Riaz L, Hussain MK, Javed M, et al. Challenges and Complications Associated with Sodium, Potassium Imbalances and Preventive Measures in Children Under-Five with Acute Gastroenteritis. Pak Armed Forces Med J 2022;72(Suppl-1):S64–67.
12. Kiela PR, Ghishan FK. Physiology of Intestinal Absorption and Secretion. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol. 2016;30(2):145–159.

13. Nagami GT. Hyperchloremia - Why and How. Nefrologia. 2016;36(4):347–53.
14. Mahajan V, Sajan SS, Sharma A, et al. Ringer's lactate vs normal saline for children with acute diarrhea and severe dehydration: A double blind randomized controlled trial. Indian Pediatr 2012;49(1):963–68.
15. Naseem M, Dubey AP, Mishra TK, et al. Effect of Rehydration with Normal Saline versus Ringer Lactate on Serum Sodium Level of Children with Acute Diarrhea and Severe Dehydration: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Indian Pediatr. 2020;57(6):519–522.
16. World Health Organization. The treatment of diarrhoea: a manual for physicians and other senior health workers, 4th rev. World Health Organization. 2005. https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/43209.
17. Mahalanabis D, Brayton JB, Mondal A, et al. The use of Ringer's lactate in the treatment of children with cholera and acute noncholera diarrhoea. Bull World Health Organ. 1972;46(3):311–9.
18. Cieza JA, Hinostroza J, Huapaya JA, et al. Sodium chloride 0.9% versus Lactated Ringer in the management of severely dehydrated patients with choleriform diarrhoea. J Infect Dev Ctries. 2013;7(7):528–32.
19. Rasheed S, Rafique S, Hussain A, et al. Comparison of outcome between Ringer's lactate and normal saline fluid replacement in pediatric patients with acute watery diarrhoea. PAFMJ. 2020;70(Suppl-1):S101–05.
20. Shaikh B, Ghoto IS, Langah AU, et al. A Randomized Double Blind Controlled Trial of Ringers Lactate versus Normal Saline among Pediatric Patients with Acute Severe Diarrhea. PJMHS 2022;16(3):281–282.
21. Lobo DN, Awad S. Should chloride-rich crystalloids remain the mainstay of fluid resuscitation to prevent "pre-renal" acute kidney injury? con. Kidney International. 2014;86(6):1096–1105.
22. Heng Li, Sun SR, Yap JQ, et al. 0.9% saline is neither normal nor physiological. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B. 2016;17(3):181–187.
23. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Glassford N, et al. Chloride-liberal vs. Chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration and acute kidney injury: an extended analysis. Intensive Care Med 2015;41:257–64.
24. Kamboj AK, Hoversten P, Leggett CL. Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding: Etiologies and Management. Mayo Clin Proc. 2019;94(4):697–703.
25. Cañamares-Orbís P, Lanas Arbeloa Á. New Trends and Advances in Non-Variceal Gastrointestinal Bleeding-Series II. J Clin Med. 2021;10(14):3045.
26. Laine L, Barkun AN, Saltzman JR, et al. ACG Clinical Guideline: Upper Gastrointestinal and Ulcer Bleeding. Am J Gastroenterol. 2021;116(5):899–917.
27. Tielleman T, Bujanda D, Cryer B. Epidemiology and risk factors for upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am. 2015;25(3):415–428.
28. Wuerth BA, Rockey DC. Changing Epidemiology of Upper Gastrointestinal Hemorrhage in the Last Decade: A Nationwide Analysis. Dig Dis Sci. 2018;63(5):1286–1293.
29. Oakland K. Changing epidemiology and etiology of upper and lower gastrointestinal bleeding. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2019;42–43:101610.
30. Wilkins T, Wheeler B, Carpenter M. Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding in Adults: Evaluation and Management. Am Fam Physician. 2020 Mar 1;101(5):294–300. Erratum in: Am Fam Physician. 2021;103(2):70.
31. Cappell MS, Friedel D. Initial management of acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding: from initial evaluation up to gastrointestinal endoscopy. Med Clin North Am 2008;92(3):491–509.
32. Kupfer Y, Cappell MS, Tessler S. Acute gastrointestinal bleeding in the intensive care unit. The intensivist's perspective. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2000;29(2):275–307.
33. Elsayed IAS, Battu PK, Irving S. Management of acute upper GI bleeding. BJA Education 2017;17(4):117–123.
34. Dinesen L, Benson M. Managing acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding in the acute assessment unit. Clin Med (Lond). 2012;12(6):589–593.
35. Hernandez-Gea V, Berbel C, Baiges A, et al. Acute variceal bleeding: risk stratification and management (including TIPS). Hepatol Int 2018;12:81–90.
36. Villanueva C, Colomo A, Bosch A. Transfusion for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(14):1362–3.
37. Jairath V, Kahan BC, Gray A, et al. Restrictive versus liberal blood transfusion for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding (TRIGGER): A pragmatic, open-label, cluster randomised feasibility trial. Lancet 2015;386(9989):137–44.
38. Carson JL, Stanworth SJ, Roubinian N, et al. Transfusion thresholds and other strategies for guiding allogeneic red blood cell transfusion. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2016;10:CD002042.
39. Odutayo A, Desborough MJR, Trivella M et al. Restrictive versus liberal blood transfusion for gastrointestinal bleeding: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Lancet Gastro-enterol Hepatol 2017;2(5):354–360.
40. Carson JL, Stanworth SJ, Dennis JA, et al. Transfusion thresholds for guiding red blood cell transfusion. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2021;12(12):CD002042.
41. Carson JL, Guyatt G, Heddle NM, et al. Clinical practice guidelines from the AABB: Red blood cell transfusion thresholds and storage. JAMA 2016;316(19):2025–35.
42. Barkun AN, Almadi M, Kuipers EJ, et al. Management of nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding: Guideline recommendations from the International Consensus Group. Ann Intern Med 2019;171(11):805–822.
43. Gralnek IM, Stanley AJ, Morris AJ, et al. Endoscopic diagnosis and management of nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage (NVUGIH): European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

(ESGE) Guideline - Update 2021. Endoscopy. 2021;53(3):300–332.

44. NICE Guidelines 2012. Acute Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding in over 16s management Clinical guideline [CG141] (https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg141).
45. Restellini S, Kherad O, Jairath V, et al. Red blood cell transfusion is associated with increased rebleeding in patients with nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2013;37(3):316–322.
46. Stokes A, Thompson C, Clegg A, et al. The influence of a simple blood transfusion policy on overtransfusion in acute upper gastrointestinal haemorrhage. Clin Med (Lond) 2015;15(4):325–9.
47. Subramaniam K, Spilsbury K, Ayonrinde OT, et al. Red blood cell transfusion is associated with further bleeding and fresh-frozen plasma with mortality in nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Transfusion 2016;56(4):816–26.
48. Chen YC, Hsiao CT, Lin LC, et al. The association between red blood cell transfusion and outcomes in patients with upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Clin Transl Gastroenterol 2018;9(3):138.
49. Garcia-Tsao G, Abraldes JG, Berzigotti A, et al. Portal hypertensive bleeding in cirrhosis: Risk stratification, diagnosis, and management: 2016 practice guidance by the American Association for the study of liver diseases. Hepatology. 2017;65(1):310–335.
50. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2018;69(2):406–460.
51. Liu P, Hum J, Jou J, et al. Transfusion strategies in patients with cirrhosis. Eur J Haematol. 2020;104(1):15–25.
52. Boyer JL, Chatterjee C, Iber FL, et al. Effect of plasma-volume expansion on portal hypertension. N Engl J Med. 1966;275(14):750–755.
53. McCormick PA, Jenkins SA, McIntyre N, et al. Why portal hypertensive varices bleed and bleed: a hypothesis. Gut 1995;36(1):100–103.
54. Castaneda B, Morales J, Lionetti R, et al. Effects of blood volume restitution following a portal hypertensive-related bleeding in anesthetized cirrhotic rats. Hepatology. 2001;33(4):821–825.
55. Farkas J. PulmCrit- Coagulopathy management in the bleeding cirrhotic: Seven pearls and one crazy idea. EMCrit Blog. http://emcrit.org/pulmcrit/coagulopathy-bleeding-cirrhotic-inr/. Accessed 5 June 2022.
56. Heyes J, Kelly PA, Monaghan K, et al. A single unit transfusion policy reduces red cell transfusions in general medical in-patients. QJM 2017;110(11):735–739.
57. Sung JJ, Chiu PW, Chan FKL, et al. Asia-Pacific working group consensus on non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding: an update 2018. Gut 2018;67(10):1757–1768.
58. Abraham NS, Barkun AN, Sauer BG, et al. American College of Gastroenterology-Canadian Association of Gastroenterology Clinical Practice Guideline: Management of Anticoagulants and Antiplatelets during Acute Gastrointestinal Bleeding and the Periendoscopic Period. Am J Gastroenterol. 2022;117(4):542–558.
59. Munlemvo DM, Tobias JD, Chenault KM, et al. Prothrombin Complex Concentrates to Treat Coagulation Disturbances: An Overview with a Focus on Use in Infants and Children. Cardiol Res. 2022;13(1):18–26.
60. Cohn SM, Jimenez JC, Khoury L, et al. Inability to Reverse Aspirin and Clopidogrel-induced Platelet Dysfunction with Platelet Infusion. Cureus. 2019;11(1):e3889.
61. Savage SA, Sumislawski JJ, Zarzaur BL, et al. The new metric to define large-volume hemorrhage: results of a prospective study of the critical administration threshold. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 2015;78(2):224–9.
62. Holcomb JB, Tilley BC, Baraniuk S, et al. Transfusion of Plasma, Platelets, and Red Blood Cells in a 1:1:1 Vs a 1:1:2 Ratio and Mortality in Patients with Severe Trauma: The Proppr Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA 2015;313(5):471–82.
63. Lau JY, Leung WK, Wu JC, et al. Omeprazole before endoscopy in patients with gastrointestinal bleeding. N Engl J Med. 2007;356(16):1631–40.
64. Sreedharan A, Martin J, Leontiadis GI, et al. Proton pump inhibitor treatment initiated prior to endoscopic diagnosis in upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;2010(7):CD005415.
65. Kanno T, Yuan Y, Tse F, et al. Proton pump inhibitor treatment initiated prior to endoscopic diagnosis in upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2022;1(1):CD005415.
66. Bai Y, Guo JF, Li ZS. Meta-analysis: erythromycin before endoscopy for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2011;34(2):166–171.
67. Szary NM, Gupta R, Choudhary A, et al. Erythromycin prior to endoscopy in acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding: a meta-analysis. Scand J Gastroenterol 2011;46(7–8):920–924.
68. Theivanayagam S, Lim RG, Cobell WJ et al. Administration of erythromycin before endoscopy in upper gastrointestinal bleeding: a metaanalysis of randomized controlled trials. Saudi J Gastroenterol 2013;19(5):205–210.
69. Barkun AN, Bardou M, Martel M, et al. Prokinetics in acute upper GI bleeding: a meta-analysis. Gastrointest Endosc 2010;72(6):1138–1145.
70. Rahman R, Nguyen DL, Sohail U, et al. Pre-endoscopic erythromycin administration in upper gastrointestinal bleeding: an updated metaanalysis and systematic review. Ann Gastroenterol 2016;29(3):312–317.
71. Na HK, Jung HY, Seo DW, et al. Erythromycin infusion prior to endoscopy for acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding: A pilot randomized controlled trial. Korean J Intern Med 2017;32(6):1002–1009.
72. Winstead NS, Wilcox CM. Erythromycin prior to endoscopy for acute upper gastrointestinal

haemorrhage: a cost–effectiveness analysis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2007;26(10):1371–1377.

73. Daram S, Johnson W, Abrasley C, et al. A double blind randomized study to evaluate the use of metoclopramide before endoscopy for upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Am J Gastroenterol 2010;105(Suppl 1):S508.
74. Daram SR, Garretson R. Erythromycin is preferable to metoclopramide as a prokinetic in acute upper GI bleeding. Gastrointest Endosc 2011;74(1):234.
75. Estes DJ, Berera S, Deshpande AR, et al. Re-Visiting Metoclopramide to Optimize Visualization with Gastrointestinal Bleeding - Mobilizing Existing Data. Clin Endosc. 2019;52(5):516–517.
76. Tripathi D, Stanley AJ, Hayes PC, et al. U.K. guidelines on the management of variceal haemorrhage in cirrhotic patients. Gut 2015;64(11):1680–704.
77. de Franchis R, Baveno VI Faculty. Expanding consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno VI Consensus Workshop: Stratifying risk and individualizing care for portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2015;63(3):743–52.
78. Stanley AJ, Laine L. Management of acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. BMJ. 2019;364:l536.
79. Yoshiji H, Nagoshi S, Akahane T, et al. Evidence-based clinical practice guidelines for Liver Cirrhosis 2020. J Gastroenterol. 2021;56(7):593–619.
80. Riha HM, Wilkinson R, Twilla J, et al. Octreotide added to a proton pump inhibitor versus a proton pump inhibitor alone in nonvariceal upper-gastrointestinal bleeds. Ann Pharmacother 2019;53(8):794–800.
81. Wells M, Chande N, Adams P, et al. Meta-analysis: vasoactive medications for the management of acute variceal bleeds. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2012;35(11):1267–78.
82. Zhou X, Tripathi D, Song T, et al. Terlipressin for the treatment of acute variceal bleeding: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Medicine (Baltimore). 2018;97(48):e13437.
83. Bolognesi M, Di Pascoli M, Verardo A, et al. Splanchnic vasodilation and hyperdynamic circulatory syndrome in cirrhosis. World J Gastroenterol. 2014;20(10):2555–2563.
84. Wong YJ, Tan CK, Lin Yii YL, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis in cirrhosis patients with upper gastrointestinal bleeding: An updated systematic review and meta-analysis. Portal Hypertension & Cirrhosis 2022;1(3):167–177.
85. Tandon P, Abraldes JG, Keough A, et al. Risk of bacterial infection in patients with cirrhosis and acute variceal hemorrhage, based on childPugh class, and effects of antibiotics. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2015;13(6):1189–96.e2.
86. Gao Y, Qian B, Zhang X, et al. Prophylactic antibiotics on patients with cirrhosis and upper gastrointestinal bleeding: A meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2022;17(12):e0279496.
87. Bennett C, Klingenberg SL, Langholz E, et al. Tranexamic acid for upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;2014(11):CD006640.
88. HALT-IT Trial Collaborators. Effects of a high-dose 24-h infusion of tranexamic acid on death and thromboembolic events in patients with acute gastrointestinal bleeding (HALT-IT): an international randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 2020;395(10241):1927–1936.
89. Aljebreen AM, Fallone CA, Barkun AN. Nasogastric aspirate predicts high-risk endoscopic lesions in patients with acute upper-GI bleeding. Gastrointest Endosc. 2004;59(2):172–8.
90. Rockey DC, Ahn C, de Melo SW Jr. Randomized pragmatic trial of nasogastric tube placement in patients with upper gastrointestinal tract bleeding. J Investig Med. 2017;65(4):759–764.
91. Karakonstantis S, Tzagkarakis E, Kalemaki D, et al. Nasogastric aspiration/lavage in patients with gastrointestinal bleeding: a review of the evidence. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;12(1):63–72.
92. Palamidessi N, Sinert R, Falzon L, et al. Nasogastric aspiration and lavage in emergency department patients with hematochezia or melena without hematemesis. Acad Emerg Med. 2010;17(2):126–32.
93. Huang ES, Karsan S, Kanwal F, et al. Impact of nasogastric lavage on outcomes in acute GI bleeding. Gastrointest Endosc 2011;74(5):971–80.
94. Pallin DJ, Saltzman JR. Is nasogastric tube lavage in patients with acute upper GI bleeding indicated or antiquated? Gastrointest Endosc. 2011;74(5):981–4.
95. Laine L, Jensen DM. Management of patients with ulcer bleeding. Am J Gastroenterol. 2012;107(3):345–60;quiz 361.
96. Gené E, Calvet X. Nasogastric intubation in patients with upper gastrointestinal bleeding? Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2016;39(8):497–9.
97. Gong EJ, Hsing LC, Seo HI, et al. Selected nasogastric lavage in patients with nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. BMC Gastroenterol. 2021;21(1):113.
98. Saltzman JR. Approach to acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding in adults. In: UpToDate, Post TW (Ed), UpToDate, Waltham, MA. (Accessed on June 1, 2022).
99. Dai JY, Yin L, Xu J, et al. Expert consensus on emergency diagnosis and treatment procedures for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. J Acute Dis 2020;9(6):231–43.
100. Kim JS, Kim BW, Kim DH, et al. Guidelines for Nonvariceal Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding. Gut Liver. 2020;14(5):560–570.
101. Spiegel BM, Vakil NB, Ofman JJ. Endoscopy for acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal tract hemorrhage: is sooner better? A systematic review. Arch Intern Med 2001;161(11):1393–404.
102. Cooper GS, Kou TD, Wong RC. Use and impact of early endoscopy in elderly patients with peptic ulcer hemorrhage: A population-based analysis. Gastrointest Endosc 2009;70(2):229–35.
103. Laursen SB, Leontiadis GI, Stanley AJ, et al.

Relationship between timing of endoscopy and mortality in patients with peptic ulcer bleeding: A nationwide cohort study. Gastrointest Endosc 2017;85(5):936–944.e3.

104. Garg SK, Anugwom C, Campbell J, et al. Early esophagogastroduodenoscopy in upper gastrointestinal bleeding: a nationwide study. Endosc Int Open 2017;5(5):E376–E386.
105. Xia XF, Chiu PWY, Tsoi KKF, et al. The effect of off-hours hospital admission on mortality and clinical outcomes for patients with upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage: a systematic review and meta-analysis of 20 cohorts. United European Gastroenterol J. 2018;6(3):367–381.
106. Siau K, Hodson J, Ingram R, et al. Time to endoscopy for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding: results from a prospective multicentre trainee-led audit. United European Gastroenterol J 2019;7(2):199–209.
107. Jeong N, Kim KS, Jung YS, et al. Delayed endoscopy is associated with increased mortality in upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Am J Emerg Med. 2019;37(2):277–280.
108. Guo CLT, Wong SH, Lau LHS, et al. Timing of endoscopy for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding: a territory-wide cohort study. Gut. 2021:gutjnl-2020–323054.
109. Jairath V, Kahan BC, Logan RF, et al. Outcomes following acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding in relation to time to endoscopy: results from a nationwide study. Endoscopy. 2012;44(8):723–30.
110. Lim LG, Ho KY, Chan YH, et al. Urgent endoscopy is associated with lower mortality in high-risk but not low-risk nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Endoscopy 2011;43(4):300–6.
111. Targownik LE, Murthy S, Keyvani L, et al. The role of rapid endoscopy for high-risk patients with acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Can J Gastroenterol. 2007;21(7):425–9.
112. Tai CM, Huang SP, Wang HP, et al. High-risk ED patients with nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage undergoing emergency or urgent endoscopy: a retrospective analysis. Am J Emerg Med. 2007;25(3):273–8.
113. Lau JYW, Yu Y, Tang RSY, et al. Timing of endoscopy for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. N Engl J Med 2020;382(14):1299–1308.
114. Kim J, Gong EJ, Seo M, et al. Timing of endoscopy in patients with upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Sci Rep 2022;12:6833.
115. Laursen SB, Hansen JM, Schaffalitzky de Muckadell OB. The Glasgow Blatchford score is the most accurate assessment of patients with upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2012;10(10):1130–1135.e1.
116. Tham J, Stanley A. Clinical utility of pre-endoscopy risk scores in upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2019;13(12):1161–1167.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

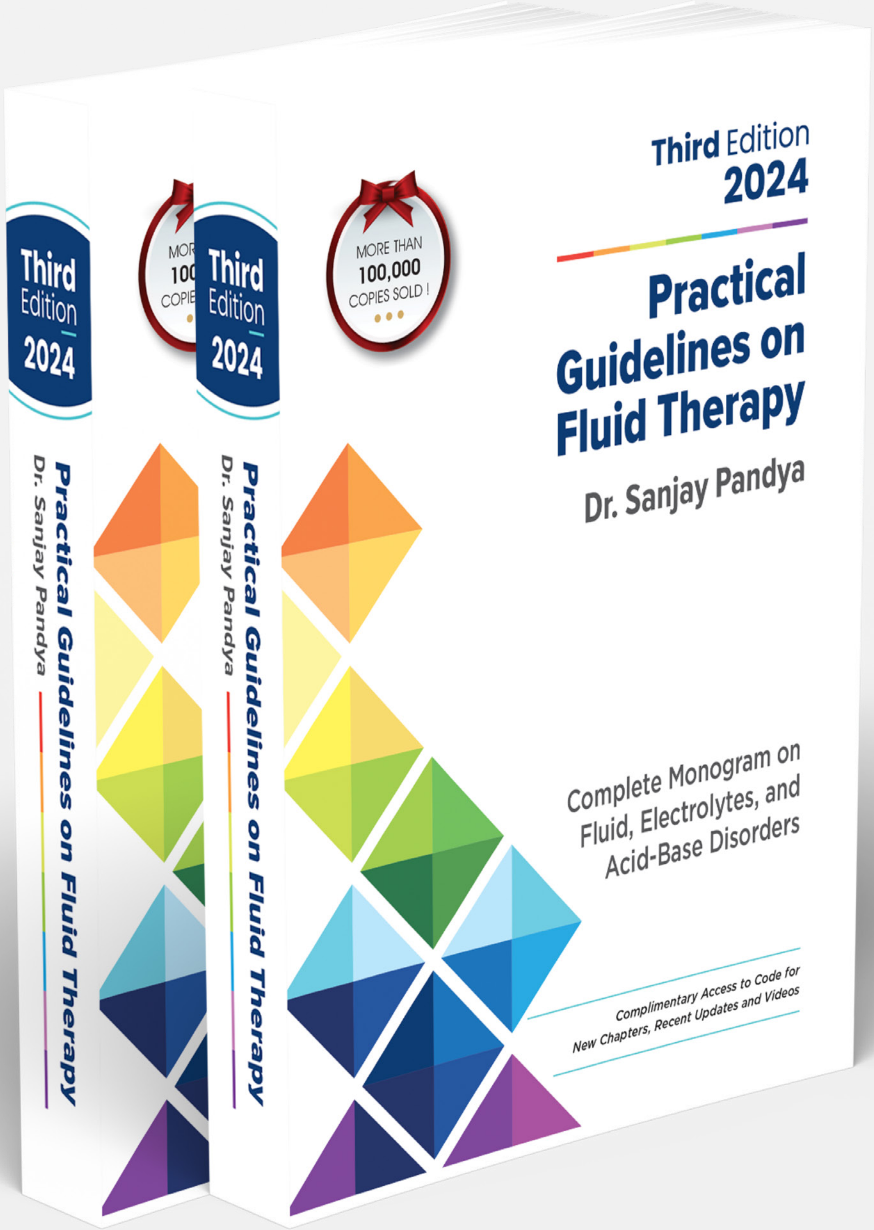
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 35:

Ascites in Cirrhosis


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

35

Ascites in Cirrhosis

Pathophysiology **423**
Management **424**
- Goals of therapy 424
- Salt restriction 425
- Fluid restriction and bed rest 425
- Diuretics 425
- Large volume paracentesis 425
- Drugs in ascites 427
- Other measures 427

Monitoring **428**

The term ascites is defined as a pathologic fluid accumulation in the peritoneal cavity. The most common cause of ascites is decompensated cirrhosis which accounts for about 80% of the cases.

In patients with cirrhosis, ascites is the most common complication, which suggests the progression of diseases from a compensated to a decompensated stage [1]. About 60% of patients with compensated cirrhosis develop ascites within 10 years of its diagnosis [2]. Development of ascites in cirrhotic patients carries a poor prognosis as the five-year survival rate is significantly low in decompensated cirrhosis with ascites compared with compensated cirrhosis (about 30% vs. 80%) [1, 3].

Refractory ascites (RA) is defined as ascites that cannot be mobilized or recurs after large volume paracentesis (LVP) despite dietary sodium restriction and diuretic therapy. Refractory ascites is one of the most serious signs of the decompensated stage in liver cirrhosis which is associated with poor survival [4].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

In cirrhosis of the liver, the development of ascites is determined by four major factors: portal hypertension, splanchnic vasodilatation, renal sodium and water retention, and hypoalbuminemia.

A. **Portal hypertension:** The development of intrahepatic portal hypertension plays a crucial role in ascites formation. The normal value of portal pressure (pressure gradient between the hepatic and portal vein) is approximately <5 mm Hg. However, a portal pressure of usually >12 mmHg is required for ascites to develop. Without elevated portal pressure, ascites or edema do not occur.

   Portal hypertension occurs in liver cirrhosis because of both increased resistance to portal blood flow (increase in intrahepatic resistance due to distortion of the hepatic vascular architecture) and increased portal venous inflow (due to splanchnic vasodilatation). This increased portal hypertension increases hydrostatic pressure within the hepatic sinusoids, causing excessive fluid transudation into the peritoneal space, leading to ascites.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCE

1. D'Amico G, Garcia-Tsao G, Pagliaro L. Natural history and prognostic indicators of survival in cirrhosis. A systematic review of 118 studies. J Hepatol 2006;44(1):217–31.
2. Ginès P, Quintero E, Arroyo V, et al. Compensated cirrhosis: natural history and prognostic factors. Hepatology 1987;7(1):122–8.
3. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2018;69(2):406–460.
4. Zhao R, Lu J, Shi Y, et al. Current management of refractory ascites in patients with cirrhosis. J Int Med Res 2018;46(3):1138–1145.
5. Yoshiji H, Nagoshi S, Akahane T, et al. Evidence-based clinical practice guidelines for Liver Cirrhosis 2020. J Gastroenterol. 2021;56(7):593–619.
6. Aithal GP, Palaniyappan N, China L, et al. Guidelines on the management of ascites in cirrhosis. Gut. 2021;70(1):9–29.
7. Baiges A, Hernández-Gea V. Management of Liver Decompensation in Advanced Chronic Liver Disease: Ascites, Hyponatremia, and Gastroesophageal Variceal Bleeding. Clin Drug Investig. 2022;42(Suppl 1):25–31.
8. Gauthier A, Levy VG, Quinton A, et al. Salt or no salt in the treatment of cirrhotic ascites: a randomised study. Gut 1986;27(6):705–9.
9. Morando F, Rosi S, Gola E, et al. Adherence to a moderate sodium restriction diet in outpatients with cirrhosis and ascites: A real-life cross-sectional study. Liver Int. 2015;35(5):1508–1515.
10. Reynolds TB, Lieberman FL, Goodman AR. Advantages of treatment of ascites without sodium restriction and without complete removal of excess fluid. Gut. 1978;19(6):549–53.
11. Biggins SW, Angeli P, Garcia-Tsao G, et al. Diagnosis, Evaluation, and Management of Ascites, Spontaneous Bacterial Peritonitis and Hepatorenal Syndrome: 2021 Practice Guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology. 2021;74(2):1014–1048.
12. Pérez-Ayuso RM, Arroyo V, Planas R, et al. Randomized comparative study of efficacy of furosemide versus spironolactone in nonazotemic cirrhosis with ascites. Relationship between the diuretic response and the activity of the renin-aldosterone system. Gastroenterology. 1983;84(5 Pt 1):961–8.
13. Slotki IN, Skorecki K. Disorders of Sodium Balance. In: Brenner and Rector's The Kidney, 11th ed, Yu A, Chertow G, Luyckx V, et al (Eds), W.B. Saunders & Company, Philadelphia 2020.p.437.
14. Angeli P, Fasolato S, Mazza E, et al. Combined versus sequential diuretic treatment of ascites in non-azotaemic patients with cirrhosis: results of an open randomised clinical trial. Gut 2010;59(1):98–104.
15. Ginés P, Arroyo V, Quintero E, et al. Comparison of paracentesis and diuretics in the treatment of cirrhotics with tense ascites. Results of a randomized study. Gastroenterology 1987;93(2):234–241.
16. Alsebaey A, Rewisha E, Waked I. Paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction: are there albumin alternatives? Egypt Liver Journal 2020;10:39.
17. Lin CH, Shih FY, Ma MH, et al. Should bleeding tendency deter abdominal paracentesis? Dig Liver Dis. 2005;37(12):946–51.
18. Mercaldi CJ, Lanes SF. Ultrasound guidance decreases complications and improves the cost of care among patients undergoing thoracentesis and paracentesis. Chest. 2013;143(2):532–538.
19. Cho J, Jensen TP, Reierson K, et al. Recommendations on the Use of Ultrasound Guidance for Adult Abdominal Paracentesis: A Position Statement of

the Society of Hospital Medicine. J Hosp Med. 2019;14:E7–E15.

20. Runyon BA, AASLD Practice Guidelines Committee. Management of adult patients with ascites due to cirrhosis: an update. Hepatology 2009;49(6):2087–2107.
21. Moreau R, Valla DC, Durand-Zaleski I, et al. Comparison of outcome in patients with cirrhosis and ascites following treatment with albumin or a synthetic colloid: a randomised controlled pilot trial. Liver Int 2006;26(1):46–54.
22. Bernardi M, Caraceni P, Navickis RJ, et al. Albumin infusion in patients under-going large-volume paracentesis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Hepatology 2012;55(4):1172–1181.
23. Ginès P, Titó L, Arroyo V, et al. Randomized comparative study of therapeutic paracentesis with and without intravenous albumin in cirrhosis. Gastroenterology. 1988;94(6):1493–502.
24. Bernardi M, Angeli P, Claria J, et al. Albumin in decompensated cirrhosis: new concepts and perspectives. Gut 2020;69(6):1127–38.
25. Tan HK, James PD, Wong F. Albumin may prevent the morbidity of paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction in cirrhosis and refractory ascites: a pilot study. Dig Dis Sci 2016;61(10):3084–3092.
26. Dwyer JP, Jayasekera C, Nicoll A. Analgesia for the cirrhotic patient: a literature review and recommendations. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2014;29(7):1356–60.
27. Elia C, Graupera I, Barreto R, et al. Severe acute kidney injury associated with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in cirrhosis: a case-control study. J Hepatol 2015;63(3):593–600.
28. Pariente EA, Bataille C, Bercoff E, et al. Acute effects of captopril on systemic and renal hemodynamics and on renal function in cirrhotic patients with ascites. Gastroenterology 1985;88(5 Pt 1):1255–1259.
29. Albillos A, Lledó JL, Rossi I, et al. Continuous prazosin administration in cirrhotic patients: effects on portal hemodynamics and on liver and renal function. Gastroenterology 1995;109(4):1257–1265.
30. Korean Association for the Study of the Liver (KASL). KASL clinical practice guidelines for liver cirrhosis: Ascites and related complications. Clin Mol Hepatol. 2018;24(3):230–277.
31. Llach J, Ginès P, Arroyo V, et al. Prognostic value of arterial pressure, endogenous vasoactive systems, and renal function in cirrhotic patients admitted to the hospital for the treatment of ascites. Gastroenterology 1988;94(2):482–7.
32. Serste T, Melot C, Francoz C, et al. Deleterious effects of beta-blockers on survival in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Hepatology. 2010;52(3):1017–22.
33. Moore KP, Aithal GP. Guidelines on the management of ascites in cirrhosis. Gut. 2006;55 Suppl 6(Suppl 6):vi1–vi12.
34. Runyon BA; AASLD Practice Guidelines Committee. Management of adult patients with ascites due to cirrhosis: Update 2012. Hepatology. Visit: https://www.aasld.org/sites/default/files/2019-06/141020_Guideline_Ascites_4UFb_2015.pdf.
35. García-Pagán JC, Saffo S, Mandorfer M, et al. Where does TIPS fit in the management of patients with cirrhosis? JHEP Rep. 2020;2(4):100122.
36. Boike JR, Thornburg BG, Asrani SK, et al. North American Practice-Based Recommendations for Transjugular Intrahepatic Portosystemic Shunts in Portal Hypertension. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2021:S1542–3565(21)00749–7.
37. Copelan A, Kapoor B, Sands M. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt: indications, contraindications, and patient work-up. Semin Intervent Radiol. 2014;31(3):235–242.
38. Bureau C, Thabut D, Oberti F, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts with covered stents increase transplant-free survival of patients with cirrhosis and recurrent ascites. Gastroenterology. 2017;152(1):157–163.
39. Will V, Rodrigues SG, Berzigotti A. Current treatment options of refractory ascites in liver cirrhosis - A systematic review and meta-analysis. Dig Liver Dis. 2022 8:S1590–8658(21)00894-X.
40. Aagaard NK, Malago M, De Gottardi A, et al. Consensus care recommendations for alfapump® in cirrhotic patients with refractory or recurrent ascites. BMC Gastroenterol. 2022;22(1):111.
41. Bureau C, Adebayo D, Chalret de Rieu M, et al. Alfapump® system vs. large volume paracentesis for refractory ascites: A multicenter randomized controlled study. J Hepatol 2017;67(5):940–949.
42. Stepanova M, Nader F, Bureau C, et al. Patients with refractory ascites treated with alfapump® system have better health-related quality of life as compared to those treated with large volume paracentesis: the results of a multicenter randomized controlled study. Qual Life Res 2018;27(6):1513–1520.
43. Lepida A, Marot A, Trépo E, et al. Systematic review with meta-analysis: automated low-flow ascites pump therapy for refractory ascites. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2019;50(9):978–987.
44. Wong F, Bendel E, Sniderman K, et al. Improvement in quality of life and decrease in large volume paracentesis requirements with the automated low flow ascites pump. Liver Transpl. 2020;26(5):651–61.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

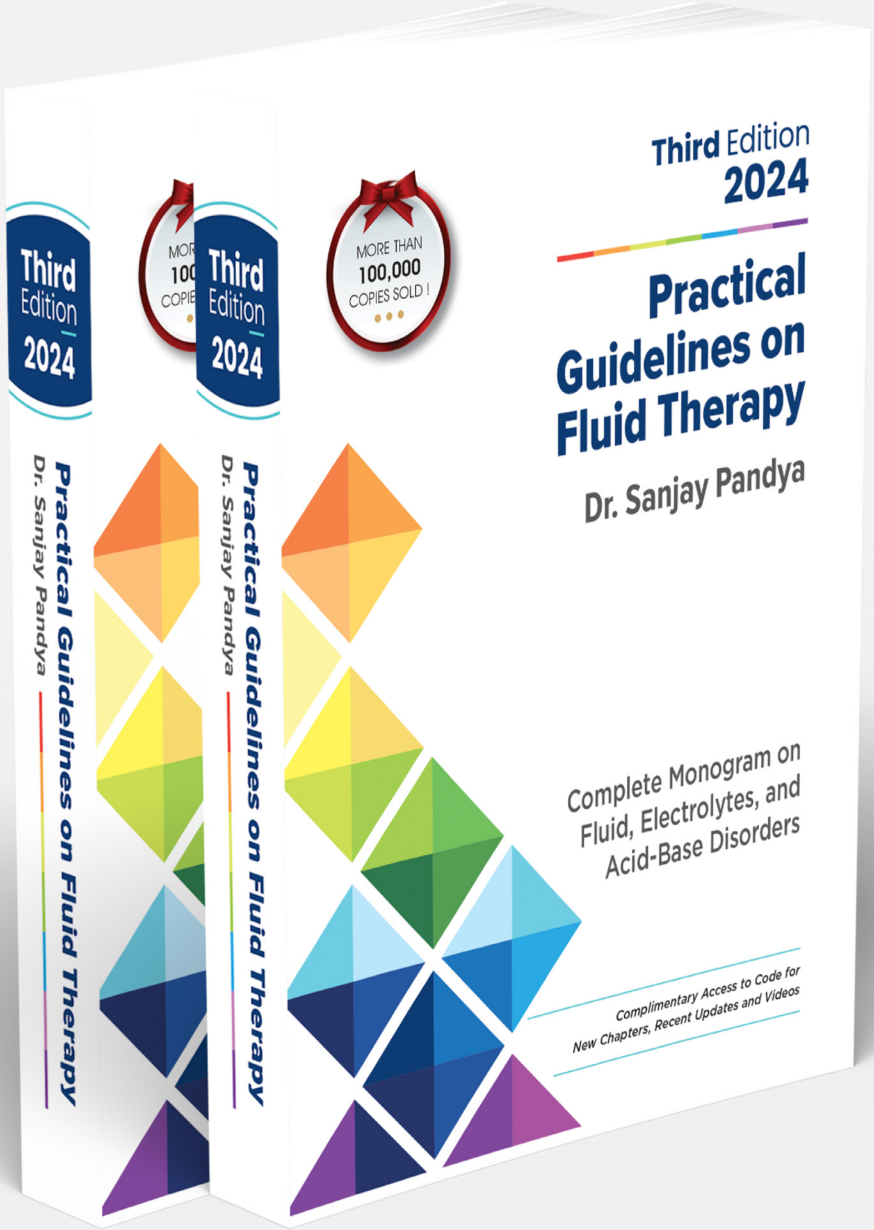
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 36:

Hepatic Encephalopathy


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

36 Hepatic Encephalopathy

Pathophysiology 430
Classification 431
Management 431
  Basic principles 431
  Nutrition 431
  Fluid and electrolyte management 433
    Avoid hypoglycemia 433
    Correction of metabolic alkalosis 433
    Correction of hypokalemia 433
    Correction of hyponatremia 434
    Selection of IV fluids 434
  Medical therapy 434
    Lactulose 434
    Rifaximin 435

Hepatic encephalopathy (HE) is a potentially reversible condition characterized by a spectrum of neurological or psychiatric abnormalities ranging from subclinical alterations to coma, which occurs as one of the many complications of decompensated liver disease or portosystemic shunting [1]. About 30 to 45% of patients with cirrhosis develop overt hepatic encephalopathy [2], which is associated with significant morbidity, mortality, high healthcare cost, and a huge burden on patients and their caregivers [3, 4].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The pathophysiology of HE is poorly understood, it is often multifactorial, and different abnormalities may be present at the same time, leading to the development of HE [5].

The various pathogenetic mechanisms proposed in the development of HE are [5, 6]:

- Neurotoxins (Ammonia, benzodiazepines, benzodiazepine-like compounds such as gamma-aminobutyric acid, and manganese deposition within the basal ganglia).
- Alteration in neurotransmission due to increased GABA - neurotransmitters and serotonin activity in HE.
- False neurotransmitters such as tyramine, octopamine, and beta-phenylethanolamines may compete with the normal catecholamine neurotransmitters.
- Altered brain energy due to impaired hepatic gluconeogenesis in the terminal stages of liver failure.
- The systemic inflammatory response may exacerbate the harmful effects of hyperammonaemia on the brain [7].
- Alterations of the blood-brain barrier contribute to an increased influx of varieties of neurotoxic substances into the brain, which may contribute to HE.

fluid

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Vilstrup H, Amodio P, Bajaj J, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy in chronic liver disease: 2014 Practice Guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the European Association for the Study of the Liver. Hepatology. 2014;60(2):715–35.
2. Romero-Gómez M, Boza F, García-Valdecasas MS, et al. Subclinical hepatic encephalopathy predicts the development of overt hepatic encephalopathy. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96(9):2718–23.
3. Kabaria S, Dalal I, Gupta K, et al. Hepatic Encephalopathy: A Review. EMJ Hepatol. 2021;9(1):89–97.
4. García-Martínez R, Diaz-Ruiz R, Poncela M. Management of Hepatic Encephalopathy Associated with Advanced Liver Disease. Clin Drug Investig. 2022;42(Suppl 1):5–13.
5. Elwir S, Rahimi RS. Hepatic Encephalopathy: An Update on the Pathophysiology and Therapeutic Options. J Clin Transl Hepatol. 2017;5(2):142–151.
6. Ferenci P. Hepatic encephalopathy. Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf). 2017;5(2):138–147.
7. Shawcross DL, Davies NA, Williams R, et al. Systemic inflammatory response exacerbates the neuropsychological effects of induced hyperammonaemia in cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2004;40(2):247–54.
8. Jaffe A, Lim JK, Jakab SS. Pathophysiology of Hepatic Encephalopathy. Clin Liver Dis. 2020;24(2):175–188.
9. Häussinger D, Dhiman RK, Felipo V, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy. Nat Rev Dis Primers. 2022;8(1):43.
10. Montagnese S, Russo FP, Amodio P, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy 2018: A clinical practice guideline by the Italian Association for the Study of the Liver (AISF). Dig Liver Dis. 2019;51(2):190–205.
11. Hasan LZ, Wu GY. Novel Agents in the Management of Hepatic Encephalopathy: A Review. J Clin Transl Hepatol. 2021;9(5):749–759.
12. Bajaj JS, O'Leary JG, Lai JC, et al. Acute-on-Chronic Liver Failure Clinical Guidelines. Am J Gastroenterol. 2022;117(2):225–252.
13. Hoilat GJ, Suhail FK, Adhami T, et al. Evidence-based approach to management of hepatic encephalopathy in adults. World J Hepatol 2022;14(4):670–681.
14. Maharshi S, Sharma BC, Sachdeva S, et al. Efficacy of nutritional therapy for patients with cirrhosis and minimal hepatic encephalopathy in a randomized trial. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2016;14(3):454–460.e3.
15. Faccioli J, Nardelli S, Gioia S, et al. Nutrition Assessment and Management in Patients with Cirrhosis and Cognitive Impairment: A Comprehensive Review of Literature. J. Clin. Med. 2022;11(10):2842.
16. Amodio P, Bemeur C, Butterworth R, et al. The nutritional management of hepatic encephalopathy in patients with cirrhosis: International Society for Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism Consensus. Hepatology 2013;58(1):325–36.
17. Córdoba J, López-Hellín J, Planas M, et al. Normal protein diet for episodic hepatic encephalopathy: results of a randomized study. J Hepatol. 2004;41(1):38–43.
18. Maharshi S, Sharma BC, Srivastava S. Malnutrition in cirrhosis increases morbidity and mortality. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2015;30(10):1507–13.
19. Plauth M, Bernal W, Dasarathy S, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in liver disease. Clin Nutr. 2019;38(2):485–521.
20. Bianchi GP, Marchesini G, Fabbri A, et al. Vegetable versus animal protein diet in cirrhotic patients with chronic encephalopathy. A randomized cross-over comparison. J Intern Med. 1993;233(5):385–92.
21. Merli M, Iebba V, Giusto M. What is new about diet in hepatic encephalopathy. Metab Brain Dis. 2016;31(6):1289–1294.
22. Tsien CD, McCullough AJ, Dasarathy S. Late evening snack: exploiting a period of anabolic opportunity in cirrhosis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2012;27(3):430–41.
23. Gluud LL, Dam G, Les I, et al. Branched-chain amino acids for people with hepatic encephalopathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2017;2017(5):CD001939.
24. Katayama K, Kawaguchi T, Shiraishi K, et al. The Prevalence and Implication of Zinc Deficiency in Patients With Chronic Liver Disease. J Clin Med Res. 2018;10(5):437–444.
25. Silva M, Gomes S, Peixoto A, et al. Nutrition in Chronic Liver Disease. GE Port J Gastroenterol. 2015;22(6):268–276.

26. Loomba V, Pawar G, Dhar KL, et al. Serum zinc levels in hepatic encephalopathy. Indian J Gastroenterol. 1995;14(2):51–53.
27. Takuma Y, Nouso K, Makino Y, et al. Clinical trial: oral zinc in hepatic encephalopathy. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2010;32(9):1080–90.
28. Chavez-Tapia NC, Cesar-Arce A, Barrientos-Gutiérrez T, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the use of oral zinc in the treatment of hepatic encephalopathy. Nutr J. 2013;12:74.
29. Shen YC, Chang YH, Fang CJ, et al. Zinc supplementation in patients with cirrhosis and hepatic encephalopathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Nutr J. 2019;18(1):34.
30. Fallahzadeh MA, Rahimi RS. Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nutrition Influences: A Narrative Review. Nutr Clin Pract. 2020;35(1):36–48.
31. Hung TH, Tseng CW, Tsai CC, et al. Prognosis of hypoglycemia episode in cirrhotic patients during hospitalization. BMC Gastroenterol. 2021;21(1):319.
32. Scheiner B, Lindner G, Reiberger T, et al. Acid-base disorders in liver disease. J Hepatol. 2017;67(5):1062–1073.
33. Jiménez JV, Carrillo-Pérez DL, Rosado-Canto R, et al. Electrolyte and Acid-Base Disturbances in End-Stage Liver Disease: A Physiopathological Approach. Dig Dis Sci. 2017;62(8):1855–1871.
34. Musso CG, Juarez R, Glassock RJ. Water, electrolyte, acid-base, and trace elements alterations in cirrhotic patients. Int Urol Nephrol. 2018;50(1):81–89.
35. Katopodis P, Pappas EM, Katopodis KP. Acid-base abnormalities and liver dysfunction. Ann Hepatol. 2022;27(2):100675.
36. Mikkelsen ACD, Thomsen KL, Vilstrup H, et al. Potassium deficiency decreases the capacity for urea synthesis and markedly increases ammonia in rats. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol. 2021;320(4):G474–G483.
37. Zavagli G, Ricci G, Bader G, et al. The importance of the highest normokalemia in the treatment of early hepatic encephalopathy. Miner Electrolyte Metab. 1993;19(6):362–7.
38. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2018;69(2):406–460.
39. Fortune B, Cardenas A. Ascites, refractory ascites and hyponatremia in cirrhosis. Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf). 2017;5(2):104–112.
40. Alukal JJ, John S, Thuluvath PJ. Hyponatremia in Cirrhosis: An Update. Am J Gastroenterol. 2020;115(11):1775–85.
41. Sharma BC, Sharma P, Agrawal A, et al. Secondary prophylaxis of hepatic encephalopathy: an open-label randomized controlled trial of lactulose versus placebo. Gastroenterology. 2009;137(3):885–91, 891.e1.
42. Gluud LL, Vilstrup H, Morgan MY. Non-absorbable disaccharides vs placebo/no intervention and lactulose vs lactitol for the prevention and treatment of hepatic encephalopathy in people with cirrhosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2016;4:CD003044.
43. Morgan MY, Hawley KE, Stambuk D. Lactitol versus lactulose in the treatment of chronic hepatic encephalopathy. A double-blind, randomised, cross-over study. J Hepatol. 1987;4(2):236–44
44. Bass N, Mullen K, Sanyal A, et al. Rifaximin treatment in HE. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(12):1071–1081.
45. Sanyal A, Younossi ZM, Bass NM, et al. Randomised clinical trial: rifaximin improves health-related quality of life in cirrhotic patients with hepatic encephalopathy - a double-blind placebo-controlled study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2011;34(8):853–61.
46. Eltawil KM, Laryea M, Peltekian K, et al. Rifaximin vs. conventional oral therapy for hepatic encephalopathy: a meta-analysis. World J Gastroenterol 2012;18(8):767–77.
47. Kimer N, Krag A, Møller S, et al. Systematic review with meta-analysis: the effects of rifaximin in hepatic encephalopathy. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2014;40(2):123–32.
48. Bajaj JS, Barrett AC, Bortey E, et al. Prolonged remission from hepatic encephalopathy with rifaximin: results of a placebo crossover analysis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2015;41(1):39–45.
49. Patel VC, Lee S, McPhail MJW, et al. Rifaximin-α reduces gut-derived inflammation and mucin degradation in cirrhosis and encephalopathy: RIFSYS randomised controlled trial. J Hepatol 2022;76(2):332–342.
50. Sharma BC, Sharma P, Lunia MK, et al. A randomized, double-blind, controlled trial comparing rifaximin plus lactulose with lactulose alone in treatment of overt hepatic encephalopathy. Am J Gastroenterol. 2013;108(9):1458–1463.
51. Hudson M, Schuchmann M. Long-term management of hepatic encephalopathy with lactulose and/or rifaximin: a review of the evidence. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2019;31(4):434–450.
52. Wang Z, Chu P, Wang W. Combination of rifaximin and lactulose improves clinical efficacy and mortality in patients with hepatic encephalopathy. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2018;13:1–11.
53. Fu J, Gao Y, Shi L. Combination therapy with rifaximin and lactulose in hepatic encephalopathy: A systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS ONE 2022;17(4):e0267647.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

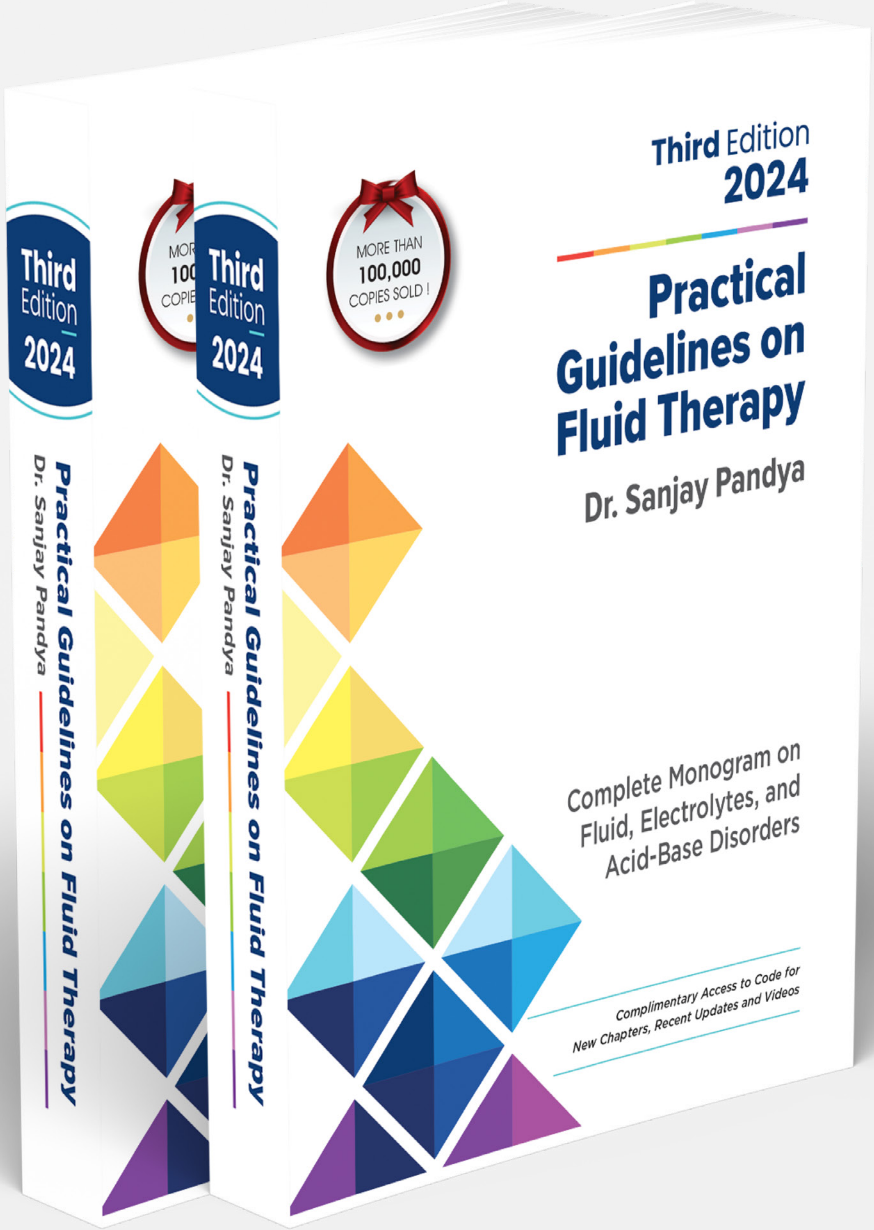
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 37:

Hepatorenal Syndrome


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

37 Hepatorenal Syndrome

Definitions and classification **438**
Pathogenesis **439**
Diagnosis **440**
Prevention **440**
Management **441**
  General measures 441
  Pharmacological therapy 442
    Albumin 442
    Vasoconstrictors 443
      Terlipressin 443
      Noradrenaline 444
      Midodrine and octreotide 445
  Non-pharmacological therapy 445
    Renal replacement therapy 445
    Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt 445
    Liver transplantation 446
    Simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation 446

Kidney failure is the most frequent organ failure in patients with acute or chronic liver disease, with a frequency of 20–50% in hospitalized cirrhotic patients [1–3].

Hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) is a life-threatening complication and one of many causes of acute kidney injury in patients with acute or chronic liver disease. HRS frequently occurs in hospitalized patients and is associated with a high mortality rate (about 32 to 37%) [4–6], readmission rate (about 23%) [5], hospital and health care costs [6, 7], and longer stay in hospital [4].

The most common precipitating factors of HRS are gastrointestinal bleeding, large volume paracentesis, diuretics, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, and other infections [5, 8].

DEFINITIONS AND TYPES OF HEPATORENAL SYNDROME

Hepatorenal syndrome is a specific cause of acute kidney injury (AKI) frequently encountered in advanced cirrhosis characterized by rapidly progressive renal failure, which occurs without apparent pathologic abnormalities in the kidneys [9].

Hepatorenal syndrome is traditionally classified into Type 1 and Type 2 HRS based on the severity of diseases reflected by the rapidity of decline in kidney function [10]. Type 1 (HRS-1) is a serious form of AKI that occurs in advanced cirrhosis with ascites.

Type 1 HRS is characterized by a rapid and progressive reduction in renal function (a 2-fold increase of serum creatinine to at least 2.5 mg/dL or a decrease of creatinine clearance by 50% to less than 20 mL/min within 2 weeks) [11], and has a poor prognosis (median survival only 8 to 12 weeks) [12]. Type 2 HRS is a less severe form of kidney function impairment that is slowly progressive and clinically characterized by ascites resistant to diuretics [11] and has a median survival of about 6 months [12].

The traditional classification of HRS-1 and HRS-2 has recently been reclassified (Type 1 HRS renamed as HRS-acute kidney injury (HRS-AKI), and HRS-2 renamed as HRS-NAKI (that is, non-AKI) [13–15]. Diagnostic features of HRS-AKI as recommendations by the International Club of Ascites (2019) are summarized in Table 37.1 [13].

Table 37.1 Diagnostic criteria of HRS-AKI

1. Presence of cirrhosis and ascites
2. Presence of AKI (increase in serum creatinine >0.3 mg/dL within 48 hours, or >50% increase in serum creatinine from baseline in 3 months)
3. Lack of improvement of serum creatinine (decrease of creatinine ≤0.3 mg/dL of baseline) after at least 48 hr of diuretic withdrawal and volume expansion with albumin (1 gm/kg body weight/day for 2 d)
4. Absence of shock (septic, cardiogenic, distributive)
5. Exclusion of current or prior treatment with nephrotoxic drugs
6. Absence of proteinuria ≥500 mg/day, microhematuria, or structural abnormalities on ultrasonography

PATHOGENESIS

The pathogenesis of HRS is multifactorial, complex, and poorly understood. However, two major mechanisms that interact and contribute to the development of HRS-AKI are the combination of hemodynamic abnormalities and systemic inflammation [3].

A. Hemodynamic abnormalities: The “splanchnic arterial vasodilation theory” is the main hypothesis in the pathophysiology of HRS [16]. Essential components of the pathogenesis of neurohormonal cascade in HRS are:

- **Vasodilatation:** In portal hypertension, increased intrahepatic vascular tone promotes the release of vasodilatory substances like nitric oxide and prostaglandins, which cause arterial vasodilatation in the splanchnic and systemic circulation.
- **Activation of vasoconstrictors:** Systemic and splanchnic vasodilatation reduces effective arterial blood volume and systemic arterial pressure, which triggers the carotid and aortic arch baroreceptors and activates three powerful vasoconstrictor systems (renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, vasopressin release, and activation of the sympathetic nervous system).
- **Renal vasoconstriction:** Activation of vasoconstrictor systems increases arterial pressure and kidney vasoconstriction. In advanced stages of cirrhosis, synthesis of vasodilator factors is more pronounced with further vasodilatation of systemic and splanchnic and resultant worsening of hypotension [17]. Vasoconstrictor systems are further activated [18] to combat severe hypotension and achieve optimal arterial pressure, which is compatible with life. As renal circulation is very sensitive to the vasoconstrictive effects of these vasoconstrictors, it causes a marked reduction in renal perfusion and the development of HRS-AKI [19].
- **Cardiac dysfunction:** In cirrhotic patients with systemic vasodilation, cardiac output increases initially. But

with the progression of liver disease, cardiac output decreases, further reducing impaired renal blood flow and contributing to the development of hepatorenal syndrome [20, 21].

B. Systemic inflammation: According to this new theory, in portal hypertension, gut permeability increases, causing bacterial translocation from the gut to mesenteric lymph nodes, which triggers a systemic inflammatory response with the release of pro-inflammatory cytokine [18]. Three different mechanisms by which systemic inflammation causes organ dysfunction, and failure are [22–24]: (1) Nitric oxide production in splanchnic arterioles due to systemic inflammation accentuates the preexisting splanchnic vasodilation and stimulates endogenous vasoconstrictor systems causing renal hypoperfusion; (2) Activation of immune cells resulting in tissue damage; and (3) Metabolic alterations.

DIAGNOSIS

In patients with cirrhosis, renal dysfunction can occur due to HRS and many other causes for the development of AKI in cirrhotic patients, such as hypovolemia (gastrointestinal [GI] bleeding, use of diuretics or GI losses), medications (drug-induced or contrast-induced nephropathy), infections, intrinsic renal disease, and obstructive uropathy [25]. In cirrhotic patients with HRS, multiple causes that can potentially lead to AKI can coexist and overlap [26].

While evaluating AKI in patients with liver disease, it is important to remember that hepatorenal syndrome is the cause of AKI in about 15–43% [27, 28], AKI frequently occurs due to hypovolemia in 27–50% of all cases, and acute tubular necrosis (ATN) in about 14–35%.

As hepatorenal syndrome (HRS-AKI) is a diagnosis of exclusion, it is essential to exclude other potential causes of kidney injury in patients with liver disease [15, 18]. So detailed history, clinical assessment, laboratory assessments, and abdominal imaging should be performed to exclude different causes of AKI, such as prerenal AKI (hypovolemia), acute tubular necrosis (hypovolemic shock, infection, or nephrotoxic agents), and other causes (abdominal compartment syndrome, glomerulonephritis, acute interstitial nephritis, and obstructive uropathy) [29, 30]. Differentiating ATN and HRS-AKI may be difficult, and in such patients, the role of urinary biomarkers is promising and may prove helpful [31, 32].

PREVENTION

As HRS carries a poor prognosis, it is better to prevent than treat it. Measures to prevent HRS are:

- Avoid using nephrotoxic drugs (such as NSAIDs, aminoglycosides, amphotericin, ACE-I, angiotensin receptor blockers, or radiographic dye), and use diuretics and laxatives judiciously.
- Early detection and prompt treatment of coexisting infections and antibiotic prophylaxis in patients with increased risk of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis are effective measures to prevent AKI-HRS [28].
- Correct intravascular volume depletion, which may occur due to excessive diuretic use, diarrhea due to lactulose, variceal bleeding, and large volume paracentesis without albumin administration).
- IV albumin infusion: In patients with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, the IV administration of albumin reduces the risk of both kidney function impairment and mortality [33–35].
- In patients with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, albumin is started

together with antibiotics. The recommended dose of IV albumin to prevent HRS is 1.5 gm/kg within 6 hours of detection of infection (on the first day) and a second dose of 1 gm/kg after 48 hours of the first dose (on the third day).

- During large volume paracentesis, replacing 6–8 gm of albumin for every liter of ascites removed reduces the risk of HRS-AKI [14, 30, 36, 37].
- Antibiotics prophylaxis: In patients with advanced cirrhosis, administration of oral norfloxacin (or alternative trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole if norfloxacin is unavailable) decreases the one-year probability of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, delays the development of HRS, and improves survival [38]. Rifaximin also reduced the incidence of HRS-AKI in cirrhotic patients [39, 40].
- Early diagnosis and prompt management of gastrointestinal bleeding.
- Pentoxifylline: Due to its protective effect against oxidative renal cell injury, pentoxifylline (1200 mg/day) is found to reduce the risk of HRS-AKI in alcoholic hepatitis and may be an effective prophylaxis [41–44]. However, larger studies are needed to validate the efficacy [45, 46].
- As HRS is a common complication in acute alcohol hepatitis, early detection and treatment of alcoholic hepatitis, alcohol abstinence, and proper nutritional supplementation are essential [47].

MANAGEMENT

HRS requires early and aggressive therapy because, besides all therapeutic advances, the outcome of HRS is poor.

The goals of management of hepatorenal syndrome are:

- Identify and treat reversible factors.
- To correct hypovolemia and avoid volume overload.
- To achieve a higher mean arterial blood pressure (rise in MAP ≥10–15 mmHg from baseline) is the most effective approach for better perfusion of the kidneys [29, 48, 49].
- Reversal of hemodynamic disturbances and acute kidney injury.
- To stabilize the patient, provide renal replacement therapy if necessary, and prolong survival until candidates undergo liver transplantation.

Three primary treatment options for managing HRS are general measures, pharmacological therapy, and non-pharmacological therapy.

A. General measures

- Meticulous evaluation to diagnose underlying precipitating factors and their early treatment.
- Volume expansion. The first step in managing AKI in cirrhosis is volume expansion (with crystalloids or intravenous albumin). As prerenal AKI is the most common cause of renal failure in cirrhotic patients, it is essential to correct hypovolemia immediately by replacing fluids, considering the cause and severity of the fluid loss [14, 18, 50]. Normal saline infusion is preferred to correct hypovolemia due to vomiting or the excess dose of diuretics. Blood or blood products effectively correct hypovolemia and anemia due to gastrointestinal bleeding. The reversal of AKI in 48 hours with volume expansion favors prerenal AKI [50].
- Assessing the volume status of cirrhotic patients can be challenging due to the complexity of the condition. At times it can be challenging to correct hypovolemia optimally in these patients because they may

have intravascular volume depletion despite the presence of ascites or peripheral edema. Additionally, over-infusing fluids can worsen existing conditions such as ascites, pleural effusion, heart failure, or respiratory failure [51].

- To determine the best approach for volume assessment and fluid management, a careful history, detailed clinical examination, laboratory tests, X-ray-based imaging, and point-of-care ultrasound should be used [52].
- Stop β-blockers in patients with low or borderline blood pressure [14]. Discontinue nephrotoxic drugs (as discussed in prevention).
- Stop diuretics and avoid the temptation to use diuretics to increase urine output in severe AKI in HRS [14]. Diuretic therapy in HRS can lead to volume depletion and further reduction of effective circulating volume, which can aggravate renal hypoperfusion and may trigger or worsen HRS [53, 54]. In addition, it is essential to discontinue spironolactone in HRS as it carries the risk of life-threatening hyperkalemia.
- As spontaneous bacterial peritonitis is a main triggering factor of AKI-HRS, its prompt treatment with albumin and antibiotics helps in preventing AKI-HRS [28, 33, 34]. But the administration of albumin is not recommended in patients of HRS with non-spontaneous bacterial peritonitis infections [55, 56].
- Always search for the presence of electrolyte disorders (such as hyponatremia, hyperkalemia, hypokalemia, etc.) or acid-base disorders (such as respiratory alkalosis, metabolic alkalosis, and metabolic acidosis) and treat them [51].
- Etiology-driven management of AKI.
- Measure vitals, urine output, fluid balance, and daily weight and closely monitor patients.

B. Pharmacological therapy

Combined therapy with albumin and a vasopressor is recommended as the first line of treatment for HRS-AKI and should be started as soon as possible [14, 18, 30, 57].

1. Albumin

In cirrhotic patients with AKI, administering albumin is important for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes [18, 58].

It is essential to differentiate AKI-HRS from prerenal AKI because AKI occurs due to prerenal AKI in about half of patients with AKI in cirrhosis.

Renal recovery within 48 hours after administration of albumin (along with removing risk factors and discontinuing diuretics) favors the diagnosis of prerenal AKI, and failure in improvement in renal function suggests the diagnosis of AKI-HRS [15].

IV Albumin is recommended for volume resuscitation in prerenal AKI regardless of the etiology or severity of prerenal azotemia [52].

Effects: Albumin infusion increases oncotic pressure, effectively expands circulating volume, improves hemodynamics and cardiac output, increases renal perfusion, and enhances renal recovery.

In addition to volume expanding effects in HRS, other benefits of albumin proposed in current literature are [37, 58, 59] antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects [60, 61], positive cardiac inotropic effects [62], improvement in the autoregulation of renal perfusion [63], preservation of the integrity of endothelial glycocalyx [64], and stabilization of endothelial function [65].

Dose: Recommended dose of albumin is 1 gm/kg/d (up to 100 gm/d) for two consecutive days, preferably given in divided doses (e.g., 25 gm every 6 hourly) [13, 14]. Subsequently, the dose may decrease to 20–40 gm daily. However, as per the recent ATTIRE trial (2021), tailoring albumin therapy to raise serum albumin to 3.0 gm/dL or more is not beneficial in reducing infection, kidney dysfunction, or death [66].

Combination therapy: It is important to remember that instead of albumin alone, combination therapy of albumin with vasoconstrictor therapy is more effective [67–70]. Therefore all guidelines recommend albumin with vasoconstrictor, the adjunct therapy for HRS-AKI [3, 14, 30, 57]. This combination therapy significantly improves renal function in HRS and reduces mortality compared with no treatment or albumin alone [15, 71, 72].

Duration of treatment: Albumin plus vasoconstrictor therapy should be continued until serum creatinine reduces to a value within 0.3 mg of the baseline value of serum creatinine [15].

Combination therapy is discontinued within 14 days if patients do not respond or respond partially [15].

Adverse effect: The major concern of albumin infusion in HRS is the significant risk of volume overload, especially pulmonary edema [66, 70].

So, before administration, it is essential to assess volume status and avoid albumin infusion in patients with volume overload.

As albumin increases preload and terlipressin increases afterload, the combined treatment carries the risk of precipitation of pulmonary edema [29].

2. Vasoconstrictors

Administration of IV albumin, combined with vasoconstrictors such as IV terlipressin, noradrenaline, or oral midodrine plus octreotide initiated as soon as the diagnosis of HRS is suspected. The combination therapy helps in the reversal of hemodynamic disturbances, restoration of effective circulating volume, and improvement in renal perfusion.

a. Terlipressin

According to international guidelines, terlipressin, a synthetic vasopressin analog, is recommended as the first and most preferred vasoconstrictor for managing HRS [14, 18, 25, 30, 57, 73, 74]. This is because it has been shown to improve renal function in 24–44% of patients in various studies [68–70, 75–79] and meta-analyses [69, 71, 72, 80–83], making it an effective treatment option for HRS. In addition, potent vasoconstrictor terlipressin is also found to reduce short-term mortality and hospital cost in various studies [71, 72, 81, 84, 85]. But the effect on mortality is controversial as survival benefits are lacking in other literature [69, 70, 76, 80].

Mechanism of action: Terlipressin has a high affinity for V1 receptors. V1 receptors are predominantly located in the splanchnic bed and systemic vascular smooth muscle, while V2 receptors are found more commonly in the kidney. Because of its selective effect, terlipressin causes splanchnic vessels and extrarenal vasoconstriction, which improves effective circulating volume and renal perfusion pressures.

Indications: In HRS, initiate terlipressin at early stages of AKI (i.e., serum creatinine >1.5 mg/dL), as there is a higher likelihood of a positive response to treatment when initiated at an earlier stage. However, avoid using terlipressin in milder forms of HRS-AKI (i.e., serum creatinine <1.5 mg/dL) as they are typically benign and potentially reversible with fluid expansion alone. Terlipressin should also be avoided in patients with advanced renal dysfunction (i.e., serum creatinine >5.0 mg/dL or higher).

Dose: Initial dosage of terlipressin in HRS is 1–2 mg/12 h by continuous IV infusion or 0.5–1.0 mg/4–6 h by IV boluses, and the dose is progressively increased as per need [14]. In the absence of response, the dose of continuous IV terlipressin infusion should be increased stepwise from 2 mg/day to a maximum of 12 mg/d according to the change in urine output and serum creatinine [74, 86]. One ampoule (8.5 ml solution) contains 1 mg terlipressin acetate.

Route: Administration of terlipressin by continuous IV infusion is preferred over IV boluses because infusion is better tolerated, and the requirement of effective doses is lower [87].

Poor response: Response to terlipressin is poor in HRS-AKI patients with higher total serum bilirubin [88], higher serum creatinine [89], underlying chronic kidney disease (CKD) with significant structural kidney injury, presence of severe bacterial infections [90], and failure to achieve an increase in the mean arterial pressure and cardiac output [73].

Contraindications: As terlipressin causes extrarenal vasoconstriction, it is usually avoided in HRS patients with coronary artery disease, cerebral or peripheral vascular diseases, cardiac arrhythmias, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and elderly patients [91].

Adverse effects: Common adverse effects of terlipressin are abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea (due to gastrointestinal smooth muscle spasm), coronary or peripheral vascular ischemic complications, and respiratory adverse events. Serious side effects like dyspnea and respiratory distress occur because of terlipressin-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction and cardiac overload because of increased afterload due to terlipressin and preload due to albumin [74, 92].

Measures suggested to reduce respiratory adverse events of terlipressin are judicious use of albumin and careful attention to respiratory distress, monitoring pulse oximetry, and frequent chest radiographs or point of care ultrasound [93].

Terlipressin was introduced first time in the year 1990 and was widely used worldwide subsequently. But due to respiratory adverse events [70] and the lack of mortality benefits [94], it was not approved by the FDA and therefore was unavailable. However, recently, in September 2022, the US FDA approved the use of terlipressin for the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome in adults [95].

b. Norepinephrine (Noradrenaline)

In a country like the USA, where terlipressin was unavailable till recently (September 2022), norepinephrine (plus albumin) was a preferred agent and considered a first-line treatment for HRS [52]. Early studies and meta-analyses have shown equal effectiveness of terlipressin plus albumin and norepinephrine plus albumin in reversing HRS [96–101], but in a recent study, terlipressin plus albumin was associated with a higher HRS reversal rate in patients with acute on chronic liver failure [102].

The advantages of norepinephrine are that it is significantly cheaper than terlipressin and is widely available with fewer side effects [78, 96, 100, 101, 103]. In addition, physicians use norepinephrine routinely and are very familiar with its use because it is the most standard drug for augmenting sepsis circulation.

But the requirements of the central venous catheter for its administration and the need for ICU or close monitoring for potential adverse effects such as arrhythmia and ischemia may offset the cost-benefit of this drug [103–105].

Mechanism of action: Alpha-adrenergic agonist norepinephrine by nonselective systemic vasoconstriction improves the mean arterial pressure and renal perfusion in HRS.

Dose: The dose of norepinephrine varies from 0.5 to 3 mg/h in HRS. Norepinephrine is usually started at an initial dose of 1 mg/hour by continuous infusion and is gradually increased to maintain the mean arterial blood pressure to ensure renal perfusion [106].

c. Midodrine and octreotide

In the USA, until now, the combination of midodrine and octreotide is routinely used to treat HRS-1 in general wards because terlipressin was not available in the USA, and norepinephrine cannot be administered outside of the intensive care unit [52]. But as compared to terlipressin and norepinephrine, the combination of midodrine and octreotide has shown low rates of renal recovery in HRS [72, 107, 108].

Therefore, midodrine and octreotide having much lower efficacy than terlipressin, are not preferred in ICU patients and are used in general wards only when terlipressin is unavailable [14, 30].

The combination of midodrine and octreotide plus albumin is the most effective therapy for increasing serum sodium in dilutional hyponatremia associated with HRS [83].

Midodrine is an orally available alpha-adrenergic agonist which causes systemic vasoconstriction and improves renal perfusion. Midodrine is usually started at a dose of 5–7.5 mg thrice daily orally, which can be increased maximum up to 15 mg three times daily as needed [109]. Synthetic somatostatin octreotide is potent splanchnic vasoconstriction which is given either as a continuous infusion (usual initial dose 50 mcg/h) or subcutaneously (usual dose 100–200 mcg/8 h) [109]. The combination of octreotide and midodrine is beneficial in HRS, but midodrine as a monotherapy does not improve renal function.

The selection of vasoconstrictors with albumin in hepatorenal syndrome based on treatment setup (in the intensive care unit or ward) is summarized in Table 37.2.

C. Non-pharmacological therapy

When patients do not respond to the above pharmacological measures, treatment options are dialysis, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS), liver transplantation, or simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation.

1. Renal replacement therapy (RRT)

The use of RRT in patients with HRS is controversial [110–112]. HRS patients with failure of medical treatment but the possibility of improvement in kidney or liver function or patients who are eligible for liver transplantation are usually offered RRT [52]. Common indications of RRT in HRS-AKI are worsening renal function, electrolyte disturbances, or increasing volume overload besides optimum vasoconstrictor therapy [30].

2. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt

TIPS may be used as a salvage therapy when medical management fails. When the intrahepatic stent is connected between the portal vein and the hepatic vein, it redirects portal blood into the systemic circulation, which decompresses the portal system and increases systemic

Table 37.2 Vasoconstrictor with albumin in hepatorenal syndrome

Albumin To all patients (expands intravascular volume)				
Choice of vasoconstrictors				
	Setup	Firstline drugs	Class	Route
Terlipressin available	ICU	Terlipressin	Vasopressin analog	IV
	Wards			
Terlipressin not available	ICU	Norepinephrine	Alpha agonist	IV
	Wards	Midodrine and octreotide	Alpha agonist Somatostatin analog	Oral and SQ
Duration of therapy: About 1–2 weeks				
Goal: To raise mean arterial pressure by 10–15 mm of Hg, reduction of serum creatinine <1.5 mg/dL				

venous return leading to the return of more blood to the heart, causing increased cardiac output and improvement in arterial and renal perfusion. In a recent meta-analysis, it was found that TIPS can improve serum creatinine levels, urine volume, and urinary sodium excretion [113].

However, TIPS is not routinely recommended in patients with AKI-HRS because: (1) In clinical practice, its use is very limited (contraindicated in HRS with severe liver failure or severe hepatic encephalopathy) [14]; (2) It is associated with complications such as procedure-related bleeding, worsening of liver function, or development of hepatic encephalopathy [114]; and (3) Its role of in HRS is not precisely defined [115] and data supporting its use are insufficient [30].

3. Liver transplantation

Liver transplantation is the only curative treatment and therapy of choice for both types of HRS. But unfortunately, this most effective modality is available to a small fraction of the affected patients, and many patients die before a donor liver can be obtained.

4. Simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation (SLKT)

SLKT is usually recommended in patients with HRS-AKI when kidney function is not expected to recover post-liver transplantation (e.g., AKI associated with dialysis ≥6 weeks and glomerular filtration rate [GFR] ≤25 mL/min for more than 6 weeks or presence of underlying advanced CKD or CKD requiring dialysis) [116, 117].

REFERENCE

1. Garcia-Tsao G, Parikh CR, Viola A. Acute kidney injury in cirrhosis. Hepatology. 2008;48(6):2064–77.
2. Tandon P, James M, Abraldes J, et al. Relevance of New Definitions to Incidence and Prognosis of Acute Kidney Injury in Hospitalized Patients with Cirrhosis: A Retrospective Population-Based Cohort Study. PLoS One 2016;11(8):e0160394.
3. Bajaj JS, O'Leary JG, Lai JC, et al. Acute-on-Chronic Liver Failure Clinical Guidelines. Am J Gastroenterol. 2022;117(2):225–252.
4. Pant C, Jani BS, Desai M, et al. Hepatorenal syndrome in hospitalized patients with chronic liver disease: results from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample 2002–2012. J Investig Med 2016;64(1):33–38.
5. Jamil K, Huang X, Hayashida D, et al. The Hepatorenal Syndrome Patient Pathway: Retrospective Analysis of Electronic Health Records. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp. 2022;96:100663.
6. Jamil K, Huang X, Lovelace B, et al. The burden of illness of hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) in the United

States: a retrospective analysis of electronic health records. J Med Econ. 2019;22(5):421–429.

7. Rice JP, Skagen C, Said A. Liver transplant outcomes for patients with hepatorenal syndrome treated with pretransplant vasoconstrictors and albumin. Transplantation, 2011;91(10):1141–7.
8. Low G, Alexander GJ, Lomas DJ. Hepatorenal syndrome: aetiology, diagnosis, and treatment. Gastroenterol Res Pract. 2015;2015:207012.
9. Durand F, Graupera I, Ginès P, et al. Pathogenesis of hepatorenal syndrome: implications for therapy. Am J Kidney Dis 2016;67(2):318–328.
10. Arroyo V. New treatments for hepatorenal syndrome. Liver Transplantation. 2000;6(3):287–289.
11. Arroyo V, Gines P, Gerbes AL, et al. Definition and diagnostic criteria of refractory ascites and hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. International Ascites Club. Hepatology 1996;23(1):164–176.
12. Ng CK, Chan MH, Tai MH, et al. Hepatorenal syndrome. Clin Biochem Rev. 2007;28(1):11–17.
13. Angeli P, Garcia-Tsao G, Nadim MK, et al. News in pathophysiology, definition and classification of hepatorenal syndrome: A step beyond the International Club of Ascites (ICA) consensus document. J Hepatol. 2019;71(4):811–822.
14. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2018;69(2):406–60.
15. Angeli P, Garcia-Tsao G, Nadim MK, et al. News in pathophysiology, definition and classification of hepatorenal syndrome: a step beyond the International Club of Ascites (ICA) consensus document. J Hepatol 2019;71(4):811–22.
16. Schrier RW, Arroyo V, Bernardi M, et al. Peripheral arteriolar vasodilation hypothesis: a proposal for the initiation of renal sodium and water retention in cirrhosis. Hepatology 1988;8(5):1151–1157.
17. Francoz C, Durand F, Kahn JA, et al. Hepatorenal Syndrome. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2019;14(5):774–781.
18. Morelli MC, Rendina M, La Manna G, et al. Position paper on liver and kidney diseases from the Italian Association for the Study of Liver (AISF), in collaboration with the Italian Society of Nephrology (SIN). Dig Liver Dis. 2021;53(Suppl 2):S49–S86.
19. Neong SF, Adebayo D, Wong F. An update on the pathogenesis and clinical management of cirrhosis with refractory ascites. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;13(4):293–305.
20. Krag A, Bendtsen F, Henriksen JH, et al. Low cardiac output predicts development of hepatorenal syndrome and survival in patients with cirrhosis and ascites. Gut. 2010;59(1):105–10.
21. Kazory A, Ronco C. Hepatorenal Syndrome or Hepatocardiorenal Syndrome: Revisiting Basic Concepts in View of Emerging Data. Cardiorenal Med. 2019;9(1):1–7.
22. Albillos A, Lario M, Alvarez-Mon M. Cirrhosis-associated immune dysfunction: distinctive features and clinical relevance. J Hepatol 2014;61(6):1385–1396.
23. Bernardi M, Moreau R, Angeli P, et al. Mechanisms of decompensation and organ failure in cirrhosis: From peripheral arterial vasodilation to systemic inflammation hypothesis. J Hepatol 2015;63(5):1272–84.
24. Arroyo V, Angeli P, Moreau R, et al. The systemic inflammation hypothesis: towards a new paradigm of acute decompensation and multiorgan failure in cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2021;74(3):670–685.
25. Terra C, Mattos ÂZ, Pereira G, et al. Recommendations of the Brazilian society of hepatology for the management of acute kidney injury in patients with cirrhosis. Arq Gastroenterol. 2018;55(3):314–320.
26. Velez JCQ, Therapondos G, Juncos LA. Reappraising the spectrum of AKI and hepatorenal syndrome in patients with cirrhosis. Nat Rev Nephrol 2020;16(3):137–155.
27. Ginès P, Schrier RW. Renal failure in cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 2009;361(13):1279–1290.
28. Ginès P, Solà E, Angeli P, et al. Hepatorenal syndrome. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2018;4(1):23.
29. Velez JCQ. Hepatorenal Syndrome Type 1: From Diagnosis Ascertainment to Goal-Oriented Pharmacologic Therapy. Kidney360. 2021;3(2):382–395.
30. Biggins SW, Angeli P, Garcia-Tsao G, et al. Diagnosis, Evaluation, and Management of Ascites, Spontaneous Bacterial Peritonitis and Hepatorenal Syndrome: 2021 Practice Guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology. 2021;74(2):1014–1048.
31. Pozzoli S, Simonini M, Manunta P. Predicting acute kidney injury: current status and future challenges. J Nephrol. 2018;31(2):209–223.
32. Lee HA, Seo YS. Current knowledge about biomarkers of acute kidney injury in liver cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol. 2022;28(1):31–46.
33. Salerno F, Navickis RJ, Wilkes MM. Albumin infusion improves outcomes of patients with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;11(2):123–30.e1.
34. Sort P, Navasa M, Arroyo V, et al. Effect of intravenous albumin on renal impairment and mortality in patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. N Engl J Med 1999;341(6):403–9.
35. Salerno F, Gerbes A, Ginès P, et al. Diagnosis, prevention and treatment of hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. Gut. 2007;56(9):1310–8.
36. Bernardi M, Caraceni P, Navickis RJ, et al. Albumin infusion in patients undergoing large-volume paracentesis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Hepatology. 2012;55(4):1172–81.
37. Bernardi M, Angeli P, Claria J, et al. Albumin in decompensated cirrhosis: new concepts and perspectives. Gut 2020;69(8):1127–38.
38. Fernández J, Navasa M, Planas R, et al. Primary prophylaxis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis delays hepatorenal syndrome and improves survival in cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2007;133(3):818–24.

39. Dong T, Aronsohn A, Gautham Reddy K, et al. Rifaximin decreases the incidence and severity of acute kidney injury and hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. Dig Dis Sci 2016;61(12):3621–6.
40. Flamm SL, Mullen KD, Heimanson Z, et al. Rifaximin has the potential to prevent complications of cirrhosis. Therap Adv Gastroenterol 2018;11:175628481880030.
41. Akriviadis E, Botla R, Briggs W, et al. Pentoxifylline improves short-term survival in severe acute alcoholic hepatitis: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Gastroenterology. 2000;119(6):1637–1648.
42. Tyagi P, Sharma P, Sharma BC, et al. Prevention of hepatorenal syndrome in patients with cirrhosis and ascites: a pilot randomized control trial between pentoxifylline and placebo. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;23(3):210–217.
43. Ozturk H, Cetinkaya A, Firat TS, et al. Protective effect of pentoxifylline on oxidative renal cell injury associated with renal crystal formation in a hyperoxaluric rat model. Urolithiasis 2019;47(5):415–424.
44. Lee YS, Kim HJ, Kim JH, et al. Treatment of severe alcoholic hepatitis with corticosteroid, pentoxifylline, or dual therapy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2017;51(4):364–377.
45. Whitfield K, Rambaldi A, Wetterslev J, et al. Pentoxifylline for alcoholic hepatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009;2009(4):CD007339.
46. Stine JG, Wang J, Cornella SL, et al. Treatment of Type-1 hepatorenal syndrome with pentoxifylline: a randomized placebo controlled clinical trial. Ann Hepatol 2018;17(2):300–6.
47. Tariq R, Singal AK. Management of Hepatorenal Syndrome: A Review. J Clin Transl Hepatol. 2020;8(2):192–199.
48. Velez JC, Nietert PJ. Therapeutic response to vasoconstrictors in hepatorenal syndrome parallels increase in mean arterial pressure: a pooled analysis of clinical trials. Am J Kidney Dis. 2011;58(6):928–38.
49. Velez JC, Kadian M, Taburyanskaya M, et al. Hepatorenal Acute Kidney Injury and the Importance of Raising Mean Arterial Pressure. Nephron. 2015;131(3):191–201.
50. Russ KB, Stevens TM, Singal AK. Acute Kidney Injury in Patients with Cirrhosis. J Clin Transl Hepatol. 2015;3(3):195–204.
51. Velasco JAVR, García-Jiménez ES, Aldana-Ledesma JM, et al. Evaluation and management of emergencies in the patient with cirrhosis Rev Gastroenterol Méx. 2022;87(2):198–215.
52. Cullaro G, Kanduri SR, Velez JCQ. Acute Kidney Injury in Patients with Liver Disease. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2022:CJN.03040322.
53. Piano S, Angeli P. Dopamine and Furosemide for the Treatment of Hepatorenal Syndrome: A Reappraisal or Just Smoke and Mirrors? J Clin Exp Hepatol. 2015;5(4):273–5.
54. Dundar HZ, Yılmazlar T. Management of hepatorenal syndrome. World J Nephrol. 2015;4(2):277–86.
55. Leao GS, Neto GJ, Jotz RF, et al. Albumin for cirrhotic patients with extraperitoneal infections: a meta-analysis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2019;34(12):2071–2076.
56. Zaccherini G, Tufoni M, Bernardi M. Albumin administration is efficacious in the management of patients with cirrhosis: a systematic review of the literature. Hepat Med 2020;12:153–72.
57. Aithal GP, Palaniyappan N, China L, et al. Guidelines on the management of ascites in cirrhosis. Gut. 2021;70(1):9–29.
58. Tufoni M, Zaccherini G, Caraceni P, et al. Albumin: Indications in chronic liver disease. United European Gastroenterol J. 2020;8(5):528–535.
59. Valerio C, Theocharidou E, Davenport A, et al. Human albumin solution for patients with cirrhosis and acute on chronic liver failure: Beyond simple volume expansion. World J Hepatol 2016;8(7):345–354.
60. Arroyo V, García-Martinez R, Salvatella X. Human serum albumin, systemic inflammation, and cirrhosis. J Hepatol. 2014;61(2):396–407.
61. Fernández J, Clària J, Amorós A, et al. Effects of albumin treatment on systemic and portal hemodynamics and systemic inflammation in patients with decompensated cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2019;157(1):149–162.
62. Bortoluzzi A, Ceolotto G, Gola E, et al. Positive cardiac inotropic effect of albumin infusion in rodents with cirrhosis and ascites: molecular mechanisms. Hepatology 2013;57(1):266–276.
63. Garcia-Martinez R, Noiret L, Sen S, et al. Albumin infusion improves renal blood flow autoregulation in patients with acute decompensation of cirrhosis and acute kidney injury. Liver Int. 2015;35(2):335–43.
64. Aldecoa C, Llau JV, Nuvials X, et al. Role of albumin in the preservation of endothelial glycocalyx integrity and the microcirculation: a review. Ann Intensive Care. 2020;10(1):85.
65. Zhang WJ, Frei B. Albumin selectively inhibits TNF alpha-induced expression of vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 in human aortic endothelial cells. Cardiovasc Res 2002;55(4):820–9.
66. China L, Freemantle N, Forrest E, et al. A randomized trial of albumin infusions in hospitalized patients with cirrhosis. N Engl J Med. 2021;384(9):808–817.
67. Ortega R, Gines P, Uriz J, et al. Terlipressin therapy with and without albumin for patients with hepatorenal syndrome: results of a prospective, nonrandomized study. Hepatology. 2002;36(4 Pt 1):941–948.
68. Martín-Llahí M, Pépin MN, Guevara M, et al. Terlipressin and albumin vs albumin in patients with cirrhosis and hepatorenal syndrome: a randomized study. Gastroenterology 2008;134(5):1352–1359.
69. Boyer TD, Sanyal AJ, Wong F, et al. Terlipressin plus albumin is more effective than albumin alone in improving renal function in patients with cirrhosis and hepatorenal syndrome type 1. Gastroenterology 2016;150(7):1579–1589.e2.
70. Wong F, Pappas SC, Curry MP, et al. Terlipressin plus Albumin for the Treatment of Type 1 Hepatorenal Syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2021;384(9):818–828.

71. Gluud LL, Christensen K, Christensen E, et al. Systematic review of randomized trials on vasoconstrictor drugs for hepatorenal syndrome. Hepatology 2010;51(2):576–84.
72. Facciorusso A, Chandar AK, Murad MH, et al. Comparative efficacy of pharmacological strategies for management of type 1 hepatorenal syndrome: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2017;2(2):94–102.
73. Arora A, Kumar A, Prasad N, et al. INASL-ISN Joint Position Statements on Management of Patients with Simultaneous Liver and Kidney Disease. J Clin Exp Hepatol. 2021;11(3):354–386.
74. Qi X, Bai Z, Zhu Q, et al. Practice guidance for the use of terlipressin for liver cirrhosis-related complications. Therap Adv Gastroenterol. 2022;15:17562848221098253.
75. Moreau R, Durand F, Poynard T, et al. Terlipressin in patients with cirrhosis and type 1 hepatorenal syndrome: a retrospective multicenter study. Gastroenterology 2002;122(4):923–930.
76. Sanyal AJ, Boyer T, Garcia-Tsao G, et al. A randomized, prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of terlipressin for type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. Gastroenterology 2008;134(5):1360–1368.
77. Sanyal AJ, Boyer TD, Frederick RT, et al. Reversal of hepatorenal syndrome type 1 with terlipressin plus albumin vs. placebo plus albumin in a pooled analysis of the OT-0401 and REVERSE randomised clinical studies. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2017;45(11):1390–1402.
78. Best LM, Freeman SC, Sutton AJ, et al. Treatment for hepatorenal syndrome in people with decompensated liver cirrhosis: a network meta-analysis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2019;9(9):CD013103.
79. Moore K, Jamil K, Verleger K, et al. Real-world treatment patterns and outcomes using terlipressin in 203 patients with the hepatorenal syndrome. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2020;52(2):351–358.
80. Gifford FJ, Morling JR, Fallowfield JA. Systematic review with meta-analysis: vasoactive drugs for the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome type 1. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2017;45(5):593–603.
81. Allegretti AS, Israelsen M, Krag A, et al. Terlipressin versus placebo or no intervention for people with cirrhosis and hepatorenal syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;6(6):CD005162.
82. Nanda A, Reddy R, Safraz H, et al. Pharmacological Therapies for Hepatorenal Syndrome: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2018;52(4):360–367.
83. Wang L, Long Y, Li KX, et al. Pharmacological treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a network meta-analysis. Gastroenterol Rep 2019;8(2):111–118.
84. Sridharan K, Sivaramakrishnan G. Vasoactive agents for hepatorenal syndrome: a mixed treatment comparison network meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis of randomized clinical trials. J Gen Intern Med 2018;33(1):97–102.
85. Terres AZ, Balbinot RS, Muscope ALF, et al. Evidence-based protocol for diagnosis and treatment of hepatorenal syndrome is independently associated with lower mortality. Gastroenterol Hepatol 2022;45(1):25–39.
86. Facciorusso A. Hepatorenal Syndrome Type 1: Current Challenges and Future Prospects. Ther Clin Risk Manag. 2019;15:1383–1391.
87. Cavallin M, Piano S, Romano A, et al. Terlipressin given by continuous intravenous infusion versus intravenous boluses in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a randomized controlled study. Hepatol Baltim Md. 2016;63(3):983–992.
88. Piano S, Schmidt HH, Ariza X, et al. Association between grade of acute on chronic liver failure and response to terlipressin and albumin in patients with hepatorenal syndrome. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol Off Clin Pract J Am Gastroenterol Assoc. 2018;16(11):1792–1800.e3.
89. Boyer TD, Sanyal AJ, Garcia-Tsao G, et al. Predictors of response to terlipressin plus albumin in hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) type 1: relationship of serum creatinine to hemodynamics. J Hepatol. 2011;55(2):315–321.
90. Rodríguez E, Elia C, Solà E. Terlipressin and albumin for type-1 hepatorenal syndrome associated with sepsis. J Hepatol. 2014;60(5):955–961.
91. Sarin SK, Sharma P. Terlipressin: an asset for hepatologists! Hepatology. 2011;54(2):724–8.
92. Buccheri S, Da BL. Hepatorenal Syndrome: Definitions, Diagnosis, and Management. Clin Liver Dis. 2022;26(2):181–201.
93. Pichler RH, Swenson ER, Leary PJ, et al. Terlipressin: Hopes Fulfilled or Dashed? CJASN 2022;17(1):140–142.
94. Belcher JM, Parada XV, Simonetto DA, et al. Terlipressin and the Treatment of Hepatorenal Syndrome: How the CONFIRM Trial Moves the Story Forward. Am J Kidney Dis. 2022;79(5):737–745.
95. FDA Approved Drug Products: TERLIVAZ (terlipressin) for injection, for intravenous use (https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2022/022231s000lbl.pdf).
96. Alessandria C, Ottobrelli A, Debernardi-Venon W, et al. Noradrenalin vs terlipressin in patients with hepatorenal syndrome: a prospective, randomized, unblinded, pilot study. J Hepatol. 2007;47(4):499–505.
97. Sharma P, Kumar A, Shrama BC, et al. An open label, pilot, randomized controlled trial of noradrenaline versus terlipressin in the treatment of type 1 hepatorenal syndrome and predictors of response. Am J Gastroenterol. 2008;103(7):1689–1697.
98. Singh V, Ghosh S, Singh B, et al. Noradrenaline vs. terlipressin in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a randomized study. J Hepatol 2012;56(6):1293–1298.
99. Junior APN, Farias AQ, D' Albuquerque LAC, et al. Terlipressin versus norepinephrine in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PloS One. 2014;9(9):e107466.
100. Goyal O, Sidhu SS, Sehgal N, et al. Noradrenaline is as effective as terlipressin in hepatorenal syndrome type 1: a prospective, randomized trial. J Assoc Physicians India. 2016;64(9):30–35.

101. Saif RU, Dar HA, Sofi SM, et al. Noradrenaline versus terlipressin in the management of type 1 hepatorenal syndrome: a randomized controlled study. Indian J Gastroenterol. 2018;37(5):424–429.
102. Arora V, Maiwall R, Rajan V, et al. Terlipressin is superior to noradrenaline in the management of acute kidney injury in acute on chronic liver failure. Hepatology 2020;71(2):600–610.
103. Ghosh S, Choudhary NS, Sharma AK, et al. Noradrenaline vs terlipressin in the treatment of type 2 hepatorenal syndrome: a randomized pilot study. Liver Int 2013;33(8):1187–93.
104. Subedi A, Suresh Kumar VC, Subedi AS, et al. A Review of Hepatorenal Syndrome. Cureus. 2021;13(7):e16084.
105. Bera C, Wong F. Management of hepatorenal syndrome in liver cirrhosis: a recent update. Therap Adv Gastroenterol. 2022;15:17562848221102679.
106. Gupta K, Rani P, Rohatgi A, et al. Noradrenaline for reverting hepatorenal syndrome: a prospective, observational, single-center study. Clin Exp Gastroenterol. 2018;11:317–324.
107. Cavallin M, Kamath PS, Merli M, et al. Terlipressin plus albumin versus midodrine and octreotide plus albumin in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: A randomized trial. Hepatology 2015;62(2):567–574.
108. Mahmoud EIED, Abdelaziz DH, Abd-Elsalam S, et al. Norepinephrine is more effective than midodrine/octreotide in patients with hepatorenal syndrome-acute kidney injury: a randomized controlled trial. Front Pharmacol 2021;12:675948.
109. Simonetto DA, Gines P, Kamath PS. Hepatorenal syndrome: pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management. BMJ. 2020;370:m2687.
110. Nadim MK, Kellum JA, Davenport A, et al. Hepatorenal syndrome: the 8th International Consensus Conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative (ADQI) Group. Crit Care. 2012;16(1):R23.
111. Velez JCQ. Patients with Hepatorenal Syndrome Should Be Dialyzed? PRO. Kidney360. 2020;2(3):406–409.
112. Wadei HM. Patients with Hepatorenal Syndrome Should Be Dialyzed? CON. Kidney360. 2020;2(3):410–412.
113. Song T, Rössle M, He F, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for hepatorenal syndrome: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Dig Liver Dis 2018;50(4):323–330.
114. Suhocki PV, Lungren MP, Kapoor B, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt complications: prevention and management. Semin Intervent Radiol. 2015;32(2):123–32.
115. Allaire M, Walter A, Sutter O, et al. TIPS for management of portal-hypertension-related complications in patients with cirrhosis. Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol. 2020;44(3):249–263.
116. Formica RN, Aeder M, Boyle G, et al. Simultaneous Liver-Kidney Allocation Policy: A Proposal to Optimize Appropriate Utilization of Scarce Resources. Am J Transplant. 2016;16(3):758–766.
117. Colliou É, Del Bello A, Milongo D, et al. Kidney failure after liver transplantation. Transplantology 2021;2(3):315–335.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

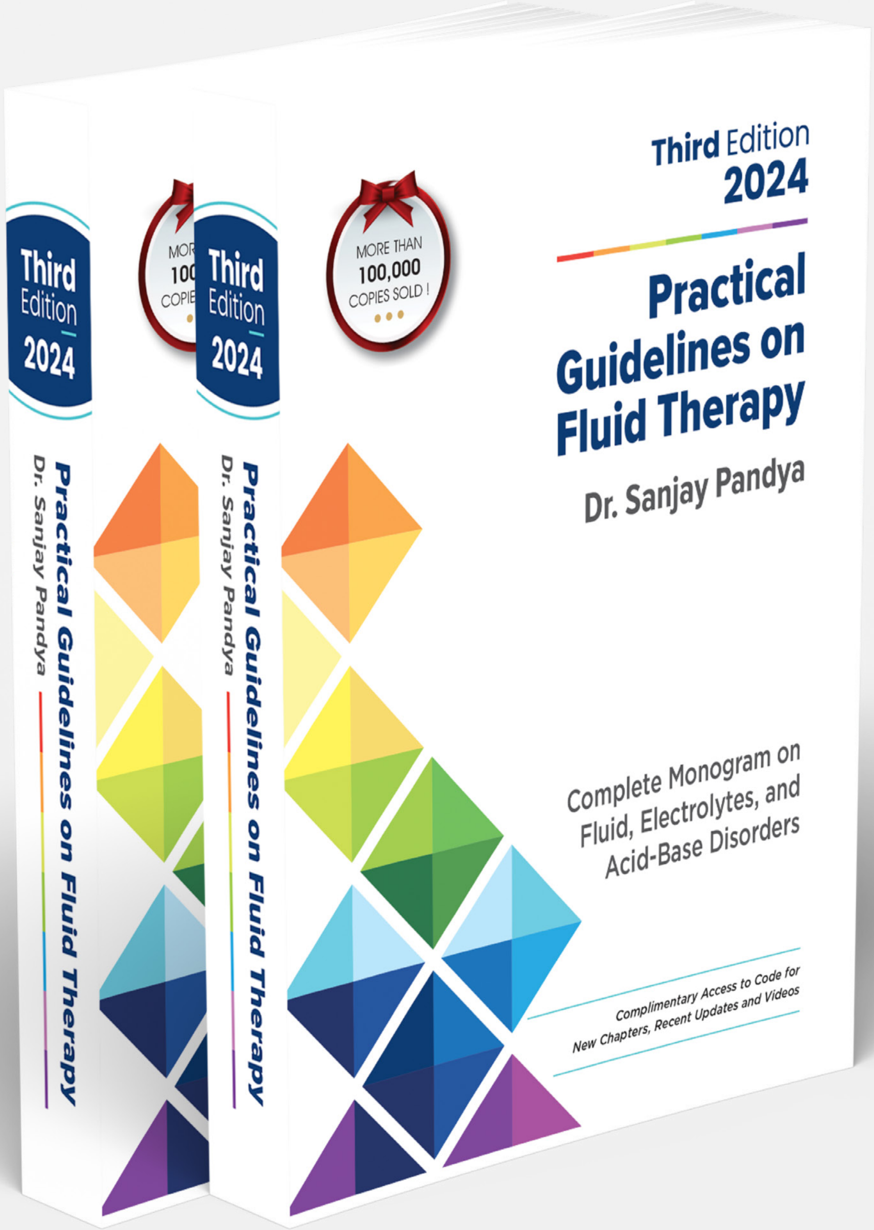
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid therapy.org

Chapter 38:

Acute Pancreatitis


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

38 Acute Pancreatitis

Causes and Diagnosis **451**
Classification **451**
Management.................................... **451**
  Initial medical management.......... 452
    Control of pain......................... 452
    Fluid resuscitation 453
    Electrolyte and metabolic disorders................................. 456
    Nutrition 457
    Antibiotics 457
    Other drugs 458
  Endoscopy therapy....................... 458
  Surgical therapy 458

Acute pancreatitis (AP) is a common gastrointestinal tract disease that occurs due to cellular injury and inflammation of the pancreas and is characterized by the abrupt onset of deep epigastric pain and elevated levels of lipase or amylase levels in the blood [1, 2]. Acute pancreatitis is increasing globally; it is one of the most common gastrointestinal causes of hospitalization in the United States and is associated with significant morbidity, mortality, and substantial health care cost [3–5].

CAUSES

The most common causes of acute pancreatitis are gallstones (about 42%) and chronic alcohol use (about 21%), while less frequent causes are hypertriglyceridemia, post-endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography, hypercalcemia, trauma, infection, and idiopathic [6, 7].

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of acute pancreatitis requires at least two of the following three criteria: (1) Typical abdominal pain (acute onset severe, persistent, epigastric, and left upper quadrant abdominal pain); (2) Threefold elevation in pancreatic enzymes activity (serum lipase and serum amylase); and (3) Imaging (computerized tomography [CT], magnetic resonance imaging [MRI], ultrasound) findings that are consistent with acute pancreatitis [8].

CLASSIFICATION

Based on pathological changes, onset, and severity, acute pancreatitis is classified in Table 38.1 [3, 8–16].

MANAGEMENT

Treatment of acute pancreatitis should be individualized depending on the severity of the disease, causative etiology, presence of complications of severe acute pancreatitis, and coexisting disorders. Management of acute pancreatitis is divided into three broad categories:

A. Initial medical management
B. Endoscopy therapy
C. Surgical therapy

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Tenner S, Vege SS, Sheth SG, et al. American College of Gastroenterology Guidelines: Management of Acute Pancreatitis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2024;119(3):419–437.
2. Crockett SD, Wani S, Gardner TB, et al. American Gastroenterological Association Institute Clinical Guidelines Committee. American Gastroenterological Association Institute Guideline on Initial Management of Acute Pancreatitis. Gastroenterology. 2018;154(4):1096–1101.
3. Forsmark CE, Vege SS, Wilcox CM, et al. Acute pancreatitis. N Engl J Med 2016;375(20):1972–1981.
4. Peery AF, Crockett SD, Murphy CC, et al. Burden and Cost of Gastrointestinal, Liver, and Pancreatic Diseases in the United States: Update 2018. Gastroenterology. 2019;156(1):254–272.e11.
5. Petrov MS, Yadav D. Global epidemiology and holistic prevention of pancreatitis. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2019;16(3):175–184.
6. Zilio MB, Eyff TF, Azeredo-Da-Silva ALF, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the aetiology of acute pancreatitis. HPB (Oxford). 2019;21(3):259–267.
7. Boxhoorn L, Voermans RP, Bouwense SA, et al. Acute pancreatitis. Lancet 2020;396(10252):726–734.
8. Banks PA, Bollen TL, Dervenis C, et al. Classification of acute pancreatitis--2012: revision of the Atlanta classification and definitions by international consensus. Gut. 2013;62(1):102–11.
9. Tenner S, Baillie J, DeWitt J, et al. American College of Gastroenterology guideline: management of acute pancreatitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2013;108(9):1400–1415.
10. Working Group IAP/APA Acute Pancreatitis Guidelines. IAP/APA evidence-based guidelines for the management of acute pancreatitis. Pancreatology. 2013;13(4 suppl 2):e1–15.
11. Phillip V, Steiner JM, Algül H. Early phase of acute pancreatitis: Assessment and management. World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol. 2014;5(3):158–68.
12. Yokoe M, Takada T, Mayumi T, et al. Japanese guidelines for the management of acute pancreatitis: Japanese Guidelines 2015. J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci. 2015;22(6):405–32.
13. Greenberg JA, Hsu J, Bawazeer M, et al. Clinical practice guideline: management of acute pancreatitis. Can J Surg. 2016;59(2):128–140.
14. Boumitri C, Brown E, Kahaleh M. Necrotizing Pancreatitis: Current Management and Therapies. Clin Endosc. 2017;50(4):357–365.
15. Leppäniemi A, Tolonen M, Tarasconi A, et al. 2019 WSES guidelines for the management of severe acute pancreatitis. World J Emerg Surg 2019;14:27.
16. Seppänen H, Puolakkainen P. Classification, Severity Assessment, and Prevention of Recurrences in Acute Pancreatitis. Scandinavian Journal of Surgery. 2020;109(1):53–58.
17. Lakananurak N, Gramlich L. Nutrition management in acute pancreatitis: Clinical practice consideration. World J Clin Cases. 2020;8(9):1561–1573.
18. Nelson AD, Lugo-Fagundo NS, Mahapatra SJ, et al. A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis of Opioids vs Nonopioids in Acute Pancreatitis. Gastro Hep Advances 2022;1(1):83–92.
19. Thavanesan N, White S, Lee S, et al. Analgesia in the Initial Management of Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomised Controlled Trials. World J Surg. 2022;46(4):878–890.
20. Cai W, Liu F, Wen Y, et al. Pain Management in Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomised Controlled Trials. Front Med

(Lausanne). 2021;8:782151.
21. Basurto Ona X, Rigau Comas D, Urrútia G. Opioids for acute pancreatitis pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013;(7):CD009179.
22. Stigliano S, Sternby H, de Madaria E, et al. Early management of acute pancreatitis: a review of the best evidence. Digestive and Liver Disease. 2017;49(6):585–594.
23. Meng W, Yuan J, Zhang C, et al. Parenteral analgesics for pain relief in acute pancreatitis: a systematic review. Pancreatology. 2013;13(3):201–206.
24. Barlass U, Dutta R, Cheema H, et al. Morphine worsens the severity and prevents pancreatic regeneration in mouse models of acute pancreatitis. Gut 2017;67:600–602.
25. Gülen B, Dur A, Serinken M, et al. Pain treatment in patients with acute pancreatitis: a randomized controlled trial. Turk J Gastroenterol 2016;27(2):192–6.
26. Li F, Cai S, Cao F, et al. Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of acute pancreatitis in China (2021). Journal of Pancreatology. 2021;4(2):67–75.
27. Gardner TB, Vege SS, Pearson RK, et al. Fluid resuscitation in acute pancreatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2008;6(10):1070–6.
28. Talukdar R, Swaroop Vege S. Early management of severe acute pancreatitis. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2011;13(2):123–30.
29. Warndorf MG, Kurtzman JT, Bartel MJ, et al. Early fluid resuscitation reduces morbidity among patients with acute pancreatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011;9(8):705–709.
30. Haydock MD, Mittal A, Wilms HR, et al. Fluid therapy in acute pancreatitis: anybody's guess. Ann Surg 2013;257(2):182–188.
31. Gardner TB, Vege SS, Chari ST, et al. Faster rate of initial fluid resuscitation in severe acute pancreatitis diminishes in-hospital mortality. Pancreatology 2009;9(6):770–776.
32. Wall I, Badalov N, Baradarian R, et al. Decreased morbidity and mortality in patients with acute pancreatitis related to aggressive intravenous hydration. Pancreas 2011;40(4):547–50.
33. Buxbaum JL, Quezada M, Da B, et al. Early aggressive hydration hastens clinical improvement in mild acute pancreatitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2017;112(5):797–803.
34. Yamashita T, Horibe M, Sanui M, et al. Large Volume Fluid Resuscitation for Severe Acute Pancreatitis is Associated with Reduced Mortality: A Multicenter Retrospective Study. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2019;53(5):385–391.
35. Fisher JM, Gardner TB. The "golden hours" of management in acute pancreatitis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2012;107(8):1146–1150.
36. Mao EQ, Tang YQ, Fei J, et al. Fluid therapy for severe acute pancreatitis in acute response stage. Chin Med J (Engl) 2009;122(2):169–73.
37. Mao EQ, Fei J, Peng YB, et al. Rapid hemodilution is associated with increased sepsis and mortality among patients with severe acute pancreatitis. Chin Med J (Engl) 2010;123(13):1639–44.
38. de-Madaria E, Soler-Sala G, Sánchez-Paya J, et al. Influence of fluid therapy on the prognosis of acute pancreatitis: a prospective cohort study. Am J Gastroenterol 2011;106(10):1843–50.
39. Ye B, Mao W, Chen Y, et al. Aggressive Resuscitation Is Associated with the Development of Acute Kidney Injury in Acute Pancreatitis. Dig Dis Sci. 2019;64(2):544–552.
40. Li L, Jin T, Wen S, et al. Early rapid fluid therapy is associated with increased rate of noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in Hemoconcentrated patients with severe acute pancreatitis. Dig Dis Sci. United States. 2020;65(9):2700–11.
41. Messallam AA, Body CB, Berger S, et al. Impact of early aggressive fluid resuscitation in acute pancreatitis. Pancreatology. 2021;21(1):69–73.
42. Gad MM, Simons-Linares CR. Is aggressive intravenous fluid resuscitation beneficial in acute pancreatitis? A meta-analysis of randomized control trials and cohort studies. World J Gastroenterol. 2020;26(10):1098–1106.
43. Liao J, Zhan Y, Wu H, et al. Effect of aggressive versus conservative hydration for early phase of acute pancreatitis in adult patients: A meta-analysis of 3,127 cases. Pancreatology. 2022;22(2):226–234.
44. E de-Madaria JL, Buxbaum P, Maisonneuve A, et al. Aggressive or Moderate Fluid Resuscitation in Acute Pancreatitis. N Engl J Med 2022;387:989–1000.
45. Argaiz ER, de Moraes AG. Acute pancreatitis. Lancet. 2021;397(10271):279.
46. Boxhoorn L, Voermans RP, van Santvoort HC, et al. Acute pancreatitis. Lancet. 2021;397(10271):280.
47. Wu BU, Hwang JQ, Gardner TH, et al. Lactated Ringer's solution reduces systemic inflammation compared with saline in patients with acute pancreatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011;9(8):710–717.e1.
48. Gardnet TB. Fluid Resuscitation in Acute Pancreatitis - Going over the WATERFALL. N Engl J Med 2022;387(11):1038–1039.
49. Cuéllar-Monterrubio JE, Monreal-Robles R, González-Moreno EI, et al. Nonaggressive Versus Aggressive Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Acute Pancreatitis With More Than 24 Hours From Disease Onset: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Pancreas. 2020;49(4):579–583.
50. Aziz M, Ahmed Z, Weissman S, et al. Lactated Ringer's vs normal saline for acute pancreatitis: An updated systematic review and meta-analysis. Pancreatology. 2021;21(7):1217–1223.
51. Lee A, Ko C, Buitrago C, et al. Lactated Ringers vs Normal Saline Resuscitation for Mild Acute Pancreatitis: A Randomized Trial. Gastroenterology. 2021;160(3):955–957.e4.
52. Chen H, Lu X, Xu B, et al. Lactated Ringer Solution Is Superior to Normal Saline Solution in Managing Acute Pancreatitis: An Updated Meta-analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. J Clin Gastroenterol 2022;56(2):e114–e120.

53. Guzmán-Calderón E, Diaz-Arocutipa C, Monge E. Lactate Ringer's Versus Normal Saline in the Management of Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Dig Dis Sci. 2022;67(8):4131–4139.
54. de-Madaria E, Herrera-Marante I, González-Camacho V, et al. Fluid resuscitation with lactated Ringer's solution vs normal saline in acute pancreatitis: a triple-blind, randomized, controlled trial. United European Gastroenterol J. 2018;6(1):63–72.
55. Iqbal U, Anwar H, Scribani M. Ringer's lactate versus normal saline in acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Dig Dis. 2018;19(6):335–341.
56. Khatua B, Yaron JR, El-Kurdi B, et al. Ringer's Lactate Prevents Early Organ Failure by Providing Extracellular Calcium. J Clin Med 2020;9(1):263.
57. Karki B, Thapa S, Khadka D, et al. Intravenous Ringers lactate versus normal saline for predominantly mild acute pancreatitis in a Nepalese Tertiary Hospital. PLoS One. 2022;17(1):e0263221.
58. Zhou S, Buitrago C, Foong A, et al. Comprehensive meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of lactated Ringer's versus normal saline for acute pancreatitis. Pancreatology 2021;21(8):1405–1410.
59. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(9):829–839.
60. Kellum JA. Saline-induced hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. Crit Care Med 2002;30(1):259–261.
61. Reid F, Lobo DN, Williams RN, et al. (Ab)normal saline and physiological Hartmann's solution: a randomized double-blind crossover study. Clin Sci (Lond) 2003;104(1):17–24.
62. Bhoomagoud M, Jung T, Atladottir J, et al. Reducing extracellular pH sensitizes the acinar cell to secretagogue-induced pancreatitis responses in rats. Gastroenterology 2009;137(3):1083–1092.
63. Du XJ, Hu WM, Xia Q, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch resuscitation reduces the risk of intra-abdominal hypertension in severe acute pancreatitis. Pancreas 2011;40(8):1220–1225.
64. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. N Engl J Med 2012;367(20):1901–1911.
65. Zhao G, Zhang JG, Wu HS, et al. Effects of different resuscitation fluid on severe acute pancreatitis. World J Gastroenterol 2013;19(13):2044–2052.
66. Browne GW, Pitchumoni CS. Pathophysiology of pulmonary complications of acute pancreatitis. World J Gastroenterol. 2006;12(44):7087–96.
67. Takeda K, Takada T, Kawarada Y, et al. JPN Guidelines for the management of acute pancreatitis: medical management of acute pancreatitis. J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg. 2006;13(1):42–7.
68. Huber W, Umgelter A, Reindl W, et al. Volume assessment in patients with necrotizing pancreatitis: a comparison of intrathoracic blood volume index, central venous pressure, and hematocrit, and their correlation to cardiac index and extravascular lung water index. Crit Care Med. 2008;36(8):2348–54.
69. Gutiérrez-Jiménez AA, Castro-Jiménez E, Lagunes-Córdoba R. Total serum calcium and corrected calcium as severity predictors in acute pancreatitis. Rev Gastroenterol Mex 2014;79(1):13–21.
70. Chhabra P, Rana SS, Sharma V, et al. Hypocalcemic tetany: a simple bedside marker of poor outcome in acute pancreatitis. Ann Gastroenterol. 2016;29(2):214–20.
71. Ahmed A, Azim A, Gurjar M, et al. Hypocalcemia in acute pancreatitis revisited. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2016;20(3):173–7.
72. Hersh T, Siddiqui DA. Magnesium and the pancreas. Am J Clin Nutr. 1973;26(3):362–366.
73. Xiu F, Stanojcic M, Diao L, et al. Stress hyperglycemia, insulin treatment, and innate immune cells. Int J Endocrinol. 2014;2014:486403.
74. Zhi M, Zhu X, Lugea A, et al. Incidence of New Onset Diabetes Mellitus Secondary to Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Frontiers in physiology. 2019;10:637.
75. Das SL, Singh PP, Phillips AR, et al. Newly diagnosed diabetes mellitus after acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Gut. 2014;63(5):818–31.
76. Liu QP, Hu CL, Chen NW. New-Onset Diabetes Mellitus After the First Attack of Acute Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Iran Red Crescent Med J. 2019;21(7):e91740.
77. Tu J, Yang Y, Zhang J, et al. Effect of the disease severity on the risk of developing new-onset diabetes after acute pancreatitis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2018;97(22):e10713.
78. Hart PA, Bradley D, Conwell DL, et al. Diabetes following acute pancreatitis. Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2021;6(8):668–675.
79. Richardson A, Park WG. Acute pancreatitis and diabetes mellitus: a review. Korean J Intern Med. 2021;36(1):15–24.
80. Uomo G. Pancreatic rest or not? The debate on the nutrition in acute pancreatitis continues. JOP. 2013;14(2):216–7.
81. Rinninella, E, Annetta MG, Serricchio M et al. Nutritional support in acute pancreatitis: from physiopathology to practice: an evidence-based approach. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 2017;21(2):421–432.
82. Al-Omran M, Albalawi ZH, Tashkandi MF, et al. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition for acute pancreatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010;2010(1):CD002837.
83. Vaughn VM, Shuster D, Rogers MAM, et al. Early versus delayed feeding in patients with acute pancreatitis: a systematic review. Ann Intern Med. 2017;166(12):883–892.
84. Li W, Liu J, Zhao S, et al. Safety and efcacy of total parenteral nutrition versus total enteral nutrition for patients with severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. J Int Med Res 2018;46(9):3948–3958.
85. Wu P, Li L, Sun W. Efficacy comparisons of enteral nutrition and parenteral nutrition in patients with severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis

from randomized controlled trials. Biosci Rep 2018;38(6):BSR20181515.

86. Yao H, He C, Deng L, et al. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition in critically ill patients with severe pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. Eur J Clin Nutr 2018;72(1):66–68.
87. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Pancreatitis (NICE guideline NG104). 2018. www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng104.
88. Arvanitakis M, Ockenga J, Bezmarevic M, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in acute and chronic pancreatitis. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(3):612–631.
89. Guo QH, Tian XY, Qin YL, et al. Immediate enteral nutrition can accelerate recovery and be safe in mild acute pancreatitis: A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Heliyon. 2022;8(2):e08852.
90. Yao Q, Liu P, Peng S, et al. Effects of immediate or early oral feeding on acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Pancreatology. 2022;22(2):175–184.
91. Vlada AC, Schmit B, Perry A, et al. Failure to follow evidence-based best practice guidelines in the treatment of severe acute pancreatitis. HPB (Oxford) 2013;15(10):822–7.
92. Sun E, Tharakan M, Kapoor S, et al. Poor compliance with ACG guidelines for nutrition and antibiotics in the management of acute pancreatitis: a North American survey of gastrointestinal specialists and primary care physicians. JOP 2013;14(3):221–7.
93. Parniczky A, Lantos T, Toth EM, et al. Antibiotic therapy in acute pancreatitis: from global overuse to evidence based recommendations. Pancreatology. 2019;19(4):488–99.
94. Nakaharai K, Morita K, Jo T, et al. Early prophylactic antibiotics for severe acute pancreatitis: a population-based cohort study using a nationwide database in Japan. J Infect Chemother 2018;24(9):753–758.
95. Horibe M, Sanui M, Sasaki M, et al. Impact of antimicrobial prophylaxis for severe acute pancreatitis on the development of invasive candidiasis: a large retrospective multicenter cohort study. Pancreas. 2019;48(4):537–43.
96. Isenmann R, Runzi M, Kron M, et al. Prophylactic antibiotic treatment in patients with predicted severe acute pancreatitis: a placebo-controlled, double blind trial. Gastroenterology. 2004;126(4):997–1004.
97. Dellinger EP, Tellado JM, Soto NE, et al. Early antibiotic treatment for severe acute necrotizing pancreatitis: randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Ann Surg. 2007;245(5):674–83.
98. Mandal AK, Chaudhary S, Shrestha B, et al. Efficacy of prophylactic use of ciprofloxacin and metronidazole in mild and moderately severe acute pancreatitis. JNMA J Nepal Med Assoc 2017;56(206):207–210.
99. Jafri NS, Mahid SS, Idstein SR, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis is not protective in severe acute pancreatitis: a systemic review and meta-analysis. Am J Surg 2009;197(6):806–813.
100. Villatoro E, Bassi C, Larvin M. Antibiotic therapy for prophylaxis against infection of pancreatic necrosis in acute pancreatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;(5):CD002941.
101. Lim CL, Lee W, Liew YX, et al. Role of antibiotic prophylaxis in necrotizing pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. J Gastrointest Surg 2015;19(3):480–91.
102. Mourad MM, Evans R, Kalidindi V, et al. Prophylactic antibiotics in acute pancreatitis: endless debate. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 2017;99(2):107–112.
103. Mofidi R, Suttie SA, Patil PV, et al. The value of procalcitonin at predicting the severity of acute pancreatitis and development of infected pancreatic necrosis: systematic review. Surgery. 2009;146(1):72–81.
104. Manes G, Rabitti PG, Menchise A, et al. Prophylaxis with meropenem of septic complications in acute pancreatitis: a randomized, controlled trial versus imipenem. Pancreas. 2003;27(4):e79–83.
105. van Baal MC, Besselink MG, Bakker OJ, et al. Dutch Pancreatitis Study Group. Timing of cholecystectomy after mild biliary pancreatitis: a systematic review. Ann Surg. 2012;255(5):860–866.
106. Hwang SS, Li BH, Haigh PI. Gallstone pancreatitis without cholecystectomy. JAMA Surg. 2013;148(9):867–872.
107. Uhl W, Müller CA, Krähenbühl L, et al. Acute gallstone pancreatitis: timing of laparoscopic cholecystectomy in mild and severe disease. Surg Endosc 1999;13(11):1070–6.
108. Aboulian A, Chan T, Yaghoubian A, et al. Early cholecystectomy safely decreases hospital stay in patients with mild gallstone pancreatitis: a randomized prospective study. Ann Surg 2010;251(4):615–9.
109. da Costa DW, Bouwense SA, Schepers NJ, et al. Same-admission versus interval cholecystectomy for mild gallstone pancreatitis (PONCHO): a multicentre randomised controlled trial. Lancet 2015;386(10000):1261–1268.
110. Laswi H, Attara B, Kwei R, et al. Readmissions after Biliary Acute Pancreatitis: Analysis of the Nationwide Readmissions Database. Gastroenterology Research 2022;15(4):188–199.
111. Lyu Y, Cheng Y, Wang B, et al. Safety of early same-admission laparoscopic cholecystectomy for acute mild biliary pancreatitis. A retrospective study for acute pancreatitis. Wideochir Inne Tech Maloinwazyjne. 2022;17(1):150–155.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

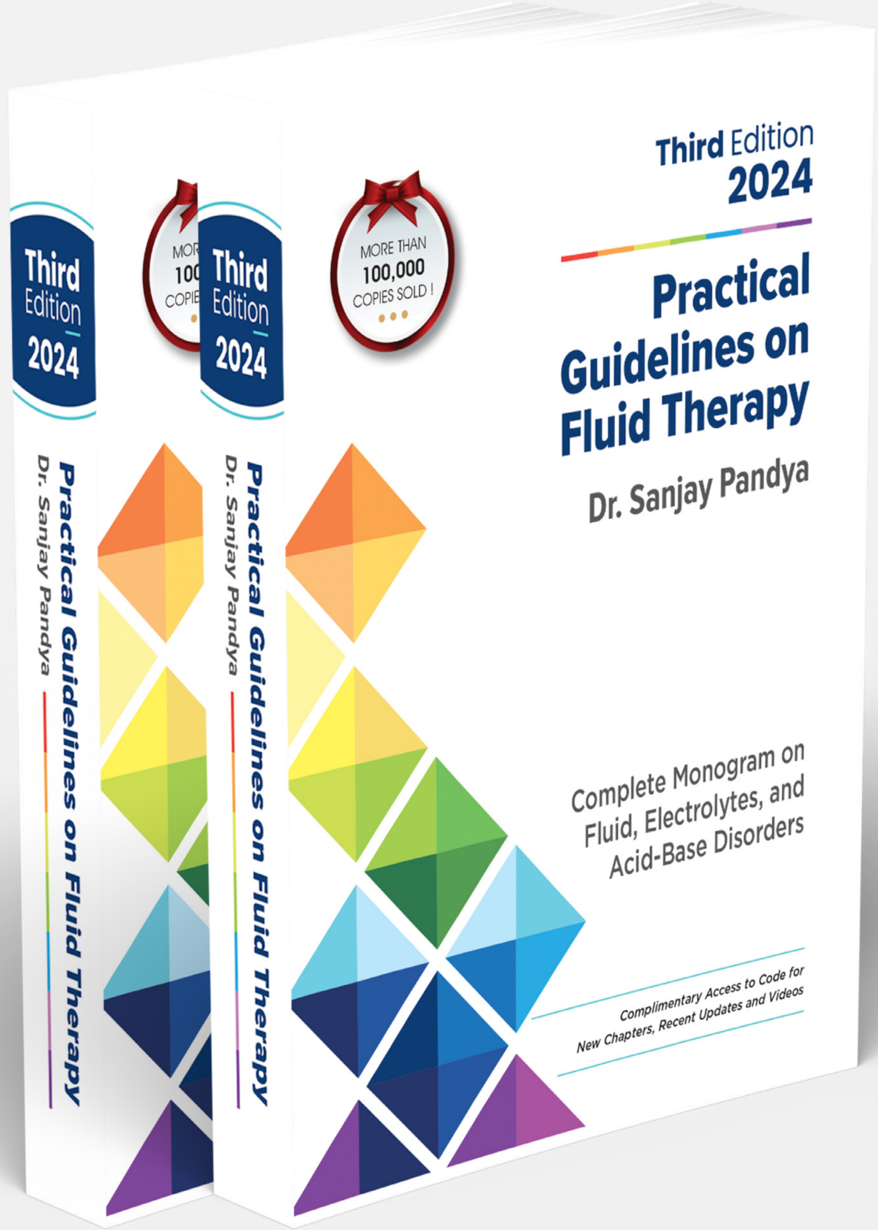
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 39:
Fluid Therapy in Bronchial Asthma, ARDS, and in Mechanical Ventilation


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

39

Fluid Therapy in Bronchial Asthma, ARDS, and in Mechanical Ventilation

Fluid therapy in Bronchial Asthma.. 463
- Fluid therapy................................ 463
- Electrolyte abnormalities 464
- Acid-base disorders...................... 464
  - Hypoxemia 465
  - Respiratory alkalosis 465
  - Respiratory acidosis................ 465
  - Metabolic acidosis................... 465

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome 466
- Fluid therapy................................ 466
  - Avoid fluid overload 467
  - Use conservative fluid management 467
  - Choose the right fluid regimen.. 467
  - Use diuretics............................ 467
  - Choice of IV fluids 468

Fluid Therapy in Mechanical Ventilation 468
- Hemodynamic effect of mechanical ventilation 468
- Management 469
  - Administering the correct fluid volume 469
  - Use diuretics............................ 470
  - Look for electrolyte disturbances............................ 470
  - Look for acid-base disturbances............................ 471

Fluid therapy in common respiratory disorders such as acute respiratory distress syndrome, bronchial asthma, and patients receiving mechanical ventilation is discussed.

BRONCHIAL ASTHMA

In patients with bronchial asthma, important aspects of fluid therapy, electrolyte disorders, and acid-base disorders are discussed.

A. Fluid therapy

Adequate hydration protects the lung epithelium and helps in promoting effective mucociliary clearance [1, 2]. In dehydration, cough is significantly more prevalent, even in healthy individuals [3]. Poor oral intake during illness, increased work of breathing due to airway obstruction, increased insensible fluid losses due to hyperventilation, cold sweat during an asthma attack, and fluid loss due to associated fever all contribute to the loss of body water and sodium chloride during an asthma attack [4].

Proper hydration is essential because dehydration worsens respiratory symptoms and lung function in patients with bronchial asthma [5].

Dehydration carries problems such as:

1. Thickened secretions, which can lead to mucus plugging and airway obstruction.
2. Stimulates the production of inflammatory markers like histamine that leads to airway obstruction via smooth muscle contraction, bronchial secretion, and airway mucosal edema [6, 7].

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Kalhoff H. Mild dehydration: a risk factor of broncho-pulmonary disorders? Eur J Clin Nutr. 2003;57(2):S81–7.
2. Åstrand AB, Hemmerling M, Root J, et al. Linking increased airway hydration, ciliary beating, and mucociliary clearance through ENaC inhibition. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol. 2015;308(1):L22–32.
3. Zanasi A, Mazzolini M, Fontana GA, et al. Alterations in the Hydration Status Affect Coughing in Otherwise Normal School Children. World Wide J. Multidiscip. Res. Dev. 2021;7(3):78–82.
4. Nievas IF, Anand KJ. Severe acute asthma exacerbation in children: a stepwise approach for escalating therapy in a pediatric intensive care unit. J Pediatr Pharmacol Ther. 2013;18(2):88–104.
5. Stookey JD, Brass B, Holliday A, et al. What is the cell hydration status of healthy children in the USA? Preliminary data on urine osmolality and water intake. Public Health Nutr. 2012;15(11):2148–56.
6. Moloney ED, Griffin S, Burke CM, et al. Release of inflammatory mediators from eosinophils following a hyperosmolar stimulus. Respir Med. 2003;97(8):928–32.
7. Yamauchi K, Ogasawara M. The Role of Histamine in the Pathophysiology of Asthma and the Clinical Efficacy of Antihistamines in Asthma Therapy. Int J Mol Sci. 2019;20(7):1733.
8. Sheldon JM. Intravenous use of fluids in bronchial asthma. JAMA. 1949;139(8):506–507
9. Kantor DB, Hirshberg EL, McDonald MC, et al. Fluid Balance Is Associated with Clinical Outcomes and Extravascular Lung Water in Children with Acute Asthma Exacerbation. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2018;197(9):1128–1135.
10. Alamoudi OS. Electrolyte disturbances in patients with chronic, stable asthma: effect of therapy. Chest. 2001;120(2):431–6.
11. Mohammad HA, Abdulfttah MT, Abdulazez AO, et al. A study of electrolyte disturbances in patients with chronic stable asthma and with asthma attacks. Egypt J Chest Dis Tuberc. 2014;63:529–34.
12. Das A, Patil S, Nair G, et al. Electrolyte disturbances in patients with acute exacerbation of bronchial asthma. JMSCR. 2018;6(9):315–319.
13. Hung CH, Chu DM, Wang CL, et al. Hypokalemia and salbutamol therapy in asthma. Pediatr Pulmonol. 1999;27(1):27–31.
14. Tsai WS, Wu CP, Hsu YJ, et al. Life-threatening hypokalemia in an asthmatic patient treated with high-dose hydrocortisone. Am J Med Sci. 2004;327(3):152–5.
15. Jain N, Kumari K, Roy S, et al. Hypocalcaemia-induced acute exacerbation of bronchial asthma: An unusual cause of a common disorder. Indian J Anaesth. 2020;64(9):820–821.
16. Kumari A, Nangrani K, Dolkar T, et al. Hypocalcemia Induced Bronchospasm. Cureus. 2022;14(6):e26339.
17. Kılıc H, Kanbay A, Karalezlı A, et al. The Relationship between Hypomagnesemia and Pulmonary Function Tests in Patients with Chronic Asthma. Med Princ Pract. 2018;27(2):139–144.
18. Vittal BG, Rudresha BM, Aliya N, et al. A study of serum electrolyte levels during nebulised salbutamol therapy. J. Clin. Diagn. Res. 2010;4(6):3460–3464

19. Kew KM, Kirtchuk L, Michell CI. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating adults with acute asthma in the emergency department. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2014;28(5):CD010909.
20. Griffiths B, Kew KM, Normansell R. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating children with acute asthma in the emergency department. Paediatr Respir Rev. 2016;20:45–47.
21. Su Z, Li R, Gai Z. Intravenous and nebulized magnesium sulfate for treating acute asthma in children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PediatrEmerg Care. 2018;34(6):390–395.
22. Vasileiadis I, Alevrakis E, Ampelioti S, et al. Acid-Base Disturbances in Patients with Asthma: A Literature Review and Comments on Their Pathophysiology. J Clin Med. 2019;8(4):563.
23. Dias E, Shetty VP. A Study on Initial Arterial Blood Gas in Acute Asthmatic Children in Karnataka India. Acta Scientific Paediatrics 2023;6(1):14–16.
24. McFadden ER Jr. Acute severe asthma. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2003;168(7):740–59
25. McFadden ER, Lyons HA. Arterial blood gas tension in asthma. NEJM 1968;278(19):1027–1032.
26. Bagrecha M, Yannawar A, Gaikwad N, et al. A Prospective Study of Arterial Blood Gases in Bronchial Asthma in a Tertiary Care Hospital. MSCR 2019;7(12):82–86.
27. Shigemura M, Homma T, Sznajder JI. Hypercapnia: An Aggravating Factor in Asthma. J Clin Med. 2020;9(10):3207.
28. Rashid AO, Azam HM, DeBari VA, et al. Non-anion gap acidosis in asthma: clinical and laboratory features and outcomes for hospitalized patients. Ann Clin Lab Sci. 2008;38(3):228–34.
29. Mountain RD, Heffner JE, Brackett NC Jr, et al. Acid-base disturbances in acute asthma. Chest. 1990;98(3):651–5.
30. Liedtke AG, Lava SAG, Milani GP, et al. Selective ß2-adrenoceptor agonists and relevant hyperlactatemia: systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Med 2019;9(1):71.
31. Phoophiboon V, Singhagowinta P, Boonkaya S, et al. Salbutamol-induced lactic acidosis in status asthmaticus survivor. BMC Pulm Med. 2021;21(1):23.
32. Ruman-Colombier M, Rochat Guignard I, Di Paolo ER, et al. Prevalence and risk factors of lactic acidosis in children with acute moderate and severe asthma, a prospective observational study. Eur J Pediatr. 2021;180(4):1125–1131.
33. Kho SS, Nyanti LE, Muhammad NA, et al. The more you give, the worse it gets. Breathe 2021;17(3):210083
34. Bouachour G, Tirot P, Varache N, et al. Metabolic acidosis in severe acute asthma. Effect of alkaline therapy [French]. Rev Pneumol Clin. 1992;48(3):115–9.
35. Garber BG, Hébert PC, Yelle JD, et al. Adult respiratory distress syndrome: a systemic overview of incidence and risk factors. Crit Care Med. 1996;24(4):687–695.
36. Villar J, Blanco J, Kacmarek RM. Current incidence and outcome of the acute respiratory distress syndrome. Curr Opin Crit Care 2016;22(1):1–6.
37. Ma´ca J, Jor O, Holub M, et al. Past and present ARDS mortality rates: a systematic review. Respir Care 2017;62(1):113–22.
38. Wang Y, Zhang L, Xi X, et al. The Association Between Etiologies and Mortality in Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome: A Multicenter Observational Cohort Study. Front Med (Lausanne). 2021;8:739596.
39. Vignon P, Evrard B, Asfar P, et al. Fluid administration and monitoring in ARDS: which management? Intensive Care Med. 2020;46(12):2252–2264.
40. Silversides JA, Fitzgerald E, Manickavasagam US, et al. Deresuscitation of Patients With Iatrogenic Fluid Overload Is Associated With Reduced Mortality in Critical Illness. Crit Care Med 2018;46(10):1600–1607.
41. Van Mourik N, Metske HA, Hofstra JJ, et al. Cumulative fluid balance predicts mortality and increases time on mechanical ventilation in ARDS patients. An observational cohort study. PLoS ONE 2019;14(10):e0224563.
42. Ho KS, Kohli P, Herrera Y, et al. Go Easy with the Fluids? Increased Mortality in Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome with Hypervolemia. European Respiratory Journal 2020;56:3442.
43. Hu W, Zhang S, He Z, et al. Impact of Time-Varying Intensity of Mechanical Ventilation on 28-Day Mortality Depends on Fluid Balance in Patients With Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome: A Retrospective Cohort Study. Front Med (Lausanne). 2022;9:906903.
44. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS) Clinical Trials Network, Wiedemann HP, Wheeler AP, et al. Comparison of two fluid-management strategies in acute lung injury. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(24):2564–2575.
45. Grissom CK, Hirshberg EL, Dickerson JB, et al. Fluid management with a simplified conservative protocol for the acute respiratory distress syndrome*. Crit Care Med. 2015;43(2):288–95.
46. Silversides JA, Major E, Ferguson AJ, et al. Conservative fluid management or deresuscitation for patients with sepsis or acute respiratory distress syndrome following the resuscitation phase of critical illness: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43(2):155–70.
47. Griffiths MJD, McAuley DF, Perkins GD, et al. Guidelines on the management of acute respiratory distress syndrome. BMJ Open Respir Res. 2019;6(1):e000420.
48. Murphy CV, Schramm GE, Doherty JA, et al. The importance of fluid management in acute lung injury secondary to septic shock. Chest 2009;136(1):102–109.
49. Shi R, Hamzaoui O, De Vita N, et al. Vasopressors in septic shock: which, when, and how much? Ann Transl Med. 2020;8(12):794.
50. Munshi L, Rubenfeld G, Wunsch H. Adjuvants to mechanical ventilation for acute respiratory distress syndrome. Intensive Care Med. 2016;42(5):775–8.

51. Casey JD, Semler MW, Rice TW. Fluid Management in Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;40(1):57–65.
52. Cinotti R, Lascarrou JB, Azais MA, et al. Diuretics decrease fluid balance in patients on invasive mechanical ventilation: the randomized-controlled single blind, IRIHS study. Crit Care. 2021;25(1):98.
53. Seitz KP, Caldwell ES, Hough CL. Fluid management in ARDS: an evaluation of current practice and the association between early diuretic use and hospital mortality. J Intensive Care. 2020;8:78.
54. Zhang R, Chen H, Gao Z, et al. The Effect of Loop Diuretics on 28-Day Mortality in Patients with Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome. Front. Med. 2021;8:740675.
55. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. SMART investigators and the Pragmatic Critical Care Research Group: Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. N Engl J Med 2018;378(9):829–839.
56. Brown RM, Wang L, Coston TD, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in sepsis. A secondary analysis of the SMART clinical trial. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;200(12):1487–1495.
57. Hammond NE, Zampieri FG, Di Tanna GL, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults — A Systematic Review with Meta-Analysis. NEJM Evid 2022;1(2).
58. Beran A, Altorok N, Srour O, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Normal Saline in Adults with Sepsis: A Comprehensive Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. J Clin Med. 2022;11(7):1971.
59. Keddissi JI, Youness HA, Jones KR, et al. Fluid management in Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome: A narrative review. Can J Respir Ther. 2019;55:1–8.
60. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl Starch or Saline for Fluid Resuscitation in Intensive Care. N Engl J Med 2012;367(20):1901–11.
61. Zarychanski R, Abou-Setta AM, Turgeon AF, et al. Association of hydroxyethyl starch administration with mortality and acute kidney injury in critically ill patients requiring volume resuscitation: A systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 2013;309(7):678–88.
62. Martin GS, Mangialardi RJ, Wheeler AP, et al. Albumin and furosemide therapy in hypoproteinemic patients with acute lung injury. Crit Care Med. 2002;30(10):2175–2182.
63. Martin GS, Moss M, Wheeler AP, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of furosemide with or without albumin in hypoproteinemic patients with acute lung injury. Crit Care Med. 2005;33(8):1681–1687.
64. Itagaki Y, Yoshida N, Banno M, et al. Efficacy of albumin with diuretics in mechanically ventilated patients with hypoalbuminemia: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2022;101(37):e30276.
65. Langer T, D'Oria V, Spolidoro GCI, et al. Fluid therapy in mechanically ventilated critically ill children: the sodium, chloride and water burden of fluid creep. BMC Pediatr. 2020;20(1):424.
66. Upadya A, Tilluckdharry L, Muralidharan V, et al.. Fluid balance and weaning outcomes. Intensive Care Med 2005;31(12):1643–7.
67. Flori HR, Church G, Liu KD, et al. Positive fluid balance is associated with higher mortality and prolonged mechanical ventilation in pediatric patients with acute lung injury. Crit Care Res Pract. 2011;2011:854142.
68. Ingelse SA, Wiegers HM, Calis JC, et al. Early Fluid Overload Prolongs Mechanical Ventilation in Children With Viral-Lower Respiratory Tract Disease. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2017;18(3):e106–e111.
69. Samaddar S, Sankar J, Kabra SK, et al. Association of Fluid Overload with Mortality in Critically-ill Mechanically Ventilated Children. Indian Pediatr. 2018;55(11):957–961.
70. Wang W, Zhu S, He Q, et al. Fluid Balance and Ventilator-Associated Events Among Patients Admitted to ICUs in China: A Nested Case-Control Study. Crit Care Med. 2022;50(2):307–316.
71. Arrahmani I, Ingelse SA, van Woensel JBM, et al. Current Practice of Fluid Maintenance and Replacement Therapy in Mechanically Ventilated Critically Ill Children: A European Survey. Front Pediatr. 2022;10:828637.
72. Wrzosek A, Drygalski T, Garlicki J, et al. The volume of infusion fluids correlates with treatment outcomes in critically ill trauma patients. Front. Med. 2023;9:1040098.
73. Wiedemann HP. A perspective on the fluids and catheters treatment trial (FACTT). Fluid restriction is superior in acute lung injury and ARDS. Cleve Clin J Med. 2008;75(1):42–8.
74. Klompas M. Ventilator-Associated Events: What They Are and What They Are Not. Respir Care. 2019;64(8):953–961.
75. Li T, Zhou D, Zhao D, et al. Association between fluid intake and extubation failure in intensive care unit patients with negative fluid balance: a retrospective observational study. BMC Anesthesiol. 2022;22(1):170.
76. Ogbu OC, Murphy DJ, Martin GS. How to avoid fluid overload. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2015;21(4):315–21.
77. Van Regenmortel N, Verbrugghe W, Roelant E, et al. Maintenance fluid therapy and fluid creep impose more significant fluid, sodium, and chloride burdens than resuscitation fluids in critically ill patients: a retrospective study in a tertiary mixed ICU population. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):409–17.
78. Bissell BD, Laine ME, Thompson et al. Impact of protocolized diuresis for de-resuscitation in the intensive care unit. Critical care. 2020;24(1):70.
79. Vora CS, Karnik ND, Gupta V, et al. Clinical Profile of Patients Requiring Prolonged Mechanical Ventilation and their Outcome in a Tertiary Care Medical ICU. J Assoc Physicians India. 2015;63(10):14–9.
80. Kamdar PK, Kakaiya RR. A study of electrolytes imbalance in mechanically ventilated Patients. International Journal of Scientific Research 2020;9(1):64–67.

81. Morganroth ML, Grum CM. Weaning from Mechanical Ventilator. J Intensive Care Med 1988;3:109–120.
82. Zhao Y, Li Z, Shi Y, et al. Effect of hypophosphatemia on the withdrawal of mechanical ventilation in patients with acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Biomed Rep. 2016;4(4):413–416.
83. Wang L, Xiao C, Chen L, et al. Impact of hypophosphatemia on outcome of patients in intensive care unit: a retrospective cohort study. BMC Anesthesiol. 2019;19(1):86.
84. Javdan Z, Talakoub R, Honarmand A, et al. The predicting ability of serum potassium to assess the duration of mechanical ventilation in critically ill patients. Adv Biomed Res. 2015;4:133.
85. Thongprayoon C, Cheungpasitporn W, Chewcharat A, et al. Serum ionised calcium and the risk of acute respiratory failure in hospitalised patients: a single-centre cohort study in the USA. BMJ Open. 2020;10(3):e034325.
86. Kumar S, Honmode A, Jain S, et al. Does magnesium matter in patients of Medical Intensive Care Unit: A study in rural Central India. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2015;19(7):379–83.
87. Bigatello LM, Patroniti N, Sangalli F. Permissive hypercapnia. Curr Opin Crit Care. 2001;7(1):34–40.
88. Morales-Quinteros L, Camprubí-Rimblas M, Bringué J, et al. The role of hypercapnia in acute respiratory failure. Intensive Care Med Exp. 2019;7(1):39.
89. Banga A, Khilnani GC. Post-hypercapnic alkalosis is associated with ventilator dependence and increased ICU stay. COPD. 2009;6(6):437–40.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

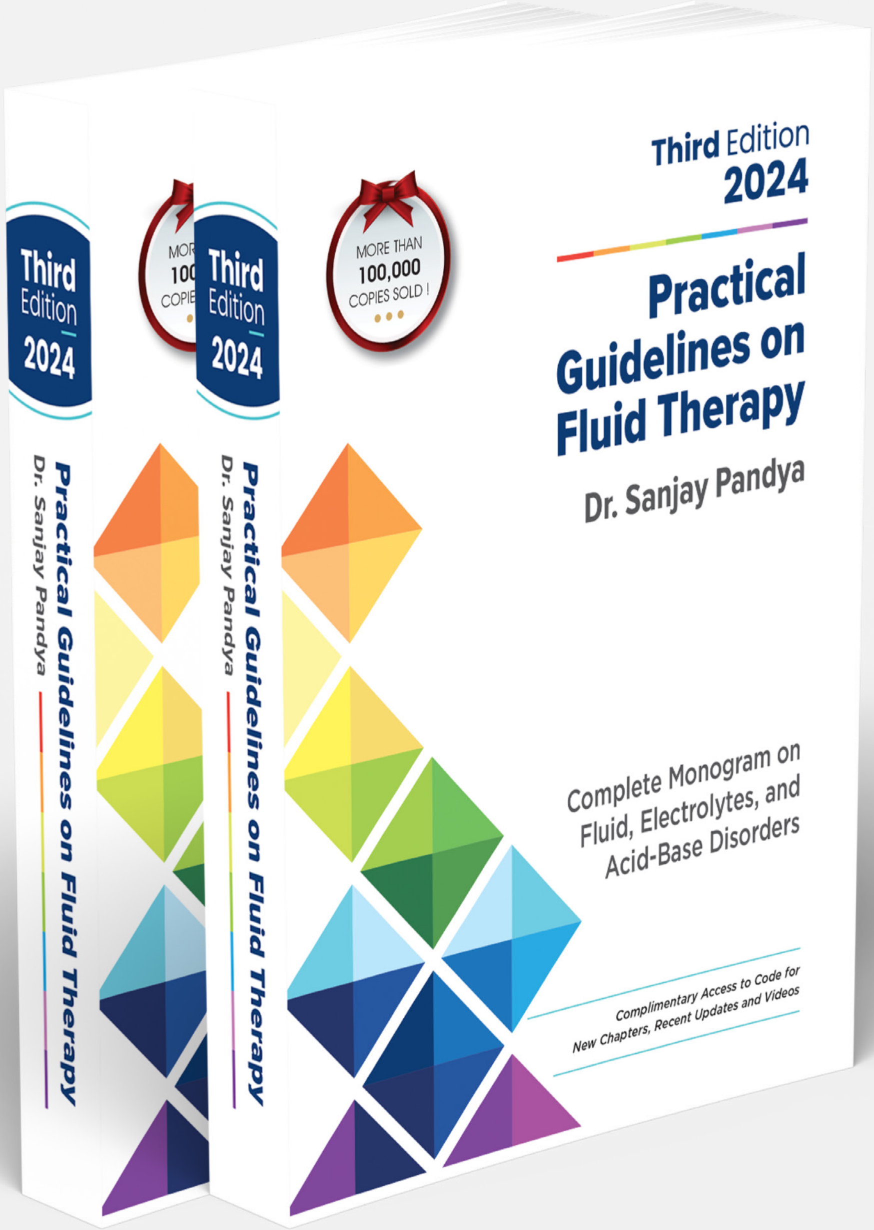
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 40:

Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

40

Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State

DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS

Definition **475**
Pathophysiology **476**
Treatment **479**
  Fluid replacement 479
    Basic principles 479
    Rate of fluid replacement 480
    Selecting right fluid for replacement 480
  Insulin therapy 482
  Potassium supplementation 482
  Treatment of metabolic acidosis ... 483
  Correction of hypophosphatemia .. 483
Identify and Treat Precipitating Factors **484**
Avoidance of Therapy Related Complications **484**
Monitoring of Treatment **484**

HYPEROSMOLAR HYPERGLYCEMIC STATE

Presentation **486**
Diagnosis **487**
Treatment **488**
  Fluid therapy 488
  Insulin treatment 488
  Electrolyte management 489
  Supportive treatment 489
Monitoring **489**

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS) are serious and potentially life-threatening metabolic complications of diabetes mellitus (DM). While DKA is a common hyperglycemic emergency with a low mortality rate, characterized by hyperglycemia and ketoacidosis, HHS, on the other hand, is less common, characterized by hyperglycemia and hyperosmolality without ketoacidosis, but has a high mortality rate.

DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS

Diabetic ketoacidosis is a medical emergency that can be life-threatening if not treated promptly. DKA is one of the common complications of type-I diabetes mellitus (IDDM) associated with significant fluid and electrolyte imbalance.

DEFINITION

Diabetic ketoacidosis is characterized by the triad of [1, 2]:

1. Hyperglycemia: Blood glucose concentration of >200 mg/dL or 11.0 mmol/L.
2. Metabolic acidosis: Venous pH <7.3 and serum bicarbonate <18 mmol/L [1] (or 15 mmol/L [2]).
3. Ketonemia or ketonuria: Capillary ketones >3 mmol/L or urine ketones ++ (“moderate or large”).

If a facility to measure blood beta-hydroxybutyrate (BOHB) concentration is available, it is a more precise and sensitive test to diagnose DKA [3].

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Glaser N, Fritsch M, Priyambada L, et al: ISPAD Clinical practice consensus guidelines 2022: diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. Pediatr Diabetes. 2022;23(7):835–56.
2. JBDS. JBDS-IP Joint British Diabetes Societies Inpatient Care Group. The Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis in Adults, March 2023 Update: JBDS Guidelines [Internet]. London: ABCD; 2023 Mar. Available from: https://abcd.care/sites/abcd.care/files/site_uploads/JBDS_Guidelines_Current/JBDS_02_DKA_Guideline_with_QR_code_March_2023.pdf.
3. Tremblay ES, Millington K, Monuteaux MC, et al. Plasma β-Hydroxybutyrate for the Diagnosis of Diabetic Ketoacidosis in the Emergency Department. Pediatr Emerg Care. 2021;37(12):e1345–e1350.
4. Dhatariya K. Blood Ketones: Measurement, Interpretation, Limitations, and Utility in the Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis. Rev Diabet Stud. 2016;13(4):217–225.
5. Rawla P, Vellipuram AR, Bandaru SS, et al. Euglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis: a diagnostic and therapeutic dilemma. Endocrinol Diabetes Metab Case Rep. 2017;2017:17–0081.
6. Nasa P, Chaudhary S, Shrivastava PK, et al. Euglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis: A missed diagnosis. World J Diabetes. 2021;12(5):514–523.
7. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(7):1335–1343.
8. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Murphy MB, et al. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes: a consensus statement from the American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Care. 2006;29(12):2739–48.
9. English P, Williams G. Hyperglycaemic crises and lactic acidosis in diabetes mellitus. Postgrad Med J. 2004;80(943):253–261.
10. DeFronzo RA, Hompesch M, Kasichayanula SK, et al. Characterization of renal glucose reabsorption in response to dapagliflozin in healthy subjects and subjects with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care 2013;36(10):3169–3176.
11. Arora S, Cheng D, Wyler B, et al. Prevalence of hypokalemia in ED patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. Am J Emerg Med 2012;30(3):481–4.
12. Adrogué HJ, Lederer ED, Suki WN, et al. Determinants of plasma potassium levels in diabetic ketoacidosis. Medicine (Baltimore) 1986;65(3):163–172.
13. Conte G, Dal Canton A, Imperatore P, et al. Acute increase in plasma osmolality as a cause of hyperkalemia in patients with renal failure. Kidney Int. 1990;38(2):301–7.
14. Umpierrez GE, Murphy MB, Kitabchi AE. Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar Syndrome. Diabetes Spectrum 2002;15(1):28–36.
15. Dhatariya KK, Nunney I, Higgins K, et al. A national survey of the management of diabetic ketoacidosis in the UK in 2014. Diabet Med. 2016;33(2):252–260.
16. Pasquel FJ, Lansang MC, Dhatariya K, et al. Management of diabetes and hyperglycaemia in the hospital. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2021;9(3):174–188.
17. Mein SA, Schwartzstein RM, Richards JB. Sugar, Sodium, and Water: A Recipe for Disaster. Ann Am Thorac Soc. 2020;17(8):1016–1020.
18. van der Vaart A, Waanders F, van Beek AP, et al. Incidence and determinants of hypophosphatemia in diabetic ketoacidosis: an observational study. BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care. 2021;9(1):e002018.
19. Choi HS, Kwon A, Chae HW, et al. Respiratory failure in a diabetic ketoacidosis patient with severe hypophosphatemia. Ann Pediatr Endocrinol Metab. 2018;23(2):103–106.
20. Kuppermann N, Ghetti S, Schunk JE, et al. Clinical trial of fluid infusion rates for pediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. New England Journal of Medicine 2018;378(24):2275–2287.

21. University Hospitals of Leicester. Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis (DKA) in Adults Guideline (V4 approved by Policy and Guideline Committee on 27 February 2023 Trust ref: B66/2011) [Guidelines]. NHS; 2023. Available from: https://secure.library.leicestershospitals.nhs.uk/PAGL/Shared%20Documents/Diabetic%20Ketoacidosis%20(DKA)%20in%20Adults%20UHL%20Guideline.pdf.
22. Fluid and insulin therapy in children and young people with diabetic ketoacidosis: An update to the NICE NG18 guideline. Journal of Diabetes Nursing 2021;25:JDN171. Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng18/chapter/Recommendations#fluid-and-insulin-therapy.
23. Diabetes (type 1 and type 2) in children and young people: diagnosis and management. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE); 2022 Jun 29. (NICE Guideline, No. 18.) Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK555102/.
24. South Australia (SA) Health. Clinical practice guideline on diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) in children. Adelaide: SA Health; 2019. Available from: https://www.sahealth.sa.gov.au/wps/wcm/connect/04ac0b8040d0430e975ebf40b897efc8/Diabetic+Ketoacidosis+%28DKA%29+in+Children+and+Adolescents_Paed_v2_1.pdf?MOD=AJPERES&amp;CACHEID=ROOTWORKSPACE-04ac0b8040d0430e975ebf40b897efc8-obYYWor.
25. Diabetes Canada Clinical Practice Guidelines Expert Committee; Goguen J, Gilbert J. Hyperglycemic Emergencies in Adults. Can J Diabetes. 2018;42(1):S109–S114.
26. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation fluids. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(13):1243–51.
27. Oliver WD, Willis GC, Hines MC, et al. Comparison of PlasmaLyte A and sodium chloride 0.9% for fluid resuscitation of patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. Hosp Pharm 2018;53(5):326–330.
28. Yung M, Letton G, Keeley S. Controlled trial of Hartmann's solution versus 0.9% saline for diabetic ketoacidosis. J Paediatr Child Health. 2017;53(1):12–17.
29. Mahler S, Conrad S, Wang H, et al. Resuscitation with balanced electrolyte solution prevents hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis in patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. Am J Emerg Med. 2011;29(6):670–674.
30. Ramanan M, Attokaran A, Murray L. SCOPE-DKA Collaborators and Queensland Critical Care Research Network (QCCRN). Sodium chloride or PlasmaLyte-148 evaluation in severe diabetic ketoacidosis (SCOPE-DKA): a cluster, crossover, randomized, controlled trial. Intensive Care Med. 2021;47(11):1248–1257.
31. Self W, Evans C, Jenkins C, et al. Clinical Effects of Balanced Crystalloids vs Saline in Adults With Diabetic Ketoacidosis. JAMA Netw Open. 2020;3:(11):e2024596.
32. Van Zyl D, Rheeder P, Delport E. Fluid management in diabetic-acidosis Ringer's lactate versus normal saline: a randomized controlled trial. QJM. 2012;105(4):337–343.
33. Chua HR, Schneider A, Bellomo R. Bicarbonate in diabetic ketoacidosis – a systematic review. Ann Intensive Care 2011;1(1):23.
34. Bergmann KR, Abuzzahab MJ, Nowak J, et al. Resuscitation with Ringer's lactate compared with normal saline for pediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Pediatr Emerg Care 2021;37(5):e236–e242.
35. Jahangir A, Jahangir A, Siddiqui FS, et al. Normal Saline Versus Low Chloride Solutions in Treatment of Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review of Clinical Trials. Cureus. 2022;14(1):e21324.
36. Catahay JA, Polintan ET, Casimiro M, et al. Balanced electrolyte solutions versus isotonic saline in adult patients with diabetic ketoacidosis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Heart Lung. 2022;54:74–79.
37. Alghamdi NA, Major P, Chaudhuri D, et al. Saline Compared to Balanced Crystalloid in Patients With Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Crit Care Explor. 2022;4(1):e0613.
38. Zardoost P, Khan Z, Wehrum HL, et al. Hypernatremia in Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Rare Metabolic Derangement Requiring a Cautionary Approach in Fluid Resuscitation. Cureus 2023;15(3):e36689.
39. Dressler DD. Normal Saline vs. Balanced Crystalloid for Diabetic Ketoacidosis. NEJM JOURNAL Watch. 2022 Jul 26. Visit: https://www.jwatch.org/na55108/2022/07/26/normal-saline-vs-balanced-crystalloid-diabetic.
40. Aldhaeefi M, Aldardeer NF, Alkhani N, et al. Updates in the Management of Hyperglycemic Crisis. Front Clin Diabetes Healthc. 2022;2:820728.
41. Effects of Balanced Crystalloids vs. Saline in Adults with Diabetic Ketoacidosis [Internet]. Anaesthesia News. 2021. Available from: https://anaesthesianews.wordpress.com/2021/12/12/effects-of-balanced-crystalloids-vs-saline-in-adults-with-diabetic-ketoacidosis/.
42. Farkas J. Diabetic Ketoacidosis (DKA). emcrit.org. 2021. Available from: https://emcrit.org/ibcc/dka/.
43. Gripp K, Trottier ED, Thakore S, et al. Current recommendations for management of paediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Canadian Paediatric Society 2022.
44. BSPED Guideline for the Management of Children and Young People under the age of 18 years with Diabetic Ketoacidosis - 2021 [Internet]. British Society for Paediatric Endocrinology and Diabetes; 2021. Available from: https://www.bsped.org.uk/clinical-resources/bsped-dka-guidelines/.
45. Forestell B, Battaglia F, Sharif S, et al. Insulin Infusion Dosing in Pediatric Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Crit Care Explor. 2023;5(2):e0857.
46. Kilpatrick ES, Butler AE, Ostlundh L, et al. Controversies Around the Measurement of Blood Ketones to Diagnose and Manage Diabetic Ketoacidosis. Diabetes Care. 2022;45(2):267–272.

47. Ma OJ, Rush MD, Godfrey MM, et al. Arterial blood gas results rarely influence emergency physician management of patients with suspected diabetic ketoacidosis. Acad Emerg Med. 2003;10(8):836–41.
48. Menchine M, Probst MA, Agy C, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of venous blood gas electrolytes for identifying diabetic ketoacidosis in the emergency department. Acad Emerg Med. 2011;18(10):1105–1108.
49. Byrne AL, Bennett M, Chatterji R, et al. Peripheral venous and arterial blood gas analysis in adults: are they comparable? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Respirology. 2014;19(2):168–175.
50. Prasad H, Vempalli N, Agrawal N, et al. Correlation and agreement between arterial and venous blood gas analysis in patients with hypotension-an emergency department-based cross-sectional study. Int J Emerg Med. 2023;16(1):18.
51. Milanesi A, Weinreb JE. Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar State. [Updated 2018 Aug 1]. In: Feingold KR, Anawalt B, Blackman MR, et al, editors. Endotext [Internet]. South Dartmouth (MA): MDText.com, Inc.; 2000. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK278976/.
52. Mustafa OG, Haq M, Dashora U, et al. Management of Hyperosmolar Hyperglycaemic State (HHS) in Adults: An updated guideline from the Joint British Diabetes Societies (JBDS) for Inpatient Care Group. Diabet Med. 2023;40(3):e15005.
53. Zeitler P, Haqq A, Rosenbloom A, et al. Hyperglycemic hyperosmolar syndrome in children: pathophysiological considerations and suggested guidelines for treatment. Rev J Pediatr. 2011;158(1):9–14.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

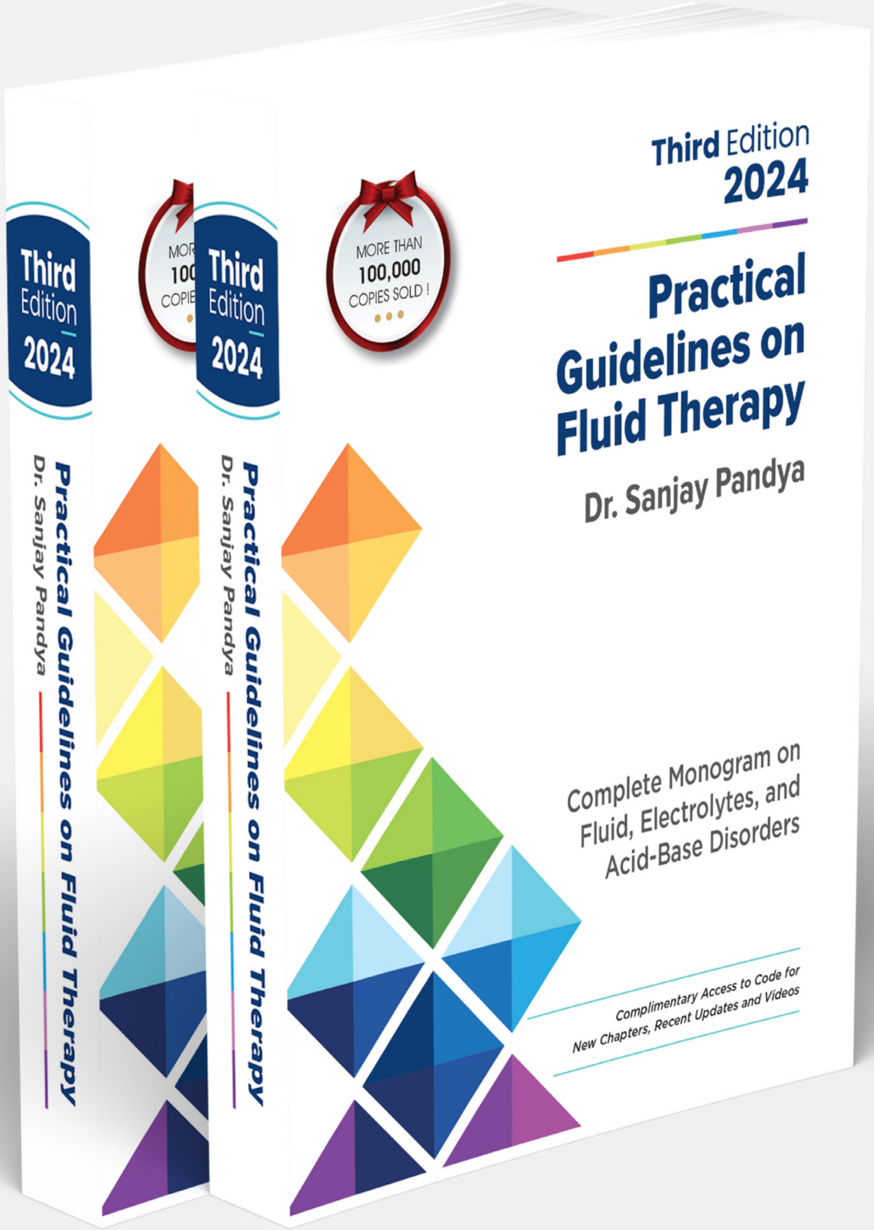
www.KidneyEducation.com

- » Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- » This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- » It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 41:

Neurological Disorders


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

41 Neurological Disorders

Importance of Fluid Replacement.. 492
Selection of Fluids.......................... 492
- Normal saline 492
- Balanced crystalloid solutions 493
  - Ringer's lactate 493
  - PlasmaLyte............................. 493
- Hypotonic fluid............................ 493
- Albumin 494
- Hydroxyethyl starch...................... 494

Maintain Euvolemia........................ 494
Avoid Hyperglycemia...................... 494
Osmotherapy 495
- Mannitol...................................... 495
- Hypertonic saline.......................... 496
- Comparison of mannitol vs. hypertonic saline 497

IMPORTANCE OF FLUID REPLACEMENT

Fluid replacement is of utmost importance in patients with traumatic brain injury (TBI) or those undergoing neurosurgery. These patients require the administration of intravenous solutions to achieve three important goals: (1) Achieve hemodynamic stability, (2) Improve cerebral perfusion and ensure adequate cerebral oxygenation to prevent brain damage, and (3) Prevent cerebral edema [1–3].

Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage (aSAH) patients are prone to volume contraction due to cerebral salt wasting, resulting in increased urine output. Therefore, they require fluid replacement. Furthermore, the combined effect of volume depletion and cerebral vasospasm resulting from aSAH increases the risk of cerebral ischemia and life-threatening ischemic strokes, leading to significant morbidity and mortality [4].

So, patients with aSAH require large volumes of sodium-rich IV fluids to correct hypovolemia, maintain euvolemia and normonatremia [5], and prevent the associated poor outcomes [6, 7].

SELECTION OF FLUIDS

To choose the ideal intravenous solution for neurological disorders, it is essential to understand the benefits and harmful effects associated with the solution's composition, tonicity, and type of buffer [3]. The 2018 ESICM consensus and clinical practice recommendations suggest using crystalloids as first-line resuscitation and preferred maintenance fluids and advise against using colloids in neurointensive care patients [8].

A. Normal saline: Preferred fluid

Isotonic solution normal saline (0.9% sodium chloride) is the most commonly used and preferred crystalloid for neurological patients [9, 10].

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Tommasino C, Picozzi V. Volume and electrolyte management. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol. 2007;21(4):497–516.
2. Ryu T. Fluid management in patients undergoing neurosurgery. Anesth Pain Med (Seoul). 2021;16(3):215–224.
3. Dąbrowski W, Woodcock T, Rzecki Z, et al. The use of crystalloids in traumatic brain injury. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther 2018;50(2):150-159.
4. Mistry AM, Mistry EA, Ganesh Kumar N, et al. Corticosteroids in the management of hyponatremia, hypovolemia, and vasospasm in subarachnoid hemorrhage: a meta-analysis. Cerebrovasc Dis. 2016;42(3–4):263–271.
5. Connolly ES Jr, Rabinstein AA, Carhuapoma JR, et al. Guidelines for the management of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the american heart association/american stroke association. Stroke. 2012;43(6):1711–1737.
6. Mapa B, Taylor BE, Appelboom G, et al. Impact of hyponatremia on morbidity, mortality, and complications after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a systematic review. World Neurosurg. 2016;85:305–314.
7. Zheng B, Qiu Y, Jin H, et al. A predictive value of hyponatremia for poor outcome and cerebral infarction in highgrade aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage patients. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2011;82(2):213–217.
8. Oddo M, Poole D, Helbok R, et al. Fluid therapy in neurointensive care patients: ESICM consensus and clinical practice recommendations. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):449–463.
9. Wijdicks EF, Sheth KN, Carter BS, et al. Recommendations for the management of cerebral and cerebellar infarction with swelling: a statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke. 2014;45(4):1222–1238.
10. Jauch EC, Saver JL, Adams HP Jr, et al. Guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke. 2013;44(3):870–947.
11. Sen A, Keener CM, Sileanu FE, et al. Chloride content of fluids used for large-volume resuscitation is associated with reduced survival. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(2):e146–e153.
12. Shaw AD, Bagshaw SM, Goldstein SL, et al. Major complications, mortality, and resource utilization after open abdominal surgery: 0.9% saline compared to plasma-lyte. Ann Surg. 2012;255(5):821–829.
13. Zhou F, Peng ZY, Bishop JV, et al. Effects of fluid resuscitation with 0.9% saline versus a balanced electrolyte solution on acute kidney injury in a rat model of sepsis. Crit Care Med. 2014;42(4):e270–e278.
14. Huang L, Zhou X, Yu H. Balanced crystalloids vs 0.9% saline for adult patients undergoing non-renal surgery: A meta-analysis. Int J Surg 2018;51:1–9.
15. Neyra JA, Canepa-Escaro F, Li X, et al. Association of hyperchloremia with hospital mortality in critically ill septic patients. Crit Care Med 2015;43(9):1938–44.
16. Barlow B, Bastin T, Shadler A, et al. Association of chloride-rich fluids and medication diluents on the incidence of hyperchloremia and clinical consequences in aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. J Neurocrit Care 2022;15(2):113–121.
17. Rossaint R, Afshari A, Bouillon B, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma: sixth edition. Crit Care. 2023;27(1):80.
18. Rowell SE, Fair KA, Barbosa RR, et al. The impact of pre-hospital administration of lactated Ringer's solution versus normal saline in patients with traumatic brain injury. J Neurotrauma. 2016;33(11):1054–9.

19. Weinberg L, Collins N, Van Mourik K, et al. Plasma-Lyte 148: A clinical review. World J Crit Care Med 2016;5(4):235–250.
20. Curran JD, Major P, Tang K, et al. Comparison of Balanced Crystalloid Solutions: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Crit Care Explor. 2021;3(5):e0398.
21. Shaw AD, Schermer CR, Lobo DN, et al. Impact of intravenous fluid composition on outcomes in patients with systemic inflammatory response syndrome. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):334.
22. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(9):829–839.
23. Beran A, Altorok N, Srour O, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Normal Saline in Adults with Sepsis: A Comprehensive Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. J Clin Med. 2022;11(7):1971.
24. Hammond NE, Zampieri FG, Di Tanna GL, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults — A Systematic Review with Meta-Analysis. NEJM Evid 2022;1(2).
25. Prabhakar A, Bhargava V. Balanced Salt Solutions: Are We Crystal Clear or Still Murky? ASN Kidney News 2022;14(12):25–26.
26. Mistry AM, Magarik JA, Feldman MJ, et al. Saline versus Balanced Crystalloids for Adults with Aneurysmal Subarachnoid Hemorrhage: A Subgroup Analysis of the SMART Trial. Stroke Vasc Interv Neurol. 2022;2(4):e000128.
27. Zampieri FG, Damiani LP, Biondi RS, et al. Effects of balanced solution on short-term outcomes in traumatic brain injury patients: a secondary analysis of the BaSICS randomized trial. Rev Bras Ter Intensiva. 2022;34(4):410–417.
28. Dong WH, Yan WQ, Song X, et al. Fluid resuscitation with balanced crystalloids versus normal saline in critically ill patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med. 2022;30(1):28.
29. Martin RH, Yeatts SD, Hill MD, et al. ALIAS (albumin in acute ischemic stroke) trials: analysis of the combined data from parts 1 and 2. Stroke. 2016;47(9):2355–9.
30. SAFE Study Investigators, Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group, Australian Red Cross Blood Service, et al. Saline or albumin for fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury. N Engl J Med 2007;357(9):874–884.
31. Ma HK, Bebawy JF. Albumin Use in Brain-injured and Neurosurgical Patients: Concepts, Indications, and Controversies. J Neurosurg Anesthesiol. 2021;33(4):293–299.
32. Wiedermann CJ. Use of Hyperoncotic Human Albumin Solution in Severe Traumatic Brain Injury Revisited—A Narrative Review and Meta-Analysis. Journal of Clinical Medicine. 2022;11(9):2662.
33. Wiegers EJA, Lingsma HF, Huijben JA, et al. Fluid balance and outcome in critically ill patients with traumatic brain injury (CENTER-TBI and OzENTER-TBI): a prospective, multicentre, comparative effectiveness study. Lancet Neurol. 2021;20(8):627–638.
34. Kochanek PM, Jha RM. Fluid therapy after brain injury: the pendulum swings again. Lancet Neurol. 2021;20(8):587–589.
35. Rauch S, Marzolo M, Cappello TD, et al. Severe traumatic brain injury and hypotension is a frequent and lethal combination in multiple trauma patients in mountain areas - an analysis of the prospective international Alpine Trauma Registry. Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med. 2021;29(1):61.
36. Rowat A, Graham C, Dennis M. Dehydration in hospital-admitted stroke patients: detection, frequency, and association. Stroke. 2012;43(3):857–9.
37. Lehmann F, Schenk LM, Bernstock JD, et al. Admission Dehydration Status Portends Adverse Short-Term Mortality in Patients with Spontaneous Intracerebral Hemorrhage. J Clin Med. 2021;10(24):5939.
38. Carney N, Totten AM, O'Reilly C, et al. Guidelines for the Management of Severe Traumatic Brain Injury, Fourth Edition. Neurosurgery. 2017;80(1):6–15.
39. Anadani M, Nelson A, Bruno A. Hyperglycemia Management. Practical Neurology. Cover Focus | January 2022. Available from: https://practicalneurology.com/articles/2022-jan/hyperglycemia-management. Accessed April 25, 2023.
40. Rostami E. Glucose and the injured brain-monitored in the neurointensive care unit. Front Neurol. 2014;5:91.
41. Peng TJ, Andersen LW, Saindon BZ, et al. The administration of dextrose during in-hospital cardiac arrest is associated with increased mortality and neurologic morbidity. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):160.
42. Zhang J, Yang Y, Sun H, et al. Hemorrhagic transformation after cerebral infarction: current concepts and challenges. Ann Transl Med. 2014;2(8):81.
43. Spronk E, Sykes G, Falcione S, et al. Hemorrhagic Transformation in Ischemic Stroke and the Role of Inflammation. Front Neurol. 2021;12:661955.
44. Powers WJ, Rabinstein AA, Ackerson T, et al. Guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke: 2019 update to the 2018 guidelines for the early management of acute ischemic stroke: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke. 2019;50(12):e344–e418.
45. Hermanides J, Plummer MP, Finnis M, et al. Glycaemic control targets after traumatic brain injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care 2018;22(1):11.
46. Fuentes B, Ntaios G, Putaala J, et al. European Stroke Organisation (ESO) guidelines on glycaemia management in acute stroke. Eur Stroke J. 2018;3(1):5–21.
47. Johnston KC, Bruno A, Pauls Q, et al. Intensive vs Standard Treatment of Hyperglycemia and Functional Outcome in Patients With Acute Ischemic Stroke:

The SHINE Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA. 2019;322(4):326–335.

48. Cook AM, Morgan Jones G, Hawryluk GWJ, et al. Guidelines for the Acute Treatment of Cerebral Edema in Neurocritical Care Patients. Neurocrit Care. 2020;32(3):647–666.
49. Picetti E, Catena F, Abu-Zidan F, et al. Early management of isolated severe traumatic brain injury patients in a hospital without neurosurgical capabilities: a consensus and clinical recommendations of the World Society of Emergency Surgery (WSES). World J Emerg Surg. 2023;18(1):5.
50. Tenny S, Patel R, Thorell W. Mannitol. [Updated 2022 Nov 14]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2023 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470392/.
51. Shah S, Kimberly WT. Today's Approach to Treating Brain Swelling in the Neuro Intensive Care Unit. Semin Neurol, 2016;36(6):502–507.
52. Lin SY, Tang SC, Tsai LK, et al. Incidence and Risk Factors for Acute Kidney Injury Following Mannitol Infusion in Patients With Acute Stroke: A Retrospective Cohort Study. Medicine (Baltimore). 2015;94(47):e2032.
53. Skrifvars MB, Bailey M, Moore E, et al. A post hoc analysis of osmotherapy use in the erythropoietin in traumatic brain injury study-associations with acute kidney injury and mortality. Crit Care Med. 2021;49(4):e394–403.
54. García-Morales EJ, Cariappa R, Parvin CA, et al. Osmole gap in neurologic-neurosurgical intensive care unit: Its normal value, calculation, and relationship with mannitol serum concentrations. Crit Care Med. 2004;32(4):986–91.
55. Human T, Tesoro E, Peacock S. Pharmacotherapy Pearls for Emergency Neurological Life Support. Neurocrit Care 2019.
56. Reina-Rivero R, Gaitán-Herrera G, García-García AE, et al. Osmotherapy in patients with severe brain trauma: which agents should we take into account? Romanian Neurosurgery 2022;36(1):92–97.
57. Susanto M, Riantri I. Optimal Dose and Concentration of Hypertonic Saline in Traumatic Brain Injury: A Systematic Review. Medeni Med J. 2022;37(2):203–211.
58. Mekonnen M, Ong V, Florence TJ, et al. Hypertonic Saline Treatment in Traumatic Brain Injury: A Systematic Review. World Neurosurg. 2022;162:98–110.
59. Roquilly A, Moyer JD, Huet O, et al. Effect of Continuous Infusion of Hypertonic Saline vs Standard Care on 6-Month Neurological Outcomes in Patients With Traumatic Brain Injury: The COBI Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA. 2021;325(20):2056–2066.
60. Wahdan AS, Al-Madawi AA, El-Shafey KA, et al. Comparison of intermittent versus continuous infusion of 3% hypertonic saline on intracranial pressure in traumatic brain injury using ultrasound assessment of optic nerve sheath. Egyptian Journal of Anaesthesia 2022;38(1):291–299.
61. Lazaridis C, Neyens R, Bodle J, et al. High-Osmolarity Saline in Neurocritical Care: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Crit Care Med. 2013;41(8):1353–61.
62. Rossong H, Hasen M, Ahmed B, et al. Hypertonic Saline for Moderate Traumatic Brain Injury: A Scoping Review of Impact on Neurological Deterioration. Neurotrauma Rep. 2020;1(1):253–260.
63. Kerwin AJ, Schinco MA, Tepas JJ 3rd, et al. The use of 23.4% hypertonic saline for the management of elevated intracranial pressure in patients with severe traumatic brain injury: a pilot study. J Trauma. 2009;67(2):277–82.
64. Kamel H, Navi BB, Nakagawa K, et al. Hypertonic saline versus mannitol for the treatment of elevated intracranial pressure: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(3):554–559.
65. Cheng F, Xu M, Liu H, et al. A retrospective study of intracranial pressure in head-injured patients undergoing decompressive craniectomy: a comparison of hypertonic saline and mannitol. Front Neurol. 2018;9:631.
66. Han C, Yang F, Guo S, et al. Hypertonic Saline Compared to Mannitol for the Management of Elevated Intracranial Pressure in Traumatic Brain Injury: A Meta-Analysis. Front Surg. 2022;8:765784.
67. Burgess S, Abu-Laban RB, Slavik RS, et al. A systematic review of randomized controlled trials comparing hypertonic sodium solutions and mannitol for traumatic brain injury: implications for emergency department management. Ann Pharmacother 2016;50(4):291–300.
68. Hawryluk GWJ, Aguilera S, Buki A, et al. A management algorithm for patients with intracranial pressure monitoring: the Seattle International Severe Traumatic Brain Injury Consensus Conference (SIBICC). Intensive Care Med. 2019;45(12):1783–94.
69. Singla A, Mathew PJ, Jangra K, et al. A Comparison of Hypertonic Saline and Mannitol on Intraoperative Brain Relaxation in Patients with Raised Intracranial Pressure during Supratentorial Tumors Resection: A Randomized Control Trial. Neurol India. 2020;68(1):141–145.
70. Shi J, Tan L, Ye J, et al. Hypertonic saline and mannitol in patients with traumatic brain injury: A systematic and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2020;99(35):e21655.
71. Schwimmbeck F, Voellger B, Chappell D, et al. Hypertonic saline vs. mannitol for traumatic brain injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis. J Neurosurg Anesthesiol. 2021;33(1):10–20.
72. El-Swaify ST, Kamel M, Ali SH, et al. Initial neurocritical care of severe traumatic brain injury: New paradigms and old challenges. Surg Neurol Int. 2022;13:431.
73. Francony G, Fauvage B, Falcon D, et al. Equimolar doses of mannitol and hypertonic saline in the treatment of increased intracranial pressure. Crit Care Med. 2008;36(3):795–800.

74. Huang X, Yang L. [Comparison of 20% mannitol and 15% hypertonic saline in doses of similar osmotic burden for treatment of severe traumatic brain injury with intracranial hypertension]. Nan Fang Yi Ke Da Xue Xue Bao. 2014;34(5):723–6. Chinese.
75. Jagannatha AT, Sriganesh K, Devi BI, et al. An equiosmolar study on early intracranial physiology and long term outcome in severe traumatic brain injury comparing mannitol and hypertonic saline. J Clin Neurosci. 2016;27:68–73.
76. Kumar SA, Devi BI, Reddy M, et al. Comparison of equiosmolar dose of hyperosmolar agents in reducing intracranial pressure-a randomized control study in pediatric traumatic brain injury. Childs Nerv Syst. 2019;35(6):999–1005.
77. Huang X, Yang L, Ye J, et al. Equimolar doses of hypertonic agents (saline or mannitol) in the treatment of intracranial hypertension after severe traumatic brain injury. Medicine (Baltimore). 2020;99(38):e22004.
78. Tatro HA, McMillen JC, Hamilton LA, et al. 23.4% Sodium Chloride Versus Mannitol for the Reduction of Intracranial Pressure in Patients With Traumatic Brain Injury: A Single-Center Retrospective Cohort Study. Ann Pharmacother. 2021;55(8):988–94.
79. Chen H, Song Z, Dennis JA. Hypertonic saline versus other intracranial pressure-lowering agents for people with acute traumatic brain injury. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2020;1(1):CD010904.
80. Gharizadeh N, Ghojazadeh M, Naseri A, et al. Hypertonic saline for traumatic brain injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Med Res. 2022;27(1):254.
81. Patil H, Gupta R. A Comparative Study of Bolus Dose of Hypertonic Saline, Mannitol, and Mannitol Plus Glycerol Combination in Patients with Severe Traumatic Brain Injury. World Neurosurg. 2019;125:e221–e228.
82. Bhatnagar N, Bhateja S, Jeenger L, et al. Effects of two different doses of 3% hypertonic saline with mannitol during decompressive craniectomy following traumatic brain injury: A prospective, controlled study. J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol. 2021;37(4):523–528.
83. Kochanek PM, Adelson PD, Rosario BL, et al. Comparison of Intracranial Pressure Measurements Before and After Hypertonic Saline or Mannitol Treatment in Children With Severe Traumatic Brain Injury. JAMA Netw Open. 2022;5(3):e220891.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 42:
Preoperative Fluid Therapy

Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

42

Preoperative Fluid Therapy

Need for Special Considerations ... 503
Preoperative Fluid Therapy 504
Correction of hypovolemia............ 505
Correction of anemia 506
Correction of other disorders........ 507
Preoperative fasting 508
Fasting Guidelines for Children 509

Fluid therapy in surgical patients is a critical part of perioperative care that involves the administration of fluids to maintain the patient’s hemodynamic stability, organ perfusion, and hydration status during and after surgery.

Timely administered intravenous fluid is vital and can be lifesaving in surgical patients. The type and amount of fluids administered depend on various factors, such as the patient's preoperative status, the extent of surgical trauma, the duration of surgery, and associated illnesses and comorbid conditions. Proper fluid management can help reduce complications after major surgery, decrease stay in the hospital, and improve patient outcomes [1].

Understanding the possible fluid and electrolyte imbalances in surgical patients and their proper management is important to achieve optimal outcomes after surgery.

NEED FOR SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

In surgical patients, several factors can modify the normal physiology of fluid and electrolyte balance in the body, which requires special consideration. Some important factors that need to be considered are:

- In surgical patients, the secretion of ACTH increases due to acute stress. This increased adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) level stimulates the adrenal glands to secrete two hormones: a large amount of cortisol to fight acute stress and aldosterone, which results in sodium retention and urinary loss of potassium. Hypovolemia during major surgery also leads to increased aldosterone secretion. The increased aldosterone secretion for the first 2-3 postoperative days leads to increased sodium and water reabsorption.
- Postoperative pain and stress can cause an increase in antidiuretic hormone (ADH) secretion from the posterior pituitary gland during the first 2-3 postoperative days. By reducing urine output and increasing water reabsorption, ADH helps in the correction of hypotension in postoperative patients. It is important to remember that the amount of maintenance fluid required on the first

postoperative day is lower due to the increased ADH secretion.

- Fluid deficit resulting from preoperative oral fluid restriction (nothing by mouth-NPO) must be taken into account and replenished prior to or during the surgery to maintain proper hydration.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCE

1. Makaryus R, Miller TE, Gan TJ. Current concepts of fluid management in enhanced recovery pathways. Br J Anaesth. 2018;120(2):376–383.
2. National Clinical Guideline Centre (UK). Intravenous Fluid Therapy: Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital [Internet]. London: Royal College of Physicians (UK); 2013 Dec.
3. Brigode WM, Jones C, Vazquez DE, et al. Scrutinizing the evidence linking hypokalemia and ileus: A commentary on fact and dogma. Int J Acad Med 2015;1(1):21–26.
4. Penfold JA, Wells CI, Du P, et al. Relationships between serum electrolyte concentrations and ileus: A joint clinical and mathematical modeling study. Physiol Rep. 2021;9(3):e14735.
5. Gopchade A. Electrolyte Disturbances in Children Presenting with Acute Diarrhea: A Prospective Cohort Study. JMSCR 2019;7(9):777.
6. Noel-Morgan J, Muir WW. Anesthesia-Associated Relative Hypovolemia: Mechanisms, Monitoring, and Treatment Considerations. Front Vet Sci. 2018;5:53.
7. Malbrain MLNG, Langer T, Annane D, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy in the perioperative and critical care setting: Executive summary of the International Fluid Academy (IFA). Ann Intensive Care. 2020;10(1):64.
8. Irani JL, Hedrick TL, Miller TE, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for enhanced recovery after colon and rectal surgery from the American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons and the Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons. Surg Endosc. 2023;37(1):5–30.
9. Semler MW, Kellum JA. Balanced Crystalloid Solutions. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;199(8):952–960.
10. Musallam KM, Tamim HM, Richards T, et al. Preoperative anaemia and postoperative outcomes in non-cardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet. 2011;378(9800):1396–407.
11. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management*. Anesthesiology. 2015;122(2):241–75.
12. Pagano D, Milojevic M, Meesters MI, et al. 2017 EACTS/EACTA Guidelines on patient blood management for adult cardiac surgery. Eur J Cardiothorac Surg 2018;53(1):79–111.
13. Raphael J, Mazer CD, Subramani S, et al. Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Clinical Practice Improvement Advisory for Management of Perioperative Bleeding and Hemostasis in Cardiac Surgery Patients. Anesth Analg 2019;129(5):1209–1221.
14. Cho BC, Serini J, Zorrilla-Vaca A, et al. Impact of Preoperative Erythropoietin on Allogeneic Blood Transfusions in Surgical Patients: Results From a Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. Anesth Analg 2019;128(5):981–992.
15. Kaufner L, von Heymann C, Henkelmann A, et al. Erythropoietin plus iron versus control treatment including placebo or iron for preoperative anaemic adults undergoing non-cardiac surgery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2020;8(8):CD012451.
16. Guinn NR, Schwartz J, Arora RC, et al. Perioperative Quality Initiative and Enhanced Recovery After Surgery-Cardiac Society Consensus Statement on the Management of Preoperative Anemia and Iron Deficiency in Adult Cardiac Surgery Patients. Anesth Analg 2022;135(3):532–544.

17. Shander A, Corwin HL, Meier J, et al. Recommendations From the International Consensus Conference on Anemia Management in Surgical Patients (ICCAMS). Ann Surg. 2023;277(4):581–590.
18. Kloeser R, Buser A, Bolliger D. Treatment Strategies in Anemic Patients Before Cardiac Surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2023;37(2):266–275.
19. Carson JL, Grossman BJ, Kleinman S, et al. Clinical Transfusion Medicine Committee of the AABB. Red blood cell transfusion: a clinical practice guideline from the AABB*. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157(1):49–58.
20. NICE Guideline. Blood Transfusion. (2015). https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng24/chapter/recommendations#red-blood-cells-2. Accessed 8 May 2023.
21. Switzerland SMCW. The Swiss Society of General Internal Medicine Recommends this Top-5 Interventions to be Avoided in Hospital Care 2016 [Internet]. 2016 [cited 8 May 2023]. Available from: https://www.smartermedicine.ch/fileadmin/user_upload/Adaptionen/smartermedicine/Dokumente/Listen_Flyer_neu/SmarterMedicine_Flyer_ENG_web300.pdf.
22. Carson JL, Guyatt G, Heddle NM, et al. Clinical Practice Guidelines From the AABB: Red Blood Cell Transfusion Thresholds and Storage. JAMA. 2016;316(19):2025–2035.
23. Baker L, Park L, Gilbert R, et al. Intraoperative red blood cell transfusion decision-making: A systematic review of guidelines. Ann Surg 2021;274(1):86–96.
24. D'Alessandro A, Liumbruno G, Grazzini G, et al. Red blood cell storage: the story so far. Blood Transfus. 2010;8(2):82–8.
25. Stan A, Zsigmond E. The restoration in vivo of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) in stored red cells, after transfusion. The levels of red cells 2,3-DPG. Rom J Intern Med. 2009;47(2):173–7.
26. Schmitz A, Kellenberger CJ, Liamlahi R, et al. Gastric emptying after overnight fasting and clear fluid intake: a prospective investigation using serial magnetic resonance imaging in healthy children. Br J Anaesth. 2011;107(3):425–9.
27. Beck CE, Chandrakumar T, Sümpelmann R, et al. Ultrasound assessment of gastric emptying time after intake of clear fluids in children scheduled for general anesthesia-A prospective observational study. Paediatr Anaesth. 2020;30(12):1384–1389.
28. Du T, Hill L, Ding L, et al. Gastric emptying for liquids of different compositions in children. Br J Anaesth. 2017;119(5):948–955.
29. Thiele RH, Raghunathan K, Brudney CS, et al. American Society for Enhanced Recovery (ASER) and perioperative quality initiative (POQI) joint consensus statement on perioperative fluid management within an enhanced recovery pathway for colorectal surgery. Perioper Med. 2016;5(1):24.
30. Rosen D, Gamble J, Matava C, et al. Canadian Pediatric Anesthesia Society statement on clear fluid fasting for elective pediatric anesthesia. Canadian journal of anaesthesia 2019;66(8):991–992.
31. Smith I, Kranke P, Murat I, et al. Perioperative fasting in adults and children guidelines from the European Society of Anaesthesiology. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2011;28(8):556–569.
32. Joshi GP, Abdelmalak BB, Weigel WA, et al. 2023 American Society of Anesthesiologists Practice Guidelines for Preoperative Fasting: Carbohydrate-containing Clear Liquids with or without Protein, Chewing Gum, and Pediatric Fasting Duration-A Modular Update of the 2017 American Society of Anesthesiologists Practice Guidelines for Preoperative Fasting. Anesthesiology. 2023;138(2):132–151.
33. Yip A, Hogan S, Carey S. Interventions Aimed at Reducing Fasting Times in Acute Hospital Patients: A Systematic Literature Review. Nutr Clin Pract. 2021;36(1):133–152.
34. Beck CE, Rudolph D, Becke-Jakob K, et al. Real fasting times and incidence of pulmonary aspiration in children: Results of a German prospective multicenter observational study. Paediatr Anesth. 2019;29(10):1040–1045.
35. Disma N, Thomas M, Afshari A, et al. Clear fluids fasting for elective paediatric anaesthesia: the European Society of Anaesthesiology consensus statement. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2019;36(3):173–174.
36. Salman OS, Asida SM, Ali HS. Current knowledge, practice and attitude of preoperative fasting: A limited survey among Upper Egypt anesthetists. Egyptian Journal of Anaesthesia 2013;29(2):125–130.
37. Panjiar P, Kochhar A, Vajifdar H, et al. A prospective survey on knowledge, attitude and current practices of pre-operative fasting amongst anaesthesiologists: A nationwide survey. Indian J Anaesth. 2019;63(5):350–355.
38. Witt L, Lehmann B, Sümpelmann R, et al. Quality-improvement project to reduce actual fasting times for fluids and solids before induction of anaesthesia. BMC Anesthesiol 2021;21:254.
39. Meisner M, Ernhofer U, Schmidt J. Liberalisation of preoperative fasting guidelines: effects on patient comfort and clinical practicability during elective laparoscopic surgery of the lower abdomen. Zentralbl Chir 2008;133(5):479–85.
40. Dennhardt N, Beck C, Huber D, et al. Optimized preoperative fasting times decrease ketone body concentration and stabilize mean arterial blood pressure during induction of anesthesia in children younger than 36 months: a prospective observational cohort study. Pediatr Anesth 2016;26(8):838–43.
41. Fawcett WJ, Ljungqvist O. Starvation, carbohydrate loading and outcome after major surgery. BJA Education 2017;17(9):312–6.
42. Dennhardt N, Beck C, Huber D, et al. Impact of preoperative fasting times on blood glucose concentration, ketone bodies and acid-base balance in children younger than 36 months: A prospective observational study. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2015;32(12):857–861.
43. Brady MC, Kinn S, Ness V, et al. Preoperative fasting for preventing perioperative complications in children. In: Cochrane database of systematic

reviews [Internet]. Wiley; 2009 [cited 2023 May 5]. Available from: http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD005285.pub2/abstract.

44. Brady MC, Kinn S, Stuart P, et al. Preoperative fasting for adults to prevent perioperative complications. In: Cochrane database of systematic reviews [Internet]. Wiley; 2003 [cited 2015 Oct 17]. Available from: http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD004423/abstract.
45. Zhang G, Huang X, Feng J, et al. Oral carbohydrate 2 hours before surgery doesn't increase the risk of reflux and aspiration. A randomized controlled trial in volunteers. Research Square [Internet]. 2023 Jan 11 [cited 2023 May 3];[about 16 p.]. Available from: https://doi.org/10.21203/rs.3.rs-2361859/v1.
46. Sun J, Wei G, Hu L, et al. Perioperative pulmonary aspiration and regurgitation without aspiration in adults: a retrospective observational study of 166,491 anesthesia records. Ann Palliat Med. 2021;10(4):4037–4046.
47. Hausel J, Nygren J, Lagerkranser M, et al. A carbohydrate rich drink reduces preoperative discomfort in elective surgery patients. Anesth Analg 2001;93(5):1344–50.
48. Yilmaz N, Cekmen N, Bilgin F, et al. Preoperative carbohydrate nutrition reduces postoperative nausea and vomiting compared to preoperative fasting. J Res Med Sci 2013;18(10):827–32.
49. Singh BN, Dahiya D, Bagaria D, et al. Effects of preoperative carbohydrates drinks on immediate postoperative outcome after day care laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Surg Endosc 2015;29(11):3267–3272.
50. Awad S, Varadhan KK, Ljungqvist O, et al. A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials on preoperative oral carbohydrate treatment in elective surgery. Clin Nutr 2013;32:34–44.
51. Smith MD, McCall J, Plank L, et al. Preoperative carbohydrate treatment for enhancing recovery after elective surgery. Cochrane Data-base Syst Rev 2014;(8):CD009161.
52. Amer MA, Smith MD, Herbison GP, et al. Network meta-analysis of the effect of preoperative carbohydrate loading on recovery after elective surgery. Br J Surg. 2017;104(3):187–197.
53. Nygren J, Soop M, Thorell A, et al. Preoperative oral carbohydrate administration reduces postoperative insulin resistance. Clin Nutr 1998;17(2):65–71.
54. Gianotti L, Biffi R, Sandini M, et al. Preoperative oral carbohydrate load versus placebo in major elective abdominal surgery (PROCY): a randomized, placebo-controlled, multicenter, phase III trial. Ann Surg 2018;267(4):623–30.
55. Morrison B, Jones C, Kelliher L, et al. The impact of reduced fasting times and carbohydrate preload on the peri-operative insulin and glucose response in liver resection. Anaesthesia 2018;73:67.
56. Rizvanović N, Nesek Adam V, Čaušević S, Dervišević S, Delibegović S. A randomised controlled study of preoperative oral carbohydrate loading versus fasting in patients undergoing colorectal surgery. Int J Colorectal Dis. 2019;34(9):1551–1561.
57. Shi M, Hu Z, Yang D, et al. Preoperative oral carbohydrate reduces postoperative insulin resistance by activating AMP-activated protein kinase after colorectal surgery. Dig Surg. 2020;37(5):368–375.
58. Cho EA, Huh J, Lee SH, et al. Gastric Ultrasound Assessing Gastric Emptying of Preoperative Carbohydrate Drinks: A Randomized Controlled Noninferiority Study. Anesth Analg 2021;133(3):690–697.
59. Shin HJ, Koo BW, Lim D, et al. Ultrasound assessment of gastric volume in older adults after drinking carbohydrate-containing fluids: a prospective, nonrandomized, and noninferiority comparative study. Can J Anaesth 2022;69(9):1160–1166.
60. Pre-operative Fasting Guide for Adults and Children. NHS Guidelines. V3 approved by Policyand Guideline Committee on 16 October 2020. Trust Ref: B27/2014. Available from: https://secure.library.leicestershospitals.nhs.uk/PAGL/Shared%20Documents/Pre%20Operative%20Fasting%20for%20Adults%20and%20Children%20UHL%20Guideline.pdf.
61. Aroonpruksakul N, Punchuklang W, Kasikan K, et al. The actual duration of preoperative fasting in pediatric patients, and its effects on hunger and thirst: a prospective observational study. Transl Pediatr. 2023;12(2):146–154.
62. Andersson H, Zarén B, Frykholm P. Low incidence of pulmonary aspiration in children allowed intake of clear fluids until called to the operating suite. Pediatr Ansth. 2015;25(8):770–777.
63. Beck CE, Rudolph D, Mahn C, et al. Impact of clear fluid fasting on pulmonary aspiration in children undergoing general anesthesia: Results of the German prospective multicenter observational (NiKs) study. Paediatr Anaesth. 2020;30(8):892–899.
64. Thomas M, Morrison C, Newton R, et al. Consensus statement on clear fluids fasting for elective pediatric general anesthesia. Paediatr Anesth. 2018;28(5):411–414.
65. Linscott D. SPANZA endorses 1-hour clear fluid fasting consensus statement. Paediatr Anesth. 2019;29(3):292.
66. Frykholm P, Disma N, Andersson H, et al. Pre-operative fasting in children: A guideline from the European Society of Anaesthesiology and Intensive Care. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2022;39(1):4–25.
67. Warner MA, Meyerhoff KL, Warner ME, et al. Pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents: A closed claims analysis. Anesthesiology 2021;135(2):284–91.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

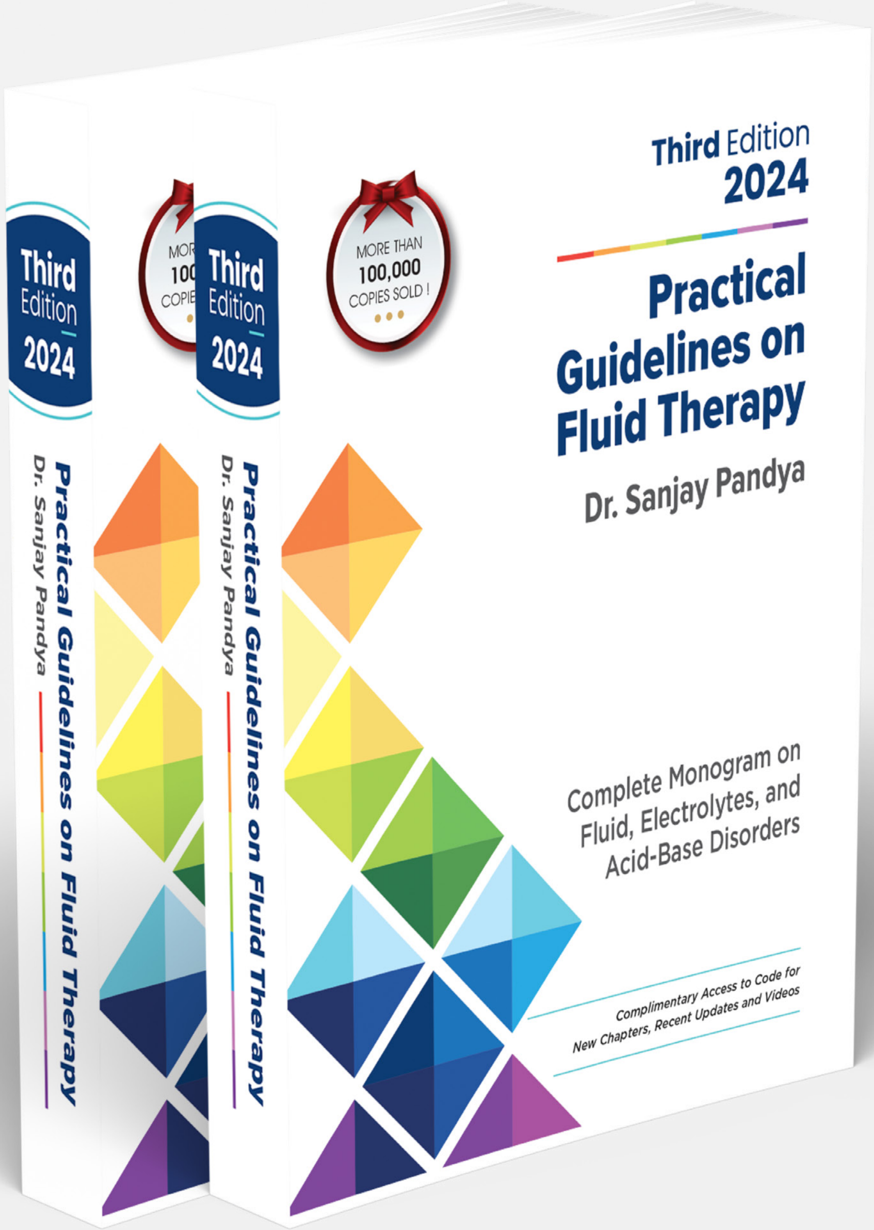
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 43:

Intraoperative Fluid Therapy


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

43

Intraoperative Fluid Therapy

Intravascular Volume Disturbances **513**
Causes of hypovolemia 513
Selecting Appropriate Type of Fluid **514**
Crystalloids 514
Balanced crystalloids 514
Normal saline 515
Colloids 515
Albumin 515
Hydroxyethyl starch 516
Gelatine 517
Blood products 518
Quantity and Strategy for Fluid Administration **519**
Minimal or moderate trauma surgery 519
Major invasive surgery 519
The traditional approach 519
Restrictive versus liberal fluid therapy 520
Goal-directed fluid therapy 521
Monitoring **522**

INTRAVASCULAR VOLUME DISTURBANCES

Intraoperative hypovolemia and hypotension are common in high-risk prolonged surgeries, such as major abdominal or cardiac procedures, among vulnerable populations, including elderly patients and those with preexisting medical conditions, and are associated with high morbidity, risk of postoperative mortality, and adverse postoperative outcomes [1, 2].

Proper fluid therapy is an essential and critical component of intraoperative management. Its goal is to prevent and correct hypovolemia and hypotension while avoiding fluid overload. Fluid overload is harmful as it carries the risk of impaired tissue oxygenation, pulmonary edema, impaired wound healing, acute kidney injury (AKI), prolonged bowel dysfunction, and longer hospital stay in surgical patients [3, 4]. Adequate fluid therapy ensures proper tissue perfusion and oxygenation, which are crucial for maintaining optimal surgical outcomes.

To avoid hypovolemia and hypotension, along with appropriate fluid replacement, it is essential to diagnose and treat the underlying causes.

Causes of hypovolemia

Causes of intraoperative hypovolemia and hypotension include [5, 6]:

1. Surgical blood loss: This is a major cause of hypovolemia, and the volume of blood loss depends on several factors, including the type and duration of the surgery, as well as any preexisting or acquired defects in hemostasis. Trauma surgery is the most common cause of severe blood

loss. Concurrently, the use of anticoagulant therapies like warfarin, and antiplatelet agents such as clopidogrel, can further elevate the risk of bleeding during surgery.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Wesselink EM, Kappen TH, Torn HM, et al. Intraoperative hypotension and the risk of postoperative adverse outcomes: a systematic review. Br J Anaesth. 2018;121(4):706–721.
2. Saugel B, Sessler DI. Perioperative Blood Pressure Management. Anesthesiology 2021;134(2):250–261.
3. Miller TE, Myles PS. Perioperative fluid therapy for major surgery. Anesthesiology. 2019;130(5):825–832.
4. Malbrain MLNG, Langer T, Annane D, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy in the perioperative and critical care setting: Executive summary of the International Fluid Academy (IFA). Ann Intensive Care. 2020;10(1):64.
5. Kouz K, Hoppe P, Briesenick L, et al. Intraoperative hypotension: Pathophysiology, clinical relevance, and therapeutic approaches. Indian J Anaesth. 2020;64(2):90–96.
6. Guarracino F, Bertini P. Perioperative hypotension: causes and remedies. J Anesth Analg Crit Care 2022;2:17.
7. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). Perioperative care in adults: Evidence review for intravenous fluid management strategy. NICE guideline [NG180]. Published: 19 August 2020. Available at: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng180/chapter/Recommendations#intraoperative-care.
8. Langer T, Santini A, Scotti E, et al. Intravenous balanced solutions: from physiology to clinical evidence. Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther. 2015;47:s78–88.
9. Nasa P, Wise R, Elbers PWG, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy in perioperative and critical care setting-Knowledge test and practice: An international cross-sectional survey. J Crit Care. 2022;71:154122.
10. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Hegarty C, et al. Association between a chloride-liberal vs chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration strategy and kidney injury in critically ill adults. JAMA. 2012;308(15):1566–72.
11. Shaw AD, Raghunathan K, Peyerl FW, et al. Association between intravenous chloride load during resuscitation and in-hospital mortality among patients with SIRS. Intensive Care Med. 2014;40(3):342–53.
12. Navarro LH, Bloomstone JA, Auler JO Jr, et al. Perioperative fluid therapy: a statement from the international Fluid Optimization Group. Perioper Med 2015;4:3.
13. Semler MW, Kellum JA. Balanced crystalloid solutions. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2021;203(5):520–30.
14. British Association for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition. GIFTASUP: British Consensus Guidelines on Intravenous Fluid Therapy for Adult Surgical Patients. http://www.bapen.org.uk/resources-and-education/education-and-guidance/bapen-principles-of-good-nutritional-practice/giftasup?showall=1&limitstart=. Published February 13, 2018. Accessed [accessed on 12 May 2023].
15. Heming N, Moine P, Coscas R, et al. Perioperative fluid management for major elective surgery. Br J Surg. 2020;107(2):e56–e62.
16. Irani JL, Hedrick TL, Miller TE, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for enhanced recovery after colon and rectal surgery from the American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons and the Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons. Surg Endosc. 2023;37(1):5–30.
17. Guidet B, Soni N, Della Rocca G, et al. A balanced view of balanced solutions. Crit Care 2010;14(5):325.

18. Hoorn JE. Intravenous fluids: balancing solutions. J Nephrol 2017;30(4):485–492.
19. Chowdhury AH, Cox EF, Francis ST, et al. A randomized, controlled, double-blind crossover study on the effects of 2-L infusions of 0.9% saline and PlasmaLyte® 148 on renal blood flow velocity and renal cortical tissue perfusion in healthy volunteers. Ann Surg. 2012;256(1):18–24.
20. Burdett E, Dushianthan A, Bennett-Guerrero E, et al. Perioperative buffered versus non-buffered fluid administration for surgery in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;12:CD004089.
21. Krajewski ML, Raghunathan K, Paluszkiewicz SM, et al. Meta-analysis of high-versus low-chloride content in perioperative and critical care fluid resuscitation. Br J Surg 2015;102(1):24–36.
22. Kilic O, Gultekin Y, Yazici S. The Impact of Intravenous Fluid Therapy on Acid-Base Status of Critically Ill Adults: A Stewart Approach-Based Perspective. Int J Nephrol Renovasc Dis. 2020;13:219–230.
23. Astapenko D, Navratil P, Pouska J, et al. Clinical physiology aspects of chloremia in fluid therapy: a systematic review. Perioper Med 2020;9(1):40.
24. Weinberg L, Collins N, Van Mourik K, et al. PlasmaLyte 148: a clinical review. World J Crit Care Med 2016;5(4):235–250.
25. Ellekjaer KL, Perner A, Jensen MM, et al. Lactate versus acetate buffered intravenous crystalloid solutions: a scoping review. Br J Anaesth. 2020;125(5):693–703.
26. Chatrath V, Ranjana, Kaur J, et al. A comparison of PlasmaLyte a vs 0.9% saline for intraoperative fluid replacement in abdominal surgeries. International Journal of Contemporary Medical Research 2016;3(12):3579–3583.
27. Shaw AD, Bagshaw SM, Goldstein SL, et al. Major complications, mortality, and resource utilization after open abdominal surgery: 0.9% saline compared to PlasmaLyte. Ann Surg. 2012;255(6):821–829.
28. Li H, Sun SR, Yap JQ, et al. 0.9% saline is neither normal nor physiological. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B. 2016;17(3):181–7.
29. Semler MW, Wanderer JP, Ehrenfeld JM, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Critically Ill Adults. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(9):829–839.
30. Boer C, Bossers SM, Koning NJ. Choice of fluid type: physiological concepts and perioperative indications. Br J Anaesth. 2018;120(2):384–396.
31. Maheshwari K, Turan A, Makarova N, et al. Saline versus lactated Ringer's solution: the saline or Lactated Ringer's (SOLAR) Trial. Anesthesiology 2020;132(4):614–624.
32. Bampoe S, Odor PM, Dushianthan A, et al. Perioperative administration of buffered versus nonbuffered crystalloid intravenous fluid to improve outcomes following adult surgical procedures. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;9(9):CD004089.
33. de Keijzer IN, Kaufmann T, Scheeren TWL. Which type of fluid to use perioperatively? J Emerg Crit Care Med. 2019;3:51.
34. Lewis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, et al. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill people. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2018;8(8):CD000567.
35. Farag E, Ebrahim ZY. The Perioperative Use of Albumin. Perioperative Fluid Management. 2016:215–34.
36. Wiedermann CJ. Phases of fluid management and the roles of human albumin solution in perioperative and critically ill patients. Curr Med Res Opin. 2020;36(12):1961–1973.
37. Yu YT, Liu J, Hu B, et al. Expert consensus on the use of human serum albumin in critically ill patients. Chin Med J (Engl). 2021;134(14):1639–1654.
38. Xiang F, Huang F, Huang J, et al. Expert Consensus on the Use of Human Serum Albumin in Adult Cardiac Surgery. Chin Med J (Engl). 2023;136(10):1135–1143.
39. Jiang L, Jiang S, Zhang M, et al. Albumin versus other fluids for fluid resuscitation in patients with sepsis: a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2014;9(12):e114666.
40. Sweeney RM, McKendry RA, Bedi A. Perioperative intravenous fluid therapy for adults. Ulster Med J. 2013;82(3):171–8.
41. Myburgh J, Cooper DJ, Finfer S, et al. Saline or albumin for fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury. N Engl J Med. 2007;357(9):874–84.
42. Oddo M, Poole D, Helbok R, et al. Fluid therapy in neurointensive care patients: ESICM consensus and clinical practice recommendations. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):449–463.
43. Ryu T. Fluid management in patients undergoing neurosurgery. Anesth Pain Med (Seoul). 2021;16(3):215–224.
44. Ma HK, Bebawy JF. Albumin Use in Brain-injured and Neurosurgical Patients: Concepts, Indications, and Controversies. J Neurosurg Anesthesiol. 2021;33(4):293–299.
45. Rossaint R, Afshari A, Bouillon B, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma: sixth edition. Crit Care. 2023;27(1):80.
46. Weiss R, Wenk M, Van Aken H, et al. HES or How to End Science. Anesth Analg. 2018;127(6):1440–1444.
47. Green RS, Butler MB, Hicks SD, et al. Effect of Hydroxyethyl Starch on Outcomes in High-Risk Vascular Surgery Patients: A Retrospective Analysis. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2016;30(4):967–72.
48. Brunkhorst FM, Engel C, Bloos F, et al. German Competence Network Sepsis (SepNet). Intensive insulin therapy and pentastarch resuscitation in severe sepsis. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(2):125–139.
49. Mutter TC, Ruth CA, Dart AB. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) versus other fluid therapies: effects on kidney function. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;(7):CD007594.
50. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe

sepsis. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(2):124–34.

51. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. CHEST Investigators; Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(20):1901–1911.
52. Zarychanski R, Abou-Setta AM, Turgeon AF, et al. Association of hydroxyethyl starch administration with mortality and acute kidney injury in critically ill patients requiring volume resuscitation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2013;309(7):678–88.
53. Bayer O, Schwarzkopf D, Doenst T, et al. Perioperative fluid therapy with tetrastarch and gelatin in cardiac surgery–A prospective sequential analysis. Crit Care Med 2013;41(11):2532–42.
54. Wilkes MM, Navickis RJ. Postoperative renal replacement therapy after hydroxyethyl starch infusion: A meta-analysis of randomized trials. Neth J Crit Care 2014;18(4):4–9.
55. Kashy BK, Podolyak A, Makarova N, et al. Effect of hydroxyethyl starch on postoperative kidney function in patients having noncardiac surgery. Anesthesiology 2014;121(4):730–739.
56. Lagny MG, Roediger L, Koch JN, et al. Hydroxyethyl Starch 130/0.4 and the Risk of Acute Kidney Injury After Cardiopulmonary Bypass: A Single-Center Retrospective Study. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 2016;30(4):869–875.
57. Navickis RJ, Haynes GR, Wilkes MM. Effect of hydroxyethyl starch on bleeding after cardiopulmonary bypass: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2012;144(1):223–30.
58. Rasmussen KC, Johansson PI, Højskov M, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch reduces coagulation competence and increases blood loss during major surgery: results from a randomized controlled trial. Ann Surg. 2014;259(2):249–54.
59. Tobey R, Cheng H, Gao M, et al. Postoperative Acute Kidney Injury and Blood Product Transfusion After Synthetic Colloid Use During Cardiac Surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 2017;31(3):853–862.
60. Allen CJ, Valle EJ, Jouria JM, et al. Differences between blunt and penetrating trauma after resuscitation with hydroxyethyl starch. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 2014;77(6):859–64.
61. Raiman M, Mitchell CG, Biccard BM, et al. Comparison of hydroxyethyl starch colloids with crystalloids for surgical patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2016;33(1):42–8.
62. EMA. PRAC confirms that hydroxyethyl-starch solutions (HES) should no longer be used in patients with sepsis or burn injuries or in critically ill patients. 11 October 2018. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/news/prac-confirms-hydroxyethyl-starch-solutions-hes-should-no-longer-be-used-patients-sepsis-burn.
63. EMA. Hydroxyethyl starch solutions: CMDh introduces new measures to protect patients. 17 July 2018. Available at: https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/referral/hydroxyethyl-starch-article-107i-referral-hydroxyethyl-starch-solutions-cmdh-introduces-new-measures_en-0.pdf.
64. Hydroxyethyl starch: CMDh Scientific Conclusion and Condition for Lifting suspension of the marketing authorisations. 24 June 2022 Available at: https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/psusa/hydroxyethyl-starch-cmdh-scientific-conclusions-conditions-lifting-suspension-marketing/h/n/psr/j/0031_en.pdf.
65. Zarbock A, Buhre W. Hydroxyethyl Starch in the Perioperative Period: Friend, Foe, or Still an Unsolved Issue? Anesth Analg 2022;134(4):683–685.
66. Vincent JL, Kellum JA, Shaw A, et al. Should hydroxyethyl starch solutions be totally banned? Crit Care. 2013;17(5):193.
67. Wittenstein J, Pelosi P, de Abreu MG. The European Medicines Agency and the Authorization for Hydroxyethyl starch Containing Solutions-Killing the Cow to Get Rid of Ticks? Turk J Anaesthesiol Reanim. 2018;46(3):168–169.
68. Annane D, Fuchs-Buder T, Zoellner C, et al. EMA recommendation to suspend HES is hazardous. Lancet 2018;391(10122):736–738.
69. Priebe HJ. Should hydroxyethyl starch be banned? Lancet. 2018;392(10142):117–118.
70. Ertmer C, Zwissler B, Van Aken H, et al. Fluid therapy and outcome: a prospective observational study in 65 German intensive care units between 2010 and 2011. Ann Intensive Care. 2018;8(1):27.
71. Joosten A, Delaporte A, Ickx B, et al. Crystalloid versus colloid for intraoperative goaldirected fluid therapy using a closed-loop system: a randomized, double-blinded, controlled trial in major abdominal surgery. Anesthesiology. 2018;128(1):55–66.
72. Kammerer T, Brettner F, Hilferink S, et al. No Differences in Renal Function between Balanced 6% Hydroxyethyl Starch (130/0.4) and 5% Albumin for Volume Replacement Therapy in Patients Undergoing Cystectomy: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Anesthesiology 2018;128(1):67–78.
73. Oh HW, Lee JH, Kim HC, et al. The effect of 6% hydroxyethyl starch (130/0·4) on acute kidney injury in paediatric cardiac surgery: a prospective, randomised trial. Anaesthesia 2018;73(2):205–15.
74. Degoul S, Chazard E, Lamer A, et al. lntraoperative administration of 6% hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 is not associated with acute kidney injury in elective non-cardiac surgery: A sequential and propensity-matched analysis. Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med. 2020;39(2):199–206.
75. Futier E, Garot M, Godet T, et al. Effect of hydroxyethyl starch vs saline for volume replacement therapy on death or postoperative complications among high-risk patients undergoing major abdominal surgery: the FLASH randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2020;323(3):225–36.
76. Chappell D, van der Linden P, Ripollés-Melchor J, et al. Safety and efficacy of tetrastarches in surgery and trauma: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Br J Anaesth. 2021;127(4):556–568.
77. Lee MJ, Tannenbaum C, Mao G, et al. Effect of

6% Hydroxyethyl Starch 130/0.4 on Inflammatory Response and Pulmonary Function in Patients Having Cardiac Surgery: A Randomized Clinical Trial. Anesth Analg 2021;133(4):906–914.

78. Wei L, Li D, Sun L. The comparison of albumin and 6% hydroxyethyl starches (130/0.4) in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled clinical trials. BMC Surg 2021;21:342.
79. Xu Y, Wang S, He L, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 for volume replacement therapy in surgical patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Perioper Med (Lond). 2021;10(1):16.
80. Pensier J, Deffontis L, Rollé A, et al. Hydroxyethyl Starch for Fluid Management in Patients Undergoing Major Abdominal Surgery: A Systematic Review With Meta-analysis and Trial Sequential Analysis. Anesth Analg. 2022;134(4):686–695.
81. FDA calls for new warning labels on hydroxyethyl starch products. https://www.raps.org/news-and-articles/news-articles/2021/7/fda-calls-for-new-warning-labels-on-hydroxyethyl-s (Accessed on May 18, 2022).
82. Treib J, Haass A, Pindur G, et al. Influence of intravascular molecular weight of hydroxyethyl starch on platelets. Eur J Haematol. 1996;56(3):168–72.
83. Food and Drug Administration. List of Drug Products That Have Been Withdrawn or Removed From the Market for Reasons of Safety or Effectiveness. 63 FR 54082. (1998). Available online at: https://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-1998-10-08/pdf/98-26923.pdf.
84. Vincent JL. Fluid management in the critically ill. Kidney International 2019;96(1):52–57.
85. Finger S, Liu B, Taylor C, et al. Resuscitation fluid use in critically ill adults: an international cross-sectional study in 391 intensive care units. Crit. Care 2010;14(5):R185.
86. Moeller C, Fleischmann C, Thomas-Rueddel D, et al. How safe is gelatin? A systematic review and meta-analysis of gelatin-containing plasma expanders vs crystalloids and albumin. J Crit Care. 2016;35:75–83.
87. Sümpelmann R, Becke K, Brenner S, et al. Perioperative intravenous fluid therapy in children: guidelines from the Association of the Scientific Medical Societies in Germany. Paediatr Anesth. 2017;27(1):10–18.
88. Protsyk V, Rasmussen BS, Guarracino F, et al. Fluid Management in Cardiac Surgery: Results of a Survey in European Cardiac Anesthesia Departments. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2017;31(5):1624–1629.
89. Annane D, Siami S, Jaber S, et al. Effects of fluid resuscitation with colloids vs crystalloids on mortality in critically ill patients presenting with hypovolemic shock: the CRISTAL randomized trial. JAMA. 2013;310(17):1809–17.
90. Marx G, Meybohm P, Schuerholz T, et al. Impact of a new balanced gelatine on electrolytes and pH in the perioperative care. PLoS One. 2019;14(4):e0213057.
91. Mohanan M, Rajan S, Kesavan R, et al. Evaluation of Renal Function with Administration of 6% Hydroxyethyl Starch and 4% Gelatin in Major Abdominal Surgeries: A Pilot Study. Anesth Essays Res. 2019;13(2):219–224.
92. Tseng C, Chen T, Wu M, et al. Resuscitation fluid types in sepsis, surgical, and trauma patients: a systematic review and sequential network meta-analyses. Crit Care. 2020;24(1):693.
93. Sümpelmann R, Camporesi A, Gálvez I, et al. Modified fluid gelatin 4% for perioperative volume replacement in pediatric patients (GPS): Results of a European prospective noninterventional multicenter study. Paediatr Anaesth. 2022;32(7):825–833.
94. Farooque S, Kenny M, Marshall SD. Anaphylaxis to intravenous gelatin-based solutions: a case series examining clinical features and severity. Anaesth. 2019;74(2):174–9.
95. Ring J, Messmer K. Incidence and severity of anaphylactoid reactions to colloid volume substitutes. Lancet. 1977;1(8009):466–9.
96. Katona H, Dobronte L, Soltesz A, et al. Perioperative Gelatin Use Is Associated With Increased Complication Rates and Does Not Prevent Postoperative Fluid Overload in Patients Undergoing Elective Cardiac Surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2023;37(3):399–406.
97. Charlesworth M, Shelton CL. Should intravenous gelatins have a role in contemporary peri-operative and critical care? Anaesthesia. 2020;75(2):266–269.
98. Saw MM, Chandler B, Ho KM. Benefits and risks of using gelatin solution as a plasma expander for perioperative and critically ill patients: a meta-analysis. Anaesth Intensive Care 2012;40(1):17–32.
99. Thomas-Rueddel DO, Vlasakov V, Reinhart K, et al. Safety of Gelatin for volume resuscitation – a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Medicine 2012;38(7):1134–42.
100. Carson JL, Grossman BJ, Kleinman S, et al. Clinical Transfusion Medicine Committee of the AABB. Red blood cell transfusion: a clinical practice guideline from the AABB*. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157(1):49–58.
101. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management*. Anesthesiology. 2015;122(2):241–75.
102. NICE Guideline. Blood Transfusion. (2015). https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng24/chapter/recommendations#red-blood-cells-2. Accessed 8 May 2023.
103. Carson JL, Guyatt G, Heddle NM, et al. Clinical Practice Guidelines From the AABB: Red Blood Cell Transfusion Thresholds and Storage. JAMA. 2016;316(19):2025–2035.
104. Raphael J, Mazer CD, Subramani S, et al. Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Clinical Practice Improvement Advisory for Management of Perioperative Bleeding and Hemostasis in Cardiac Surgery Patients. Anesth Analg. 2019;129(5):1209–1221.
105. Mueller MM, Van Remoortel H, Meybohm P, et al.

Patient Blood Management: Recommendations From the 2018 Frankfurt Consensus Conference. JAMA. 2019;321(10):983–997.

106. Baker L, Park L, Gilbert R, et al. Intraoperative red blood cell transfusion decision-making: A systematic review of guidelines. Ann Surg 2021;274(1):86–96.

107. Shander A, Corwin HL, Meier J, et al. Recommendations From the International Consensus Conference on Anemia Management in Surgical Patients (ICCAMS). Ann Surg. 2023;277(4):581–590.

108. Kloeser R, Buser A, Bolliger D. Treatment Strategies in Anemic Patients Before Cardiac Surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth. 2023;37(2):266–275.

109. Tomic Mahecic T, Dünser M, Meier J. RBC Transfusion Triggers: Is There Anything New? Transfus Med Hemother. 2020;47(5):361–368.

110. Stainsby D, MacLennan S, Hamilton PJ. Management of massive blood loss: a template guideline. Br J Anaesth. 2000;85(3):487–91.

111. Pacagnella RC, Souza JP, Durocher J, et al. A systematic review of the relationship between blood loss and clinical signs. PLoS One. 2013;8(3):e57594.

112. Campos-Serra A, Montmany-Vioque S, Rebasa-Cladera P, et al. The use of the Shock Index as a predictor of active bleeding in trauma patients. Cir Esp (Engl Ed). 2018;96(8):494–500.

113. Ferraris VA, Davenport DL, Saha SP, et al. Surgical outcomes and transfusion of minimal amounts of blood in the operating room. Arch Surg. 2012;147(1):49–55.

114. Joshi GP, O'Connor MF, Nussmeier NA. Intraoperative fluid management. In: UpToDate [Internet]. Post, TW (Ed), UpToDate, Waltham (MA) 2023 [cited May 23, 2023].

115. Kaye AD, Riopelle JM. Intravascular fluid and electrolyte physiology. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleisher LA, eds. Miller's Anesthesia. 7th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009:1705–173.

116. Brandstrup B, Svendsen PE, Rasmussen M, et al. Which goal for fluid therapy during colorectal surgery is followed by the best outcome: near-maximal stroke volume or zero fluid balance? Br J Anaesth 2012;109(2):191–9.

117. Chappell D, Jacob M, Hofmann-Kiefer K, et al. A rational approach to perioperative fluid management. Anesthesiology 2008;109(4):723–40.

118. Doherty M, Buggy DJ. Intraoperative fluids: how much is too much? Br J Anaesth. 2012;109(1):69–79.

119. Boland MR, Reynolds I, McCawley N, et al. Liberal perioperative fluid administration is an independent risk factor for morbidity and is associated with longer hospital stay after rectal cancer surgery. Ann R Coll Surg Engl. 2017;99(2):113–116.

120. Al-Ghamdi AA. Intraoperative fluid management: Past and future, where is the evidence? Saudi J Anaesth. 2018;12(2):311–317.

121. Brandstrup B. Fluid therapy for the surgical patient. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol. 2006;20(2): 265–283.

122. Holte K, Foss NB, Andersen J, et al. Liberal or restrictive fluid administration in fast-track colonic surgery: a randomized, double-blind study. Br J Anaesth. 2007;99(4):500–8.

123. Rahbari NN, Zimmermann JB, Schmidt T, et al. Meta-analysis of standard, restrictive and supplemental fluid administration in colorectal surgery. Br J Surg 2009;96(4):331–41.

124. Lobo SM, Ronchi LS, Oliveira NE, et al. Restrictive strategy of intraoperative fluid maintenance during optimization of oxygen delivery decreases major complications after high-risk surgery. Crit Care 2011;15(5):R226.

125. Wrzosek A, Jakowicka-Wordliczek J, Zajaczkowska R, et al. Perioperative restrictive versus goal-directed fluid therapy for adults undergoing major non-cardiac surgery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2019;12(12):CD012767.

126. Belavić M, Sotošek Tokmadžić V, Brozović Krijan A, et al. A restrictive dose of crystalloids in patients during laparoscopic cholecystectomy is safe and cost-effective: prospective, two-arm parallel, randomized controlled trial. Ther Clin Risk Manag. 2018,14:741–751.

127. Myles PS, Bellomo R, Corcoran T, et al. Restrictive versus Liberal Fluid Therapy for Major Abdominal Surgery. N Engl J Med 2018;378(24):2263–2274.

128. Messina A, Robba C, Calabrò L, et al. Perioperative liberal versus restrictive fluid strategies and postoperative outcomes: a systematic review and metanalysis on randomised-controlled trials in major abdominal elective surgery. Crit Care. 2021;25(1):205.

129. Shin CH, Long DR, McLean D, et al. Effects of Intraoperative Fluid Management on Postoperative Outcomes: A Hospital Registry Study. Ann Surg 2018;267(6):1084–1092.

130. Miller TE, Mythen M, Shaw AD, et al. Association between perioperative fluid management and patient outcomes: a multicentre retrospective study. Br J Anaesth. 2021;126(3):720–729.

131. Zhao X, Tian L, Brackett A, et al. Classification and differential effectiveness of goal-directed hemodynamic therapies in surgical patients: A network meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Crit Care. 2021;61:152–61.

132. Yang T, Tan AY, Leung WH, et al. Restricted Versus Liberal Versus Goal-Directed Fluid Therapy for Non-vascular Abdominal Surgery: A Network Meta-Analysis and Systematic Review. Cureus 2023;15(4):e38238.

133. Temel H, Karslı B, Kayacan N, et al. Evaluation of Intraoperative Fluid Management. Akd Med J 2022;8(1):33–41.

134. Miller TE, Roche AM, Mythen M. Fluid management and goal-directed therapy as an adjunct to Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS). Can J Anaesth 2015;62(2):158–68.

135. Jessen MK, Vallentin MF, Holmberg MJ, et al. Goal-directed haemodynamic therapy during general anaesthesia for noncardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Anaesth

2022;128(3):416–433.

136. Giglio M, Biancofiore G, Corriero A, et al. Perioperative goal-directed therapy and postoperative complications in different kind of surgical procedures: an updated meta-analysis. J Anesth Analg Crit Care 2021;1:2.
137. Kendrick JB, Kaye AD, Tong Y, et al. Goal-directed fluid therapy in the perioperative setting. J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol 2019;35(Suppl 1):S29–S34.
138. Calvo-Vecino JM, Ripollés-Melchor J, Mythen MG, et al. Effect of goal-directed haemodynamic therapy on postoperative complications in low moderate risk surgical patients: a multicentre randomised controlled trial (FEDORA trial). Br J Anaesth. 2018;120(4):734–744.
139. Fellahi JL, Futier E, Vaisse C, et al. Perioperative hemodynamic optimization: from guidelines to implementation-an experts' opinion paper. Ann Intensive Care. 2021;11(1):58.
140. Flick M, Joosten A, Scheeren Thomas WL, et al. Haemodynamic monitoring and management in patients having noncardiac surgery: A survey among members of the European Society of Anaesthesiology and Intensive Care. European Journal of Anaesthesiology and Intensive Care 2023;2(1):e0017.
141. Michard F. Changes in arterial pressure during mechanical ventilation. Anesthesiology. 2005;103(2):419–28.
142. Peltoniemi P, Pere P, Mustonen H, et al. Optimal Perioperative Fluid Therapy Associates with Fewer Complications After Pancreaticoduodenectomy. J Gastrointest Surg. 2023;27(1):67–77.
143. Pearse RM, Harrison DA, MacDonald N, et al. Effect of a perioperative, cardiac output-guided hemodynamic therapy algorithm on outcomes following major gastrointestinal surgery: a randomized clinical trial and systematic review. JAMA. 2014;311(21):2181–90.
144. Dushianthan A, Knight M, Russell P, et al. Goal-directed haemodynamic therapy (GDHT) in surgical patients: systematic review and meta-analysis of the impact of GDHT on post-operative pulmonary complications. Perioper Med (Lond). 2020;9:30.
145. Virág M, Rottler M, Gede N, et al. Goal-Directed Fluid Therapy Enhances Gastrointestinal Recovery after Laparoscopic Surgery: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. J Pers Med. 2022;12(5):734.
146. Kaufmann T, Saugel B, Scheeren TWL. Perioperative goal-directed therapy - What is the evidence? Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol 2019;33(2):179–187.
147. Chong MA, Wang Y, Berbenetz NM, et al. Does goal-directed haemodynamic and fluid therapy improve peri-operative outcomes?: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2018;35(7):469–483.
148. Joshi GP, Kehlet H. CON: Perioperative Goal-Directed Fluid Therapy Is an Essential Element of an Enhanced Recovery Protocol? Anesth Analg 2016;122(5):1261–3.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

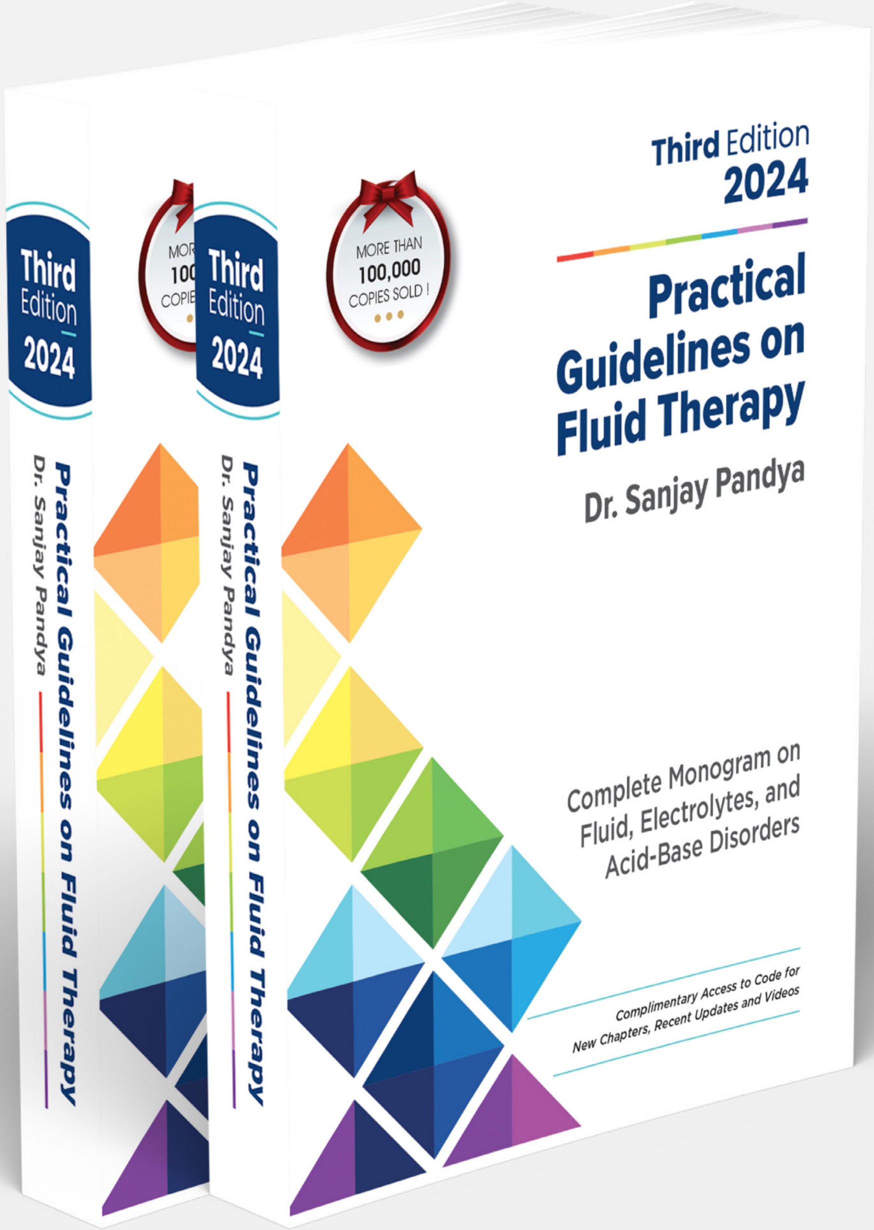
www.KidneyEducation.com

- » Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- » This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- » It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 44:

Postoperative Fluid Therapy


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

44

Postoperative Fluid Therapy

Goal of Fluid Therapy 528
Causes of Hypovolemia 528
Indications and Duration of IV Fluid Administration 529
Determining the Appropriate Volume of Fluid Infusion 529
IV Fluids Immediately after Surgery 530
    Ringer's lactate 531
    Normal saline 531
    PlasmaLyte 531
    Human albumin 531
    Other colloids 531
    Blood transfusion 532
Potassium Supplementation 532
    Importance 532
    Timing of supplementation 532
        Late administration 532
        Early administration 532
    Strategy of administration 533
Caloric Supplementation 533
IV Fluids during the Subsequent Postoperative Period 533
    Maintenance IV fluids 533
Monitoring 534

Postoperative fluid therapy is crucial for managing patients' fluid needs, ensuring their physiological stability, maintaining hydration and tissue perfusion, restoring fluid balance, and supporting recovery during the postoperative period. The administration of fluid and electrolytes during the postoperative period depends on a thorough patient evaluation, and no single postoperative fluid regimen suits everyone [1].

THE GOAL OF FLUID THERAPY

The aim of postoperative fluid therapy is to keep the patient normovolemic, maintain an adequate circulating blood volume, optimize organ perfusion, promote wound healing, provide adequate calories to prevent catabolism and prevent complications such as hypovolemia, fluid overload, electrolyte imbalances, and acid-base disturbances.

In postoperative patients, the major principles of management of fluid balance are:

- To replace ongoing losses (hemorrhage, drainage, third space losses, and insensible losses)
- To provide maintenance requirements
- To correct preexisting deficits (preoperative and intraoperative losses)

CAUSES OF HYPOVOLEMIA

Hypovolemia and hypotension are common postoperative complications, and their important causes include:

- Bleeding: Intraoperative and postoperative blood loss.
- Fluid deficit: Inadequate correction of the preoperative starvation (nothing by mouth-NPO) deficit, utilization of "zero-balance" or "restrictive fluid strategy" to replace intraoperative losses, failure to adequately replace maintenance fluid requirements during prolonged surgeries, and ongoing fluid losses from the gastrointestinal tract (such as vomiting and diarrhea).

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Kayilioglu SI, Dinc T, Sozen I, et al. Postoperative fluid management. World J Crit Care Med. 2015;4(3):192–201.
2. Sweeney RM, McKendry RA, Bedi A. Perioperative intravenous fluid therapy for adults. Ulster Med J. 2013;82(3):171–8.
3. Powell-Tuck J, Gosling P, Lobo DN, et al. GIFTASUP: British Consensus Guidelines on Intravenous Fluid Therapy for Adult Surgical Patients. Revised 7 March 2011. Available at: https://www.bapen.org.uk/pdfs/bapen_pubs/giftasup.pdf [accessed on 3 June 2023].
4. Thiele RH, Raghunathan K, Brudney CS, et al. American Society for Enhanced Recovery (ASER) and Perioperative Quality Initiative (POQI) joint consensus statement on perioperative fluid management within an enhanced recovery pathway for colorectal surgery. Perioper Med (Lond) 2016;5:24.
5. Feldheiser A, Aziz O, Baldini G, et al. Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS) for gastrointestinal surgery, part 2: consensus statement for anaesthesia practice. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2016;60(3):289–334.
6. Miller TE, Myles PS. Perioperative fluid therapy for major surgery. Anesthesiology. 2019;130(5):825–832.
7. O'Rourke K, Morrison B, Sen S, et al. Fluid management for enhanced recovery surgery. 2019;2:37.
8. Lewis SJ, Egger M, Sylvester PA, et al. Early enteral feeding versus "nil by mouth" after gastrointestinal surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of controlled trials. BMJ. 2001;323(7316):773–6.
9. Malhotra N, Khanna S, Pasrija S, et al. Early oral hydration and its impact on bowel activity after elective caesarean section: Our experience. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 2005;120(1):53–6.
10. Makaryus R, Miller TE, Gan TJ. Current concepts of fluid management in enhanced recovery pathways. Br J Anaesth. 2018;120(2):376–383.
11. Moemen ME. Fluid therapy: Too much or too little. Egyptian Journal of Anaesthesia 2010;26(4):313–318.
12. National, Clinical Guideline Centre UK. "Intravenous Fluid Therapy: Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital" (2013).
13. Li W. Fluid Therapy in Post-operative care. Perioperative Care. York teaching hospitals NHS foundation trust Version 1.0 (08/09/2017) [Internet]. Available from: https://www.yorkperioperativemedicine.nhs.uk/health-professionals/preoperative-care/post-operative-care/fluid-therapy/. Accessed June 3, 2023.
14. Parker T, Brealey D, Dyson A, et al. Optimising organ perfusion in the high-risk surgical and critical care patient: a narrative review. Br J Anaesth. 2019;123(2):170–176.
15. Malbrain MLNG, Langer T, Annane D, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy in the perioperative and critical care setting: Executive summary of the International Fluid Academy (IFA). Ann Intensive Care. 2020;10(1):64.
16. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Maintenance intravenous fluids in acutely ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(14):1350–60.

17. Chung HM, Kluge R, Schrier RW, et al. Postoperative hyponatremia: a prospective study. Arch Intern Med 1986;146(2):333–6.
18. Steele A, Gowrishankar M, Abrahamson S, et al. Postoperative hyponatremia despite near-isotonic saline infusion: a phenomenon of desalination. Ann Intern Med 1997;126(1):20–5.
19. Plain D5W or hypotonic saline solutions post-op could result in acute hyponatremia and death in healthy children. ISMP Medication Safety Alert 2009;7:1–4.
20. Winata AS, Jen WY, Teng ML, et al. Intravenous maintenance fluid tonicity and hyponatremia after major surgery- a cohort study. Int J Surg. 2019;67:1–7.
21. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Prevention of hospital-acquired hyponatremia: a case for using isotonic saline. Pediatrics 2003;111(2):227–30.
22. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Water water everywhere: standardizing postoperative fluid therapy with 0.9% normal saline. Anesth Analg. 2010;110(2):293–5.
23. Oh GJ, Sutherland SM. Perioperative fluid management and postoperative hyponatremia in children. Pediatr Nephrol. 2016;31(1):53–60.
24. Burdett E, Dushianthan A, Bennett-Guerrero E, et al. Perioperative buffered versus non-buffered fluid administration for surgery in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;12:CD004089.
25. Lehr AR, Rached-d’Astous S, Parker M, et al. Impact of balanced versus unbalanced fluid resuscitation on clinical outcomes in critically ill children: protocol for a systematic review and meta-analysis.Syst Rev. 2019;8(1):195.
26. Miller TE, Bunke M, Nisbet P, et al. Fluid resuscitation practice patterns in intensive care units of the USA: a cross-sectional survey of critical care physicians. Perioper Med (Lond) 2016;5:15.
27. Jonsson AB, Perner A. Changes from 2012 to 2015 in intravenous fluid solutions issued to hospital departments. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2017;61(5):532–538.
28. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. New Engl J Med 2018;378(9):829–839.
29. Semler MW, Kellum JA. Balanced crystalloid solutions. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2019;199(8):952–960.
30. Gladden LB. Lactate metabolism: A new paradigm for the third millennium. J. Physiol. 2004;558(Pt 1):5–30.
31. Tommasino C, Picozzi V. Volume and electrolyte management. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol. 2007;21(4):497–516.
32. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation fluids. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(13):1243–51.
33. Reddy S, Weinberg L, Young P. Crystalloid fluid therapy. Crit Care. 2016;20:59.
34. Ryden SE, Oberman HA. Compatibility of common intravenous solutions with CPD blood. transfusion. 1975;15(3):250–5.
35. Wakim KG. ‘‘Normal’’ 0.9 per cent salt solution is neither ‘‘normal’’ nor physiological. JAMA 1970;214(9):1710.
36. Kellum JA. Abnormal saline and the history of intravenous fluids. Nat. Rev. Nephrol. 2018;14(6):358–360.
37. Reid F, Lobo DN, Williams RN, et al. (Ab)normal saline and physiological Hartmann’s solution: a randomized double-blind crossover study. Clin Sci (Lond). 2003;104(1):17–24.
38. Lobo DN, Awad S. Should chloride-rich crystalloids remain the mainstay of fluid resuscitation to prevent “pre-renal” acute kidney injury? con. Kidney International. 2014;86(6):1096–1105.
39. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Glassford N, et al. Chloride-liberal vs. Chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration and acute kidney injury: an extended analysis. Intensive Care Med 2015;41(2):257–64.
40. Heng Li, Sun SR, Yap JQ, et al. 0.9% saline is neither normal nor physiological. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B. 2016;17(3):181–187.
41. Maheshwari K, Turan A, Makarova N, et al. Saline versus lactated ringer’s solution: The saline or Lactated Ringer’s (SOLAR) trial. Anesthesiology. 2020;132(4):614–24.
42. Mythen MG, Swart M, Acheson N, et al. Perioperative fluid management: Consensus statement from the enhanced recovery partnership. Perioper Med (Lond) 2012;1:2.
43. Shaw AD, Bagshaw SM, Goldstein SL, et al. Major complications, mortality, and resource utilization after open abdominal surgery: 0.9% saline compared to Plasma Lyte. Ann Surg 2012;255(5):821–829.
44. Rizoli S. PlasmaLyte. J Trauma 2011;70(5 Suppl):S17–8.
45. Ergin B, Kapucu A, Guerci P, et al. The role of bicarbonate precursors in balanced fluids during haemorrhagic shock with and without compromised liver function. British Journal of Anaesthesia 2016;117(4):521–8.
46. Weinberg L, Collins N, Van Mourik K, et al. PlasmaLyte 148: A clinical review. World J Crit Care Med. 2016;5(4):235–250.
47. Wiedermann CJ. Phases of fluid management and the roles of human albumin solution in perioperative and critically ill patients. Curr Med Res Opin. 2020;36(12):1961–1973.
48. Carson JL, Grossman BJ, Kleinman S, et al. Red blood cell transfusion: A clinical practice guideline from the AABB. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157(1):49–58.
49. Walsh SR, Walsh CJ. Intravenous fluid-associated morbidity in postoperative patients. Ann R Coll Surg Engl. 2005;87(2):126–30.
50. Harris B, Schopflin C, Khaghani C, et al. Perioperative intravenous fluid prescribing: a multi-centre audit. Perioper Med (Lond). 2015;4:15.
51. Lu G, Yan Q, Huang Y, et al. Prevention and control system of hypokalemia in fast recovery after abdominal surgery. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp. 2013;74:68–73.

52. Muhammad Ali S, Shaikh N, Shahid F, et al. Hypokalemia Leading to Postoperative Critical Arrhythmias: Case Reports and Literature Review. Cureus. 2020;12(5):e8149.
53. Zhu Q, Li X, Tan F, et al. Prevalence and risk factors for hypokalemia in patients scheduled for laparoscopic colorectal resection and its association with post-operative recovery. BMC Gastroenterol. 2018;18(1):152.
54. Prescribing Intravenous Fluids for Adults. Fluid and Electrolyte Guideline Working Party. Queensland Health 2016. Available at: https://www.health.qld.gov.au/__data/assets/pdf_file/0024/700089/ivfluid-glines-adult.pdf (Accessed on 4 June 2023).
55. Rassam SS, Counsell DJ. Perioperative fluid therapy. Contin Educ Anaesth Crit Care and Pain 2005;5(5):161–165.
56. Lu G, Xu L, Zhong Y, et al. Significance of serum potassium level monitoring during the course of post-operative rehabilitation in patients with hypokalemia. World Journal of Surgery. 2014;38(4):790–794.
57. Yang Y, Yang J, Yao X, et al. Association between Blood Potassium Level and Recovery of Postoperative Gastrointestinal Motility during Continuous Renal Replacement Therapy in Patient Undergoing Open Abdominal Surgery. Biomed Res Int. 2019;2019:6392751.
58. Miller TE, Roche AM, Mythen M. Fluid management and goal-directed therapy as an adjunct to enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS). Can J Anesth/J Can Anesth. 2014;62(2):158–68.
59. Padhi S, Bullock I, Li L, et al. Intravenous fluid therapy for adults in hospital: summary of NICE guidance. BMJ 2013;347:f7073.
60. Balakumar V, Murugan R, Sileanu FE, et al. Both Positive and Negative Fluid Balance May Be Associated With Reduced Long-Term Survival in the Critically Ill. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(8):e749–e757.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 45:

TURP Syndrome

Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

45 TURP Syndrome

Definition 537
Incidence 537
Risk Factors 537
Role of Irrigation Fluid 538
  Distilled sterile water 538
  Glycine 538
  Normal saline 538
Pathophysiology 539
  Circulatory overload 539
  Dilution and hyponatremia 539
  Hemolysis due to hypotonic fluid 539
Signs and Symptoms 539
Prevention 540
Management 541
  Termination of surgery 541
  Diuretics and fluid restriction 541
  Hypertonic saline 541
  Hemodialysis 541
  Supportive measures 541
Monitoring 541

Transurethral resection of prostrate (TURP) is the second most common surgical procedure (after cataract extraction) done in men over the age of 65 years. Transurethral resection of prostrate syndrome is rare but potentially dreaded complication of urological endoscopic surgery [1].

DEFINITION

TURP syndrome is a distinct clinical entity characterized by a constellation of sign-symptoms secondary to neurological, cardiovascular and electrolyte imbalance resulting from the absorption of the irrigation fluid through prostatic venous sinusoids or breaches in the prostatic capsule during TURP.

INCIDENCE

The prevalence of TURP syndrome, previously reported to be as high as 2% to 12% in earlier literature, [2, 3], has significantly decreased to 1% or less with the adoption of safer techniques, as demonstrated in recent literature [4, 5].

RISK FACTORS

Following patient and technique-related factors carry a high likelihood of developing TURP syndrome [1, 6–8]:

- Patient-related factors contributing to the development of TURP syndrome include age over 80 years, prostate weight exceeding 75 gm, and resected prostate weight over 45 gm.
- Technique-related factors contributing to fluid absorption during TURP and the development of TURP syndrome include resection time over 90 minutes using Monopolar electrosurgery technique, the use of hypotonic irrigation fluid, irrigation volume greater than 30 liters, high irrigation pressure (height >70 cm), inadequate effluent through the

resectoscope, intermittent drainage of fluid, the use of a monopolar instead of a bipolar diathermy system, and an inexperienced surgeon.

ROLE OF IRRIGATION FLUID

The type of irrigation fluid used during TURP surgery can influence the risk of TURP syndrome, with hypotonic irrigation fluids specifically posing an increased risk for its development. Commonly used solutions in TURP include both non-electrolyte solutions like distilled water, 1.5% glycine, 5% dextrose, sorbitol, and mannitol solutions, as well as electrolyte solutions such as normal saline and Ringer's lactate.

A. Distilled sterile water

Due to its affordability, easy availability, and superior visualization compared to 1.5% glycine and normal saline, distilled water is frequently utilized as a substitute for glycine in TURP in resource-limited settings of low-income countries [9, 10]. Due to its extreme hypotonicity compared to glycine and other irrigation fluids, distilled water carries a higher risk of TURP syndrome, including risks of haemolysis, dilutional hyponatremia, shock, and renal failure [11]. Due to high risk of severe adverse effects, currently most of centers do not use distilled water for TURP.

B. Glycine

Irrigation fluid, specifically glycine 1.5% with an osmolality of 200 mOsm/L, is widely utilized for the traditional therapeutic endoscopic urologic procedure TURP. It is preferred due to its favorable characteristics, such as low electrical conductivity and a refractive index similar to water, ensuring clear vision during the procedure. Despite its hypotonic osmolality, glycine is nonhemolytic as it effectively penetrates red blood cells, maintaining their structural integrity and preventing cell swelling or rupture. However, it is crucial to note that the osmolality of 1.5% glycine at 200 mOsm/L can cause serum electrolyte dilution and result in hyponatremia due to its large volume absorption. It is important to be aware that the rapid absorption of glycine can be toxic, leading to increased plasma ammonia levels and potential adverse effects such as cardiodepressant effects and renal toxicity [12]. Due to potential risk of metabolic and electrolyte disturbances, and the availability of safer options, trend to use glycine as preferred irrigation fluid for TURP is declining [13, 14].

C. Normal saline

An isotonic irrigation fluid, normal saline, is commonly used as the preferred and safer choice for TURP but can only be utilized when employing the bipolar electrosurgery technique [15, 16]. The risk of hyponatremia and TURP syndrome is very low when saline is used as an irrigation fluid for TURP, due to its slightly higher sodium concentration and osmolality compared to plasma (154 mEq/L vs. 140 mEq/L and 308 mOsm/L vs. 290 mOsm/L, respectively) [13, 17, 18]. However, it is important to note that the absorption of a large volume of normal saline can lead to adverse effects such as volume overload, heart failure, and hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis [15, 19, 20].

Caution: Do not use normal saline while using monopolar electrosurgery for TURP because saline conducts electricity and diffuses the current, making conventional monopolar cautery ineffective for cutting or coagulating.

Irrigation fluids like 5% dextrose, sorbitol and mannitol are used less frequently.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

During a TURP procedure, irrigation fluid can be absorbed through the prostatic venous sinuses or directly into the systemic circulation via disrupted venous channels, resulting in systemic effects due to rapid changes in osmolality and circulating volume [21]. The severity of TURP syndrome is closely related to the rate, volume, and composition of the systemically absorbed irrigation fluid. Various factors influence these factors, including electrolyte concentrations, osmolality, solute content, irrigation fluid delivery pressures, surgery duration, and surgical skill.

Major disturbances due to TURP syndrome are summarized below:

A. Circulatory overload

The average rate of irrigation fluid absorption through the venous network of the prostatic bed during TURP is reported to be 10–30 ml/min of operating time [22]. Typically, approximately 1 liter of fluid is absorbed within one hour. However, when a larger volume of fluid is absorbed, it can result in increased blood volume, leading to circulatory overload. This, in turn, can cause elevated systolic and diastolic blood pressure and potentially lead to heart failure, resulting in pulmonary edema.

B. Dilution and hyponatremia

The excessive absorption of hypotonic irrigating fluids, such as distilled water, 1.5% glycine, or sorbitol, during TURP can lead to the dilution of serum electrolytes, resulting in hyponatremia. This dilution, caused by the hypotonic fluid, increases the water content within the brain, which can potentially cause neurological symptoms.

C. Hemolysis due to hypotonic fluid

When a hypotonic irrigation fluid, such as sterile water, is absorbed in a large volume, its hypotonicity can result in the movement of water into red blood cells, leading to their swelling and potential rupture, which can cause hemolysis. The release of hemoglobin from ruptured cells can contribute to complications such as renal dysfunction and coagulopathy.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

TURP syndrome can manifest with variable clinical presentations, ranging from mild cases that may go unnoticed to severe and life-threatening situations. The severity of symptoms depends on the extent of the abrupt reduction in serum osmolarity, which leads to hyponatremia, as well as the severity of volume overload and intravascular hemolysis.

The earliest common clinical presentation of TURP syndrome includes headaches, anxiety, nausea, bradycardia, irritability, confusion, and visual disturbances, such as flashing lights [23, 24]. Development of intraoperative hypertension is indicative of hypervolemia.

In severe cases of TURP syndrome, the clinical presentation can be life-threatening and may include profound hyponatremia, leading to neurological symptoms such as altered mental status, stupor, seizure, and even coma. Patients may experience severe cardiovascular instability, causing dyspnea, chest pain, hypoxia, and pulmonary edema. If not treated promptly, the patient may develop cyanosis, hypotension, and even cardiac arrest. Additionally, the presence of hemolysis may manifest as hematuria, jaundice, and acute kidney injury, while hypothermia can occur due to the rapid absorption of large volumes of irrigation fluid.

Diagnosis of TURP syndrome is difficult and often delayed when TURP is done under general anesthesia. Unexplained hypertension and refractory bradycardia are the very important warning signs of TURP syndrome. Therefore, all patients undergoing TURP should be closely monitored with electrocardiogram (ECG) and frequent blood pressure monitoring.

Patients with TURP syndrome can experience symptoms related to the toxicity of solute contents in irrigation fluid, such as glycine-induced visual abnormalities and sorbitol-induced gastrointestinal disturbances.

PREVENTION

Measures used to minimize the risk of complication TURP Syndrome include [1, 5, 25–27]:

- **Patient selection:** Identify individuals at higher risk of TURP syndrome and correct possible modifiable factors. Patients with preexisting hyponatremia are at greater risk of developing TURP syndrome, so patients on a salt-restricted diet or diuretic therapy need correction before surgery.
- **Selecting an appropriate irrigation fluid:** Isotonic solutions, such as normal saline, are preferred to minimize the risk of hyponatremia [28]. To prevent TURP Syndrome, it is advisable to restrict volume or avoid using hypotonic fluids like glycine and sterile or distilled water.
- **Fluid limitation:** Careful monitoring and limiting the volume of irrigation fluid used during TURP procedure can help prevent excessive fluid absorption. Sparingly use intravenous fluids, if needed and avoid the use of hypotonic IV fluids to minimize the risk of TURP syndrome.
- **Bipolar TURP:** The new system, bipolar TURP, is preferred over the monopolar TURP system because it uses normal saline for irrigation, maintaining the balance of electrolytes and preventing TURP syndrome [29, 30]. The bipolar TURP procedure allows the use of isotonic electrolyte solutions like normal saline for irrigation, unlike the monopolar TURP technique, where non-electrolyte hypotonic irrigation fluids are used, carrying a high risk of TURP syndrome [5].
- **Operative modifications:** Various intraoperative measures that can help prevent TURP syndrome include keeping the patient horizontal and avoiding the Trendelenburg position, limiting resection time to one hour, considering staged procedures for resecting large prostates to avoid prolonged operative times, and preserving the prostatic capsule by avoiding aggressive resection near it.
- **Fluid bag height:** The rate of fluid absorption during TURP is influenced by the hydrostatic pressure of the irrigation fluid at the prostatic bed. To prevent excessive absorption, it is important to deliver the irrigation fluid at the lowest required pressure and avoid setting the fluid bag height greater than 60 cm above the patient.
- **Avoid increased bladder pressure:** Ensuring smooth bladder drainage is the most crucial factor in minimizing fluid absorption during TURP and preventing TURP syndrome, which can be achieved by implementing the following methods: suprapubic continuous drainage using Reiter's cannula or trocar cystostomy, utilizing a continuous flow irrigation system, and using a large diameter catheter to maintain low bladder pressure.
- **Experienced surgeons:** Having TURP procedures performed by experienced surgeons can reduce complications,

shorten surgical times, and improve outcomes.

- **Using regional anesthesia:** Performing a TURP under spinal or epidural anesthesia is preferred because the awake and alert state allows for early diagnosis of TURP syndrome, whereas general anesthesia may mask its symptoms [23, 24].
- **Monitoring during TURP:** Continuous monitoring of the patient's vital signs can help detect early signs of TURP syndrome. Measure the quantity of fluid absorbed and stop the procedure at predetermined absorption thresholds.
- **Early intervention:** Prompt recognition of TURP syndrome symptoms and immediate intervention including use of diuretics, can prevent the progression to severe or life-threatening complications.

MANAGEMENT

Early and prompt treatment of TURP syndrome will prevent its serious central nervous system and cardiac complications. The treatment is planned according to the severity of the symptoms, and in asymptomatic patients with mild hyponatremia, specific therapy is not necessary. The treatment of symptomatic patients is summarized below [21, 23].

A. Termination of surgery

When TURP syndrome is diagnosed, the surgical procedure is terminated as early as possible.

B. Diuretics and fluid restriction

Discontinue IV fluids and administer furosemide at 1 mg/kg to increase renal water excretion, leading to an increased urine output, which helps eliminate large volumes of absorbed irrigation fluid and reduces circulatory overload.

C. Hypertonic saline

To correct severe hyponatremia in symptomatic patients with severe neurological symptoms, such as severe headaches, confusion, altered sensorium, convulsions, and coma, administer 100 ml of 3% hypertonic saline rapidly (to be given over 20 minutes) along with IV furosemide. In cases of acute severe hyponatremia, the administration of 3% NaCl as a rapid intermittent bolus (RIB) is preferred over slow continuous infusion, as recommended for the treatment of acute hyponatremia in recent guidelines. [31–33]. To guide further administration of 3% saline, measure serum sodium and its rate of correction by frequent estimation, and closely monitor the neurological status. Continue 3% saline until neurological symptoms improve.

D. Hemodialysis

Hemodialysis is indicated in a few severe cases of TURP syndrome characterized by marked hyponatremia, volume overload, and acute kidney injury. In such cases, diuretics may be less effective, and hemodialysis effectively corrects hyponatremia, removes excess fluid, and eliminates toxic metabolites of irrigation fluids such as glycine, sorbitol, or mannitol.

E. Supportive measures

This involves administering oxygen to treat pulmonary edema and hypoxia, managing seizures with medications such as diazepam, barbiturates, or dilantin, using inotropes to treat hypotension, correcting hypocalcemia, and cautiously transfusing blood with packed red cells to manage anemia.

MONITORING

Monitoring of the management of TURP syndrome includes:

- Continuous monitoring of vital signs, such as blood pressure, heart rate, and oxygen levels, to assess the patient's overall condition.

- Assessing neurological status for any improvement or deterioration in symptoms.
- Meticulous volume assessment, maintaining strict intake-output charting and daily weight to assess the correction of volume overload, plan fluid intake, and adjust diuretic dosages.
- Closely monitoring laboratory tests, including serum electrolytes (especially sodium), osmolality, renal function tests, complete blood count (CBC), and coagulation profile.

REFERENCES

1. Hawary A, Mukhtar K, Sinclair A, et al. Transurethral resection of the prostate syndrome: almost gone but not forgotten. J Endourol. 2009;23(12):2013–20.
2. Koshiba K, Egawa S, Ohori M, et al. Dose transurethral resection of the prostate pose a risk to life? 22-year outcome. J Urol. 1995;153(5):1506–1509.
3. Okamura K, Terai A, Nojiri Y, et al. Evolution of common clinical path for transurethral resection of prostate (TURP). Nihon Hinyokika Gakkai Zasshi Jpn J Urol. 2007;98(1):3–8.
4. The PLASMA system for transurethral resection and haemostasis of the prostate. Medical technologies guidance. January 6, 2021. Available from: www.nice.org.uk/guidance/mtg53.
5. Zeng XT, Jin YH, Liu TZ, et al. Clinical practice guideline for transurethral plasmakinetic resection of prostate for benign prostatic hyperplasia (2021 Edition). Mil Med Res. 2022;9(1):14.
6. Mebust WK, Holtgrewe HL, Cockett ATK, et al. Transurethral prostatectomy: Immediate and postoperative complications. A cooperative study of 13 participating institutions evaluating 3,885 patients. 1989. J Urol. 2002;167(2 Pt 2):999–1003.
7. Fujiwara A, Nakahira J, Sawai T, et al. Prediction of clinical manifestations of transurethral resection syndrome by preoperative ultrasonographic estimation of prostate weight. BMC Urol. 2014;14:67.
8. Nakahira J, Sawai T, Fujiwara A, et al. Transurethral resection syndrome in elderly patients: a retrospective observational study. BMC Anesthesiol. 2014;14:30.
9. Watcharaporn T, Choonraklai V. Sterile water give better visualization than 0.9%NaCl and 1.5% Glycine irrigation in Transurethral resection of prostate gland. The Thai Journal of UROLOGY. 2008;29(1):26–30.
10. Meena R, Maranna H, Bains L, et al. Biochemical Changes Using Sterile Water and 1.5% Glycine in TURP: A Randomized Study. MAMC J Med Sci 2020;6(2):81–9.
11. Chen SS, Lin AT, Chen KK, et al. Hemolysis in transurethral resection of the prostate using distilled water as the irrigant. J Chin Med Assoc. 2006;69(6):270–5.
12. Park HP. Irrigation fluids used for transurethral resection of the prostate: a double-edged sword. Korean J Anesthesiol. 2019;72(2):87–88.
13. Yousef AA, Suliman GA, Elashry OM, et al. A randomized comparison between three types of irrigating fluids during transurethral resection in benign prostatic hyperplasia. BMC Anesthesiol. 2010;10:7.
14. Hahn RG. Glycine 1.5% for Irrigation Should Be Abandoned. Urol Int 2013;91(3):249–255.
15. Michielsen DPJ, Debacker T, De Boe V, et al. Bipolar transurethral resection in saline-an alternative surgical treatment for bladder outlet obstruction? J Urol. 2007;178(5):2035–9.
16. Cheung GY, Tempany S, Man Chu MH. Complications Associated With Intraoperative Use of Irrigation Fluid for Endoscopic Procedures. Update in Anaesthesia. World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists Published 17 September 2019.
17. Zeltser I, Pearle MS, Bagley DH. Saline is our friend. Urology 2009;74(1):28–9.
18. Michielsen DPJ, Coomans D, Braeckman JG, et al. Bipolar transurethral resection in saline: the solution to avoid hyponatraemia and transurethral resection syndrome. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010;44(4):228–35.
19. Johansson J, Lindahl M, Gyllencreutz E, et al. Symptomatic absorption of isotonic saline during transcervical endometrial resection. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2017;61(1):121–124.
20. Okuma N, Hino H, Kuroki M, et al. Symptomatic absorption of normal saline during transurethral resection of the prostate: a case report. JA Clin Rep. 2022;8(1):43.
21. O'Donnell AM, TH Foo I. Anaesthesia for transurethral resection of the prostate. Continuing Education in Anaesthesia Critical Care & Pain 2009;9(3):92–96.
22. Gravenstein D. Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) syndrome: a review of the pathophysiology and management. Anesth Analg 1997;84(2):438–46.
23. Demirel I, Ozer AB, Bayar MK, et al. TURP syndrome and severe hyponatremia under general anaesthesia. BMJ Case Rep. 2012;2012:bcr-2012–006899.
24. McGowan-Smyth S, Vasdev N, Gowrie-Mohan S. Spinal Anesthesia Facilitates the Early Recognition of TUR Syndrome. Curr Urol. 2016;9(2):57–61.
25. Rassweiler J, Teber D, Kuntz R, et al. Complications of transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)–incidence, management, and prevention. Eur Urol 2006;50(5):969–79.
26. Aziz W, Ather MH. Frequency of electrolyte derangement after transurethral resection of prostate: need for postoperative electrolyte monitoring. Adv Urol. 2015;2015:415735.
27. Gamit B, Thakkar NB. Role of preoperative assessment of serum sodium in transurethral

resection of prostate to avoid transurethral resection of prostate syndrome: a comparative study. Int Surg J. 2020;7(8):2630–5.

28. Virkar ND, Nerurkar AA, Patkar GA, et al. Effect of Saline Irrigation for Transurethral Resection of Prostate on Acid Base and Electrolyte StatusA Prospective Cohort Study. Journal of Clinical and Diagnostic Research. 2022;16(1):UC01-UC04.
29. Issa MM. Technological advances in transurethral resection of the prostate: bipolar versus monopolar TURP. J Endourol 2008;22(8):1587–95.
30. Cleves A, Dimmock P, Hewitt N, et al. The TURis System for Transurethral Resection of the Prostate: A NICE Medical Technology Guidance. Appl Health Econ Health Policy. 2016;14(3):267–79.
31. Hoorn EJ, Zietse R. Diagnosis and treatment of hyponatremia: compilation of the guidelines. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2017;28(5):1340–1349.
32. Garrahy A, Dineen R, Hannon AM, et al. Continuous Versus Bolus Infusion of Hypertonic Saline in the Treatment of Symptomatic Hyponatremia Caused by SIAD. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2019;104(9):3595–3602.
33. Baek SH, Jo YH, Ahn S, et al. Risk of Overcorrection in Rapid Intermittent Bolus vs Slow Continuous Infusion Therapies of Hypertonic Saline for Patients With Symptomatic Hyponatremia: The SALSA Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Intern Med. 2021;181(1):81–92.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

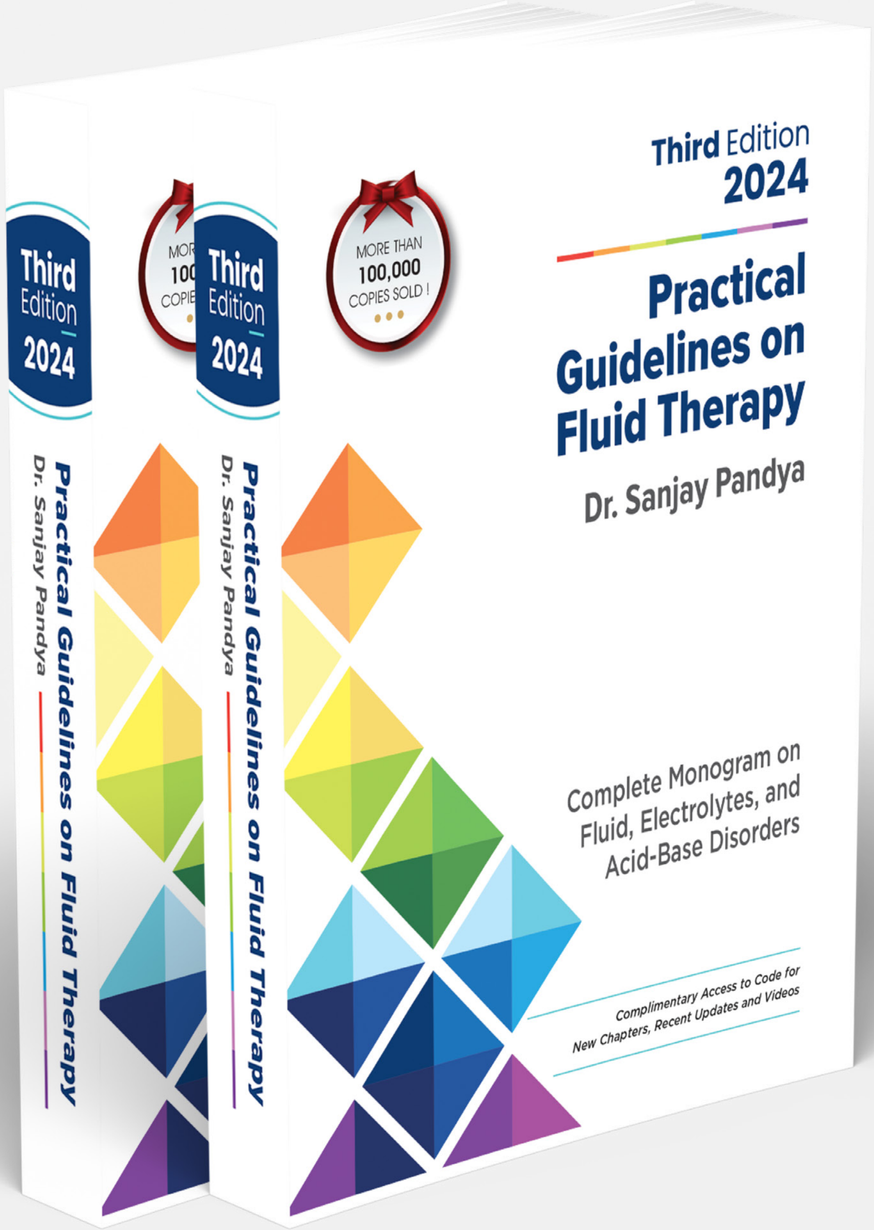
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 46:

Burns


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

46

Burns

Importance **544**
Goals... **545**
Indication of IV Fluids **545**
Planning Fluid Therapy on Different Post-Burn Days.................................. **545**
Initial Fluid Resuscitation **546**
  Vascular access 546
  Choice of replacement fluid.......... 546
    Crystalloid resuscitation 546
    Colloid resuscitation 547
    Hypertonic resuscitation fluid ...548
  Formulas used to calculate the fluid volume 549
  Volume overload and fluid creep .. 550
  Role of blood transfusion.............. 550
Fluid Therapy 24-48 Hours **551**
Fluid Therapy after 48 Hours.......... **551**
Monitoring....................................... **552**
  Clinical monitoring 552
  Laboratory tests............................ 553
  Noninvasive monitoring 553
  Invasive monitoring 553
Endpoints of Resuscitation **553**
Complications of Fluid Resuscitation **553**
Nutrition Route and Timing **554**
Oliguria in Burns **555**
Fluid in High Voltage Electric Injuries **555**

Fluid management in burns is a crucial aspect of burn care as it significantly impacts patient outcomes, particularly in severe cases where larger volumes of IV fluids must be administered within the first hours, exceeding the needs of other trauma patients [1].

However, it is a complex and controversial topic, as no one-size-fits-all approach can be universally applied to every clinical scenario. Therefore, it is essential to have a comprehensive understanding of fluid therapy in order to make proper decisions regarding the selection, volume, and administration of fluids from the array of available fluid regimens.

IMPORTANCE OF FLUID MANAGEMENT

Effective, optimal, and timely fluid management is crucial for resuscitation in burn patients because:

- Severe hypovolemia and hypotension in severe burns can lead to life-threatening shock or shock-induced renal failure [2].
- Delayed or insufficient fluid resuscitation is associated with higher mortality [3].
- Severe hypotension and suboptimal fluid resuscitation cause rapid conversion of viable but ischemic

deep-dermal burn to non-viable full-thickness burn, leading to greater mortality [4].

- Acute loss of protein (especially in the first 24 hours) due to leaky capillaries in the burned tissue causes hypoproteinemia, which accentuates edema formation in the burn as well as non-burn areas. Proper fluid therapy is essential for its prevention.
- Over-aggressive fluid therapy is harmful as it can lead to fluid creep and other complications [3, 5].

CAUSES OF HYPOTENSION

Causes of hypovolemia and hypotension in burns are multifactorial, including extensive loss of plasma from damaged blood vessels, increased capillary permeability, fluid shifts into the interstitial space, and loss of albumin and other proteins [6]. Additionally, the release of inflammatory mediators can lead to vasodilation and reduced systemic vascular resistance [7]Decreased cardiac output, which occurs in the early postinjury phase, also contributes to hypotension [8]. The combination of these factors can result in inadequate circulating blood volume and impaired tissue perfusion in burn patients.

GOALS

Providing timely and effective fluid resuscitation in burns is vital because a delay of more than 2 hours post-burn injury is associated with higher complications and mortality [4]. The objectives of proper fluid therapy in burns are:

- To restore and maintain adequate intravascular volume, optimize tissue perfusion, and improve oxygenation.
- To replace lost fluids, prevent complications such as hypovolemic shock and organ dysfunction, and correct electrolyte imbalances.
- To preserve heat-injured but viable soft tissue.
- To avoid the detrimental effects of over-resuscitation and associated complications like fluid creep.

INDICATIONS OF IV FLUIDS ADMINISTRATION

Common indications of intravenous fluid administration in burns are [9, 10]:

- Adults with more than 15–20% nonsuperficial burns.
- Children with more than 10% burns.
- Electric burns with hemochromogens in the urine.
- Patients at the extremes of age or elderly patients with preexisting cardiac or pulmonary disease, where the compensatory response to even minor hypovolemia is reduced.

Estimation of burn area: The "Rule of Nines" in burns is the most popular and quick method to estimate the percentage of total body surface area (TBSA) affected by burns: Head and neck (9%), each upper limb (front and back) (9% each, total 18%), anterior trunk (18%), posterior trunk (18%), each lower limb (front and back) (18% each, total 36%), and perineum (1%). The "Rule of Nines" provides a rough estimation but may not be precise for irregularly distributed burns or specific areas like the hands, feet, or face.

PLANNING FLUID THERAPY ON DIFFERENT POST-BURN DAYS

During the different stages of burns, the body undergoes varying degrees of fluid loss, resulting in the need for different volumes of fluids. Understanding the distinct pathophysiology during each stage is crucial for designing appropriate treatment strategies on different post-burn days.

For a basic understanding, fluid therapy in burns is broadly categorized into three phases:

A. Initial 24 hours

B. During the first 24–48 hours

C. Fluid therapy after 48 hours

A. INITIAL FLUID RESUSCITATION

During this period, the inflammatory response triggered by a burn injury results in increased capillary permeability and damaged blood vessels, leading to significant fluid loss from the blood vessels into the surrounding tissues. The leakage of fluid rich in sodium and proteins from the intravascular compartment into the interstitial spaces of the burn area contributes to the formation of edema. Hence, it is crucial to promptly and cautiously initiate IV fluid resuscitation during the initial phase to replace lost fluid, maintain blood pressure, and minimize edema formation.

Fluid therapy in burns is tailored based on factors such as the extent and degree of burn injury, hemodynamic status, coexisting morbid conditions, body weight, age, preexisting medical conditions, burn location, and time since the burn injury. To ensure adequate and effective fluid resuscitation during the initial phase of burns, it is crucial to establish appropriate vascular access, select the suitable replacement fluid, accurately determine the required fluid volume through proper calculations, and decide on the optimal rate of fluid administration.

Vascular access

Establishing vascular access is crucial for the timely and effective administration of large amounts of IV fluids, but it can be challenging in burn patients due to technical issues such as edema [11]. Commonly employed options for IV fluid administration include the reliable insertion of large bore IV in peripheral veins, with the utilization of vessels underlying burned skin if necessary. In cases where peripheral intravenous access is unavailable, alternatives such as tunneled central venous catheterization, central line placement, or the use of intraosseous access in emergent situations can be considered.

Choice of replacement fluid

The mainstays for initial fluid resuscitation in burns include the use of crystalloids like Ringer's lactate, normal saline, and PlasmaLyte, and colloids like albumin and hydroxyethyl starch. The selection of these fluids is individualized based on factors such as the severity of the burn, hemodynamic status, and response to therapy.

1. Crystalloid resuscitation

For initial fluid resuscitation in burns, the primary options are crystalloids such as Ringer's lactate, normal saline, and PlasmaLyte.

a. Ringer's lactate: Crystalloid solution Ringer's lactate (RL) is the recommended first-line intravenous fluid for initial fluid resuscitation in burns [9, 10, 12]. The preference for RL over normal saline is based on several reasons, which are as follows:

- RL is a balanced crystalloid solution that closely resembles plasma electrolyte composition, enabling the administration of large volumes without causing electrolyte imbalances.
- With a high sodium concentration of 130 mEq/L, RL effectively replaces the significant amount of sodium and water lost from the intravascular

space into the interstitial spaces of the burn area, correcting hypotension.

- RL is free of glucose, so it does not carry the risk of hyperglycemia and associated problems even when rapidly infused in large volumes.
- RL's conversion of lactate into bicarbonate helps correct metabolic acidosis commonly seen in burn patients.
- Using RL instead of normal saline for initial fluid resuscitation in burns prevents the risk of hyperchloremic acidosis associated with large volumes of normal saline.

b. Normal saline: Normal saline is an isotonic crystalloid solution that is widely available, inexpensive, and compatible with most medications. However, due to its 50% higher chloride concentration than plasma (154 mEq/L vs. 100 mEq/L), administering normal saline in large volumes can result in dilutional hyperchloremic acidosis, which makes it less favorable for initial fluid resuscitation in burns [3, 13]. Furthermore, normal saline lacks electrolytes such as potassium or calcium.

c. PlasmaLyte: PlasmaLyte, a newer balanced crystalloid solution similar to RL, is gaining popularity for its use in critically ill patients, including those with burn injuries [14]. Its utilization as the primary crystalloid solution for large burns is increasing due to its favorable characteristics, including a composition closer to plasma than RL and lactate as a bicarbonate precursor that can be metabolized even in patients with shock [15, 16]. However, the limited use of this fluid in burns is attributed to its high cost and the lack of evidence demonstrating its superiority over other fluids in burn management [17].

2. Colloid resuscitation

Colloids like albumin and fresh frozen plasma are commonly used, while hydroxyethyl starch and gelatins are avoided. The role of colloids in the initial resuscitation of burns is controversial, as their use is typically considered an adjunct to crystalloids rather than a primary choice of fluid. The limited utilization of colloids is primarily attributed to their higher cost and the absence of survival benefits [3, 18].

Capillary leakage is maximum within the initial 8 hours after the burn and persists for subsequent 24–48 hours [19]. Consequently, the use of colloids for resuscitation is generally avoided during the initial 8–12 hours, as it has minimal effect on intravascular retention due to the significantly high protein leakage [12, 20]. Furthermore, the use of colloids within 12 hours of a burn injury may have detrimental effects, as it can potentially worsen alveolar exudative inflammation [21].

However, judicious administration of colloids after 12–18 hours provides advantages, such as a reduction in the overall fluid volume requirement, a significant decrease in fluid load, and a minimized risk of "fluid creep" and edema formation [5, 18, 22].

a. Human albumin: Human albumin, the most widely used colloid, is recommended as an adjunct to crystalloid resuscitation in patients with severe burns and shock, particularly after the initial 12 to 18 hours [21]. Its major benefit lies in reducing the total volume requirement of crystalloid in burn patients during the early period, thereby reducing the risk of fluid overload and fluid creep [1, 23–28]. The use of albumin is suggested in patients with severe burns who have serum albumin concentrations below 30 gm/L [21] and a projected fluid volume requirement exceeding 6 mL/kg/%TBSA in 24 hours [29]. Notably, albumin administration decreases the occurrence of compartment syndrome, improves outcomes, and reduces mortality rates in patients undergoing burn shock resuscitation [25, 30].

b. Fresh frozen plasma (FFP): Natural colloids like human albumin and fresh frozen plasma are widely prescribed [31] and advocated in major burns [1, 19]. The use of FFP in burn resuscitation remains controversial, but recent literature suggests a growing trend of using FFP as a potential adjunct to crystalloids and as an alternative to albumin in severe burns because [32–35]:

- FFP effectively reduces the large amounts of crystalloid fluids required during burn resuscitation [18, 32, 36].
- Its composition is more consistent with the lost body fluid [21].
- FFP improves clotting factors and hemostasis and has a longer shelf life compared to albumin [37].
- FFP exerts a protective effect on the endothelium in burns by preventing the disruption of the endothelial glycocalyx, thus reducing the microvascular leak commonly associated with large burns [33, 38, 39].
- In the first study comparing FFP and albumin recently conducted, patients treated with FFP had significantly lower mortality [40]. However, further studies with larger sample sizes are needed to confirm these findings.
- FFP is preferred over albumin in certain guidelines [21].
- The risk of transfusion-transmitted infections is low due to recent advancements in screening techniques and more rigorous testing [41].
- In many resource-limited countries like India, FFP is preferred due to the limited availability and comparatively high cost of albumin [42]. However, the cost comparison between the two varies across different countries.

c. Hydroxyethyl starch: When hydroxyethyl starch (HES) was added to RL in severe burn injury, studies did not find a volume-sparing effect [43], and due to the lack of benefits and the increased risk of mortality, acute kidney injury and coagulopathy associated with HES [44, 45], recommendations strongly advise against its use in burns [46].

d. Gelatin: Gelatins are not recommended in burns as they have not shown superiority over crystalloids, and the evidence does not support their safety [1].

3. Hypertonic resuscitation fluid

Physiological considerations: Due to the distribution of sodium in the extracellular fluid (ECF), the sodium concentration of an IV fluid determines its ability to expand the ECF, including the intravascular volume, which plays a crucial role in maintaining hemodynamic stability. Due to its higher sodium concentration of 513 mEq/L, a smaller volume of 3% hypertonic saline is required for initial resuscitation compared to Ringer's lactate, which has a sodium concentration of 130 mEq/L. The osmolality of 3% hypertonic saline solution, which is significantly higher at 1027 mOsm/kg compared to the normal serum osmolality of around 285 mOsm/kg, creates an osmotic gradient.

Clinical considerations: Hypertonic fluid resuscitation is considered an attractive choice as it increases plasma osmolality, shifts water into the intravascular space, reduces intracellular water volume, limits the development of cellular edema, and also reduces the requirements of total resuscitation fluid volume and prevents fluid creep [9, 18]. However, its use should be approached cautiously due to the potential risks of hypernatremia, hyperchloremia, renal failure, and increased mortality rate [9, 47]. Based on current data, the use of hypertonic saline as a safe and viable adjunct to burn resuscitation is not supported [34].

Formulas used to calculate fluid volume

Numerous formulas have been proposed to calculate the appropriate resuscitative volume, but it is important to remember that these formulas serve as rough guides for predicting initial fluid resuscitation [48]. Subsequent infusion rates should be adjusted hourly based on individual responses rather than blindly following a set regimen.

The Parkland and modified Brooke formulas are the two most widely used and popular formulas for calculation in adults. It is important to note that the 24 hours for resuscitation is calculated from the time of the burn accident and not from the time of admission or initiation of treatment. It is also important to note that this formula provides an initial estimate and may require adjustments based on hourly urine output, the patient's clinical condition, and ongoing assessment of their fluid status.

1. Parkland formula: The Parkland formula, also known as the Baxter Formula, was developed in 1968 by Baxter and Shires, and it remains the most frequently used formula for calculating the volume required for burn resuscitation. The estimated requirement of Ringer's lactate for patients with burns in the first 24 hours can be calculated using the widely used Parkland formula as follows [49]:

$$\text{The Volume Required (ml)} = 4 \times \%\text{TBSA of Burns} \times \text{Body Weight (kg)}$$

For example, if a patient weighs 70 kilograms and has a burn affecting 30% of their TBSA, the fluid requirement in the first 24 hours would be:

$$\text{Fluid Volume} = 4\ \text{mL} \times 30\% \times 70\ \text{kg} = 8{,}400\ \text{mL or } 8.4\ \text{Liters}$$

Out of the total fluid requirement for the first 24 hours, half is administered within the first 8 hours following the burn injury, while the remaining half is given over the next 16 hours. This initial 50% volume administration within the first 8 hours is necessary to compensate for the maximum capillary leakage and the loss of protein and sodium-rich fluids that occur during this time. As the rate of fluid loss decreases after the initial 8 hours, a smaller volume is needed to meet the ongoing needs.

The calculated fluid should be administered as a continuous infusion at a constant flow rate, as administering a large amount of intravenous fluid in bolus form can result in increased edema, while slower infusion rates can lead to hemodynamic instability [50].

2. Modified Brooke formula: The modified Brooke formula provides a lower total volume for fluid resuscitation, aiming to prevent "fluid creep" or excessive fluid administration. The formula is as follows:

$$\text{The Volume Required (ml)} = 2 \times \%\text{TBSA of Burns} \times \text{Body Weight (kg)}$$

3. American Burn Association guideline: According to the American Burn Association (2008) recommendation, the initial rate of crystalloid fluid resuscitation in the first 24 hours post-burn is estimated to be 2–4 mL/kg/% TBSA [9]. This guideline is derived from the modified Brooke and Parkland formulas, which are widely used and accepted for burn resuscitation.

4. WHO formula for mass burn casualties: In 2021, the World Health Organization Technical Working Group on Burns (WHO TWGB) recommended an initial fluid rate of 100 mL/kg/24 h, either orally or intravenously, as a resuscitation formula for burns beyond 20% TBSA (total body surface area), which is suitable for resource-limited situations [51]. This formula offers the advantages of simplicity, usability, and safety for primary management, including transfers, while reducing the risk of early complications, particularly in situations such as mass burn casualties when immediate expertise is not readily available [52].

Altered fluid requirement in patients with burns: Patients who typically require a large resuscitation fluid volume include those with full-thickness burns, high voltage electric injury, inhalation injury, and those who need escharotomy, whereas obese burn patients generally have lower requirements for resuscitation fluid volumes.

Volume overload and fluid creep

Several reports have documented a high incidence of receiving more resuscitation fluid than predicted, leading to volume overload when utilizing the Parkland formula for calculating fluid requirements [48, 53–55].

Fluid creep in burns refers to the inadvertent accumulation of excessive fluid in the body due to overly aggressive fluid resuscitation, which can result in complications such as tissue edema, compartment syndromes, infections, pneumonia, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), respiratory failure, acute kidney injury (AKI), increased need for renal replacement therapy (RRT), multiorgan failure, and even death [5, 55–58].

Several factors contribute to the development of fluid creep, including the overestimation of burn size, errors in judgment due to a lack of experience, overly enthusiastic or inattentive resuscitation practices, failure to recognize the need for colloids to conserve crystalloid administration in large volumes, inadequate monitoring of urine output, and inability to adjust fluid administration based on individual patient response [59].

To prevent fluid creep, several measures can be employed, including:

- Following an early fluid restriction regimen [29, 57, 60].
- Administering colloids such as albumin or fresh frozen plasma alongside crystalloids in cases with high fluid requirements, aiming to reduce overall fluid needs and minimize the risk of fluid creep [5, 18, 22, 26, 61].
- Avoid routine use of fluid boluses to correct hypotension.
- Implementing permissive hypoperfusion, a safe and well-tolerated strategy in studies involving adults and children [60, 62].
- Close clinical monitoring, including hourly urine volume assessment and making timely fluid volume adjustments as necessary.

Blood transfusion

Patients with severe thermal burns may uncommonly require a blood transfusion to correct anemia, which can result from associated traumatic injury, blood loss during surgical procedures, decreased red blood cell production, increased red blood cell destruction, and iatrogenic blood testing [63, 64]. Implementing a restrictive transfusion strategy with a red blood cell transfusion threshold of 7 gm/dL is well tolerated, markedly reduces transfusion volume, and helps prevent numerous complications associated with aggressive transfusion [64–66]. Patients should receive blood transfusions one unit at a time unless they are hemodynamically unstable or actively bleeding, and before administering a second unit, reassessment of the patient is necessary [63].

B. SUBSEQUENT FLUID THERAPY

(During the first 24–48 Hours)

During the first 24–48 hours following burns, it is common for the patient's body weight to increase by 5–15% of their pre-injury level due to fluid retention [67]. The goal of fluid management during this stage is to ensure sufficient fluid administration to maintain hemodynamic stability while restricting the total volume of administered fluids to achieve euvolemia and avoid fluid overload and fluid creep.

During this stage, although increased capillary permeability persists, it is relatively less pronounced compared to the first 24 hours, potentially leading to a lower volume of fluid loss. Consequently, the total fluid requirements for the second 24 hours are reduced, usually by nearly half compared to the requirements of the first 24 hours, for resuscitation fluid [68]. The volume is adjusted based on the patient's response to resuscitation, closely monitoring parameters such as hourly urine volume and other indicators.

If adequate urine output is maintained for more than 2 hours during the first 24–48 hours, it suggests adequate fluid resuscitation and the patient is gradually switched to maintenance fluid [69]. While calculating the maintenance fluid volume in burns, consider normal maintenance fluid plus evaporative loss from the burned skin. Maintenance fluid can be administered either intravenously, using D5/0.45 NaCl + 20 mEq potassium chloride per liter, or through enteral feeds.

The use of colloids for resuscitation is beneficial at this stage due to the decreased capillary permeability. This decrease in permeability results in reduced loss of colloids from the intravascular compartment into the interstitial spaces, providing two advantages. Firstly, it allows greater intravascular retention, ensuring effective hemodynamic stability. Secondly, it reduces the risk of tissue edema by decreasing protein leakage. Colloids, such as albumin or fresh frozen plasma, can be administered as 20–60% of the calculated plasma volume, which helps reduce fluid requirements and minimize the risk of fluid overload.

C. FLUID THERAPY AFTER 48 HOURS

During this early post-resuscitation phase (48–72 hours), capillary permeability decreases, resulting in decreased fluid loss. The primary focus shifts from aggressive fluid resuscitation to maintaining a balanced crystalloid status. The volume of fluid required is typically reduced compared to the initial 48 hours, emphasizing the importance of adjusting fluid administration to prevent fluid overload while ensuring proper hydration and electrolyte balance.

After the initial 48 hours of resuscitation, the fluid requirement consists of the sum of normal maintenance requirements, replacement of abnormal evaporative water loss, and continuous loss of plasma.

Fluid therapy is initiated based on the calculated maintenance requirements (100 mL/kg for the first 10 kg, + 50 mL/kg for 10–20 kg, and + 20 mL/kg for >20 kg) and is closely monitored. To calculate the required volume of IV fluid, subtract any orally consumed or NGT-administered fluid from the estimated fluid requirements.The fluid regimen is adjusted according to the patient's response to resuscitation, ongoing fluid losses, and clinical parameters.

MONITORING

Monitoring the burn patient is an essential component of fluid resuscitation, as no resuscitation formula should be considered a "license" to put the patient on autopilot. Careful and precise monitoring, along with necessary adjustments in the regimen, is vital for achieving adequate fluid resuscitation tailored to each patient's needs. Modalities used to monitor patients with burns can be categorized into clinical monitoring, laboratory tests, noninvasive monitoring, and invasive monitoring.

Clinical monitoring

The American Burn Association recommends monitoring pulse, blood pressure, urine output, mental status, and oxygen saturation in patients with burns [9].

Heart rate: The pulse rate holds limited usefulness but surpasses blood pressure measurement in sensitivity when monitoring fluid therapy [3]. Typically, a pulse rate below 110 to 120 beats per minute in a young adult suggests adequate resuscitation. However, if the heart rate exceeds 140 beats per minute, persistent severe tachycardia may indicate hypovolemia, although it can also arise from untreated pain or agitation [12]. Weak pulses may be attributed to inadequate fluid resuscitation, peripheral edema, or pressure on blood vessels caused by elevated compartment pressures.

Blood pressure: Manual blood pressure measurements can be challenging, inaccurate, and potentially misleading in edematous or charred extremities due to the progressive attenuation of auditory blood pressure signals as edema develops beneath the burn wound.

Sensorium: Anxiety and restlessness can be early signs of hypovolemia and hypoxia, indicating the need for attention and correction.

Urine volume: Accurate measurement and monitoring of urine output are crucial, requiring a urinary catheter in all patients with burns ≥20% TBSA [12]. Hourly measurement of urine output serves as the primary indicator for assessing adequate fluid resuscitation, evaluating tissue perfusion, and guiding timely adjustments in volume administration [70, 71].

Measure the hourly volume of urine, calculate the urine output as mL/kg, and adjust the rate of fluid administration in response to the patient's urine output as follows [72]:

- If the urine output is <0.5 mL/kg/h, increase the rate of infusion based on the hourly urine volume. Additionally, considering a fluid challenge with 250 ml of Ringer's lactate in addition to the ongoing fluid may be considered.
- If the urine output is between 0.5 to 1 mL/kg/h, it suggests adequate fluid replacement. Therefore, the fluid infusion should be continued at the same ongoing rate, and reassessment should be done hourly.
- If the urine output is between 1–2 mL/kg/h, the fluid infusion rate should be reduced by 10%, and reassessment should be done hourly.
- If the urine output is >2 mL/kg/h, the fluid infusion rate should be reduced by 20%, and reassessment should be done hourly.

It's important to note that increased urine output can occur in patients undergoing diuretic therapy or with conditions like glycosuria, hypertonic saline infusion, or dextran infusion attributed to the clearance of an osmotic load. However, this elevated urine output does not accurately indicate the patient's volume status and may potentially worsen severely depleted intravascular volume.

Laboratory tests

The laboratory tests performed for monitoring burns depend on the severity and extent of the burns and typically include complete blood count, electrolyte levels, blood urea nitrogen, creatinine, serum lactate and glucose levels, creatine phosphokinase, and mixed venous blood gas analysis.

Serum lactate level is a commonly used and valuable monitoring tool for hemodynamic resuscitation in patients with burns, as it helps assess tissue perfusion and metabolic status [73]. Estimating serum lactate levels early, upon hospital admission and periodically thereafter, is helpful in assessing the adequacy of tissue perfusion. An increase in serum lactate levels suggests inadequate end-organ perfusion, while a reduction in serum lactate levels after fluid infusion indicates adequate fluid resuscitation in burns [74].

Mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2) plays a crucial role in evaluating the patient's respiratory function, and a decrease in SvO_2 suggests inadequate end-organ perfusion.

Noninvasive monitoring

Noninvasive monitoring methods, such as noninvasive blood pressure (NIBP), pulse oximetry, continuous electrocardiogram (ECG) monitoring, ultrasonography, Transthoracic echocardiography, pulse-contour analysis, and transpulmonary thermodilution can be utilized effectively in burns for comprehensive and noninvasive assessment, if available [75–77].

Invasive monitoring

Invasive monitoring is beneficial for selected high-risk patients with large burns and complex comorbidities, and various techniques used for monitoring include central venous pressure, transesophageal echocardiography, transpulmonary thermodilution, arterial blood pressure, and pulmonary artery catheterization to optimize their management. However, evidence supporting patient outcomes benefits after major burn trauma due to invasive monitoring to guide fluid resuscitation is lacking [78].

ENDPOINTS OF BURN SHOCK RESUSCITATION

The clinical interpretation of hemodynamic status can be challenging, and there are no single parameters that definitively determine the endpoints of resuscitation in burns. Therefore, simultaneous consideration of various parameters is essential, which may suggest hemodynamic improvement and guide in optimizing fluid administration.

The primary indicators of the adequacy of resuscitation include improvement in mental status (normalization of sensorium), urine output of 0.5 to 1 mL/kg/h without osmotic diuresis, normalization of heart rate and blood pressure (mean arterial blood pressure >70 mm Hg), and a reduction in lactate concentration and base deficit values [79, 80]. Base excess, lactate levels, and their correction rates reliably predict mortality [79].

Patients who are hemodynamically unstable, with coexisting comorbidities such as renal, hepatic, or cardiovascular disease, or elderly persons may need advanced hemodynamic monitoring for better monitoring if available.

COMPLICATIONS OF FLUID RESUSCITATION

Volume overload and fluid creep are common problems in burns, as discussed.

In addition, large-volume resuscitation can lead to uncommon yet severe complications, which are described below:

- Abdominal compartment syndrome (ACS) is characterized by sustained intra-abdominal pressure (>20 mmHg) and new onset multiorgan dysfunction, including oliguria and decreased pulmonary compliance.
- Extremity compartment syndromes occur when there is an increase in pressure within a closed muscle compartment due to blood accumulation or soft tissue edema, resulting in impaired capillary flow to the enclosed muscle. These syndromes are characterized by clinical signs such as swelling, tightness, muscle pain, pallor, coolness of the distal extremity, and, in severe cases, late loss of pulses.
- Pulmonary complications in burns can manifest as pleural effusions, pulmonary edema, respiratory failure, and prolonged intubation, contributing to significant respiratory challenges.
- Orbital compartment syndrome, a rare yet devastating complication of over-resuscitation, occurs due to a rapid increase in intraocular pressure. It is a surgical emergency characterized by orbital pain, double vision, acute-onset vision loss, and features such as a fixed dilated pupil and ophthalmoplegia.

NUTRITION ROUTE AND TIMING

Paying attention to nutrition is crucial in burns because it is a hypermetabolic state characterized by increased catabolism leading to increased caloric and protein requirements, significant loss of protein and micronutrients caused by the compromised skin barrier, and the need for increased energy expenditure to compensate for heat loss through the exposed surface [81]. Timely and adequate nutritional support in burns provides essential nutrients for tissue healing, supports immune function, reduces the risk of infection, minimizes protein catabolism and maintains lean body mass, and promotes wound healing and overall recovery [82]. So, early nutrition should be initiated proactively rather than waiting to address it later.

Route: Oral feed, enteral nutrition (EN), and parenteral nutrition (PN) are all viable options for providing nutritional supplementation in burns.

Enteral nutrition is recommended as first-line nutrition support in hemodynamically stable burns patients if oral feeding is not possible or if patients cannot meet the increased nutritional requirements through oral feeding alone. EN is preferred, and PN is not recommended routinely in burns because of adverse effects like overfeeding, impaired immunity, liver failure, and higher mortality [82].

The preferred method for enteral nutrition is nasogastric (NG) tubes, but feeding by nasoduodenal and nasojejunal tubes is indicated in a few patients with delayed gastric emptying.

PN is administered in burn patients only when EN is not feasible, not tolerated (e.g., abdominal distention, high residuals, diarrhea), or is inadequate to meet desired total nutrient requirements [83].

Timing of nutrition support: In burn patients, early EN (within 24 hours) is as safe as late EN (after 24 hours) [84], and it is recommended to initiate early EN, preferably within the first 24 hours after a burn injury [83, 85].

The advantages of early enteral nutrition in burns are [85, 86]:

- Protection of the gastrointestinal tract, preventing increased bacterial translocation and reducing the risk of sepsis.
- Enhanced nutrient adequacy, preventing the development of malnutrition and nutrient depletion.
- Reduced rates of complications and infections, shorter hospital stays, lower costs, and decreased morbidity and mortality.

For comprehensive information on nutritional considerations in burns, including energy, protein, carbohydrate, and lipid requirements, as well as the role of glutamine and micronutrients, please refer to the Chapter 56 on "Parenteral Nutrition in Specific Disease".

OLIGURIA IN BURNS

Oliguria during the resuscitation period (first 48 hours post burns) is commonly due to inadequate resuscitation and is almost never an indicator of acute kidney injury. It should be treated with increased fluid administration, not by fluid restriction or administration of diuretics.

Patients with high voltage electric injuries, deep burns involving muscle, and associated crush injuries are prone to developing rhabdomyolysis and myoglobinuric acute kidney injury, which can lead to oliguria. Weakness, muscular pain, oliguria with dark red to brown urine, and significantly elevated creatine phosphokinase (CPK) levels suggest myoglobinuric acute kidney injury, which may need diuretics.

Urinary output is no longer a reliable indicator to monitor fluid resuscitation once a diuretic has been administered [12]. Diuretics are also required in patients with extensive burns who remain oliguric despite receiving fluid volume far over estimated needs.

FLUID IN HIGH VOLTAGE ELECTRIC INJURIES

Management of high voltage electric injury is more complex and challenging than standard burn resuscitation due to the potential presence of significant and extensive deep muscle injury that may be hidden beneath normal-looking skin, making it difficult to estimate the severity and extent of burns accurately [87]. Additionally, severe electric injuries can cause damage to deep tissues and muscles, leading to acute kidney injury through rhabdomyolysis-induced precipitation of urinary hemochromogens in the renal tubules.

In such cases, administration of additional fluid is necessary to achieve a high urine flow (0–1.5 ml per kg per hour or 75–100 ml/hour in adults) in order to facilitate the rapid clearance of heme pigments, thus eliminating the need for diuretics and preventing acute kidney injury [12]. As various formulas tend to underestimate the fluid requirements for resuscitation significantly, optimal fluid administration is more accurately guided by monitoring urine output and other clinical, laboratory, and hemodynamic parameters to determine appropriate resuscitation endpoints [87].

If oliguria persists despite adequate hydration, additional measures for diuresis can be employed, such as the use of osmotic diuretics (such as mannitol), loop diuretics (like furosemide), or urine alkalization through sodium bicarbonate titration.

REFERENCES

1. Guilabert P, Usúa G, Martín N, et al. Fluid resuscitation management in patients with burns: update. Br J Anaesth. 2016;117(3):284–96.
2. Schaefer TJ, Nunez Lopez O. Burn Resuscitation and Management. [Updated 2023 Jan 23]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2023 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK430795/.

3. Sánchez-Sánchez M, García-de-Lorenzo A, Asensio MJ. First resuscitation of critical burn patients: progresses and problems. Med Intensiva. 2016;40(2):118–24.
4. Barrow RE, Jeschke MG, Herndon DN. Early fluid resuscitation improves outcomes in severely burned children. Resuscitation 2000;45(2):91–96.
5. Saffle JR. Fluid Creep and Over-resuscitation. Crit Care Clin. 2016;32(4):587–98.
6. Snell JA, Loh NH, Mahambrey T, et al. Clinical review: the critical care management of the burn patient. Crit Care. 2013;17(5):241.
7. Nielson CB, Duethman NC, Howard JM, et al. Burns: Pathophysiology of Systemic Complications and Current Management. J Burn Care Res. 2017;38(1):e469–e481.
8. Williams FN, Herndon DN, Suman OE, et al. Changes in cardiac physiology after severe burn injury. J Burn Care Res. 2011;32(2):269–74.
9. Pham TN, Cancio LC, Gibran NS. American Burn Association practice guidelines burn shock resuscitation. J Burn Care Res. 2008;29(1):257–66.
10. ISBI Practice Guidelines Committee; Steering Subcommittee; Advisory Subcommittee. ISBI Practice Guidelines for Burn Care. Burns. 2016;42(5):953–1021.
11. Bittner EA, Shank E, Woodson L, et al. Acute and perioperative care of the burn-injured patient. Anesthesiology. 2015;122(2):448–64.
12. American Burn Association. Advanced Burn Life Support Course Provider Manual. American Burn Association; 2018. Chapter 4, Shock and Fluid Resuscitation. Available from: https://ameriburn.org/wp-content/uploads/2019/08/2018-ablsprovidermanual.pdf (accessed on 11 June 2023).
13. Orbegozo Cortes D, Rayo Bonor A, Vincent JL. Isotonic crystalloid solutions: A structured review of the literature. Br J Anaesth. 2014;112(6):968–81.
14. Cappuyns L, Tridente A, Stubbington Y, et al. Review of Burn Resuscitation: Is PlasmaLyte® a Comparable Alternative to Ringer's Lactate? J Burn Care Res. 2023;44(1):81–86.
15. Rizoli S. PlasmaLyte. J Trauma. 2011 May;70(5 Suppl):S17–8.
16. Weinberg L, Collins N, Van Mourik K, et al. PlasmaLyte 148: a clinical review. World J Crit Care Med 2016;5(4):235–250.
17. Chaussard M, Dépret F, Saint-Aubin O, et al. Physiological response to fluid resuscitation with Ringer lactate versus PlasmaLyte in critically ill burn patients. J Appl Physiol (1985). 2020;128(3):709–714.
18. Kao Y, Loh EW, Hsu CC, et al. Fluid Resuscitation in Patients With Severe Burns: A Meta-analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Acad Emerg Med 2018;25(3):320–329.
19. Cartotto R, Greenhalgh D. Colloids in acute burn resuscitation. Crit Care Clin. 2016;32(4):507–23.
20. Haberal M, Sakallioglu Abali AE, et al. Fluid management in major burn injuries. Indian J Plast Surg. 2010;43(Suppl):S29–36.
21. Yu YT, Liu J, Hu B, et al. Expert consensus on the use of human serum albumin in critically ill patients. Chin Med J (Engl). 2021;134(14):1639–1654.
22. Lawrence A, Faraklas I, Watkins H, et al. Colloid administration normalizes resuscitation ratio and ameliorates "fluid creep". J Burn Care Res. 2010;31(1):40–7.
23. Hunter JE, Drew PJ, Potokar TS, et al. Albumin resuscitation in burns: a hybrid regime to mitigate fluid creep. Scars Burn Heal 2016;2:2059513116642083.
24. Müller Dittrich MH, Brunow de Carvalho W, Lopes Lavado E. Evaluation of the "Early" Use of Albumin in Children with Extensive Burns: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2016;17(6):e280–e286.
25. Navickis RJ, Greenhalgh DG, Wilkes MM. Albumin in Burn Shock Resuscitation: A Meta-Analysis of Controlled Clinical Studies. J Burn Care Res. 2016;37(3):e268–78.
26. Eljaiek R, Heylbroeck C, Dubois MJ. Albumin administration for fluid resuscitation in burn patients: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Burns 2017;43(1):17–24.
27. Blanco-Schweizer P, Sánchez-Ballesteros J, Bendito B, et al. Resuscitation with albumin using BET formula keeps at bay fluid administration in burned patients. An observational study. Burns 2020;46(4):860–867.
28. Comish P, Walsh M, Castillo-Angeles M, et al. Adoption of rescue colloid during burn resuscitation decreases fluid administered and restores end-organ perfusion. Burns. 2021;47(8):1844–1850.
29. Chung KK, Wolf SE, Cancio LC, et al. Resuscitation of severely burned military casualties: fluid begets more fluid. J Trauma. 2009;67(2):231–237.
30. Cochran A, Morris SE, Edelman LS, et al. Burn patient characteristics and outcomes following resuscitation with albumin. Burns. 2007;33(1):25–30.
31. Greenhalgh DG. Burn resuscitation: the results of the ISBI/ABA survey. Burns. 2010;36(2):176–82.
32. Hoelscher VS, Harvin JA, Cotton BA, et al. Impact of Fresh Frozen Plasma Infusions during Resuscitation in Thermally-Injured Patients, J Burn Care Res 2018;39(1):S76.
33. Gurney JM, Kozar RA, Cancio LC. Plasma for burn shock resuscitation: is it time to go back to the future? Transfusion. 2019;59(S2):1578–1586.
34. Satahoo SS, Palmieri TL. Fluid Resuscitation in Burns: 2 cc, 3 cc, or 4 cc?. Curr Trauma Rep 2019;5:99–105.
35. Cartotto R, Callum J. A Review on the Use of Plasma During Acute Burn Resuscitation. J Burn Care Res. 2020;41(2):433–440.
36. O'Mara MS, Slater H, Goldfarb IW, et al. A prospective, randomized evaluation of intra-abdominal pressures with crystalloid and colloid resuscitation in burn patients. J Trauma. 2005;58(5):1011–8.
37. Rijnhout TWH, Noorman F, De Kort B, et al. Prolonged (post-thaw) shelf life of -80°C frozen AB apheresis plasma. Transfusion. 2020;60(8):1846–1855.

38. Schött U, Solomon C, Fries D, et al. The endothelial glycocalyx and its disruption, protection and regeneration: a narrative review. Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med. 2016;24:48.
39. Cruz MV, Carney BC, Luker JN, et al. Plasma Ameliorates Endothelial Dysfunction in Burn Injury. J Surg Res. 2019;233:459–466.
40. Vural S, Yasti CA, Dolapçı M. Comparison of Albumin and Fresh Frozen Plasma as Colloid Therapy in Patients With Major Burns. Cureus. 2023;15(1):e33485.
41. Busch MP, Bloch EM, Kleinman S. Prevention of transfusion-transmitted infections. Blood. 2019;133(17):1854–1864.
42. Ravishankar J, Jagannathan SY, Arumugam P, et al. Evaluating the appropriateness of blood component utilization in burns patients. International Journal of Research in Medical Sciences 2016;4(12):5364–5371.
43. Béchir M, Puhan MA, Fasshauer M, et al. Early fluid resuscitation with hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 (6%) in severe burn injury: a randomized, controlled, double-blind clinical trial. Crit Care. 2013;17(6):R299.
44. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(20):1901–11.
45. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(2):124–34.
46. EMA. PRAC confirms that hydroxyethyl-starch solutions (HES) should no longer be used in patients with sepsis or burn injuries or in critically ill patients. 11 October 2018. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/news/prac-confirms-hydroxyethyl-starch-solutions-hes-should-no-longer-be-used-patients-sepsis-burn.
47. Huang PP, Stucky FS, Dimick AR, et al. Hypertonic sodium resuscitation is associated with renal failure and death. Ann Surg. 1995;221(5):543–54.
48. Blumetti J, Hunt JL, Arnoldo BD, et al. The Parkland formula under fire: is the criticism justified? J Burn Care Res. 2008;29(1):180–6.
49. Baxter CR, Shires T. Physiological response to crystalloid resuscitation of severe burns. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1968;150(3):874–94.
50. Gueugniaud PY, Carsin H, Bertin-Maghit M, et al. Current advances in the initial management of major thermal burns. Intensive Care Med 2000;26(7):848–56.
51. Leclerc T, Potokar T, Hughes A, et al. A simplified fluid resuscitation formula for burns in mass casualty scenarios: Analysis of the consensus recommendation from the WHO Emergency Medical Teams Technical Working Group on Burns. Burns. 2021;47(8):1730–1738.
52. Bhat S, Humphries YM, Gulati S. The problems of burn resuscitation formulas: A need for a simplified guideline. J Burns Wounds 2004;3(7).
53. Cartotto RC, Innes M, Musgrave MA, et al. How well does the Parkland formula estimate actual fluid resuscitation volumes? J Burn Care Rehabil. 2002;23(4):258–65.
54. Sullivan SR, Friedrich JB, Engrav LH, et al. "Opioid creep" is real and may be the cause of "fluid creep" Burns. 2004;30(6):583–90.
55. Lindahl L, Oksanen T, Lindford A, et al. Initial fluid resuscitation guided by the Parkland formula leads to high fluid volumes in the first 72 h, increasing mortality and the risk for kidney injury. Burns Open 2023;7(3):51–58.
56. Pruitt BA Jr. Protection from excessive resuscitation: "pushing the pendulum back". J Trauma. 2000;49(3):567–8.
57. Saffle JR. The Phenomenon of "Fluid Creep" in Acute Burn Resuscitation. J Burn Care Res 2007;28(3):382–95.
58. Daniels M, Fuchs PC, Lefering R, et al. Is the Parkland formula still the best method for determining the fluid resuscitation volume in adults for the first 24 hours after injury? - A retrospective analysis of burn patients in Germany. Burns. 2021;47(4):914–921.
59. Atiyeh BS, Dibo SA, Ibrahim AE, et al. Acute burn resuscitation and fluid creep: it is time for colloid rehabilitation. Ann Burns Fire Disasters. 2012;25(2):59–65.
60. Walker TL, Rodriguez DU, Coy K, et al. Impact of reduced resuscitation fluid on outcomes of children with 10-20% body surface area scalds. Burns. 2014;40(8):1581–6.
61. Chung KK, Blackbourne LH, Wolf SE, et al. Evolution of burn resuscitation in operation Iraqi freedom. J Burn Care Res. 2006;27:606–11.
62. Arlati S, Storti E, Pradella V, et al. Decreased fluid volume to reduce organ damage: a new approach to burn shock resuscitation? A preliminary study. Resuscitation. 2007;72(3):371–8.
63. ISBI Practice Guidelines Committee; Advisory Subcommittee; Steering Subcommittee. ISBI Practice Guidelines for Burn Care, Part 2. Burns. 2018;44(7):1617–1706.
64. Palmieri TL, Holmes JH 4th, Arnoldo B, et al. Transfusion Requirement in Burn Care Evaluation (TRIBE): A Multicenter Randomized Prospective Trial of Blood Transfusion in Major Burn Injury. Ann Surg. 2017;266(4):595–602.
65. Higgins S, Fowler R, Callum J, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury in patients with burns. J Burn Care Res. 2007;28(1):56–64.
66. Palmieri TL. Burn injury and blood transfusion. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2019;32(2):247–251.
67. Tang Y, Chen I, Yen J, et al. Fluid Restriction for Treatment of "Fluid Creep" after Acute Burn Resuscitation. Hong Kong j. emerg. med. 2014;21:222–229.
68. "Practical Handbook of Burns Management" by the National Programme for Prevention, Management, and Rehabilitation of Burn Injuries (NPPMRBI) under the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India.
69. Gupta AK, Asirvatham E, Reddy KA, et al. Fluid resuscitation in adult burns. Curr Med Issues 2021;19:103–9.

70. Paratz JD, Stockton K, Paratz ED, et al. Burn resuscitation–hourly urine output versus alternative endpoints: a systematic review. Shock 2014;42(4):295–306.
71. Cancio LC, Salinas J, Kramer GC. Protocolized resuscitation of burn patients. Crit Care Clin 2016;32(4):599–610.
72. Care of Burns in Scotland. National Managed Clinical Network. Fluid Resuscitation Protocol in Burns-Specific ICU Fluid Guidance. NSD610-006.07 V1. Oct 2020 [Internet]. Available from: https://www.cobis.scot.nhs.uk/wp-content/uploads/2021/07/NSD610-006.07.pdf.
73. Mokline A, Abdenneji A, Rahmani I, et al. Lactate: prognostic biomarker in severely burned patients. Ann Burns Fire Disasters. 2017;30(1):35–38.
74. D'souza NT, Kujur AR, Rajeswari D. Understanding the role of serum lactate as an end point in burn resuscitation. Indian J Burns 2020;28(1):7–12.
75. Coşkun F, Akıncı E, Ceyhan MA, et al. Our new stethoscope in the emergency department: handheld ultrasound. Ulus Travma Acil Cerrahi Derg 2011;17(6):488–92.
76. Jafarian AA, Farhoodi A, Jafarian Z, et al. Investigating the possibility of using noninvasive basic monitoring in patients with acute burns undergoing general anesthesia. Arch Trauma Res 2020;9(4):173–175.
77. Burmeister DM, Smith SL, Muthumalaiappan K, et al. An Assessment of Research Priorities to Dampen the Pendulum Swing of Burn Resuscitation. J Burn Care Res. 2021;42(2):113–125.
78. Davenport LM, Dobson GP, Letson HL. The role of invasive monitoring in the resuscitation of major burns: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Burns Trauma. 2019;9(2):28–40.
79. Causbie JM, Sattler LA, Basel AP, et al. State of the Art: An Update on Adult Burn Resuscitation. European Burn Journal. 2021;2(3):152–167.
80. Belaunzaran M, Raslan S, Ali A, et al. Utilization and Efficacy of Resuscitation Endpoints in Trauma and Burn Patients: A Review Article. Am Surg. 2022;88(1):10–19.
81. Clark A, Imran J, Madni T, et al. Nutrition and metabolism in burn patients. Burns Trauma. 2017;5:11.
82. Williams FN, Branski LK, Jeschke MG, et al. What, how, and how much should patients with burns be fed? Surg Clin North Am. 2011;91(3):609–29.
83. McClave SA, Taylor BE, Martindale RG, et al. Guidelines for the Provision and Assessment of Nutrition Support Therapy in the Adult Critically Ill Patient: Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) and American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (A.S.P.E.N.). JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2016;40(2):159–211.
84. Wasiak J, Cleland H, Jeffery R. Early versus delayed enteral nutrition support for burn injuries. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006;(3):CD005489.
85. Rousseau AF, Losser MR, Ichai C, et al. ESPEN endorsed recommendations: Nutritional therapy in major burns. Clin Nutr. 2013;32(4):497–502.
86. Chourdakis M, Bouras E, Shields BA, et al. Nutritional therapy among burn injured patients in the critical care setting: An international multicenter observational study on "best achievable" practices. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(12):3813–3820.
87. Culnan DM, Farner K, Bitz GH, et al. Volume Resuscitation in Patients with High-Voltage Electrical Injuries. Ann Plast Surg. 2018;80(3 Suppl 2):S113–S118.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

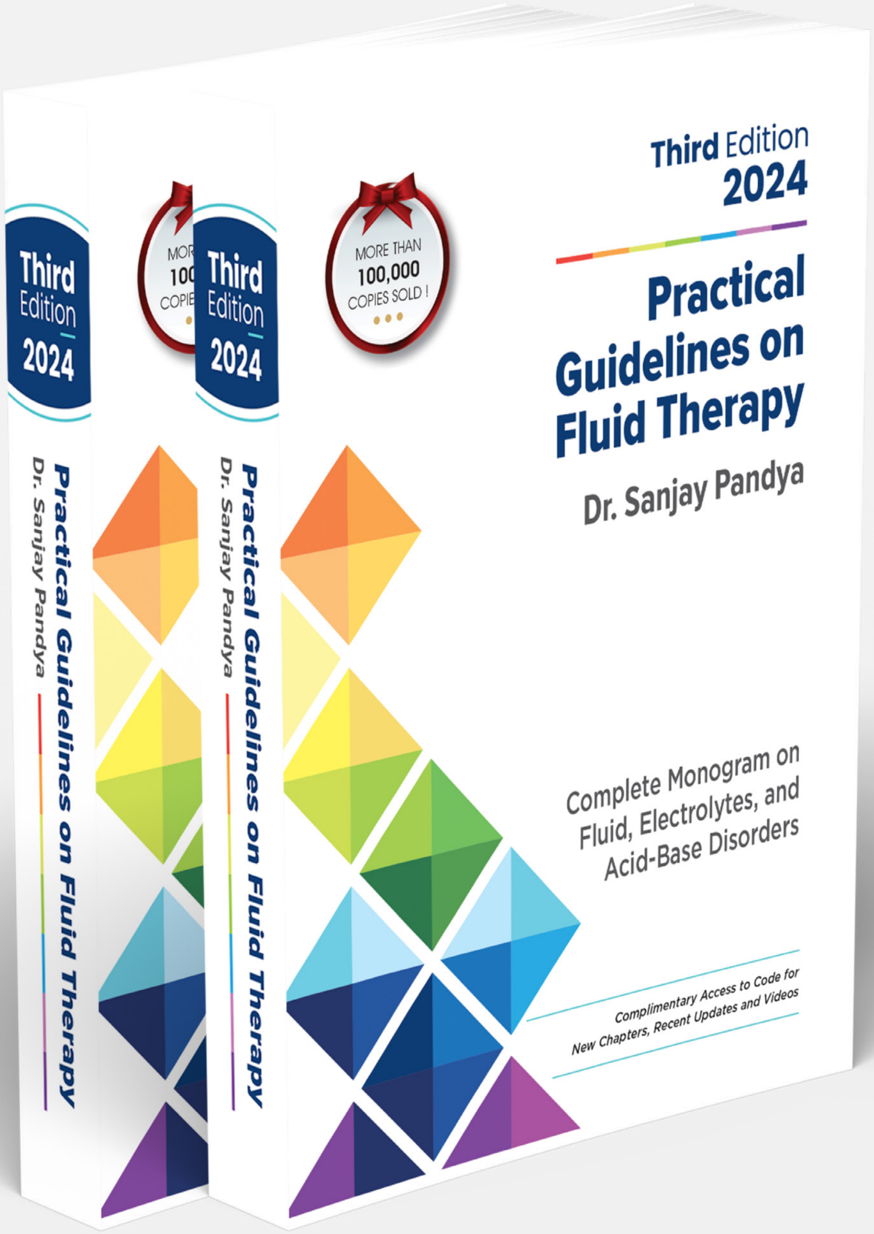
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 47:

Urinary Diversion


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

47

Urinary Diversion

Introduction and Indications 559
Methods of Urinary Diversion 559
  Ileal conduit urinary diversion 560
  Ileal pouch urinary reservoir 560
  Orthotopic neobladder 560
  Ureterosigmoidostomy 560
Pathophysiology of Disturbances .. 560
  Metabolic acidosis 561
  Hypokalemia 561
  Metabolic bone diseases 561
  Urolithiasis 562
  Hyperammonemia 562
Urinary Diversion Method Selection.. 562
Treatment 563
  Metabolic acidosis 563
  Hypokalemia 563
  Metabolic bone diseases 563
  Hyperammonemia 564

Urinary diversion is a surgical procedure that creates a new route to reroute urine flow from the normal pathway to an alternate path for elimination from the body.

INDICATIONS

Urinary diversion becomes necessary when the bladder can no longer safely store urine due to various conditions, such as:

- Bladder carcinoma: Surgical removal of the bladder for carcinoma.
- Traumatic injuries: Extensive damage to the bladder, urethra, or pelvis.
- Medical conditions: Malfunctioning bladder due to neurologic bladder dysfunction.
- Congenital defect: Bladder exstrophy is a congenital condition in which the bladder is located outside the body.
- Miscellaneous causes: Severe radiation injury to the bladder, intractable urinary incontinence, or vesicovaginal fistulae.

METHODS OF URINARY DIVERSION

There are several types of urinary diversion procedures, and the choice of procedure depends on the specific medical condition, extent of urinary tract involvement, and personal preference [1].

Urinary diversions are classified into two types [2]:

1. Incontinent diversions, where urine is redirected into an intestinal segment and continuously drained into an external collection bag (e.g., ileal conduit).
2. Continent diversions, where urine is collected and stored within the body, requiring either self-catheterization (e.g., catheterizable ileal pouch) or voluntary voiding to empty the reservoir (e.g., orthotopic neobladder).

Four common methods of urinary diversion includes:

A. Ileal conduit urinary diversion

The most commonly performed and simplest type of incontinent urinary diversion with the fewest surgical complications involves attaching the ureters to a segment of the ileum, creating a stoma on the abdomen for continuous urine drainage into an external collecting bag. The drawbacks of ileal conduit urinary diversion include the need for an external collecting bag for continuous urine drainage, potential changes in body image, and the possibility of leakage or odors.

B. Ileal pouch urinary reservoir

In this continent cutaneous diversion method, a pouch is created from portions of the ileum to store urine within the abdomen. The ureters are redirected to drain into this pouch, and intermittent self-catheterization is required several times a day to empty the urine from the pouch. The advantages of the ileal pouch reservoir surgery include not requiring an external bag for urine collection and eliminating the issue of odor associated with external urine drainage.

C. Orthotopic neobladder

This is a form of continent urinary diversion in which a surgically created reservoir is made from a segment of the intestine and placed in the same anatomical position as the original bladder, connected to the urethra. The neobladder closely resembles the storage function of a urinary bladder, allowing patients to void normally by increasing intra-abdominal pressure and significantly improving their quality of life and self-image after radical cystectomy. If voiding is not adequate despite the aforementioned efforts, patients may need to perform self CIC (clean intermittent catheterization).

D. Ureterosigmoidostomy

This urinary diversion procedure involves connecting the ureters to the sigmoid colon, allowing urine to be diverted into the colon and eliminated with bowel movements.

Ureterosigmoidostomy, which was once a common urinary diversion procedure, is now rarely used and considered a last resort option due to potential risks, such as electrolyte imbalances, urinary tract infections, worsening of kidney function, and the risk of colon malignancy. Safer and more advanced methods of urinary diversion have largely replaced it. However, due to advantages such as providing urinary continence without the need for a stoma and external appliances, simplicity, and the relatively quick performance of the procedure, ureterosigmoidostomy is still performed in some complex pediatric cases in resource-limited settings [3].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF METABOLIC AND ELECTROLYTE DISTURBANCES

The factors that determine metabolic derangements and electrolyte imbalances in urinary diversion include the type of bowel segment used for the anastomosis, the length and surface area of the bowel segment exposed to urine, and the duration of contact time between urine and the bowel [4].

Urinary diversions involve using a part of the bowel that is not physiologically designed to handle and withstand urine's fluid composition [5]. Metabolic and electrolyte imbalances are more common in traditional ureterosigmoidostomy compared to other newer methods of urinary diversion. In ureterosigmoidostomy, urine containing chloride, sodium, and ammonium is diverted to the sigmoid colon, which acts as a reservoir. Due to the sigmoid colon serving as a large-sized reservoir and the prolonged transit time of urine in the colonic segment, which leads to a longer contact period in the colon, there is a significant exchange of urinary electrolytes with plasma through the colonic mucosa, resulting in fluid and electrolyte disturbances.

Common abnormalities encountered in ureterosigmoidostomy include metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, hyperammonemia, diarrhea, urolithiasis, and metabolic bone diseases.

A. Metabolic acidosis

Metabolic acidosis commonly occurs in urinary diversions when urine comes into contact with the bowel wall, leading to the reabsorption of urinary ammonia, hydrogen, and chloride in exchange for the excretion of sodium and bicarbonate ions, which contributes to its development [4].

The absorption of chloride-rich urine by the luminal anion exchange pump of the colonic mucosa leads to the secretion of HCO_3 in exchange, causing bicarbonate loss in the bowel and resulting in hyperchloremia and metabolic acidosis.

An additional mechanism contributing to the development of hyperchloremic acidosis in urinary diversion is the absorption of ammonium [4]. When urine comes into contact with the colonic mucosa, fecal bacteria convert urinary ammonia into a large amount of ammonium ions. This leads to excessive intestinal absorption of urinary ionized ammonium, along with chloride as ammonium chloride, causing a loss of bicarbonate and a gain of chloride, resulting in hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis [6]. Loss of bicarbonate due to diarrhea (due to colon irritation by urine) also contributes to hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis.

B. Hypokalemia

Hypokalemia is more common in sigmoid diversions compared to ileal diversions, possibly because the colon has a lower capacity for potassium absorption than the ileum. In ureterosigmoidostomy, hypokalemia develops due to both loss of potassium in the colonic mucosa (secretion) and renal wasting [7]. Renal potassium wasting plays a relatively major role in potassium depletion, and it occurs due to acidosis, volume depletion, and activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system [8]. Diarrhea due to colon irritation by urine leads to direct loss of potassium and contributes to hypokalemia.

C. Metabolic bone diseases

In patients with urinary diversion, the long-term risk of metabolic bone diseases is a concern, and the factors contributing to these conditions include [4, 5, 7, 9]:

- Demineralization of bone due to chronic metabolic acidosis.
- Metabolic acidosis impairs the renal activation of vitamin D, which is essential for proper bone mineralization.
- Hypomagnesemia in ureterosigmoidostomy, resulting from urinary loss of magnesium, can lead to hypoparathyroidism by reducing parathyroid hormone (PTH) release and causing PTH insensitivity, adversely affecting bone formation.
- Impaired intestinal absorption of both calcium and vitamin D occurs when

intestinal segments are used during diversion, leading to fat-soluble vitamin D deficiency, further aggravating bone demineralization.

- The associated presence of CKD contributes to metabolic bone diseases.

Metabolic bone diseases are late complications that can lead to osteomalacia and osteoporosis, increasing the risk of fractures [2].

D. Urolithiasis

The risk of renal stone formation is high (3% and 43%) in patients with ureterosigmoidostomy [10], and the mechanisms of its development are as follows [4, 5, 7, 11, 12]:

- Chronic metabolic acidosis leads to the release of bone calcium through the process of demineralization, resulting in hypercalciuria.
- Metabolic acidosis reduces urine citrate levels, and since citrate inhibits stone formation, a low concentration of citrate in the urine predisposes to the development of calcium-containing kidney stones.
- The increased intestinal absorption of bivalent anions, particularly sulfates, leads to elevated serum sulfate concentrations. The excretion of elevated urinary sulfate is coupled with the associated loss of urinary divalent cations, which can cause hypercalciuria and hypermagnesuria and raise the risk of stone formation.
- Dehydration due to diarrhea can lead to concentrated urine, which favors stone formation in the presence of the above predisposing factors.
- Anatomical changes that increase bacterial colonization, urinary stasis, mucus reflux into the upper tract, and exposure to surgical material such as sutures and staples may act as a nidus.

E. Hyperammonemia

In patients with ureterosigmoidostomy, urinary tract infections with urea-splitting organisms and urinary tract obstruction increase ammonia's production and subsequent colonic absorption significantly [13]. In patients with chronic liver disease or acute hepatic dysfunction, the liver cannot metabolize the increased ammonia load efficiently, leading to hyperammonemia and encephalopathy [4].

URINARY DIVERSION METHOD SELECTION

Selecting the appropriate urinary diversion method is crucial to prevent metabolic and electrolyte disturbances. In ureterosigmoidostomy, fluid and electrolyte disturbances are more common due to the larger capacity of the sigmoid colon and longer urinary contact time. To decrease these complications, the ileal conduit method for urinary diversion is effective because the ilial loop serves as a conduit and not as a reservoir. Urine is continuously drained into an external collecting bag, which reduces the contact time between urine and intestinal mucosa, thus minimizing the risk of metabolic and electrolyte disturbances. The incidence of stone formation is significantly lower with the ileal conduit diversion method, ranging from 9% to 11%, compared to 17% to 27% with the Kock pouch diversion [14].

The risk of metabolic and electrolyte disturbances is also reduced when methods like the ileal pouch urinary reservoir and orthotopic neobladder are used for urinary diversion, as they have smaller capacities, resulting in a smaller bowel surface area exposed to urine.

TREATMENT

Treating metabolic derangements and electrolyte imbalances in urinary diversion involves various approaches, depending on the specific imbalance present. Long-term planning with oral agents is desirable, as fluid and electrolyte abnormalities are usually chronic and persistent. In a few patients with severe dehydration, acidosis, and hypokalemia, vigorous hydration, alkalinization, and potassium repletion are needed [15].

A. Metabolic acidosis

Metabolic consequences and disturbances are frequently observed in patients following urinary diversion. Metabolic acidosis can lead to harmful effects in these patients, such as bone loss, increased protein catabolism, and decreased albumin synthesis, resulting in the loss of muscle mass and strength, making them frail and more susceptible to falls and fractures [2]. Initiating prophylactic treatment of metabolic acidosis early, at the stage of subclinical acidosis, and effectively restoring normal acid-base balance is crucial in preventing such metabolic complications [16].

The treatment for hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis requires administering alkalizing agents or blockers of chloride transport [8]. Alkalinizing therapy is commonly initiated with oral sodium bicarbonate (1–2 gm three times a day), but in some patients, it may cause significant gastrointestinal symptoms, such as excessive flatulence. Sodium citrate and citric acid (Shohl's solution) are used together as an effective alternative. Potassium citrate may also be used if excessive sodium administration is a problem (as in cardiac diseases) and potassium supplementation is desirable.

In patients with persistent hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, where sodium loads are undesirable due to fluid retention/pulmonary edema and hypertension, chlorpromazine or nicotinic acid may be used to reduce the severity of acidosis. These agents impair chloride transport, limit the development of acidosis, and reduce the requirements for alkalizing agents rather than directly correcting the acidosis [8]. Chlorpromazine is usually given at a dose of 25 mg three times a day, whereas nicotinic acid is administered at a dose of 400 mg three to four times a day [17, 18].

Patients with ureterosigmoidostomy are advised to consume a low-sodium chloride diet to minimize their chloride intake and prevent acidosis [10].

B. Hypokalemia

Hypokalemia and total body potassium depletion are common in patients with ureterosigmoidostomies and are usually associated with hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. Therefore, the treatment must involve simultaneous and cautious correction of both hypokalemia and metabolic acidosis.

In cases of severe potassium deficits, it is crucial to replace potassium before addressing the acidosis to avoid life-threatening hypokalemia. Conversely, correcting hypokalemia without treating metabolic acidosis can lead to hyperkalemia.

For prolonged oral correction, supplementing potassium citrate 15 mEq (approximately 1.6 gm b.i.d. to q.i.d.) helps in correcting both hypokalemia and acidosis in urinary diversion [19].

C. Metabolic bone diseases

Early and adequate correction of metabolic acidosis is crucial for preventing metabolic bone diseases and improving bone health; if the improvement is not achieved, oral calcium and vitamin D3 supplementation may be considered [9].

D. Hyperammonemia

Hyperammonemia can be managed through a low-protein diet and the administration of medications like oral neomycin and/or lactulose while simultaneously addressing disorders that can increase ammonia production, such as acute or chronic liver disease, urinary tract obstruction, and urinary tract infection [19].

REFERENCE

1. Moon A, Vasdev N, Thorpe AC. Continent urinary diversion. Indian J Urol. 2013;29(4):303–9.
2. Gupta A, Atoria CL, Ehdaie B, et al. Risk of fracture after radical cystectomy and urinary diversion for bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2014;32(29):3291–8.
3. Przydacz M, Corcos J. Revisiting Ureterosigmoidostomy, a Useful Technique of Urinary Diversion in Functional Urology. Urology. 2018;115:14–20.
4. Vasdev N, Moon A, Thorpe AC. Metabolic complications of urinary intestinal diversion. Indian J Urol. 2013;29(4):310–5.
5. Sperling CD, Lee DJ, Aggarwal S. Urinary Diversion: Core Curriculum 2021. Am J Kidney Dis 2021;78(2):293–304.
6. McDougal WS, Stampfer DS, Kirley S, et al. Intestinal ammonium transport by ammonium and hydrogen exchange. J Am Coll Surg 1995;181(3):241–8.
7. Van der Aa F, Joniau S, Van Den Branden M, et al. Metabolic changes after urinary diversion. Adv Urol. 2011;2011:764325.
8. Wintner A, Dahl DM. Use of Intestinal Segments in Urinary Diversion. In: Partin AW, Dmochowski RR, Kavoussi LR, Peters CA, editors. Campbell-Walsh Urology 12th Ed. Elsevier; 2021.p.3200–3201.
9. Cano Megías M, Muñoz Delgado EG. Bone and metabolic complications of urinary diversions. Endocrinol Nutr. 2015;62(2):100–5.
10. Pedrazaa IA, Pérez de la Cruza SM, López de Aldaa A. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in a patient with a ureterosigmoidostomy diversion. Uro-Technology Journal 2022;6(4):17–20.
11. Terai A, Ueda T, Kakehi Y, et al. Urinary calculi as a late complication of the Indiana continent urinary diversion: Comparison with the kock pouch procedure. J Urol 1996;155(1):66–8.
12. Okhunov Z, Duty B, Smith AD, et al. Management of urolithiasis in patients after urinary diversions. BJU Int. 2011;108(3):330–336.
13. Albersen M, Joniau S, Van Poppel H, et al. Urea-splitting urinary tract infection contributing to hyperammonemic encephalopathy. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2007;4(8):455–58.
14. Zhong W, Yang B, He F, et al. Surgical management of urolithiasis in patients after urinary diversion. PLoS One. 2014;9(10):e111371.
15. Tollefson MK, Elliott DS, Zincke H, et al. Long-term outcome of ureterosigmoidostomy: an analysis of patients with >10 years of follow-up. BJU Int. 2010;105(6):860–3.
16. Stein R, Rubenwolf P. Metabolic consequences after urinary diversion. Front Pediatr. 2014;2:15.
17. Koch MO, McDougal SW. Chlorpromazine: Adjuvant therapy for the metabolic derangements created by urinary diversion through intestinal segments. J Urol 1985;134(1):165–9.
18. Koch MO, McDougal SW. Nicotinic acid: Treatment for the hyperchloremic acidosis following urinary diversion through intestinal segments. J Urol 1985;134(1):162–4.
19. Van der Aa F, De Ridder D, Van Poppel H. Nutrition issues in gastroenterology, SERIES #73. When the Bowel becomes the bladder: Changes in Metabolism After Urinary Diversion. Practical Gastroenterology. 2012;36(37):15–28.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

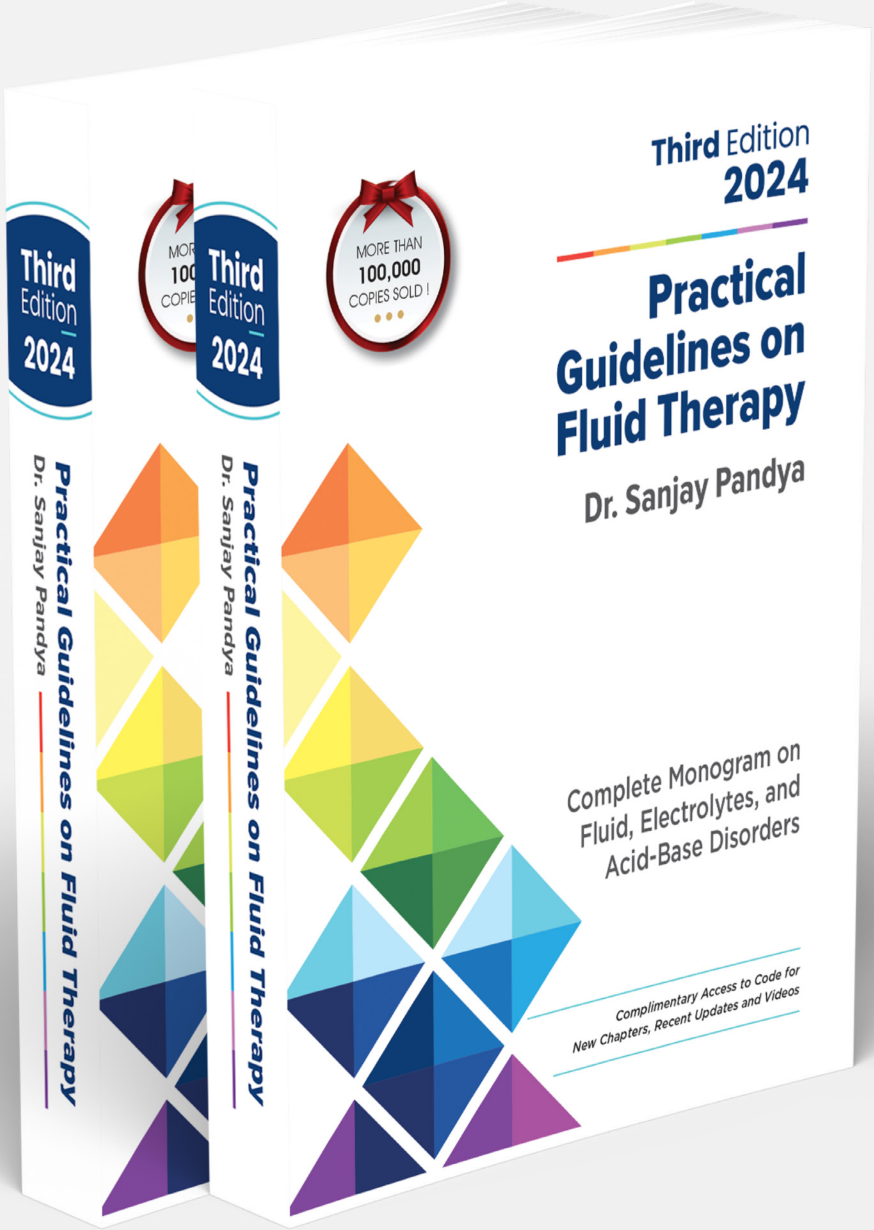
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 48:

Resuscitation and Maintenance Fluid Therapy in Children


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

48

Resuscitation and Maintenance Fluid Therapy in Children

Indications and Goals 567
Reasons for Special Considerations 568
Resuscitation IV Fluids for Children. 569
  Selection of resuscitation fluids 569
    Crystalloids vs. colloids debate... 569
    Normal saline vs. balanced crystalloids debate..................... 569
    Role of blood transfusion........... 571
  Resuscitation fluid administration .. 572
    Timing...................................... 572
    Bolus vs. continuous infusion 572
    Volume of fluid bolus 572
    Avoiding volume overload 572
Maintenance IV Fluids for Children...573
  Goals 573
  Maintenance requirements of IV fluids... 573
  Prescribing maintenance IV fluids .. 574
    Hypotonic fluids outdated 574
    Basis of shift from hypotonic to isotonic fluids......................... 575
    Current recommendation: Isotonic maintenance fluids....... 575
    Commercial vs. custom-made solutions 576
    Choosing appropriate isotonic maintenance fluids 576
    Considerations of dextrose and potassium content 577
    Exceptions to standard recommendations...................... 577
  Rate of maintenance fluids - controversy.................................... 577
  Avoid fluid overload 577
Maintenance IV Fluids for Neonates..578
  Physiological considerations 578
  Prescribing maintenance fluids 579
Prescription Summary of Maintenance Fluid Therapy 581

Fluid therapy in children is an essential aspect of managing critically ill individuals, and appropriate fluid therapy can be lifesaving. The primary goal of resuscitation fluids is to establish hemodynamic stability, ensuring adequate intravascular volume and tissue perfusion. Maintenance fluids, on the other hand, are administered to achieve proper hydration and maintain electrolyte balance.

INDICATIONS OF IV FLUID THERAPY

Oral fluid replacement is always a safe and preferred mode. The indications of IV fluid therapy include correcting or maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance in conditions such as shock, severe dehydration, uncontrolled vomiting or diarrhea, inability to drink, paralytic ileus leading to abdominal distension, impaired sensorium, and other serious complications.

Goals: IV fluid replacement aims can be broadly categorized into three groups: Resuscitation, maintenance, and replacement [1]. Distinguishing these reasons is crucial because the choice of fluids, their composition, volume, and administration rates vary depending on the patient's clinical status and specific indications. It's essential to select the appropriate IV fluids tailored to each situation.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. National Clinical Guideline Centre. IV Fluids in Children: Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Children and Young People in Hospital. Quality standard. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (UK); 2016 Sep 21. Accessed 2023 Aug 22. Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/qs131.
2. Lewis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, et al. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill people. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2018;8(8):CD000567.
3. Weiss SL, Peters MJ, Alhazzani W, et al. Executive Summary: Surviving Sepsis Campaign International Guidelines for the Management of Septic Shock and Sepsis-Associated Organ Dysfunction in Children. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2020;21(2):e52–e106.
4. Van de Voorde P, Turner NM, Djakow J, et al. European Resuscitation Councils Guidelines 2021: Paediatric Life Support. Resuscitation. 2021;161:327–387.
5. Skellett S, Maconochie I, Bingham B, et al. Paediatric advanced life support Guidelines. Resuscitation Council UK. Published May 2021. Visit: https://www.resus.org.uk/library/2021-resuscitation-guidelines/paediatric-advanced-life-support-guidelines.
6. Myburgh J, Cooper DJ, Finfer S, et al. Saline or albumin for fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury. NEJM 2007;357(9):874–884.
7. Brackney C, Diaz L, Milbrandt E, et al. Is albumin use SAFE in patients with traumatic brain injury? Crit Care 2010;14(2):307.
8. Cooper DJ, Myburgh J, Heritier S, et al. Albumin resuscitation for traumatic brain injury: is intracranial hypertension the cause of increased mortality? J Neurotrauma 2013;30(7):512–518.
9. Rossi S, Picetti E, Zoerle T, et al. Fluid management in acute brain injury. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 2018;18(11):74.
10. SAFE Study Investigators, Finfer S, McEvoy S, et al. Impact of albumin compared to saline on organ function and mortality of patients with severe sepsis. Intensive Care Med. 2011;37(1):86–96.
11. Caironi P, Tognoni G, Masson S, et al. Albumin replacement in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(15):1412–1421.
12. Charpentier J, Mira JP. Efficacy and tolerance of hyperoncotic albumin administration in septic shock patients: the EARSS study. Intensive Care Med. 2011;37(Suppl 1):S115–S0438.
13. Xu JY, Chen QH, Xie JF, et al. Comparison of the effects of albumin and crystalloid on mortality in adult patients with severe sepsis and septic shock: A meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. Crit. Care 2014;18(6):702.
14. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. N Engl J Med 2012;367(2):124–134.
15. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. N Engl J Med 2012;367(20):1901–1911.
16. Zarychanski R, Abou-Setta AM, Turgeon AF, et al. Association of hydroxyethyl starch administration with mortality and acute kidney injury in critically ill patients requiring volume resuscitation: a

systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2013;309(7):678–88.

17. EMA. PRAC confirms that hydroxyethyl-starch solutions (HES) should no longer be used in patients with sepsis or burn injuries or in critically ill patients. 11 October 2018. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/news/prac-confirms-hydroxyethyl-starch-solutions-hes-should-no-longer-be-used-patients-sepsis-burn.
18. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Intravenous fluid therapy in children and young people in hospital. NICE guideline. Published: December 9, 2015. Last updated: June 11, 2020. Available from: www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng29.
19. Upadhyay M, Singhi S, Murlidharan J, et al. Randomized evaluation of fluid resuscitation with crystalloid (saline) and colloid (polymer from degraded gelatin in saline) in pediatric septic shock. Indian Pediatr 2005;42(3):223–231.
20. Thomas-Rueddel DO, Vlasakov V, Reinhart K, et al. Safety of gelatin for volume resuscitation–a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2012;38(7):1134–42.
21. Moeller C, Fleischmann C, Thomas-Rueddel D, et al. How safe is gelatin? A systematic review and meta-analysis of gelatin-containing plasma expanders vs crystalloids and albumin. J Crit Care 2016;35:75–83.
22. Farooque S, Kenny M, Marshall SD. Anaphylaxis to intravenous gelatin based solutions: a case series examining clinical features and severity. Anaesth. 2019;74(2):174–9.
23. World Health Organization. Pocket book of hospital care for children. 2nd ed. Guidelines for the management of common childhood illnesses. WHO, 2013.
24. Leung LCK, So LY, Ng YK, et al. Initial intravenous fluid prescription in general paediatric in-patients aged >28 days and <18 years: consensus statements. Hong Kong Med J. 2021;27(4):276–286.
25. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Story D, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: chloride in critical illness. Crit Care. 2010;14(4):226.
26. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. 0.9% saline and balance crystalloids in acute ill patients: Trading one problem for another. Journal of Critical Care 2021;63:254–256.
27. Shin WJ, Kim YK, Bang JY, et al. Lactate and liver function tests after living donor right hepatectomy: a comparison of solutions with and without lactate. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. 2011;55(5):558–64.
28. Weinberg L, Collins N, Van Mourik K, et al. PlasmaLyte 148: a clinical review. World J Crit Care Med 2016;5(4):235–250.
29. Anantasit N, Thasanthiah S, Lertbunrian R. Balanced salt solution versus normal saline solution as initial fluid re- suscitation in pediatric septic shock: A randomized, double-blind controlled trial. Crit Care Shock 2020;23(4):158–168.
30. Hoorn EJ. Intravenous fluids: balancing solutions. J Nephrol 2017;30(4):485–492.
31. Barhight MF, Lusk J, Brinton J, et al. Hyperchloremia is independently associated with mortality in critically ill children who ultimately require continuous renal replacement therapy. Pediatr Nephrol 2018;33(6):1079–1085.
32. Stenson EK, Cvijanovich NZ, Anas N, et al. Hyperchloremia Is Associated With Complicated Course and Mortality in Pediatric Patients With Septic Shock. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2018;19(2):155–160.
33. Ginter D, Gilfoyle E, Wade A, et al. Hyperchloremia and association with acute kidney injury in critically ill children. Pediatr Nephrol. 2023;38(7):2233–2242.
34. Emrath ET, Fortenberry JD, Travers C, et al. Resuscitation With Balanced Fluids Is Associated With Improved Survival in Pediatric Severe Sepsis. Crit Care Med 2017;45(7):1177–1183.
35. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. N Engl J Med 2018;378(9):829–839.
36. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in noncritically ill adults. N Engl J Med 2018;378:819–828.
37. Lehr AR, Rached-d'Astous S, Barrowman N, et al. Balanced Versus Unbalanced Fluid in Critically Ill Children: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2022;23(3):181–191.
38. Sankar J, Muralidharan J, Lalitha AV, et al. Multiple Electrolytes Solution Versus Saline as Bolus Fluid for Resuscitation in Pediatric Septic Shock: A Multicenter Randomized Clinical Trial. Crit Care Med 2023.
39. Kight BP, Waseem M. Pediatric Fluid Management. [Updated 2023 Jan 16]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2023 Jan. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK560540/.
40. Chong SL, Ong GY, Venkataraman A, et al. The golden hours in paediatric septic shock--current updates and recommendations. Ann Acad Med Singap. 2014;43(5):267–74.
41. San Geroteo J, Levy M, Gotchac J, et al. Fluid bolus therapy in pediatric sepsis: a narrative review. Eur J Med Res. 2022;27(1):246.
42. Fernández-Sarmiento J, De Souza DC, Martinez A, et al. Latin American Consensus on the Management of Sepsis in Children: Sociedad Latinoamericana de Cuidados Intensivos Pediátricos [Latin American Pediatric Intensive Care Society] (SLACIP) Task Force: Executive Summary. J Intensive Care Med. 2022;37(6):753–763.
43. Maitland K, Kiguli S, Opoka RO, et al. Mortality after fluid bolus in African children with severe infection. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(26):2483–95.
44. 2022 exceptional surveillance on intravenous fluid therapy in children and young people (NICE guidelines NG29, NG51, NG143, CG84, CG102 and NG18). Surveillance report Published: 21 October 2022 www.nice.org.uk.
45. World Health Organization. Updated guideline: paediatric emergency triage, assessment and treatment. Geneva: WHO 2016.
46. Russotto V. Conservative fluid management: Turn off the tap after use? European Society of Intensive

Care Medicine (ESICM) [Internet]. April 25, 2017. Available from: https://www.esicm.org/article-review-conservative-fluid-management-april-2017/.

47. Sinitsky L, Walls D, Nadel S, et al. Fluid overload at 48 hours is associated with respiratory morbidity but not mortality in a general PICU: retrospective cohort study. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2015;16(3):205–209.
48. Alobaidi R, Morgan C, Basu RK, et al. Association between fluid balance and outcomes in critically ill children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Pediatr. 2018;172(3):257–268.
49. Feld LG, Neuspiel DR, Foster BA, et al. Clinical practice guideline: maintenance intravenous fluids in children. Pediatrics 2018;142(6):e20183083.
50. Brossier DW, Tume LN, Briant AR, et al. ESPNIC clinical practice guidelines: intravenous maintenance fluid therapy in acute and critically ill children- a systematic review and meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2022;48(12):1691–1708.
51. Friedman JN. Risk of acute hyponatremia in hospitalized children and youth receiving maintenance intravenous fluids. Canadian Paediatric Society. Posted: 2018 Dec 18. Last updated: May 5, 2021. [Accessed 2023 Aug 28]. Available from: https://cps.ca/en/documents/position/acute-hyponatremia-in-hospitalized-children-and-youth.
52. Saba TG, Fairbairn J, Houghton F, et al. A randomized controlled trial of isotonic versus hypotonic maintenance intravenous fluids in hospitalized children. BMC Pediatrics. 2011;11:82.
53. Holliday MA, Segar WE. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. Pediatrics 1957;19(5):823–32.
54. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Prevention of hospital-acquired hyponatremia: A case for using isotonic saline. Pediatrics 2003;111(2):227–230.
55. Hoorn EJ, Geary D, Robb M, et al. Acute hyponatremia related to intravenous fluid administration in hospitalized children: An observational study. Pediatrics 2004;113(5):1279–84.
56. Moritz Ml, Ayus JC. Preventing neurological complications from dysnatremias in children. Pediatr Nephrol. 2005;20(12):1687–700.
57. Choong K, Kho ME, Menon K, et al. Hypotonic versus isotonic saline in hospitalised children: a systematic review. Arch Dis Child. 2006;91(10):828–35.
58. Beck CE. Hypotonic versus isotonic maintenance intravenous fluid therapy in hospitalized children: a systematic review. Clin Pediatr (Phila). 2007;46(9):764–70.
59. Koczmara C, Hyland S, Greenall J. Hospital-acquired acute hyponatremia and parenteral fluid administration in children. Can J Hosp Pharm. 2009;62(6):512–5.
60. Choong K, Arora S, Cheng J, et al. Hypotonic versus isotonic maintenance fluids after surgery for children: a randomized controlled trial. Pediatrics. 2011;128(5):857–66.
61. Rey C, Los-Arcos M, Hernández A, et al. Hypotonic versus isotonic maintenance fluids in critically ill children: a multicenter prospective randomized study. Acta Paediatr. 2011;100(8):1138–43.
62. Grissinger M. Hyponatremia and death in Healthy children From plain dextrose and Hypotonic Saline Solutions after Surgery. P T. 2013;38(7):364–88.
63. Foster BA, Tom D, Hill V. Hypotonic versus isotonic fluids in hospitalized children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Pediatr 2014;165(1):163–169.
64. Flores Robles CM, Cuello García CA. A prospective trial comparing isotonic with hypotonic maintenance fluids for prevention of hospital-acquired hyponatraemia. Paediatr Int Child Health. 2016;36(3):168–74.
65. McNab S. Intravenous maintenance fluid therapy in children. J Paediatr Child Health. 2016;52(2):137–40.
66. Torres SF, Iolster T, Schnitzler EJ, et al. Hypotonic and isotonic intravenous maintenance fluids in hospitalised paediatric patients: a randomised controlled trial. BMJ Paediatr Open. 2019;3(1):e000385.
67. Hasim N, Bakar MAA, Islam MA. Efficacy and Safety of Isotonic and Hypotonic Intravenous Maintenance Fluids in Hospitalised Children: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomised Controlled Trials. Children. 2021;8(9):785.
68. Ratnjeet K, Pallavi P, Jhamb U, et al. 0.45% Versus 0.9% Saline in 5% Dextrose as Maintenance Fluids in Children Admitted With Acute Illness: A Randomized Control Trial. Pediatr Emerg Care. 2022;38(9):436–441.
69. National Patient Safety Agency. Patient Safety Alert 22. Reducing the risk of hyponatraemia when administering intravenous infusions to children. 2007. https://www.sps.nhs.uk/wp-content/uploads/2018/02/2007-NRLS-0409-Hyponatraemia-cen-PSA-2007-03-28-v1.pdf.
70. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Maintenance intravenous fluids in acutely ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(14):1350–1360.
71. Duke T. Maintenance intravenous fluids for children: enough evidence, now for translation and action. Paediatr Int Child Health 2016;36(3):165–7.
72. Padua AP, Macaraya JR, Dans LF, et al. Isotonic versus hypotonic saline solution for maintenance intravenous fluid therapy in children: a systematic review. PediatrNephrol 2015;30(7):1163–72.
73. Narsaria P, Lodha R. Isn't it time to stop using 0.18% saline in dextrose solutions for intravenous maintenance fluid therapy in children? Indian Pediatr. 2014;51(12):964–6.
74. Hall AM, Ayus JC, Moritz ML. Things We Do For No Reason: The Default Use of Hypotonic Maintenance Intravenous Fluids in Pediatrics. J Hosp Med. 2018;13(9):637–640.
75. Steele A, Gowrishankar M, Abrahamson S, et al. Postoperative hyponatremia despite near-isotonic saline infusion: A phenomenon of desalination. Ann. Intern. Med. 1997;126(1):20–25.
76. Skippen P, Adderley R, Bennett M, et al. Iatrogenic hyponatremia in hospitalized children: can it be avoided? Paediatr Child Health. 2008;13(6):502–506.
77. Kannan L, Lodha R, Vivekanandhan S, et al. Intravenous fluid regimen and hyponatraemia among children: a randomized controlled trial. Pediatr

Nephrol 2010;25(11):2303–2309.
78. Neville KA, Sandeman DJ, Rubinstein A, et al. Prevention of Hyponatremia during Maintenance Intravenous Fluid Administration: A Prospective Randomized Study of Fluid Type versus Fluid Rate. J Pediatr 2010;156(2):313–319.e1–2.
79. McNab S, Duke T, South M, et al. 140 mmol/L of sodium versus 77 mmol/L of sodium in maintenance intravenous fluid therapy for children in hospital (PIMS): a randomised controlled double-blind trial. Lancet 2015;385(9974):1190–7.
80. Friedman JN, Beck CE, DeGroot J, et al. Comparison of isotonic and hypotonic intravenous maintenance fluids: A randomized clinical trial. JAMA Pediatr 2015;169(5):445–51.
81. McNab S, Ware RS, Neville KA, et al. Isotonic versus hypotonic solutions for maintenance intravenous fluid administration in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;12:CD009457.
82. Wang J, Xu E, Xiao Y. Isotonic versus hypotonic maintenance IV fluids in hospitalized children: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2014;133(1):105–13.
83. Yang G, Jiang W, Wang X, et al. The efficacy of isotonic and hypotonic intravenous maintenance fluid for pediatric patients: A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Pediatr Emerg Care 2015;31(2):122–6.
84. Amer BE, Abdelwahab OA, Abdelaziz A, et al. Efficacy and safety of isotonic versus hypotonic intravenous maintenance fluids in hospitalized children: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Pediatr Nephrol. 2023.
85. Holliday MA. Isotonic saline expands extracellular fluid and is inappropriate for maintenance therapy. Pediatrics. 2005;115(1):193–194.
86. Holliday MA, Ray PE, Friedman AL. Fluid therapy for children: facts, fashions and questions. Arch Dis Child. 2007;92(6):546–550.
87. Kannan L, Lodha R. Appropriate fluid for intravenous maintenance therapy in hospitalized children--current status. Indian J Pediatr. 2011;78(3):357–9.
88. World Health Organization. Hospital Care for Children: Guidelines for the Management of Common Illnesses with Limited Resources, 2nd edn. Geneva:WHO. Available from: http://www.who.int/maternal_child_adolescent/documents/child_hospital_care/en/2013.
89. Lehtiranta S, Honkila M, Kallio M, et al. Risk of Electrolyte Disorders in Acutely Ill Children Receiving Commercially Available Plasmalike Isotonic Fluids: A Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Pediatr 2021;175(1):28–35.
90. Van Regenmortel N, Verbrugghe W, Roelant E, et al. Maintenance fluid therapy and fluid creep impose more significant fluid, sodium, and chloride burdens than resuscitation fluids in critically ill patients: a retrospective study in a tertiary mixed ICU population. Intensive Care Med. 2018;44(4):409–417.
91. Lindén-Søndersø A, Jungner M, Spångfors M, et al. Survey of non-resuscitation fluids administered during septic shock: a multicenter prospective observational study. Ann Intensive Care. 2019;9(1):132.
92. Maes T, Meuwissen A, Diltoer M, et al. Impact of maintenance, resuscitation and unintended fluid therapy on global fluid load after elective coronary artery bypass surgery. J Crit Care. 2019;49:129–135.
93. Al-Lawati ZH, Sur M, Kennedy CE, et al. Profile of Fluid Exposure and Recognition of Fluid Overload in Critically Ill Children. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2020;21(8):760–766.
94. Barhight MF, Nelson D, Chong G, et al. Non-resuscitation fluid in excess of hydration requirements is associated with higher mortality in critically ill children. Pediatr Res. 2022;91(1):235–240.
95. Bulfon AF, Alomani HL, Anton N, et al. Intravenous Fluid Prescription Practices in Critically Ill Children: A Shift in Focus from Natremia to Chloremia? J Pediatr Intensive Care. 2019;8(4):218–225.
96. Ingelse SA, Wiegers HM, Calis JC, et al. Early Fluid Overload Prolongs Mechanical Ventilation in Children With Viral-Lower Respiratory Tract Disease. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2017;18(3):e106–e111.
97. Kong X, Zhu Y, Zhu X. Association between early fluid overload and mortality in critically-ill mechanically ventilated children: a single-center retrospective cohort study. BMC Pediatr. 2021;21(1):474.
98. Naveda Romero OE, Naveda Meléndez AF. Fluid overload and kidney failure in children with severe sepsis and septic shock: A cohort study. Arch Argent Pediatr. 2017;115(2):118–124.
99. Raina R, Sethi SK, Wadhwani N, et al. Fluid Overload in Critically Ill Children. Front Pediatr. 2018;6:306.
100. The Royal Children's Hospital Melbourne. IV fluids - for children beyond the newborn period. Clinical Practice Guidelines. Updated October 2020. Accessed September 1, 2023. Available from: https://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/guideline_index/intravenous_fluids/.
101. Segar JL. A physiological approach to fluid and electrolyte management of the preterm infant: Review. J Neonatal Perinatal Med. 2020;13(1):11–19.
102. Rutledge A, Murphy HJ, Harer MW, et al. Fluid Balance in the Critically Ill Child Section: "How Bad Is Fluid in Neonates?" Front Pediatr. 2021;9:651458.
103. Lindower JB. Water balance in the fetus and neonate. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 2017;22(2):71–75.
104. Balasubramanian K, Kumar P, Saini SS, et al. Isotonic versus hypotonic fluid supplementation in term neonates with severe hyperbilirubinemia - a double-blind, randomized, controlled trial. Acta Paediatr. 2012;101(3):236–41.
105. Dathan K, Sundaram M. Comparison of isotonic versus hypotonic intravenous fluid for maintenance fluid therapy in neonates more than or equal to 34 weeks of gestational age - a randomized clinical trial. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2022;35(25):6338–6345.
106. Tuzun F, Akcura Y, Duman N, et al. Comparison of isotonic and hypotonic intravenous fluids in term newborns: is it time to quit hypotonic fluids. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2022;35(2):356–361.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

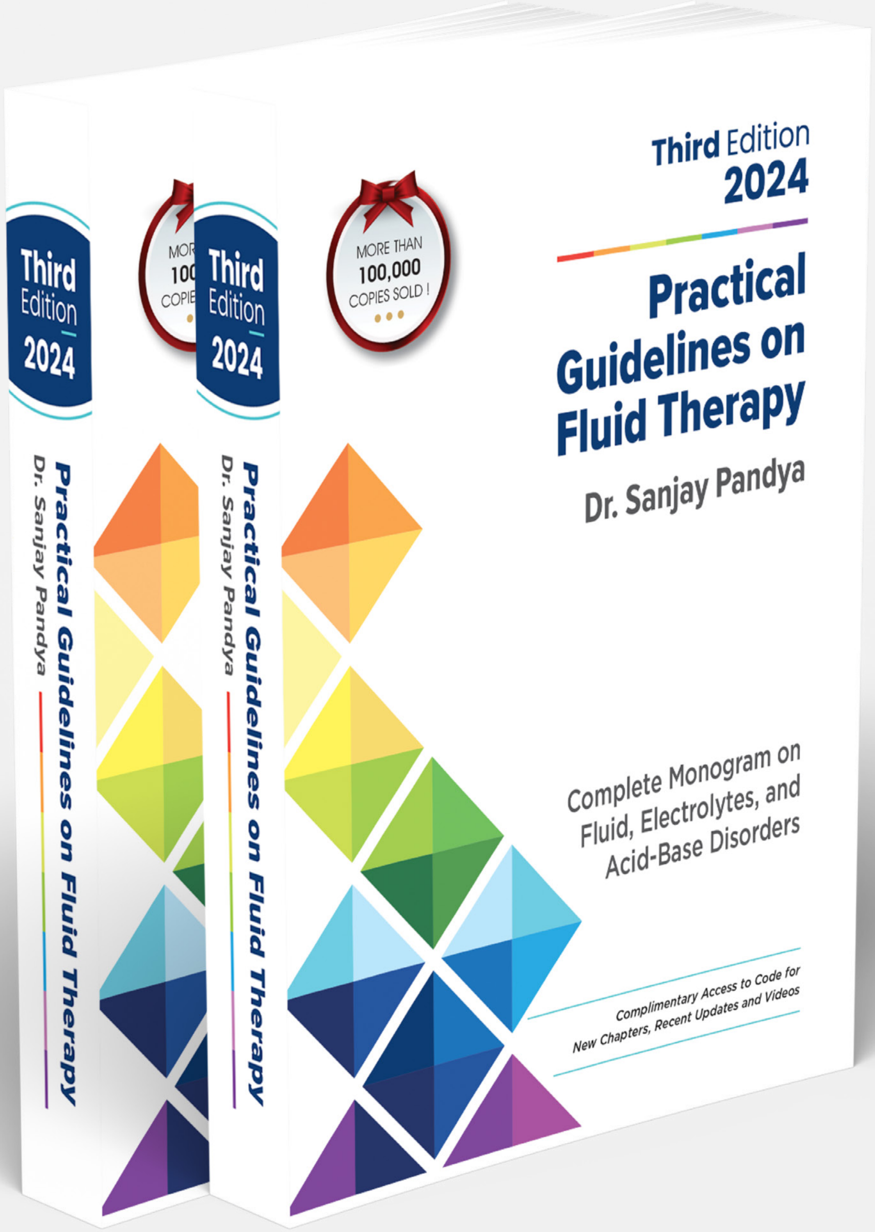
www.KidneyEducation.com

- » Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- » This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- » It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 49:

Replacement Fluid Therapy and its Monitoring in Children


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

49

Replacement Fluid Therapy and its Monitoring in Children

Assessment of the Severity of Dehydration....................................... 587

Laboratory Assessment.................. 588

Treatment Based on Type of Dehydration....................................... 589

- Isonatremic or isotonic dehydration .590
- Hyponatremic or hypotonic dehydration.................................. 592
- Hypernatremic or hypertonic dehydration.................................. 593

Treatment Based on the Causes.... 595

- Diarrhea....................................... 595
- Vomiting....................................... 598
- Diabetic ketoacidosis.................... 600

Monitoring 601

- Physical examination and vital signs 601
- Fluid balance and weight chart..... 602
- Laboratory tests............................ 602

Replacement fluid therapy represents the third crucial pillar in comprehensive fluid management for children, complementing fluid resuscitation and maintenance strategies. IV fluids replacement aims to replenish preexisting deficits (fluids lost before treatment) and address ongoing losses, such as gastrointestinal issues due to vomiting and diarrhea, by administering the appropriate solutions to correct fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base disorders.

The five crucial steps to planning optimal and effective replacement fluid therapy in children are as follows:

1. Severity assessment: Assess the severity of dehydration, which can be categorized as mild, moderate, or severe.
2. Laboratory assessment: Utilize laboratory tests to evaluate dehydration in children.
3. Establish the type of dehydration: Determine the type of dehydration based on sodium concentration, specifically identifying if it is hyponatremic, isonatremic, or hypernatremic. Plan treatment based on this differentiation.
4. Identifying the underlying cause: Identify the etiology of fluid loss, such as diarrhea, vomiting, diabetic ketoacidosis, etc., and individualize treatment based on it.
5. Monitoring: Close clinical assessments, periodic laboratory tests, strict measurement of urine volume, and maintaining a daily weight chart help to assess the child's response to therapy, facilitating necessary adjustments based on their condition.

ASSESSMENT OF THE SEVERITY OF DEHYDRATION

The first step in replacement fluid management is to assess the severity of dehydration, which helps to decide both the urgency of intervention and the volume of fluid necessary for effective rehydration.

Determining the extent of dehydration involves three assessment steps: Asking specific questions, looking at visible signs, and physical examinations, as summarized in Table 49.1.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Gorelick MH, Shaw KN, Murphy KO. Validity and reliability of clinical signs in the diagnosis of dehydration in children. Pediatrics. 1997;99(5):E6.
2. National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health (UK). Diarrhoea and Vomiting Caused by Gastroenteritis: Diagnosis, Assessment and Management in Children Younger than 5 Years. London: RCOG Press; 2009 Apr. (NICE Clinical Guidelines, No. 84.) 5, Fluid management. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK63837/.
3. Chakravarthi GK, Kumar P. Study on incidences of electrolyte disorders among children with dehydration. Int J Pediatr Res. 2019;6(7):352–358.
4. Hoxha TF, Azemi M, Avdiu M, et al. The usefulness of clinical and laboratory parameters for predicting severity of dehydration in children with acute gastroenteritis. Med Arch 2014;68(5):304–7.
5. Can YY, Taşar MA, Gökçeoğlu AU. Are the Clinical Evaluation Scales and Laboratory Tests Adequate in Determining Dehydration Degree in Acute Diarrhea? J Pediatr Emerg Intensive Care Med 2022;9:85–93.
6. Shankar P, Mahamud S, Aara A. Study of electrolyte disturbances and renal parameters in acute gastroenteritis under 5 years of age in a tertiary care hospital of Bengaluru, India. Int J Contemp Pediatr. 2020;7(9):1910–1917.
7. Rashid N, Sadia G, Noor F. Frequency and Outcome of Sodium Imbalance in Dehydrated Children Presenting with Acute Watery Diarrhea PJMHS 202;14(1):341–343.
8. Skellett S, Maconochie I, Bingham B, et al. Paediatric advanced life support Guidelines. Resuscitation Council UK. Published May 2021. Visit: https://www.resus.org.uk/library/2021-resuscitation-guidelines/paediatric-advanced-life-support-guidelines.
9. Van de Voorde P, Turner NM, Djakow J, et al. European resuscitation council guidelines 2021: paediatric life support. Resuscitation. 2021;161:327–387.
10. Fernández-Sarmiento J, De Souza DC, Martinez A, et al. Latin American Consensus on the Management of Sepsis in Children: Sociedad Latinoamericana de Cuidados Intensivos Pediátricos [Latin American Pediatric Intensive Care Society] (SLACIP) Task Force: Executive Summary. J Intensive Care Med. 2022;37(6):753–763.
11. Weiss SL, Peters MJ, Alhazzani W, et al. Executive Summary: Surviving Sepsis Campaign International Guidelines for the Management of Septic Shock and Sepsis-Associated Organ Dysfunction in Children. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2020;21(2):e52–e106.
12. Powers KS. Dehydration: Isonatremic, Hyponatremic, and Hypernatremic Recognition and Management. Pediatr Rev. 2015;36(7):274–85.
13. Baek SH, Jo YH, Ahn S, et al. Risk of Overcorrection in Rapid Intermittent Bolus vs Slow Continuous Infusion Therapies of Hypertonic Saline for Patients With Symptomatic Hyponatremia: The SALSA Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Intern Med. 2021;181(1):81–92.
14. World Health Organization. The treatment of diarrhoea: a manual for physicians and other senior health

workers, 4th rev. World Health Organization. 2005. https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/43209.

15. Friedman JN, Goldman RD, Srivastava R, et al. Development of a clinical dehydration scale for use in children between 1 and 36 months of age. J Pediatr. 2004;145(2):201–7.
16. Hoxha T, Xhelili L, Azemi M, et al. Comparing the Accuracy of the Three Dehydration Scales in Children with Acute Diarrhea in a Developing Country of Kosovo. Mater Sociomed. 2015;27(3):140–3.
17. Mahajan V, Sajan SS, Sharma A, et al. Ringers lactate vs normal saline for children with acute diarrhea and severe dehydration- A double blind randomized controlled trial. Indian Pediatr 2012;49(12):963–968.
18. Kartha GB, Rameshkumar R, Mahadevan S. Randomized double-blind trial of Ringer Lactate versus normal saline in pediatric acute severe diarrheal dehydration. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2017;65(6):621–626.
19. Florez ID, Sierra J, Pérez-Gaxiola G. Balanced crystalloid solutions versus 0.9% saline for treating acute diarrhoea and severe dehydration in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2023;5(5):CD013640.
20. Naseem M, Dubey AP, Mishra TK, et al. Effect of Rehydration with Normal Saline versus Ringer Lactate on Serum Sodium Level of Children with Acute Diarrhea and Severe Dehydration: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Indian Pediatr. 2020;57(6):519–522.
21. Cherukuri N, Wadhwa SP. Acute Watery Diarrhea. In: Standard Treatment Guidelines. Indian Academy of Pediatrics (IAP); 2022. Available from: https://iapindia.org/pdf/Ch-020-STG-Acute-Watery-Diarrhea.pdf.
22. Houston KA, Gibb JG, Maitland K. Oral rehydration of malnourished children with diarrhoea and dehydration: A systematic review. Wellcome Open Res. 2017;2:66.
23. Breaux CW Jr, Hood JS, Georgeson KE. The significance of alkalosis and hypochloremia in hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. J Pediatr Surg. 1989;24(12):1250–2.
24. Schmitt Pediatric Guidelines LLC. Vomiting without diarrhea. Seattle Children's. Reviewed September 8, 2023. Available from: https://www.seattlechildrens.org/conditions/a-z/vomiting-without-diarrhea/.
25. American Academy of Pediatrics, Provisional Committee on Quality Improvement, Subcommittee on Acute Gastroenteritis. Practice parameter: the management of acute gastroenteritis in young children. Pediatrics. 1996;97(3):424–435.
26. King CK, Glass R, Bresee JS, et al. Managing acute gastroenteritis among children: oral rehydration, maintenance, and nutritional therapy. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2003;52(RR-16):1–16.
27. Tieder JS, Robertson A, Garrison MM. Pediatric hospital adherence to the standard of care for acute gastroenteritis. Pediatrics. 2009;124(6):e1081–e1087.
28. Cheng A. Emergency department use of oral ondansetron for acute gastroenteritis-related vomiting in infants and children. Paediatr Child Health. 2011;16(3):177–182.
29. Freedman SB, Adler M, Seshadri R, et al. Oral ondansetron for gastroenteritis in a pediatric emergency department. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(16):1698–1705.
30. Hayes W. Ab-normal saline in abnormal kidney function: risks and alternatives. Pediatr Nephrol. 2019;34(7):1191–1199.
31. Duck SC, Wyatt DT. Factors associated with brain herniation in the treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. J Pediatr. 1988;113(1 Pt 1):10–4.
32. Kuppermann N, Ghetti S, Schunk JE, et al. PECARN DKA FLUID Study Group. Clinical Trial of Fluid Infusion Rates for Pediatric Diabetic Ketoacidosis. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(24):2275–2287.
33. Othman MI, Nashwan AJ, Alfayoumi M, et al. PlasmaLyte-148 Versus Normal Saline 0.9% in Diabetic Ketoacidosis Management: A Review. Cureus. 2023;15(6):e41079.
34. Li H, Sun SR, Yap JQ, et al. 0.9% saline is neither normal nor physiological. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B. 2016;17(3):181–7.
35. Reddy S, Weinberg L, Young P. Crystalloid fluid therapy. Crit Care. 2016;20:59.
36. Goad NT, Bakhru RN, Pirkle JL, et al: Association of hyperchloremia with unfavorable clinical outcomes in adults with diabetic ketoacidosis. J Intensive Care Med 2019;35(11):1307–1313.
37. Oliver WD, Willis GC, Hines MC, et al. Comparison of PlasmaLyte A and Sodium Chloride 0.9% for Fluid Resuscitation of Patients With Diabetic Ketoacidosis. Hosp Pharm 2018;53(5):326–330.
38. Alghamdi NA, Major P, Chaudhuri D, et al. Saline Compared to Balanced Crystalloid in Patients With Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. Crit Care Explor. 2022;4(1):e0613.
39. Bergmann KR, Abuzzahab MJ, Nowak J, et al. Resuscitation with Ringer's lactate compared with normal saline for pediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Pediatr Emerg Care 2021;37(5):e236–e242.
40. Catahay JA, Polintan ET, Casimiro M, et al. Balanced electrolyte solutions versus isotonic saline in adult patients with diabetic ketoacidosis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Heart Lung. 2022;54:74–79.
41. Jahangir A, Jahangir A, Siddiqui FS, et al. Normal Saline Versus Low Chloride Solutions in Treatment of Diabetic Ketoacidosis: A Systematic Review of Clinical Trials. Cureus. 2022;14(1):e21324.
42. Gripp KE, Trottier ED, Thakore S, et al. Current recommendations for management of paediatric diabetic ketoacidosis. Paediatr Child Health. 2023;28(2):128–138.
43. Tamzil R, Yaacob N, Noor NM, et al. Comparing the clinical effects of balanced electrolyte solutions versus normal saline in managing diabetic ketoacidosis: A systematic review and meta-analyses. Turk J Emerg Med 2023;23(3):131–138.
44. Chua HR, Venkatesh B, Stachowski E, et al. PlasmaLyte 148 vs 0.9% saline for fluid resuscitation in diabetic ketoacidosis. J Crit Care 2012;27(2):138–45.

45. Van Zyl D, Rheeder P, Delport E. Fluid management in diabetic-acidosis Ringer's lactate versus normal saline: a randomized controlled trial. QJM. 2012;105(4):337–343.
46. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced Crystalloids versus Saline in Noncritically Ill Adults. N Engl J Med 2018;378(9):819–828.
47. Ramanan M, Attokaran A, Murray L. et al. Sodium chloride or PlasmaLyte-148 evaluation in severe diabetic ketoacidosis (SCOPE-DKA): a cluster, crossover, randomized, controlled trial. Intensive Care Med. 2021;47(11):1248–1257.
48. Lehr AR, Rached-d'Astous S, Barrowman N, et al. Balanced Versus Unbalanced Fluid in Critically Ill Children: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Pediatr Crit Care Med 2022;23(3):181–191.
49. Sankar J, Muralidharan J, Lalitha AV, et al. Multiple Electrolytes Solution Versus Saline as Bolus Fluid for Resuscitation in Pediatric Septic Shock: A Multicenter Randomized Clinical Trial. Crit Care Med 2023.
50. JBDS. JBDS-IP Joint British Diabetes Societies Inpatient Care Group. The Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis in Adults, March 2023 Update: JBDS Guidelines [Internet]. London: ABCD; 2023 Mar. Available from: https://abcd.care/sites/abcd.care/files/site_uploads/JBDS_Guidelines_Current/JBDS_02_DKA_Guideline_with_QR_code_March_2023.pdf.
51. BSPED Guideline for the Management of Children and Young People under the age of 18 years with Diabetic Ketoacidosis - 2021 [Internet]. British Society for Paediatric Endocrinology and Diabetes; 2021. Available from: https://www.bsped.org.uk/clinical-resources/bsped-dka-guidelines/.
52. Williams V, Jayashree M, Nallasamy K, et al. 0.9% saline versus PlasmaLyte as initial fluid in children with diabetic ketoacidosis (SPinK trial): a double-blind randomized controlled trial. Crit Care 2020;24(1):1.
53. Yan JW, Slim A, Van Aarsen K, et al. Balanced crystalloids (RInger's lactate) versus normal Saline in adults with diabetic Ketoacidosis in the Emergency Department (BRISK-ED): a protocol for a pilot randomized controlled trial. Pilot Feasibility Stud. 2023;9(1):121.
54. Meyers RS. Pediatric fluid and electrolyte therapy. J Pediatr Pharmacol Ther. 2009;14(4):204–11.
55. Feld LG, Neuspiel DR, Foster BA, et al. Clinical practice guideline: maintenance intravenous fluids in children. Pediatrics 2018;142(6):e20183083.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by
a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

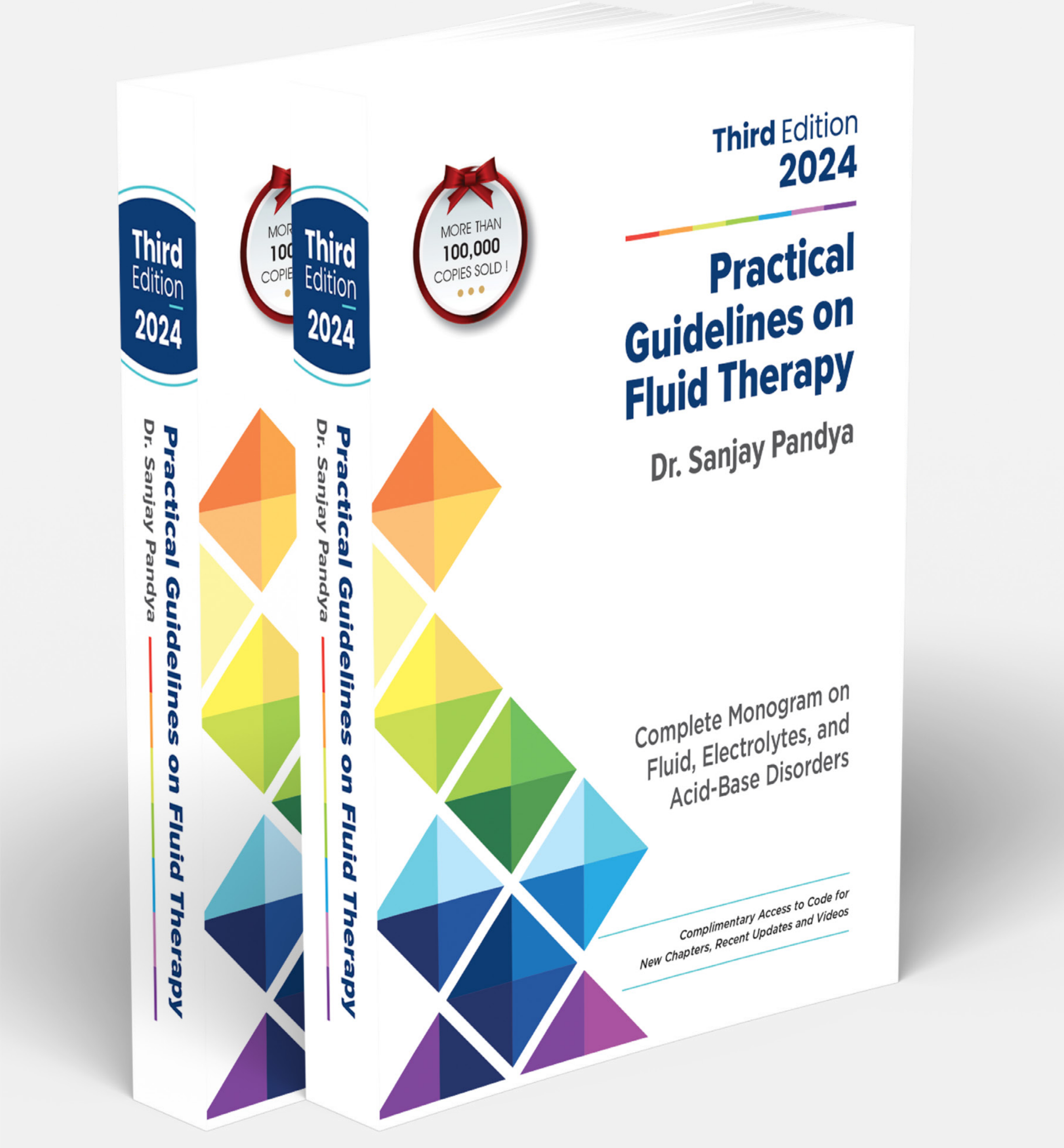
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 50:

Oral Rehydration Therapy


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

50

Oral Rehydration Therapy

Oral Rehydration Solutions vs. Oral Rehydration Therapy **605**
Indications **606**
Contraindications **606**
Pharmacological Basis **607**
  Effect of salt-containing water without glucose 607
  Adding glucose to salt-containing water 607
Recommended Composition of ORS **608**
  Glucose content 608
  Sodium content 608
  Osmolarity 609
  Potassium content 609
  Citrate content to correct acidosis ..609
Types of Oral Rehydration Solutions **609**
  WHO Standard ORS 610
  WHO low osmolarity ORS 611
  ReSoMal ORS 611
  Rice-based ORS 612
Zinc in ORS **612**
Treatment Plan Based on Severity of Dehydration **612**
  Plan A: Home treatment 612
  Plan B: Clinic-based ORT............. 613
  Plan C: Admission and IV fluid therapy 613
Method of Administration **613**
Monitoring ORS Therapy **614**

Oral rehydration therapy (ORT) is a remarkable innovation that changed the outcome of millions of children suffering from diarrhea globally [1, 2]. ORT is a wonderful discovery that has saved more lives than any other treatment modality over the past century [3]. ORT is a cost-effective, noninvasive alternative to intravenous fluids, offering the benefits of being less expensive and having a lower complication rate.

ORT eliminates the need for IV fluid infusion, which requires a skilled professional to establish a venous line, especially in infants, and also avoids the risks of pulmonary edema or electrolyte imbalance associated with IV fluid therapy. The efficacy of ORT is often underestimated due to its low cost, leading to a lack of trust and subsequent underuse [4].

ORAL REHYDRATION SOLUTIONS VS. ORAL REHYDRATION THERAPY

The terms "oral rehydration therapy" and "oral rehydration solutions" are often used interchangeably. Oral rehydration therapy refers to the broader practice of using a variety of solutions, including oral rehydration solution (ORS), for rehydration, typically containing a mixture of salt, sugar, and water. On the other hand, ORS represents specific formulations, such as the WHO-recommended mixture of glucose and electrolytes, which are scientifically designed to treat dehydration effectively. Thus, ORS stands out as the most scientifically advanced and effective method for treating dehydration among all ORT options.

Want to read more?

Get Printed Version

Get Kindle Version

REFERENCES

1. Hirschhorn N. The treatment of acute diarrhea in children. An historical and physiological perspective. Am J Clin Nutr. 1980;33(3):637–63.
2. Hartman S, Brown E, Loomis E, et al. Gastroenteritis in Children. Am Fam Physician. 2019;99(3):159–165.
3. Guandalini S. Treatment of acute diarrhea in the new millennium. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2000;30(5):486–489.
4. Satheesh G, Unnikrishnan MK. The alarming need for universalising Oral Rehydration Therapy: How many more children must die? Journal of Global Health Economics and Policy. 2022;2:e2022007.
5. World Health Organization. Oral rehydration salts: production of the new ORS. World Health Organization 2006.
6. Ofei SY, Fuchs GJ 3rd. Principles and practice of Oral rehydration. Curr Gastroenterol Rep. 2019;21(12):67.
7. Lenters LM, Das JK, Bhutta ZA. Systematic review of strategies to increase use of oral rehydration solution at the household level. BMC Public Health. 2013;13(3):S28.
8. Munos MK, Walker CL, Black RE. The effect of oral rehydration solution and recommended home fluids on diarrhoea mortality. Int J Epidemiol. 2010;39 Suppl 1(Suppl 1):i75–87.
9. Spandorfer PR, Alessandrini EA, Joffe MD, et al. Oral versus intravenous rehydration of moderately dehydrated children: a randomized, controlled trial. Pediatrics. 2005;115(2):295–301.
10. Hartling L, Bellemare S, Wiebe N, et al. Oral versus intravenous rehydration for treating dehydration due to gastroenteritis in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2006;2006(3):CD004390.
11. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guidelines for the Management of Acute Diarrhea after a Disaster. 2014. Available from: https://www.cdc.gov/disasters/disease/diarrheaguidelines.html.
12. Guarino A, Ashkenazi S, Gendrel D, et al. European Society for Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition/European Society for Pediatric Infectious Diseases evidence-based guidelines for the management of acute gastroenteritis in children in Europe: update 2014. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr. 2014;59(1):132–52.
13. Powers KS. Dehydration: isonatremic, hyponatremic, and hypernatremic recognition and management. Pediatr Rev 2015;36(7):274–85.
14. Mahalanabis D, Sack RB, Jacobs B, et al. Use of an oral glucose-electrolyte solution in the treatment of paediatric cholera--a controlled study. J Trop Pediatr Environ Child Health. 1974;20(2):82–7.
15. Loo DD, Zeuthen T, Chandy G, et al. Cotransport of water by the Na+/glucose cotransporter. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93(23):13367–70.
16. Chen L, Tuo B, Dong H. Regulation of intestinal glucose absorption by ion channels and transporters. Nutrients. 2016;8(1):43.
17. Sarangi G, Mohanty N, Kadam N. The Prospects of ORS And Miles Ahead; New Indian Journal of Pediatrics, 2019;8(3):39–54.
18. Goodall RM. Oral Rehydration Therapy: How it Works. Rehydration Project: Focus on Diarrhea, Dehydration and Rehydration. Updated 2019 Jul 18. Available from: https://rehydrate.org/ors/ort-how-it-

works.htm.
19. Buccigrossi V, Lo Vecchio A, Bruzzese E, et al. Potency of oral rehydration solution in inducing fluid absorption is related to glucose concentration. Sci Rep 2020;10(1):7803.
20. WHO. Oral rehydration salts (ORS) a new reduced osmolarity formulation. updated: 23 August, 2019. [ONLINE] Available via http://www.rehydrate.org/ors/expert-consultation.html (Accessed 27 September 2023).
21. World Health Organization. 2002. "New Formula Oral Rehydration Solution." In WHO Drug Information. Vol. 16, No. Geneva: WHO. Available at http://apps.who.int/medicinedocs/en/d/Js4950e/2.4.html.
22. Gregorio GV, Gonzales ML, Dans LF, et al. Polymer-based oral rehydration solution for treating acute watery diarrhoea. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2016;12(12):CD006519.
23. Aghsaeifard Z, Heidari G, Alizadeh R. Understanding the use of oral rehydration therapy: A narrative review from clinical practice to main recommendations. Health Sci Rep. 2022;5(5):e827.
24. CHOICE study group. Multicenter, Randomized, double-blind clinical trial to evaluate the efficacy and safety of a reduced Osmolarity Oral Rehydration salts solution in children with acute watery diarrhea. Pediatrics. 2001;107(4):613–8.
25. Hahn S, Kim Y, Garner P. Reduced osmolarity oral rehydration solution for treating dehydration due to diarrhoea in children: systematic review. BMJ 2001;323(7304):81–5.
26. Hahn S, Kim S, Garner P. Reduced osmolarity oral rehydration solution for treating dehydration caused by acute diarrhoea in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(1):CD002847.
27. Islam M, Samadi AR, Ahmed SM, et al. Oral rehydration therapy: Efficacy of sodium citrate equals to sodium bicarbonate for correction of acidosis in diarrhoea. Gut 1984;25(8):900–4.
28. Suh JS, Hahn WH, Cho BS. Recent Advances of Oral Rehydration Therapy (ORT). Electrolyte Blood Press. 2010;8(2):82–6.
29. Houston KA, Gibb JG, Maitland K. Oral rehydration of malnourished children with diarrhoea and dehydration: a systematic review. Wellcome Open Res. 2017;2:66.
30. Mohanty N, Thapa BR, Mathai J, et al. Low Osmolarity Oral Rehydration Salt Solution (LORS) in Management of Dehydration in Children. Indian Pediatr. 2021;58(3):266–272.
31. Bawankar B. Use of Low Osmolarity Oral Rehydration Salt solution (LORS) in the treatment of dehydration in children. Asian J Biomed Pharmaceut Sci. 2022;12(92):137.
32. Hirschhorn N, Nalin DR, Cash RA, Greenough WB 3rd. Formulation of oral rehydration solution. Lancet. 2002;360(9329):340–341.
33. Duggan C, Fontaine O, Pierce NF, et al. Scientific rationale for a change in the composition of oral rehydration solution. JAMA. 2004;291(21):2628–31.
34. World Health Organisation (WHO), United Nations Children Fund (UNICEF) Joint Statement: Clinical management of acute diarrhea. WHO 2004. Available from: https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/WHO_FCH_CAH_04.7 Accessed October 2, 2023.
35. Alam NH, Yunus M, Abu S, et al. Symptomatic hyponatremia during treatment of dehydrating diarrheal disease with reduced osmolarity oral rehydration solution. JAMA. 2006;296(5):567–73.
36. Pocket book of hospital care for children 2nd edition. Guidelines for the management of common childhood illnesses.In: Geneva: World Health Oganization;2013.
37. USAID Global Health Supply Chain Program. Manual for Procurement & Supply of Quality-Assured MNCH Commodities. MODULE 3, ORAL REHYDRATION, ORS-1. [Internet]. [cited 2023 October 3]. Available from: https://www.ghsupplychain.org/sites/default/files/2019-02/MNCH%20Commodities-OralRehydration.pdf.
38. Ashworth A, Khanum S, Jackson A, et al. Guidelines for the inpatient treatment of severely malnourished children. In: Geneva: World Health Organization;2003;51.
39. Gore SM, Fontaine O, Pierce NF. Impact of rice based oral rehydration solution on stool output and duration of diarrhoea: meta-analysis of 13 clinical trials. British Medical Journal, 1992;304(6822):287–91.
40. Fontaine O, Gore SM, Pierce NF. WITHDRAWN: Rice-based oral rehydration solution for treating diarrhoea. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007;1998(4):CD001264.
41. Sundari TA, Soetjiningsih I, Yati Soenarto SS, et al. Efficacy of reduced osmolarity oral rehydration solution, rice-based oral rehydration solution, and standard WHO oral rehydration solution in children with acute diarrhea – a randomized open trial. Paediatr Indones 2009;49(3):169–176.
42. Molla AM, Ahmed SM, Greenough WB 3rd. Rice-based oral rehydration solution decreases the stool volume in acute diarrhoea. Bull World Health Organ. 1985;63(4):751–6.
43. Walker CL, Black RE. Zinc for the treatment of diarrhoea: effect on diarrhoea morbidity, mortality and incidence of future episodes. Int J Epidemiol. 2010;39(Suppl 1):i63–9.
44. Lazzerini M, Wanzira H. Oral zinc for treating diarrhoea in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2016;12(12):CD005436.
45. World Health Organization. Intervention. Zinc supplementation in the management of diarrhoea. WHO; updated 2023 Aug 9. Available from: https://www.who.int/tools/elena/interventions/zinc-diarrhoea.
46. Kailemia M, Kariuki N, Laving A, et al. Caregiver oral rehydration solution fluid monitoring charts versus standard care for the management of some dehydration among Kenyan children: a randomized controlled trial. Int Health. 2018;10(6):442–450.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

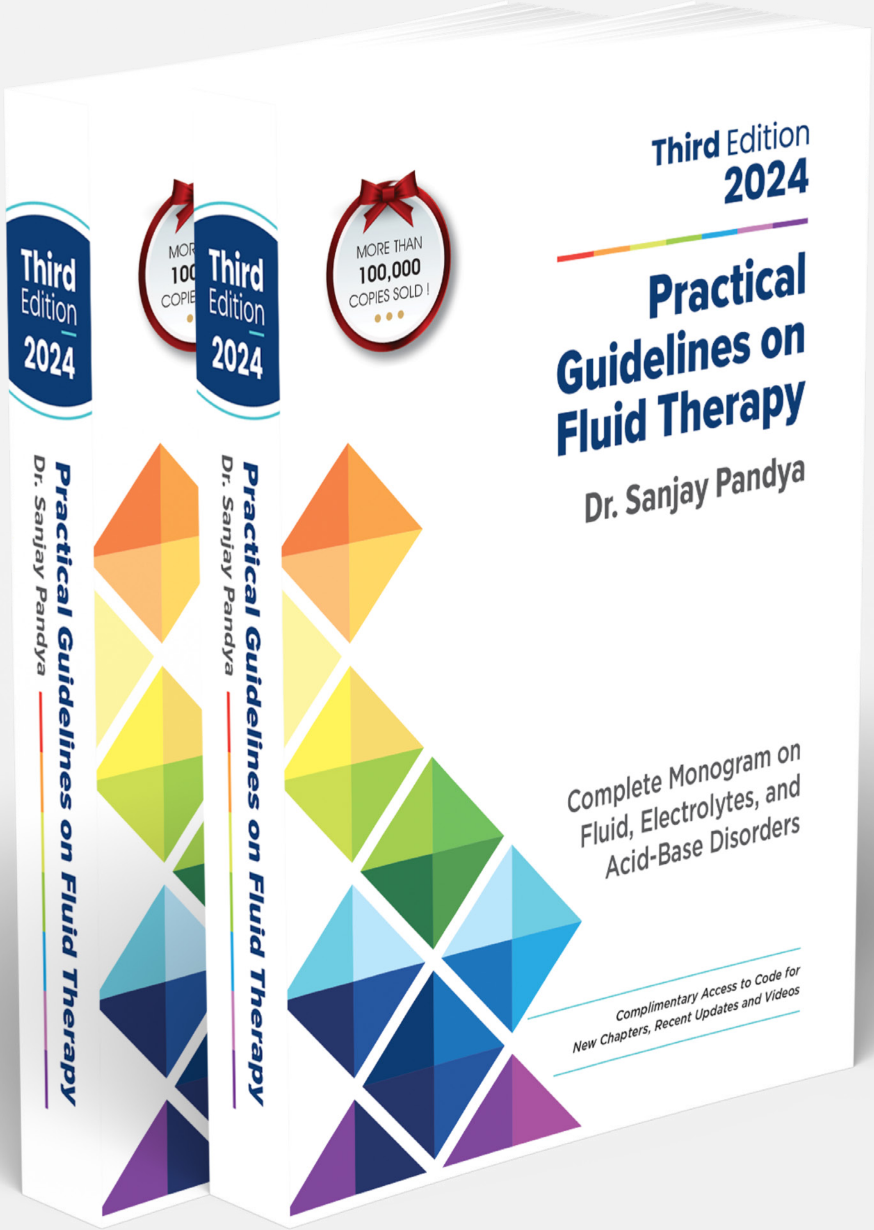
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 51:

Maternal Changes and Fluid Management during Pregnancy


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

To get a copy of the book, visit: **www.fluidtherapy.org**

51

Maternal Changes and Fluid Management during Pregnancy

Maternal Physiological Changes during Pregnancy **619**
Blood volume changes 620
Cardiovascular system changes .. 620
Blood pressure changes............... 620
Changes during labor and delivery 620
Fluid Therapy in Hyperemesis Gravidarum ....
Management 621
Indications of IV fluids 621
Outpatient vs. inpatient IV hydration.................................. 621
Selection of IV fluids................ 621
Role of dextrose solutions....... 622
Fluid therapy during Normal Labor and Vaginal Delivery.............................
Oral liquid intake........................... 623
Oral solid food intake.................... 623
Parenteral IV fluids in normal labor 624
Indications of IV fluids 624
Type and volume of IV fluids ... 624
Preoperative Oral Intake 625
Liquid intake ....
Solid food intake................................

During pregnancy, delivery, and in the postpartum period, administration of IV fluids may be required. It is essential to provide appropriate and timely fluid management whenever needed. This chapter aims to provide a basic understanding of the physiological changes that occur in the mother during pregnancy, as well as guidelines for fluid management in the cases of hyperemesis gravidarum and normal delivery.

MATERNAL PHYSIOLOGICAL CHANGES DURING PREGNANCY

Many physiological hemodynamic changes occur during pregnancy, starting just after conception and resolving within six weeks of delivery. An increase in weight gain during pregnancy is attributable to an increased size of the gravid uterus and breasts and an increase in blood volume and extravascular extracellular fluid [1]. Pregnancy-induced hemodynamic and cardiovascular changes ensure optimal growth and development of the fetus, and it also helps in the prevention of blood loss during delivery.

It is essential to understand changes in the circulatory system during pregnancy, such as an increase in cardiac output, retention of sodium and water leading to an expansion of blood volume, and a reduction in systemic vascular resistance and blood pressure. These physiological changes can significantly impact fluid management in pregnant patients, so understanding these changes can help in planning for fluid management in pregnant patients more efficiently.

A. Blood volume changes

Maternal plasma volume and red blood cell increase as early as the fourth week of pregnancy and peak at 28 to 34 weeks of gestation. During pregnancy, there is a retention of 900 to 1000 mEq of sodium and 6 to 8 liters of total body water, causing the expansion of total body volume [2–4].

The increased blood volume during pregnancy helps the body to meet the increased circulatory needs of the fetoplacental unit, which are necessary to sustain the pregnancy. This increased blood volume also allows most women to tolerate significant blood loss during childbirth.

The maternal plasma volume increases by 40% to 50% during pregnancy. In comparison, the red cell volume only increases by 15% to 20%, resulting in hemodilution and a condition known as physiological anemia of pregnancy or relative anemia [5, 6].

B. Cardiovascular system changes

During pregnancy, cardiac output increases by 30% to 40%. The maximum increase usually occurs around 28–30 weeks of gestation [7]. This increase is due to both increased stroke volume and heart rate.

C. Blood pressure changes

Reduced systemic vascular resistance leads to a fall in blood pressure (BP) during pregnancy. The BP typically falls early in gestation and is usually 10 mmHg below baseline in the second trimester [2]. However, in the third trimester of pregnancy, systemic vascular resistance gradually increases, leading to a slow increase in blood pressure reaching nonpregnant levels by the end of the pregnancy [8].

D. Changes during labor and delivery

During labor and delivery, significant hemodynamic changes occur due to anxiety, exertion, pain, uterine contractions, uterine involution, and bleeding. During the first stage of labor, each uterine contraction displaces about 300 to 500 ml of blood into the general circulation and increases central blood volume by as much as 500 ml. As blood volume increases, the stroke volume of the heart also increases, leading to a 50% increase in cardiac output with each contraction.

In addition, maternal pushing efforts in the second stage of labor can further increase cardiac output. Immediately postpartum, cardiac output increases to 80 percent above pre-labor values due to significant autotransfusion associated with uterine involution.

Thus, the cardiac output can increase to 75% above its baseline level during labor and delivery. An increase in blood volume and cardiac output protects the mother from average blood loss of delivery (300–400 ml for a vaginal delivery and 500–800 ml for a cesarean section).

FLUID THERAPY IN HYPEREMESIS GRAVIDARUM

Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy (NVP) is the most frequent problem in the first trimester of pregnancy, which affects 50%–90% of all pregnant women [9, 10]. These symptoms are worse in the morning (but often persist throughout the day) and are usually limited to the first trimester of pregnancy.

Hyperemesis gravidarum (HG) is a severe form of nausea and vomiting that affects a small percentage of pregnant women, ranging from 0.3% to 3%.

It can lead to significant weight loss, dehydration, ketoacidosis, hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis from the loss of gastric hydrochloric acid, and nutritional deficiencies [11–15].

Two serious nutritional deficiencies reported with hyperemesis in pregnancy are vitamin B1 (thiamine) deficiency (which can cause Wernicke's encephalopathy) and vitamin K^+ deficiency (which can cause maternal coagulopathy and fetal intracranial hemorrhage) [16].

Hyperemesis gravidarum is the major reason for hospitalization during the first half of pregnancy and remains the second leading cause of hospitalization throughout pregnancy [17, 18].

Management

Management of hyperemesis gravidarum includes adequate hydration, antiemetic medications, electrolyte replacement, vitamin supplementation, and dietary management [19, 20]. Intravenous hydration is an essential intervention aimed at fluid resuscitation and correcting fluid deficit, ketones, electrolytes deficit (primarily hypokalemia), and acid-base balance [21]. In addition, as pregnant women are in a catabolic condition, sufficient caloric requirements must be administered [22].

1. Indications of IV fluids

Common indications of IV fluid administration in hyperemesis gravidarum are [23, 24]:

- Persistent vomiting (three or more times per 24 hours) despite antiemetic medical therapy.
- 5% or more weight loss of prepregnancy weight.
- Severe dehydration with the presence of signs and symptoms due to significant fluid loss such as fatigue, dizziness, decreased skin turgor, postural changes in blood pressure and pulse, ketonuria, electrolyte imbalance, acid-base abnormality like hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis, increased hematocrit, increased BUN to creatinine ratio and abnormal urine specific gravity.

2. Outpatient vs. inpatient IV hydration

Ambulatory (outpatient) intravenous hydration is the recommended first-line treatment for patients with severe or persistent nausea and vomiting. Multiple studies have found this treatment option to be as effective as inpatient care [25, 26].

Hospitalization is recommended if vomiting persists even after rehydration and outpatient management fails [27].

3. Selection of IV fluids

Normal saline (NS) and Ringer's lactate are the mainstay of the management of dehydration and are equally effective in treating complications of hyperemesis gravidarum [28, 29]. Usually, Ringer's lactate (RL) is preferred for the initial aggressive rehydration, and normal saline is used for the subsequent slower rehydration [30].

Why is Ringer's lactate preferred for the initial aggressive rehydration and in patients of HG with severe hyponatremia?

The speed at which one rehydrates depends on the severity of their dehydration. In patients of hyperemesis gravidarum with severe dehydration, 2 liters of Ringer's lactate is infused rapidly initially (first 1 liter RL over 2 hours followed by second 1-liter RL over 4 hours). In severe hyponatremia, avoid rapid administration of a large volume of high sodium containing normal saline (sodium 154 mEq/L), as it can lead to rapid correction of sodium levels and may cause central pontine myelinolysis [30].

Therefore in symptomatic and severe hyponatremia (serum sodium <120 mEq/L), choose low sodium containing Ringer's lactate (130 mEq/L sodium) which carries lower risk of rapid correction of hyponatremia.

Why is normal saline preferred for the subsequently slow rehydration in and in patients of HG with less severe hyponatremia associated with hypochloremia?

For hospitalized women with hyperemesis gravidarum who are hypovolemic with minimal symptoms of hyponatremia and have serum sodium levels >120 mEq/L (low risk of rapid correction) and hypochloremia, normal saline is an appropriate choice for rehydration. Normal saline containing 154 mEq/L sodium and chloride is a preferred fluid in HG for hydration because it corrects vomiting-induced hypochloremia, hyponatremia, hypokalemia, and metabolic alkalosis effectively [31].

If hypokalemic, the woman may require potassium supplementation [12, 32]. Usually, 20 mEq/L of potassium chloride is added to either normal saline or half-normal saline (depending on the serum sodium status) and infused slowly (over 6 to 8 hours) to correct hypokalemia.

In severe hypokalemia, consider potassium replacement using one liter of normal saline with 40 mEq potassium chloride to be infused over 4–6 hours. 10 mEq of potassium per hour is a safe infusion rate if urine output is adequate.

4. Role of dextrose solutions

Avoid dextrose-containing IV fluids for the initial fluid replacement, but it may be beneficial for the subsequent IV fluid infusion. Two reasons to avoid dextrose containing IV fluids for the initial fluid replacement are [33]:

- Risk of Wernicke's encephalopathy: As thiamine (vitamin B1) deficiency occurs in about 60% of hyperemesis gravidarum patients [34], dextrose-containing IV fluids can precipitate Wernicke's encephalopathy in such patients [10]. Supplement 100 mg of thiamine intravenously with the initial IV fluid on the first day and another 100 mg daily for the next two or three days to prevent Wernicke's encephalopathy [25, 33, 35].
- Risk of worsening of hypokalemia: Hypokalemia is a common electrolyte abnormality in hyperemesis gravidarum [16]. It is recommended to avoid using dextrose-containing solutions for initial fluid replacement, as dextrose administration stimulates insulin release, which can cause extracellular potassium to be shifted into cells and worsen hypokalemia.

After thiamine supplementation and supplementing potassium, maintain hydration with the dextrose-based solution as it fulfills the caloric requirement and helps in faster improvement of nausea [36]. In addition, evidence suggests better improvement with dextrose saline than normal saline in moderate-severe cases [37]. Finally, select 10% dextrose to provide nutritional supplementation rather than the low-calorie-containing 5% solution [38].

Continue administering IV hydration until ketosis and vitamin deficiencies are corrected, and the patient is able to tolerate oral fluids. Afterward, check and address any associated magnesium, calcium, and phosphorus deficits.

To effectively address fluid deficit with hyponatremia and hypokalemia, it is crucial to monitor the input-output chart and check the blood urea and serum electrolyte levels daily [25]. This will allow for the accurate selection of the appropriate IV fluids necessary for treatment.

FLUID THERAPY DURING NORMAL LABOR AND VAGINAL DELIVERY

Labor is a period of prolonged and vigorous exercise for pregnant mothers. During labor, effective skeletal and smooth muscle contractions require increased energy demand. Glucose is an essential source of maternal energy, which plays an important part in the improvement of muscle performance and overcoming fatigue. Depletion of glycogen stores and fat metabolism to meet glucose demands may cause ketonemia, hypoglycemia, and acidosis. An adequate resource of glucose is needed to maintain exercise tolerance and muscle efficiency during labor. Dehydration adversely affects exercise performance and may be a factor contributing to a longer duration of labor. Providing adequate dextrose and fluids to pregnant mothers during labor can help to provide the necessary energy and hydration they need and may also lead to a faster labor process, shorter labor duration, and potentially a reduced need for oxytocin and cesarean delivery [39, 40]. To assess the hydration status, it is important to monitor urinary output and the presence or absence of ketonuria [41].

A. Oral liquid intake

Previously, the policy during active labor was "nil by mouth," or restriction of oral intake. This policy was based on the concern that a woman may require general anesthesia for an emergency cesarean section and inhale stomach contents during surgery, leading to aspiration pneumonia [42]. However, the risk of aspiration pneumonia is very low [43], and restricting oral intake can cause dehydration and ketosis [44]. Therefore, this policy is not necessary and may cause harm to the woman [44].

Women with low complication risks and at low risk of cesarean section delivery are allowed and encouraged to consume moderate amounts of clear liquids orally during labor [45–47]. However, to avoid aspiration during uncomplicated labor, it is more important to consider how much suspended particulate matter the fluid ingested contains rather than the volume of fluid permitted to be consumed [45].

During labor, it is necessary to restrict oral intake in patients who are at high risk of aspiration (e.g., morbid obesity, diabetes mellitus, and difficult airway) or those who may need a cesarean section [45].

B. Oral solid food intake

Avoiding particulate-containing fluids and solid food during active labor and delivery is the standard practice and a recommendation by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2009) and the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia (2016) [45–47]. This recommendation is because gastric emptying time is remarkably prolonged during labor.

However, the incidence of aspiration is low with current obstetric anesthesia techniques in recent literature. Therefore, solid food restriction in women at low risk of requiring general anesthesia is questioned [42, 48, 49].

Cochrane review (2013) found no evidence to support restriction to eating or drinking in women at low risk of requiring anesthesia for Cesarean section [50]. However, a recent systematic review (Ciardulli et al. 2017) of 10 randomized trials in women with a low-risk singleton (one fetus) pregnancies found that less restrictive policies resulted in a slightly shorter duration of labor [51].

C. Parenteral fluids in normal labor

During normal labor, intravenous fluids are usually administered for proper hydration and to prevent prolonged labor. But as per current evidence from the Cochrane database of systematic reviews (2013), the World Health Organization (2014), and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019), continuous IV fluid infusion is not routinely recommended in normal labor [39, 52].

Regardless of solution type, possible harmful effects to mother and newborn due to the administration of intravenous fluids during labor are:

1. Discomfort, stress, and restriction in freedom of movement.
2. Peripheral swelling and increased risk of fluid overload due to excessive IV fluids.
3. Postpartum breast swelling and feeding issues due to the large volume of IV fluids infusion [53].
4. Fetal volume expansion causes a bloated newborn at birth and greater weight loss of the newborn after birth [54, 55].

Moreover, oral food and liquids are more effective than intravenous fluids in providing energy and nutrition for the increased demand during labor [50]. Thus, instead of administering intravenous fluids to all women during labor, they should be given only to selected patients, considering their limitations and drawbacks.

Conclusion: During normal labor, avoid the "nil by mouth" policy and do not administer intravenous fluids routinely to prevent dehydration and ketosis [39, 52].

1. Indications of IV fluids during labor

When oral fluid intake is restricted, administering IV fluids in a moderate amount shortens the course of labor [39]. So the administration of IV fluid is indicated in selected pregnant mothers.

Common indications for intravenous fluid administration during labor include:

- High-risk pregnancies or restricted oral intake because of the possible need for cesarean delivery.
- Women who develop ketosis in labor [39].
- Following epidural or spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery to prevent or treat hypotension [56].
- Infusion of oxytocin for induction or augmentation of labor.
- Need to administer intravenous fluids for other clinical reasons such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, maternal exhaustion, prolonged labor, blood volume loss, and administration of antibiotics or other medications [57].

2. Type and volume of IV fluids

When IV fluids are indicated, the selection of the type, the volume, and the infusion rate of IV fluid differ on the clinical status of individual women and the anticipated duration of labor [39].

For nulliparous women who are not allowed oral intake during labor, the infusion of dextrose solution significantly reduces the total labor length without increasing the complication rate [40, 58–60].

Because of its cost-effectiveness, safety, and advantages, dextrose should be the default solute for IV fluids during labor [59, 61]. Maintenance intravenous fluid usually administered is 5% dextrose in 0.45 percent saline, normal saline, or Ringer's lactate solution [62]. Avoid administering sodium-free 5% dextrose solution because it may cause maternal and neonatal hyponatremia and increase maternal and newborn morbidity [39].

Rate of infusion: IV fluid administration at a rate of 250 ml/hour, rather than 125 ml/hour, is associated with a shorter duration of labor and lesser need for cesarean section delivery. This data support increased hydration among nulliparous women in labor when oral intake is restricted [63].

PREOPERATIVE ORAL INTAKE

A. Liquid intake

The uncomplicated patient undergoing elective cesarean delivery may have clear liquids up to 2 hours before induction of anesthesia (American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) recommendation 2016) [45]. Consuming high-calorie carbohydrate drinks up to two hours before surgery can reduce preoperative thirst, hunger, anxiety, and the risk of dehydration in patients undergoing abdominal surgery [64, 65].

In pregnant women with a higher risk for aspiration during labor (e.g., morbid obesity, diabetes mellitus, and difficult airway), the recommendation is to restrict oral liquid intake for 6 or more hours, determined on a case-by-case basis [45].

B. Solid food intake

During elective surgery (e.g., planned cesarean delivery or postpartum tubal ligation) recommended fasting period for solid food is 6 to 8 hours [45].

REFERENCES

1. Cunningham FG, Leveno KJ, Bloom SL, et al. William Obstetrics 24th edition 2014.
2. Cheung KL, Lafayette RA. Renal Physiology of Pregnancy. Advances in Chronic Kidney Disease. 2013;20(3):209–14.
3. Theunissen IM, Parer JT. Fluid and Electrolytes in Pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 1994;37(1):3–15.
4. Lindheimer MD, Katz AI. Sodium and Diuretics in Pregnancy. N Engl J Med 1973;288(17):891–4.
5. Ueland K. Maternal Cardiovascular Hemodynamics. VII. Intrapartum Blood Volume Changes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1976;126(6):671–7.
6. Taylor DJ, Lind T. Red Cell Mass During and After Normal Pregnancy. British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology 1979;86(5):364–70.
7. Mashini IS, Albazzaz SJ, Fadel HE, et al. Serial noninvasive evaluation of cardiovascular hemodynamics during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1987;156(5):1208–1213.
8. Wilson M, Morganti AA, Zervodakis I et al. Blood Pressure, the Renin-aldosterone System, and Sex Steroids Throughout Normal Pregnancy. Am J Med 1980;68(1):97–104.
9. Jarnfelt-Samsioe A. Nausea and Vomiting in Pregnancy: A Review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 1987;42(7):422–7.
10. Jarvis S, Nelson-Piercy C. Management of Nausea and Vomiting in Pregnancy. BMJ 2011;342:d3606.
11. Kallen B. Hyperemesis During Pregnancy and Delivery Outcome: A Registry Study. Eur. J. Obstet. Gynecol. Reprod. Biol. 1987;26(4):291–302.
12. Goodwin TM. Hyperemesis Gravidarum. Clin Obstet Gynecol 1998;41(3):597–605.
13. Broussard CN, Richter JE. Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 1998;27(1):123–51.
14. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Practice Bulletin Summary No. 153: Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol. 2015;126(3):687–688.
15. MacGibbon KW, Fejzo MS, Mullin PM. Mortality Secondary to Hyperemesis Gravidarum: A Case Report. Womens Health Gynecol 2015;1(2):011.
16. London V, Grube S, Sherer DM, et al. Hyperemesis Gravidarum: A review of recent literature. Pharmacology 2017;100(3–4):161–171.
17. Gazmararian JA, Petersen R, Jamieson DJ, et al. Hospitalizations During Pregnancy Among Managed Care Enrollees. Obstet. Gynecol. 2002;100(1):94–100.
18. Poursharif B, Korst LM, Fejzo MS, et al. The psychosocial burden of hyperemesis gravidarum. J Perinatol. 2008;28(3):176–181.
19. Bottomley C, Bourne T. Management Strategies for Hyperemesis. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 2009;23(4):549–64.
20. Tan PC, Omar SZ. Contemporary approaches to hyperemesis during pregnancy. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2011;23(2):87–93.
21. Bustos M, Venkataramanan R, Caritis S. Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy - what's new? Auton Neurosci Basic Clin. 2017;202:62–72.
22. Tamay AG, Kuscu NK. Hyperemesis Gravidarum: Current Aspect. J Obstet Gynaecol 2011;31(8):708–712.
23. Intravenous (IV) Hydration Therapy for Hyperemesis Gravidarum. HMSA 2015.
24. Liu C, Zhao G, Qiao D, et al. Emerging Progress in Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy and Hyperemesis

Gravidarum: Challenges and Opportunities. Front Med (Lausanne). 2022;8:809270.

25. The Management of Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy and Hyperemesis Gravidarum. RCOG Green-top Guideline No. 69. June 2016.
26. Mitchell-Jones N, Farren JA, Tobias A, et al. Ambulatory versus inpatient management of severe nausea and vomiting of pregnancy: a randomised control trial with patient preference Arm BMJ Open 2017;7(12):e017566.
27. Cunningham FG, Leveno KJ, Bloom SL, et al. Chapter 54: Gastrointestinal Disorders, Williams Obstetrics, 25 2018 McGraw-Hill Education.
28. Rao A. Hyperemesis Gravidarum in Pregnancy. Intrapartum NICE Guidelines August 2016.
29. Adibah I, Khursiah D, Ahmad AI, et al. Hartman's solution or normal saline in the treatment of hyperemesis gravidarum among south east asian population: a randomised controlled trial". International Medical Journal 2008;7:2.
30. Deb S. NHS Guidelines on Management of Hyperemesis Gravidarum. 2017.
31. Guideline for Management and Treatment of Hyperemesis Gravidarum. Initiated By: Cwm Taf Morgannwg University Health Board Gynaecology Forum. Date Approved: 28th July 2022. Available from: https://wisdom.nhs.wales/health-board-guidelines/cwm-taf-gynaecology-file/hyperemesisctm-guideline-august-2022pdf/ [Accessed March 23, 2023].
32. Morantz C, Torrey B. Practice Guideline Briefs. Am Fam Physician 2004;70:601–02.
33. Chiossi G, Neri I, Cavazzuti M, et al. Hyperemesis gravidarum complicated by wernicke encephalopathy: background, case report, and review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2006;61(4):255–68.
34. Van Stuijvenberg ME, Schabort I, Labadarios D, et al. The nutritional status and treatment of patients with hyperemesis gravidarum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1995;172(5):1585–91.
35. Giugale LE, Young OM, Streitman DC. Iatrogenic wernicke encephalopathy in a patient with severe hyperemesis gravidarum. Obstet Gynecol 2015;125(5):1150–1152.
36. Tan P, Norazilah MJ, Omar SZ. Dextrose saline compared with normal saline rehydration of hyperemesis gravidarum; a randomized controlled trial Obstet Gynaecol 2013;121(2 Pt 1):291–298.
37. McParlin C, O'Donnell A, Robson SC, et al. Treatments for Hyperemesis Gravidarum and Nausea and Vomiting in Pregnancy: A Systematic Review. JAMA. 2016;316(13):1392–1401.
38. Fejzo MS, Trovik J, Grooten IJ, et al. Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy and hyperemesis gravidarum. Nat Rev Dis Primers. 2019;5(1):62.
39. Dawood F, Dowswell T, Quenby S. intravenous fluids for reducing the duration of labour in low risk nulliparous women. The Cochrane Data Base of Systematic Reviews. 2013(6):CD007715.
40. Movahed F, Pakniat H, Ataee, M, et al. Normal saline and dextrose-saline infusion comparison in the duration of active phase in nulliparous Women. Biotech Health Sci. 2015;2(4):e31666.
41. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 766: Approaches to limit intervention during labor and birth. February 2019;133(2):e164–e173.
42. Sperling JD, Dahlke JD, Sibai BM. Restriction of oral intake during labor: whither are we bound? Am J Obstet Gynecol 2016;214(5):592–6.
43. Robinson M, Davidson A. Aspiration Under Anaesthesia: Risk Assessment and Decision-Making. Cont Educ Anaesth Crit Care Pain. 2014;14(4):171–175.
44. Ozkan SA, Kadioglu M, Rathfisch G. Restricting oral fluid and food intake during labor: a qualitative analysis of women's views. International Journal of Caring Sciences. 2017;10(1):235–242.
45. Practice Guidelines for Obstetric Anesthesia: An updated report by the american society of anesthesiologists task force on obstetric anesthesia and the society for obstetric anesthesia and perinatology. Anesthesiology, 2016;124(2):270–300.
46. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 441: Oral Intake During Labor. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Obstet Gynecol 2009;114(3):714.
47. O'Sullivan G, Scrutton M. NPO During Labor. Is there any scientific validation? Anesthesiol Clin North America 2003;21(1):87–98.
48. WHO Recommendation on Oral Fluid and Food Intake During Labor, For Women At Low Risk (May 2014). The WHO Reproductive Health Library; Geneva: World Health Organization.
49. Lee L, Dy J, Azzam H. Practice Guidelines for the Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada: Management of Spontaneous Labor at Term in Healthy Women J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2016;38(9):843–865.
50. Singata M, Tranmer J, Gyte GM. Restricting Oral Fluid and Food Intake During Labour. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2013;2013(8):CD003930.
51. Ciardulli A, Saccone G, Anastasio H, et al. Less-Restrictive Food Intake During Labor in Low-Risk Singleton Pregnancies A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis Obstet Gynecol 2017;129(3):473–80.
52. WHO Recommendation on the Use of Intravenous Fluids with the Aim of Shortening the Duration of Labor (May 2014). The WHO Reproductive Health Library; Geneva: World Health Organization.
53. Kujawa-Myles S, Noel-Weiss J, Dunn S, et al. Maternal intravenous fluids and postpartum breast changes: a pilot observational study. Int Breastfeed J. 2015;10(1):18.
54. Watson J, Hodnett E, Armson BA, et al. A randomized controlled trial of effect of intrapartum intravenous fluid management on breastfed newborn weight loss. J Obstet Gynecol Neonatal Nurs. 2012;41(1):24–32.
55. Noel-Weiss J, Woodend AK, Peterson WE, et al. An observational study of associations among maternal fluids during parturition, neonatal output, and breastfed newborn weight loss. Int Breastfeed J 2011;6:9.

56. Hofmeyr GJ, Cyna A, Middleton P. Prophylactic Intravenous Preloading for Regional Analgesia in Labor. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004;11(4):CD000175.
57. Rebecca Dekker. Evidence on: IV Fluids During Labor. May 31 2017 https://evidencebasedbirth.com/iv-fluids-during-labor/.
58. Swidan KH, Abou-gamrah AA, Abdel Shafy A, et al. Effect of Normal Saline Infusion versus Dextrose 5% Infusion on The Duration of Labor in Nulliparous Women: Randomized Controlled Trial. The Egyptian Journal of Hospital Medicine. 2017;68(3):1452–1461.
59. Paré J, Pasquier JC, Lewin A, et al. Reduction of total labor length through the addition of parenteral dextrose solution in induction of labor in nulliparous: results of DEXTRONS prospective randomized controlled trial. American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology. 2017;216(5):508.e1–508.e7.
60. Yulghunlu FA, Shafaie FS, Mirghafourvand M, et al. The effects of intravenous Dextrose 5%, Ringer's Solution, and oral intake on the duration of labor stages in nulliparous women: a double-blind, randomized, controlled trial. The Journal of Maternal-Fetal & Neonatal Medicine. 2020;33(2):289–296.
61. Shrivastava VK, Garite TJ, Jenkins SM, et al. A Randomized, Double-blinded, Controlled Trial Comparing Parenteral Normal Saline with and without Dextrose on the Course of Labor in Nulliparous. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2009;200(4):379.e1–6.
62. Funai EF, Norwitz ER, et al. Management of Normal Labor and Delivery. UptoDate Mar 07, 2019.
63. Ehsanipoor RM, Saccone G, Seligman NS, et al. Intravenous fluid rate for reduction of cesarean delivery rate in nulliparous women: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2017;96(7):804–811.
64. Hausel J, Nygren J, Lagerkranser M, et al. A carbohydrate-rich drink reduces preoperative discomfort in elective surgery patients. Anesth Analg. 2001;93(5):1344–50.
65. Singh JP. Preoperative oral carbohydrate drink improves surgical outcome. 2018;6(2):72–73.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

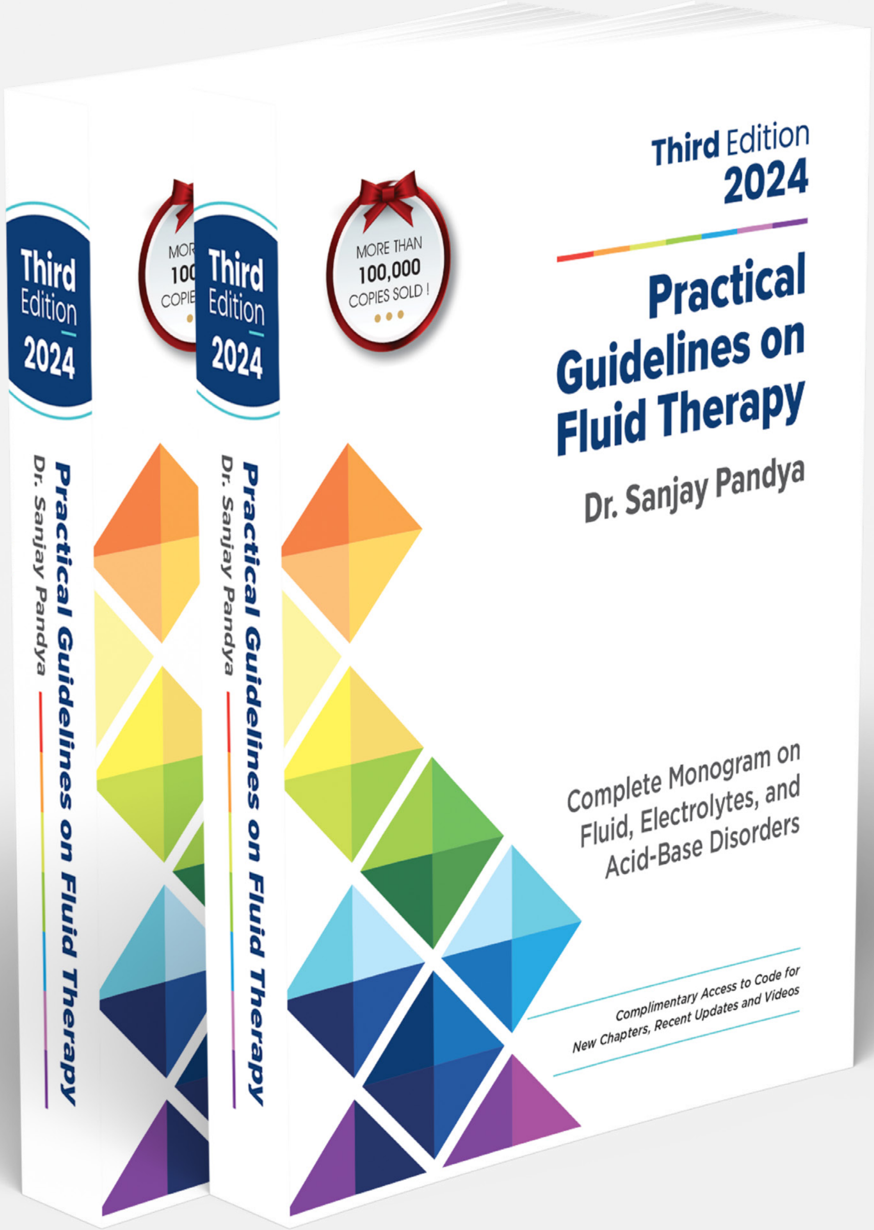
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid therapy.org

Chapter 52:

Fluid Management for Cesarean Delivery


Third Edition 2024
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

52 Fluid Management for Cesarean Delivery

Maternal Hypotension in Spinal Anesthesia: Causes and Mechanisms 628
Management of Hypotension During Cesarean Delivery 628
- Fluid loading 629
  - Preloading 629
  - Co-loading 629
- Vasopressors 630
  - Phenylephrine 630
  - Ephedrine 631
  - Phenylephrine versus ephedrine 632
  - Norepinephrine as vasopressor 632
- Non-Pharmacological Measures .. 632

Postoperative Care after Cesarean Delivery 633

Spinal anesthesia is the most common type of anesthesia used in cesarean sections [1].

Maternal hypotension is the most common complication of spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. Maternal hypotension is defined as systolic blood pressure (SBP) <90 mmHg or a reduction in mean arterial blood pressure >30% fall from baseline [2].

The incidence of maternal hypotension during spinal anesthesia for elective cesarean delivery is much higher (70–80%) [3] as compared to the incidence of hypotension caused by spinal anesthesia in nonpregnant women (about 33%) [4].

Mechanism of maternal hypotension: Spinal anesthesia blocks the sympathetic nerve fibers innervating smooth muscles of arteries and veins, which causes reduced peripheral vascular resistance and vasodilatation. Vasodilatation in the lower part of the body is the crucial mechanism of the development of hypotension due to spinal anesthesia in uncomplicated pregnancy [5].

Consequences of maternal hypotension: Maternal hypotension after spinal anesthesia for cesarean section causes both maternal and fetal/neonatal adverse effects [6]. Spinal hypotension can result in maternal nausea, vomiting, and dizziness due to a reduction in cerebral perfusion, which induces transient brainstem ischemia [7]. In addition, treatment of spinal hypotension can cause iatrogenic pulmonary edema or severe maternal hypertension. Severe and sustained hypotension can decrease uteroplacental perfusion, which can cause fetal hypoxia, acidosis, and neonatal depression [8].

MANAGEMENT OF HYPOTENSION DURING CESAREAN DELIVERY

The goal of management is to optimize maternal, uterine, and fetal perfusion, which is crucial for the mother's safety and the baby's wellbeing.

Major steps in treating spinal hypotension are fluid loading, vasopressor, and non-pharmacological measures. Combinations of interventions will be more effective than single ones [9].

The goal of blood pressure

Treatment aims to maintain systolic blood pressure ≥100 mmHg or ≥90% of an accurately measured baseline blood pressure [10, 11].

A. Fluid loading

Before the initiation of spinal anesthesia, it is important for the patient to have large-diameter intravenous access (preferably 16 or 18 gauge) in place. This will allow for the rapid administration of fluids, medications, and blood products if necessary.

The two most important determinants for the optimal and effective treatment of spinal hypotension are: (1) The type of fluid (crystalloid compared with colloid solutions) and, (2) The timing of administration [given before spinal anesthesia (preloading) or given immediately after spinal block placement (co-loading) as rapid infusions.

1. Preloading

Preloading is a method where IV fluid is administered immediately before spinal anesthesia to reduce post-spinal hypotension (PSH).

Crystalloid preloading: Rapid administration of 10–20 mL/kg of intravenous Ringer's lactate just 15–20 minutes before spinal anesthesia was previously a routine practice to minimize hypotension resulting from sympathetic blockade. But fluid preloading with crystalloid is clinically ineffective due to its rapid redistribution and therefore is currently not recommended before spinal anesthesia [9, 12, 13].

Colloid preloading: In contrast to crystalloid preloading, colloid preloading significantly reduces hypotension and improves maternal hemodynamics [9, 14].

As preloading is not superior to co-loading (irrespective of the type of IV solution used), one should not waste significant time in administering a predetermined IV fluid volume and consequently delay spinal anesthesia initiation [15].

2. Co-loading

In co-loading, IV fluids are rapidly administered and started simultaneously with spinal anesthesia to reduce post-spinal hypotension. Using co-loading protocols is less time consuming with better (or at least similar) effects than preloading [16].

Co-loading is a more rational and physiological approach. In fluid co-loading, IV fluid administration coincides precisely with the time of the maximal vasodilatory effect of spinal anesthesia and thereby compensates for the "relative hypovolemia" and prevents post-spinal hypotension [17].

Crystalloid co-loading: A balanced electrolyte solution (e.g., Ringer's lactate solution) is the most commonly used intravenous fluid for bolus administration. Usually, a bolus of about 10–15 ml per kg or 500 to 1000 mL of Ringer's lactate is infused as fast as possible in fluid co-loading.

Use dextrose free IV fluids for crystalloid co-loading because it avoids maternal hyperglycemia. The immediate effect of maternal hyperglycemia is fetal hyperglycemia, but it may cause neonatal hypoglycemia after delivery. When dextrose containing IV fluid is administered to the mother before delivery, glucose crosses the placental barrier and can result in fetal hyperglycemia and and hyperinsulinemia. After delivery, the glucose supply is ceased, but neonatal insulin levels are still elevated, which causes neonatal hypoglycemia [18].

The volume of fluid given during spinal anesthesia may vary depending on the patient's underlying co-morbidities and their current volume status, with a smaller volume typically being given to patients with severe preeclampsia.

Crystalloid co-loading is more effective than crystalloid preloading in preventing hypotension during spinal anesthesia for elective cesarean delivery [19–22]. Additionally, crystalloid co-loading is similar in effectiveness to colloid preloading [23].

Colloid co-loading: For colloid co-loading third generation colloids such as tetrastarch (Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4) seem safer than other colloids [24]. Colloid co-loading is not superior to colloid preloading [17].

Both crystalloid and colloid co-loading are equally effective in decreasing the incidence of spinal hypotension in cesarean delivery [21, 25]. However, the volume needed for colloid co-loading is less than that required for crystalloid co-loading [23].

Because of less adverse effects, lesser cost, ready availability, and restricted or second line usage of colloids in most studies [26], current literature recommends the use of crystalloids than colloids co-loading in cesarean delivery [27].

Factors affecting fluid requirements: Total requirement of intravenous fluids (crystalloids) during and after cesarean delivery varies considerably but is usually 2 to 3 liters. The requirement of fluid volume may be higher in patients with sepsis syndrome, vomiting, prolonged labor without adequate fluid intake, and increased blood loss.

In patients with preeclampsia, spinal anesthesia tends to cause less hypotension than it does in normal pregnant women. Therefore, it is recommended to use mild to moderate intravascular volume loading during spinal anesthesia in patients with preeclampsia.

The loading of a large volume of fluid carries the risk of pulmonary edema in preeclampsia [19].

B. Vasopressors

Vasopressor therapy is a crucial component in minimizing spinal hypotension. Fluid loading protocols alone are not usually sufficient to achieve reasonable control in post-spinal hypotension [16]. Besides crystalloid or colloid co-loading, a significant proportion of patients require vasopressors to control spinal hypotension [28].

Vasopressor treatment aims to restore systemic vascular resistance. Alpha-adrenergic agonist drugs are the most appropriate agents to treat or prevent hypotension following spinal anesthesia [11]. In addition, prophylactic vasopressors are superior in preventing adverse neonatal outcomes compared to reactive treatment [29].

Phenylephrine and ephedrine are the two most widely used and recommended vasoconstrictor agents in treating spinal hypotension [15]. Phenylephrine is a synthetic selective direct alpha-adrenergic agonist. Ephedrine is a synthetic mixed adrenergic agonist. Ephedrine is a stimulant that directly activates alpha and beta-adrenergic receptors and indirectly stimulates the release of endogenously stored norepinephrine. Recently, even norepinephrine (noradrenaline) has been found to be helpful in preventing and treating spinal hypotension during cesarean delivery.

1. Phenylephrine

A combined approach using titrated phenylephrine with crystalloid co-loading is probably the best option for the management of hypotension during spinal anesthesia for cesarean section [6, 21]. Phenylephrine infusions co-administered with crystalloid has shown to eliminate the likelihood of spinal hypotension [30].

Pharmacology: Phenylephrine is a drug that acts selectively on the alpha-1 adrenergic receptors found on the vascular smooth muscle cells in blood vessels, resulting in vasoconstriction. It is a potent agent that increases total peripheral vascular resistance and increases both systolic and diastolic blood pressure. The onset of action is <1 minute, and its duration of effect is short lasting (15 to 20 minutes). At higher doses, phenylephrine can cause bradycardia due to the activation of baroreceptors, which can lead to a reduction in maternal cardiac output [31].

Preparation: Injection phenylephrine, available as a 1 ml ampoule, contains 10 mg of phenylephrine.

Method of administration (bolus vs. infusion)

In the treatment of spinal hypotension, prophylactic phenylephrine infusion is superior to bolus administration because of the lower incidence of intraoperative nausea and vomiting [32, 33]. An international consensus statement for the management of spinal hypotension by AAGBI (2018) recommends prophylactic phenylephrine infusion as the first line of management [11].

Dose: To prepare an infusion, add 1 ml (10 mg) of phenylephrine solution in 100 ml of normal saline. Each ml of this infusion will provide 100 mcg of phenylephrine (100 mcg/ml solution).

a. **IV bolus:** A commonly used dose of a prophylactic bolus of IV phenylephrine is 50 to 100 mcg (0.5 to 1 ml). Repeat the dose every 2 to 5 minutes as required, but do not give more than a total dose of 200 micrograms (mcg).
b. **IV infusion:** Currently recommended dose of phenylephrine infusion is 25–50 mcg/min. (0.25 to 0.5 ml/min) [11, 16] Prophylactic phenylephrine infusion is started with an infusion pump as soon as the spinal anesthesia is given. The dose is titrated according to maternal systolic blood pressure response and pulse rate.

   A higher incidence of post-spinal hypotension occurs with the lower dose (25 mcg/min), and a higher incidence of reactive hypertension and bradycardia occurs with the higher dose (50 mcg/min) [31, 34].
c. **IV bolus followed by infusion:** When phenylephrine is infused after spinal anesthesia, there will be a delay in achieving adequate blood pressure levels. However, an initial phenylephrine bolus immediately after the spinal anesthesia, followed by a phenylephrine infusion, will maintain blood pressure without adverse effects [5].

2. Ephedrine

Ephedrine is a sympathomimetic drug that stimulates both alpha and beta-adrenergic receptors. As a result, it stimulates the heart rate, increases cardiac output, and variably increases peripheral resistance, leading to an increase in blood pressure.

Previously, ephedrine was the first-line treatment for spinal hypotension. But the trend to use ephedrine in the treatment of post-spinal anesthesia hypotension is decreasing because:

- Repeated administration of ephedrine diminishes its vasoconstrictive effect [35].
- Delayed onset of action of ephedrine may result in a longer period of hypotension than phenylephrine.

- The relatively long duration of the effect of ephedrine makes accurate titration of blood pressure difficult [36].
- Ephedrine may increase the risk of fetal acidosis by crossing the placenta to a greater extent [37].

Currently, ephedrine is preferred to treat spinal hypotension in a pregnant patient with bradycardia, as it typically increases heart rate.

The commonly used dose of ephedrine is 5 to 10 mg IV boluses or 1 to 5 mg/min IV infusion.

3. Phenylephrine versus ephedrine

Ephedrine was previously the first-line therapy for parturients with spinal hypotension [38]. But phenylephrine is currently vasopressor of choice in the treatment of spinal hypotension in the absence of maternal bradycardia [39–41]. Reflex bradycardia and decreased cardiac output are the primary concerns associated with phenylephrine.

As compared to ephedrine, phenylephrine is preferred and superior because of its faster onset [42], ease to titrate, better preservation of uterine blood flow, does not cause or worsen maternal tachycardia [43, 44], less reactive hypertension [45], less incidence of fetal acidosis [46], and less maternal nausea and vomiting [47, 48].

However, ephedrine may be more beneficial in patients with bradycardia, compromised cardiac functions, uteroplacental insufficiency, and pre-eclampsia [16].

Vasopressor selection based on maternal heart rate:

- Hypotension and tachycardia: This is the usual response to spinal anesthesia, and phenylephrine is a preferred vasoconstrictor agent in treatment.
- Hypotension and bradycardia: This is the unusual response that resembles a vagal reaction; rather than ‘appropriate’ tachycardia and vasoconstriction. Ephedrine is a preferred vasoconstrictor agent for spinal hypotension associated with bradycardia [40].

4. Norepinephrine as vasopressor

Norepinephrine (NE, noradrenalin) is recently introduced to prevent and treat spinal hypotension during cesarean delivery [49, 50]. Norepinephrine (NE) is a potent vasopressor having both alpha-adrenergic agonistic activity, and weak beta-adrenergic agonistic activity. NE has minimal cardiac depressant effect [51]. NE has a similar effect to phenylephrine in maintaining blood pressure but may be associated with higher heart rates (closer to baseline), and greater cardiac output [52, 53].

Because of beneficial cardiac effects and potency, NE may be preferred in mothers with low baseline heart rates or poor cardiac function, where phenylephrine is relatively contraindicated [51].

More research is needed to evaluate the safety and efficacy of norepinephrine before its routine use in obstetric patients [51, 54]. Table 52.1 summarizes all vasopressors used in spinal hypotension during cesarean delivery.

C. Non-pharmacological measures

In the supine position, the gravid uterus compresses the maternal abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava, which decreases cardiac output [55]. Positioning protocols for the prevention of post-spinal hypotension are targeted to relieve aortocaval compression imparted by the gravid uterus and increase venous return [16]. Left lateral uterine displacement with 15° table tilt reduces inferior vena cava compression and is routinely recommended in addition to other measures [11, 56, 57].

POSTOPERATIVE CARE AFTER CESAREAN DELIVERY

Early oral intake

After cesarean delivery, fluids or food is traditionally avoided until bowel functions return (confirmed by bowel sounds or passage of flatus or stools). But in uncomplicated cesarean delivery, evidences to justify the restriction of oral fluids or food is lacking.

Current evidence suggests that early oral intake (within six hours of delivery) may have several benefits for postpartum care. These benefits include promoting the return of bowel function (through the stimulation of the gastrocolic reflex), encouraging early ambulation, reducing the duration of intravenous fluid administration, decreasing the risk of sepsis, shortening the time to breastfeeding, decreasing the length of hospital stay, and reducing the cost of hospitalization [58–61].

Nausea and vomiting after cesarean delivery can delay early oral intake. In the management of postoperative nausea

Table 52.1 Vasopressors in spinal hypotension during cesarean delivery

Vasopressor	Phenylephrine	Ephedrine	Norepinephrine (noradrenaline)
Mechanism of action	Selective direct α 1 receptor agonist	Direct α and β agonist and indirect release of norepinephrine	Direct α 1 and β 1 agonist
Arterial vasoconstriction	Potent	Less potent	Potent
Chronotropic effect	Negative	Positive	Positive
Maternal heart rate	Reflex bradycardia	Tachycardia	Increased
Cardiac output	Decrease	Increase	Modest increase
Onset of action	Faster	Slower	Immediate
Duration of action	Short-acting (15 to 20 minutes)	Relatively long duration (about 60 min), so longer period of hypotension	Very short (1 to 2 minutes)
Advantage	No maternal tachycardia, better titratability	No maternal bradycardia	Less negative effects on heart rate and cardiac output
Selection	Currently preferred vasopressor in post-spinal hypotension. Preferred in maternal tachycardia	Preferred in maternal bradycardia in post-spinal hypotension	Beneficial effects in mothers with bradycardia and compromised cardiac function in recent studies
Strength of injectable solution and dilution	10 mg/mL (1 mL diluted in 100 ml of normal saline equals 100 mcg/mL)	30 mg/mL, 50 mg/mL (1 mL diluted in 10 ml of normal saline equals 3 mg/mL or 5 mg/mL)	1mg/mL (2 mL diluted in 500 ml of D5W or D5NS equals 4 mcg/mL)
Commonly used doses	50 to 100 mcg IV bolus or 25 to 100 mcg/min IV infusion	5 to 10 mg IV boluses or 1 to 5 mg/min IV infusion	Further studies are required before its routine use

and vomiting (PONV), the combination of anti-emetics is more effective than monotherapy [62].

During cesarean delivery, intraoperative nausea and vomiting (IONV) are common [7]. Measures to reduce IONV during cesarean are the prevention of hypotension with liberal perioperative administration of IV fluids, maintaining normal blood pressure with prophylactic use of vasopressors (i.e., phenylephrine or ephedrine), administration of anti-emetics (metoclopramide and ondansetron) and minimizing visceral manipulation (e.g., uterine exteriorization) [63, 64].

REFERENCES

1. Shibli KU, Russell IF. A survey of anaesthetic techniques used for caesarean section in the UK in 1997. Int J Obstet Anesth 2000;9(3):160–7.
2. Miller RD. Miller's Anaesthesia. 8th ed. Saunders, an Imprint of Elsevier Inc; 2015. Chapter 56:p.1773.
3. Mercier FJ, Augè M, Hoffmann C, et al. Maternal Hypotension during Spinal Anesthesia for Caesarean Delivery. Minerva Anestesiol 2013;79(1):62–73.
4. Montoya BH, Oliveros CI, Moreno DA. Managing Hypotension Induced by Spinal Anesthesia for Caesarean Section. Rev. Col. Anest. Mayo-Julio 2009;37(2):131–140.
5. Kuhn JC, Hauge TH, Rosseland LA, et al. Hemodynamics of Phenylephrine Infusion Versus Lower Extremity Compression during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery: A Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study. Anesthesia and Analgesia 2016;122(4):1120–9.
6. Butwick AJ, Columb MO, Carvalho B. Preventing Spinal Hypotension during Caesarean Delivery: What is the latest? Br J Anaesth. 2015;114(2):183–6.
7. Balki M, Carvalho JC. Intraoperative Nausea and Vomiting during Cesarean Section under Regional Anesthesia. Int J Obstet Anesth 2005;14(3):230–41.
8. Mueller MD, Brühwiler H, Schüpfer GK, et al. Higher Rate of Fetal Acidemia after Regional Anesthesia For Elective Cesarean Delivery. Obstet Gynecol 1997;90(1):131–4.
9. Chooi C, Cox JJ, Lumb RS, et al. Techniques for Preventing Hypotension during Spinal Anaesthesia for Caesarean Section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2017;8(8):CD002251.
10. Klöhr S, Roth R, Hofmann T, et al. Definitions of Hypotension after Spinal Anaesthesia for Caesarean Section: Literature Search and Application to Parturients. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2010;54(8):909–21.
11. Kinsella SM, Carvalho B, Dyer RA, et al. International Consensus Statement on the Management of Hypotension with Vasopressors during Caesarean Section under Spinal Anaesthesia. Anaesthesia 2018;73(1):71–92.
12. Mercier FJ. Fluid Loading for Cesarean Delivery under Spinal Anesthesia: Have we studied all the Options? Anesth Analg. 2011;113(4):677–80.
13. Kee WDN. Prevention of Maternal Hypotension after Regional Anaesthesia for Caesarean Section. Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology 2010;23(3):304–9.
14. Melchor JR, Espinosa Á, Hurtado EM, et al. Colloids Versus Crystalloids in the Prevention of Hypotension Induced by Spinal Anesthesia in Elective Cesarean Section. A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Minerva Anestesiologica 2015;81(9):1019–30.
15. Apfelbaum JL, Hawkins JL, Agarkar M, et al. Practice Guidelines for Obstetric Anesthesia: An Updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia and the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. Anesthesiology 2016;124(2):270–300.
16. Hasanina A, Mokhtar AM, Badawy A, et al. Post-Spinal Anesthesia Hypotension during Cesarean Delivery, a Review Article. Egyptian Journal of Anaesthesia 2017;33(2):189–193.
17. Carvalho B, Mercier FJ, Riley ET, et al. Hetastarch co-loading is as Effective as Preloading for the Prevention of Hypotension Following Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery. Int J Obstet Anesth 2009;18(2):150–5.
18. Sumikura H. Neonatal Hypoglycemia after Cesarean Section. J Anesth 2013;27(2):167–168.
19. Loubert C. Fluid and Vasopressor Management for Cesarean Delivery under Spinal Anesthesia: Continuing Professional Development. Can J Anaesth 2012;59(6):604–19.
20. Ni HF, Liu HY, Zhang J, et al. Crystalloid Coload Reduced the Incidence of Hypotension in Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery, When Compared to Crystalloid Preload: A Meta-Analysis. Biomed Res Int. 2017;2017:3462529.
21. Ferre F, Martin C, Bosch L, et al. Control of spinal anesthesia-induced hypotension in adults. Local Reg Anesth 2020;13:39–46.
22. Artawan IM, Sarim BY, Sagita S, et al. Comparison the effect of preloading and coloading with crystalloid fluid on the incidence of hypotension after spinal anesthesia in cesarean section. Bali J Anaesthesiol 2020;4(1):3–7.
23. Tawfik MM, Hayes SM, Jacoub FY, et al. Comparison between Colloid Preload and Crystalloid Co-Load in Cesarean Section under Spinal Anesthesia: A Randomized Controlled Trial. International Journal of Obstetric Anesthesia 2014;23(4):317–23.
24. Van Der Linden P, James M, Mythen M, et al. Safety of Modern Starches used During Surgery. Anesth Analg. 2013;116(1):35–48.
25. Wani SA, Pandit BH, Din MU, et al. Comparative Study to Evaluate the Effect of Colloid Coloading Versus Crystalloid Coloading for Prevention of

Spinal Anaesthesia Induced Hypotension and Effect on Fetal Apgar score in Patients Undergoing Elective Lower Segment Caesarean Section: A Prospective Observational Study. Int J Reprod Contracept Obstet Gynecol 2018;7(5):1868–1875.

26. Evans L, Rhodes A, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2021. Intensive Care Med. 2021;47(11):1181–1247.
27. Rijs K, Mercier FJ, Lucas DN, et al. Fluid loading therapy to prevent spinal hypotension in women undergoing elective caesarean section: Network meta-analysis, trial sequential analysis and meta-regression. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2020;37(12):1126–1142.
28. Jacob JJ, Williams A, Verghese M, et al. Crystalloid preload versus crystalloid coload for parturients undergoing cesarean section under spinal anesthesia. Journal of Obstetric Anesthesia and Critical Care 2012;2(1):10–15.
29. Mercier FJ. Cesarean Delivery Fluid Management. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2012;25(3):286–91.
30. Kee WDN, Khaw KS, Ng FF. Prevention of Hypotension During Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery: An Effective Technique using Combination Phenylephrine Infusion and Crystalloid Cohydration. Anesthesiology 2005;103(4):744–50.
31. Stewart A, Fernando R, McDonald S, et al. The Dose-Dependent Effects of Phenylephrine for Elective Cesarean Delivery under Spinal Anesthesia. Anesthesia and Analgesia 2010;111(5):1230–7.
32. Siddik-Sayyid SM, Taha SK, Kanazi GE, et al. A Randomized Controlled Trial of Variable Rate Phenylephrine Infusion with Rescue Phenylephrine Boluses versus Rescue Boluses Alone on Physician Interventions during Spinal Anesthesia for Elective Cesarean Delivery. Anesth Analg. 2014;118(30:611–8.
33. George RB, McKeen DM, Dominguez JE, et al. Randomized Trial of Phenylephrine Infusion Vs. Bolus for Nausea & Vomiting during Cesarean in Obese Women. Can J Anaesth. 2018;65(3):254–262.
34. Allen TK, George RB, White WD, et al. A Double-Blind, Placebo-controlled Trial of Four Fixed Rate Infusion Regimens of Phenylephrine for Hemodynamic Support during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery. Anesth Analg. 2010;111(5):1221–9.
35. Kee WDN, Khaw KS. Vasopressors in obstetrics: What should we be using? Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 2006;19(3):238–43.
36. Kee WDN, Khaw KS, Lee BB, et al. A Randomized Controlled Study of colloid Preload before Spinal Anaesthesia for Caesarean Section. Br J Anaesth. 2001;87(5):772–4.
37. Kee WDN, Khaw KS, Tan PE, et al. Placental transfer and Fetal Metabolic Effects of Phenylephrine and Ephedrine during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery. Anesthesiology 2009;111(3):506–12.
38. Ralston DH, Shnider SM, DeLorimier AA. Effects of Equipotent Ephedrine, Metaraminol, Mephentermine, and Methoxamine on Uterine Blood Flow in the Pregnant Ewe. Anesthesiology. 1974;40(4):354–370.
39. Van De Velde M. Belgian Guidelines for Safe Regional Anesthesia and Obstetric Anesthesia and Analgesia. Acta Anaesthesiol Belg 2013;64(3):95–96.
40. Nag DS, Samaddar DP, Chatterjee A, et al. Vasopressors in Obstetric Anesthesia: A Current Perspective. World J Clin Cases. 2015;3(1):58–64.
41. Heesen M, Stewart A, Fernando R. Vasopressors for the Treatment of Maternal Hypotension Following Spinal Anaesthesia for Elective Caesarean Section: Past, Present and Future. Anaesthesia 2015;70(3):252–7.
42. Dyer RA, Reed AR, Dyk DV, et al. Hemodynamic Effects of Ephedrine, Phenylephrine, and the Coadministration of Phenylephrine with Oxytocin during Spinal Anesthesia for Elective Cesarean Delivery. Anesthesiology 2009;111(4):753–65.
43. Cooper DW, Carpenter M, Mowbray P, et al. Fetal and Maternal Effects of Phenylephrine and Ephedrine during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery. Anesthesiology 2002;97(6):1582–1590.
44. Gunda CP, Malinowski J, Tegginmath A, et al. Vasopressor Choice for Hypotension in Elective Cesarean Section: Ephedrine or Phenylephrine. Arch Med Sci 2010;6(2):257–263.
45. Lee A, NganKee WD, Gin T. A Dose-Response Meta-Analysis of Prophylactic Intravenous Ephedrine for the Prevention of Hypotension during Spinal Anesthesia for Elective Cesarean Delivery. Anesth Analg 2004;98(2):483–439.
46. Veeser M, Hofmann T, Roth R, et al. Vasopressors for the Management of Hypotension after Spinal Anesthesia for Elective Caesarean Section. Systematic Review and Cumulative Meta-Analysis. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2012;56(7):810–6.
47. Prakash S, Pramanik V, Chellani H, et al. Maternal and Neonatal Effects of Bolus Administration of Ephedrine and Phenylephrine during Spinal Anaesthesia for Caesarean Delivery: A Randomised Study. Int J Obstet Anesth 2010;19(1):24–30.
48. Habib AS. A Review of the Impact of Phenylephrine Administration on Maternal Hemodynamics and Maternal and Neonatal Outcomes in Women Undergoing Cesarean Delivery under Spinal Anesthesia. Anesth Analg 2012;114(2):377–90.
49. Kee WDN, Lee SW, Ng FF, et al. Randomized Double-Blinded Comparison of Norepinephrine and Phenylephrine for Maintenance of Blood Pressure during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery. Anesthesiology 2015;122(4):736–45.
50. Onwochei DN, Kee WDN, Fung L, et al. Norepinephrine Intermittent Intravenous Boluses to Prevent Hypotension during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery: A Sequential Allocation Dose-Finding Study. Anesth Analg 2017;125(1):212–8.
51. Hasanin AM, Amin SM, Agiza NA, et al. Norepinephrine Infusion for Preventing Postspinal Anesthesia Hypotension during Cesarean Delivery: A Randomized Dose-finding Trial. Anesthesiology 2019;130(1):55–62.

52. Kee WDN. The Use of Vasopressors during Spinal Anaesthesia for Caesarean Section. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 2017;30(3):319–325.
53. Kee WDN, Lee SWY, Ng FF, et al. Prophylactic Norepinephrine Infusion for Preventing Hypotension during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery. Anesth Analg 2018;126(6):1989–1994.
54. Dong L, Dong Q, Song X, et al. Comparison of Prophylactic Bolus Norepinephrine and Phenylephrine on Hypotension during Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Section. Int J Clin Exp Med. 2017;10(8):12315–12321.
55. Lees MM, Scott DB, Kerr MG, et al. The Circulatory Effects of Recumbent Postural Change in Late Pregnancy. Clin Sci 1967;32(3):453–465.
56. Lee SWY, Khaw KS, Kee WDN, et al. Haemodynamic effects from aortocaval compression at different angles of lateral tilt in non-labouring term pregnant women. British Journal of Anaesthesia 2012;109(6):950–6.
57. Kundra P, Velraj J, Amirthalingam U, et al. Effect of positioning from supine and left lateral positions to left lateral tilt on maternal blood flow velocities and waveforms in full-term parturients. Anaesthesia 2012;67(8):889–93.
58. Guo J, Long S, Li H, et al. Early versus Delayed Oral Feeding for Patients after Cesarean. Int J Gynaecol Obstet. 2015;128(2):100–5.
59. Huang H, Wang H, He M. Early Oral Feeding Compared with Delayed Oral Feeding after Cesarean Section: A Meta-Analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2016;29(3):423–9.
60. Hsu YY, Hung HY, Chang SC, et al. Early Oral Intake and Gastrointestinal Function after Cesarean Delivery: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Obstet Gynecol. 2013;121(6):1327–34.
61. Ogbadua AO, Agida TE, Akaba GO, et al. Early Versus Delayed Oral Feeding after Uncomplicated Cesarean Section under Spinal Anesthesia: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Niger J Surg. 2018;24(1):6–11.
62. Ituk U, Habib AS. Enhanced Recovery after Cesarean Delivery. F1000Research 2018;7:F1000 Faculty Rev-513.
63. Habib AS, George RB, McKeen DM, et al. Antiemetics Added to Phenylephrine Infusion during Cesarean Delivery: A Randomized Controlled Trial. Obstet Gynecol. 2013;121(3):615–23.
64. Jelting Y, Klein C, Harlander T, et al. Preventing nausea and vomiting in women undergoing regional anesthesia for cesarean section: challenges and solutions. Local Reg Anesth. 2017;10:83–90.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- » Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- » This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- » It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 53:

Fluid Management in Preeclampsia and Postpartum Hemorrhage

Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

53

Fluid Management in Preeclampsia and Postpartum Hemorrhage

FLUID MANAGEMENT IN PREECLAMPSIA............................ 637
Basic principles of fluid balance 637
Antenatal fluid management......... 638
Fluid management during labor.... 638
Fluid during spinal anesthesia...... 639
Postpartum fluid management 640
Oliguria in preeclampsia............... 640
FLUID MANAGEMENT IN POSTPARTUM HEMORRHAGE.... 641
Definitions.................................... 641
Diagnosis and estimation of blood loss 641
Fluid management in pPH............ 642
Fluid resuscitation 643
Blood replacement 644

Preeclampsia and postpartum hemorrhage are two common problems that need meticulous fluid management.

FLUID MANAGEMENT IN PREECLAMPSIA

Preeclampsia (PE) is a condition that is characterized by hypertension and significant proteinuria that occurs after 20 weeks of pregnancy.

One of the common clinical symptoms of preeclampsia is generalized edema. However, it's important to note that peripheral edema can occur in normal pregnancies. Therefore, one should suspect preeclampsia when weight gain is sudden and rapid (> 2.3 kg/week).

Fluid management for the patient with preeclampsia presents a challenge for the obstetrician as there are considerable controversies and data on the ideal fluid strategy are limited and insufficient [1].

In preeclampsia, two paradoxical findings, intravascular volume depletion, and increased extracellular fluid volume, lead to confusion and different opinions regarding optimal fluid management.

Excessive administration of IV fluids and mobilization of fluid sequestered in the extravascular space into the vascular space carries a high risk of pulmonary edema in preeclampsia [2].

Fluid management should be customized to the specific clinical situation and closely monitored to achieve optimal fluid balance. Fluid management aims to maintain circulating volume and preserve kidney function while minimizing the risk of pulmonary edema.

A. Basic principles of fluid balance in PE [1, 3, 4]

- As patients with preeclampsia are edematous, it is important to carefully infuse optimal IV fluids with the aim of restricting fluid to avoid pulmonary edema.
- Aggressive fluid therapy carries a risk of pulmonary edema; therefore, fluid management requires frequent

clinical assessment and meticulous attention. Record fluid balance carefully.

- For precise infusion of intravenous fluids, use a volumetric infusion pump.
- Replace obvious blood loss during delivery.
- Pulmonary edema carries a higher risk of death compared to oliguric renal failure. Therefore, it is important to avoid the overuse of crystalloid solutions to treat postpartum hemorrhage (PPH) in patients with preeclampsia.
- Avoiding IV fluids preloads before spinal anesthesia.
- To maintain optimal fluid balance, restrict fluid intake to a maximum of 40 ml per hour plus the previous hour's urine output, up to a total of 80 ml per hour or 1 mL/kg/hr. The type of fluids preferred are balanced crystalloids (Hartmann's solution, Ringer's lactate, or PlasmaLyte).
- As oliguria is common with severe preeclampsia, maintain fluid restriction until there is a postpartum diuresis.
- Administer infused drugs in concentrated solutions to avoid excessive fluid volume administration.
- Do not chase an increased urine output that follows delivery, as it carries a risk of volume overload.
- Insert the indwelling catheter and measure urine output hourly with a urometer.
- In preeclampsia, a central line is usually only indicated if there is significant obstetric bleeding or severe heart dysfunction. Before insertion of the central line, always check the coagulation profile and platelet count because Preeclampsia is often complicated by HELLP syndrome.
- Monitor SpO_2 closely. Fluid overload is the most likely cause of a decrease in oxygen saturation. Deterioration of SpO_2 below 95% may indicate impending pulmonary edema. Use diuretics only when the diagnosis of pulmonary edema is confirmed.

B. Antenatal fluid management in PE

Careful fluid balance is essential. In preeclampsia, it is important to restrict intravenous and oral fluid intake in order to prevent fluid overload and pulmonary edema. When the administration of syntocinon (oxytocin) is indicated, it is advisable to use a high-concentration infusion (30 IU in 500 mL) or, for even more concentrated solutions, dilute it in just 50 mL and deliver it using an infusion pump to prevent fluid overload [4].

Women with preeclampsia have an increased risk of requiring a cesarean delivery. Therefore, keeping them on a "nil by mouth" or limiting oral fluid intake to 30 ml per hour or less is recommended to minimize the risk of complications during surgery [3, 5].

In the antepartum period, furosemide is used only to treat patients with severe preeclampsia complicated by pulmonary edema [6].

C. Fluid management during labor in PE

IV fluid in PE: to use or not?

Fluid management in preeclampsia is complex, and there is limited and insufficient data on the ideal fluid strategy for women with this condition [1].

1. Volume restriction

Acute pulmonary edema is a common cause of death in women with preeclampsia and often leads to admission to the intensive care unit [7]. Pulmonary edema kills, but oliguria and renal failure do not, so administer fluid cautiously in preeclampsia.

A fluid restriction regimen is associated with lower rates of pulmonary edema and good maternal outcome [8, 9]. Multiple recent guidelines recommend against plasma volume expansion (NICE, SOGC, SOMANZ) and recommend fluid restriction (NICE, GAIN, CMQCC, SOGC) [9–13]. For women with severe preeclampsia and without any fluid losses, it is recommended to restrict total fluid intake to 80 ml/hour, which includes oral, drug, and intravenous fluids [9, 10].

2. Volume expansion

Women with preeclampsia have reduced plasma volume and are usually oliguric. Therefore, fluid restriction is generally recommended in preeclampsia but may not be appropriate for all women. Achieving proper fluid balance before delivery is essential [14]. Intravenous fluid administration may be used judiciously as maintenance therapy or for resuscitation [15]. Replacement therapy is administered according to an estimated deficit and is usually transfused rapidly.

Common indications of fluid administration in preeclampsia are the following [15, 16]:

- As a vehicle to administered IV labetalol or IV hydralazine for the adequate and more reliable control of severe hypertension.
- To replace ongoing blood and fluid loss.
- As a vehicle for administering agents for induction/augmentation of labor and anticonvulsant medication.
- Maintenance therapy. The preeclamptic woman who is fasting may need intravenous fluid to maintain hydration. Maintenance fluid is commonly given intravenously slowly over 24 hours, and its volume should match the urinary output combined with the insensible loss [15].
- Oliguria due to suspected or confirmed intravascular volume deficit [17].

3. The choice of IV fluids: colloids vs. crystalloids

The theoretical benefits of colloids are that they remain in the vascular compartment longer than crystalloids, and a smaller volume of solution is required for volume expansion. However, most of the previous comparative trials of colloids and crystalloids excluded pregnant women in their studies, so choosing between these two solutions during labor is controversial [18].

There is no evidence in the literature of general critical care to support the use of colloids over crystalloids for fluid resuscitation, and current studies favor the use of crystalloids over colloids [18–20].

D. Fluid during spinal anesthesia in PE

Spinal or epidural anesthesia is generally considered better and safer for cesarean section in preeclampsia due to improved hemodynamic stability and better outcomes for newborns [21].

Women with preeclampsia develop less hypotension after spinal anesthesia than healthy women [22–24].

General anesthesia carries a higher risk compared to neuraxial anesthesia in preeclampsia. Some of the significant risks associated with general anesthesia include the risk of aspiration [25] and an abrupt, severe increase in hypertension during intubation and extubation [5, 26]. Such sudden, severe hypertension carries a risk of hypertensive crisis and stroke [27].

Additionally, preeclampsia-associated tissue edema can lead to narrowing around the larynx, making endotracheal intubation difficult [28].

A prophylactically or routine fixed intravenous fluid preload bolus should never be administered before initiating neuraxial anesthesia in preeclampsia [4, 5, 9].

Administer crystalloid/colloid carefully for co-loading. As a general rule, 500 mL to 1000 mL is sufficient unless the fluids are being used to replace blood loss [3, 5].

Phenylephrine is the optimal first-line vasopressor to reverse spinal hypotension in preeclampsia. However, prophylactic vasopressor infusion in preeclampsia is not usually required, and the dose of phenylephrine to treat hypotension may be lower than in healthy women.

It is essential to monitor the blood pressure carefully during cesarean section, as the fetus may not tolerate sudden decreases in blood pressure well. If necessary, a low dose of phenylephrine can be administered to treat spinal hypotension [22, 29].

E. Postpartum fluid management in PE

- Intravascular volume increases in the postpartum period because of the mobilization of extracellular fluid to the intravascular space and “autotransfusion” of blood from the contracted uterus.
- The greatest risk of postpartum eclampsia is in the first 48 hours because of the profound shift of third space fluid to intravascular volume space after delivery, which may worsen hypertension [30].
- After delivery, it is common for patients to experience a short period of oliguria lasting up to 6 hours. To manage postpartum oliguria, it is recommended to restrict fluid intake after delivery and wait for natural diuresis, which typically occurs within 36–48 hours [5]. During this time, the combined of intravenous and oral fluids intake should be kept at 80 mL per hour or less. The intravenous fluids should be gradually reduced and eventually stopped when the patient can take and tolerate more than 80 mL of oral fluids per hour.
- This approach can help to prevent excess fluid overload.
- Replace appropriate blood products in postpartum hemorrhage, as in cases of placental abruption.

F. Oliguria in preeclampsia

- A short period (up to 6 hours) of oliguria in the immediate postpartum period is common and physiological, so wait and observe [11].
- Avoid administering fluids to treat this physiological oliguria (<15 mL/h urine output during the initial six hours in the postpartum period) [9].
- If oliguria persists after 6 hours, exclude pre-existing renal disease or a rising creatinine, and subsequently try the fluid challenge to rule out a pre-renal failure.
- A fluid bolus of 250–500 ml of normal saline or Ringer’s lactate can be tried as a fluid challenge [13].
- Both dopamine and furosemide should be avoided to treat persistent oliguria [11].
- It is unlikely that short-term oliguria caused by severe preeclampsia will result in irreversible kidney damage.
- Postpartum persistent oliguria (beyond 24 hours) and increased plasma creatinine suggest postpartum renal failure [11].

FLUID MANAGEMENT IN POSTPARTUM HEMORRHAGE

Postpartum hemorrhage (PPH) is a major cause of maternal mortality and is estimated to cause around 30% of maternal deaths or 10 deaths every hour [31, 32]. The definition of PPH varies in different guidelines (Table 53.1). But the common definition of postpartum hemorrhage is blood loss of ≥500 ml for a vaginal delivery and ≥1000 ml for a cesarean birth [32, 33]. In addition, PPH is classified into two categories based on the severity of blood loss: minor (500–1000 mL) or major (more than 1000 mL). Major PPH is further divided into moderate PPH (1000–2000 mL) and severe PPH (more than 2000 mL) [34].

Uterine atony is the most common cause of primary postpartum hemorrhage, accounting for 80% of PPH. Other important causes of PPH are placenta previa, uterine rupture, trauma, placental abruption, and retained placenta.

Diagnosis and estimation of blood loss

It is challenging to estimate blood loss accurately in PPH. But all possible efforts should be made for its assessment because PPH can be a serious and potentially life-threatening condition.

The volume and speed at which blood is lost in PPH are often underestimated because the blood loss may be

Table 53.1 Postpartum hemorrhage definitions

Guidelines	Definitions
World Health Organization (WHO) 2012 [35]	Blood loss >500 mL within 24 hours
International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) 2012 [36]	Blood loss >500 ml in a vaginal birth and >1000 ml in a cesarean section
Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (RCOG) 2016 [34]	Minor PPH: Blood loss 500–1000 ml without clinical shock Major PPH: Blood loss >1000 mL and continuous bleeding or clinical shock
Royal Australian and New Zealand College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, (RANZCOG) 2017 [37]	Blood loss >500 ml during the puerperium Severe PPH: Blood loss >1000 mL
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) 2017 [38]	Blood loss ≥1000 ml or more, or signs and symptoms of hypovolemia due to blood loss
NHS Obstetric Hemorrhage Clinical Guideline 2018 [39]	Primary minor PPH: Blood loss of 500–1000 ml within 24 hours of the birth of a baby Primary moderate PPH: Blood loss 1000–1500 mL within 24 hours Primary severe PPH: Blood loss ≥1500 mL within 24 hours Massive PPH: Blood loss ≥2000 mL within 24 hours, hemodynamic instability or sign of shock
A NATA consensus statement 2019 [40]	Primary PPH: Blood loss >500 mL within 24 hours Severe PPH: Blood loss >1000 mL within 24 hours with signs/symptoms of hypovolaemia Massive life-threatening PPH: Blood loss >2500 mL or hypovolemic shock

concealed. In addition, the physiological hemodynamic changes that occur during pregnancy may mask the typical clinical signs of hypovolemia. Hemodynamic changes which may occur after PPH is variable and depend on several factors such as hematocrit before delivery, cardiovascular status, and the rate of blood loss.

So, the correlation between blood loss and clinical signs is not reliable [41].

Clinical and laboratory parameters that can provide clues for early or undetected postpartum hemorrhage are summarized in Table 53.2.

Shock index: This is a simple-to-use parameter helpful to assess the amount of blood loss and the degree of hypovolemia in hemorrhagic shock, including PPH [43, 44]. The calculation of the shock index is simple: divide the heart rate by the systolic blood pressure. The normal value of the shock index is between 0.5 and 0.7, and a higher value indicates the presence of shock and is associated with hemodynamic instability.

The peak shock index may be a superior parameter for detecting PPH compared to heart rate or systolic blood pressure [45]. However, the shock index alone is not a good screening tool and should be used with other parameters [46].

Other methods: Various methods, such as visual estimation, direct measurement using calibrated drapes, and the gravimetric technique (which involves weighing blood-soaked materials), are used for estimating blood loss after vaginal birth. However, there is insufficient evidence to support the use of one method over another [47].

Due to the variable clinical signs of hemorrhagic shock and the lack of a rapid and reliable method to accurately detect the amount of blood lost early, the delay in diagnosis of postpartum hemorrhage and its severity is common. This can lead to a delay in therapy. Therefore, the initial step in the appropriate management of PPH is maintaining a high index of suspicion, and the onset of symptoms and signs of volume loss warrants aggressive volume replacement.

Fluid management in PPH

The medical strategy described as damage control resuscitation (DCR) is used to manage severe acute PPH. Its goal is to limit secondary blood loss, stabilize the patient's condition as quickly as possible and prevent further tissue damage [48, 49].

The main measures for damage control resuscitation include:

Table 53.2 Clues for early or undetected postpartum hemorrhage [42]

Clinical parameters	Laboratory parameters
Tachycardia (>100 bpm) in the absence of clinical hypovolemia and with adequate pain control	Hb fall >2 gm/dL before administration of IV fluids
Hypotension (BP ≤85/45 mmHg or blood pressure fall by 20% from the baseline value)	Severe metabolic acidosis (e.g., base excess <-4, pH <7.2)
Oliguria (urine volume <500 ml/day)	Shock index of >0.9
Persistent or recurrent maternal hypotension despite active fluid resuscitation and/or use of vasopressor drugs	High serum lactate level >4.0 mmol/L
Excessive requirement of IV fluids	Presence of coagulopathy
Cool extremities, tachypnea, inappropriate fear, restlessness, or confusion	-

1. Hypotensive fluid resuscitation.
2. Blood product transfusion.
3. To identify and control the sources of bleeding as quickly as possible by medical and damage control surgery.

Supportive measures such as raising the legs, administering oxygen, and warming the body in patients with PPH can help improve hemodynamic stability.

1. Fluid resuscitation

Draw blood for baseline measurements, and obtain an intravenous line with wide a bore cannula. Compared to 18 gauge, 14 gauge cannula can infuse almost double the fluid volume.

Until blood is available, start immediate rapid replacement with crystalloids or colloids for resuscitation and to maintain adequate tissue perfusion.

All crystalloids administered during resuscitation should be warmed and, if possible, given using rapid infusion devices to improve effectiveness and speed.

a. How much crystalloid to infuse?

For resuscitation in PPH, infuse crystalloids initially to maintain blood pressure while waiting for blood products. Two modalities with different approaches used for fluid resuscitation in PPH are the conventional aggressive approach and the currently recommended hypotensive fluid resuscitation approach [48].

b. Aggressive fluid resuscitation

The conventional aggressive approach is a traditionally used method in which large volume (>2 liters) of crystalloids are administered to rapidly expand the effective circulating blood volume and restore blood pressure and hemodynamic stability [50, 51]. But current recommendations advise against using an aggressive resuscitation strategy due to the potential for adverse effects, such as coagulopathy due to dilution of coagulation factors, third spacing of fluids, and hypothermia, which can occur due to infusion of large volumes of cold crystalloids [52], and resultant adverse maternal outcomes [53].

c. Hypotensive fluid resuscitation

Permissive hypotension, also known as hypotensive fluid resuscitation, is an alternative method currently recommended as the preferred strategy for treating PPH. This more cautious approach involves restricting the use of crystalloid fluids to maintain the patient's blood pressure lower than normal to limit secondary blood loss until control of bleeding is achieved and to prevent fluid overload [50, 54]. The aim of administering small crystalloid volumes is to provide adequate tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery to the body's tissues but reduce the risk of dilutional coagulopathy and prevent the disruption of pre-formed blood clots [48, 55]. Multiple studies have shown that hypotensive resuscitation can improve survival rates and is considered a safe and effective fluid resuscitation strategy [50, 56–58].

Recent guidelines recommend avoiding using more than 2 liters of crystalloid solutions or 1.5 liters of colloids in the treatment of PPH before resorting to blood transfusion [34, 59]. In treating PPH, it is more important to rapidly replace fluids and warm the solutions than to focus on the specific type of fluid being infused [34].

d. Goals of fluid therapy

Crystalloids should be followed immediately with packed red cell replacement using packed red blood cells (RBC) to restore oxygen-carrying capacity and maintain hemoglobin greater than 8 gm/dL.

The goal of therapy is to maintain systolic pressure of 80–90 mm of Hg, urine output >0.5 mL/kg/hr, and normal mental status. It is important to remember that, due to the benefits of permissive hypotension in PPH, the goal of therapy is not to maintain blood pressure in the normal range. So rather than following the standard practice of fluid administration, clinicians should adjust fluid infusion to maintain a target systolic blood pressure of 80–90 mm Hg until major bleeding has been controlled [60].

An alternative goal of fluid administration during the bleeding phase of severe postpartum hemorrhage is to achieve a low mean arterial pressure, which has been recommended to be between 50–60 mm Hg [60] and 55–65 mm Hg [40].

e. Colloids vs. crystalloids

Colloid solutions may be used as an alternative or an adjunct to crystalloids with the assumption of its greater and longer duration of volume expansion effect. But no colloid solution has been demonstrated to be superior to crystalloids. Compared to crystalloids, colloids are more expensive and carry a greater risk of adverse effects [61, 62]. According to guidelines from the World Health Organization (2012), an intravenous fluid replacement for PPH should be with isotonic crystalloids rather than colloids [35]. A Cochrane review (2018) that compared the use of colloids and crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients (excluding pregnant patients who had undergone cesarean section) found that resuscitation with colloids was not associated with an improvement in survival [20].

Based on these findings, for the resuscitation of women with PPH, isotonic crystalloids should be used in preference to colloids. Avoid dextrans in obstetric practice as they may interfere with platelet function and cross-matching and are hazardous [39]. Also, avoid using hydroxyethyl starch for resuscitation in major PPH [34].

f. Which crystalloid to give?

Ringer's lactate and normal saline are the two most commonly used crystalloid solutions for initial fluid resuscitation. They are routinely used, inexpensive, readily available solutions without significant side effects. Until blood is available, infuse crystalloid at a volume that is approximately three times the estimated volume of blood loss [39, 63].

Normal saline is usually administered in a labor ward because of its easy availability, low cost, and compatibility with blood transfusions and most drugs. But the infusion of large quantities (>2 L) of normal saline can cause hyperchloremic acidosis [63, 64] and acute kidney injury [65]. Ringer's lactate solution, compared to normal saline, has an electrolyte composition that more closely resembles plasma and can also buffer acidosis due to the metabolism of lactate to bicarbonate. Because of these properties, Ringer's lactate is considered more physiological than normal saline and is increasingly recommended as the first-choice resuscitation fluid [66].

Dextrose-containing IV solutions, such as 5% dextrose or dextrose with saline, should not be used in treating PPH because the rapid infusion of these solutions can cause hyperglycemia and resultant diuresis.

2. Blood replacement

Timely and adequate blood replacement is crucial and lifesaving in the treatment of severe PPH.

a. Intravenous fluids vs. blood

Because of the potential harms of large-volume crystalloid resuscitation (e.g., dilution coagulopathy, volume overload, and hypothermia) [67, 68], early blood transfusion should be managed after initial fluid administration.

The trend is growing (hemostatic resuscitation) to transfuse blood components early to correct hypovolemia and allow permissive hypotension in severe acute PPH [40, 48, 55, 69]. The rationale of this strategy is to reduce the contribution of crystalloid solutions and thereby prevent side effects associated with the administration of a large volume of crystalloids.

b. Indications of blood replacement

There are no clear guidelines for determining when a red blood cell transfusion should be infused [70, 71]. Patients with acute hemorrhage can have normal hemoglobin, so it is important to pay close attention to the clinical evaluation [71].

Common indications of red cell transfusion in PPH are [34, 38, 71–75]:

- Women with a hemoglobin value <6 gm/dL, irrespective of symptoms.
- Clinically severe uncontrollable postpartum hemorrhage.
- Blood loss of 1500 ml or more usually requires blood/pack cell transfusion.
- Blood is usually administered to symptomatic women (maternal tachycardia >110 beats per minute, dizziness, syncope) with active bleeding, irrespective of hemoglobin status. Do not wait for laboratory results; the decision to provide a blood transfusion should be based on clinical signs to avoid delay.
- The combination of a higher shock index (>9) and lactate levels (>4.0 mmol/L), with immediate postpartum lower hemoglobin, predicts the requirement for blood transfusion.
- Blood transfusion is usually not required when blood loss due to PPH is small, and the woman is asymptomatic.
- Women with PPH rarely require a blood transfusion if the hemoglobin is more than 10.0 gm/dL.

c. Selection of blood product

Packed red blood cells (PRBCs) are preferred for resuscitation and to avoid crystalloids-induced dilutional coagulopathy in women with massive hemorrhage. In cases of life-threatening PPH when the patient's blood group is unavailable or there is an anticipated delay in receiving cross-matched blood, consider using O Rh negative blood [34, 76].

Packed red blood cells are the preferred treatment for hypovolemic shock caused by hemorrhage, and each unit can be expected to increase the hemoglobin level by about 1 gm/dL [77].

Transfusion ratios: When a large volume of transfusion is required, recommended proportionate administration of red blood cells, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), and platelets are in a 1:1:1 ratio, which resembles the replacement of whole blood [38, 78]. Blood products transfused in a ratio, mimicking whole blood replacement, are associated with lesser complications and better survival [79].

d. Post-transfusion goals

The post-transfusion goals in the management of PPH are to maintain the following [80]:

- Hemoglobin level greater than 8 gm/dL.
- Platelet counts greater than 50,000/mm3.
- Fibrinogen level greater than 150–200 mg/dL.
- Prothrombin time is less than 1.5 times the normal value.

e. Adverse effects

With the changing trend to use early transfusions to achieve faster hemodynamic stability and avoid using the large volume of crystalloids, a higher incidence of transfusion-related complications due to the administration of multiple units has been observed. Complications frequently encountered are hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, allergic reactions, citrate toxicity, volume overload, and transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI).

Hyperkalemia and hypocalcemia (low ionized calcium) are common electrolyte abnormalities seen whenever multiple units of stored PRBCs are transfused rapidly. The risk of hyperkalemia is high following a massive transfusion because older stored PRBCs contain about 5 mEq of potassium per unit (300 mL).

The risk of developing hypocalcemia is high after rapidly transfusing large amounts of blood due to the presence of citrate, an anticoagulant, in the blood. Each unit of packed red blood cells contains about 3 mg of citrate. In very sick patients, the liver's ability to eliminate citrate may be impaired, leading to citrate accumulation in the blood. Accumulated citrate binds to circulating ionized calcium, leading to hypocalcemia and can cause citrate toxicity. Therefore, monitoring for and managing citrate toxicity in patients receiving large amounts of PRBCs or who have compromised liver function is essential Patients receiving large amounts of blood need the administration of calcium injections to prevent or correct hypocalcemia.

Ringer's lactate and blood should not be administered in the same line because the calcium in the RL solution may cause clotting.

REFERENCES

1. Pretorius T, van Rensburg G, Dyer RA, et al. The Influence of Fluid Management on Outcomes in Preeclampsia: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Int J Obstet Anesth 2018;34:85–95.
2. Dimitriadis E, Rolnik DL, Zhou W, et al. Pre-eclampsia. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2023;9(1):8.
3. Wong S. NHS Hypertension – Management in Pregnancy Guideline (GL952). February 2018 (https://www.royalberkshire.nhs.uk/Downloads/GPs/GP%20protocols%20and%20guidelines/Maternity%20Guidelines%20and%20Policies/Medical%20conditions%20and%20complications/Hypertension_guideline_V3.1_GL952_JUN19.pdf Accessed on 20 Nov 2018).
4. The Diagnosis and Management of Preeclampsia and Eclampsia - Clinical Practice Guideline. Institute of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, Royal College of Physicians of Ireland. September 2011. (https://rcpi-live-cdn.s3.amazonaws.com/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/Preeclampsia_Approved_120716.pdf Accessed on 27 June 2019).
5. Regional Guideline for the Management of Preeclampsia (July 2015). Maternity, Children and Young People Strategic Clinical Network. Review July 2017 (https://www.nwcscnsenate.nhs.uk/files/6814/7160/2738/Eclampsia_Guidelines_FINAL_Ratified_MCYP_SG_Sept20_15.pdf Accessed on 21/11/2018).
6. Dennis AT, Solnordal CB. Acute Pulmonary Oedema in Pregnant Women. Anaesthesia 2012;67(6):646–59.
7. Dennis AT. Management of Preeclampsia: Issues for Anaesthetists. Anaesthesia 2012;67(9):1009–20.
8. Tuffnell DJ, Jankowicz D, Lindow SW, et al. Outcomes of Severe Preeclampsia/Eclampsia in Yorkshire 1999/2003. BJOG 2005;112(7):875–80.
9. Magee LA, Pels A, Helewa M, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, and management of the hypertensive disorders of pregnancy: executive summary. J Obstet Gynaecol Can. 2014;36(5):416–41.
10. Hypertension in Pregnancy: Diagnosis and Management. NICE Guideline [NG133]. Published: 25 June 2019 (www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng133 Accessed on 27 June 2019).
11. Lowe SA, Bowyer L, Lust K, et al. Guideline for the Management of Hypertensive Disorders of Pregnancy 2014. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol. 2015;55(5):e1–29.
12. Guidelines for the Management of Severe Preeclampsia and Eclampsia. GAIN March 2012.
13. Druzin ML, Shields LE, Peterson NL, et al. Improving Health Care Response to Preeclampsia: CMQCC Preeclampsia Toolkit Preeclampsia Care Guidelines CDPH-MCAH Approved: 12/20/13.
14. Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy: Executive Summary. New York State Department of Health May 2013 (https://www.health.ny.gov/professionals/protocols_and_guidelines/hypertensive_disorders/2013_hdp_executive_summary.pdf).
15. Anthony J, Schoeman LK. Fluid Management in Preeclampsia. Obstetric Medicine 2013;6(3):100–104.
16. Eclampsia and Severe Preeclampsia - Clinical Guidelines. Royal Cornwall Hospitals NHS Trust. 20 October 2015 (https://doclibrary-rcht.cornwall.nhs.uk/GET/d10140812).
17. Shunker S. Preeclampsia Management in ICU. Liverpool Hospital October 2013 (https://www.aci.health.nsw.gov.au/__data/assets/

pdf_file/0004/306472/liverpoolPreeclampsia_Management_in_ICU.pdf Accessed on 28 November 2018).

18. Perel P, Roberts I, Ker K. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013;(2):CD000567.
19. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: International Guidelines for Management of Sepsis and Septic Shock: 2016. Crit Care Med. 2017;45(3):486–552.
20. Levis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, et al. Colloids versus Crystalloids for Fluid Resuscitation in Critically Ill People. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2018;8(8):CD000567.
21. Sivevski AG, Sholjakova M, Kartalov A, et al. Comparison of Low Dose Spinal Anesthesia with General Anesthesia in Pre-Eclamptic Parturients Undergoing Emergency Cesarean Section. Anaesth Pain & Intensive Care 2015;19(1):37–43.
22. Kinsella SM, Carvalho B, Dyer RA, et al. International Consensus Statement on the Management of Hypotension with Vasopressors during Caesarean Section Under Spinal Anaesthesia. Anaesthesia 2018;73(1):71–92.
23. Aya AG, Mangin R, Vialles N, et al. Patients with Severe Preeclampsia Experience Less Hypotension during Spinal Anesthesia for Elective Cesarean Delivery than Healthy Parturients: A Prospective Cohort comparison. Anesth Analg 2003;97(3):867–72.
24. Sivevski AG, Ivanov E, Karadjova D. Spinal-Induced Hypotension in Preeclamptic and Healthy Parturients Undergoing Cesarean Section. Open Access Macedonian Journal of Medical Sciences. 2019;7(6):996–1000.
25. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 202: Gestational Hypertension and Preeclampsia. Obstetrics & Gynecology January 2019;133(1):1–25.
26. Loughran PG, Moore J, Dundee JW. Maternal Stress Response Associated with Cesarean Delivery Under General and Epidural Anaesthesia. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1986;93(9):943–9.
27. Huang CJ, Fan YC, Tsai PS. Differential Impacts of Modes of Anaesthesia on the Risk of Stroke Among Preeclamptic Women who Undergo Caesarean Delivery: A Population-based Study. Br J Anaesth 2010;105(6):818–26.
28. Santos AC, Birnbach DJ. Spinal Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery in Severely Preeclamptic Women: Don't throw Out the Baby with the Bathwater! Anesth Analg 2005;101(3):859–61.
29. Leslie D, Collis RE. Hypertension in Pregnancy. BJA Education 2016;16(1):33–37.
30. Sibai BM. Diagnosis, Prevention, and Management of Eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol. 2005;105(2):402–410.
31. Say L, Chou D, Gemmill A, et al. Global causes of maternal death: a WHO systematic analysis. Lancet Glob Health 2014;2(6):e323–33.
32. Weeks A. "The prevention and treatment of postpartum hemorrhage: what do we know, and where do we go to next?" BJOG: An International Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology. 2015;122(2):202–12.
33. Mousa HA, Blum J, Abou El Senoun G, et al. Treatment for primary postpartum hemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014;2014(2):CD003249.
34. Mavrides E, Allard S, Chandraharan E, et al. Prevention and management of postpartum haemorrhage. BJOG 2016;124:e106–e149.
35. WHO recommendations for the prevention and treatment of postpartum haemorrhage recommendations on prevention and treatment of postpartum haemorrhage [Internet] 2012.
36. Lalonde A. Prevention and treatment of postpartum hemorrhage in low-resource settings. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2012;117(2):108–18.
37. Royal Australian and New Zealand College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists. Management of Postpartum Haemorrhage (PPH). 2017. (Available at: https://ranzcog.edu.au/RANZCOG_SITE/media/RANZCOG-MEDIA/Women%27s%20Health/Statement%20and%20guidelines/Clinical-Obstetrics/Management-of-Postpartum-Haemorrhage-(C-Obs-43)-Review-July-2017.pdf?ext=.pdf).
38. Committee on Practice Bulletins-Obstetrics. Practice Bulletin No. 183: Postpartum Hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 2017;130(4):e168–e186.
39. Obstetric Hemorrhage Clinical Guideline V2.3 Royal Cornwall Hospitals NHS Trust, August 2019 (https://doclibrary-rcht.cornwall.nhs.uk/DocumentsLibrary/RoyalCornwallHospitalsTrust/Clinical/MidwiferyAndObstetrics/ObstetricHaemorrhageClinicalGuideline.pdf Accessed on 6 November 2019).
40. Muñoz M, Stensballe J, Ducloy-Bouthors AS, et al. Patient blood management in obstetrics: prevention and treatment of postpartum haemorrhage. A NATA consensus statement. Blood Transfus. 2019;17(2):112–136.
41. Pacagnella RC, Souza JP, Durocher J, et al. A systematic review of the relationship between blood loss and clinical signs. PLoS One 2013;8(3):e57594.
42. Hofer S, Blaha J, Collins PW, et al. Haemostatic support in postpartum haemorrhage: A review of the literature and expert opinion. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2023;40(1):29–38.
43. Nathan HL, El Ayadi A, Hezelgrave NL, et al. Shock index: an effective predictor of outcome in postpartum haemorrhage? BJOG 2015;122(2):268–75.
44. Koch E, Lovett S, Nghiem T, et al. Shock index in the emergency department: utility and limitations. Open Access Emerg Med. 2019;11:179–199.
45. Huang L, Gan X, Luo D, et al. The Ability of Shock Index In Detecting Postpartum Haemorrhage: A Retrospective Case-Control Study. Research Square 2022.
46. Makino Y, Okada A, Ikeda Y, et al. Predictive accuracy of the shock index for severe postpartum hemorrhage in high-income countries: A systematic review and meta-analysis J Obstet Gynaecol Res. 2022:48(8):2027–2037.

47. Diaz V, Abalos E, Carroli G. Methods for blood loss estimation after vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2018;9(9):CD010980.
48. Escobar MF, Nassar AH, Theron G, et al. FIGO recommendations on the management of postpartum hemorrhage 2022. Int J Gynaecol Obstet. 2022;157 Suppl 1(Suppl 1):3–50.
49. Leibner E, Andreae M, Galvagno SM, et al. Damage control resuscitation. Clin Exp Emerg Med. 2020;7(1):5–13.
50. Owattanapanich N, Chittawatanarat K, Benyakorn T, et al. Risks and benefits of hypotensive resuscitation in patients with traumatic hemorrhagic shock: a meta-analysis. Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med. 2018;26:107.
51. Wang H, Chen MB, Zheng XW, et al. Effectiveness and safety of hypotensive resuscitation in traumatic hemorrhagic shock: a protocol for meta-analysis. Medicine. 2019;98(48):e18145.
52. Gillissen A, van den Akker T, Caram-Deelder C, et al. Association between fluid management and dilutional coagulopathy in severe postpartum haemorrhage: a nationwide retrospective cohort study. BMC Preg Childbirth. 2018;18(1):398.
53. Henriquez DDCA, Bloemenkamp KWM, Loeff RM, et al. Fluid resuscitation during persistent postpartum haemorrhage and maternal outcome: A nationwide cohort study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2019;235:49–56.
54. Carrick MM, Leonard J, Slone DS, et al. Hypotensive resuscitation among trauma patients. Biomed Res Int. 2016;2016:8901938.
55. Carvajal JA, Ramos I, Kusanovic JP, et al. Damage-control resuscitation in obstetrics. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2022;35(4):785–798.
56. Albreiki M, Voegeli D. Permissive hypotensive resuscitation in adult patients with traumatic haemorrhagic shock: a systematic review. Eur J Trauma Emerg Surg 2018;44(2):191–202.
57. Tran A, Yates J, Lau A, et al. Permissive hypotension versus conventional resuscitation strategies in adult trauma patients with hemorrhagic shock: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Trauma Acute Care Surg. 2018;84(5):802–808.
58. Safiejko K, Smereka J, Filipiak KJ, et al. Effectiveness and safety of hypotension fluid resuscitation in traumatic hemorrhagic shock: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Cardiol J. 2022;29(3):463–471.
59. Queensland Maternity and Neonatal Clinical Guidelines Program. 2018 Primary postpartum hemorrhage MN18.1-V7-R23.
60. Spahn DR, Bouillon B, Cerny V, et al. The European guideline on management of major bleeding and coagulopathy following trauma. Crit Care. 2019;23(1):98.
61. Mutter TC, Ruth CA, Dart AB. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) versus other fluid therapies: effects on kidney function. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013;7:CD007594.
62. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. (6S Trial) N Engl J Med 2012;367(2):124–34.
63. Postpartum hemorrhage - prevention and management. Clinical practice guidelines at the Royal Hospital for Women 21 June 2018.
64. Yunos M, Bellomo R, Story D, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: Chloride in critical illness. Critical Care; 2010;14(4):226.
65. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Glassford N, et al. Chloride-liberal vs. chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration and acute kidney injury: an extended analysis. Intensive Care Med 2015;41(2):257–64.
66. Myburgh JA, Mythen MG. Resuscitation fluids. N Engl J Med 2013;369(13):1243–1251.
67. Cotton BA, Guy JS, Morris Jr JA, et al. The cellular, metabolic, and systemic consequences of aggressive fluid resuscitation strategies. Shock. 2006;26(2):115–21.
68. Ley EJ, Clond MA Srur MK, et al. Emergency department crystalloid resuscitation of 1.5 L or more is associated with increased mortality in elderly and nonelderly trauma patients. J Trauma. 2011;70(2):398–400.
69. Peña PCA, Meza MJM, Martínez BYI. Integral management of reanimation in the patient with critical bleeding: reanimation of damage control. Med Crit. 2021;35(4):200–205.
70. Fuller AJ, Bucklin B. Blood component therapy in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 2007;34(3):443–58.
71. Blood Transfusion in Obstetrics. Green-top Guideline No. 47. Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists May 2015 (https://www.rcog.org.uk/media/sdqcorsf/gtg-47.pdf).
72. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Transfusion and Adjuvant Therapies. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood transfusion and adjuvant therapies: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Transfusion and Adjuvant Therapies. Anesthesiology 2006;105(1):198–208.
73. Lyndon A, Lagrew D, Shields L, et al. Improving Health Care Response to Obstetric Hemorrhage. Version 2.0. A California Quality improvement toolkit. Department of Public Health. 2015.
74. Shields LE, Wiesner S, Fulton J, et al. Comprehensive maternal hemorrhage protocols reduce the use of blood products and improve patient safety. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2015;212(3):272–80.
75. Attali E, Many A, Kern G, et al. Predicting the need for blood transfusion requirement in postpartum hemorrhage. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2022;35(25):7911–7916.
76. Bonnet MP, Benhamou D. Management of postpartum haemorrhage. F1000Res. 2016;5:F1000 Faculty Rev-1514.
77. Müller M, Geisen C, Zacharowski K, et al. Transfusion of packed red cells—indications, triggers

and adverse events. Dtsch Arztebl Int 2015;112(29–30):507–17.

78. Collins P, Abdul-Kadir R, Thachil J. Management of coagulopathy associated with postpartum hemorrhage: guidance from the SSC of the ISTH. J Thromb Haemost. 2016;14(1):205–10.

79. Holcomb JB, Tilley BC, Baraniuk S, et al. Transfusion of plasma, platelets, and red blood cells in a 1:1:1 vs a 1:1:2 ratio and mortality in patients with severe trauma: the PROPPR randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2015;313(5):471–482.

80. Hunt BJ, Allard S, Keeling D, et al. A practical guideline for the haematological management of major haemorrhage. Br J Haematol 2015;170(6):788–803.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

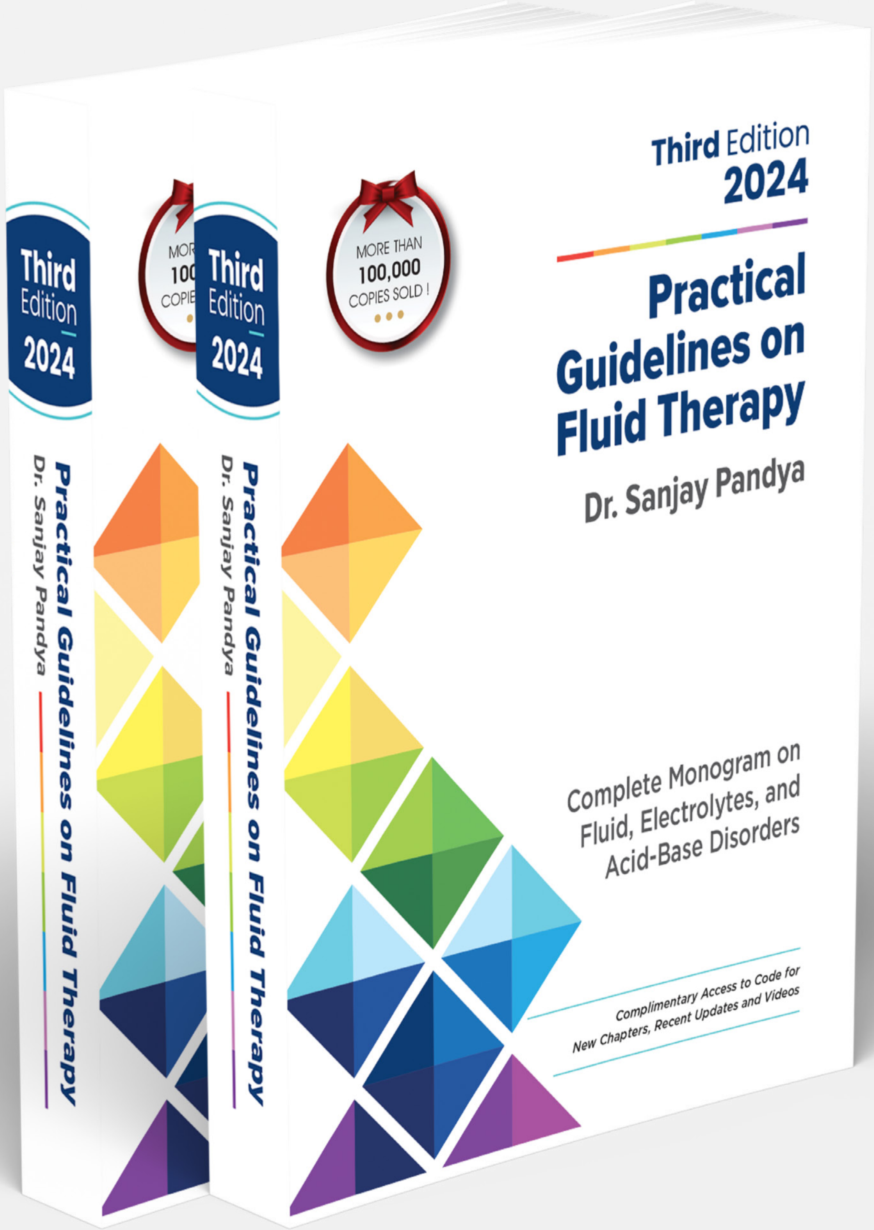
Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Chapter 54:

Hyponatremia during Labor


Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

54 Hyponatremia during Labor

Physiological Predisposing Factors 650
Causes 650
Harmful Effects 651
Prevention 651
Treatment 652

Labor per se does not cause hyponatremia (defined as serum sodium <130 mEq/L), but during labor, women are at increased risk of developing the same [1]. Hyponatremia following prolonged labor is not uncommon and is potentially hazardous to the mother and neonate [2, 3].

PHYSIOLOGICAL PREDISPOSING FACTORS

Women in labor are at greater risk of developing hyponatremia than non-pregnant women [4] because of:

1. Lower baseline plasma sodium. The normal range of serum sodium concentration is lower (130–140 mEq/L) in pregnancy compared to its value in non-pregnant adults (135–145 mEq/L) [4, 5]. In the late third trimester, about 6 to 8 liter of water is retained, which is responsible for the dilutional hyponatremia and the lower baseline plasma sodium value.
2. An impaired renal ability to excrete water [6, 7]. In healthy women, the normal capacity of kidneys to excrete a water load is 900 ml/h. While in late pregnancy, the maximum renal ability to excrete a water load reduces to 600 mL/h [8]. In the presence of the tendency of kidneys to retain water, hyponatremia is likely to occur if the excess fluid is consumed orally or administered intravenously.
3. Antidiuretic effect of endogenous oxytocin. As the structure of oxytocin is similar to vasopressin, oxytocin causes water retention and results in dilutional hyponatremia in laboring women [9]. Reasons for the higher concentration of oxytocin during labor are the greater release of endogenous secretion of oxytocin and IV administration of synthetic oxytocin to induce or augment labor.

CAUSES

Causes of maternal hyponatremia are:

1. Excessive oral water intake during prolonged labor [10, 11].
2. Hyponatremia is likely in women who choose home delivery but are transferred to the hospital after prolonged labor due to unsuccessful delivery or obstetric complications [3]. The mechanism for developing hyponatremia in such patients is the high endogenous secretion of oxytocin and excessive oral hypotonic fluid intake.

3. Liberal fluid administration causes iatrogenic maternal fluid overload.
4. Increased oral fluid intake and intravenous fluid administration are major causes of hyponatremia. Hyponatremia occurs when the intake of low sodium-containing fluid exceeds a woman's ability to excrete it during labor. Water retention causes a decrease in the concentration of sodium by diluting the blood. As a result, the incidence of hyponatremia at delivery among women is 1% for those with a total fluid intake (oral + IV) of up to 1 liter during labor and 5% for those with a total fluid intake between 1 to 2.5 liters [2]. The risk of hyponatremia increases to as high as 26% for those with a total fluid intake above 2.5 liters.
5. Administration of a large volume of oxytocin in hypotonic solutions (i.e., 5% dextrose) for a prolonged period for induction and augmentation of labor can cause hyponatremia [2].
6. Other causes: Hyperemesis gravidarum, psychiatric disorders, and maternal medications like diuretics, antidepressants like selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors [SSRIs], and synthetic recreational drugs like ecstasy.

HARMFUL EFFECTS

Hyponatremia during labor can produce deleterious consequences for both the mother and the neonate. In addition to the usual symptoms of hyponatremia (e.g., nausea, lethargy, headache, agitation, confusion, drowsiness, seizures, etc.), maternal hyponatremia is associated with the prolongation of the second stage of labor, instrumental birth, and emergency cesarean birth for failure to progress [2].

As water diffuses freely across the placenta, maternal hyponatremia can lead to neonatal hyponatremia [12, 13]. Significant hyponatremia in newborns may cause irritability, lethargy, and feeding difficulties in mild cases and seizures, respiratory distress, apnea, hyperbilirubinemia, and coma in severe cases [10, 14–16].

PREVENTION

Measures which help to prevent hyponatremia are [1]:

1. Strict fluid balance chart and early recognition: Record oral/intravenous fluid intake and urine output every four hours for close monitoring. When an electrolyte imbalance is suspected, it is important to measure the serum electrolytes. If a woman's fluid balance exceeds positive 1500 ml, her risk of developing hyponatremia is high, and her blood sodium level should be checked.
2. Neutral fluid balance: Maternal dilutional hyponatremia can be prevented during labor by maintaining a neutral fluid balance. Therefore, excessive fluid intake during labor should not be encouraged for women.
3. Avoid the administration of hypotonic IV fluids like 5% dextrose during labor.
4. When oxytocin is to be administered in a high dose for a prolonged period, use a higher concentration of oxytocin to reduce the total volume of infused fluid, use electrolyte-containing solutions such as normal saline or Ringer's lactate as a diluent, and avoid electrolyte free solution like 5% dextrose as a diluent.
5. During labor, it is important to monitor serum sodium levels in women who require oxytocin infusion, have a positive fluid balance exceeding 1500 ml, develop symptoms of hyponatremia,

or have a serum sodium level less than 130 mEq/L.

TREATMENT

Treatment depends on the underlying cause. The basic principle of treating dilutional maternal hyponatremia is a fluid restriction (oral and intravenous), discontinuation of oxytocin infusion, and co-administration of furosemide if there is any evidence of fluid overload [1]. Administration of hypertonic saline is necessary for patients with severe clinical symptoms due to hyponatremia (such as seizures or loss of consciousness) with close monitoring of sodium levels.

Hypovolemic depletion hyponatremia is less common during labor and may need IV fluid administration. Normal saline is a preferred solution in such women. For detailed information about the treatment of hyponatremia, please refer to Chapter 20 on "Hyponatremia".

REFERENCES

1. GAIN Guideline for the prevention, diagnosis and management of hyponatraemia in labour and the immediate postpartum period march 2017.
2. Moen V, Burdin L, Rundgren M, et al. Hyponatremia complicating labour—rare or unrecognised? A prospective observational study. BJOG 2009;116(4):552-61.
3. Lassey SC, Napoe GS, Carusi D, et al. Hyponatremia among parturients transferred to the hospital after prolonged labor during an attempted home birth. Obstet Gynecol. 2019;134(1):106–108.
4. Costantine MM. Physiologic and pharmacokinetic changes in pregnancy. Front Pharmacol. 2014;5:65.
5. Narelle H. Biochemical Changes in Pregnancy-What Should A Clinician Know? J Gynecol Women's Health. 2017;4(1):555626.
6. Schrier RW. Body water homeostasis: clinical disorders of urinary dilution and concentration. J Am Soc Nephrol 2006;17(7):1820–1832.
7. Cheung KL, Lafayette RA. Renal physiology of pregnancy. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2013;20(3):209–14.
8. Hytten FE, Klopper AI. Response to a water load in pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 1963;70:811–6.
9. Chunling Li, Weidong W, Sandra NS, et al. Molecular Mechanisms of Antidiuretic Effect of Oxytocin. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2008;19(2):225–32.
10. Johansson S, Lindow S, Kapadia H, et al. Perinatal water intoxication due to excessive oral intake during labour. Acta Paediatr. 2002;91(7):811–4.
11. Solomon N, Many A, Orbach R, et al. Maternal and neonatal hyponatremia during labor: a case series. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2019;32(16):2711–2715.
12. West CR, Harding JE. Maternal water intoxication as a cause of neonatal seizures. J. Paediatric Child health. 2004;40(12):709–710.
13. Walter KN, Montgomery J, Amess P, et al. Hyponatraemia and brain oedema in newborns following oral water intoxication during prolonged labour. Klinische Paädiatrie. 2012;224(4):266–267.
14. Chapman TH, Hamilton M. Water intoxication presenting as maternal and neonatal seizures: a case report. Journal of medical Case Reports. 2008;2:366.
15. Ophir E, Solt I, Odeh M, et al. Water intoxication - a dangerous condition in labor and delivery rooms. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2007;62(11):731–8.
16. Valerio E, Fantinato M, Giovannini IA, et al. Severe asymptomatic maternal antepartum hyponatremia leading to neonatal seizures: prevention is better than cure. Matern Health Neonatol Perinatol. 2015;1:25.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

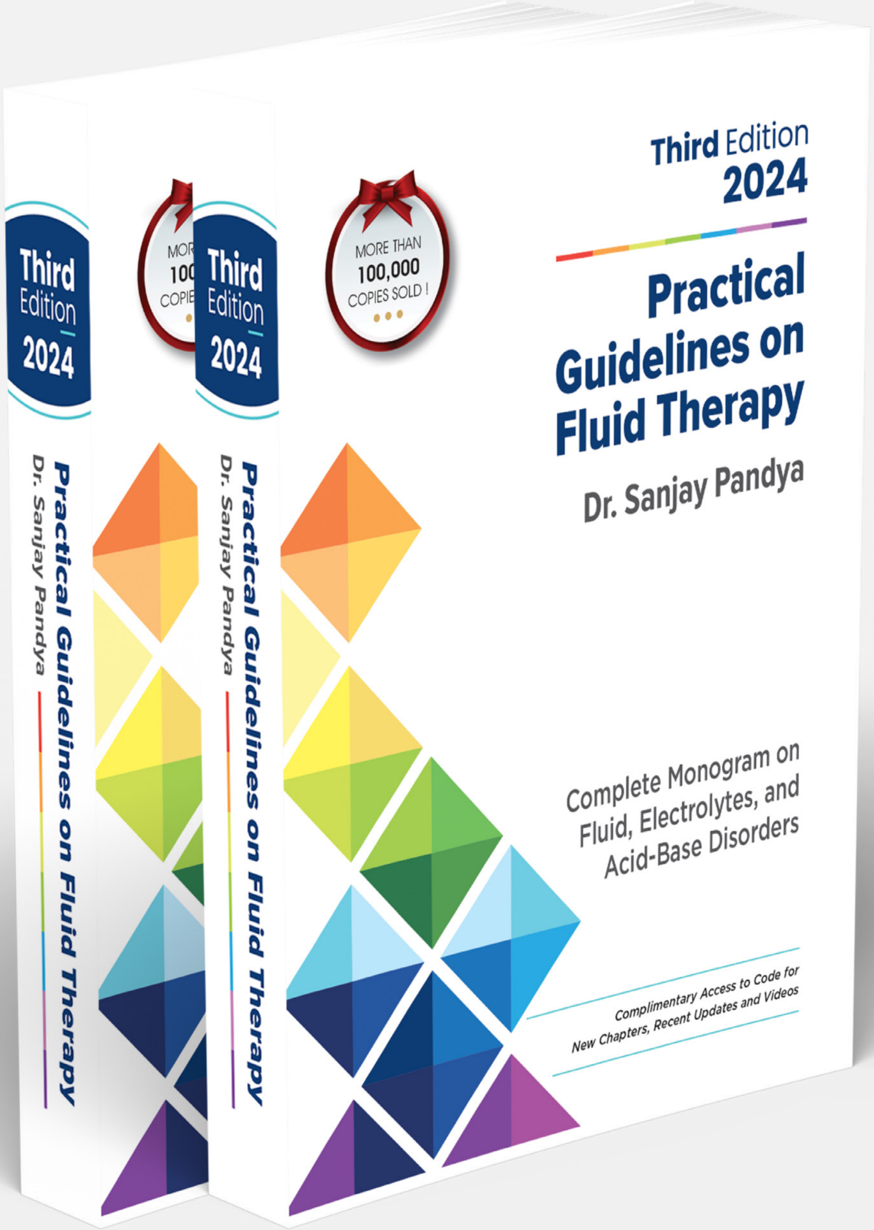
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid
therapy.org

Chapter 55:

Parenteral Nutrition: Principles and Requirements


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

55

Parenteral Nutrition: Principles and Requirements

Definition 655
Basic Principles of Nutrition 656
  Importance of avoiding malnutrition 656
  Goals of parenteral nutrition 656
Enteral vs. Parenteral Nutrition...... 657
  Preference of EN over PN 657
  Contraindications EN.................... 657
  Advantages of PN over EN 658
Indications of PN 658
Advantages and Disadvantages of PN 658
Contraindications of PN.................. 659
  General.. 659
  Disease-specific 660
Nutritional Requirements................ 660
  Fluid requirements....................... 660
  Energy requirements 661
  Carbohydrate................................ 663
    Caloric value and requirements..663
    Functions and advantages 663
    Disadvantages......................... 664
    Administration and monitoring.. 664
    Calculation examples 664
  Protein 665
    Caloric value and requirements 665
    Functions and advantages 666
    Contraindications and adverse effects 666
    Monitoring.............................. 666
    Calculation examples 667
  Lipids 667
    Contents 667
    Caloric value and requirements..667
    Functions and advantages 668
    Adverse effects and disadvantages 669
    Indications and contraindications 670
    Administration and monitoring ..670
    Selection of lipid emulsions 670
    Calculation examples 671
  Disease-specific amino acids 671
    Hepatic encephalopathy.......... 671
    Acute kidney injury 671
  Immunomodulators....................... 672
    Glutamine 672
    Omega 3 fatty acids 672
    Arginine 673
  Micronutrients.............................. 673
  Electrolytes, trace elements, and vitamins 673

Parenteral nutrition (PN) is currently one of the most sophisticated forms of intravenous therapy. Appropriate use of parenteral nutrition is lifesaving when there is no other option for nutrition.

DEFINITION

Parenteral nutrition is a method of intravenous administration of nutrients, vitamins, electrolytes, and medications

---

to patients who cannot take or tolerate enteral nutrition or have a non-functional gastrointestinal tract.

PN is an effective means of sustaining life and promoting recovery in critically ill patients incapable of ingesting, absorbing, or assimilating nutrients. Similarly, PN is a life-supporting therapy even for non-critically ill patients with pre-existing malnutrition and for non-stressed but hospitalized patients who cannot take oral intake for 5 to 7 or more days.

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF NUTRITION

- Avoid malnutrition as it is harmful [1].
- If the intestines are functioning properly, utilize them. When possible, it is recommended to use enteral nutrition instead of parenteral nutrition. However, ensuring the safe and sufficient delivery of nutrition is of higher priority than the route of delivery.
- Avoid overfeeding, as it can cause significant complications. Excess carbohydrates can cause hyperglycemia, hepatic steatosis, and increased CO_2 production; excess protein can cause azotemia and metabolic acidosis, and excess fat can cause hyperlipidemia [2, 3].
- While planning PN, more critical factors are the method of delivery, timing, and the type of formula rather than the specific amounts of nutrients provided.
- During acute stress, the body mobilizes endogenous amino acids and energy stores. It is not possible to make catabolic patients anabolic entirely. The goal of nutritional support is to prevent the wasting of protein and to provide essential and conditionally essential nutrients.

Importance of avoiding malnutrition

Malnutrition should be prevented due to its harmful consequences, including:

- Malnutrition leads to increased morbidity and mortality and should be avoided. In addition, it leads to increased susceptibility to infection, poor wound healing, pulmonary complications (weakness of respiratory muscles leading to the decreased ventilatory drive, reduction of vital capacity, and depressed lung defense due to reduces cough pressure and removal of secretions), electrolyte disturbances, and postoperative complications.
- Malnutrition leads to a prolonged recovery period and a longer duration of hospitalization.
- It can negatively impact the quality of life and is associated with higher morbidity and mortality.

Goals of parenteral nutrition

The role of PN is supportive. The principal goals of nutritional support are:

- To sustain or improve nutrition by administering all necessary nutrients such as proteins, carbohydrates, lipids, electrolytes, minerals, trace elements, and vitamins.
- To decrease the negative impacts of catabolism, it is essential to maximize protein synthesis, limit the breakdown of body protein, and slow down the rate of weight loss.
- To boost the immune function and to improve wound healing.
- Restoring glycogen storage increases the strength of cardiac and diaphragmatic muscles and improves cardiopulmonary function.
- To maintain or correct acid-base and electrolyte disturbances.

Table 55.1 Planning of parenteral nutritional support

1. Selection of patient: Determine if PN is truly indicated. PN is recommended only when potential benefits (improvement in prognosis and quality of life) exceed the risks.
2. Select and establish an appropriate route of administration on the basis of long-term vs. short-term requirements.
3. Calculations of nutritional requirements: Calculate the requirements of fluid, energy, glucose, lipids, proteins, minerals, and vitamins for individual patients (along with disease-specific modifications).
4. Prescribe parenteral nutrition: Convert nutritional requirements to prescription. Prepare or select an optimal formula to deliver nutrients.
5. Administration, monitoring, and avoiding complications of PN support.

- To accelerate recovery and improve the quality of life.

Planning parenteral nutrition

Planning of parenteral nutritional therapy is summarized in Table 55.1.

ENTERAL NUTRITION VS. PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Preference of EN over PN

Enteral nutrition (EN) is preferred when the gastrointestinal tract is functional and accessible. The potential benefits of enteral feeding are:

- Maintains mucosal integrity: Provides nutrients that are needed in the intestinal lumen to maintain the structural and functional integrity of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. Enteral feeding prevents the atrophy of intestinal mucosa and maintains mucosal functions of the gut. Intact mucus membrane preserves the barrier functions of the bowel and prevents bacterial translocation, and therefore prevents the possible risk of sepsis.
- Unlike standard PN, EN provides gut-preferred fuels such as glutamate and short-chain fatty acids.
- More physiological as the liver is not bypassed. The complete volume of nutrient-rich venous blood from all parts of the gastrointestinal tract passes from the liver before it returns to the heart. So hepatic take-up, process, and storing of various nutrients from the venous blood and subsequent release on neural or hormonal command is maintained with EN.
- Prevents cholelithiasis by stimulating gall bladder motility.
- Fewer serious complications and avoids known and potential complications of PN.
- Less costly and easier to maintain than PN. Because of the potential advantages of EN, the provision of even “token” enteral supplementation is recommended to patients receiving total PN support whenever possible.

Contraindications EN

Major contraindications of enteral nutrition are:

- Gastrointestinal causes: Active severe gastrointestinal bleeding, small or large bowel obstruction, perforation, generalized peritonitis, severe paralytic ileus, high output external fistula, and intractable vomiting or diarrhea refractory to medical management.
- Cardiac causes: Active shock or

severe hemodynamic instability with poor end-organ perfusion and hypotensive patients on a high dose of inotropes/vasopressors. Avoid EN in patients who are hemodynamically unstable and not fully resuscitated [4, 5], but due to multiple benefits of EN [6, 7], initiate EN after adequately fluid resuscitation once the patient is stable and/or doses of vasopressors are declining [8, 9].

- Lack of access: Unobtainable safe access to the gastrointestinal tract.
- Complications of enteral feeding: Patients with enteral feeding complications (i.e., pulmonary aspiration, severe diarrhea, and intestinal ischemia or infarct precipitated by enteral feeding in patients with ischemic bowel syndrome) should not be fed by the enteral route.

Advantages of PN over EN

Potential advantages of parenteral nutrition over enteral nutrition are:

- Ensured desired volume delivery of nutrients without the concerns of gastrointestinal intolerance or compliance with transnasal feeding tubes.
- Improved metabolic, electrolyte, and micronutrient management.
- Better acid-base manipulation.
- Drug delivery capabilities (histamine H2 blockers, metoclopramide, insulin, heparin, etc.).

So, PN not only delivers nutrition but also regulates fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base homeostasis.

Factors considered while selecting parenteral nutritional support

The decision to use parenteral nutrition should take into account several important factors, including:

- Age and premorbid state (healthy or otherwise).
- Nutritional status, including endogenous fuel (fat) and protein (muscle) stores, weight loss, and serum albumin value.
- Duration of starvation and degree of the anticipated insult.
- Underlying disease, its severity, and concomitant medical therapy.
- Gastrointestinal function and the possibility of resuming normal intake soon.

INDICATIONS OF PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Parenteral nutrition is required in patients who cannot, should not, or will not eat enough to maintain adequate nutrition and are at risk of developing malnutrition. PN prevents the adverse effects of malnutrition and prevents or corrects specific nutrient deficiencies when the gastrointestinal tract cannot be used efficiently or safely for a prolonged period. Additionally, using PN can reduce total hospitalization costs due to faster recovery and reduced complications of the underlying condition.

However, PN is expensive and has the potential for serious complications. So benefits of PN should be weighed against the potential risks before initiating PN. Important indications of PN are summarized in Table 55.2 [10–12].

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF PN

Major advantages and disadvantages of the parenteral nutrition are as follows:

Major advantages

- Lifesaving when the GI tract cannot be used.
- Ensured desired volume delivery of nutrients when:

Table 55.2 Indications of parenteral nutrition

A. General indications

1. Critical illness with inadequate oral or enteral nutrition for >5–7 days
2. In critically ill patients with severe malnutrition or high nutrition risk, initiate PN as soon as feasible if oral or enteral nutrition is not possible or inadequate

B. Anticipated or actual inadequate oral or enteral intake

1. Conditions that impair the absorption of nutrients
    a. GI fistula
    b. Short bowel syndrome
    c. Small bowel obstruction
    d. Effects of radiation or chemotherapy
2. Need for bowel rest
    a. Severe acute necrotizing pancreatitis
    b. Inflammatory bowel disease
    c. Mesenteric ischemia
    d. Peritonitis
    e. Perioperative (bowel resection, major gastrointestinal surgery)
3. Motility disorders
    a. Prolonged ileus
4. Inability to achieve or maintain enteral access
    a. Haemodynamic instability
    b. Massive gastrointestinal bleeding
    c. Unacceptable aspiration risk
    d. Hyperemesis gravidarum, eating disorders

C. Significant multiorgan system disease

- Significant renal, hepatic, and pulmonary diseases or critical illness (multi organ failure, severe head injury, burns, etc.), which prevents adequate oral or EN

    - GI intolerance prevents oral or EN.
    - Less than 2 to 3 feet of the small intestine.
- Easier correction of fluid and electrolyte disturbances.

Major disadvantages

- High cost.
- Catheter-associated infections and complications.
- Fluid overload and electrolyte abnormalities.
- More risk of metabolic problems like hyperglycemia, hypercholesterolemia, hepatic dysfunction, and refeeding syndrome.
- Leads to intestinal mucosal atrophy, causing damage to the gut barrier. Loss of this first line of defense predisposes patients on PN to risk bacteremia and infection.
- Daily PN is cumbersome.

CONTRAINDICATIONS OF PN

Contraindications of PN are broadly discussed in two groups:

General contraindications

- If enteral or oral nutrition meets the patient's nutritional requirements.
- Patients are well-nourished, stable,

non-catabolic, and within the short term (five to seven days), oral or enteral nutrition is likely to be initiated. For Most patients who require short-term support, the risks of PN outweigh the benefits.

- Severe liver failure, cardiac failure, cardiogenic shock, and blood dyscrasias.
- Cautious use in hemodynamic instability, volume overload, azotemia (BUN >100 mg/dL), severe hyperglycemia (glucose >300 mg/dL), or electrolyte disturbances (Na^+ >150 mEq/L, K^+ <3 mEq/L, Cl^- <85 mEq/L and phosphorus <2 mg/dL), where administration of PN carries high risk.
- Undue high risk in the insertion of catheter solely for PN.
- To prolong life in terminally ill patients with a poor expected outcome when there is little prospect of good quality of life.

Disease-specific contraindications

- Excess use of carbohydrates results in the production of a large amount of carbon dioxide and therefore should be avoided in patients with compromised pulmonary function and with ventilator support during the weaning period.
- Use lipid administration with caution if the triglyceride level is consistently more than 350 mg/dL or in patients with severe sepsis, a moderate degree of jaundice, low platelet count (<50,000 to 60,000/mm), and ARDS or severe respiratory disease.
- Avoid the use of excess PN volume in patients with heart or kidney failure.
- In patients with hepatic encephalopathy and severe renal failure, modified amino acids are preferred over standard amino acids.

It is important to remember that parenteral nutrition must not be undertaken lightly. It is potentially harmful and dangerous if not administered with due precautions.

Timing of parenteral nutrition initiation

Even in critical patients, the decision to start PN is never an emergency. Before starting PN, if the patient is hemodynamically stable and there are no electrolyte or blood glucose abnormalities, the risks of adverse effects of PN are low. At times adequate initial therapy of critical illness may sufficiently improve clinical status to permit oral or EN, and the patient may not require PN. Early PN benefits severely malnourished, critically ill patients, patients with severe necrotizing acute pancreatitis, and high output fistula with large nutrient losses.

NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

Basic nutritional requirements include a balanced amount of fluid, macronutrients (carbohydrates, lipids, proteins), and micronutrients (electrolytes, minerals, trace elements, and vitamins).

A. Fluid requirements

The total fluid requirement in an adult patient can be calculated by adding abnormal losses to normal daily fluid requirements. In adult patients of average-sized, the fluid requirements are about 25–30 mL/kg/d. Correct volume deficit before initiating PN. Search and replace fluid additionally to replace abnormal fluid losses caused by diuretic therapy, diarrhea, vomiting, nasogastric tube drainage, wound output, perspiration, etc. Patients with fluid overload due to cardiac, pulmonary, hepatic, or renal failure need fluid restriction. The volume of fluid delivered by the enteral route should be subtracted from the estimated total fluid requirement. Significant minerals are lost with enteric fluid loss, so an extra amount of these nutrients and fluid must be added to the parenteral solution.

B. Energy requirements

PN should provide adequate energy to patients. Four components of daily energy requirements/total energy expenditure (TEE) are resting energy expenditure-REE (normally two-thirds of TEE), activity energy expenditure (activity factor-AF, normally one-fourth to one-third of TEE), the thermal effect of food (Thermal factor-TF, normally 10% of TEE) and associated illness (disease factor-DF). Adult patients' appropriate total energy requirement is 20–30 kcal/kg/d [13].

Total energy expenditure can be estimated by any of three methods (Table 55.3):

- By using a simple calculation based on calories per kilogram of body weight.
- By using Harris-Benedict (HB) equation to calculate resting energy expenditure, plus additional calories for activity and illness or,
- By calculating energy expenditure with indirect calorimetry.

1. Simple body weight-based calculation

Energy requirements can be calculated roughly by multiplying actual body weight in kilogram by 25–30 kcal, which needs modifications considering physical activity and associated illness (Table 55.4). In obese patients, use ideal body weight

Table 55.3 Methods for estimating total energy expenditure (kcal)
1. Simple body weight based calculation: • REE (kcal/day) = 30 × weight in kg
2. Harris-Benedict equation: • REE (Man) = 66 + (13.7 × W) + (5.0 × H) - (6.7 × A) • REE (Women) = 655 + (9.6 × W) + (1.8 × H) - (4.7 × A)
3. Indirect calorimetry: • REE (Man) = (3.9 × VO2) + (1.1 × VCO2) - 61
A: Age in years; H: Height in cm; W: Weight in kg; REE: Resting energy expenditure

Table 55.4 Guidelines for adjustment in energy requirements

AF = Activity factor	DF = Disease factor	TF = Thermal factor
1.2 bed rest	1.10 on ventilator	1.1 38°C
1.3 out of bed	1.25 general surgery	1.2 39°C
1.4 active	1.3 sepsis	1.3 40°C
-	1.6 multiorgan failure	1.4 41°C
-	1.7 30–50% burns	-
-	1.8 50–70% burns	-
-	2.0 70–90% burns	-

for calculation. Severely malnourished critically ill patients are at high risk for refeeding syndrome, and therefore while initiating PN, administer hypocaloric PN (energy intake less than 20 kcal/kg/d) with adequate protein intake.

2. **Harris-Benedict equation**

   While calculating REE by the Harris-Benedict equation, undernourished patients use actual body weight, and obese persons use ideal body weight.

   To calculate TEE from REE, it is necessary to correct for physical activity (activity factor-AF), associated illness (disease factor-DF), and temperature (TF) as per Table 55.4.

   So, TEE = REE × AF × DF × TF

3. **Indirect calorimetry**

   Above both methods fails to provide accurate calculations of the actual energy used, especially for patients who are significantly underweight, overweight, or critically ill. Therefore, indirect calorimetry using the multi-component metabolic carts [14] is considered the gold standard method to evaluate energy expenditure in clinical practice. As this accurate and non-invasive technique helps in planning the prescription of nutrition and prevents both under and over-feeding in patients by spontaneously breathing and ventilation, its routine use to optimize nutrition care should be encouraged [15, 16].

   Calculation based on body weight and the HB equation is simple but often overestimates energy expenditure. Because of the complications of overfeeding, it is wiser to administer lesser calories rather than too many calories.

Providing energy requirements in parenteral nutrition

The approximate proportion of various macronutrients, including carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins, in the parenteral solution for energy supplementation is summarized in Table 55.5. Generally, the energy content of parenteral nutrition predominantly consists of carbohydrates and lipids (non-protein calories), as proteins are primarily directed towards anabolic processes rather than serving as an energy source. In clinical practice, a common approach is to provide approximately 60–70% of calories from glucose and 30–40% from lipids. This combination of fuel sources in critically ill patients significantly reduces carbon dioxide (CO_2) production, improving patient outcomes

In clinical practice, glucose and lipids are usually given roughly 60–70% glucose and 30–40% lipids.

This mixed fuel nutrient in stressed patients significantly reduces CO_2 production and, therefore, reduces the respiratory work of breathing.

Avoidance of overfeeding in parenteral nutrition

Overfeeding is associated with several significant complications that must be carefully managed to optimize patient outcomes. These complications include:

Table 55.5. Macronutrient composition in parenteral nutrition solutions

Macronutrient	% Contribution	Calories per gm
Carbohydrates	50–60%	1 gm dextrose = 3.4 kcal
Lipids	20–30%	1 gm lipid = 9 kcal
Proteins	15–20%	1 gm protein = 4 kcal

- Severe hyperglycemia: Overfeeding can lead to severe hyperglycemia, resulting in glycosuria, osmotic diuresis, and dehydration.
- Increased risk of infections: Hyperglycemia caused by overfeeding can elevate the risk of nosocomial infections.
- Increased oxygen consumption: Excessive calorie administration can lead to increased oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide production. This heightened metabolic rate may necessitate increased respiratory effort, potentially causing problems in patients with compromised lung function.
- Hepatic steatosis: Overfeeding and excess calorie intake can contribute to the accumulation of fat in the liver, leading to hepatic steatosis. This condition can result in long-term hepatic dysfunction [17].

C. Carbohydrates

Dextrose is the least expensive and most commonly used - a primary source of calories in parenteral nutrition.

1. Caloric value, preparations, and requirements

Each gm of hydrated dextrose monohydrate used to prepare parenteral nutrition supplies 3.4 kcal (The caloric contribution of dietary carbohydrate is 4 kcal/gm). Commercially made formulas are available in a concentration ranging from 5% to 70% (Table 55.6). Most central parenteral nutrition (CPN) formulations use dextrose in concentrations ranging from 50–70%, which is then diluted to 15–30% when mixed with other macronutrients. Usually, 50–70% of the total energy requirement is provided in the form of dextrose. Dextrose requirements are about 4–5 mg/kg/min in stable patients and less than 4 mg/kg/min in critically ill, trauma, and sepsis patients and should not exceed 5 mg/kg/min [13, 18]. The minimal requirement of carbohydrates for PN is about 2 gm/kg/d of glucose [19].

Start with no more than 150 to 200 gm of dextrose on the first day of PN. In patients with diabetes or patients at risk for refeeding syndrome, start with a lower dose (100 to 150 gm) of dextrose.

2. Functions and advantages

- Low cost: Dextrose is the least expensive macronutrient and hence, most commonly used.
- Supplies calories: Parenteral carbohydrate in the form of dextrose in PN is the primary source of calories. Many tissues, such as erythrocytes, white blood cells, and renal medulla, rely primarily on glucose as an energy source and cannot easily use alternative fuels. Brain tissues, red blood cells, immune cells, and renal medulla preferentially use glucose as fuel [19]. So, it is safer to provide a minimum of 100–150 gm (about 2 gm/kg body weight) of dextrose per day to meet these demands [18].

Table 55.6 Characteristics of dextrose solutions

Solution concentration	5%	10%	20%	25%	50%	70%
Dextrose content (gm/L)	50	100	200	250	500	700
Supply of calories (kcal/L)	170	340	680	850	1,700	2,380
Osmolarity (mOsm/L)	253	505	1,010	1,330	2,525	3,535

- Nitrogen-sparing effect: Adequate carbohydrate supplementation has an important nitrogen-sparing effect, especially in patients with metabolic stress. When calories are provided as glucose, it stimulates insulin secretion, reduces muscle protein breakdown, and reduces the release of glucose from the liver. Thus, dextrose prevents protein catabolism by inhibiting the release of amino acid precursors from skeletal muscle for gluconeogenesis. In addition, glucose oxidation is also stimulated, thus sparing the oxidation of amino acids.

3. Disadvantages

- Low-calorie supply: Dextrose is a poor source of calories (3.4 kcal/gm of dextrose vs. 9.0 kcal/gm of fat). So to meet the total calorie requirements, the patient either needs a larger fluid volume (if we use diluted dextrose solution) or a highly concentrated dextrose solution (which can cause thrombophlebitis).
- Hyperglycemia: The development of hyperglycemia is the most common drawback of dextrose in PN. The risk and severity of hyperglycemia are greater with IV dextrose than with the same amount of oral or enteral administration because IV dextrose bypasses the entero-insular axis. Hyperglycemia due to a larger amount of dextrose limits the increment in the dose of dextrose in PN.
- Increased CO_2 production (high respiratory quotient): Carbohydrates produce more carbon dioxide compared to lipids, which increases the work of respiratory muscles to eliminate carbon dioxide. Therefore, carbohydrate is not preferred as an only source of calorie in respiratory compromised patients and patients weaning from ventilator support.
- Thrombophlebitis: Concentrated dextrose solution (above 10%) has high osmolarity as compared to plasma osmolarity (280 mOsm/L), so it can cause thrombophlebitis, requiring a central line for administration.

4. Administration of dextrose infusion and monitoring

The infusion rate of dextrose should not exceed the body's glucose oxidative capacity. The maximum rate of dextrose oxidation is approximately 4–5 mg/kg/min (5.8–7.2 gm/kg/day). Providing an excess amount of dextrose increases the risk of complications such as hyperglycemia, fatty liver, respiratory problems due to excess CO_2 production, and increased infectious-related mortality. Therefore, in patients at high risk of developing hyperglycemia (pre-existing diabetes, sepsis, obesity, steroid therapy, etc.), initiate carbohydrate infusion at a low rate (i.e., 1–2 gm/kg body weight/day). Monitor dextrose infusion closely and maintain blood sugar levels between 140–180 mg/dL [20]. Administer regular insulin only if necessary. Insulin therapy is usually initiated in diabetic patients when blood sugar is more than 140 mg/dL and in non-diabetic patients when blood sugar is more than 180 mg/dL [21].

To control hyperglycemia, insulin can be administered using different regimens, but the continuous infusion of insulin and adding insulin to the nutrition bag are common and efficient methods [21–23].

5. Example of calculation of carbohydrate/dextrose requirements

Example: For a 60 kg male with 25 kcal/kg/d energy requirements, how much 50% dextrose solution is needed (considering 60% of daily total energy requirement in the form of carbohydrates) in a day?

Calculation:

- Total caloric requirements will be 60×25=1500 kcal/day, and carbohydrate requirement will be 900 (60% of 1500) kcal/day as dextrose.
- Divide caloric requirements from carbohydrates by 3.4 (there is 3.4 kcal/gm of dextrose) to determine the gm of dextrose required. 900 divided by 3.4 = 264.7 gm of dextrose/day.
- D50% has 50 gm of dextrose per 100 ml. So to provide 264.7 gm of dextrose/day required volume of D50 will be about 529 ml/day (22 ml per hour).

D. Protein

Protein supplementation is an essential component of parenteral nutrition. The primary source of protein supplementation in parenteral nutrition is free amino acids. Amino acids given in PN are not provided as an energy substrate. But the rationale for its supplementation is that they are essential for synthesizing protein, replacing nitrogen losses, and preventing further skeletal muscle breakdown.

1. Calorie value and preparations

When an amino acid is oxidized for energy, it provides 4 calories per gm. 6.25 gm of protein contains 1 gm of nitrogen. The standard amino acid solution contains approximately 40–50% essential amino acids (N=9) and the rest 50–60% nonessential amino acids (N=10) plus semi-essential (N=4) amino acids. Crystalline amino acid solutions used in PN are of high biological quality. Standard commercially made crystalline amino acid formulations are available in 3 to 15% concentrations. 10% solution of amino acids contains 100 gm of protein per liter.

2. Requirements

Approximately 15 to 20% of total energy requirements should come from protein. Protein and energy requirements are closely related. To minimize protein catabolism, a sufficient amount of non-protein calories, such as carbohydrates and fats, must be administered simultaneously. A calorie to nitrogen ratio of 100–150:1 will be satisfactory for normal patients. The protein requirement for an average stable adult is about 0.8–1.5 gm/kg/day. When patients receive protein without adequate calories, the requirement for protein increases because, in addition to its use for protein synthesis, the protein supplied is also utilized for energy production. Amino acid administration is essential to prevent protein-energy malnutrition (PEM). PEM may lead to immunosuppression and infection in critically ill patients.

Protein requirement is higher (1.5–2.5 gm/kg/day) in massive burns, severe trauma, hypoproteinemia, protein-losing enteropathy or nephropathy, or in patients receiving dialysis treatment. In critically ill patients with sepsis, a large amount of nitrogen loss results from abnormal metabolism. General guidelines for protein requirement in hospitalized patients are summarized in Table 55.7 [13].

Table 55.7 Recommended daily protein intake

Clinical condition	**Protein requirements** (gm/kg ideal body wt/day)
Stable	0.8–1.5
Critically ill, trauma, sepsis	1.2–2.5
Acute kidney injury (undialysed)	0.8–2.0
Renal replacement therapy	Additional 0.2 gm/kg/d, up to 2.5 gm/kg/d
Burns	1.5–2.0
Hepatic failure	1.2–2.0
Traumatic brain injury	1.5–2.5

For critically ill patients, optimal protein intake is approximately 1.5 gm/kg/day. This amount of protein intake can decrease the degree of nitrogen loss in catabolic patients, mostly by enhancing visceral protein synthesis and, to a lesser extent, by diminishing peripheral protein catabolism. Delivering an additional amount of protein does not further reverse this trend and does not yield a positive nitrogen balance. On the contrary, if excess protein (>1.7 gm/kg/day) is provided, it results in excess ureagenesis rather than contributing to protein anabolism.

3. Functions and advantages

- Protein synthesis: The main function of protein is the growth and maintenance of cells and tissues in a steady stage.
- Reduces the rate of protein catabolism: In critically ill patients, protein catabolism exceeds protein synthesis and leads to net protein loss. Administration of an adequate amount of protein along with calories decreases body protein loss but does not prevent the loss completely.
- Calorie supplementation: 1 gm of protein provides 4 kcal energy. Patients receiving inadequate calories from carbohydrates and lipids will utilize protein for energy production. Thus, excess protein is needed for nitrogen balance when energy intake is low.

4. Contraindications and adverse effects

- Hepatic insufficiency: In patients with hepatic insufficiency, infusion of standard amino acids may cause metabolic alkalosis, increased levels of ammonia, stupor, or coma.
- Renal failure: A patient with impaired renal function may develop a marked rise in BUN.
- Metabolic or respiratory alkalosis may be exacerbated by the excess acetate ions present in amino acid solutions.
- Rapid administration may cause nausea, vomiting, headache, chills, or fever.
- Administration of excess protein or insufficient calorie supplementation results in the production of an increased amount of urea. Renal loss of excess nitrogen leads to water loss and may cause hypertonic dehydration (especially in young children) unless extra water is provided.

5. Monitoring

In stable patients receiving an amino acid infusion, the adequacy of protein support can be assessed by analyzing nitrogen balance.

Nitrogen Balance =
Nitrogen Intake - Nitrogen Loss

Nitrogen Intake =
Protein Intake [gm] / 6.25

Nitrogen Loss = 24-Hour UUN + 4

Where 24-hour UUN represents the gm of nitrogen excreted in the urine over 24 hours, and the addition of + 4 accounts for 4 gm of nitrogen lost each day as insensible losses via the skin and gastrointestinal tract.

Positive nitrogen balance suggests anabolism or nitrogen retention. Nitrogen loss greater than nitrogen intake (negative nitrogen balance) suggests net nitrogen loss. If the blood urea nitrogen (BUN) level exceeds 100 mg/dL or a patient with hepatic encephalopathy shows clinical worsening with a rising ammonia level while infusing amino acids, the dose of standard amino acids needs to be reduced or discontinued [24].

6. Example of calculation of protein/amino acid solution requirements

Example: For a 60 kg male with 1.0 gm per kg per day protein requirements, considering basic requirements and adding stress factors, how much amino acid solution is needed for PN in a day?

- Total daily protein requirements will be 60 kg × 1.0 gm/kg = 60 gm per day.
- 100 ml solution of 5% and 10% of amino acid preparation provides 5 gm and 10 gm of amino acid, respectively. So, to provide 60 gm of amino acid/day required volume of 5% and 10% of amino acid preparations will be 1200 and 600 ml/day, respectively.

E. Lipids

Lipid injectable emulsions (ILEs, formerly known as Intravenous Fat Emulsion) are an essential component of PN formulations that have two main functions: to provide an energy-dense source of calories that help in reducing the dextrose load needed to meet energy goals and supply essential fatty acids (EFAs) such as linoleic and linolenic acids which prevent or correct essential fatty acid deficiency.

1. Contents of lipid emulsion

Different lipid emulsions contain varying amounts and proportions of omega-3, omega-6, and omega-9 fatty acids. Lipid emulsions containing soybean oil are the mainstay and the first-generation lipids for parenteral nutrition and have been used extensively with fair success for decades [25, 26]. This formulation for PN also contains three other components: egg yolk phospholipids as an emulsifying agent to mix two immiscible liquid phases, fine droplets of oil suspended in water; glycerin to make the formulation isotonicity with plasma; and sodium hydroxide, which adjusts the final pH around 8.0 [27, 28].

First-generation soybean oil containing lipid emulsions are composed mainly of omega-6 FA-rich linoleic acid with low content (about 10%) of omega-3 FA containing α-linolenic acid (ALA), and therefore has a high (7:1) omega-6/omega-3 FAs ratio. The high content of omega-6 FA in soybean-based lipid emulsions has pro-inflammatory and immunosuppressive harmful effects and therefore is associated with adverse outcomes in critically ill patients [25, 29, 30].

Alternative lipid emulsions, such as generation 2 (combining soybean oil with medium-chain triglycerides), generation 3 (using olive oil), and generation 4 (using fish oil) lipid emulsions, have been developed to decrease the harmful effects of the omega-6-rich linoleic acid content and to lower the ratio of omega-6 to omega-3 fatty acids as summarized in Table 55.8 [26, 31–33].

2. Caloric values, preparations, and requirements

Lipid is the richest source of calories; 1 gm of lipid provides 9 kcal (vs. dextrose provides 3.4 kcal/gm and protein provides 4.0 kcal/gm). The lipid emulsions are available as 10% (1.1 kcal/ml), 20% (2.0 kcal/ml), and 30% (3.0 kcal/ml) solution and have low osmolarity (260 mOsm/L). The use of 30% lipid emulsion is approved for preparing a total nutrient admixture or "3 in 1" delivery system in a pharmacy admixture program. Still, it is not recommended for direct intravenous administration.

In PN, lipids should be infused to provide about 25–40% of non-protein calories [34]. ILE requirements are 1 gm/kg/d in stable patients and less than 1 gm/kg/d in critically ill, trauma, and sepsis patients (ASPEN 2019) [13]. Lipid emulsions should be started usually

Table 55.8 Classification, composition, and benefits of lipid injectable emulsions

Generation of ILEs	Composition of ILEs	The ratio of ω-6:ω-3 FAs	Rationale and benefits	Selected ILEs products
First	100% soy oil	7:1	Used to supply EFA and energy	Intralipid, nutrilipid
Second	50% soy oil, 50% MCT	7:1	MCT is added to reduce the soy content and the amount of ω-6 FA	Lipofundin MCT/LCT
Third	20% soy oil, 80% olive oil	9:1/NA	Reduce the soy content. Less prone to inflammatory processes and immune suppression	ClinOleic/ clinolipid
Fourth	30% soy oil, 30% MCT, 25% olive oil, 15% fish oil	2.5:1	Reduce the soy content, ω-6 to ω-3 FA ratio, infectious complications, and hospital stay. Preferred in critically ill and surgical patients	SMOFlipid

EFA: Essential fatty acid; FA: Fatty acid; ω-3, Omega 3; ω-6, Omega 6; ILE: Lipid injectable emulsion; LCT: Long chain triglycerides; MCT: Medium-chain triglyceride; MUFA: Monounsaturated fatty acid; Soy: Soybean

at a dose of 0.7 gm/kg/day, the upper recommended dose is 1 gm/kg/day, and it should not exceed 1.5 gm/kg/day (ESPEN 2019) [18]. In obese patients, underfeeding help in the mobilization of the endogenous fat store and, as a result, improves insulin sensitivity and glycemic control [35].

3. Functions and advantages

- Dense calorie supplementation: IV lipid emulsion is a concentrated calorie source (9 kcal/gm), so it is the other major calorie-rich fuel that provides energy effectively. Providing more energy in a given volume (compared to IV dextrose fluids) is an essential advantage of lipid emulsion in critically ill, volume overloaded patients.
- Avoids hyperglycemia: Lipid emulsion provides a portion of the total calorie requirement, thereby allowing a lower rate of dextrose infusion and reducing the potential adverse effects of infusing excess glucose for calories.
- Protein sparing effect: IV lipid emulsion is more effective than IV dextrose in providing energy. In PN, adequate supplementation of calories by curtailing protein oxidation prevents protein catabolism and exerts a protein-sparing effect.
- Less CO_2 production (lower respiratory quotient): Compared to carbohydrates, lipids produce less CO_2 and, therefore, are preferred in respiratory compromised patients. Lipids' respiratory quotient (RQ) is the least (RQ of lipids 0.7 vs. 0.8 for proteins and 1.0 for carbohydrates). The respiratory quotient is the ratio of CO_2 production to O_2 consumption.
- So, IV lipid emulsion has the advantages of better glucose tolerance, less hyperinsulinemia, less fatty infiltration of the liver, and less production of CO_2. Because of these benefits, lipid emulsion is widely utilized in patients with hyperglycemia, diabetes, liver disease, and respiratory failure.
- Prevention of essential fatty acid deficiency: Lipid emulsion assists in wound healing, the production of red blood cells (RBC), and prostaglandin synthesis. PN administration without

Table 55.9 Advantages of lipid emulsion in PN solutions
• Large amount of calories in a small volume. • Improve glucose tolerance and reduce insulin levels. • Reduces the risk of refeeding syndrome. • Lower osmolarity. Reduces the risk of thrombophlebitis. Safe for PPN. • Supply of essential fatty acid. • Less CO_2 production than glucose oxidation, which is beneficial in respiratory compromised patients weaning from ventilator support.

lipid supplementation for more than 2 weeks should be avoided because it can lead to essential fatty acid deficiency, causing dry, scaly skin rash, hair loss, thrombocytopenia, anemia, poor wound healing, and increased susceptibility to infection. To prevent essential fatty acid deficiency, supplement about 2% to 4% of total caloric intake as linoleic acid and 0.25% to 0.5% as alpha-linolenic acid beyond 2 weeks of administering PN.

- Reduced risk of thrombophlebitis due to lower osmolality: Hypertonic solutions are irritant to veins, thus increasing the risk of thrombophlebitis. Unlike the hypertonic dextrose solutions, the osmolarity of lipid emulsion is low (260 mOsm/L), almost the same as that of plasma. So the addition of lipid emulsion reduces the osmolarity and, therefore, reduces the risk of thrombophlebitis due to PN. Besides, lipid emulsion exerts a protective effect on vascular endothelium. For the same reason, lipid emulsion is an important component of solutions for peripheral parenteral nutrition (PPN).

The advantages of including lipid emulsion in PN are summarized in Table 55.9.

4. Adverse effects and disadvantages

The adverse effects of lipid administration are:

- Increased triglyceride levels: Infusion of lipid emulsion causes an increase in plasma triglycerides, cholesterol, phospholipids, and concentration of lipoproteins. When lipid emulsion is infused rapidly and/or in high doses, the rate of infusion of triglyceride exceeds the rate of hydrolysis of triglyceride by endothelial enzyme lipoprotein lipase and, therefore, can cause hypertriglyceridemia [36].
- Sepsis: Lipid emulsion carries a risk of infection when administered separately over a prolonged time.
- Fat embolism: Lipid is less stable when infused with amino acids and glucose as a combined “three-in-one solution”. Destabilized particles of fat coalesce into larger droplets and subsequently form fat emboli. For the same reason, a three-in-one solution has a shorter storage life, and improperly mixed or delayed in the use of solution carries the risk of fat embolism.
- Less frequent complications: Immediate or early adverse reactions include dyspnea, cyanosis, nausea or vomiting, headache, allergic reactions, chest and back pain, or thrombocytopenia. Delayed complications with prolonged administration include hepatic dysfunction, fat overload syndrome, pancreatitis, and delayed gastric emptying.

Most adverse effects are instead due to hypertriglyceridemia than due to lipids per se. Hypertriglyceridemia occurs due to the infusion of lipids at a rate faster than lipid clearance. Thus, if lipids are infused at proper infusion rates and serum triglycerides are monitored regularly, most adverse effects of lipids are avoided.

5. Indications

Lipid administration is indicated in all patients needing a home or prolonged PN. Lipid administration is also indicated in patients who need PPN, high caloric supplementation but fail to tolerate carbohydrates, critically ill patients, and patients with hyperglycemia, diabetes mellitus, and respiratory failure.

6. Contraindications

Avoid lipid emulsion in patients with severe hypertriglyceridemia (reduce dose if serum triglycerides >400 mg/dL and do not use if serum triglycerides >1000 mg/dL), in patients who are at risk of developing fat embolism, hypersensitivity to lipid emulsion, severe metabolic acidosis, in patients with acute shock, anemia, severe coagulopathy, and evidence of intravascular coagulation [34]. In addition, lipid emulsions should be used cautiously in obese patients because of the greater risk of hyperglycemia and hypertriglyceridemia.

7. Administration and monitoring

IV lipid emulsion used to prevent essential fatty acid deficiency is given 3 to 4 days a week; while used as a calorie source, it is provided daily. The lipid can be administered IV either separately by piggyback infusion with the 2-in-1 system (containing dextrose and amino acids) or as 3 in 1 admixture (all-in-one infusion) of dextrose, protein, and lipids in a single bag. Lipid emulsions may also provide rich media for the growth of bacteria and fungi. Therefore, scrupulous handwashing before handling lipids is mandatory to reduce the risk of touch contamination. As exposure of the lipids to light causes the formation of potentially toxic peroxides, avoid it by wrapping it in aluminum foil or carbon paper.

Since most complications are associated with rapid IV lipid infusion (greater than 1.0 kcal/kg/hr or 0.11 gm/kg/hr), the rate should not exceed 0.7 kcal/kg/hr. Usually, lipid emulsions should be administered slowly over 12 hours. However, avoid a prolonged infusion of lipids and discard bottles and tubing hung alone after 12 hours. PN solution bag may hang for a maximum of 24 hours and discard any remaining solution and tubing after 24 hours [37].

In patients with lipid infusion, triglyceride levels should be monitored at least weekly. Lipid infusion should be reduced or discontinued if the triglyceride level exceeds 400 mg/dL to decrease the risk of pancreatitis or decreased diffusion capacity in patients with severe chronic obstructive lung disease.

8. Selection of lipid emulsions (ILE)

The most commonly used soybean based first-generation lipid emulsions are usually recommended for short-term use (<2 weeks) in stable critical patients with normal LFTs [33].

Newer lipid emulsions for PN are developed which has a lower content of harmful omega-6 FA and contains omega-3 FA in a higher amount [31]. In contrast to omega-6 FA, omega-3 FA-enriched newer lipid emulsions (i.e., fish oil containing ILE) has beneficial anti-inflammatory and immunomodulatory effects, which reduces the risk of infection and sepsis and shorten ICU and hospital stay and therefore preferred in high-risk patients requiring PN such as sepsis, critically ill and surgical patients [33, 38–40]. Lipid emulsion preparation containing a mixture of soybean oil, medium-chain triglycerides (MCTs), olive oil and fish oils, such as SMOF lipid is available commercially [41].

9. Example of calculation of lipids/ lipid emulsion requirements

Example: For a 60 kg male with 25 kcal/kg/d energy requirements, how much lipid emulsion is needed (considering 30% of total energy requirement in the form of lipid) in a day?

- Total caloric requirements will be 60 × 25 = 1500 kcal/day, and lipid requirement will be 450 (30% of 1500) kcal/day.
- 10% and 20% of lipid emulsions provide 1.1 kcal/cc and 2.0 kcal/cc, respectively. So, to provide 600 kcal/day required volume of 10% and 20% of lipid emulsion will be about 409 ml (450 ÷ 1.1) and 225 ml (450 ÷ 2.0) respectively.

F. Diseases-specific amino acids

Modified specialized solutions with adjusted amino acid contents are available for the specific disease state.

1. For hepatic encephalopathy

Specific "hepatic formula" for parenteral nutrition is a modified amino acid solution rich in branched-chain amino acids (BCAAs) (valine, leucine, and isoleucine) and has a low content of aromatic amino acids (AAA) (phenylalanine, tryptophan, and tyrosine), and sulfur-containing amino acids like methionine [42].

Potential mechanisms by which branched-chain amino acids benefits are:

- Compared with non-branched chain amino acids (Non-BCAAs), which are metabolized by the liver, BCAAs are uniquely oxidized chiefly in skeletal muscle and adipose tissues (and not in the liver). BCAAs enhances detoxification and removal of ammonia in skeletal muscles, reduces plasma ammonia concentration, and may reduce hepatic encephalopathy [43].
- In hepatic insufficiency due to liver cirrhosis, high aromatic amino acids (AAA) and low BCAAs/AAA ratio play an important role in developing hepatic encephalopathy [44]. BCAAs and aromatic amino acids are transported into the brain via the same carrier [45]. So, BCAAs compete with aromatic amino acids, potentially decreasing the passage of aromatic amino acids across the blood-brain barrier, reducing the release of neurotransmitters, notably serotonin, and thereby having beneficial effects on brain function [46, 47].

A high concentration of BCAAs (35–45%) in "hepatic formula" corrects the amino acid imbalance and is recommended in selected patients of liver cirrhosis with hepatic encephalopathy grades III–IV refractory to standard management [42].

BCAAs-enriched formulations show highly significant improvement in mental recovery [48, 49], but no evidence suggests improvement in the patient's outcome [4, 49].

Because of increased cost and controversial efficiency, BCAAs should not be used as the first-line treatment for hepatic encephalopathy [4].

In patients with liver diseases, use standard amino acid (and reduce the cost of therapy) in the absence of encephalopathy, grades I or II hepatic encephalopathies, once the encephalopathy resolves, and for preoperative nutrition after liver transplantation [50].

2. For acute kidney injury (AKI)

Supplementation of protein leads to accumulation of end products such as urea with worsening of uremia. Therefore, protein restriction was previously practiced to reduce uremic symptoms and avoid or delay initiating dialysis therapy. But as per current recommendations, protein restriction should be avoided in patients with renal insufficiency [4, 51].

Recommended doses of protein in non-dialysis AKI patients are 0.8−1.0 gm/kg/day in non-catabolic AKI [51], and in AKI patients on renal replacement therapy (RRT) are 1.0–1.5 gm/kg/d as per KDIGO guidelines (2012) [51], or additional protein 0.2 gm/kg/day, up to 2.5 gm/kg/day as per ASPEN guidelines (2016) [4].

The role of specially designed amino acid-containing solutions ("nephro-solutions") is controversial but may benefit patients who do not require dialysis [52].

G. Immunomodulators

Immunonutrients are specific nutrients that have the potential to modify inflammatory or immune responses with beneficial effects on mucosal barrier function, cellular defense, and local or systemic inflammation [53]. The use of immune-modulating nutrients such as glutamine, arginine, and omega-3 fatty acids are common. However, a recent Cochrane Database Systematic Review (2019) found the effect of these immunonutrition supplements on the duration of ventilator days, ICU length of stay, or oxygenation in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome to be uncertain [54].

1. Glutamine

Glutamine is the body's most abundant amino acid, which is primarily synthesized by skeletal muscles. glutamine is the primary energy source for rapidly dividing cells such as intestinal epithelial cells, vascular epithelial cells, and proliferating immune cells. Glutamine is vital for maintaining the gut barrier function and is considered a "fuel for the immune system," which exerts antioxidant and cytoprotective effects, helps defend the body against pathogens, and decreases infectious complications [55].

Studies in septic and critically ill patients have shown that administering glutamine does not improve outcomes such as mortality, organ failure, infectious complications, or length of stay [56–58]. Some studies have even shown harmful effects [58–60], leading to the recommendation against administering glutamine in septic critically ill patients [61]. In recent guidelines, parenteral glutamine is not recommended in critically ill, unstable, and complex ICU patients and with multiorgan failure, especially with liver and renal failure (Canadian guidelines 2015, ASPEN guidelines 2016, ESPEN guideline 2019) [4, 18, 62].

As clinical benefits of parenteral glutamine are documented in various studies [63–67], IV glutamine may be used in selected patients on PN who are stable, together with adequate parenteral energy and protein after excluding hemodynamic instability, hepatic or renal failure [68].

Parenteral glutamine supplementation is preferred over enteral for patients in the intensive care unit [69]. When IV glutamine supplementation is indicated in PN, the recommended dose of glutamine is 0.2–0.4 gm/kg/day (0.3–0.6 gm/kg/day of alanyl-glutamine dipeptide) [70].

2. Omega 3 fatty acids

Omega-3 fatty acids have anti-inflammatory and immunomodulatory effects and have been shown to improve clinical outcomes in surgical, trauma, cancer, and critically ill patients, as well as during long-term parenteral nutrition due to their inflammation-resolving effects [29, 30, 71].

Administration of injectable lipid emulsion containing omega-3 fatty acids provides significant benefits such as the reduction in risk of infection, sepsis, and length of stay in both ICU as well as hospital, and therefore is preferred over standard lipid emulsions (without omega-3 fatty acids) in hospitalized adult patients requiring PN [30, 40, 71].

Omega-3 fatty acids are abundant in fish oil. Newly designed **SMOFlipid** solution is a **S**oybean oil (30%), **M**edium-chain triglycerides (30%), **O**live oil (25%), and **F**ish oil (15%) containing **lipid** emulsion, which is used to provide omega-3 fatty acids enriched PN [26]. The higher cost of omega-3 fatty acids enriched lipid emulsions is a concern. But improved clinical outcomes (reduced infectious complications and shorter hospital and ICU stays) offset the overall costs [72, 73].

3. Arginine

Arginine is a nutrient that boosts the immune system and is considered a nonessential amino acid under normal circumstances. However, during times of catabolism, it becomes a conditionally essential nutrient. Arginine plays an essential role in protein synthesis, nitric oxide generation, and immunomodulation, thereby playing a major role in cellular defense and wound healing. In addition, arginine supplementation reduces the rate of infectious complications and the duration of hospitalization postoperatively [74].

Intravenous or enteral arginine supplementation as a standalone treatment is not recommended for critically ill patients or those with severe sepsis [4, 75, 76]. For patients requiring enteral nutrition therapy, an immune-modulating formula containing both arginine and fish oils should be used in the perioperative or postoperative period, including in malnourished patients undergoing major cancer surgery and in severe trauma cases in the SICU [4, 76].

H. Micronutrients

Electrolytes, trace elements, and vitamins come under micronutrients. Requirements of micronutrients for PN in the normal adult are summarized in Table 55.10. The minerals and vitamins required in parenteral nutrition are much lesser than in enteral nutrition because of better bioavailability with direct intravenous infusion. These value needs to be modified considering the clinical situations.

I. Electrolytes

As electrolytes are essential to perform critical metabolic activities, it is a must in all PN formulas. As sodium influences intravascular volume status, it is restricted in patients at risk of volume overload (e.g., cardiac, liver, and renal failure) and given liberally when volume expansion is desired (those with GI losses). Potassium requirement increases in patients with increased renal loss of potassium, in those who receive amphotericin B therapy, and in severely malnourished patients while initiating PN.

After meeting phosphate requirements, sodium and potassium cations are usually added to parenteral nutrition solutions in the form of chloride or acetate salts. The choice of the salt form has an impact on acid-base balance. The liver metabolizes acetate into bicarbonate, which acts as an alkaline buffer. Therefore, acetate is a preferred salt in patients with metabolic acidosis. Loss of a large amount of chloride (such as nasogastric aspiration) can cause metabolic alkalosis. Sodium and potassium are provided in such patients, preferably as chloride salt for PN.

Table 55.10 Recommended daily parenteral requirements of micronutrients

Nutrient	Requirements	Nutrient	Requirements
Electrolytes		**Fat soluble vitamin**	
Sodium	1.0–2.0 mEq/kg	Vitamin A	990 mcg (3300 IU)
Potassium	1.0–2.0 mEq/kg	Vitamin D	5.0 mcg (200 IU)
Magnesium	8.0–20 mEq	Vitamin E	10 mg (10 IU)
Phosphate	20–40 mmol	Vitamin K	150 mcg
Calcium	10–15 mEq	-	-
Trace minerals		**Water soluble vitamins**	
Chromium	≤10 mcg	Thiamine (B1)	6.0 mg
Copper	0.3–0.5 mg	Riboflavin (B2)	3.6 mg
Manganese	55 mcg	Niacin (B3)	40 mg
Selenium	60–100 mcg	Pantothenic acid (B5)	15 mg
Zinc	3.0–5.0 mg	Pyridoxine (B6)	6.0 mg
-	-	Folic acid (B9)	600 mcg
-	-	Cobalamin B12	5.0 mcg
-	-	Ascorbic acid (Vit C)	200 mg
-	-	Biotin	60 mcg

The use of sodium bicarbonate in PN is incompatible as it forms insoluble coprecipitates, mainly with calcium and magnesium. Thus, bicarbonate salts should never be infused through a common intravenous line with PN.

J. Trace elements

Trace elements, in small amounts, are crucial for efficient substrate utilization and other supporting functions and therefore are an essential component of PN. A deficiency of trace elements develops quickly in stressed patients or patients with increased GI losses.

On the other hand, stable patients do not develop evidence of deficiency, even though trace elements are not supplemented for about two months. Commercial preparations are available as injections in various combinations, providing required trace elements.

Most trace element PN formulations contain zinc, copper, chromium, manganese, and selenium but do not have iron and iodine [13]. Selenium supplementation is recommended for patients receiving long-term PN because of the risk of muscle weakness and fatal cardiomyopathy caused by selenium deficiency.

The daily requirement of iodine is 70–150 mcg and 1 mg of elemental iron, but most PN formulations do not contain these trace elements. In most patients receiving PN, iron is not supplemented because of adequate body storage. Note that iron is not generally part of commercially available standard additives and not added to PN solutions because it can cause lipid emulsions to destabilize and therefore is incompatible with lipid-containing PN formulas like “3 in 1” solutions. In addition, iron is not given routinely to patients who are critically ill because free iron may promote bacterial growth and increase susceptibility to infection [77].

The requirements for many trace elements in PN are lower than for oral or enteral nutrition. This is because the gut absorbs only a portion of the supplemented nutrient, sometimes less than 10% (e.g., chromium).

However, it is important to remember that some trace elements' parenteral requirements are higher than actual body requirements. These increased requirements result from increased urinary losses, as they are delivered via systemic rather than portal circulation (and therefore not captured by the liver).

K. Vitamins

Vitamins are essential for normal metabolism and are an important part of PN. Requirements of trace elements for PN are generally lower than in EN, but the reverse is true for vitamins.

Parenteral requirements of vitamins are higher than those required through oral or enteral administration due to the following reasons.

- Vitamins supplemented orally are generally absorbed much more than most trace elements.
- Vitamins get degraded during preparations and storage. For example, vitamin A, riboflavin, and vitamin K are degraded by light, and thiamine is degraded by sulfite ions used as a preservative for amino acid solutions.
- Vitamins are lost partially due to adherence to tubing and delivery bags.

The recommended dose for water-soluble vitamins is four to five times the usual and minimum daily requirements for fat-soluble vitamins. Commercially available aqueous multivitamin preparations will provide normal daily requirements for most vitamins except for vitamin K.

Commercially available aqueous multivitamin preparations will provide normal daily requirements. Vitamin K is beneficial to most patients on PN and is administered as multivitamin preparation or added separately to lipid emulsions, but it may be detrimental to patients receiving oral anticoagulants [78, 79]. It is important to remember that vitamins and trace elements are added to PN shortly before use because of the concern about stability.

REFERENCES

1. Saunders J, Smith T. Malnutrition: causes and consequences. Clin Med (Lond). 2010;10(6):624–627.
2. Griffiths RD. Too much of a good thing: the curse of overfeeding. Crit Care. 2007;11(6):176.
3. Preiser JC, van Zanten AR, Berger MM, et al. Metabolic and nutritional support of critically ill patients: consensus and controversies. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):35.
4. McClave SA, Taylor BE, Martindale RG, et al. Guidelines for the provision and assessment of nutrition support therapy in the adult critically ill patient: Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) and American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (A.S.P.E.N.). JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2016;40(2):159–211.
5. Reignier J, Boisramé-Helms J, Brisard L, et al. Enteral versus parenteral early nutrition in ventilated adults with shock: a randomised, controlled, multicentre, open-label, parallel-group study (NUTRIREA-2). Lancet 2018;391(10116):133–143.
6. Windsor AC, Kanwar S, Li AG, et al. Compared with parenteral nutrition, enteral feeding attenuates the acute phase response and improves disease severity in acute pancreatitis. Gut. 1998;42(3):431–435.
7. Khalid I, Doshi P, DiGiovine B. Early enteral nutrition and outcomes of critically ill patients treated with vasopressors and mechanical ventilation. Am J Crit Care 2010;19:261–268.
8. Merchan C, Altshuler D, Aberle C, et al. Tolerability of enteral nutrition in mechanically ventilated patients with septic shock who require vasopressors. J Intensive Care Med. 2017;32(9):540–546.
9. Simo Es Covello LH, Gava-Brandolis MG, Castro MG, et al. Vasopressors and nutrition therapy: safe dose for the outset of enteral nutrition? Crit Care Res Pract. 2020;2020:1095693.
10. ASPEN Board of Directors and the Clinical Guidelines Task Force. Guidelines for the use of parenteral and enteral nutrition in adult and pediatric patients [erratum in JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2002;26(2):144.
11. Wilkinson RE, Dickerson RN. "New" Indications for Parenteral Nutrition. Hosp Pharm. 2016;51(10):795–797.

12. Worthington P, Balint J, Bechtold M, et.al. When is parenteral nutrition appropriate? JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2017;41(3):324–377.
13. Appropriate Dosing for Parenteral Nutrition: ASPEN Recommendations. American Society Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition 2019. http://www.nutritioncare.org/uploadedFiles/Documents/Guidelines_and_Clinical_Resources/PN%20Dosing%201-Sheet-FINAL.pdf.
14. Gupta RD, Ramachandran R, Venkatesan P, et al. Indirect calorimetry: from bench to bedside. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2017;21(4):594–599.
15. Delsoglio M, Achamrah N, Berger MM, et al. Indirect calorimetry in clinical practice. J Clin Med. 2019;8(9):1387.
16. Achamrah N, Delsoglio M, De Waele E, et al. Indirect calorimetry: the 6 main issues. Clin Nutr 2020.
17. Nowak K. Parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease. Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken). 2020;15(2):59–62.
18. Singer P, Blaser AR, Berger MM, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in the intensive care unit. Clin Nutr. 2019;38(1):48–79.
19. Singer P, Berger MM, Van den Berghe G, et al. ESPEN guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition: intensive care. Clin Nutr 2009;33:246e51.
20. American Diabetes Association. 15. Diabetes care in the hospital: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetesd2020. Diabetes Care 2020;43(Suppl. 1):S193–S202.
21. Gosmanov AR, Umpierrez GE. Management of hyperglycemia during enteral and parenteral nutrition therapy. Curr Diab Rep. 2013;13(1):155–162.
22. Li F, Zhang W, Liu B, et al. Management of glycemic variation in diabetic patients receiving parenteral nutrition by continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) therapy. Sci Rep 2018;8:5888.
23. McCulloch A, Bansiya V, Woodward JM. Addition of insulin to parenteral nutrition for control of hyperglycemia. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2018;42(5):846–854.
24. Cerra FB, Benitez MR, Blackburn GL, et al. Applied nutrition in ICU patients. A consensus statement of the American College of Chest Physicians. Chest. 1997;111(3):769–78.
25. Raman M, Almutairdi A, Mulesa L, et al. Parenteral nutrition and lipids. Nutrients. 2017;9(4):388.
26. Mundi MS, Salonen BR, Bonnes SL, et al. Parenteral nutrition lipid emulsions and potential complications. Practical Gastroenterology 2017;41(8):32–37.
27. Hippalgaonkar K, Majumdar S, Kansara V. Injectable lipid emulsions- advancements, opportunities and challenges. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2010;11(4):1526–1540.
28. Fell GL, Nandivada P, Gura KM, et al. Intravenous lipid emulsions in parenteral nutrition. Adv Nutr. 2015;6(5):600–610.
29. Klek S. Omega-3 fatty acids in modern parenteral nutrition: a review of the current evidence. J Clin Med. 2016;5(3):34.
30. Calder PC, Adolph M, Deutz NE, et al. Lipids in the intensive care unit: recommendations from the ESPEN Expert Group. Clin Nutr. 2018;37(1):1–18.
31. Sadu Singh BK, Narayanan SS, Khor BH, et al. Composition and functionality of lipid emulsions in parenteral nutrition: examining evidence in clinical applications. Front Pharmacol. 2020;11:506.
32. Calder PC, Waitzberg DL, Klek S, et al. Lipids in parenteral nutrition: biological aspects. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2020;44(1):S21–S27.
33. Mirtallo JM, Ayers P, Boullata J, et al. ASPEN lipid injectable emulsion safety recommendations, part 1: background and adult considerations. Nutr Clin Pract. 2020;35(5):769–782.
34. Adolph M, Heller AR, Koch T, et al. Lipid emulsions - Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 6. Ger Med Sci. 2009;7:Doc22.
35. Koretz RL, Lipman TO, Klein S. American Gastroenterological Association. AGA technical review on parenteral nutrition. Gastroenterology. 2001;121(4):970–1001.
36. Anez-Bustillos L, Dao DT, Baker MA, et al. Intravenous fat emulsion formulations for the adult and pediatric patient: understanding the differences. Nutr Clin Pract. 2016;31(5):596–609.
37. Infection Control Manual. UNC Health Care. February 2018. https://spice.unc.edu/wp-content/uploads/2018/05/Intravascular-Catheter-Related-Infections-IC0032.pdf.
38. Mayer K, Klek S, Martindale RG, et al. Lipid use in hospitalized adults requiring parenteral nutrition. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2020;44(Suppl 1):S28–S38.
39. Martindale RG, Berlana D, Boullata JI, et al. Summary of proceedings and expert consensus statements from the international summit “Lipids in Parenteral Nutrition”. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2020;44(Suppl 1):S7–S20.
40. Pradelli L, Mayer K, Klek S, et al. ω-3 Fatty-Acid enriched parenteral nutrition in hospitalized patients: systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2020;44(1):44–57.
41. Goulet O, Antébi H, Wolf C, et al. A new intravenous fat emulsion containing soybean oil, medium-chain triglycerides, olive oil, and fish oil: a single-center, double-blind randomized study on efficacy and safety in pediatric patients receiving home parenteral nutrition. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2010;34(5):485–95.
42. Plauth M, Schuetz T, Working group for developing the guidelines for parenteral nutrition of The German Association for Nutritional Medicine. Hepatology - Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 16. Ger Med Sci. 2009;7:12.
43. Dam G, Aamann L, Vistrup H, et al. The role of Branched Chain Amino Acids in the treatment of hepatic Encephalopathy. J Clin Exp Hepatol. 2018;8(4):448–451.
44. Dejong CH, van de Poll MC, Soeters PB, et al. Aromatic amino acid metabolism during liver failure. J Nutr. 2007;137(6 Suppl 1):1579S–1585S.
45. Holeček M. Branched-chain amino acids in health and disease: metabolism, alterations in blood plasma, and as supplements. Nutr Metab (Lond). 2018;15:33.

46. Fernstrom JD. Branched-chain amino acids and brain function. J Nutr. 2005;135(6 Suppl):1539S–46S.
47. Varshney P, Saini P. Role of Branched Chain Amino Acids supplementation on quality of life in liver cirrhosis patients. Research J. Pharm. and Tech. 2020;13(7):3516–3519.
48. Naylor CD, O'Rourke K, Detsky AS, et al. Parenteral nutrition with branched-chain amino acids in hepatic encephalopathy. A meta-analysis. Gastroenterology 1989;97:1033.
49. Gluud LL, Dam G, Les I, et al. Branched-chain amino acids for people with hepatic encephalopathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;5:CD001939.
50. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines on nutrition in chronic liver disease. J Hepatol. 2019;70(1):172–193.
51. Kellum JA, Lameire N, Aspelin P, et al. KDIGO clinical practice guideline for acute kidney injury. Kidney Int Suppl. 2012;2(1):1–138.
52. Stein J, Boehles HJ, Blumenstein I, et al. Amino acids – Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 4. GMS Ger Med Sci 2009;7:24.
53. Calder PC. Immunonutrition. BMJ. 2003;327(7407):117–118.
54. Dushianthan A, Cusack R, Burgess VA, et al. Immunonutrition for acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2019;1(1):CD012041.
55. Cruzat V, Macedo Rogero M, Keane KN, et al. Glutamine: metabolism and immune function, supplementation and clinical translation. Nutrients. 2018;10(11):1564.
56. Andrews PJ, Avenell A, Noble DW, et al. Randomised trial of glutamine, selenium, or both, to supplement parenteral nutrition for critically ill patients. BMJ 2011;342:d1542.
57. Wernerman J, Kirketeig T, Andersson B, et al. Scandinavian glutamine trial: A pragmatic multi-centre randomised clinical trial of intensive care unit patients. Acta Anaesth. Scand. 2011;55:812–818.
58. Heyland D, Muscedere J, Wischmeyer PE, et al. Canadian Critical Care Trials Group. A randomized trial of glutamine and antioxidants in critically ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(16):1489–97.
59. Heyland DK, Elke G, Cook D, et al. Canadian Critical Care Trials Group. Glutamine and antioxidants in the critically ill patient. JPEN Parenter. Enter. 2015;39(4):401–9.
60. van Zanten AR, Sztark F, Kaisers UX, et al. High-protein enteral nutrition enriched with immune-modulating nutrients vs standard high-protein enteral nutrition and nosocomial infections in the ICU: A randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2014;312(5):514–24.
61. De Waele E, Malbrain MLNG, Spapen H. Nutrition in Sepsis: A Bench-to-Bedside Review. Nutrients. 2020;12(2):395.
62. Canadian clinical practice guidelines for nutrition support in the mechanically ventilated, critically ill adult, 9.4a composition of PN: Glutamine (CCCN) 2015 https://www.criticalcarenutrition.com/docs/CPGs%202015/4.1c%202015.pdf.
63. Novak F, Heyland DK, Avenell A, et al. Glutamine supplementation in serious illness: a systematic review of the evidence. Crit Care Med 2002;30:2022–9.
64. Manzanares W, Dhaliwal R, Jiang X, et al. Antioxidants micronutrients in the critically ill: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care 2012;16:R66.
65. Pradelli L, Iannazzo S, Zaniolo O, et al. Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of supplemental glutamine dipeptide in total parenteral nutrition therapy for critically ill patients: a discrete event simulation model based on Italian data. Int J Technol Assess Health Care. 2012;28(1):22–8.
66. Wischmeyer PE, Dhaliwal R, McCall M, et al. Parenteral glutamine supplementation in critical illness: a systematic review. Crit Care. 2014;18(2):R76.
67. Stehle P, Ellger B, Kojic D, et al. Glutamine dipeptide-supplemented parenteral nutrition improves the clinical outcomes of critically ill patients: a systematic evaluation of randomised controlled trials. Clin Nutr ESPEN 2017;17:75–85.
68. Stehle P, Kuhn KS. Glutamine: an obligatory parenteral nutrition substrate in critical care therapy. BioMed Res Int. 2015:ID545467.
69. Wernerman J. Glutamine supplementation. Ann Intensive Care. 2011;1(1):25.
70. Singer P, Berger MM, Van den Berghe G, et al. ESPEN guidelines on parenteral nutrition: intensive care. Clin Nutr. 2009;28(4):387–400.
71. Mayer K, Klek S, García-de-Lorenzo A, et al. Lipid use in hospitalized adults requiring parenteral nutrition. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2020;44(1):S28–S38.
72. Wu GH, Gao J, Ji CY, et al. Cost and effectiveness of omega-3 fatty acid supplementation in Chinese ICU patients receiving parenteral nutrition. Clinicoecon Outcomes Res. 2015;7:369–375.
73. Pradelli L, Muscaritoli M, Klek S, et al. Pharmacoeconomics of parenteral nutrition with ω-3 fatty acids in hospitalized adults. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2020;44(S1):S68–S73.
74. Casaer MP, Van den Berghe G. Nutrition in the acute phase of critical illness. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(13):1227–36.
75. Canadian Clinical Practice Guidelines for Composition of Enteral Nutrition. 4.1a EN composition: Diets supplemented with arginine and select other nutrients. (CCCN) 2015 https://www.criticalcarenutrition.com/docs/systematic_reviews_2018/4.1a%20%20Arginine_2018.pdf.
76. Weimann A, Braga M, Carli F, et al. P. ESPEN guideline: Clinical nutrition in surgery. Clin Nutr. 2017;36(3):623–650.
77. Lapointe M. Iron supplementation in the intensive care unit: when, how much, and by what route? Crit Care. 2004;8 Suppl 2(Suppl 2):S37–S41.
78. Singh H, Duerksen DR. Vitamin K and nutrition support. Nutr Clin Pract. 2003;18:359–365.
79. Shearer MJ. Vitamin K in Parenteral Nutrition. Gastroenterology2009;137:S105–S118.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

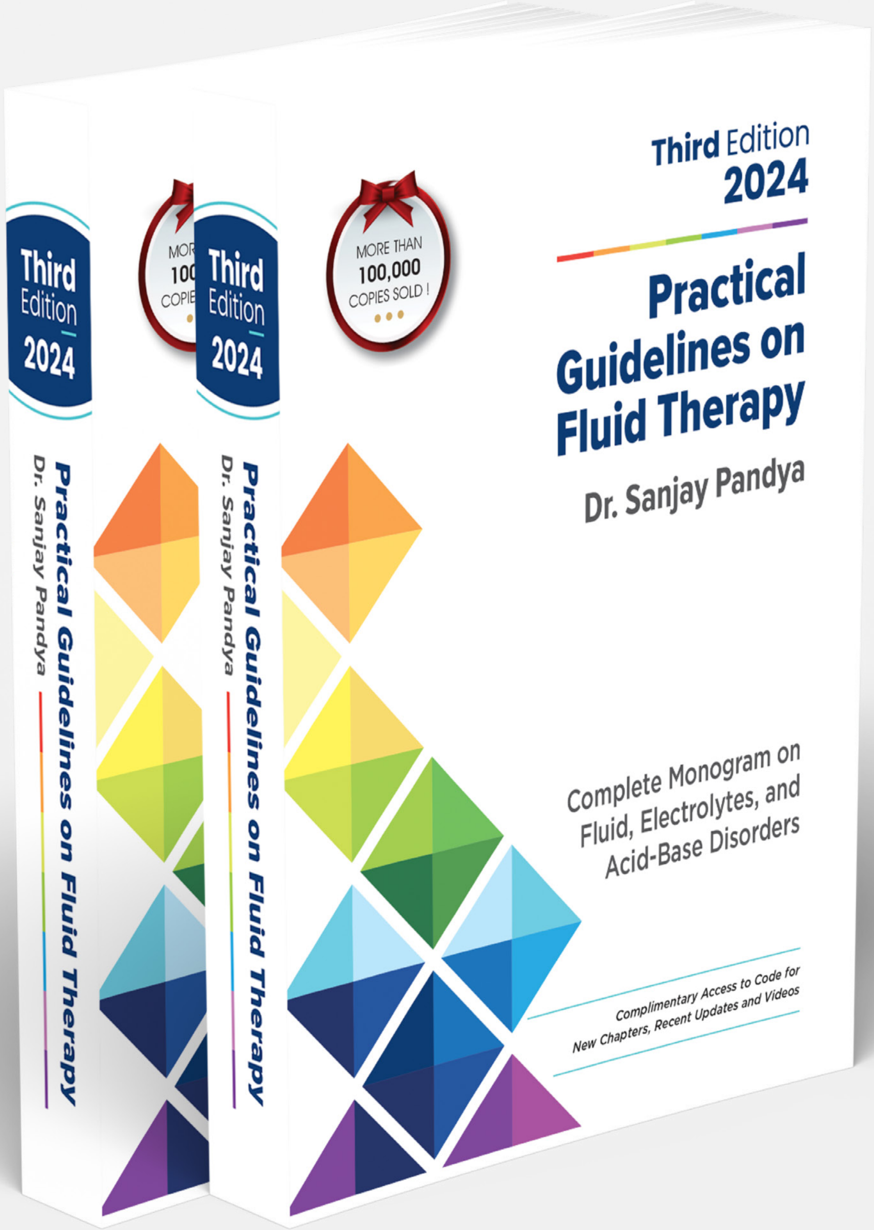
» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

fluid therapy.org

Chapter 56:

Parenteral Nutrition in Specific Diseases


Third Edition
2024
MORE THAN
100,000
COPIES SOLD !
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos

56 Parenteral Nutrition in Specific Diseases

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY 679
- Nutritional considerations 679
- Goal, indications, and timing for initiation of PN 679
- Nutritional requirements and management in:........................... 679
  - AKI treated conservatively....... 679
  - AKI treated with renal replacement therapy................ 680

BURNS 680
- Nutritional considerations 680
- Nutritional requirements and management 681

CANCER 681
- Importance of nutrition.................. 682
- Indications of PN 682
- Nutritional requirements 682

CARDIAC DISEASE......................... 682

CRITICAL ILLNESS 683
- Enteral vs. parenteral nutrition 683
- Indications of PN 684
- Nutritional requirements and management 684

GASTROINTESTINAL FISTULAE 686
- Nutritional support 686

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE . 687
- Indications of PN 687

LIVER DISEASE................................ 688
- Indications of PN 688
- Nutritional requirements and management 688

PANCREATITIS 690
- Nutritional considerations 690
- Enteral vs. parenteral nutrition 691
- Gastric vs. jejunal nutrition 692
- Indications of PN 692
- Nutritional requirements and management 692

PERIOPERATIVE NUTRITION.......... 693
- Preoperative PN 694
- Postoperative PN 694

PULMONARY DISEASES 695
- Nutritional considerations 695
- Nutritional requirements 695

SHORT BOWEL SYNDROME........... 697
- Pathophysiology and presentations................................ 697
- Nutritional management 698
  - First acute stage...................... 698
  - Second adaptive stage............ 698
  - Third maintenance stage......... 699

In specific diseases, individuals have nutritional needs that differ from the usual guidelines, necessitating a personalized nutritional strategy. These conditions require a tailored nutritional approach to meet their distinct requirements. This chapter will discuss the unique nutritional considerations, goals, indications, timing for initiating parenteral nutrition, nutritional requirements, and management of several common disorders.

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY (AKI)

Nutritional considerations

In acute kidney injury, the rapid decline in kidney function not only leads to water, electrolyte, and acid-base disturbances but also affects carbohydrate, protein, and lipid metabolism and significantly affects nutrition. In AKI, excessive protein catabolism and inadequate intake of nutrition lead to protein-energy wasting (PEW) and malnutrition.

Malnutrition is common in hospitalized patients with AKI, is a poor prognostic marker, and is a significant predictor of morbidity and mortality in AKI [1–4]. In addition, patients with AKI given low calories and amino acids are associated with higher hospital mortality [5]. So, do not restrict protein intake in AKI patients to avoid or delay the initiation of dialysis [6, 7].

Goal, indications, and timing for initiation of parenteral nutrition (PN)

The general goals of nutrition support are to prevent malnutrition, maintain nutritional status, and limit the complications of AKI by providing adequate amounts of energy, protein, and nutrients.

AKI patients with mild catabolism can be fed orally. Moderate to severely catabolic patients with AKI need nutritional support, and enteral nutrition is the preferred route in such patients. However, total or supplementary PN has indicated if enteral nutrition is inadequate or cannot be given in patients with significant gastrointestinal (GI) dysfunction [8].

When to initiate PN in patients with AKI is an important question to be answered. Early PN may delay recovery in AKI and prolong the duration of renal replacement therapy due to substantial catabolism of the extra amino acids leading to higher levels of plasma urea and, therefore, should be avoided [9].

Compared with early initiation, late initiation of PN is associated with rapid recovery and lesser complications in critically ill adults [10]. Recent ESPEN guidelines (2019) recommended starting PN within three to seven days and providing half of the predicted or measured energy need in the beginning [11].

Nutritional requirements and management

Nutritional requirements of AKI depend on various factors such as underlying disease, associated comorbidities, the need for renal replacement therapy (RRT), including its type and frequency, and pre-existing nutritional status, as summarized in Table 56.1.

1. AKI treated conservatively (non-dialytic therapy)

- **Energy requirements:** It varies as per the clinical status of patients with AKI.

  Energy required for uncomplicated AKI is in any stage is 20–30 kcal/kg/day, which is similar to that required by a normal adult individual [7, 12].

  Energy requirement increases (about 25 to 35 kcal/kg/day) in critically ill patients with AKI (e.g., severe sepsis, respiratory failure, burns, and multi-organ failure) [13, 14] and during continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT) [15].

  Providing higher calories does not improve patients' outcomes in AKI [16]. In AKI patients, indirect calorimetry is the standard and clinically recommended method to calculate energy requirements which helps to avoid overfeeding.

Table 56.1 Guidelines for nutritional requirements in acute kidney injury

Nutritional requirements	ESPEN 2006	KDIGO 2012	ASPEN 2016
Energy	20–30 kcal/kg/d	20–30 kcal/kg/d	25–30 kcal/kg/d
Protein			
Noncatabolic AKI without dialysis	0.6–0.8 gm/kg, max. 1.0 gm/kg	0.8–1.0 gm/kg	1.2–2 gm/kg
RRT, in hypercatabolism	1.0–1.5 gm/kg	1.0–1.5 gm/kg for RRT, up to 1.7 gm/kg for CRRT	Additional 0.2 gm/kg up to 2.5 gm/kg
Carbohydrates	3–5 gm/kg (max. 7 gm/kg)	-	-
Lipid	0.8–1.2 gm/kg (max. 1.5 gm/kg)	-	-

- **Protein requirements:** Protein requirements in AKI needs due attention as it is variable based on the condition of the individual patient (Table 56.1). Protein requirements recommended for patients of AKI, not on dialysis is 0.8−1.0 gm/kg/day for stable, non-catabolic patients (KDIGO 2012) and 1.2–2 gm/kg for critical ICU patients (ASPEN 2016) [6, 7]. Avoid supplementation of the greater amount of protein in AKI because retention of nitrogenous waste will aggravate uremic complications and can also contribute to acidosis [7].
- **Non-protein caloric supplements:** In AKI receiving PN, carbohydrates, and lipids represent about 65–70% (3 to 5 gm/kg/d) and 30–35% (0.8 to 1.0 gm/kg/d) of the calorie intake of total non-protein energy supply respectively [7, 17].
- **Fluid and electrolytes requirements:** Adjust/restrict fluid intake as per the urine output to avoid volume overload in oliguric patients. Most of oliguric patients also need sodium restriction. Maximally concentrated PN solutions are infused through a central line in oliguric patients. Avoid hyperkalemia, hypermagnesemia, and hyperphosphatemia by restricting potassium, magnesium, and phosphorus in PN.

2. AKI treated with renal replacement therapy

A large amount of amino acids is lost into the effluent fluid during RRT, and its variable depending on the type of modality (i.e., the approximate amount of amino acid lost is about 3−6 gm during conventional hemodialysis, 7−10 gm during sustained low-efficiency dialysis (SLED), and 14−22 gm per session during continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVH) respectively [18]. To compensate for the protein loss, protein replacement KDIGO recommended are 1.0–1.5 gm/kg/d for AKI on intermittent RRT and up to 1.7 gm/kg/d in patients on continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT) [7]. To replace a significant loss of amino acid in CRRT, it is recommended to increase protein intake to a range of 1.5–2.5 gm/kg/day [6, 14, 19].

BURNS

Nutritional considerations

Malnutrition in patients with burns carries a high risk of complications such as infection and delayed wound healing and therefore is very important in managing moderate-to-severe burn injury.

Important causes of malnutrition in burns are:

- Loss of protein and micronutrients as the skin barrier is lost.
- Increased energy expenditure to overcome heat loss through the exposed surface and to maintain body temperature.
- Persistent and prolonged post-burn hypermetabolic state and increased catabolism.

Feeding route: In burn patients, enteral nutrition (EN) is recommended over PN because of the advantages of early EN, such as protection of the gastrointestinal tract, improved nutrient adequacy, reduction in rates of complications, infection, length of hospital stay, cost, morbidity, and mortality [20, 21]. EN is preferred, and PN is not recommended routinely in burns because of adverse effects like overfeeding, impaired immunity, liver failure, and higher mortality [22]. PN is administered in burn patients only when EN is not feasible, not tolerated, or inadequate to meet with desired total nutrient requirements [6].

Nutritional requirements and management

Energy requirements: In patients with burns, nutritional support is provided to meet increased energy requirements due to the hypermetabolic state without causing overfeeding [23]. Indirect calorimetry is the standard and preferred method to determine energy requirements in burns [6]. However, different equations used to determine energy requirements in burns are less reliable because they overestimate or underestimate caloric requirements [24]. When indirect calorimetry is not available or feasible, alternatively Toronto equation is recommended in adults [20].

Protein requirement: Protein requirement is significantly higher in burns because of the need for protein for wound healing, immune function, to replace ongoing losses, and to reduce protein catabolism [23]. ESPEN (2013) and ASPEN (2016) guidelines recommend 1.5 to 2 gm protein/kg/day in adults [6, 20].

Carbohydrate requirement and glycaemic control: Administer carbohydrates to provide up to 60% of total energy intake from nutrition and non-nutritional sources [20]. However, carbohydrate administration carries the risk of hyperglycemia, and poor glucose control adversely affects outcomes in burns [25]. So, while infusing carbohydrates, monitor blood glucose levels closely, and keep glucose levels under 144 mg/dL (and over 81 mg/dL), preferably by continuous intravenous insulin infusion to achieve tight glycemic control.

Lipid requirement: Administer lipids to provide <35% of total energy intake from fat and monitor total fat delivery [20].

As metabolic demands are high in patients with severe burns, administration of PN via central venous access is preferred.

Glutamine and micronutrients requirement: Supplementation of 0.3 gm/kg/day glutamine is beneficial. Patients with major burns have increased micronutrient requirements due to hypermetabolism, wound healing requirements, and cutaneous exudative losses and need an early supplementation with supra-nutritional amounts of zinc, copper, selenium, and vitamin B1, C, D, and E to prevent deficiency-related complications [20].

CANCER

Cancer-related malnutrition (CRM), weight loss, and cachexia occur in 30 to 80 percent of cancer patients, which contribute to excess morbidity and mortality [26, 27].

Malnutrition reduces the benefit of cancer therapy, increases chemotherapy-related toxicity, leads to poor quality of life, and reduces patient survival.

Why malnutrition occurs in cancer patients?

Malignancy per se or treatment of the malignancy (such as chemotherapy, radiotherapy, or surgical treatment) can lead to loss of test, decreased appetite, nausea, vomiting or diarrhea, oral lesions, severe mucositis, and GI complications such as dysphagia, ileus, intestinal obstruction, malabsorption, short bowel syndrome, and fistulae, which can lead to malnutrition [28].

Nutritional support reduces symptoms, improves the quality of life, reduces weight loss, prevents catabolism, and improves outcomes in cancer patients.

Indications of PN [27, 29, 30]

- PN is not recommended routinely in well-nourished cancer patients because of the lack of advantages and associated harmful effects.
- Access to the digestive tract is not possible for a prolonged period due to GI complications such as perforation, intestinal obstruction, high-output entero-cutaneous fistulas, or chylothorax.
- Chemotherapy or radiotherapy-induced GI toxicity limiting oral/enteral intake for more than 1–2 weeks in cancer patients.
- As anticancer therapy is ineffective in rapidly progressive malignant diseases and terminal stages of malignancy, PN is unlikely to benefit such patients.
- In patients receiving hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, PN is recommended if oral/EN is limited due to severe mucositis, ileus, or intractable vomiting.

Nutritional requirements

The total daily energy expenditure is about 20–25 kcal/kg/day for bedridden cancer patients and 25–30 kcal/kg/day for ambulatory cancer patients [27, 29]. Recommended protein intake is >1 gm/kg/day and, preferably up to 1.5 gm/kg/day [27].

The proportion of carbohydrates and lipids is roughly 40–50% or less and up to 50% of non-protein energy requirements, respectively [31]. The requirement of lipids is about 0.5–1.5 gm/kg/day (up to a maximum of 2 gm/kg/d).

Higher fat to carbohydrate ratio to provide non-protein energy is recommended in weight-losing, cachectic cancer patients with insulin resistance because of the advantages of lipids, such as increased energy density and ability to reduce the glycemic load [27].

CARDIAC DISEASE

Patients with chronic heart failure (CHF) carry the risk of malnutrition due to decreased energy intake, increased energy expenditure and impaired anabolism, and high mortality in patients with CHF with cardiac cachexia [32]. Reduced bowel perfusion due to decreased cardiac function can cause edema of the bowel wall leading to malabsorption [32].

In cardiac patients, oral supplementation and enteral nutrition are preferred, and PN is needed in very few patients who cannot take adequate oral or enteral nutrition.

Because of the potential risk of volume overload and hyponatremia, PN should be used cautiously, preferably using concentrated PN solutions. Lipid emulsion can provide greater calories (9 kcal/gm) with a smaller volume.

CRITICAL ILLNESS

Critical illness refers to seriously ill medical or surgical conditions that need intensive care and is associated with a greater risk of infection, longer ICU stays, and higher mortality. Malnutrition is quite common in critical illness (occurs in about 38% to 78% of patients) and increases morbidity, mortality, and hospital-related cost [33]. Malnutrition in critical illness usually occurs due to multiple causes, such as increased energy expenditure, marked catabolism, decreased food intake for a prolonged period due to anorexia, and different medical or surgical gastrointestinal disorders.

In critical illness, adequate nutrition is important because malnutrition is associated with impaired clinical outcome, starvation or underfeeding leads to increased morbidity and mortality, and timely optimum nutrition decrease hospital stay and morbidity [34–36].

Metabolic changes: Depending on the duration of critical illness, it is divided into three stages: acute early phase, acute late phase, and post-acute late phase [11]. Different metabolic changes according to these stages help in planning the appropriate nutritional therapy considering varying needs. In the acute early phase, catabolism-induced increased endogenous generation of energy helps to meet the demand of the body in critically ill patients, and therefore, early use of PN with the provision of standard energy requirements is likely to cause overfeeding [37]. Characteristics of metabolism at the different time frames in critical illness as summarized in Table 56.2 [11].

Enteral nutrition vs. parenteral nutrition

In critically ill patients, EN is preferred and recommended over PN because of its safety and various advantages by all recent international guidelines [6, 11, 38]. In the CALORIES trial, PN is found to be as safe as EN in a critically ill patient when the dose of PN is hypocaloric, which is equivalent to EN dose [39]. So, the advantages of EN may be due to differences in the intake of calories rather than the route; therefore, using PN in an appropriate dose is as safe as EN [40].

When to provide nutrition in critical illness?

The timing of the initiation of PN is important and controversial critically ill patients. No benefit or harm was documented with early nutrition in the recent TARGET Trial (2018) [41, 42]. In the largest nutrition EPaNIC trial (2011), the potential harm with early PN and benefits such as enhanced recovery, fewer complications, and reduced healthcare costs were demonstrated with the late initiation PN [10]. So, in adequately nourished crit-

Table 56.2 Metabolic characteristic of critical illness

Stage	ICU days	Metabolism	Characteristic
Acute phase early period	1–2	Catabolism	Metabolic instability and severe increase in catabolism
Acute phase late period	3–7	Catabolism	Significant muscle wasting and stabilization of the metabolic disturbances
Post-acute late phase	After day 7	Anabolism	Improvement and rehabilitation
		Catabolism	Chronicity with persistent inflammatory/catabolic state and prolonged hospitalization.

ically ill patients with low nutrition risk, if PN is indicated, it should be administered late because of the harmful effects of early PN and the benefits of the late initiation PN. Recent European guidelines recommend initiation of PN between ICU days 3 and 7 (ESPEN 2019), while American guidelines recommend initiation of PN after 7 days (ASPEN/SCCM 2016) [6, 11].

Indications of PN

Adequate nutrition is beneficial during and after the ICU stay in critical illness. Therefore, in critically ill patients, exclusive or supplemental PN is indicated when oral/EN is contraindicated or fails to achieve nutritional targets, which prevents underfeeding associated risks and poor outcomes:

- Critically ill patients who are well-nourished and have a low risk for malnutrition generally do not need exclusive PN in the first seven days of an ICU stay [6, 43].
- In critical patients with high nutrition risk or severe malnutrition, initiate exclusive PN at the earliest following ICU admission if EN is not feasible [6].
- Supplemental PN: If oral/EN fails to meet >60% of energy and protein requirements after seven to ten days, the use of supplemental PN is recommended in patients with a low or high nutritional risk [6]. Supplemental PN is a step-up approach that helps to provide timely and optimal nutrition support during critical illness.

Nutritional requirements and management

How to initiate PN in critical illness?

Current literature is against the traditional practice of aggressive nutrition in the early stages of critical illness [44]. Both European and American guidelines recommend a strategy to provide hypocaloric PN (≤20 kcal/kg/d or 70–80% of estimated energy requirements) with an adequate protein supplementation (≥1.2 gm protein/kg/d) in the first week of hospitalization in the ICU to avoid overfeeding [6, 11]. The strategy to provide hypocaloric PN reduces peripheral insulin resistance and risk of hyperglycemia and improves glycemic control with resultant increases in the safety of PN. After the patient stabilizes, the dose of PN may be increased gradually to achieve 100% of the estimated energy requirements [6].

The nutritional requirements of critical and stable patients are summarized in Table 56.3 [6, 11, 12].

Energy expenditure: Indirect calorimetry is the preferred method to calculate caloric needs [6, 11]. The approximate total energy expenditure in critically ill patients is about 20 to 30 kcal/kg/day [12]. Initial administration of 70–80% of the measured energy expenditure is beneficial, whereas higher or lower energy intakes are both harmful [45–47]. Critical patients with low serum phosphorus levels (less than 0.65 mmol/L or 2 mg/dL) are prone to develop refeeding syndrome. So in such patients, restrict calorie intake to 50% of the calculated energy needs for 2 to 3 days to prevent the refeeding syndrome [48].

Protein requirements: In the acute phase of critical illness, increased catabolism causes loss of protein and muscle wasting [49, 50], and therefore requirements of protein increase considerably with illness severity. Inadequate protein supplementation may be harmful, and supplementation of protein intake may be beneficial and found to reduce the mortality in critically ill patients in recent literature [45, 51–53].

Table 56.3 Nutritional requirements in critical and stable patients

	Critically ill patients	Stable patients
Total calories	20 to 30 kcal/kg/d	20 to 30 kcal/kg/d
Protein	1.3 (1.2–2.0) gm/kg/d	0.8 to 1.5 gm/kg/d
Carbohydrate	Not >5 mg/kg/min	4–5 mg/kg/min
Lipid	Less than 1.5 gm/kg/d (100 gm/wk)	1 gm/kg/d
Fluid	Minimum needed to deliver adequate macronutrients	30 to 40 mL/kg/d

As per current recommendations, a higher amount of protein should be provided to critically ill patients (i.e., up to 1.3 gm/kg/day as per ESPEN guidelines (2019) and 1.2–2.0 gm/kg/day as per ASPEN/SCCM guideline (2016) [6, 11]. Administration of protein in a low dose initially (<0.8 gm/kg/day before day 3) and subsequently gradually increasing its dose (>0.8 gm/kg/d after day 3) is beneficial and reduces mortality [54].

Combining exercise with calorie and protein supplementation is very important because it helps to maintain muscle mass and function, reduces protein catabolism, and improves outcomes [11, 55, 56].

Carbohydrate requirements: Carbohydrate is the preferred source of energy in the early phase of critically ill patients. The minimum amount of carbohydrate requirement recommended in ICU patients by 2003 ESPEN guidelines was 2 gm/kg of glucose per day [34] and 1–2 gm/kg/day by the German Association for Nutritional Medicine [57]. But in current literature, the lower limit is removed due to a lack of evidence, and 2019 ESPEN guidelines recommend that in ICU patients receiving PN, the amount of glucose should not exceed 5 mg/kg/min [11].

Avoid Hyperglycemia in critically ill patients because it is harmful and is associated with an increased risk of complications and higher mortality. In critically ill patients, the recommended target blood glucose ranges from 140 or 150 to 180 mg/dL [6, 58]. The use of insulin infusion is recommended for achieving normoglycaemia because controlling blood sugar decreases mortality in critically ill patients. Insulin infusion is used when blood glucose is >150 mg/dL to maintain it below 180 mg/dL [59].

Lipid emulsions: For critically ill patients who are hemodynamically stable, lipid emulsion is an essential part of PN, as it provides a dense source of non-protein calories and essential fatty acids [11].

Requirements: Administration of intravenous lipid emulsions can be initiated safely at a rate of 0.7 gm/kg/day, and the total dose of lipid should not exceed 1.5 gm lipids/kg/day or a maximum of 100 gm/week and should generally provide about 30% of total calories [6, 11, 60, 61].

Selection of lipid emulsions: Lipid emulsions containing soybean oil are the mainstay and the first-generation lipids for parenteral nutrition. Alternative lipid emulsions, such as Generation 2 (combining soybean oil with medium-chain triglycerides), Generation 3 (using olive oil), and Generation 4 (using fish oil) lipid emulsions, have been developed to decrease the harmful effects of the omega-6-rich linoleic acid content and to lower the ratio of omega-6 to omega-3 fatty acids [62]. Because of the potential risks associated with the use of pure soybean oil emulsions in critically ill patients, 2016 SCCM/ASPEN guidelines recommend against its use during the first week of starting PN [6]. On the contrary, omega-3 fatty acid enriched fish oil containing PN is beneficial and reduces the risk of infection and sepsis, and shortens the length of stay in both ICU and hospital [63].

So current literature recommends the use of fish-oil containing lipid emulsions as part of PN in surgical and high-risk critically ill adult patients (e.g., sepsis, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), persistent inflammation catabolism syndrome [PICS]), although evidence to support its use in non-surgical patients is not sufficient [6, 11, 64, 65]. Because of clinical benefits over the standard lipid emulsions, provide 0.1–0.2 gm/kg/day fish oil containing lipid emulsions [rich in EPA (eicosapentaenoic acid) + DHA (docosahexaenoic acid)] in patients receiving PN [11].

Monitoring: While administering lipid emulsions, measure serum triglyceride concentrations at baseline, monitor it regularly, and adjust the dose of lipid emulsions to maintain triglyceride levels below 400 mg/dL (4.5 mmol/L) [64].

Micronutrients and glutamine

Vitamins and trace elements (micronutrients) are essential components of PN. As commercially available PN formulations do not contain vitamins and trace elements, their separate administration is needed. In addition, a high dose of micronutrients may improve the outcomes of critically ill patients [66].

Parenteral glutamine supplementation is not recommended in critically ill, unstable, and complex ICU patients and patients with multi-organ failure, especially with liver and renal failure in recent guidelines (Canadian guidelines 2015, ASPEN guidelines 2016, ESPEN guideline 2019) [6, 11, 67].

GASTROINTESTINAL FISTULAE

Gastrointestinal (GI) fistulas divert intestinal contents, most commonly to the skin (cutaneous, gastrointestinal fistula). Common causes of GI fistula are crohn's disease, injury to the bowel, bowel surgery, radiation injury, abscess, and foreign body penetration.

High output GI fistulas (loss greater than 500 ml of fluid in 24 hours) might cause massive loss of fluid, electrolytes, proteins, vitamins, and trace minerals resulting in complications like severe dehydration, fluid, electrolytes, acid-base abnormalities, and malnutrition (which occurs in about 55–90% of patients) [68, 69]. In addition to these abnormalities, profound nutrient depletion and sepsis are leading causes of death in patients with high-output GI fistulas [70].

Nutritional support

The provision of optimum nutrition is necessary because it significantly improves clinical outcomes by accelerating the spontaneous healing rate, enhancing the closer of the fistula, and reducing the mortality rate in patients with high-output GI fistulas [71, 72]. Therefore, PN is started in patients with high output fistula after initial fluids and electrolytes resuscitation and control of sepsis.

Indication: PN has a supportive role, and its indications in patients with GI fistula are [71, 73, 74]:

- High-output fistula (e.g., >500 mL/day), presence of distal intestinal obstruction, or length of intestinal before the fistula less than 75 cm because these patients cannot tolerate oral or EN.
- When oral or EN fails to provide adequate nutrition beyond 7 days.

- Supplemental PN is provided when EN alone cannot achieve the nutritional goal to meet their metabolic needs.

PN improves nutritional status by providing adequate nutrition, allows time to correct sepsis and thereby prepare them for reconstructive surgery, and helps to postpone extremely hazardous emergency surgical intervention in severely ill patients with GI fistulas.

Nutritional requirements and management: Patients with high-output fistula requires 25 to 35 kcal/kg per day of total caloric intake and 1.5–2.0 gm/kg/d of protein [75]. As protein loss in the effluent of high output fistula can be as high as 75 gm/day, ASPEN-FELANPE clinical guidelines recommend more protein (up to 2.5 gm/kg/d) supplementation in adult patients with high output fistula [73].

Lipids are usually given roughly 20–30% of calories. The use of lipid emulsion containing omega-3 fatty acid-enriched fish oil in PN is beneficial because it is a calorically dense nutrient and has an immune-enhancing effect that reduces the risk of sepsis and shortens the duration of hospitalization [63].

Vitamins and trace elements deficiency is common in malnourished patients, and its supplementation is recommended. The recommended vitamin C and zinc dose is about ten times the daily allowance, while the dose of other vitamins is two times normal [76].

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE (IBD)

Inflammatory bowel diseases are chronic, relapsing, and debilitating inflammatory disorders of the gastrointestinal tract, and their most common causes are crohn’s disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC).

Malnutrition occurs in about 6% to 16% of patients with IBD [77, 78].

The etiology of malnutrition in IBD is multifactorial, results from decreased food intake, poor digestion, malabsorption, increased losses of nutrients, increased energy requirements, a short length of the intestine due to resection, and drug or surgery-related factors [79, 80].

Adequate correction of malnutrition is essential in patients with IBD because it worsens the prognosis and adversely affects the quality of life by increasing complication rates and mortality [81, 82].

PN does not increase the remission rate or decrease the need for surgery in patients with IBD. Therefore, PN and bowel rest should not be used routinely as primary therapies for IBD. PN is less effective than steroid therapy in the treatment of CD. Correction of dehydration and replacement of various micronutrients are more critical than bowel rest alone.

Indications of PN

- EN is preferred over the PN, and PN is indicated only in selected patients with IBD [81–84].
- If oral or EN is insufficient to deliver nutrition targets (cannot supply >60% of energy needs) in patients with crohn’s disease due to GI tract dysfunction or short bowel.
- If oral or EN is not possible due to severe vomiting or diarrhea and absence of access.
- If oral or EN is contraindicated due to paralytic ileus, an obstructed bowel, intestinal ischemia, or severe shock.
- If the patient develops complications such as an anastomotic leak or a high output intestinal fistula.
- In the perioperative period, provide PN if oral or EN cannot be initiated within 7 days.
- In the postoperative period, provide PN if oral or EN cannot be initiated within 7 days.

LIVER DISEASE

The liver is labeled a "workhorse" because it performs multiple complex tasks such as metabolism, alteration, synthesis, storage of various nutrients, and detoxifying different toxic substances.

Malnutrition is commonly seen in patients with liver disease, and its prevalence is about 20% in compensated cirrhosis and as high as 50%–90% in advanced cirrhosis [85, 86].

Important causes of malnutrition are excessive use of alcohol, decreased food intake, impaired gastric emptying, impaired digestion, malabsorption, altered metabolism, increased resting energy expenditure, insufficient nutrient storage and synthesis, and abnormal nutrient losses [86, 87].

Early detection of malnutrition in liver disease is important because it adversely affects outcomes by causing loss of muscle mass (sarcopenia), increased rate of complications (encephalopathy, variceal bleeding, and infection), a longer stay in the hospital, and higher mortality [88–91]. Early diagnosis and proper treatment of malnutrition, ascites, and hyponatremia can reduce morbidity and mortality in patients with liver disease.

Indications of PN

Selective use of PN is beneficial in patients with hepatic failure as it reduces complication rates, duration of mechanical ventilation, and stay in ICU [92].

Common indications of PN are [92–95]:

- When oral or EN are inadequate or contraindicated, PN is used as second-line treatment according to the current recommendation for non-cirrhotic patients.
- PN is beneficial in patients with poor oral intake for a prolonged period and problems like hepatic encephalopathy, gastrointestinal bleeding, and impaired gut motility or ileus.
- In patients with moderate or severe malnutrition, prompt administration of PN is recommended, as in other critically ill patients.
- To provide early postoperative nutrition after liver transplantation and surgery when oral nutrition or EN is not feasible. Postoperative PN helps to reduce rates of complication, length of mechanical ventilation, and ICU stay.
- Considered PN in the presence of problems like unprotected airways, compromised cough and swallow reflexes, and hepatic encephalopathy.

Nutritional requirements and management

Nutritional requirements in patients with liver diseases vary depending upon the type of liver disease, the severity of illness, malnutrition, and associated complications.

Energy requirements

Energy expenditure usually increases in patients with acute liver failure, alcoholic steatohepatitis, and cirrhosis, but it is normal in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). The basal metabolic rate should be calculated using the actual body weight for patients with cirrhosis of the liver without ascites, but for patients with cirrhosis of the liver with ascites, use the ideal body weight for the calculation [6, 94].

Energy requirements increase in cirrhotic patients with acute complications, refractory ascites, malnutrition, or hepatic encephalopathy, but not for overweight or obese patients (as summarized in Table 56.4) [6, 92, 94, 96, 97].

In cirrhotic patients, carbohydrates should provide 50–60%, and lipids should provide about 40–50% of non-protein energy requirements [93].

Protein requirements

Providing optimum protein supplementation to the cirrhotic patient is the most important and challenging part of nutrition. Protein restriction to prevent the development of hepatic encephalopathy (HE) is one of the most common misconceptions. Restriction of protein should be avoided because it increases protein catabolism, and on the contrary, high protein supplement actually improves mental status and does not precipitate or worsen HE [98–100].

The requirement for protein increases in malnourished and/or sarcopenic cirrhotic patients, patients requiring frequent or large-volume paracentesis, and obese cirrhotic patients for preserving lean body mass, as summarized in Table 56.5 [6, 92, 94].

Vitamins and micronutrients

Vitamins and micronutrient deficiencies are frequently seen in patients with liver diseases, especially those with alcoholic cirrhosis. Such patients require the supplementation of vitamins (both fat and water-soluble) and micronutrients. In addition, increased prothrombin time (PT) is frequently encountered in patients with liver diseases, and vitamin K is routinely supplemented to correct PT; however, evidence regarding its efficacy is limited [101, 102].

Zinc deficit is common in patients with cirrhosis of the liver, and evidence of the benefits of zinc supplementation in hepatic encephalopathy is growing [103–107].

Fluid and salt requirements

Cirrhosis affects the patient's ability to handle salt and water and may cause ascites and dilutional hyponatremia. Ascites is the common complication of cirrhosis of the liver, and in patients with severe anasarca and ascites, salt and water restriction may be necessary. Hyponatremia is prevalent in patients with ascites due to cirrhosis and is associated with higher morbidity and mortality [108].

Salt restriction: Dietary sodium restriction is the first-line therapy in ascites, and recent guidelines recommend intake of about 80–113 mEq sodium or 5–6.5 gm of salt per day [92, 109]. While prescribing a low-salt, unpalatable diet, it is essential to consider the trade-off between reducing caloric intake, which can lead to a risk of malnutrition from decreased food intake, and its moderate advantage in reducing ascites [94, 110]. Therefore, salt restriction is not recommended in patients with cirrhosis in the absence of ascites.

Fluid restriction: Restriction of fluid to 1 to 1.5 L per day should be considered only in patients with clinical hypervolemia with severe hyponatremia (serum sodium <125 mmol/L) [109]. Fluid restriction

Table 56.4 Energy requirements in liver diseases

Requirements	Clinical conditions
25–30 kcal/kg/d	Compensated liver cirrhosis
30–35 kcal/kg/d	Acute liver failure, alcoholic hepatitis, decompensated cirrhosis (in nonobese individuals), cirrhotic with malnutrition, hepatic encephalopathy, preoperatively and postoperative cirrhotic patients
25 kcal/kg/d	Obese cirrhotic patient
35–40 kcal/kg/d	Critically ill cirrhotic patients

Table 56.5 Protein requirements in liver diseases

Requirements	Clinical conditions
1.2 gm/kg/d	Non-malnourished compensated liver cirrhosis
1.5 gm/kg/d	Decompensated cirrhosis (in nonobese individuals), malnourished and/or sarcopenic cirrhotic patients
1.2–1.5 gm/kg/d	Preoperatively and postoperative cirrhotic patients, hepatic encephalopathy
1.5–2 gm/kg/d	High volume recurrent ascites with sarcopenia
2.0–2.5 gm/kg/d	Obese cirrhotic patient
>1.2 gm/kg/d	Critically ill cirrhotic patients

is not recommended in hypovolemic hyponatremia and mild to moderate hyponatremia.

PANCREATITIS

Nutritional considerations

Acute pancreatitis (AP) is severe in about 20% of patients, and severe acute pancreatitis increases the mortality rate by 19–30% [111]. Severe acute pancreatitis is a hypercatabolism state leading to sustained protein catabolism and increased energy requirements with resultant nutritional risk [112]. Timely adequate nutrition plays a key role in the management of severe acute pancreatitis.

The concept of "Pancreatic Rest" is changing: Formerly, in the early stages of severe acute pancreatitis, patients were kept nil by mouth and given PN to provide rest to the pancreas. The previously popular concept of "Pancreatic Rest" was based on the presumption that oral or enteral feeding could stimulate pancreatic enzyme secretion, causing autodigestion of the pancreas and surrounding tissues and worsening pancreatitis.

The rationale for discarding "Pancreatic Rest" and changing to EN in the early phases of severe acute pancreatitis are:

- The lack of oral or enteral nutrition leads to a loss of intestinal mucosal barrier function and increased bacterial translocation, resulting in an increased risk of complications such as pancreatic infection and necrosis [113].
- During acute pancreatitis, the secretion of pancreatic enzymes decreases significantly, with the most severe cases having the lowest secretion. As a result, even if EN is taken, it does not increase secretion because it is already reduced, making EN not harmful in severe acute pancreatitis [114, 115].
- The beneficial effects of oral/EN are improvement in nutritional status, stimulation of intestinal motility, increase in splanchnic blood flow, and maintenance of gut integrity which inhibits bacterial translocation, reduction of pancreatic infection, decrease in local and systemic inflammation risk, and reduced mortality [116–118].
- Use of parenteral nutrition for bowel rest has a potential risk for hyperglycemia, electrolyte imbalances, catheter-related infections, and sepsis, and is more expensive than EN [119, 120].

To conclude, the concept of "Pancreatic Rest" is outdated, detrimental, and should be abandoned [117, 121–123].

Enteral vs. parenteral nutrition

In the early phases of severe acute pancreatitis, EN is safer, more effective, and is preferred compared with parenteral nutrition according to different studies [124–128], current reviews [113, 116–118], and recent guidelines [6, 112, 123, 129–133].

Compared to PN, oral or EN has demonstrated multiple benefits such as decreased infectious complications, risk of complications, mean length of hospital stay, rate of multiple organ failure, and mortality rate in patients of severe acute pancreatitis in several studies [124–128, 134, 135].

Timing of initiation of EN: The early EN (i.e., initiated within 72 hours [112, 132, 136], 48 hours [6, 125, 130, 135, 137–141], or 24 hours [123, 142, 143] had significant benefits over the delayed EN such as decrease complication rate, organ failure, mortality, length of stay in the hospital, and cost-effectiveness.

It is very important to start EN early in moderate to severe acute pancreatitis because the inability to provide EN for >72–96 hours carries the risk of the rapid deterioration of nutrition status and resultant complications such as increased mortality, frequency of infected necrosis, and length of stay in hospital [6, 138].

Route of nutritional support: The most effective route of nutritional support in acute pancreatitis is determined based on the severity of diseases, associated local and systemic complications, and nutritional status at the time of admission.

Oral feeding: Patients with mild acute pancreatitis should consume normal food intake as tolerated, and the use of EN or PN is not recommended [6]. Recent guidelines [AGA (2018), NICE (2018), and ESPEN (2020)] recommend early initiation of oral feeding in patients with mild acute pancreatitis instead of traditional 'nil-by-mouth' or delayed oral feeding (initiation after reduction of serum amylase and lipase levels, resolution of abdominal pain and bowel sounds become normal) [112, 123, 132].

Early oral feeding (within 24 hours) is safe, and well-tolerated, with no differences in adverse events compared to standard oral refeeding or EN, may shorten the length of hospital stay as well as costs, and help in rapid clinical improvement [144–147]. Oral feeding is usually started when abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting decreases, the patient feels hungry and intestinal obstruction or ileus are excluded (it is not necessary to wait until abdominal pain resolves completely or serum lipase concentrations decline) [112, 122, 129, 148, 149]. If the patient is unable to take oral intake within 72 hours, EN should be initiated on day 4 [145].

Enteral nutrition (EN): EN is a cheaper, safer, and the most preferred modality for nutritional support in severe acute pancreatitis, where feeding is provided directly into the stomach via a nasogastric tube (NG) or post-pyloric region by a nasojejunal tube (NJ) [128]. If a patient with acute pancreatitis is unable to eat, providing nutrition by enteral feeding is beneficial and preferred over parenteral nutrition.

It is important to remember that enteral feeding can be administered safely and successfully even in the presence of complications such as pseudocysts, ascites, and/or fistulas [150, 151].

In severe acute pancreatitis with high intraabdominal pressure (IAP) and abdominal compartment syndrome having abdominal distension, paralytic ileus, and high gastric residual volume, EN may be initiated cautiously by using nasojejunal as a preferred route [112, 131]. Monitor the intraabdominal pressure and the clinical condition continuously and closely in such patients. EN is initiated gently at a 10–20 mL/h rate via the nasojejunal route when intraabdominal pressure (IAP) is <15 mmHg, but IAP >15 mmHg may need temporary reduction or discontinuation of EN due to higher rates of feeding intolerance [112, 131, 152].

Because of physiological benefits, at least a small amount of EN may be administered supplementary to PN in patients with severe AP and open abdomen, if feasible [112].

Gastric vs. jejunal nutrition

Nasogastric feeding is a preferred route for EN because it is simpler, cheaper, easier to insert, requires less time to start nutrition, can provide adequate nutrition effectively, is safe in patients with low risk of aspiration, and as compared to the nasojejunal route of feeding carries a similar risk of exacerbation of pain, tolerance to EN, infectious complications, mortality, and length of hospital stay [112, 129, 153–161].

Nasojejunal feeding is preferred for EN in patients with a high risk of aspiration, who cannot tolerate gastric feeding, severe gastroparesis, partial gastric outlet obstruction due to pancreatic edema or pseudocysts, and in patients who have undergone minimally invasive necrosectomy [112, 117, 136, 162].

Mild acute pancreatitis: About 80% of acute pancreatitis patients experience a mild form of the disease that resolves on its own, allowing them to consume solid food without requiring nutritional support, such as EN or PN [6, 112]. In mild acute pancreatitis, starting with a soft low-fat solid diet is safe, effective (as it does not worsen abdominal pain, provides more calories than a clear liquid diet, and results in shorter hospital stays), and well-tolerated [146, 163–167]. Therefore, the traditional practice of initially providing a liquid diet and advancing to a solid oral diet is not recommended in mild acute pancreatitis.

Indications of PN

Routine use of PN is unnecessary, as PN is now known to be more expensive, riskier, and no more effective than EN in patients with acute pancreatitis. PN should not be initiated until all attempts are made with EN for at least 2–3 days. In acute pancreatitis, PN is indicated in selected patients [6, 112, 129, 133, 168, 169]:

- If EN is not possible or contraindications (e.g., prolonged paralytic ileus, duodenal obstruction from pancreatic edema or pseudocyst, complex pancreatic fistulae, hemodynamic instability, and the need for inotrope support).
- Unable to achieve targeted nutritional demand through EN.
- When enteral access cannot be maintained, or the patient cannot tolerate a nasal tube due to nasal irritation.
- If enteral feeding leads to exacerbation of abdominal pain and therefore, patients are unable to tolerate EN.
- In abdominal compartment syndrome with IAP >20 mmHg, patients cannot tolerate EN, and PN is indicated.

When tolerance to EN increases with recovery, the volume of PN should be decreased gradually, and PN should be transitioned to EN as soon as possible.

Nutritional requirements and management

Severe acute pancreatitis is characterized by substantial protein catabolism, so protein requirements are higher than in healthy individuals. Therefore, when PN is administered, a mixed source of energy from carbohydrates, fat, and protein should be preferred, and particular attention should be given to avoiding overfeeding and hyperglycemia. Rough guidelines for nutritional requirements in severe acute pancreatitis are:

- Energy: 25–30 kcal/kg/day
- Protein: 1.2 to 1.5 gm/kg/day
- Carbohydrate: 4–6 gm/kg/day
- Lipid: up to 2 gm/kg/day

Carbohydrate supplementation: Hyperglycemia frequently occurs in patients with acute pancreatitis due to pancreatic endocrine dysfunction. Blood sugar should be monitored closely, and insulin treatment is recommended to treat hyperglycemia with a goal of keeping blood sugar less than 180 mg/dL (10 mmol/L).

Lipid infusion: As hypertriglyceridemia is an important cause of acute pancreatitis; lipids should be infused with proper monitoring of triglyceride levels. In the absence of severe hypertriglyceridemia (>350 mg/dL) or thrombocytopenia, IV lipids appear safe and effective, especially if glucose intolerance is present. The triglyceride level should be checked before initiating PN, monitored regularly, and kept below 400 mg/dL. When the triglyceride level exceeds 400 mg/dL (4.5 mmol/L), lipid infusion should be discontinued temporarily. To prevent hypertriglyceridemia, IV lipids should be administered gradually over a period of 10–12 hours.

Glutamine supplementation: The use of glutamine supplementation is beneficial and recommended in patients with severe acute pancreatitis receiving parenteral nutrition [112]. The advantages of glutamine are limited only to patients receiving parenteral nutrition, so do not supplement glutamine to patients of severe acute pancreatitis receiving enteral nutrition. The recommended dose of L-glutamine is 0.20 gm/kg per day, and glutamine supplementation in PN is found to reduce infectious complications and mortality [170, 171].

PERIOPERATIVE NUTRITION

Malnutrition in hospitalized patients is very common, with about 20% and 40% incidence [172]. Many major surgical diseases (e.g., malignancy, inflammation, gastrointestinal dysfunction, and burns) result in malnutrition, causing catabolic effects leading to inflammatory responses, protein catabolism, and nitrogen losses. Gastrointestinal surgery-related causes of malnutrition are pre-existing chronic disease, anorexia, prolonged ileus, pre and postoperative fasting, malabsorption syndrome, intestinal obstruction, and previous surgical bowel resection [173]. Compared with well-nourished patients, malnutrition in surgical patients is associated with detrimental effects like longer hospital stays, increased hospital costs, and increased postoperative morbidity and mortality (increased susceptibility to infection, poor wound healing, and risk for death after surgery) [174–176].

The decision to use PN in surgical patients depends on the state of health before surgery, the severity of malnutrition, whether the surgery is emergency or elective, the type of surgical procedure, the expected duration for return of normal gastrointestinal function, and how much energy and nutrient requirements patient can tolerate by oral or EN route postoperatively. PN is lifesaving in patients with prolonged gastrointestinal failure. Perioperative nutritional support aims to provide adequate macronutrients and micronutrients to minimize the catabolism and aggravation of malnutrition, promote muscle, immune, and cognitive functions, and decreases infectious and non-infectious postoperative complication rates with resultant fast postoperative recovery [177, 178].

Preoperative parenteral nutrition

Preoperative PN is indicated in severely malnourished patients (weight loss >10–15%, serum albumin <3.0 gm/dL, body mass index (BMI) <18.5 or nutrition risk index (NRI) score <83.5) who cannot achieve adequate nutrition orally or enterally [179, 180]. Preoperative PN aims to provide adequate energy, protein, micronutrients and restore glycogen stores [181].

Preoperative PN for 7–10 days in severely malnourished patients reduces the rate of postoperative complications and improves outcome, provided the operation can be safely postponed [180, 181, 182]. Restoration of the nutritional and metabolic status usually takes about 7 to 14 days, and PN is continued in the postoperative period. In patients with mild to moderate malnutrition, surgery need not be delayed for preoperative PN or EN, and avoid preoperative PN in such patients.

Postoperative parenteral nutrition

Postoperative parenteral nutrition should not be used routinely because of the increased risk of postoperative complications [182, 183].

Indications of postoperative nutritional support

Postoperative PN is indicated in the following conditions [6, 179, 180, 184–186]:

- Previously well-nourished patients are unlikely to resume oral and enteral feeds within 10 days due to postoperative complications impairing gastrointestinal function and preventing normal oral feeding, such as intestinal obstruction. But in well-nourished patients with a delayed return of gut function likely to resume oral intake or EN within 7 days, PN is not indicated.
- Previously malnourished patients in whom oral intake or EN is not feasible or not tolerated within 5–7 days.
- In previously severely malnourished patients undergoing emergency surgery, initiate PN as soon as possible.
- Supplemental PN: Combining EN and PN should be considered for patients who require nutritional support but cannot meet at least 50% of their energy and nutrient needs via oral or enteral intake for more than seven days.

Timing of initiating PN in postoperative patients

The optimal timing of initiation of PN is determined based on the patient's clinical condition and preoperative nutritional status [6, 179, 180, 185].

- Immediate postoperative PN support (started on PO day 1) may be appropriate in patients as a continuation of preoperative nutritional support for severe malnutrition.
- Initiate PN as soon as possible in patients with severe malnutrition if oral intake or EN is unlikely.
- For patients who are nutritionally at risk and oral intake or EN is not possible, initiating PN within 3 to 5 days may be appropriate.
- In the absence of preoperative malnutrition, PN should be delayed for around 5 days after surgery as early PN does not provide any benefit in most non-critically ill patients [39, 187].
- Initiate supplemental PN after 7 days if oral and enteral intake alone cannot

achieve 50% or more of estimated energy and nutrient requirements in well-nourished, stable adult patients.

Common disorders for which postoperative PN is indicated include gastrointestinal anastomotic failure, gastrointestinal fistulas, postoperative mechanical bowel obstruction, diffuse peritonitis, paralytic ileus, severe acute pancreatitis, bowel ischemia, short bowel syndrome, etc.

In patients receiving PN postoperatively, supplement vitamins and trace elements with PN [177].

PULMONARY DISEASES

Nutritional considerations

There is a strong association between malnutrition and lung function. In chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), malnutrition is common (occurs in about 10% to 60% of patients) [188, 189] and is associated with higher morbidity, mortality rate, and healthcare costs [190–193].

The important causes of malnutrition in patients with COPD are decreased food intake, increased energy expenditure, depression, social isolation, aging, inflammation, and the use of medication such as corticosteroids [194].

- Effect of malnutrition on lung function: When calorie intake is inadequate in critically ill patients with pulmonary disorders, protein is catabolized to provide energy. When protein is used as a source of calories, it leads to catabolic muscle wasting. So, malnutrition can lead to reduced muscle strength and impairment of respiratory muscle function, which can decrease ventilatory drive and decreased response to hypoxia due to progressive diaphragmatic weakness with resultant precipitation or aggravation of respiratory failure [193, 195, 196]. Malnutrition-induced muscle weakness also adversely affects weaning from mechanical ventilators [197]. Moreover, malnutrition also alters pulmonary defense mechanisms and increases susceptibility to infection [198].
- Effect of pulmonary diseases on nutritional status: In advanced pulmonary diseases, a combination of, (a) Higher energy requirements due to increased work of breathing and systemic inflammation, and (b) Poor food intake lead to catabolism and resultant malnutrition and weight loss [199]. Underweight patients with the chronic pulmonary disease have a significantly increased risk of all-cause mortality [200].
- Effect of nutritional support on lung function: Nutritional support in COPD patients has shown modest improvement in various parameters such as respiratory (inspiratory and expiratory muscle strength) and non-respiratory (handgrip and quadriceps) muscle strength, respiratory muscle function, exercise tolerance, and quality of life and these benefits are greater in malnourished patients [201–205].

Nutritional requirements

Administration of nutrition by oral or enteral route is preferred. But if the gastrointestinal function is Administration of nutrition by oral or enteral route is preferred. But if the gastrointestinal function is impaired for a prolonged period, and adequate oral or EN is not feasible, PN is indicated. Patients with ARDS, COPD, respiratory failure and patients on mechanical ventilators need special consideration for their nutritional requirements. The nutritional needs of COPD patients vary and are determined by their clinical state (stable or exacerbation) and disease severity (ranging from mild to very severe) [206]:

- In COPD, requirements of Energy and protein are higher in moderately or severely malnourished patients, acutely unwell patients with infection, and patients who exercise to increase muscle mass [193].
- The recommended energy intake for patients with COPD is about 30 kcal/kg/day for weight maintenance [207] and may be as high as 45 kcal/kg/day for patients aiming to achieve weight gain [208]. In malnourished patients, energy requirements may be as high as 1.7 of resting energy expenditure (REE) [209].
- The recommended daily protein requirement varies based on clinical status, as summarized in Table 56.6 [193].
- Avoid overfeeding: Excess supplementation of dextrose and lipids is harmful. Administration of total energy that exceeds energy requirements increases CO_2 production and the work of breathing, which may be detrimental in patients vulnerable to the retention of CO_2.
- Lipids in stable patients: In respiratory disorders, the use of lipids is suggested because it provides more energy with less production of CO_2 and therefore reduces the work of breathing. So in spontaneously ventilated patients with COPD, the use of a higher amount of lipids (up to about 50%) and lesser carbohydrates (about 30%) is preferred [210]. While administering lipid emulsion as a part of PN, selecting lipid preparation containing omega-3 fatty acids-rich fish-oil is beneficial due to its anti-inflammatory action in high-risk, critical patients with ARDS [64, 211].
- Lipids in patients on a ventilator: It is recommended to use a low carbohydrate formula, which contains more lipids and less carbohydrates, for patients on a ventilator as it may shorten the duration of mechanical ventilation [212–214]. However, several studies failed to demonstrate the reduction in the duration of ventilatory support [215, 216], and recent ASPEN-SCCM Clinical Guidelines (2016) recommend against the use of high-fat/low-carbohydrate formulations to manipulate the respiratory quotient and reduce CO_2 production in acute respiratory failure patients in ICU [6].
- As patients with acute respiratory failure are susceptible to fluid accumulation, a concentrated nutritional formula that restricts fluid volume is recommended [6].
- Avoid hypokalemia, hypophosphatemia, hypocalcemia, and hypomagnesemia because they can adversely affect the strength of respiratory muscles. To avoid these abnormalities caused by refeeding syndrome, it is important to gradually initiate PN in severely malnourished patients with respiratory disorders.
- Vitamin D deficiency is common in patients with COPD [217–219]. The low value of vitamin D carries the risk of recurrent pulmonary infections [220], worsening lung function [221], and faster decline in lung function [222].

Vitamin D supplementation substantially reduced the risk of respiratory tract infections [223] as well as the exacerbation rates of COPD [224, 225].

So, GOLD guidelines 2020 recommends screening all COPD patients hospitalized for exacerbations to detect vitamin D deficiency and supplement vitamin D if necessary [206].

Table 56.6 Protein requirement in COPD patients

Requirements	Clinical state
0.8–1.5 gm/kg/d	Stable, non-malnourished COPD patients without nutritional risk
Up to 1.5 gm/kg/d	In acutely unwell (exacerbating) COPD patients, for daily requirements and avoid further protein losses For pulmonary rehabilitation, with exercise to gain or retain lean muscle mass Malnourished outpatients to achieve weight gain

SHORT BOWEL SYNDROME

Short bowel syndrome (SBS), also known as a small gut syndrome, is a relatively uncommon condition characterized by malabsorption which occurs most commonly due to extensive surgical resection of the small intestine.

Because of the short length of the remaining intestine, the area available for absorption reduces with the resultant malabsorption of macronutrients and/or water and electrolytes, causing diarrhea, dehydration, electrolyte imbalances, and malnutrition. These symptoms are severe if: (1) More than 75% of the small bowel is resected, (2) The terminal ileum and ileocaecal valve are removed, or (3) The remaining bowel is diseased with impaired absorption [226]. After massive intestinal resection, an intact colon, if in continuity, is vital in supporting the remaining small intestine in digestion and thereby reduces the dependency on PN [227–229].

The common causes of short bowel syndrome in adults are re-surgery performed for complications, mesenteric infarction, malignancy and radiation, surgical resection for crohn’s disease, intestinal trauma, mesenteric vascular occlusion, and volvulus [230, 231].

Pathophysiology and presentations

- Severe diarrhea, electrolyte disturbances, and malnutrition: Loss of intestinal absorptive surface area, rapid transit time, and/or dysfunction of the remaining bowel reduces intestinal absorption leading to:
  - Large volume diarrhea, hypovolemia, metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, and hypocalcemia.
  - Malnutrition, weight loss, and deficit of water and fat-soluble vitamins.
- Gastric acid hypersecretion: Production of gastric acid secretion inhibitory hormones (normally secreted in the jejunum and distal ileum) reduces after the massive intestinal loss. Due to the loss of inhibitory hormones, gastrin levels increase, stimulating gastric acid secretion [232, 233].
- D-lactic acidosis: Bacterial fermentation of malabsorbed carbohydrates in the colon produces a substantial amount of D-lactic acid, which can lead to high anion gap metabolic acidosis [234].
- Nephrolithiasis: Due to multiple factors, the risk of calcium oxalate nephrolithiasis is high in patients with SBS [235, 236]. Normally oxalate in the diet combines with intraluminal calcium and is excreted in stool as insoluble calcium oxalate. In patients with SBS, large amounts of unabsorbed fat are available, and calcium preferentially binds with the same in the intact colon due to malabsorption. The resultant increased

unbound oxalate is absorbed freely and rapidly by the intact colon leading to hyperoxaluria, which predisposes patients to a higher risk of oxalate stone formation [237]. In patients with SBS, chronic dehydration, hypocitraturia, hypomagnesuria, low urine volume, and low pH increases the risk of developing kidney stones [235, 236]. In addition, in patients with SBS, multiple factors like chronic dehydration, hypocitraturia, hypomagnesuria, low urine volume, and low pH increases the risk of developing kidney stones [235, 238].

Nutritional management

Before the advent of PN, survival in acute SBS was very poor. The selection of nutritional treatment is based upon the severity of SBS and frequently needs home parenteral nutrition in severe cases. The need for nutrition requirement is variable in SBS, and it ranges from temporary support in the postoperative period to long-term supplementation depending on how much of the gastrointestinal tract is left, the site of resection, and the presence of the colon in continuity with the small bowel. Patients with SBS generally need PN when the length of the remaining functional small bowel is <50–70 cm with the presence of a colon in continuity or the length of the small bowel is <100–150 cm when the colon is absent [228, 239]. The metabolic and nutrient therapy of SBS is divided into 3 clinical stages:

1. First acute stage: The initial acute phase following resection usually lasts for three to four weeks and is characterized by large-volume diarrhea causing significant losses of fluid and electrolytes:

- In the initial acute phase of illness, patients need prompt administration of electrolytes containing intravenous fluids in large volumes to replace huge losses and correct fluid and electrolyte disturbances. The selection of IV fluid is based on existing electrolyte and acid-base disturbance, but supplementing balanced crystalloids or half normal saline with potassium is usually adequate.
- In critically ill unstable patients, patients should be kept NPO (nothing by mouth). Oral intake is not adequate in the majority of such patients at this stage and may carry the risk of aspiration and, therefore, can be harmful.
- PN is indicated if EN is not possible within one week in patients with severe SBS. PN is initiated only after correcting fluid and electrolyte disturbances and achieving hemodynamic stability. PN is the primary source of nutrition in the initial phase, but progression to EN is attempted when the bowel begins to adapt.
- Supplemental oral or EN helps to prevent mucosal atrophy and is essential to promote gut adaptation but administer combined feeding cautiously to avoid overfeeding [231]. EN in bolus form may cause diarrhea, so slow continuous overnight tube feeding is recommended in the initial acute phase, and it significantly increases the net absorption of lipids, proteins, and energy [240].

2. Second adaptive stage: Structural adaptation (hyperplasia with the resultant increase in absorptive surface area) and functional adaptation (slowed transit time to allow increased nutrient absorption) of the bowel may last for up to 2 years [231]:

- As enteral feeding is necessary for bowel adaptation in SBS, it should be started as soon as the volume of fecal loss decreases. The PN is reduced gradually, and oral or enteral intake is increased with caution to avoid excessive diarrhea and aim to provide adequate nutrition.

- In patients requiring PN, administration of a minimal 1 gm/kg/week of intravenous lipid emulsion is recommended to prevent essential fatty acid (EFA) deficiency [230].
- Overfeeding and the use of soybean-based lipid emulsions in patients receiving long-term PN increases the risk of intestinal failure-associated liver disease (IFALD) [241]. On the other hand, IV fish oil-containing lipid emulsions reduce the risk of IFALD in these patients [242–244].
- Administration of glutamine in either PN or EN is not recommended in SBS patients [230].
- As patients with SBS are at risk for fat-soluble vitamin deficiency, supplementation of vitamins A, D, E, and K is necessary [226].
- If the terminal ileum is resected or resection is greater than 100 cm of ileum, an injection of vitamin B12 should be given monthly [245].
- Hypomagnesemia is common because of the malabsorption of magnesium due to loss of the distal ileum, and its management consists of supplementation of magnesium and correction of sodium depletion [226, 246].

3. Third maintenance stage: In about 50% of adult patients, intestinal adaptation occurs significantly, and intestinal failure reverses completely within the first two years. No further improvement or adaptive changes occur in this stable phase, so long-term treatment is planned:

- The selection of treatment is based on the severity of SBS. Most patients with a severe type of SBS need home-based parenteral nutrition (HPN) for months to years or lifelong. Patients with adequate adaptation and absorption may not need PN.
- In patients with home-based PN, continuous PN infusion is avoided, and overnight cycle PN is recommended because it reduces the risk of intestinal failure associated liver disease (IFALD) [230], provides freedom from the infusion pump during the day, and maximizes the convenience of patients [247].
- Oral diet or EN is started using small volume and should be advanced slowly to small frequent meals [248].
- Patients with D-lactic acidosis need appropriate hydration, restriction of carbohydrate containing diet and administration of non-absorbable antibiotics against D-lactate forming bacteria, and thiamine supplementation.

REFERENCES

1. Fiaccadori E, Lombardi M, Leonardi S, et al. Prevalence and clinical outcome associated with preexisting malnutrition in acute renal failure: a prospective cohort study. J Am Soc Nephrol. 1999;10(3):581–93.
2. Cano NJ, Aparicio M, Brunori G, et al. ESPEN guidelines on parenteral nutrition: adult renal failure. Clin Nutr. 2009;28(4):401–14.
3. Li C, Xu L, Guan C, et al. Malnutrition screening and acute kidney injury in hospitalised patients: a retrospective study over a 5-year period from China. Br J Nutr. 2020;123(3):337–346.
4. Meyer D, Mohan A, Subev E, et al. Acute kidney injury incidence in hospitalized patients and implications for nutrition support. Nutr Clin Pract. 2020;35(6):987–1000.
5. Bufarah MNB, Costa NA, Losilla MPRP, et al. Low caloric and protein intake is associated with mortality in patients with acute kidney injury. Clin Nutr ESPEN. 2018;24:66–70.
6. McClave SA, Taylor BE, Martindale RG, et al. Guidelines for the provision and assessment of nutrition support therapy in the adult critically ill patient: Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) and American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (A.S.P.E.N.). JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2016;40(2):159–211.
7. Kellum JA, Lameire N, Aspelin P, et al. KDIGO clinical practice guideline for acute kidney injury. Kidney Int Suppl. 2012;2(1):1–138.
8. Blumenkrantz MJ, Kopple JD, Koffler A, et al. Total parenteral nutrition in the management of acute renal failure. Am J Clin Nutr. 1978;31(10):1831–40.

9. Gunst J, Vanhorebeek I, Casaer MP, et al. Impact of early parenteral nutrition on metabolism and kidney injury. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2013;24(6):995–1005.
10. Casaer MP, Mesotten D, Hermans G, et al. Early versus late parenteral nutrition in critically ill adults. N Engl J Med. 2011;365(6):506–17.
11. Singer P, Blaser AR, Berger MM, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in the intensive care unit. Clin Nutr. 2019;38(1):48–79.
12. Appropriate Dosing for Parenteral Nutrition: ASPEN Recommendations. American Society Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition 2019. http://www.nutritioncare.org/uploadedFiles/Documents/Guidelines_and_Clinical_Resources/PN%20Dosing%201-Sheet-FINAL.pdf.
13. Druml W, Kierdorf HP, Working group for developing the guidelines for parenteral nutrition of The German Association for Nutritional M. Parenteral nutrition in patients with renal failure – Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 17. Ger Med Sci 2009;7:Doc11.
14. Gervasio JM, Garmon WP, Holowatyj M. Nutrition support in acute kidney injury. Nutr Clin Pract. 2011;26(4):374–81.
15. Honoré PM, De Waele E, Jacobs R, et al. Nutritional and metabolic alterations during continuous renal replacement therapy. Blood Purif. 2013;35(4):279–84.
16. Bellomo R, Cass A, Cole L, et al. Calorie intake and patient outcomes in severe acute kidney injury: findings from The Randomized Evaluation of Normal vs. Augmented Level of Replacement Therapy (RENAL) study trial. Crit Care. 2014;18(2):R45.
17. Sabatino A, Fiaccadori E. Critically ill patient on renal replacement therapy: nutritional support by enteral and parenteral routes. In: Rajendram R, Preedy VR, Patel VB, eds. Diet and Nutrition in Critical Care. Springer-Verlag New York; 2015:671–683.
18. Oh WC, Mafrici B, Rigby M, et al. Micronutrient and amino acid losses during renal replacement therapy for acute kidney injury. Kidney Int Rep 2019;4(8):1094–1108.
19. Patel JJ, McClain CJ, Sarav M, et al. Protein Requirements for critically ill patients with renal and liver failure. Nutr Clin Pract. 2017;32(1_suppl):101S–111S.
20. Rousseau AF, Losser MR, Ichai C, et al. ESPEN endorsed recommendations: Nutritional therapy in major burns. Clin Nutr. 2013;32(4):497–502.
21. Chourdakis M, Bouras E, Shields BA, et al. Nutritional therapy among burn injured patients in the critical care setting: An international multicenter observational study on "best achievable" practices. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(12):3813–3820.
22. Williams FN, Branski LK, Jeschke MG, et al. What, how, and how much should patients with burns be fed? Surg Clin North Am. 2011;91(3):609–29.
23. Clark A, Imran J, Madni T, et al. Nutrition and metabolism in burn patients. Burns Trauma. 2017;5:11.
24. Wise AK, Hromatka KA, Miller KR. Energy Expenditure and protein requirements following burn injury. Nutr Clin Pract. 2019;34(5):673–680.
25. Jeschke, MG. Clinical review: Glucose control in severely burned patients - current best practice. Crit Care 2013;17(4):232.
26. Hébuterne X, Lemarié E, Michallet M, et al. Prevalence of malnutrition and current use of nutrition support in patients with cancer. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2014;38(2):196–204.
27. Arends J, Baracos V, Bertz H, et al. ESPEN expert group recommendations for action against cancer-related malnutrition. Clin Nutr. 2017;36(5):1187–1196.
28. Mattox TW. Cancer cachexia: cause, diagnosis, and treatment. Nutr Clin Pract. 2017;32(5):599–606.
29. Bozzetti F, Arends J, Lundholm K, et al. ESPEN guidelines on parenteral nutrition: non-surgical oncology. Clin Nutr. 2009;28(4):445–54.
30. Virizuela JA, Camblor-Álvarez M, Luengo-Pérez LM, et al. Nutritional support and parenteral nutrition in cancer patients: an expert consensus report. Clin Transl Oncol. 2018;20(5):619–629.
31. Yalcin S, Gumus M, Oksuzoglu B, et al. Turkey Medical Oncology Active Nutrition Platform. Nutritional aspect of cancer care in medical oncology patients. Clin Ther. 2019;41(11):2382–2396.
32. Anker SD, Laviano A, Filippatos G, et al. ESPEN Guidelines on parenteral nutrition: on cardiology and pneumology. Clin Nutr. 2009;28(4):455–60.
33. Lew CCH, Yandell R, Fraser RJL, et al. Association between malnutrition and clinical outcomes in the intensive care unit: a systematic review. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2017;41(5):744–58.
34. Singer P, Berger MM, Van den Berghe G, et al. ESPEN guidelines on parenteral nutrition: intensive care clinical nutrition 2009;28(4):387–400.
35. Tappenden KA, Quatrara B, Parkhurst ML, et al. Critical role of nutrition in improving quality of care: an interdisciplinary call to action to address adult hospital malnutrition. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2013;37(4):482–97.
36. Singer P. Preserving the quality of life: nutrition in the ICU. Crit Care 2019;23:139.
37. van Zanten ARH, De Waele E, Wischmeyer PE. Nutrition therapy and critical illness: practical guidance for the ICU, post-ICU, and long-term convalescence phases. Crit Care 2019;23:368.
38. Canadian Critical Care Society (CCCS) and Canadian Critical Care Trials Group (CCTG). (2015) Canadian Clinical Practice Guidelines: Summary of Revisions to the Recommendations, [Online], Available at: https://www.criticalcarenutrition.com/docs/CPGs%202015/Summary%20CPGs%202015%20vs%202013.pdf.
39. Harvey SE, Parrott F, Harrison DA, et al; CALORIES Trial Investigators. Trial of the route of early nutritional support in critically ill adults. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(18):1673–1684.
40. Elke G, van Zanten AR, Lemieux M, et al. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition in critically ill patients: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Crit Care. 2016;20(1):117.

41. TARGET Investigators, for the ANZICS Clinical Trials Group, Chapman M, Peake SL, et al. Energy-dense versus routine enteral nutrition in the critically ill. N Engl J Med. 2018;379(19):1823–34.
42. Rice TW, Wheeler AP, Thompson BT, et al. Initial trophic vs full enteral feeding in patients with acute lung injury: the EDEN randomized trial. JAMA. 2012;307(8):795–803.
43. The magnificent seven. Evidence based quality principles agreed by all critical care units in the east of England. https://drive.google.com/file/d/0BwwIbI4F418eGpuaFg4Z1RGZlE/view.
44. Lambell KJ, Tatucu-Babet OA, Chapple LA, et al. Nutrition therapy in critical illness: a review of the literature for clinicians. Crit Care. 2020;24(1):35.
45. Weijs PJ, Looijaard WG, Beishuizen A, et al. Early high protein intake is associated with low mortality and energy overfeeding with high mortality in non-septic mechanically ventilated critically ill patients. Crit Care. 2014;18(6):701.
46. Tian F, Wang X, Gao X, et al. Effect of initial calorie intake via enteral nutrition in critical illness: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Crit Care. 2015;19(1):180.
47. Zusman O, Theilla M, Cohen J, et al. Resting energy expenditure, calorie and protein consumption in critically ill patients: a retrospective cohort study. Crit Care. 2016;20(1):367.
48. Doig GS, Simpson F, Heighes PT, et al. Restricted versus continued standard caloric intake during the management of refeeding syndrome in critically ill adults: a randomised, parallel-group, multicentre, single-blind controlled trial. Lancet Respir Med. 2015;3(12):943–52.
49. Puthucheary ZA, Rawal J, McPhail M, et al. Acute skeletal muscle wasting in critical illness. JAMA. 2013;310(15):1591–600.
50. van Gassel RJJ, Baggerman MR, van de Poll MCG. Metabolic aspects of muscle wasting during critical illness. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2020;23(2):96–101.
51. Nicolo M, Heyland DK, Chittams J, et al. Clinical outcomes related to protein delivery in a critically ill population: a multicenter, multinational observation study. JPEN J. Parenter. Enter. Nutr. 2016;40(1):45–51.
52. Weijs PJM, Mogensen KM, Rawn JD, et al. Protein intake, nutritional status and outcomes in ICU survivors: a single center cohort study. J Clin Med. 2019;8(1):43.
53. Suzuki G, Ichibayashi R, Yamamoto S, et al. Effect of high-protein nutrition in critically ill patients: A retrospective cohort study. Clin Nutr ESPEN. 2020;38:111–117.
54. Koekkoek WACK, van Setten CHC, Olthof LE, et al. Timing of PROTein INtake and clinical outcomes of adult critically ill patients on prolonged mechanical VENTilation: The PROTINVENT retrospective study. Clin Nutr. 2019;38(2):883–890.
55. Burtin C, Clerckx B, Robbeets C, et al. Early exercise in critically ill patients enhances short-term functional recovery. Crit Care Med. 2009;37(9):2499–505.
56. Schaller SJ, Anstey M, Blobner M, et al. International Early SOMS-guided Mobilization Research Initiative. Early, goal-directed mobilisation in the surgical intensive care unit: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2016;388(10052):1377–1388.
57. Bolder U, Ebener C, Hauner H, et al. Working group for developing the guidelines for parenteral nutrition of The German Association for Nutritional Medicine. Carbohydrates - guidelines on parenteral nutrition, chapter 5. Ger Med Sci 2009;7:Doc23.
58. Silva-Perez LJ, Benitez-Lopez MA, Varon J, et al. Management of critically ill patients with diabetes. World J Diabetes. 2017;8(3):89–96.
59. Jacobi J, Bircher N, Krinsley J, et al. Review guidelines for the use of an insulin infusion for the management of hyperglycemia in critically ill patients. Crit Care Med. 2012;40(12):3251–76.
60. Singer P, Berger MM, Van den Berghe G, et al. ESPEN guidelines on parenteral nutrition: intensive care. Clin Nutr 2009;33:246–251.
61. Calder PC, Jensen GL, Koletzko BV, et al. Lipid emulsions in parenteral nutrition of intensive care patients: current thinking and future directions. Intensive Care Med. 2010;36(5):735–49.
62. Mundi MS, Salonen BR, Bonnes SL, et al. Parenteral nutrition lipid emulsions and potential complications. Practical Gastroenterology 2017;41(8):32–37.
63. Pradelli L, Mayer K, Klek S, et al. ω-3 Fatty-acid enriched parenteral nutrition in hospitalized patients: systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2020;44(1):44–57.
64. Martindale RG, Berlana D, Boullata JI, et al. Summary of proceedings and expert consensus statements from the international summit “Lipids in Parenteral Nutrition”. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2020;44(Suppl 1):S7–S20.
65. Calder PC, Adolph M, Deutz NEP, et al. Lipids in the intensive care unit: report from the ESPEN Expert group. ClinNutr 2018;37:1–18.
66. Manzanares W, Dhaliwal R, Jiang X, et al. Antioxidant micronutrients in the critically ill: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care. 2012;16(2):R66.
67. Canadian Clinical Practice Guidelines for Nutrition Support in the Mechanically Ventilated, Critically Ill Adult, 9.4a Composition of PN: Glutamine (CCCN) 2015 https://www.criticalcarenutrition.com/docs/CPGs%202015/4.1c%202015.pdf.
68. Szczygie B, Pertkiewicz M, Naber T, et al. Basics in clinical nutrition: Nutrition support in GI fistulas. the European e-Journal of Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism 2009;4:e313–e314.
69. Williams LJ, Zolfaghari S, Boushey RP. Complications of enterocutaneous fistulas and their management. Clin Colon Rectal Surg. 2010;23(3):209–220.
70. Kumar P, Maroju NK, Kate V. Enterocutaneous fistulae: etiology, treatment, and outcome-a study from South India. Saudi J Gastroenterol. 2011;17:391–5.

71. Polk TM, Schwab CW. Metabolic and nutritional support of the enterocutaneous fistula patient: a three-phase approach. World J Surg 2012;36:524–533.
72. Tang QQ, Hong ZW, Ren HJ, et al. Nutritional management of patients with enterocutaneous fistulas: practice and progression. Front Nutr. 2020;7:564379.
73. Kumpf VJ, de Aguilar-Nascimento JE, Diaz-Pizarro Graf JI, et al. FELANPE; American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition. ASPEN-FELANPE Clinical Guidelines: Nutrition Support of Adult Patients with Enterocutaneous Fistula. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2017;41(1):104–112.
74. Grainger JT, Maeda Y, Donnelly SC, et al. Assessment and management of patients with intestinal failure: a multidisciplinary approach. Clin Exp Gastroenterol. 2018;11:233–241.
75. Gribovskaja-Rupp I, Melton GB. Enterocutaneous fistula: proven strategies and updates. Clin Colon Rectal Surg 2016; 29:130.
76. Evenson AR, Fischer JE. Current management of enterocutaneous fistula. Journal of gastrointestinal surgery: official journal of the Society for Surgery of the Alimentary Tract. 2006;10:455–64.
77. Casanova MJ, Chaparro M, Molina B, et al. Prevalence of malnutrition and nutritional characteristics of patients with inflammatory bowel disease. J Crohn's Colitis. 2017;11(12):1430–9.
78. Nguyen GC, Munsell M, Harris ML. Nationwide prevalence and prognostic significance of clinically diagnosable protein-calorie malnutrition in hospitalized inflammatory bowel disease patients. Inflamm Bowel Dis. 2008;14(8):1105–11.
79. Pulley J, Todd A, Flatley C, et al. Malnutrition and quality of life among adult inflammatory bowel disease patients. JGH Open. 2019;4(3):454–460.
80. Balestrieri P, Ribolsi M, Guarino MPL, et al. Nutritional aspects in inflammatory bowel diseases. Nutrients. 2020;12(2):372.
81. Forbes A, Escher J, Hebuterne X, et al. ESPEN guideline: Clinical nutrition in inflammatory bowel disease. Clin Nutr. 2017;36:321–47.
82. Bischoff SC, Escher J, Hebuterne X, et al. ESPEN practical guideline: clinical nutrition in inflammatory bowel disease. Clin Nutr. 2020;39:632–53.
83. Lamb CA, Kennedy NA, Raine T, et al. British Society of Gastroenterology consensus guidelines on the management of inflammatory bowel disease in adults. Gut. 2019:68(Suppl 3):s1–s106.
84. Sood A, Ahuja V, Kedia S, et al. Diet and inflammatory bowel disease: The Asian Working Group guidelines. Indian J Gastroenterol. 2019;38(3):220–246.
85. Nutritional status in cirrhosis. Italian multicentre cooperative project on nutrition in liver cirrhosis. J Hepatol 1994;21:317–25.
86. Cheung K, Lee SS, Raman M. Prevalence and mechanisms of malnutrition in patients with advanced liver disease, and nutrition management strategies. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2012;10(2):117–25.
87. Saunders J, Brian A, Wright M, et al. Malnutrition and nutrition support in patients with liver disease. Frontline Gastroenterol. 2010;1(2):105–111.
88. Dasarathy S. Consilience in sarcopenia of cirrhosis. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle 2012;3:225–237.
89. Huisman EJ, Trip EJ, Siersema PD, et al. Protein energy malnutrition predicts complications in liver cirrhosis. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;23:982–989.
90. Alberino F, Gatta A, Amodio P, et al. Nutrition and survival in patients with liver cirrhosis. Nutrition 2001;17(6):445–450.
91. Sam J, Nguyen GC. Protein-calorie malnutrition as a prognostic indicator of mortality among patients hospitalized with cirrhosis and portal hypertension. Liver Int 2009;29(9):1396–402.
92. European Association for the Study of the Liver. Electronic address: easloffice@easloffice.eu, European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines on nutrition in chronic liver disease. J Hepatol 2019;70(1):172–193.
93. Plauth M, Schuetz T, Working group for developing the guidelines for parenteral nutrition of The German Association for Nutritional Medicine. Hepatology - Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 16. Ger Med Sci. 2009;7:Doc12.
94. Plauth M, Bernal W, Dasarathy S, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in liver disease. Clin Nutr 2019;38(2):485–521.
95. Bischoff SC, Bernal W, Dasarathy S, et al. ESPEN practical guideline: Clinical nutrition in liver disease. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(12):3533–3562.
96. Maharshi S, Sharma BC, Sachdeva S, et al. Efficacy of nutritional therapy for patients with cirrhosis and minimal hepatic encephalopathy in a randomized trial. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2016;14(3):454–460.e453.
97. Kato A, Tanaka H, Kawaguchi T, et al. Nutritional management contributes to improvement in minimal hepatic encephalopathy and quality of life in patients with liver cirrhosis: a preliminary, prospective, open-label study. Hepatol Res. 2013;43(5):452–458.
98. Amodio P, Bemeur C, Butterworth R, et al. The nutritional management of hepatic encephalopathy in patients with cirrhosis: International Society for Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism Consensus. Hepatology. 2013;58(1):325–336.
99. Gheorghe L, Iacob R, Vădan R, et al. Improvement of hepatic encephalopathy using a modified high-calorie high-protein diet. Rom J Gastroenterol.2005;14(3):231–8.
100. Cordoba J, Lopez-Hellin J, Planas M, et al. Normal protein diet for episodic hepatic encephalopathy: results of a randomized study. Journal of hepatology. 2004;41(1):38–43.
101. Saja MF, Abdo AA, Sanai FM, et al. The coagulopathy of liver disease: does vitamin K help? Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis. 2013;24(1):10–7.
102. Aldrich SM, Regal RE. Routine Use of Vitamin K in the treatment of cirrhosis-related coagulopathy: Is it A-O-K? Maybe not, we say. P T. 2019;44(3):131–136.

103. Takuma Y, Nouso K, Makino Y, et al. Clinical trial: oral zinc in hepatic encephalopathy. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2010;32(9):1080–90.
104. Katayama K, Saito M, Kawaguchi T, et al. Effect of zinc on liver cirrhosis with hyperammonemia: a preliminary randomized, placebo-controlled double-blind trial. Nutrition 2014;30(11–12):1409–1414.
105. Mousa N, Abdel-Razik A, Zaher A, et al. The role of antioxidants and zinc in minimal hepatic encephalopathy: a randomized trial. Therap Adv Gastroenterol. 2016;9(5):684–91.
106. Shen YC, Chang YH, Fang CJ, et al. Zinc supplementation in patients with cirrhosis and hepatic encephalopathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Nutr J. 2019;18(1):34.
107. Al-Alfy M, Amin Hegazy A, Soliman Hammad K, et al. Zinc replacement in hepatic encephalopathy among the Egyptian patients. Al-Azhar Medical Journal 2020;49(2):839–848.
108. John S, Thuluvath PJ. Hyponatremia in cirrhosis: pathophysiology and management. World J Gastroenterol. 2015;21(11):3197–3205.
109. Aithal GP, Palaniyappan N, China L, et al. Guidelines on the management of ascites in cirrhosis Gut 2021;70(1):9–29.
110. Haberl J, Zollner G, Fickert P, et al. To salt or not to salt?-That is the question in cirrhosis. Liver Int. 2018;38(7):1148–1159.
111. Baron TH, Morgan DE. Acute necrotizing pancreatitis. N Engl J Med. 1999;340(18):1412–7.
112. Arvanitakis M, Ockenga J, Bezmarevic M, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in acute and chronic pancreatitis. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(3):612–631.
113. Zheng Z, Ding Y, Qu Y, et al. A narrative review of acute pancreatitis and its diagnosis, pathogenetic mechanism, and management. Ann Transl Med 2021;9(1):69.
114. Niederau C, Niederau M, Lüthen R, et al. Pancreatic exocrine secretion in acute experimental pancreatitis. Gastroenterology 1990;99(4):1120–1127.
115. Boreham B, Ammori BJ. A prospective evaluation of pancreatic exocrine function in patients with acute pancreatitis: correlation with extent of necrosis and pancreatic endocrine insufficiency. Pancreatology 2003;3(4):303–308.
116. Boxhoorn L, Voermans RP, Bouwense SA, et al. Acute pancreatitis. Lancet 2020;396(10252):726–34.
117. Lakananurak N, Gramlich L. Nutrition management in acute pancreatitis: Clinical practice consideration. World J Clin Cases. 2020;8(9):1561–1573.
118. Mederos MA, Reber HA, Girgis MD. Acute pancreatitis: a review. JAMA. 2021;325(4):382–390.
119. Ioannidis O, Lavrentieva A, Botsios D. Nutrition support in acute pancreatitis. JOP. 2008;9(4):375–90.
120. Mutch KL, Heidal KB, Gross KH, et al. Cost-analysis of nutrition support in patients with severe acute pancreatitis. Int J Health Care Qual Assur. 2011;24(7):540–547.
121. Uomo G. Pancreatic rest or not? The debate on the nutrition in acute pancreatitis continues JOP. 2013;14(2):216–7.
122. Rinninella E, Annetta MG, Serricchio M, et al. Nutritional support in acute pancreatitis: from physiopathology to practice: an evidence-based approach. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 2017;21(2):421–432.
123. Crockett SD, Wani S, Gardner TB, et al. American Gastroenterological Association Institute Clinical Guidelines Committee. American Gastroenterological Association Institute Guideline on Initial Management of Acute Pancreatitis. Gastroenterology. 2018;154(4):1096–1101.
124. Al-Omran M, Albalawi ZH, Tashkandi MF, et al. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition for acute pancreatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;(1):CD002837.
125. Vaughn VM, Shuster D, Rogers MAM, et al. Early versus delayed feeding in patients with acute pancreatitis: a systematic review. Ann Intern Med. 2017;166(12):883–892.
126. Li W, Liu J, Zhao S, et al. Safety and efficacy of total parenteral nutrition versus total enteral nutrition for patients with severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. J Int Med Res 2018;46(9):3948–58.
127. Wu P, Li L, Sun W. Efficacy comparisons of enteral nutrition and parenteral nutrition in patients with severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis from randomized controlled trials. Biosci Rep 2018;38(6):BSR20181515.
128. Yao H, He C, Deng L, et al. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition in critically ill patients with severe pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. Eur J Clin Nutr 2018;72(1):66–68.
129. Tenner S, Baillie J, DeWitt J, et al. American College of Gastroenterology guideline: management of acute pancreatitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2013;108(9):1400–1415.
130. Greenberg JA, Hsu J, Bawazeer M, et al. Clinical practice guideline: management of acute pancreatitis. Can J Surg. 2016;59(2):128–140.
131. Reintam Blaser A, Starkopf J, Alhazzani W, et al. Early enteral nutrition in critically ill patients: ESICM clinical practice guidelines. Intensive Care Med 2017;43(3):380–98.
132. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Pancreatitis (NICE guideline NG104). 2018. www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng104.
133. Leppäniemi A, Tolonen M, Tarasconi A, et al. 2019 WSES guidelines for the management of severe acute pancreatitis. World J Emerg Surg 2019;14:27.
134. Petrov MS, Kukosh MV, Emelyanov NV. A randomized controlled trial of enteral versus parenteral feeding in patients with predicted severe acute pancreatitis shows a significant reduction in mortality and in infected pancreatic complications with total enteral nutrition. Dig Surg 2006;23(5–6):336–344.
135. Petrov MS, Pylypchuk RD, Uchugina AF. A systematic review on the timing of artificial nutrition in acute pancreatitis. Br J Nutr 2009;101(6):787–93.
136. Ramanathan M, Aadam AA. Nutrition management in acute pancreatitis. Nutr Clin Pract 2019;34(S1):S7–S12.

137. Li JY, Yu T, Chen GC, et al. Enteral nutrition within 48 hours of admission improves clinical outcomes of acute pancreatitis by reducing complications: a meta-analysis. PLoS One 2013;8(6):e64926.
138. Wereszczynska-Siemiatkowska U, Swidnicka-Siergiejko A, Siemiatkowski A, et al. Early enteral nutrition is superior to delayed enteral nutrition for the prevention of infected necrosis and mortality in acute pancreatitis. Pancreas. 2013;42(4):640–646.
139. Wu XM, Liao YW, Wang HY, et al. When to initialize enteral nutrition in patients with severe acute pancreatitis? A retrospective review in a single institution experience (2003–2013). Pancreas 2015;44(3):507–11.
140. Feng P, He C, Liao G, et al. Early enteral nutrition versus delayed enteral nutrition in acute pancreatitis A PRISMA-compliant systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine. 2017;96(96):e8648.
141. Song J, Zhong Y, Lu X, et al. Enteral nutrition provided within 48 hours after admission in severe acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore) 2018;97(34):e11871.
142. Bakker OJ, van Brunschot S, Farre A, et al. Timing of enteral nutrition in acute pancreatitis: meta-analysis of individuals using a single-arm of randomised trials. Pancreatology 2014;14(5):340–6.
143. Qi D, Yu B, Huang J, et al. Meta-analysis of early enteral nutrition provided within 24 hours of admission on clinical outcomes in acute pancreatitis. JPEN J Parenter Enteral 2018;42(7):1139–47.
144. Eckerwall GE, Tingstedt BB, Bergenzaun PE, et al. Immediate oral feeding in patients with mild acute pancreatitis is safe and may accelerate recovery–a randomized clinical study. Clin Nutr 2007;26(6):758–63.
145. Bakker OJ, van Brunschot S, van Santvoort HC, et al. Early versus on-demand nasoenteric tube feeding in acute pancreatitis. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(21):1983–1993.
146. Horibe M, Nishizawa T, Suzuki H, et al. Timing of oral refeeding in acute pancreatitis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. United European Gastroenterol J. 2016;4(6):725–732.
147. Lozada-Hernández EE, Barrón-González O, Vázquez-Romero S, et al. Non-inferiority comparative clinical trial between early oral REFEEDING and usual oral REFEEDING in predicted mild acute biliary pancreatitis. BMC Gastroenterol. 2020;20(1):228.
148. Spanier BWM, Bruno MJ, Mathus-Vliegen EM. Enteral nutrition and acute pancreatitis: a review. Gastroenterol Res Pract. 2011;2011:857949.
149. Working Group IAP/APA Acute Pancreatitis Guidelines. IAP/APA evidence-based guidelines for the management of acute pancreatitis. Pancreatology. 2013;13(4 suppl 2):e1–15.
150. Meier R, Ockenga J, Pertkiewicz J, et al. ESPEN guidelines on enteral nutrition: Pancreas. Clin Nutr. 2006;25(2):275–284.
151. Olah A, Romics Jr. L. Enteral nutrition in acute pancreatitis: A review of the current evidence. World J Gastroenterol. 2014;20(43):16123–16131.
152. Sun JK, Li WQ, Ke L, et al. Early enteral nutrition prevents intra-abdominal hypertension and reduces the severity of severe acute pancreatitis compared with delayed enteral nutrition: a prospective pilot study. World J Surg. 2013;37(9):2053–2060.
153. Eatock FC, Chong P, Menezes N, et al. A randomized study of early nasogastric versus nasojejunal feeding in severe acute pancreatitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2005;100:432–9.
154. Kumar A, Singh N, Prakash S, et al. Early enteral nutrition in severe acute pancreatitis: A prospective randomized controlled trial comparing nasojejunal and nasogastric routes. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2006;40(5):431–434.
155. Petrov MS, Correia MI, Windsor JA. Nasogastric tube feeding in predicted severe acute pancreatitis. A systematic review of the literature to determine safety and tolerance. JOP 2008;9(4):440–8.
156. Singh N, Sharma B, Sharma M, et al. Evaluation of early enteral feeding through nasogastric and nasojejunal tube in severe acute pancreatitis: a noninferiority randomized controlled trial. Pancreas 2012;41(1):153–9.
157. Chang YS, Fu HQ, Xiao YM, et al. Nasogastric or nasojejunal feeding in predicted severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. Crit Care 2013;17(3):R118.
158. Nally DM, Kelly EG, Clarke M, et al. Nasogastric nutrition is efficacious in severe acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Nutr 2014;112(11):1769–78.
159. Guo YJ, Jing X, Tian ZB. Comparison of nasogastric feeding versus nasojejunal feeding for severe acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Clin Exp Med 2016;9(11):22814–22823.
160. Zhu Y, Yin H, Zhang R, et al. Nasogastric nutrition versus nasojejunal nutrition in patients with severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Gastroenterol Res Pract 2016;2016:6430632.
161. Dutta AK, Goel A, Kirubakaran R, et al. Nasogastric versus nasojejunal tube feeding for severe acute pancreatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2020;3(3):CD010582.
162. Lee PJ, Papachristou GI. Management of Severe Acute Pancreatitis. Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol. 2020:1–12.
163. Jacobson BC, Vander Vliet MB, Hughes MD, et al. A prospective, randomized trial of clear liquids versus low-fat solid diet as the initial meal in mild acute pancreatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2007;5(8):946–951.
164. Moraes JM, Felga GE, Chebli LA, et al. A full solid diet as the initial meal in mild acute pancreatitis is safe and result in a shorter length of hospitalization: results from a prospective, randomized, controlled, double-blind clinical trial. J Clin Gastroenterol 2010;44(7):517–522.
165. Meng WB, Li X, Li YM, et al. Three initial diets for management of mild acute pancreatitis: A meta-analysis. World J Gastroenterol 2011;17(37):4235–4241.

166. Rajkumar N, Karthikeyan VS, Ali SM, et al. Clear liquid diet vs soft diet as the initial meal in patients with mild acute pancreatitis: a randomized interventional trial. Nutr Clin Pract. 2013;28(3):365–70.
167. Lariño-Noia J, Lindkvist B, Iglesias-García J, et al. Early and/or immediately full caloric diet versus standard refeeding in mild acute pancreatitis: a randomized open-label trial. Pancreatology 2014;14(3):167–173.
168. Gianotti L, Meier R, Lobo DN, et al. ESPEN Guidelines on parenteral nutrition: pancreas. Clin Nutr 2009;28(4):428–435.
169. Baron TH, DiMaio CJ, Wang AY, et al. American Gastroenterological Association Clinical Practice Update: Management of pancreatic necrosis. Gastroenterology. 2020;158(1):67–75.
170. Asrani V, Chang WK, Dong Z, et al. Glutamine supplementation in acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Pancreatology 2013;13(5):468–474.
171. Zhong X, Liang CP, Gong S. Intravenous glutamine for severe acute pancreatitis: A meta-analysis. World J Crit Care Med. 2013;2(1):4–8.
172. Barker LA, Gout BS, Crowe TC. Hospital malnutrition: prevalence, identification and impact on patients and the healthcare system. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2011;8(2):514–527.
173. Cerantola Y, Grass F, Cristaudi A, et al. Perioperative nutrition in abdominal surgery: recommendations and reality. Gastroenterol Res Pract. 2011;2011:739347.
174. Culebras JM. Malnutrition in the twenty-first century: an epidemic affecting surgical outcome. Surg Infect (Larchmt). 2013;14(3):237–243.
175. Leandro-Merhi VA, de Aquino JL. Determinants of malnutrition and post-operative complications in hospitalized surgical patients. J Health Popul Nutr. 2014;32(3):400–410.
176. Inciong JFB, Chaudhary A, Hsu HS, et al. Hospital malnutrition in northeast and southeast Asia: A systematic literature review. Clin Nutr ESPEN. 2020;39:30–45.
177. Braga M, Ljungqvist O, Soeters P, et al. ESPEN guidelines on parenteral nutrition: surgery. Clin Nutr. 2009;28(4):378–86.
178. Abunnaja S, Cuviello A, Sanchez JA. Enteral and parenteral nutrition in the perioperative period: state of the art. Nutrients. 2013;5(2):608–623.
179. Weimann A, Braga M, Carli F, et al. ESPEN guideline: Clinical nutrition in surgery. Clin Nutr. 2017;36(3):623–650.
180. Worthington P, Balint J, Bechtold M, et al. When is parenteral nutrition appropriate? JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2017;41(3):324–377.
181. Lakananurak N, Gramlich L. The role of preoperative parenteral nutrition. Nutrients. 2020 6;12(5):1320.
182. Ward N. Nutrition support to patients undergoing gastrointestinal surgery. Nutr. J. 2003;2:18.
183. Klein S, Kinney J, Jeejeebhoy K, et al. Nutrition support in clinical practice: review of published data and recommendations for future research directions. Clin Nutr 1997;16:193.
184. de-Aguilar-Nascimento JE, Salomão AB, Waitzberg DL, et al. ACERTO guidelines of perioperative nutritional interventions in elective general surgery. Rev. Col. Bras. Cir. [online]. 2017;44(6):633–648.
185. Wischmeyer PE, Carli F, Evans DC, et al. Perioperative Quality Initiative (POQI) 2 Workgroup. American society for enhanced recovery and perioperative quality initiative joint consensus statement on nutrition screening and therapy within a surgical enhanced recovery pathway. Anesth Analg. 2018;126(6):1883–1895.
186. Lobo DN, Gianotti L, Adiamah A, et al. Perioperative nutrition: Recommendations from the ESPEN expert group. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(11):3211–3227.
187. Doig GS, Simpson F, Sweetman EA, et al. Early PN Investigators of the ANZICS Clinical Trials Group. Early parenteral nutrition in critically ill patients with short-term relative contraindications to early enteral nutrition: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2013;309(20):2130–8.
188. Mete B, Pehlivan E, Gülbaş G, et al. Prevalence of malnutrition in COPD and its relationship with the parameters related to disease severity. Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis. 2018;13:3307–3312.
189. Ting HYT, Chan SHY, Luk EKH, et al. Prevalence of malnutrition in COPD inpatients and its relationship with nutritional intakes and clinical outcomes. J Aging Sci. 2020;8(1):219.
190. Steer J, Norman E, Gibson G, et al. P117 Comparison of indices of nutritional status in prediction of in-hospital mortality and early readmission of patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. Thorax. 2010;65(4):A127.
191. Hoong JM, Ferguson M, Hukins C, et al. Economic and operational burden associated with malnutrition in COPD. Clinical Nutrition. 2017;36(4):1105–1109.
192. Elia M. The cost of malnutrition in England and potential cost savings from nutritional interventions (full report). BAPEN. 2015.
193. Holdoway A, Anderson L, Banner J et al. Managing malnutrition in COPD. 2nd ed. 2020. Available at: www.malnutritionpathway.co.uk/copd.
194. Schols AM. Nutrition in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Curr Opin Pulm Med. 2000;6(2):110–5.
195. Dias CM, Pássaro CP, Cagido VR, et al. Effects of undernutrition on respiratory mechanics and lung parenchyma remodeling. J Appl Physiol (1985). 2004;97(5):1888–96.
196. Gea J, Sancho-Muñoz A, Chalela R. Nutritional status and muscle dysfunction in chronic respiratory diseases: stable phase versus acute exacerbations. J Thorac Dis. 2018;10(12):S1332–S1354.
197. Wilson DO, Rogers RM. The role of nutrition in weaning from mechanical ventilation. Journal of Intensive Care Medicine. 1989;4(3):124–133.
198. Rodríguez L, Cervantes E, Ortiz R. Malnutrition and gastrointestinal and respiratory infections in children: a public health problem. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2011;8(4):1174–1205.

199. Nguyen HT, Collins PF, Pavey TG, et al. Nutritional status, dietary intake, and health-related quality of life in outpatients with COPD. Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis. 2019;14:215–226.
200. Guo Y, Zhang T, Wang Z, et al. Body mass index and mortality in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: A dose-response meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2016;95(28):e4225.
201. Ferreira IM, Brooks D, White J, et al. Nutritional supplementation for stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012;12:CD000998.
202. Collins PF, Stratton RJ, Elia M. Nutritional support in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Clin Nutr 2012;95(6):1385–1395.
203. Collins PF, Elia M, Stratton RJ. Nutritional support and functional capacity in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Respirology 2013;18(4):616–629.
204. Naz I, Sahin H. The effect of nutritional support on pulmonary rehabilitation outcomes in COPD patients with low body mass index. Eur Resp J 2018;52.
205. Aldhahir AM, Rajeh AMA, Aldabayan YS, et al. Nutritional supplementation during pulmonary rehabilitation in COPD: A systematic review. Chron Respir Dis. 2020;17:1479973120904953.
206. Global strategy for diagnosis, management and prevention of COPD. The Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Diseases (GOLD). 2020 report. Available from: https://goldcopd.org/gold-reports/.
207. Slinde F, Gronberg AM, Svantesson U, et al. Energy expenditure in chronic obstructive pulmonary diseaseevaluation of simple measures. Eur J Clin Nutr 2011;65(12):1309–1313.
208. Ganzoni A, Heilig P, Schonenberger K, et al. High-caloric nutrition in chronic obstructive lung disease. Schweiz Rundsch Med Prax 1994;83(1):13–6.
209. Baarends EM, Schols AM, Pannemans DL, et al. Total free living energy expenditure in patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 1997;155(2):549–54.
210. Rondanelli M, Faliva MA, Peroni G, et al. Food pyramid for subjects with chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases. Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis. 2020;15:1435–1448.
211. de Batlle J, Sauleda J, Balcells E, et al. Association between Omega3 and Omega6 fatty acid intakes and serum inflammatory markers in COPD. J Nutr Biochem. 2012;23(7):817–21.
212. al-Saady NM, Blackmore CM, Bennett ED. High fat, low carbohydrate, enteral feeding lowers PaCO2 and reduces the period of ventilation in artifcially ventilated patients. Intensive Care Med. 1989;15(5):290–295.
213. Faramawy MA, Abd Allah A, El Batrawy S, et al. Impact of high fat low carbohydrate enteral feeding on weaning from mechanical ventilation. Egypt J Chest Dis Tuberc 2014;63(4):931–8.
214. Yartsev A. Nutritional manipulation of carbon dioxide production. Deranged Physiology February 27, 2016 https://derangedphysiology.com/main/required-reading/endocrinology-metabolism-and-nutrition/Chapter%205.1.4/nutritional-manipulation-carbon-dioxide-production.
215. Van den Berg B, Bogaard WCJ. High fat, low carbohydrate, enteral feeding in patients weaning from the ventilator. Intensive Care Med. 1994;20(7):479–475.
216. El Koofy NM, Rady HI, Abdallah SM, et al. The effect of high fat dietary modification and nutritional status on the outcome of critically ill ventilated children: single-center study. Korean J Pediatr. 2019;62(9):344–352.
217. Persson LJ, Aanerud M, Hiemstra PS, et al. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease is associated with low levels of vitamin D. PLoS One. 2012;7(6):e38934.
218. Fernández-Lahera J, Romera D, Gómez Mendieta A, et al. Prevalence of vitamin D deficiency in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Eur. Respir. J. 2015;46:PA3977.
219. Horadagoda C, Dinihan T, Roberts M, et al. Body composition and micronutrient deficiencies in patients with an acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Intern Med J. 2017;47(9):1057–1063.
220. Ginde AA, Mansbach JM, Camargo CA Jr. Association between serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D level and upper respiratory tract infection in the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169(4):384–390.
221. Black PN, Scragg R. Relationship between serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D and pulmonary function in the third national health and nutrition examination survey. Chest. 2005;128(6):3792–3798.
222. Afzal S, Lange P, Bojesen SE, et al. Plasma 25-hydroxyvitamin D, lung function and risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Thorax. 2014;69(1):24–31.
223. Martineau AR, Jolliffe DA, Hooper RL, et al. Vitamin D supplementation to prevent acute respiratory tract infections: systematic review and meta-analysis of individual participant data. BMJ 2017;356:i6583.
224. Zendedel A, Gholami M, Anbari K, et al. Effects of vitamin D intake on FEV1 and COPD exacerbation: A randomized clinical trial study. Glob J Health Sci 2015;7(4):243–248.
225. Jolliffe DA, Greenberg L, Hooper RL, et al. Vitamin D to prevent exacerbations of COPD: systematic review and meta-analysis of individual participant data from randomised controlled trials. Thorax. 2019;74(4):337–345.
226. Nightingale J, Woodward JM. Guidelines for management of patients with a short bowel. Gut 2006;55(4):iv1–12.
227. Nguyen BT, Blatchford GJ, Thompson JS, et al. Should intestinal continuity be restored after massive intestinal resection? Am J Surg. 1989;158(6):577–579.
228. Messing B, Crenn P, Beau P, et al. Long-term survival and parenteral nutrition dependence in adult patients with the short bowel syndrome. Gastroenterology. 1999;117(5):1043–1050.

229. Marino IR, Lauro A. Surgeon's perspective on short bowel syndrome: Where are we? World J Transplant 2018;8(6):198–202.
230. Pironi L, Arends J, Bozzetti F, et al. Home artificial nutrition & chronic intestinal failure special interest group of ESPEN. ESPEN guidelines on chronic intestinal failure in adults. Clin Nutr. 2016;35(2):247–307.
231. Massironi S, Cavalcoli F, Rausa E, et al. Understanding short bowel syndrome: Current status and future perspectives. Dig Liver Dis. 2020;52(3):253–261.
232. Nightingale JM, Kamm MA, van der Sijp JR, et al. Gastrointestinal hormones in short bowel syndrome. Peptide YY may be the' colonic brake' to gastric emptying. Gut 1996;39(2):267–72.
233. Szczygiel B, Jonkers-Schuitema CF, Naber T. Basics in clinical nutrition: Nutritional support in extensive gut resections (short bowel). e-SPEN, Euro E-J Clinic Nutr Metab. 2010;5(1):e63–e68.
234. Kowlgi NG, Chhabra L. D-lactic acidosis: an underrecognized complication of short bowel syndrome. Gastroenterol Res Pract. 2015;2015:476215.
235. Johnson E, Vu L, Matarese LE. Bacteria, Bones, and Stones: Managing Complications of Short Bowel Syndrome. Nutr Clin Pract. 2018;33(4):454–466.
236. Yang J, Sun H, Wan S, et al. Risk factors for nephrolithiasis in adults with short bowel syndrome. Ann Nutr Metab 2019;75(1):47–54.
237. Hylander E, Jarnum S. Jensen HJ, et al. Enteric hyperoxaluria: dependence on small intestinal resection, colectomy, and steatorrhoea in chronic inflammatory bowel disease. Scand J Gastroenterol. 1978;13(5):577–588.
238. Parks JH, Worcester EM, R. Corey O'Connor RC, et al. Urine stone risk factors in nephrolithiasis patients with and without bowel disease. Kidney Int. 2003;63(1):255–65.
239. Amiot A, Messing B, Corcos O, et al. Determinants of home parenteral nutrition dependence and survival of 268 patients with non-malignant short bowel syndrome. Clin Nutr. 2013;32(3):368–74.
240. Joly F, Dray X, Corcos O, et al. Tube feeding improves intestinal absorption in short bowel syndrome patients. Gastroenterology 2009;136(3):824–31.
241. Pironi L, Sasdelli AS. Intestinal failure-associated liver disease. Clin Liver Dis 2019;23(2):279–91.
242. Lal S, Pironi L, Wanten G, et al. Home Artificial Nutrition & Chronic Intestinal Failure Special Interest Group of the European Society for Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism (ESPEN). Clinical approach to the management of Intestinal Failure Associated Liver Disease (IFALD) in adults: A position paper from the Home Artificial Nutrition and Chronic Intestinal Failure Special Interest Group of ESPEN. Clin Nutr. 2018;37(6 Pt A):1794–1797.
243. Wang C, Venick RS, Shew SB, et al. Long-term outcomes in children with intestinal failure-associated liver disease treated with 6 months of intravenous fish oil followed by resumption of intravenous soybean oil. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2019;43(6):708–716.
244. Lauro A, Lacaille F. Short bowel syndrome in children and adults: from rehabilitation to transplantation. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2019;13(1):55–70.
245. Jeejeebhoy KN. Short bowel syndrome: a nutritional and medical approach. CMAJ. 2002;166(10):1297–1302.
246. Miranda SC, Ribeiro ML, Ferriolli E, et al. Hypomagnesemia in short bowel syndrome patients. Sao Paulo Medical Journal 2000;118(6):169–172.
247. Bielawska B, Allard JP. Parenteral nutrition and intestinal failure. Nutrients. 2017;9(5):466.
248. Olieman J, Kastelijn W. Nutritional feeding strategies in pediatric intestinal failure. Nutrients. 2020;12(1):177.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

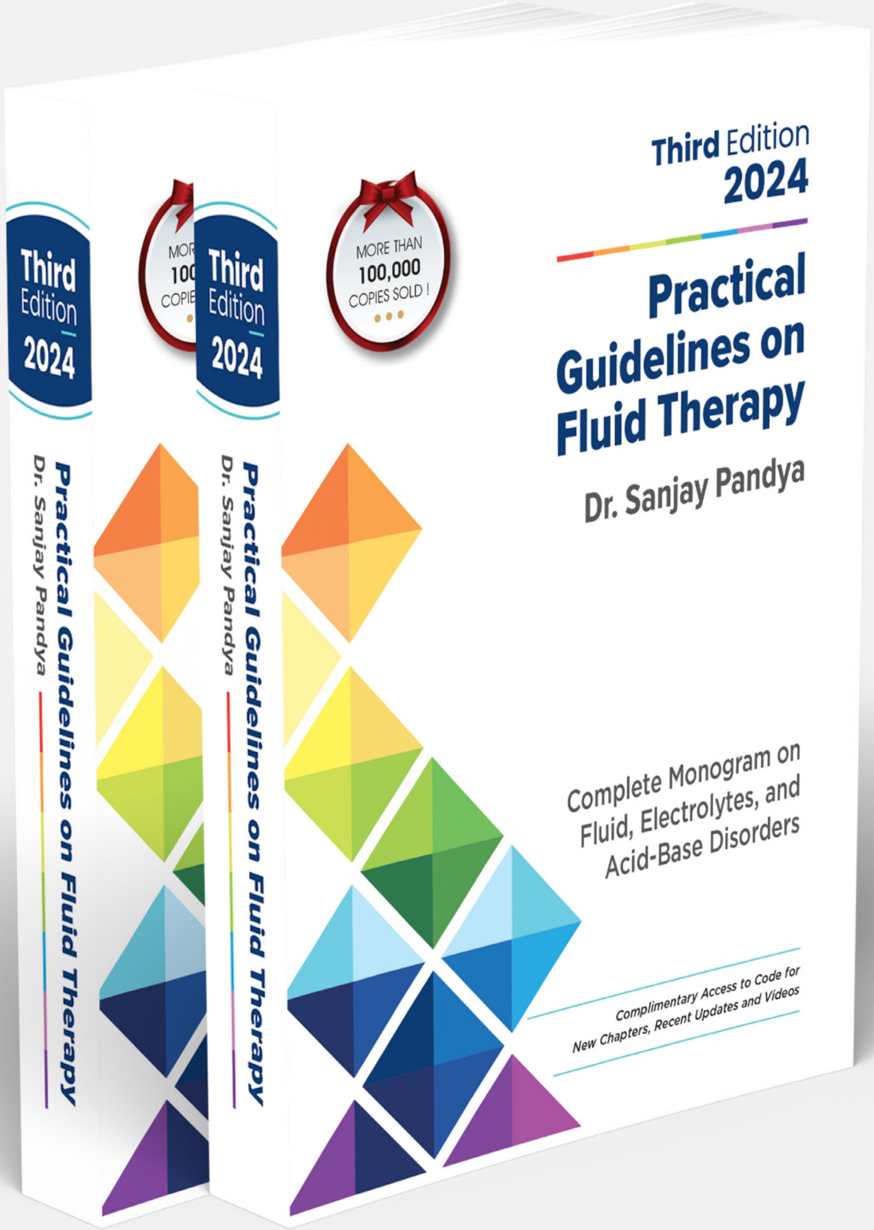
www.KidneyEducation.com

- Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.
- This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.
- It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.

Fluid

Chapter 57:

Parenteral Nutrition: Administration and Complications


Third Edition
2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya
MORE THAN 100,000 COPIES SOLD !
Complete Monogram on Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Disorders
Complimentary Access to Code for New Chapters, Recent Updates and Videos
Third Edition 2024
Practical Guidelines on Fluid Therapy
Dr. Sanjay Pandya

57

Parenteral Nutrition: Administration and Complications

ADMINISTRATION OF PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Selection of Macronutrients 709
Delivering PN 709
  - Routes of nutrient delivery............ 710
    - Peripheral PN 710
      - Composition and prerequisite ..710
      - Indications and contraindications 710
      - Advantages and disadvantages 711
      - Prevention of thrombophlebitis 711
    - Central PN...............................711
      - Goals and indications 712
      - Composition 712
      - Selection of catheter.............. 712
      - Sites for insertion 712
  - Systems of delivering PN 713
    - Multiple bottle system.............. 713
    - Multichamber-bag PN.............. 714
    - Hospital compounded PN........ 715
  - Duration and mode of delivering PN 715
      - Continuous PN 715
      - Cyclic/intermittent PN 715
Designing PN Formula 715
  - Calculation of nutritional requirements 715
  - Convert nutritional requirements into prescriptions 716
  - Commercially available PN products....................................... 717
Initiation of PN 719
Monitoring of PN.............................. 719
Termination of PN 720

COMPLICATIONS OF PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Mechanical 721
Catheter-related Bloodstream Infection 722
Metabolic 723
  - Hyperglycemia............................. 723
  - Hypoglycemia............................... 724
  - Refeeding syndrome 724
  - Hepatic abnormalities................... 726

ADMINISTRATION OF PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Parenteral nutrition (PN) is currently one of the most sophisticated forms of intravenous therapy. Appropriate use of parenteral nutrition provides life-saving treatment for patients who could not otherwise be nourished.

SELECTION OF MACRONUTRIENTS

Selecting an appropriate macronutrient mixture while administering parenteral nutrition in day-to-day practice is essential. Broad guidelines in the selection of the most suitable macronutrient solutions based on requirements for different patients are:

Indications of only dextrose containing crystalloids; avoid PN

In cases where patients are stable, not malnourished, and unable to consume oral intake for a brief period (less than a week), using PN support is unnecessary [1]. Instead, dextrose infusions (>100 gm/day in adults), electrolytes, and vitamins serve as the primary approach for short-term therapy in such individuals. Providing adequate dextrose (calculated as the daily energy requirement in kcal ÷ 3.4 = gm/day dextrose) fulfills calorie needs and helps conserve nitrogen [2].

Indications of amino acids plus dextrose-containing solutions, withhold lipid emulsion

Parenteral nutrition combining amino acids and dextrose may suffice to address nutritional needs over a short duration (less than one week) in patients who are stable and not malnourished, as long as their total caloric requirements remain relatively low. However, it is advisable to introduce lipid administration within ≤7 days of starting PN to prevent essential fatty acid deficiency [3]. Early lipid administration is also crucial for minimizing the risk of hyperglycemia resulting from high glucose intake.

Indications of PN with all three macronutrients (dextrose + amino acids + lipids)

PN solutions that incorporate all three macronutrients are widely utilized in clinical practice. The addition of lipid emulsion provides additional calories, reduces the osmolarity of the solution, and prevents essential fatty acid deficiency. PN solutions containing all three macronutrients are commonly recommended for patients:

- Those in need of PN support for prolonged period.
- Patients requiring peripheral parenteral nutrition (PPN) with significant calorie supplementation but unable to tolerate carbohydrates.
- Critically ill patients, and those with hyperglycemia, diabetes mellitus, and respiratory failure.

DELIVERING PARENTERAL NUTRITION

For proper supplementation of PN, it is essential to understand different fundamental aspects of delivering PN, as classified below:

- Routes of nutrient delivery:

  Peripheral parenteral nutrition vs. central parenteral nutrition.
- Systems of delivering PN:

  Multiple bottle system, multi-chamber-bag PN, or hospital compounded PN.
- Duration of delivering PN:

  Continuous infusion of PN vs. cyclic infusion of PN.

Table 57.1 Comparison of peripheral and central parenteral nutrition

	PPN	CPN
Route of administration	Peripheral veins	Central venous access
Access site	Peripheral veins	Large peripheral veins or central veins
Location of catheter distal tips	Below the level of the axillary vein	Central circulation (usually SVC or uncommonly IVC)
Duration of therapy	less than 2 weeks	>7–14 days
Nutritional needs	Low	High
Daily caloric requirement	1000–1500	2000–3000
Daily volume need (mL)	2000–3000	1000–2000
PN osmolarity (mOsm/L)	Low (600–850)	High (>800–900)
Carbohydrate	30%	55%–60%
Fat emulsion	Major caloric source	Minor caloric source
Prerequisite	Good peripheral veins	Successful cannulation of large peripheral or central veins
Fluid permitted	No fluid restriction	Needs fluid restriction
Advantages	Easy insertion, lower risk of infection/complications	No limit to osmolality, pH, or volume of infusion
Disadvantages	Short life span, only for low osmolality infusion	Complex insertion, higher complication risk, and cost
Common complication	Thrombophlebitis of veins	Catheter sepsis

PICC: Peripherally inserted central catheter; CVCs: Central venous catheters; SVC: Superior vena cava; IVC: Inferior vena cava

A. Routes of nutrient delivery

The two routes used for nutrient delivery are peripheral parenteral nutrition, and central parenteral nutrition (CPN), which is compared in Table 57.1.

1. Peripheral parenteral nutrition

Peripheral parenteral nutrition is the frequently used method to deliver all the required nutrients through peripheral veins [4–6]. PPN aims to provide enough calories and nutrition for a short period (less than 2 weeks). PPN is generally intended when central PN is undesirable or unavailable.

Composition

The osmolarity of formulas for PPN should be less than 900 mOsm/L [7]. Formulas for PPN contain low concentrated dextrose (5–10%) and amino acids along with concentrated, calorie-dense lipids (usually 20% lipid emulsion), which can provide the patient's average basal energy and protein needs [8]. Lipid emulsion is an essential part of PPN. Lipid emulsion reduces the osmolarity of PPN because of its low osmolarity (260 mOsm/L) and therefore decreases the risk of thrombophlebitis of peripheral veins.

Prerequisite

For PPN, the peripheral vein should be readily accessible, and fluid restriction should not be an issue.

Indications [9]

- Requirements of PN for a short period

(less than a week). Postoperative patients requiring PN support are the most suitable candidates for PPN.

- Nutritional needs <1500–1800 kcals per day.
- Central venous catheter insertion is not possible, carries a high risk, or is contraindicated (e.g., patients with coagulopathy).
- Sepsis or bacteremia in patients with CPN to avoid central vein catheterization for a few days.

Contraindications

- In patients with high nutritional requirements (i.e., hypermetabolism, preexisting moderate to severe malnutrition, or high risk of protein depletion), PPN is not suitable, as it cannot provide enough nutrients.
- Patients who need fluid restriction (oliguric patients and edematous patients due to cardiac, hepatic, or renal failure).
- Critically ill patients who will not tolerate the high fluid volume of PPN required for providing their increased nutritional needs.
- If PPN does not allow complete nutritional requirements, PN should be administered centrally.
- If PN is required for a prolonged period (>2 weeks).

Advantages

- Easy and safe venous access.
- It avoids morbidity and risks of CPN and saves the cost of a central catheter.

Disadvantages

- Larger volume is required to provide even maintenance nutritional requirements.
- Difficulty in meeting high nutritional requirements (because the volume required to provide the same is prohibitively high in sick patients).
- The concentration of nutrients in peripheral parenteral nutrition is kept low to prevent thrombophlebitis of peripheral veins. So, a larger volume is required to meet the nutritional needs compared to central parenteral nutrition formulas.

Prevention of thrombophlebitis due to PPN

Various measures, which can prevent or reduce thrombophlebitis, are:

- Add heparin (1U/ml of total volume) and low-dose hydrocortisone to the PPN formulas [10, 11].
- Place a glycerine trinitrate transdermal patch on the skin overlying the tip of the IV catheter.
- Topical NSAID creams and gel may inhibit the local inflammatory response.
- Limiting the osmolarity of PPN to 600 mOsm/L.
- Chang peripheral lines every 72–96 hours.

2. Central parenteral nutrition

Central parenteral nutrition is the most effective method to deliver high concentration PN in a smaller volume into large diameter central veins (usually superior vena cava or uncommonly inferior vena cava) in patients who needs PN for >7–14 days. It is important to remember that the location of the distal tip determines central versus peripheral venous access and not the site of catheter insertion. When the distal end is located in the large-diameter central vein, administered hypertonic and acidic PN solutions mix quickly with surrounding turbulent blood flow and therefore avoid complications due to the local irritation of veins such as thrombophlebitis.

Goals and indications

The goal of CPN is to provide nutritional maintenance requirements and correct existing nutritional deficits. CPN is mandatory to provide long term PN support (weeks, months, or years) when volume and concentration of solution preclude peripheral administration (i.e., osmolarity exceeds 800–900 mOsm/L, pH <5 or pH >9, or fluid restriction is necessary), and to provide greater nutritional requirements to moderately to severely stressed patients [12].

Composition

As per patients' requirements, the composition of solutions for CPN varies. Most of the CPN solutions contain a higher concentration of dextrose (50–70%) and amino acids (8.5–10%), which makes these solutions hypertonic (osmolarity of CPN 1000–1900 mOsm/L as compared to plasma osmolarity 280 mOsm/L). These hypertonic CPN solutions are too irritant for a peripheral vein and should be infused only through central venous access. For safe and adequate delivery of CPN, it is essential to establish central vascular access with proper selection of the type of catheter and the site of insertion.

CPN permits the administration of a lower amount of fat emulsion than PPN because a higher concentration of dextrose and amino acids in CPN provides a significant amount of calories.

Selection of catheter for CPN

For CPN, a catheter made up of polyurethane and silicone is used routinely. Catheters made up of polyurethane are selected for short-term and medium-term use [12]. The advantage of polyurethane catheters is decreased catheter breakage but has a greater risk of thrombosis and catheter-related infection [13–15]. Silicon rubber catheter is preferred for long term or life-long PN therapy because of the reduced risk of thrombosis and infection, and is appropriate for using ethanol locks (to prevent bloodstream infections), but has decreased mechanical stability [14, 16]. Antimicrobial impregnated central venous catheters are superior in reducing central venous catheter-related bloodstream infection (CRBSI) [17].

Sites for insertion of a catheter for CPN

Short-term central access: Central venous access through a percutaneous non-tunneled catheter is commonly used and preferred for patients in the acute care setting for short duration therapies (<14 days) [12, 18]. In this method, the catheter is placed via the Seldinger technique into the internal jugular, subclavian, or femoral veins. For CPN, an upper body insertion site is preferred, and femoral vein catheterization is discouraged because of the higher risk of infection and thrombotic complications [19, 20].

This approach has the advantage of easy insertion, lesser cost, and better patient comfort and mobility for the short-term need. However, when the patient needs central venous access for the long-term PN, avoid this modality due to a higher risk of infection.

Percutaneous inserted central catheter (PICC): A 50–60 cm long polyurethane catheter is inserted in a peripheral vein in the antecubital area of the arm (cephalic or basilic vein) and threaded into the subclavian vein in such a way that the catheter tip is placed in the lower portion of superior vena cava or right atrium.

The use of PICCs is preferred in adult patients for short-term and medium-term PN (usually more than 2 weeks or less than six months) [21–24].

The use of PICCs has grown substantially in recent years because they are convenient, carry a low risk of placement-related complications, and are long-lasting and cost-effective.

The use of PICCs has grown substantially in recent years because it is convenient, low risk of placement-related complications, long-lasting and cost-effective [18, 25]. However, PICCs are associated with a higher risk of catheter-related venous thrombosis [18, 24, 26–28]. The PICCs are also associated with a higher risk of catheter-related bloodstream infection [18, 22, 29, 30], but the supporting evidence is insufficient [24, 25, 31–33].

While using PICC, to reduce the risk of infection, use the sutureless device and secure the catheter (to prevent migration of catheter) by subcutaneously anchored stabilization device [24, 34].

Long-term central access: "Tunneled" catheters (such as Hickman, Broviac, Hohn, or Groshong) and implanted subcutaneous ports are more stable, acceptable, and safe for patients who need PN for medium or long-term use (e.g., >3 months-years) [12]. The tunneled device is preferred in patients who require daily or routine access for long term PN [23, 35]. Implanted ports are cosmetically more desirable, have lower rates of infection [36], and are preferred when the need for access is less frequent (e.g., medication like chemotherapy) but rarely used for PN due to the requirement of venous access regularly [35].

"Tunneled" catheters are usually placed in the subclavian or internal jugular vein, with the distal tip positioned in the lower portion of the superior vena cava. After exiting from great veins, the "Tunneled" catheter traverses for about 10 cm under the skin in the subcutaneous tunnel, with the external portion of the catheter lying on the anterior chest wall.

The femoral vein is not preferred and usually avoided for long-term central access for PN due to the high risk of infection at the exit site (at the groin) and an increased risk of venous thrombosis [12]. A subcutaneous tunnel is created, so the catheter exits from the skin several inches away from the venipuncture location.

The tunnel acts as a barrier and reduces the risk of infection substantially. The dacron cuff around the catheter is positioned in the subcutaneous tissue 2 to 3 centimeters from the exit site, stabilizing the catheter and acting as a mechanical barrier limiting bacterial entry and preventing ascending microbial infection [16].

Methods used to confirm the catheter tip position are chest radiography, fluoroscopy, point-of-care transthoracic echocardiography, or continuous electrocardiography [19, 37, 38]. In addition to accurately assessing the position of the tip of the catheter, a post-procedure chest X-ray also detects pneumothorax, malpositions, and kinking [39].

The central line must be handled with a strict aseptic technique for safe use, and the single-lumen catheter is preferred to prevent infection. Use a central line exclusively for administering PN and avoid its usage for administering of IV solutions or medications, blood sampling, and central venous pressure (CVP) monitoring.

B. Systems of delivering parenteral nutrition

Three different systems used for delivering parenteral nutrition are a "multiple bottle" system, commercially available multichamber bags parenteral nutrition (MCB-PN), and hospital compounded parenteral nutrition.

1. Multiple bottle system

In the past, separate bottles were used to infuse individual substrates (carbohydrates, lipids, and amino acids) for PN [40, 41]. The advantages of multiple bottle systems are lower cost, flexibility, and ease of making adjustments in PN composition, particularly in critically ill patients with rapidly changing requirements [42].

Disadvantages of multiple bottle system are [40, 42]:

- Frequent manipulations during administering PN through multiple bottle systems carry a greater risk of nosocomial infections.
- Adjustment of different flow rates for different nutrients, adding different minerals and vitamins, and monitoring hyperglycemia, hypertriglyceridemia, and electrolyte disorders in each patient are cumbersome and are not without frequent mistakes.
- Simultaneous administration of various nutrients without maintaining proper proportion carries the risk of physicochemical incompatibilities.
- When costs of disposables and time spent by the nurse for administration of PN are considered, a multiple bottle system is costlier than commercially available multichambered PN formulations [43].

2. Multichamber-bag PN (MCBPN)

These products are standardized, easy-to-use nutrient mixtures, commercially available as two or three-chamber bags. Two-chamber bag systems (“2CB” or 2 in 1 formulation) contain dextrose and amino acids with or without electrolytes. Three-chamber bag systems (all-in-one admixture (AIO), “Three in One” system, 3 in 1 formulation) contain dextrose, amino acids, and lipid injectable emulsion (ILE), with/without electrolytes.

The advantages of three multichamber-bag PN products are:

- Convenience: The easy, convenient, and most preferred way for the single-line administration of PN. As all nutrients are available in a single container (referred to as premixed, “ready-to-use” commercial bags), it saves time and reduces the workload [44, 45].
- Less infection: Decrease bloodstream infection rates due to less handling during preparation and delivery (reduced connections and reduced need of changing bags) [46–49].
- Safer: Lesser chances of various calculations and compounding human errors and better stability and sterility as manufactured with high standards [44, 45, 50].
- Recommended standard practice: SCCM-ASPEN guidelines (2016) and other literature recommend using standardized commercially available PN formulations compared to compounded PN admixtures when the formulation meets the patient’s metabolic needs [1, 51, 52].
- Lower cost: Cost-saving during preparation, handling, and delivery (requiring fewer bags and tubings and no extra pump for lipid emulsion) [40, 49, 53–55].
- Due to slow continuous infusion, better assimilation, and utilization of nutrients with lesser chances of metabolic complications.
- Storage is more convenient with long shelf life [44].

Disadvantages of Multichamber-bag PN are:

- Lack of flexibility: Changes in composition/proportion of contents are not possible.
- Inappropriate overuse due to easy commercial availability of different formulations with a wide choice.
- Absence of transparent color: Due to the presence of lipids, three in one

solution is opaque, which impairs visual inspection of the solution for particulate matter, precipitation, or fungal growth.

3. Hospital compounded PN admixture

This PN formulation containing various nutrients is designed to meet the nutritional needs of specific clinical conditions. Aseptic tailormade compounding of PN admixture in a hospital needs a sophisticated manufacturing system and skilled pharmacists, so its availability is problematic. The use of personalized hospital compounded PN is decreasing because of multiple limitations [56–59] and a greater risk of sepsis [60].

C. Duration and mode of delivering parenteral nutrition

Two methods used for administering PN include continuous infusion of PN and cyclic infusion of PN.

1. Continuous parenteral nutrition

Parenteral nutrition infuses over 24 hours continuously at a constant rate by a pump. Continuous PN is the most common regimen used for acute, critical, and hospitalized patients. Slow continuous infusion of PN by infusion pumps avoids volume overload and side effects secondary to rapid administration of carbohydrates and lipids (such as hyperglycemic and triglyceridemia), allows better utilization of nutrients, and provides nutritional requirements throughout the day. Drawbacks of this modality are poor mobility due to attachment to the pump and increased risk of fatty liver due to continuous high insulin levels.

2. Cyclic/intermittent parenteral nutrition

Cyclic/intermittent PN is the method in which PN is infused at a higher rate over 10 to 14 hours (typically at night when the patient is sleeping) and then stopped [61]. Cyclic PN improves the quality of life, decreases the incidence of hepatobiliary complications, and may limit or reverse PN-associated liver dysfunction [62–64]. In addition, this regimen allows for a 10 to 14 hour break each day from the pump, enabling the person to engage in normal daily activities. Cyclic PN should be attempted cautiously in the presence of glucose intolerance, edema, or fluid tolerance and is not suitable for critically ill patients [52]. However, cyclic PN is effective and safe for stable, chronically ill patients who require long-term nutrient support (e.g., home parenteral nutrition) [65].

DESIGNING PARENTERAL NUTRITION FORMULA

PN is a high-alert medication, and planning appropriate and safe prescriptions for the individual is complex. The parenteral nutrition formula can be designed by following steps:

Step 1: Calculate the daily nutritional requirements and convert them into a prescription.

Step 2: Choosing the appropriate commercially available formula for the infusion.

Step 1: Calculate the daily nutritional requirements and convert them into a prescription

The first step in preparing a PN prescription is to calculate the daily nutritional requirements. It is essential to conduct a comprehensive evaluation of the patient and take into account all the factors that influence these requirements (refer to Table 57.2) to determine these requirements.

Sample calculation of the daily requirements of energy, protein dextrose, and lipids with consideration of fluid for a 60 kg patient, who is stable, euvolemic with good urine output and moderate stress is summarized below:

- Fluid requirement: Approximately 35 mL/kg.

  So, 35 (mL/kg) × 60 (kg) = 2100 ml/day.
- Caloric requirements: Approximately 25 kcal/kg.

  So, 25 (kcal/kg) × 60 (kg) = 1500 kcal/day.
- Protein requirements: For stable patients, 1 gm/kg body weight.

  So, 1 (gm/kg) × 60 (kg) = 60 gm/day.

  1 gm of protein provides 4 kcal, so 60 gm of protein will provide 60 × 4 = 240 kcal.
- Lipids requirements: 30% of total calories.

  So, 30% of 1500 (kcal/day) = 450 kcal.

  1 gm of fat provides 9 kcal, so to provide 450 kcal, 450/9 = 50 gm of fat will be required.
- Carbohydrate requirement:

  Total caloric requirements minus the sum of protein and fat calories.

  So, 1500 – (240 + 450 kcal) = 1500 – 690 = 810 kcal.

  1 gm of dextrose in solution provides 3.4 kcal. So to provide 810 kcal, 810/3.4 = 238 gm of dextrose will be required.

So, the total daily requirement of the patient is 2100 ml fluid volume, a total calorie requirement of 1500 kcal, 60 gm of amino acids, 50 gm of fat, and 238 gm of dextrose. In addition, electrolytes, trace elements, and vitamins should be added as per requirement.

Step 2: Choosing the appropriate commercially available formula for the infusion

According to the prescription, the PN solution is prepared either in a hospital pharmacy or a commercially available formula that best matches the prescribed nutrients is chosen for administration. Micronutrients are coadministered in the proper dose.

PN solution is prepared in hospital pharmacies only for a limited number of patients due to lack of facilities, higher risk of sepsis, and no advantage in clinical outcomes [1]. Due to these limitations, standardized commercially available PN products are widely used and preferred over tailormade hospital compounded PN solutions.

One or more commercially available readymade PN solutions that closely

Table 57.2 Factors determining PN requirements
• Weight of the patient
• Clinical status: stable or critical
• Medical or surgical conditions for which PN is indicated
• Nutritional status/malnutrition, volume status, urine volume
• Coexisting disorders (diabetes, hypertension, congestive heart failure, renal disorders, liver diseases, pulmonary diseases, sepsis, etc.)
• Electrolyte and acid base status

match the prescription are selected.

The volume of fluid permitted to the patient and the concentration of nutrients in the PN solution are inversely proportionate. Select a PN solution with a greater concentration of various nutrients if the patient needs fluid restriction (e.g., central PN). When the patient needs PN, and a larger fluid volume is permitted, a PN solution with a low concentration of nutrients (e.g., in peripheral PN) is selected.

Various commercially available PN products and their classification based on their composition and routes of administration (peripheral vs. central venous access) are summarized in Table 57.3 and Table 57.4. In addition, the classification of various lipid emulsion products based on their lipid source is summarized in Table 57.5. A summary of commercially available PN products in these tables can assist clinicians in selecting PN solutions quickly and accurately.

Table 57.3 Commercially available products for peripheral PN and their composition

Solution	Manufacturer	Volume (ml)	Calorie (kcal)	Osmolarity mOsm/L	Dextrose (gm)	Amino acids (gm)	Lipids (gm)
Amino acid containing solutions							
Aminosyn-PF 7%	Hospira	500	140	561	-	35	-
Aminoven 5%	Fresenius Kabi	500	100	490	-	25	0
Aminoven infant 10%	Fresenius Kabi	100	4	885	-	10	0
Amino acid and dextrose containing double chamber bag							
Aminomix peripheral	Fresenius Kabi	1000	390	770	63	35	-
Aminosyn II 4.25%/10%	Pfizer/Hospira	1000	483	894	100	42.5	-
Clinimix 4.25/10	Baxter	1000	510	930	100	42.5	-
Nutriflex peri	B Braun	1000	480	900	80	40	-
Lipid emulsions							
Intralipid 10%	Fresenius Kabi	500	550	260	-	-	50
Intralipid 20%	Fresenius Kabi	500	1000	260	-	-	100
Lipofundin MCT/ LCT 20%	B Braun	500	954	380	-	-	100
Clinolipid 20%	Baxter	500	1000	270	-	-	100
Lipoplus	B. Braun	500	955	410	-	-	100
SMOFlipid 20%	Fresenius Kabi	500	1000	270	-	-	100
Amino acid, dextrose and lipid containing triple chamber bag							
Kabiven peri	Fresenius Kabi	1440	1000	750	97	34	51
Nutriflex lipid peri	B Braun	1000	765	840	64	32	40
PeriOlimel N4	Baxter	1000	700	760	75	25.3	30
Smofkabivan peri	Fresenius Kabi	1448	1000	850	103	46	41

Table 57.4 Commercially available products for Central PN and their composition

Solution	Manufacturer	Volume (ml)	Calorie (kcal)	Osmolarity mOsm/L	Dextrose (gm)	Amino acids (gm)	Lipids (gm)
Amino acid containing solutions							
Aminoven 10%	Fresenius Kabi	1000	400	999	-	100	-
Aminosyn 10%	Hospira	1000	400	938	-	100	-
FreAmine 10%	B Braun	1000	388	950	-	97	-
Travasol 10%	Baxter	1000	400	999	-	100	-
Amino acid and dextrose containing double chamber bag							
Aminomix Novum	Fresenius Kabi	1000	1000	1779	200	50	-
Aminosyn II 4.25%/20%	Pfizer	1000	850	1295	200	42.5	-
Clinimix 8/10	Baxter	1000	663	1308	100	80	-
Nutriflex plus	B Braun	1000	792	1400	150	48	-
Amino acid, dextrose and lipid containing triple chamber bag							
Kabiven	Fresenius Kabi	1026	872	1060	100	34	40
Nutriflex lipid plus	B Braun	1250	1265	1540	150	48	50
Olimel N9/ Triomel N9	Baxter	1000	1070	1170	110	56.9	40
Smofkabivan	Fresenius Kabi	986	1100	1500	125	50	38

Table 57.5 Commercially available lipid emulsion products and their composition

Lipid source	Product	Manufacturer	Soybean oil	MCT oil	Olive oil	Fish oil	ω-6: ω-3 Ratio
Soybean oil-based	Intralipid Ivelip Lipofundin N Liposyn III	Fresenius Kabi Baxter B Braun Hospira	100%	-	-	-	7:1
SO/MCT-based	Lipofundin MCT/LCT	B Braun	50%	50%	-	-	7:1
	Structolipid	Fresenius Kabi	64%	36%	-	-	7:1
Olive oil-based	ClinOleic Clinolipid	Baxter Baxter	20%	-	80%	-	9:1
Fish oil containing emulsions	Lipoplus (Lipidem)	B Braun	40%	50%	-	10%	3:1
	SMOFlipid	Fresenius Kabi	30%	30%	25%	15%	2.5:1
	Omegaven	Fresenius Kabi	-	-	-	100%	1:8

INITIATION OF PN

- It is essential to evaluate the patient's nutritional status by careful history, physical examination, and laboratory studies before initiation of PN.
- PN may be initiated in hemodynamically stable patients who can tolerate the fluid volume. Correct electrolyte abnormalities and hyperglycemia before the initiation of PN.
- PN should be initiated slowly (no more than 50% of the calculated requirements on the first day) to avoid adverse effects like hyperglycemia and electrolyte disturbances [66]. PN is increased gradually over 4 to 7 days to achieve the nutrition goal.
- PN may precipitate refeeding syndrome in severely malnourished patients due to rapid fall in potassium, magnesium, and phosphorus levels. So slow initiation and close monitoring of the patient's electrolytes is necessary to avoid adverse effects on cardiac and respiratory function.

Care of PN mixture

- Store reconstituted PN bags in a refrigerator until 30 min before using.
- Always examine the PN solution before administration to exclude particulate matter, cloudiness, or an oily layer in the bag.
- Follow strict aseptic techniques while connecting and administering PN.
- To administer dextrose/amino acids PN formulations, use an infusion set with an in-built air vent and a 0.22-micron filter [52]. For administering lipids containing PN formulations, use a 1.2 micron - larger sized filter to avoid clogging of the filter.
- Do not use a three-way stopcock as it increases the risk of infection.
- Do not insert a needle for air venting in a PN bag.
- Do not add any medication to the PN bag.
- Do not allow the PN solution to hang for more than 24 hours.
- Do not use the PN line to draw blood for the test, administer medications, or measure central venous pressure.

MONITORING OF PN

Every patient receiving PN should be monitored carefully for the prevention or early detection of complications and to judge the effectiveness of therapy. Meticulous monitoring is aimed at monitoring, detecting, or assess:

- Metabolic status, including hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia.
- Risk of refeeding syndrome or clues of overfeeding.
- Micronutrient deficiency and toxicity.
- Fluid and electrolytes status.
- Catheter-related complications, including sepsis.
- Hepatic and other long-term complications.

A clinical data and laboratory study used routinely for monitoring patients receiving PN is summarized in Table 57.6:

- Always obtain a chest X-ray to check catheter placement after insertion.
- Record vital signs at least every 4 hours. Temperature elevation is one of the earliest signs of catheter-related sepsis.
- Patients should be weighed daily at the same time each morning after voiding on the same scale. Weight gain may indicate fluid overload.
- Perform site care and dressing change at least three times weekly or whenever the dressing becomes wet.

Table 57.6 Monitoring the patient on parenteral nutrition			
Clinical data monitoring			
History: Focused on patient's sense of well-being, strength to perform routine activities, fever, and medical history for signs of fluid overload or glucose and electrolyte imbalance. **Vital signs:** Monitor temperature, pulse, blood pressure, and respiratory rate. **Fluid balance:** Strict input/output chart, daily weight, and signs of fluid overload or dehydration. **Local care:** Inspecting and dressing vascular access site (to rule out infection). **Delivery system:** Inspection of solution for contamination and watch for the proper functioning of infusion pump, catheter function, and timely changing of tubing and bags.			
Monitoring of laboratory data during PN			
Parameter	**Baseline and initial period**	**Stable period**	**Long term**
Blood glucose	6 hourly	1–2 times/ week	Monthly
BUN, creatinine, electrolytes, HCO_3, PO_4, Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}	Daily	Weekly	Monthly
CBC, liver function test (LFT), triglycerides, PT	Weekly	Weekly	Monthly
Micronutrient tests, as indicated			

- Patients receiving PN should be monitored carefully to detect early signs of complications such as fluid overload, electrolyte imbalances, nutritional problems, or allergic reactions.
- Monitor serum glucose levels every 6 hours initially, then once a day. Watch for the symptoms of hyperglycemia, such as thirst and polyuria. Maintain blood glucose <180 mg/dL [1, 67].
- Monitor renal function, electrolyte levels, liver function, phosphate, calcium, and magnesium daily in the first week of initiating PN. Once the patient is stable, these tests are performed once or twice a week and less frequently in the long term.
- Monitoring response to nutritional therapy. There is no single criterion that can reliably indicate the effectiveness of PN. Improvement in clinical status and visceral protein concentrations (e.g., albumin, prealbumin, and transferrin) are most commonly used to monitor nutritional status. When interpreting visceral protein values, it is essential always to consider the patient's fluid status, organ function, and presence of infection. If nutritional recovery is inappropriate, a nitrogen balance study may guide changes in amino acid intake. Similarly, if traditional methods of calculating calorie requirements are unsatisfactory, indirect calorimetry is indicated.
- If the patient receiving PN develops fever, chills, or hypotension, its most common cause is a catheter-related bloodstream infection. Therefore, for diagnosis of CRBSI, blood cultures should be drawn immediately before initiating antibiotic therapy.

TERMINATION OF PN

- PN is the temporary method of nutritional supplementation. The ultimate goal is slow and smooth transit from PN to oral/enteral food intake once the gastrointestinal function returns.
- During the transition period, discontinue PN when the patient can tolerate

60–70% of the total nutritional requirements orally or enterally.

- If the patient cannot tolerate oral or enteral supplementation and intake is less than 60% of nutritional requirements, restart PN in 2–3 days.
- Plan a gradual transition from PN to oral or enteral nutrition to avoid over-feeding during the phase of reduction of PN and worsening of nutritional status when PN is discontinued.
- If there is a need for abrupt discontinuation of PN, administer 10% dextrose for a few hours to prevent hypoglycemia.
- After discontinuing PN, monitor blood glucose closely for several hours to detect hypoglycemia.
- During the transition period, closely and carefully monitor clinical status, hydration status, weight, and laboratory tests.

COMPLICATIONS OF PARENTERAL NUTRITION

The primary complications of parenteral nutrition include mechanical, metabolic, and infectious complications. However, most complications are reduced with careful management and supervision by an experienced nutritional support team. Commonly encountered complications are summarized in Table 57.7.

MECHANICAL COMPLICATIONS

Potential mechanical complications related to central venous catheter placement are malposition of the catheter, pneumothorax, hemothorax, arterial injury, thoracic duct injury, nerve injury, air embolism, cardiac arrhythmia, and cardiac perforation with tamponade.

Table 57.7 Complications of PN

	Mechanical	Metabolic/GI	Infectious
First 48 hours	Malposition, Haemothorax Pneumothorax Chylothorax Air embolism, Cardiac arrhythmia Injury to the subclavian/carotid artery	Fluid overload Hyperglycemia Hypophosphatemia Hypokalemia Hypomagnesemia Refeeding syndrome	-
First two weeks	Catheter displacement Catheter thrombosis Catheter occlusion Air embolism	Hyperglycemic coma Acid base imbalance Electrolyte imbalance	Catheter induced sepsis Exit site infection
Three months induced onwards infection	Fracture or tear of the catheter Catheter thrombosis Air embolism Blood loss	Essential fatty Acid deficiency Vitamin or trace element Deficiency PN metabolic Bone diseases PN liver diseases	Tunnel infection Catheter Sepsis Exit site

Ultrasound-guided central venous catheter insertion by trained and experienced personnel can reduce mechanical complications significantly [68].

Post subclavian and jugular CVC insertion, chest X-ray in the upright or semi-upright position is helpful to exclude malposition of the catheter, pneumothorax, or hemothorax and confirm the correct tip position (in the inferior third of superior vena cava or at the junction of the superior vena cava and the right atrium, parallel to the vessel wall). Avoid excessive advancement of a catheter because the tip of the CVC in the cardiac chamber carries the risk of cardiac arrhythmia. It is also important to avoid the inadequate length of insertion because the infusion of high osmolarity PN solutions with a catheter tip at a higher level can cause direct damage to the vein (thrombophlebitis) [69].

The osmolarity of PN solutions is three to eight times the normal serum osmolality. PN with high osmolarity in the long term can cause injury to endothelium and vein wall inflammation with resultant upper extremity deep venous thrombosis.

Most patients are asymptomatic, but swelling of the neck or arm with erythema, tenderness, and warmth is the common presentation in a few patients [70].

Catheter-related thrombosis is treated primarily with anticoagulation, and thrombolytic therapy is offered in selected patients having a high risk of thrombosis [71]. Removal of the catheter is recommended in catheter-related thrombosis if the catheter is non-functional or not needed, anticoagulation is contraindicated, inadequate improvement in symptoms with anticoagulation, or the thrombosis is limb or life-threatening [70, 71].

CATHETER-RELATED BLOODSTREAM INFECTION

In patients receiving CPN, catheter-related bloodstream infection (CRBSI) is the most common and serious complication that increases hospital stay and cost and is associated with significantly high morbidity and mortality.

In most cases, it is preventable with proper aseptic techniques and is often related to non-adherence to aseptic techniques, suboptimal catheter care, and inadequate patient education.

The upper body insertion site (internal jugular or subclavian vein) is preferred over the femoral site to reduce the risk of infection [19].

CRBSI is usually caused by the migration of skin organisms at the catheter exit site for short-term catheters and direct contamination of the catheter or catheter hub in long-term CVC [72].

The risk of line infection can be minimized by:

- Strict asepsis when handling (connecting/disconnecting) the line.
- Single-lumen central venous catheters should be dedicated solely to the infusion of parenteral nutrition.
- Use of a dedicated lumen on a multiple lumen CVC or a PICC line for administration of PN.
- Use of antibiotic-coated or antibiotic-impregnated catheters.

Fever in a patient with no other identifiable infection source raises suspicion of catheter-related infection. Staphylococcus and candida are the most frequent pathogens. Whenever catheter-related sepsis is suspected, the following steps should be considered:

- Evaluate the catheter insertion site and culture any drainage.

- Obtain blood cultures: For diagnosis of CRBSI, blood cultures should be drawn from each lumen of the catheter and two sets of blood cultures from peripheral veins via separate venipuncture sites before initiating antibiotic therapy [73]. Catheter tip cultures cannot be used as a substitute for blood cultures to confirm catheter-related bloodstream infection [74, 75].
- Begin empiric antibiotic therapy:

  In uncomplicated patients, it is unnecessary to remove the CVC. Instead, treat CRBSI immediately by administering broad-spectrum antibiotics through the lumen to salvage the catheter.

  It is unnecessary to remove the CVC in uncomplicated patients and treat CRBSI immediately by administering broad-spectrum antibiotics through lumen for catheter salvage.
- Remove catheter: Indications of catheter removal are [76]:
  - Tunnel and pocket infections.
  - Clinical deterioration, septic shock, or presence of severe complications such as endocarditis, septic thrombosis, or abscess formations.
  - Repeated positive blood culture besides antibiotic therapy.
  - Although guidewire exchange has a lower risk of technical complications, it is not recommended as an alternative approach to removal.

METABOLIC COMPLICATIONS

The most common problems caused by PN are hyperglycemia, fluid overload, electrolyte imbalances, refeeding syndrome, and hepatobiliary complications. Therefore, proper monitoring and adjustments in the composition and rate of PN are essential to reduce the metabolic complications caused by PN.

A. Hyperglycemia

Hyperglycemia occurs in more than half of patients receiving PN [77, 78] and is associated with increased hospital complications and mortality [77, 79].

The risk factors for hyperglycemia are excess and rapid administration of dextrose, obesity (BMI>25 kg/m2), preexisting diabetes mellitus or liver impairment, hyperglycemia before starting PN, surgical indications of PN, corticosteroid use, presence of infection, and critical illness [78, 80, 81]. Hyperglycemia in a previously normoglycemic patient should also raise suspicion of infection.

Hyperglycemia is the greatest danger from PN during the first 24 hours. It may lead to osmotic diuresis and glycosuria, leading to excessive excretion of free water by the kidney, thus causing hyperosmolar nonketotic dehydration, coma, and even death. Therefore, it is best treated by prevention.

As blood glucose values above 180 mg/dL are associated with a higher incidence of complications [77], the current recommendation is to keep glucose concentration 140–180 mg/dL [82–85].

Various insulin regimens used to control hyperglycemia in patients receiving PN are [86]:

- **Continuous intravenous insulin infusion:** Ideal for unstable and critically ill patients receiving PN requiring maximal flexibility in dose modifications.
- **Insulin added to PN:** Directly adding insulin to the parenteral nutrition bag is a convenient and physiologically favorable method to treat

hyperglycemia, particularly in general wards where separate IV insulin administration may not be feasible. However, this method is inappropriate in unstable patients and increases the risk of infectious complications.

- **Insulin added to PN and supplemental subcutaneous insulin using a sliding scale:** This regimen is widely used for non-critically ill T2DM patients and provides better glycemic control after PN interruption [87].
- **Subcutaneous insulin injection:** This regimen is useful in stable patients on PN before discontinuation of IV insulin for transitioning from IV to subcutaneous insulin administration.

Measures to prevent hyperglycemia during PN administration

- Do not overfeed the patient (starting dose less than 20–25 kcal/kg/d).
- Restrict dextrose in PN to 100–150 gm/day initially and administer it slowly (2–3 mg/kg/minute).
- Increase the portion of lipid administration if needed (to supply calories and to limit the required dextrose).
- Consider other sources of IV dextrose such as peritoneal dialysis solution, antibiotic drips, etc.
- Monitor blood glucose closely (every 4–6 hours) and increase insulin doses accordingly.

B. Hypoglycemia

Although the incidence of hypoglycemia is low among hospitalized patients receiving PN, it needs careful attention because of its detrimental consequences [88, 89].

PN associated hypoglycemia may be a consequence of:

- Overtreatment of hyperglycemia with the use of insulin via PN, IV infusion, or subcutaneous injection. The risk of hypoglycemia is higher when insulin is administered by drip.
- "Rebound hypoglycemia" after abrupt discontinuation of PN formulations (e.g., cyclic infusion of parenteral nutrition) [65].

Patients prone to develop hypoglycemia are advanced age, poor nutritional status, previous history of diabetes, renal failure, liver disease, ICU patients, patients on long-term PN, insulin administered by drip, and inadequate monitoring [88].

Measures to prevent hypoglycemia are:

- Slow tapering: Before discontinuing of the PN, tapper down infusion at half the rate for 1–2 h to reduce the risk of rebound hypoglycemia.
- If PN infusion needs to be discontinued abruptly, administer dextrose-containing fluid for about 1 or 2 hours to avoid the risk of hypoglycemia.
- When insulin is added to the PN solution, the risk of hypoglycemia is low on abrupt discontinuation of PN.
- As aggressive treatment of hyperglycemia to achieve tight blood glucose control carries the risk of hypoglycemia, a target blood glucose in the range of 140–180 mg/dL is recommended to reduce the incidence of hypoglycemia [82].
- Close monitoring of blood glucose and meticulous adjustment of insulin dosage (avoid higher insulin to dextrose ratio in PN).

C. Refeeding syndrome

This is a potentially serious but often neglected condition that can occur due to shifts of fluid, electrolytes, metabolic, and vitamin disturbances during re-initiation of nutritional therapy in patients with malnutrition or prolonged fasting. It can cause significant morbidity and even mortality.

Common high-risk factors for refeeding syndrome are [90, 91]:

- Severe malnutrition, BMI less than 18.5 kg/m2, recent weight loss (>10% within the last 3–6 months), poor or no nutritional intake for more than 5 days.
- Alcoholism abuse, anorexia nervosa, depression, bariatric surgery, bowel resections, malabsorption, insulin, chemotherapy, antacids, or diuretics.
- Low baseline levels of phosphate, potassium, or magnesium.

Pathophysiology: Refeeding syndrome is related to the shift from the catabolic to the anabolic metabolic pathways, which occurs with the reintroduction of glucose (refeeding) after a prolonged phase of starvation [92].

During the starvation (catabolic) period, the body adapts to less carbohydrates; fat becomes the primary source of energy requirements, and levels of blood glucose and insulin decline.

Prolonged fasting leads to severe depletion of intracellular phosphate, potassium, and magnesium and deficiencies of various vitamins, including thiamine.

The initiation of carbohydrate-containing nutrition leads to a rise in blood glucose levels, which in turn causes a rapid increase in insulin secretion.

Endogenous insulin surge causes massive shifts of phosphorus, potassium, and magnesium intracellularly, leading to severe hypophosphatemia, hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, and potentially lethal complications. Hypophosphatemia is the hallmark of the syndrome.

Thiamine requirements increase significantly during the nutritional replenishment, so in the state of thiamine deficiency, re-initiation of feeding can cause metabolic acidosis and neurologic abnormalities (i.e., confusion, Wernicke's encephalopathy or dry beriberi) or cardiovascular complications (i.e., peripheral edema, congestive heart failure, or wet beriberi). In addition, thiamine is an essential coenzyme in carbohydrate metabolism. Therefore, glucose is converted to lactate instead of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) via the Krebs cycle, causing lactic metabolic acidosis when thiamine is lacking.

Clinical features: Symptoms generally appear within the first 2–5 days of initiating nutritional therapy, and it's highly variable, ranging from mild to severe and life-threatening, depending on the severity of malnutrition and comorbidities [92]. The clinical symptoms of the refeeding syndrome are nonspecific and chiefly due to underlying hypophosphatemia, hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, sodium retention, and thiamine deficiency:

- Cardiovascular: Fluid overload, congestive heart failure, arrhythmias, bradycardia/tachycardia, and hypotension.
- Respiratory: Respiratory failure, pulmonary edema, hypoventilation, and failure to wean from the ventilator.
- Neurological: Paraesthesia, ataxia, delirium, Wernicke's encephalopathy.
- Musculoskeletal: Weakness, fatigue, myalgias, and rhabdomyolysis.
- Miscellaneous: Abdominal pain, constipation, vomiting, anemia, metabolic acidosis.

Measures for the prevention and treatment [91–95]

- Search and recognize high-risk patients for refeeding syndrome.
- Order baseline laboratory tests to assess potassium, magnesium, and phosphorus status before initiating nutrition support.

- Prophylactic administration of adequate electrolytes (even if blood levels are in the low-normal range), vitamin (thiamine, water, and fat-soluble), and micronutrient (Zn, Fe, Se) in "standard" maintenance doses, concurrently with the nutrition support. An approximate daily dose of electrolytes supplementation suggested is 1–1.5 mEq/kg potassium, 0.2–0.4 mEq/kg magnesium, and 0.3–0.6 mmol/kg phosphate. If values of electrolytes are severely low, it is recommended to delay the initiation of nutrition support until the electrolyte imbalances are corrected.
- The recommended dose of thiamine is 100 mg per day, to be administered before initiating dextrose-containing IV fluids and to be given for a period of 5–7 days or longer.
- Start refeeding gradually and cautiously in a stepwise manner to avoid excessive nutritional replenishment and limit the resultant risk of refeeding syndrome. First, start caloric supplementation in low dose (no more than 50% of energy requirements [NICE guidelines] or 100–150 gm of dextrose or 10–20 kcal/kg for the first 24 hours [ASPEN guidelines 2020]) and increase the dose slowly (advance by 33% of a goal every 1 to 2 days).
- Careful administration of sodium and fluids to avoid fluid overload.
- Close clinical and laboratory indices monitoring. Measure vital signs every 4 hours on the first day and maintain daily weight and intake output chart. Monitor serum potassium, magnesium, and phosphorus every 12 hours for the first three days.
- If overt symptoms and abnormal electrolyte values, curtail nutritional supplementation. In patients with refeeding hypophosphatemia, reduce energy intake temporarily or restrict it for 48 hours and gradually increase subsequently. Reduce fluid intake if edema or congestive heart failure and replace electrolytes aggressively according to the serum electrolyte levels.

D. Hepatic abnormalities

In patients receiving parenteral nutrition, liver diseases are common, and their prevalence ranges from 4.3% to 65% [96, 97]. Three major and most frequently encountered hepatobiliary complications are steatosis (accumulation of fat in the liver due to overfeeding), cholestasis (impaired or blocked secretion of bile), and gallbladder sludge/stones (due to gallbladder inactivity and stasis) [98, 99]. The broad spectrum of hepatic manifestations of PN-associated liver disease ranges from a benign and temporary rise in liver function tests to steatosis to fibrosis and, eventually, progress to portal hypertension and end-stage liver failure in a few [100]. Elevated serum conjugated bilirubin >2 mg/dL is the primary marker of PN-associated liver disease, which generally occurs early in therapy (within 2 weeks of initiation of PN). Therefore, when a patient receiving PN develops hepatic complications, it is essential to exclude other causes of liver disease.

Three terms used to describe the spectrum of liver disorders in patients receiving PN are PNAC (Parenteral nutrition-associated cholestasis), PNALD (Parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease), and IFALD (Intestinal failure-associated liver disease) [101]. Parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease is the general term used to describe the different hepatic and serum abnormalities associated with liver injury in adult and pediatric patients receiving long-term PN [102]. As long-term administration of PN can cause cholestasis, the term Parenteral nutrition-associated cholestasis (PNAC) is frequently used in the pediatric literature [103].

The term "Intestinal failure-associated liver disease" (IFALD) is now preferred to "PNALD" or "PNAC" for describing liver disease associated with PN in both pediatric and adult patients, as it more accurately reflects the multifactorial nature of the problem and its relation to intestinal failure [104, 105]. However, both terms, PNALD and IFALD, are used interchangeably in clinical practice to describe hepatic dysfunction secondary to intestinal failure in patients who are on PN.

Major risk factors for the development of PNALD are [98, 99]:

- Excessive energy intake or overfeeding.
- Glucose overload or excessive carbohydrate administration.
- Excess administration of lipid >1 gm/kg/d.
- Administration of soybean oil-based lipid emulsion.
- Continuous infusion of PN.
- Lack of enteral stimulation.
- Carnitine and choline deficiency.

Interventions recommended to prevent or treat hepatic complications are:

- Avoiding excessive calorie administration: Avoid administration of >25 to 30 kcal/kg calories to reduce the risk of steatosis or fat deposition in the liver.
- Avoiding excessive carbohydrate administration: Avoid administration of >5 mg/kg/min/d carbohydrate to prevent PNALD/IFALD [96].
- Appropriate carbohydrates to lipids ratio: PN solution should contain about 70–85% carbohydrates and 15–30% lipids to provide nonprotein energy [106].
- Restrict the dose of soybean-based lipid emulsions (<1 gm/kg body weight/d) to treat children with PNALD [21, 107].
- Change the composition of lipid emulsions: Supplementation (partial or complete) of omega-3-fatty acids enriched fish oil to soybean-based lipid emulsions (with the reduced n6/n3 ratio) is recommended to prevent and treat PNALD [103, 108–110].
- Prefer cyclic PN instead of continuous PN: Cyclic PN (9 for 12 to 16 hours) allows time for the mobilization of fats during the non-administration period of PN [105]. Therefore, a switch to cyclic PN infusion helps stabilize or improve impaired liver function [64, 65, 111].
- Early oral or enteral nutrition: Even small amounts of oral or enteral nutrition (EN) stimulates enterohepatic circulation of bile acids and reduce the risk for PNALD.

REFERENCES

1. McClave SA, Taylor BE, Martindale RG, et al. Guidelines for the provision and assessment of nutrition support therapy in the adult critically ill patient: Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) and American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (A.S.P.E.N.). JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2016;40(2):159–211.
2. Bolder U, Ebener C, Hauner H, et al. Carbohydrates - Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 5. Ger Med Sci. 2009;7:Doc23.
3. Adolph M, Heller AR, Koch T, et al. Lipid emulsions - Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition, Chapter 6. Ger Med Sci. 2009;7:Doc22.
4. Anderson ADG, Palmer D, MacFie J. Peripheral parenteral nutrition. Br J Surg. 2003;90(9):1048–1054.
5. Correia MI, Guimarâes J, de Mattos LC, et al. Peripheral parenteral nutrition: an option for patients with an indication for short-term parenteral nutrition. Nutr Hosp. 2004;19(1):14–8.
6. Mirtallo J, Canada T, Johnson D, et al. Task force for the revision of safe practices for parenteral nutrition. Safe practices for parenteral nutrition. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2004;28(6):S39–70.
7. Kuwahara T, Asanami S, Tamura T, et al. Effects of pH and osmolality on phlebitic potential of infusion

solutions for peripheral parenteral nutrition. J Toxicol Sci 1998;23(1):77–85.

8. Isaacs JW, Millikan WJ, Stackhouse J, et al. Parenteral nutrition of adults with a 900 milliosmolar solution via peripheral veins. Am J Clin Nutr. 1977;30(4):552–9.
9. Pertkiewicz M, Dudrick SJ. Basics in clinical nutrition: Parenteral nutrition, ways of delivering parenteral nutrition and peripheral parenteral nutrition (PPN). e-SPEN, the European e-Journal of Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism 4 (2009):e125–e127.
10. Alpan G, Eyal F, Springer C, et al. Heparinization of alimentation solutions administered through peripheral veins in premature infants: a randomized, controlled study. Pediatrics. 1984;74(3):375–378.
11. Roongpisuthipong C, Puchaiwatananon O, Songchitsomboon S, et al. Hydrocortisone, heparin, and peripheral intravenous infusion. Nutrition. 1994;10(3):211–3.
12. Pittiruti M, Hamilton H, Biffi R, et al. ESPEN Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition: Central Venous Catheters (access, care, diagnosis and therapy of complications) Clin Nutr. 2009;28(4):365–77.
13. Cohen AB, Dagli M, Stavropoulos SW Jr, et al. Silicone and polyurethane tunneled infusion catheters: a comparison of durability and breakage rates. J Vasc Interv Radiol. 2011;22(5):638–41.
14. Wildgruber M, Lueg C, Borgmeyer S, et al. Polyurethane versus silicone catheters for central venous port devices implanted at the forearm. Eur J Cancer. 2016;59:113–124.
15. Busch JD, Vens M, Mahler C, et al. Complication rates observed in silicone and polyurethane catheters of totally implanted central venous access devices implanted in the upper arm. J Vasc Interv Radiol. 2017;28(8):1177–1183.
16. Micic D, Semrad C, Chopra V. Choosing the Right central venous catheter for parenteral nutrition. Am J Gastroenterol. 2019;114(1):4–6.
17. Wang H, Tong H, Liu H, et al. Effectiveness of antimicrobial-coated central venous catheters for preventing catheter-related blood-stream infections with the implementation of bundles: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Ann Intensive Care. 2018;8(1):71.
18. Chopra V, Flanders SA, Saint S, et al. Michigan Appropriateness Guide for Intravenous Catheters (MAGIC) Panel. The Michigan Appropriateness Guide for Intravenous Catheters (MAGIC): results from a multispecialty panel using the RAND/UCLA appropriateness method. Ann Intern Med. 2015.15;163(6 suppl):S1–S40.
19. Practice Guidelines for Central Venous Access 2020: An Updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Central Venous Access. Anesthesiology. 2020;132(1):8–43.
20. Infusion Nurses Society. Infusion therapy standards of practice. J Infus Nurs. 2016;39(1 suppl):S11–S159.
21. Pironi L, Arends J, Bozzetti F, et al. ESPEN guidelines on chronic intestinal failure in adults. Clin Nutr. 2016;35(2):247–307.
22. Christensen LD, Holst M, Bech LF, et al. Comparison of complications associated with peripherally inserted central catheters and Hickman™ catheters in patients with intestinal failure receiving home parenteral nutrition. Six-year follow up study. Clin Nutr. 2016;35(4):912–917.
23. Kovacevich DS, Corrigan M, Ross VM, et al. American society for parenteral and enteral nutrition guidelines for the selection and care of central venous access devices for adult home parenteral nutrition administration. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2019;43(1):15–31.
24. Pironi L, Boeykens K, Bozzetti F, et al. ESPEN guideline on home parenteral nutrition. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(6):1645–1666.
25. Cotogni P, Mussa B, Degiorgis C, et al. Comparative complication rates of 854 central venous access devices for home parenteral nutrition in cancer patients: a prospective study of over 169,000 catheter-days. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2021;45(4):768–776.
26. Chopra V, Anand S, Hickner A, et al. Risk of venous thromboembolism associated with peripherally inserted central catheters: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. 2013;382(9889):311–325.
27. Johansson E, Hammarskjöld F, Lundberg D, et al. Advantages and disadvantages of peripherally inserted central venous catheters (PICC) compared to other central venous lines: a systematic review of the literature. Acta Oncol. 2013;52(5):886–92.
28. Taxbro K, Hammarskjöld F, Thelin B, et al. Clinical impact of peripherally inserted central catheters vs implanted port catheters in patients with cancer: an open-label, randomised, two-centre trial. Br J Anaesth 2019;122(6):734–741.
29. Advani S, Reich NG, Sengupta A, et al. Central line-associated bloodstream infection in hospitalized children with peripherally inserted central venous catheters: extending risk analyses outside the intensive care unit. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(9):1108–1115.
30. Chopra V, Ratz D, Kuhn L, et al. PICC-associated bloodstream infections: prevalence, patterns, and predictors. Am J Med. 2014;127(4):319–328.
31. Touré A, Duchamp A, Peraldi C, et al. comparative study of peripherally-inserted and Broviac catheter complications in home parenteral nutrition patients. Clin Nutr. 2015;34(1):49–52.
32. Hon K, Bihari S, Holt A, et al. Rate of catheter-related bloodstream infections between tunneled central venous catheters versus peripherally inserted central catheters in adult home parenteral nutrition: a meta-analysis. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2019;43(1):41–53.
33. Mateo-Lobo R, Riveiro J, Vega-Piñero B, et al. Infectious complications in home parenteral nutrition: a systematic review and meta-analysis comparing peripherally-inserted central catheters with other central catheters. Nutrients. 2019;11(9):2083.
34. Zerla PA, Canelli A, Cerne L, et al. Evaluating safety, efficacy, and cost-effectiveness of PICC securement by subcutaneously anchored stabilization device. J Vasc Access. 2017;18(3):238–242.

35. Cheung E, Baerlocher MO, Asch M, et al. Venous access: a practical review for 2009. Can Fam Physician. 2009;55(5):494–496.
36. Maki DG, Kluger DM, Crnich CJ. The risk of bloodstream infection in adults with different intravascular devices: a systematic review of 200 published prospective studies. Mayo Clin Proc. 2006;81(9):1159–1171.
37. Saugel B, Scheeren TWL, Teboul JL. Ultrasound-guided central venous catheter placement: a structured review and recommendations for clinical practice. Crit Care. 2017;21(1):225.
38. Hill S, Moureau NL. (2019) Tip Position. In: Moureau N. (eds) Vessel Health and Preservation: The Right Approach for Vascular Access. Springer, Cham.
39. Venugopal AN, Koshy RC, Koshy SM. Role of chest X-ray in citing central venous catheter tip: A few case reports with a brief review of the literature. J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol. 2013;29(3):397–400.
40. Menne R, Adolph M, Brock E, et al. Cost analysis of parenteral nutrition regimens in the intensive care unit: three compartment bag system vs multibottle system. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2008;32(6):606–612.
41. Hellerman Itzhaki M, Singer P. Advances in medical nutrition therapy: parenteral nutrition. Nutrients. 2020;12(3):717.
42. Pertkiewicz M, Dudrick SJ. Basics in clinical nutrition: Systems for parenteral nutrition, different systems for parenteral nutrition (AIO vs. MB). e-SPEN, the European e-Journal of Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism. 2009;4:123–124.
43. Raper S, Milanov S, Park GR. The cost of multicompartment ‘big bag’ total parenteral nutrition in an ICU. Anaesthesia. 2002;57(1):96–7.
44. Pichard C, Schwarz G, Frei A, et al. Economic investigation of the use of three compartment total parenteral nutrition bag: prospective randomized unblinded controlled study. Clin Nutr. 2000;19(4):245–251.
45. Berlana D, Almendral MA, Abad MR, et al. Cost, time, error assessment during preparation of parenteral nutrition: multichamber bags versus hospital-compound bags. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2019;43(4):557–565.
46. Turpin RS, Canada T, Rosenthal V, et al. Bloodstream infections associated with parenteral nutrition preparation methods in the United States: a retrospective, large database analysis. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2012;36(2):169–176.
47. Pontes-Arruda A, Zaloga G, Wischmeyer P, et al. Is there a difference in bloodstream infections in critically ill patients associated with ready-to use versus compounded parenteral nutrition? Clin Nutr. 2012;31(5):728–734.
48. Turpin RS, Solem C, Pontes-Arruda A, et al. The impact of parenteral nutrition preparation on bloodstream infection risk and costs. Eur J Clin Nutr. 2014;68(8):953–958.
49. Alfonso JE, Berlana D, Ukleja A, et al. Clinical, ergonomic, and economic outcomes with multi-chamber bags compared with (hospital) pharmacy compounded bags and multibottle systems: a systematic literature review. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2017;41(7):1162–1177.
50. Gervasio J. Compounding vs standardized commercial parenteral nutrition product: pros and cons. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2012;36(2 Suppl):40S–41S.
51. Slattery E, Rumore MM, Douglas JS, et al. 3-in-1 vs 2-in-1 parenteral nutrition in adults: a review. Nutr Clin Pract. 2014;29(5):631–5.
52. Ayers P, Adams S, Boullata J, et al. A.S.P.E.N. parenteral nutrition safety consensus recommendations. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2014;38(3):296–333.
53. Turpin RS, Canada T, Liu FX, et al. Nutrition therapy cost analysis in the US: pre-mixed multi-chamber bag vs compounded parenteral nutrition. Appl Health Econ Health Policy. 2011;9(5):281–292.
54. Berlana D, Sabin P, Gimeno-Ballester V, et al. Cost analysis of adult parenteral nutrition systems: three-compartment bag versus customized. Nutr Hosp. 2013;28(6):2135–2141.
55. Berlana D, Barraquer A, Sabin P, et al. Impact of parenteral nutrition standardization on costs and quality in adult patients. Nutr Hosp. 2014;30(2):351–358.
56. Driscoll DF. Compounding TPN admixtures: then and now. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2003;27(6):433–8.
57. Beattie C, Allard J, Raman M. Comparison between premixed and compounded parenteral nutrition solutions in hospitalized patients requiring parenteral nutrition. Nutr Clin Pract. 2016;31(2):229–234.
58. Baras Z, Theilla M, Singer P. From compound to “ready to use” parenteral nutrition bags use in a tertiary medical center: An observational study. Clin. Nutr. 2019;38:S270–S271.
59. Yu J, Wu G, Tang Y, et al. Efficacy, safety, and preparation of standardized parenteral nutrition regimens: three-chamber bags vs compounded monobags-a prospective, multicenter, randomized, single-blind clinical trial. Nutr Clin Pract. 2017;32(4):545–551
60. Gupta N, Hocevar SN, Moulton-Meissner HA, et al. Outbreak of Serratia marcescens bloodstream infections in patients receiving parenteral nutrition prepared by a compounding pharmacy. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(1):1–8.
61. Stout MS, Cober MP. Cyclic parenteral nutrition infusion: considerations for the clinician. Practical gastroenterology series #97. Published 2011.
62. Gonzaleza KW, Weaver KL, Biondo DJ, et al. Cycling parenteral nutrition in a neonatal surgical patient: An argument for increased utilization. Journal of Pediatric Surgery Case Reports 2017;16:C1–4.
63. Gabe SM, Culkin A. Abnormal liver function tests in the parenteral nutrition fed patient. Frontline Gastroenterol. 2010;1(2):98–104.
64. Arenas Villafranca JJ, Nieto Guindo M, Álvaro Sanz E, et al. Effects of cyclic parenteral nutrition on parenteral-associated liver dysfunction parameters. Nutr J. 2017;16(1):66.

65. Stout SM, Cober MP. Metabolic effects of cyclic parenteral nutrition infusion in adults and children. Nutr Clin Pract. 2010;25(3):277–281.
66. Mehanna H, Nankivell PC, Moledina J, et al. Refeeding syndrome--awareness, prevention and management. Head Neck Oncol. 2009;1:4.
67. American Diabetes Association. 15. Diabetes Care in the Hospital: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes-2019. Diabetes Care. 2019;42(1):S173–S181.
68. Ozakin E, Can R, Acar N, et al. An evaluation of complications in ultrasound-guided central venous catheter insertion in the emergency department. Turk J Emerg Med. 2016;14(2):53–58.
69. Roldan CJ, Paniagua L. Central venous catheter intravascular malpositioning: causes, prevention, diagnosis, and correction. West J Emerg Med. 2015;16(5):658–664.
70. Wall C, Moore J, Thachil J. Catheter-related thrombosis: A practical approach. J Intensive Care Soc. 2016;17(2):160–167.
71. Kakkos SK, Gohel M, Baekgaard N, et al. Editor's Choice – European Society for Vascular Surgery (ESVS) 2021 Clinical practice guidelines on the management of venous thrombosis. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg 2021;61(1):9–82.
72. O'Grady NP, Alexander M, Burns LA, et al. Guidelines for the prevention of intravascular catheter-related infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(9):162–193.
73. Mermel LA, Allon M, Bouza E, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of intravascular catheter-related infection: 2009 Update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America [published correction appears in Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(7):1079.
74. Peterson LR, Smith BA. Nonutility of catheter tip cultures for the diagnosis of central line-associated bloodstream infection. Clin Infect Dis 2015;60(3):492–3.
75. Bloodstream Infection Event (Central Line-Associated Bloodstream Infection and Non-central Line Associated Bloodstream Infection). National Healthcare Safety Network 2021.
76. Böll B, Schalk E, Buchheidt D, et al. Central venous catheter-related infections in hematology and oncology: 2020 updated guidelines on diagnosis, management, and prevention by the Infectious Diseases Working Party (AGIHO) of the German Society of Hematology and Medical Oncology (DGHO). Ann Hematol. 2021;100(1):239–259.
77. Olveira G, Tapia MJ, Ocón J, et al. Study Group of Hyperglycemia in Parenteral Nutrition: Nutrition Area of the Spanish Society of Endocrinology and Nutrition (SEEN). Parenteral nutrition-associated hyperglycemia in non-critically ill inpatients increases the risk of in-hospital mortality (multicenter study). Diabetes Care. 2013;36(5):1061–6.
78. Elizabeth PC, Ramón PR, Alberto MM. Hyperglycemia associated with parenteral nutrition in noncritical patients. Human Nutrition & Metabolism. 2020;22:200114.
79. Pasquel FJ, Spiegelman R, McCauley M, et al. Hyperglycemia during total parenteral nutrition: an important marker of poor outcome and mortality in hospitalized patients. Diabetes Care 2010;33(4):739–41.
80. Alchaer M, Khasawneh R, Heuberger R, et al. Prevalence and risk factors of total parenteral nutrition induced hyperglycemia at a single institution: retrospective study. Metab Syndr Relat Disord. 2020;18(5):267–273.
81. Sangrador Pelluz C, Pardo Pastor J, Navas Moya E, et al. Predictive factors of hyperglycaemia in patients with parenteral nutrition. Med Clin (Barc). 2020;154(5):157–162.
82. McMahon MM, Nystrom E, Braunschweig C, et al. American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (A.S.P.E.N.) Board of Directors; American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition. A.S.P.E.N. clinical guidelines: nutrition support of adults with hyperglycemia. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2013;37(1):23–36.
83. Yatabe T, Inoue S, Sakaguchi M, et al. The optimal target for acute glycemic control in critically ill patients: a network meta-analysis. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43(1):16–28.
84. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: International guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2016. Intensive Care Med. 2017;43(3):304–77.
85. American Diabetes Association. 15. Diabetes care in the hospital: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetesd2020. Diabetes Care 2020;43(Suppl. 1):S193–S202.
86. Schönenberger KA, Aberer F, Papazafiropoulou AK. Management of Hyperglycemia in Hospitalized Patients Receiving Parenteral Nutrition. Front. Clin. Diabetes Healthc. 2022;3:829412.
87. Olveira G, Abuín J, López R, et al. Regular insulin added to total parenteral nutrition vs subcutaneous glargine in non-critically ill diabetic inpatients, a multicenter randomized clinical trial: INSUPAR trial. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(2):388–394.
88. Kinnare KF, Bacon CA, Chen Y, et al. Risk factors for predicting hypoglycemia in patients receiving concomitant parenteral nutrition and insulin therapy. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2013;113(2):263–8.
89. Olveira G, Tapia MJ, Ocón J, et al. Hypoglycemia in noncritically ill patients receiving total parenteral nutrition: a multicenter study. (Study group on the problem of hyperglycemia in parenteral nutrition; Nutrition area of the Spanish Society of Endocrinology and Nutrition). Nutrition. 2015;31(1):58–63.
90. Nutrition support for adults: oral nutrition support, enteral tube feeding and parenteral nutrition Clinical guideline [CG32] 2006. Last updated: 04 August 2017. Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg32.
91. da Silva JSV, Seres DS, Sabino K, et al. Parenteral nutrition safety and clinical practice committees, american society for parenteral and enteral nutrition. ASPEN consensus recommendations for refeeding syndrome. Nutr Clin Pract. 2020;35(2):178–195.

92. Ponzo V, Pellegrini M, Cioffi I, et al. The Refeeding Syndrome: a neglected but potentially serious condition for inpatients. A narrative review. Intern Emerg Med. 2021;16(1):49–60.
93. Mehanna HM, Moledina J, Travis J. Refeeding syndrome: what it is, and how to prevent and treat it. BMJ. 2008;336(7659):1495–8.
94. Friedli N, Stanga Z, Culkin A, et al. Management and prevention of refeeding syndrome in medical inpatients: an evidence-based and consensus-supported algorithm. Nutrition 2018;47:13–20.
95. Singer P, Blaser AR, Berger MM, et al. ESPEN guideline on clinical nutrition in the intensive care unit. Clin Nutr. 2019;38(1):48–79.
96. Lakananurak N, Tienchai K. Incidence and risk factors of parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease in hospitalized adults: A prospective cohort study. Clin Nutr ESPEN. 2019;34:81–86.
97. Fousekis FS, Mitselos IV, Christodoulou DK. New insights into intestinal failure–associated liver disease in adults: A comprehensive review of the literature. Saudi J Gastroenterol 2021;27(1):3–12.
98. Kumpf VJ. Parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease in adult and pediatric patients. Nutr Clin Pract. 2006;21(3):279–290.
99. Nowak K. Parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease. Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken). 2020;15(2):59–62.
100. Mitra A, Ahn J. Liver disease in patients on total parenteral nutrition. Clin Liver Dis. 2017;21(4):687–695.
101. Khalaf RT, Sokol RJ. New Insights into Intestinal Failure–Associated Liver Disease in Children. Hepatology. 2020;71(4):1486–1498.
102. Guthrie G, Burrin D. Impact of Parenteral lipid emulsion components on cholestatic liver disease in neonates. Nutrients. 2021;13(2):508.
103. Bischoff SC, Bernal W, Dasarathy S, et al. ESPEN practical guideline: Clinical nutrition in liver disease. Clin Nutr. 2020;39(12):3533–3562.
104. Lacaille F, Gupte G, Colomb V, et al. Intestinal failure-associated liver disease: A position paper of the ESPGHAN Working Group of Intestinal Failure and Intestinal Transplantation. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2015;60(2):272–83.
105. Rochling FA. Intravenous Lipid emulsions in the prevention and treatment of liver disease in intestinal failure. Nutrients. 2021;13(3):895.
106. Mirtallo J, Canada T, Johnson D, et al. Safe practices for parenteral nutrition. J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2004;28(6):S39–S70.
107. Wales PW, Allen N, Worthington P, et al. A.S.P.E.N. clinical guidelines: support of pediatric patients with intestinal failure at risk of parenteral nutrition-associated liver disease. J Parenter Enteral Nutr 2014;38(5):538–557.
108. Pironi L, Colecchia A, Guidetti M, et al. Fish oil-based emulsion for the treatment of parenteral nutrition associated liver disease in an adult patient. European e-J Clin Nutr Metabol 2010;5(5):e243–e246.
109. Yan JH, Guan BJ, Gao HY, et al. Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid supplementation and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Medicine 2018;97(37):e12271.
110. Lal S, Pironi L, Wanten G, et al. Clinical approach to the management of Intestinal Failure Associated Liver Disease (IFALD) in adults: A position paper from the Home Artificial Nutrition and Chronic Intestinal Failure Special Interest Group of ESPEN. Clin Nutr 2018;37(6 Pt A):1794–7.
111. Hwang T, Lue M, Chen L. Early use of cyclic TPN prevents further deterioration if liver functions for the TPN patient with impaired liver function. Hepatogastroenterology 2004;47(35):1347–50.

KidneyEducation

Join the Mission to Fight Kidney Diseases

Explore the world's largest multilingual website created by a global team of over 100 nephrologists.

www.KidneyEducation.com

» Read online or download the 200-page book "Save Your Kidneys" in 40 languages—completely free.

» This comprehensive resource offers valuable information on preventing and managing common kidney problems, tailored for kidney patients and their families.

» It's an authentic guide, prepared by nephrologists and free from any external funding.